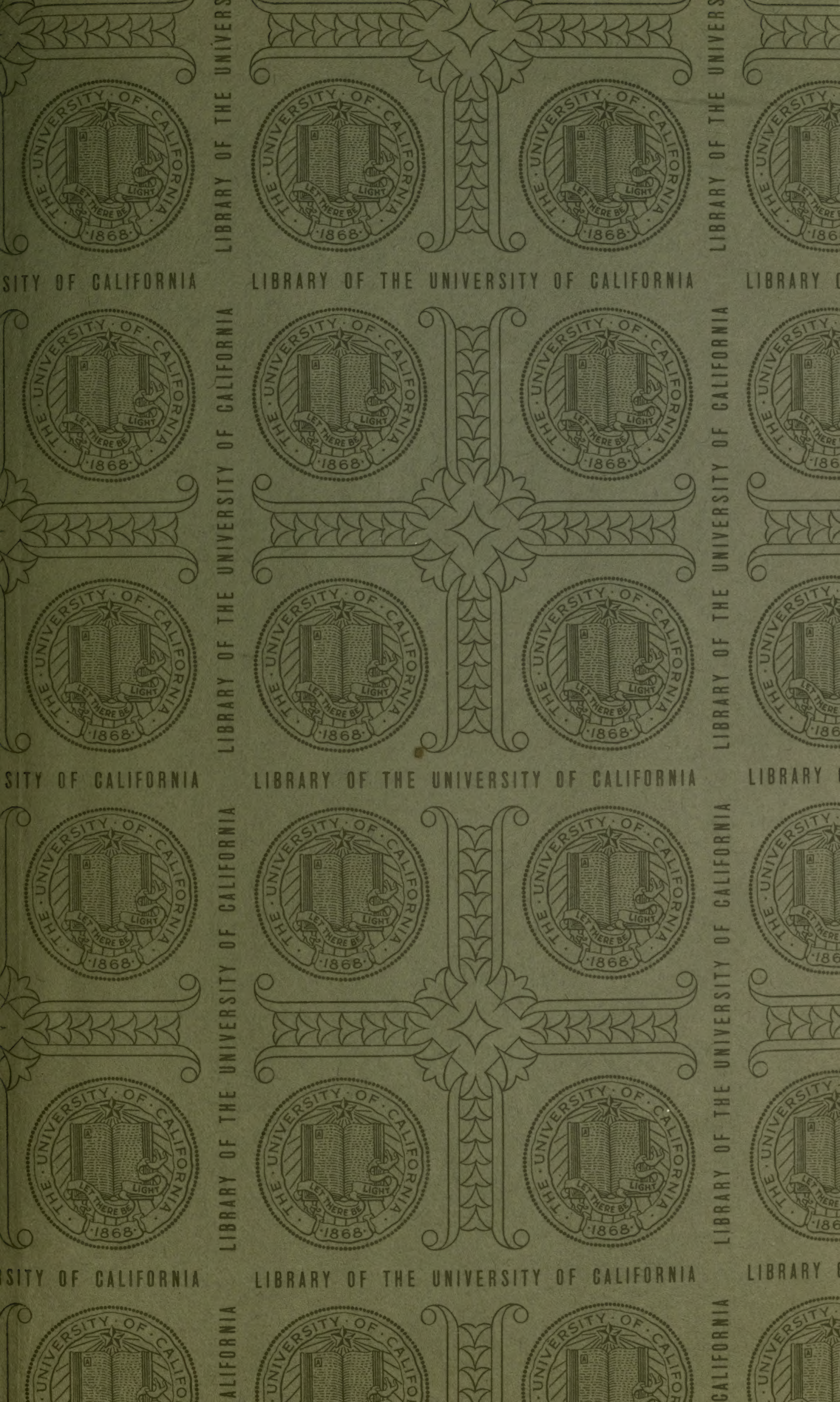
SHOUT
SHARE
IT

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA


LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA
THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA
LET THERE BE LIGHT
1868

Lab. N. Anat

A

TEXT-BOOK OF ZOOLOGY

BY

T. JEFFERY PARKER, D.Sc., F.R.S.
PROFESSOR OF BIOLOGY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF OTAGO, DUNEDIN, N.Z.

AND

WILLIAM A. HASWELL, M.A., D.Sc., F.R.S.
PROFESSOR OF BIOLOGY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF SYDNEY, N.S.W.

IN TWO VOLUMES

VOL. I

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS

REESE LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY
OF CALIFORNIA

London
MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
1897

All rights reserved

QL 42
P33
v. 1
BIOLOGY
LIBRARY
G

69864

Richard Clay and Sons, Limited,
London and Bungay.

QL42
P33
v.1
Biol. Lib.

ADDENDA ET CORRIGENDA

VOL. I

p. 188. *Fenja* and *Aegir* have been proved to be nothing more than damaged examples of a normal Sea-anemone (*Halcampoides*).

p. 214. Line 15 from top, *for* "Hormosira" *read* "Hormiphora."

p. 230. The statement that Land-snails are sometimes the second host of the Liver Fluke is based on error. In addition to *Lymnæa*, however, other freshwater genera, certainly *Bulinus* (*Physa*) are sometimes the second hosts of this Trematode.

p. 246. Fig. 192: *n*, nervous system; *r*, rostella; *r.b*, sacs of rostella; *r.s*, sheaths of rostella. (From Leuckart and Nitsche's Diagrams, after Pintner.)

p. 247. Fig. 195: *dg*, vitelline duct; *dst*, vitelline glands; *e*, excretory pore; *k*, head end; *od*, oviduct; *ov*, ovary; *p*, penis; *r.s*, receptaculum seminis; *t*, testes; *vd*, vas deferens; *vs*, vesicula seminalis; *w.g.o*, female genital opening.

p. 247. Fig. 196: *eo*, excretory opening; *mo*, male reproductive opening; *n*, longitudinal nerve; *n'*, junction of longitudinal nerves; *n.r*, nerve-ring; *o* (in front), ovaries; *o* (behind), tube leading from opening of vas deferens to male aperture; *o'*, central cavity into which ova pass before being received into the uterus; *p* (in front), proboscis; *p* (behind), papilla on which vas deferens opens; *r.s*, receptaculum seminis; *r.s.o*, opening of duct leading to receptaculum seminis; *s*, sucker; *t*, lobes of testes; *ut*, uterus; *vs*, vesicula seminalis; *yk*, vitelline glands.

p. 267. Fig. 213, *for* "Rhabdoeoelida" *read* "Rhabdocoelida."

p. 337. Line 19 from top, *for* "is" *read* "in."

p. 356 *et seq.* *Anthenea flavescens* should be *Anthenea acuta.*

p. 367. Last line of page, *after* "anus" *insert* "and is."

p. 474. Line 10 from top, *for* "gonods" *read* "gonads."

p. 485. Fig. 386, line 4 under cut, *for* "Broun's" *read* "Bronn's."

p. 520. Line 19 from top, *for* "podomore" *read* "podomere."

p. 533. Fig. 419, first line under cut, *after* "A, the entire animal" *insert* "*s.* carina; *c.* scutum; *t.* tergum."

p. 546. Fig. 434, at end of line under cut, *for* "3*a*, larva" *read* "4*a*, larva."

VOL. II

p. 118. Line 3 from bottom, *for* "(*a. l. c.*)" *read* "(*a. lat. c.*)."

p. 131. Fig. 762, in description under cut, *for* "*st. c.*" *read* "*st. p.*"

p. 423. Fig. 1019: The stroke from *cor* should run vertically downwards.

p. 429. Fig. 1023: The third stroke from *cun* is an error; it points to the process of the second metatarsal.

REESE LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY
OF CALIFORNIA

69864

REESE LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY
OF CALIFORNIA

PREFACE

In spite of its bulk, the present work is strictly adapted to the needs of the beginner. The mode of treatment of the subject is such that no previous knowledge of Zoology is assumed, and students of the first and second years should have no more difficulty in following the accounts of the various groups than is incidental to the first study of a complex and unfamiliar subject.

There can be little doubt that the study of Zoology is most profitably as well as most pleasantly begun in the field and by the sea-shore, in the Zoological Garden and the Aquarium. In a very real sense it is true that the best zoologist is he who knows the most animals, and there can certainly be no better foundation for a strict and scientific study of the subject than a familiarity with the general appearance and habits of the common members of the principal animal classes. But Zoology as a branch of academical study can hardly be pursued on the broad lines of general natural history, and must be content to lose a little in breadth of view—at least in its earlier stages—while insisting upon accurate observation, comparison, and induction, within the limited field of Laboratory and Museum work.

A not uncommon method of expounding the science of Zoology is to begin the study of a given group by a definition the very terms of which it is impossible that the student should understand; then to take a general survey of the group, illustrated by casual references to animals and to structures of which it is highly unlikely he has ever heard; and, finally, to descend to a survey of the more important forms included in the group. It will probably be generally agreed that, from the teacher's point of view. this method begins at the wrong end, and is hardly more rational than it would be to deliver a course on the general characteristics of English Literature, suitably illustrated by "elegant extracts," to a class of students who had never read a single English poet or essayist.

There can be no question as to the vast improvement effected in zoological teaching by the practice of preceding the study of a given group as a whole by the accurate examination of a suitable member of it. With the clear mental image of a particular animal, in the totality of its organisation, the comparison of the parts and organs of other animals of like build becomes a profitable study, and the danger of the comparative method—that the student may learn a great deal of the systems of organs in a group without getting a clear conception of a single animal belonging to it—is much diminished.

The method of "types" has, however, its own dangers. Students are, in their way, great generalisers, and, unless carefully looked after, are quite sure to take the type for the class, and to consider all Arthropods but crayfishes and cockroaches, and all Molluscs but mussels and snails, as non-typical. For this reason a course of Zoology which confines itself entirely or largely to "types," or, as we prefer to call them,[1] examples, is certain to be a singularly narrow and barren affair, and to leave the student with the vaguest and most erroneous ideas of the animal kingdom as a whole. This is especially the case when the number of examples is small, each of the Phyla being represented by only one or two forms.

In our opinion every group which cannot readily and intelligibly be described in terms of some other group should be represented, in an elementary course of Zoology, by an example. We have, therefore, in the majority of cases, described, in some detail, an example of every important class, and, in cases where the diversity of organisation is very great—as in Crustacea and Fishes—two or more examples are taken. The student is thus furnished with a brief account of at least one member—usually readily accessible—of all the principal groups of animals.

By the time the example has been studied, a definition of the class and of its orders will convey some idea to the mind, and will serve to show which of the characters already met with are of distinctive importance, and which special to the example itself. In order to bring out this point more clearly, to furnish a connection between the account of the example and that of the class as a whole, and to give some idea of the meaning of specific, generic, and family characters, we have introduced, after the classification, a paragraph giving the systematic position of the example, sometimes in more, sometimes in less detail.

---

[1] Following a suggestion for which we are indebted to Dr. Alexander Hill, Master of Downing College, Cambridge.

Following the table of classification with its brief definitions comes the general account of the group. This is usually treated according to the comparative method, the leading modifications of the various parts and organs being described *seriatim*. In a few cases this plan has been abandoned and the class described order by order, but this is done only when the deviations from the type are so considerable as to lead us to think the comparative method unsuitable for beginners. On the other hand, when all the classes of the phylum present a very uniform type of structure, the phylum is studied comparatively as a whole. The description of each group usually ends with some account of its ethology and distribution, and with a discussion of its affinities and of the mutual relationships of its various sub-divisions.

We have done our best to make the space devoted to each group proportional to its complexity and range of variation, and to subdue the natural tendency to devote most attention to the more recently investigated classes, or to those in which we ourselves happen to be especially interested. A few lesser groups have been put into small type, partly to economise space, partly because they seem to us to be of minor importance to the beginner.

Following out the plan of deferring the discussion of general questions until the facts with which they are connected have been brought forward, we have placed the sections on Distribution, on the Philosophy of Zoology, and on the History of Zoology at the end of the book. We have, however, placed a general account of the structure and physiology of animals immediately after the Introduction, and one on the Craniate Vertebrata before the description of the classes of that division, but it will be obvious that these deviations from the strictly inductive method were inevitable in order to avoid much needless repetition.

After a good deal of consideration we have decided to omit all references to the literature of the subject in the body of the work. Anything like consistent historical treatment would be out of place in an elementary book; and the introduction of casual references to particular discoveries, while they might interest the more advanced reader by giving a kind of personal colouring to the subject, could hardly fail, from their necessarily limited character, to be misleading to the beginner, and to increase rather than diminish his difficulties. We have, therefore, postponed all reference to the history of the science to the concluding Section, in which the main lines of progress are set forth, and have given, as an Appendix, a guide to the modern literature of Zoology. The latter is intended merely to indicate the next step to be taken by the student who wishes to acquire something more than a mere text-book knowledge.[1]

The various Sections have been written by the authors in fairly equal proportions, but the work of each has been carefully read and criticised by the other, and no disputed point has been allowed to stand without thorough discussion. We are, therefore, jointly and severally responsible for the whole work.

A very large proportion of the figures have been specially drawn and engraved for the book. Those in which no source is named are from our own drawings, with the exception of Figs. 571, 572, 1017, 1018, 1019, 1022, 1059, 1063, and 1071, for which we are indebted to Mrs. W. A. Haswell. Figs. 1002 *bis*, 1005 *bis*, are from photographs kindly taken for us by Mr. A. Hamilton. Many blocks have been borrowed from well-known works, to the authors and publishers of which we beg to return our sincere acknowledgments. All the new figures have been drawn by Mr. M. P. Parker.

We have received generous assistance from Professors Arthur Dendy, G. B. Howes, Baldwin Spencer, and J. T. Wilson, and from

---

[1] In this connection we cannot resist the pleasure of quoting two passages, exactly expressing our own views, from the preface to Dr. Waller's *Human Physiology*, which came under our notice after the above paragraph was in type:—"I have given a Bibliography after some hesitation, feeling that references to original papers are of no use to junior students, and must be too imperfect to be satisfactory to more advanced students. . . . Attention has been paid to recent work, but I have felt that the gradually-formed deposit of accepted knowledge must be of greater intrinsic value than the latest 'discovery' or the newest theory. An early mental diet in which these items are predominant is an unwholesome diet; their function in elementary instruction is that of condiments, valuable only in conjunction with a foundation of solid food."

Mr. J. P. Hill and Dr. Arthur Willey. Professor W. N. Parker has very kindly read the whole of the proof-sheets and favoured us with many valuable suggestions, besides acting as referee in numerous minor difficulties which would otherwise have cost a delay of many weeks.

It is a mere truism to say that a text-book can never really reflect the existing state of the science of which it treats, but must necessarily be to some extent out of date at the time of publication. In the present instance, the revises of the earlier pages, giving the last opportunity for any but minor alterations, were corrected in the latter part of 1895, and the sheets passed for press in the middle of 1896. We are, therefore, fully alive to the fact that much of our work already needs a thorough revision, and can console ourselves only by reflecting that "to travel hopefully is a better thing than to arrive, and the true success is to labour."

We may mention, in conclusion, that, whatever may be the merits or demerits of the book, it enjoys the distinction of being unique in one respect. The two authors have been separated from one another, during the greater part of their collaboration, by a distance of 1200 miles, and the manuscript, proofs, and drawings have had to traverse half the circumference of the globe in their journeys between the authors on the one hand, and the publishers, printers, artist, and engravers on the other. It will, therefore, be readily believed that all persons concerned have had every opportunity, during the progress of the work, of exercising the supreme virtue of patience.

REESE LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY
OF CALIFORNIA

CONTENTS

PAGE
PREFACE v
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS IN VOL. I. xvii
TABLE OF THE CLASSIFICATION OF THE ANIMAL KINGDOM . . . xxxi
INTRODUCTION 1

SECTION I

THE GENERAL STRUCTURE AND PHYSIOLOGY OF ANIMALS 10
1. Amœba 10
2. The Animal Cell 14
3. The Ovum: Maturation, Impregnation, and Segmentation: the Germinal Layers 18
4. Tissues 21
5. Organs 29
6. The Reproduction of Animals 38
7. Symmetry 39
8. The Primary subdivisions or Phyla of the Animal Kingdom . . 41

SECTION II

PHYLUM PROTOZOA 43
Class I. **Rhizopoda** 44
1. Example of the Class—*Amœba proteus* 44
2. Classification and General Organisation 45
Systematic position of the Example 46
Class II. **Mycetozoa** 61
1. Example of the Class—*Didymium difforme* 61
2. General Remarks 63
Class III. **Mastigophora** 63
1. Example of the Class—*Euglena viridis* 63
2. Classification and General Organisation 65
Systematic Position of the Example 65
Class IV. **Sporozoa** 75
1. Example of the Class—*Monocystis agilis* 75
2. Classification and General Organisation 76

SECTION IX

PAGE

Phylum Echinodermata 346
- 1. Examples of the Phylum 346
  - i. *Asterias rubens* and *Anthenea flavescens* 346
  - ii. *Strongylocentrotus* or *Echinus* 363
  - iii. *Cucumaria* or *Colochirus* 369
  - iv. *Antedon rosacea* 373
- 2. Distinctive Characters and Classification 377
  - Systematic Position of the Examples 380
- 3. General Organisation 381

SECTION X

Phylum Annulata 403
- Class I. **Chætopoda** 403
  - 1. Examples of the Class 404
    - i. *Nereis dumerilii* 404
    - ii. *Lumbricus* 417
  - 2. Distinctive Characters and Classification 426
    - Systematic Position of the Examples 428
  - 3. General Organisation 429
    - Appendix to Chætopoda—Class **Myzostomida** 448
- Class II. **Gephyrea** 450
  - 1. Example of the Class—*Sipunculus nudus* 451
  - 2. Distinctive Characters and Classification 454
    - Systematic Position of the Example 455
  - 3. General Organisation 455
- Class III. **Archi-annelida** 462
- Class IV. **Hirudinea** 465
  - 1. Examples of the Class—*Hirudo medicinalis* and *H. quinquestriata* 465
  - 2. Distinctive Characters and Classification 474
    - Systematic Position of the Examples 476
  - 3. General Organisation 476
    - General Remarks on the Annulata 481

SECTION XI

Phylum Arthropoda 484
- Class I. **Crustacea** 484
  - 1. Examples of the Class 484
    - i. *Apus* or *Lepidurus* 484
    - ii. *Astacus fluviatilis* 498
  - 2. Distinctive Characters and Classification 519
    - Systematic Position of the Examples 524
  - 3. General Organisation 525
    - Appendix to Crustacea—Class **Trilobita** 558
- Class II. **Onychophora** 559
- Class III. **Myriapoda** 566
  - 1. Distinctive Characters and Classification 566
  - 2. General Organisation 567

PAGE

PHYLUM ARTHROPODA—*continued.*
Class IV. **Insecta** . . . 571
1. Example of the Class—*Periplaneta americana* . . . 571
2. Distinctive Characters and Classification . . . 583
Systematic Position of the Example . . . 587
3. General Organisation . . . 588
Class V. **Arachnida** . . . 604
1. Example of the Class—*Euscorpio* or *Buthus* . . . 604
2. Distinctive Characters and Classification . . . 611
3. General Organisation . . . 613
Appendix to the Arachnida—the *Pycnogonida*, *Linguatulida*, and *Tardigrada* . . . 624
Relationships of the air-breathing Arthropoda . . . 627

SECTION XII

PHYLUM MOLLUSCA . . . 631
Class I. **Pelecypoda** . . . 631
1. Examples of the Class—*Anodonta* and *Unio* . . . 631
2. Distinctive Characters and Classification . . . 645
Systematic Position of the Examples . . . 647
3. General Organisation . . . 647
Class II. **Amphineura** . . . 663
1. Distinctive Characters and Classification . . . 663
2. General Organisation . . . 663
Class III. **Gastropoda** . . . 671
1. Example of the Class—*Triton nodiferus* . . . 671
2. Distinctive Characters and Classification . . . 682
Systematic Position of the Example . . . 685
3. General Organisation . . . 685
Appendix to the Gastropoda—
A. Class **Scaphopoda** . . . 705
B. **Rhodope** . . . 707
Class IV. **Cephalopoda** . . . 708
1. Examples of the Class . . . 708
i. *Sepia cultrata* . . . 708
ii. *Nautilus pompilius* . . . 725
2. Distinctive Characters and Classification . . . 736
Systematic Position of the Examples . . . 737
3. General Organisation . . . 737
General Remarks on the Mollusca . . . 751

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

FIG.		PAGE
1.	Amœba proteus	10
2.	Amœba polypodia, fission	13
3.	Diagrams illustrating Karyokinesis	17
4.	Ovum of Sea-urchin	18
5.	Maturation and fertilisation of ovum	19
6.	Segmentation of ovum	20
7.	Gastrula	21
8.	Various forms of epithelium	22
9.	Diagram to illustrate structure of glands	23
10.	Gelatinous connective tissue	24
11.	Reticular connective tissue	24
12.	Fatty tissue	25
13.	Hyaline cartilage	25
14.	Fibro-cartilage	25
15.	Bone	26
16.	Unstriped Muscle	27
17.	Striped Muscle	27
18.	Nerve cells	28
19.	Nerve fibres	28
20.	Various forms of spermatozoa	28
21.	Viscera of Frog	31
22.	Bones of human arm with biceps muscle	35
23.	Nervous system of Frog	36
24.	Hydra	39
25.	Diagram of axes of body	40
26.	Radial symmetry	40
27.	Amœba, various species	45
28.	Protamœba primitiva	47
29.	Quadrula, Hyalosphenia, Arcella, and Difflugia	47
30.	Chlamydomyxa labyrinthuloides	48
31.	Labyrinthula vitellina	49
32.	Microgromia socialis	50
33.	Platöum stercoreum	51
34.	Various forms of Foraminifera	52
35.	Shells of Foraminifera	53
36.	Hastigerina murrayi	54

FIG. PAGE
37. Actinophrys sol 55
38. Actinosphærium eichhornii 56
39. Various forms of Heliozoa 57
40. Lithocircus annularis 58
41. Thalassoplancta brevispicula 59
42. Aulactinium actinastrum 60
43. Actinomma asteracanthion 60
44. Collozoum inerme 61
45. Didymium difforme 62
46. Euglena viridis 64
47. Various forms of Flagellata 66
48. Hæmatococcus pluvialis 68
49. Pandorina morum 69
50. Volvox globator 70
51. Heteromita rostrata 71
52. Various forms of Choanoflagellata 72
53. Various forms of Dinoflagellata 74
54. Noctiluca miliaris 74
55. Monocystis agilis 75
56. Gregarina 77
57. Eimeria and Coccidium 78
58. Myxidium and Myxobolus 78
59. Sarcocystis miescheri 79
60. Paramœcium caudatum 80
61. ,, ,, conjugation 81
62. Various forms of Ciliata 85
63. ,, ,, ... 86
64. Vorticella 87
65. Zoothamnium arbuscula 88
66. Opalina ranarum 89
67. Various forms of Tentaculifera 91
68. Diagram showing the mutual relationships of the Protozoa . . 94
69. Sycon gelatinosum 97
70. ,, ,, magnified 97
71. ,, ,, transverse section 98
72. ,, ,, vertical section 99
73. ,, ,, pore membrane 100
74. ,, ,, apopyle 100
75. External form of various Sponges 106
76. Ascetta primordialis 107
77. Diagrams of canal system of various Sponges 108
78. Vertical Section of Spongilla 109
79. Cells of ectoderm of Sponge 110
80. Skeleton of various Sponges 111
81. Various forms of Sponge Spicules 112
82. Development of Sycon raphanus 114
83. Obelia 120
84. ,, vertical section of polype 122
85. Nematocysts of Hydra 123

FIG. PAGE
86. Tentacle of Eucopella 124
87. Obelia, medusa 125
88. Diagram of medusa 126
89. Derivation of medusa from polype 127
90. Projections of polype and medusa 128
91. Development of zoophyte 130
92. Bougainvillea ramosa 134
93. Various forms of Leptolinæ 135
94. Hydra 136
95. Protohydra leuckartii 137
96. Various forms of leptoline Medusæ 139
97. Diagram illustrating formation of sporosac by degeneration of medusa 140
98. Early development of Eucope 141
99. Two Trachymedusæ 142
100. Two Narcomedusæ 143
101. Æginura, tentaculocyst 143
102. Larva of Æginopsis 144
103. Millepora alcicornis, skeleton 145
104. Millepora, diagram of structure 146
105. Stylaster sanguineus, skeleton 147
106. Halistemma tergestinum 148
107. Diagram of a Siphonophore 150
108. Development of Halistemma 151
109. Physalia 152
110. Diphyes campanulata 153
111. Porpita pacifica 154
112. Graptolites 155
113. Aurelia aurita, dorsal and ventral views 157
114. ,, ,, side view and vertical section 159
115. ,, ,, portion of umbrella with tentaculocyst 160
116. ,, ,, development 162
117. Tessera princeps 165
118. Lucernaria 166
119. Pericolpa quadrigata 167
120. Charybdæa marsupialis 168
121. Nausithöe 169
122. Pilema pulmo 170
123. Pelägia noctiluca, development 171
124. Tealia crassicornis, dissection and transverse section 173
125. Diagrammatic sections of Sea-anemone 175
126. Tealia crassicornis, section of tentacle 177
127. Nematocysts of Sagartia 177
128. Section of mesenteric filament of Sagartia 178
129. Transverse sections of embryos of Actinia 180
130. Zoanthus sociatus 184
131. Hartea elegans 184
132. Corallium rubrum 185
133. Astræa pallida 185

FIG. PAGE
134. Pennatula sulcata 186
135. Tubipora musica. 186
136. Edwardsia claparèdii 187
137. Cirripathes anguina 188
138. Fenja mirabilis 189
139. Minyas 189
140. Alcyonium palmatum 190
141. Gorgonia verrucosa 191
142. Structure of simple coral 193
143. Dendrophyllia and Madrepora 194
144. Adamsia palliata 196
145. Hormiphora plumosa 198
146. ,, ,, dissection and transverse section 199
147. ,, ,, diagrammatic sections 201
148. ,, ,, section of branch of tentacle 202
149. ,, ,, sense-organ 203
150. Ovum of Lampetia 204
151. Segmentation of oosperm in Ctenophora 204
152. Development of Ctenophora 205
153. Development of Callianira 206
154. ,, ,, (later stages) 206
155. Three Cydippida 209
156. Deiopea kaloknenota 210
157. Cestus veneris 210
158. Beröe forskälii 211
159. Ctenoplana kowalevskii 212
160. Sections of embryos of Actinia and Beröe 214
161. Diagram illustrating the mutual relationships of the Cœlenterata . 215
162. Dicyema paradoxum with infusoriform embryos 217
163. ,, ,, ,, vermiform ,, ... 217
164. ,, ,, embryo 218
165. Rhopalura giardii, male 218
166. ,, ,, female 218
167. ,, ,, development 219
168. Salinella, longitudinal section 219
169. ,, transverse ,, ... 219
170. Trichoplax adhærens 220
171. Planaria, digestive and excretory systems 223
172. ,, nervous system 223
173. ,, reproductive system 225
174. Transverse section of a Planarian 226
175. Distomum hepaticum 226
176. ,, ,, section of integument 227
177. ,, ,, internal organisation 228
178. ,, ,, terminal part of reproductive apparatus . 229
179. ,, ,, development 230
180. Tænia solium 232
181. ,, ,, head 233
182. ,, ,, transverse section 233

FIG. PAGE
183. Tænia solium, proglottis . . . 234
184. ,, ,, ripe proglottis . . . 236
185. ,, ,, development . . . 236
186. Various Planarians . . . 240
187. Gunda segmentata . . . 241
188. Digenetic Trematodes . . . 242
189. Gyrodactylus and Polystomum . . . 243
190. Temnocephala . . . 244
191. Actinodactylella . . . 245
192. Tetrarhynchus . . . 246
193. Tænia echinococcus . . . 246
194. Ligula . . . 247
195. Caryophyllæus . . . 247
196. Amphiptyches . . . 247
197. Archigetes . . . 247
198. Section of body-wall of a Triclad . . . 248
199. Parenchyma of Flat-worm . . . 249
200. Diagram of Rhabdocœle . . . 251
201. ,, ,, Polyclad . . . 251
202. ,, ,, Triclad . . . 252
203. Flame-cell . . . 253
204. Reproductive organs of Mesostomum ehrenbergii . . . 256
205. Development of a Polyclad . . . 257
206. Müller's larva . . . 258
207. A Cysticercoid . . . 260
208. ,, with head evaginated . . . 261
209. Cyst of Tænia echinococcus . . . 262
210. Scolices ,, ,, . . . 262
211. Scolex ,, ,, . . . 262
212. Process of budding in Microstomum . . . 263
213. Diagram of the relationships of the Platyhelminthes and Nemertinea . . . 267
214. Diagram of Nemertine . . . 268
215. Tetrastemma . . . 269
216. Anterior portion of Nemertine . . . 270
217. Proboscis of Hoplonemertean, retracted . . . 270
218. ,, ,, everted . . . 270
219. Transverse section of Nemertine . . . 271
220. Vascular and excretory systems of Nemertine . . . 271
221. Pilidium . . . 272
222. Ascaris lumbricoides . . . 276
223. ,, ,, transverse section . . . 277
224. ,, ,, muscle fibres . . . 278
225. ,, ,, dissection of female . . . 279
226. Nervous system of Nematoda . . . 280
227. Ascaris lumbricoides, dissection of male organs . . . 281
228. Body-wall of platymyarian Nematode . . . 283
229. Dochmius duodenalis . . . 284
230. Transverse section of Gordius . . . 284

FIG. PAGE

231. Oxyuris 285
232. Gordius, anatomy 286
233. Development of Ascaris nigrovenosa 287
234. Trichina spiralis 288
235. Two species of Echinorhynchus 290
236. Echinorhynchus gigas, dissection of male 291
237. ,, ,, ,, female 291
238. ,, ,, female organs 292
239. Sagitta hexaptera 293
240. ,, bipunctata, transverse sections 294
241. ,, ,, head 294
242. ,, hexaptera, eye 295
243. Development of Sagitta 295
244. A trochosphere 298
245. Brachionus rubens, female 300
246. ,, ,, pharynx 301
247. ,, ,, male and female, with attached eggs 302
248. Diagram of a Rotifer 303
249. Typical forms of Rotifera 305
250. ,, ,, ,, ... 307
251. ,, ,, mastax 308
252. Dinophilus gyrociliatus 310
253. Chætonotus maximus 311
254. ,, ,, anatomy 311
255. Bugula avicularia 315
256. Development of Bugula 317
257. ,, ,, ... 318
258. Plumatella 322
258 *bis.* Cristatella 323
259. Lophopus 324
260. Pedicellina 327
261. Phoronis australis 328
262. ,, ,, free end 329
263. ,, ,, internal organisation 329
264. ,, ,, development 330
265. Magellania flavescens, shell 332
266. ,, lenticularis, anatomy 334
267. ,, flavescens, lophophore 335
268. ,, muscular system 335
269. Terebratula, nervous system, &c. 336
270. Typical Brachiopods 339
271. ,, ,, anatomy 340
272. Development of Cistella 341
273. ,, ,, ... 342
274. Lophophore of embryo Brachiopod 343
275. Diagrams of phylactolæmatous Polyzoons 344
276. Starfish, ventral aspect 347
277. ,, vertical section of arm 349
278. ,, ambulacral system 350

FIG. PAGE
279. Starfish, portion of vertical section of arm . . . 351
280. ,, diagrammatic sections . . . 352
281. Asterias rubens, digestive system . . . 353
282. Astropecten, section of stone-canal . . . 354
283. Anthenea flavescens, dissection from dorsal aspect . . . 355
284. ,, ,, lateral dissection . . . 356
285. ,, ,, dorsal surface . . . 357
286. ,, ,, ventral surface . . . 357
287. Asterina gibbosa, development . . . 359
288. ,, ,, ,, . . . 360
289. ,, ,, bipinnaria . . . 360
290. ,, ,, ,, . . . 361
291. ,, exigua, young after metamorphosis . . . 361
292. Apical system of young Starfish . . . 362
293. Strongylocentrotus . . . 364
294. Corona of Sea-urchin . . . 365
295. Apical disc of Sea-urchin . . . 365
296. Echinus, lantern of Aristotle . . . 366
297. Sea-urchin, anatomy, lateral view . . . 367
298. ,, ,, oral view . . . 368
299. Cucumaria planci . . . 369
300. Anatomy of a Holothurian . . . 371
301. Antedon . . . 373
302. ,, disc . . . 374
303. ,, transverse section of pinnule . . . 375
304. ,, sagittal section . . . 376
305. Anthenea, ventral view . . . 385
306. Ophioglypha lacertosa . . . 386
307. Astrophyton arborescens . . . 387
308. Strongylocentrotus . . . 388
309. Diagram of spine of Sea-urchin . . . 389
310. Pedicellaria of Arbacia punctulata . . . 389
311. Hemipneustes radiatus . . . 390
312. Clypeaster sub-depressus . . . 390
313. Antedon . . . 391
314. Metacrinus interruptus . . . 392
315. Development of Echinoderms . . . 397
316. ,, ,, Antedon . . . 398
317. Diagram to illustrate the relationships of the classes of Echinodermata . . . 402
318. Nereis dumerilii . . . 404
319. ,, ,, parapodium . . . 405
320. ,, ,, setæ . . . 405
321. ,, ,, anatomy . . . 407
322. ,, ,, transverse section . . . 408
323. ,, nervous system . . . 410
324. ,, eye . . . 411
325. ,, dumerilii, nephridium . . . 412
326. ,, development . . . 414

FIG. PAGE
327. Nereis development . . . 415
328. Lumbricus agricola . . . 418
329. ,, setæ . . . 419
330. ,, transverse section . . . 419
331. ,, herculeus, sagittal section . . . 420
332. ,, nervous system . . . 422
333. ,, nephridium . . . 423
334. ,, agricola, reproductive organs . . . 424
335. ,, development . . . 426
336. Polynöe setosissima . . . 429
337. Vermilia cœspitosa . . . 430
338. Setæ of various Polychæta . . . 431
339. Section of setigerous sac of an Oligochæte . . . 431
340. Polynöe extenuata, anterior end . . . 432
341. Tubifex . . . 433
342. Terebella . . . 434
343. Aphrodita, enteric canal . . . 436
344. Saccocirrus, transverse section . . . 438
345. Diagram illustrating development of gonad of Polychæta . . . 441
346. Spirorbis lævis . . . 444
347. Eupomatus, development of trochosphere . . . 445
348. Autolytus cornutus, budding . . . 446
349. Serpulæ with their tubes . . . 447
350. Myzostomum . . . 449
351. ,, anatomy . . . 450
352. Sipunculus nudus, anterior extremity . . . 451
353. ,, ,, tentacular fold . . . 452
354. ,, ,, anatomy . . . 453
355. ,, ,, nervous system . . . 453
356. Bonellia viridis, female . . . 456
357. Echiurus . . . 456
358. Priapulus . . . 457
359. Bonellia, anatomy . . . 458
360. Echiurus, ciliated funnel . . . 458
361. ,, anatomy . . . 459
362. ,, nervous system . . . 459
363. Bonellia, male . . . 460
364. Echiurus, trochosphere . . . 460
365. Polygordius neapolitanus . . . 462
366. Protodrilus . . . 463
367. Polygordius neapolitanus, transverse section . . . 463
368. ,, ,, trochosphere . . . 464
369. ,, ,, ,, later stage . . . 464
370. Hirudo medicinalis . . . 466
371. ,, ,, transverse section . . . 468
372. ,, ,, jaw . . . 468
373. ,, quinquestriata, dissection from dorsal aspect . . . 469
374. ,, ,, ,, ,, left side . . . 470
375. ,, medicinalis, nephridium . . . 471

FIG. PAGE
376. Hirudo, diagram of blood-channels 472
377. ,, section of eye 473
378. ,, cocoon 474
379. Three Rhynchobdellida 475
380. Proboscis of Clepsine 477
381. Transverse sections of three Leeches 478
382. Pontobdella, nephridial system 479
383. Clepsine, development 479
384. Diagram of origin of metamerism 482
385. Diagram illustrating the relationships of the Annulata and Trochelminthes 483
386. Apus cancriformis, dorsal aspect 485
387. Lepidurus kirkii, side view 486
388. Apus glacialis, ventral aspect 487
389. ,, appendages 488
390. Lepidurus kirkii, sagittal section 490
391. Apus, transverse section 492
392. ,, shell-gland 493
393. ,, cancriformis, nervous system 494
394. ,, structure of paired eye 495
395. ,, development 496
396. Astacus fluviatilis, male 499
397. ,, ,, appendages 501
398. ,, ,, articulations and muscles of leg 503
399. Section of skin and exoskeleton of Lobster 504
400. Articulations and muscles of abdomen of Crayfish 505
401. Astacus fluviatilis, dissection from right side 506
402. ,, ,, gills 508
403. ,, ,, kidney 510
404. ,, ,, transverse section of thorax 511
405. ,, ,, diagram of circulation 512
406. ,, ,, nervous system 513
407. ,, ,, reproductive organs 515
408. ,, ,, formation of the blastoderm 515
409. ,, ,, early embryo 516
410. ,, ,, nauplius 517
411. ,, ,, section of embryo 518
412. ,, ,, advanced embryo 519
413. Three Euphyllopoda 526
414. ,, Cladocera 527
415. Cypris 528
416. Cyclops and Calocalanus 529
417. Various forms of parasitic Eucopepoda 531
418. Argulus foliaceus 532
419. Lepas anatifera 533
420. Balanus 534
421. Sacculina carcini 535
422. Nebalia geoffroyi 536
423. Mysis oculata 537

REESE LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

FIG. PAGE
424. Shrimp and Prawn 538
425. Scyllarus arctus 539
426. Pagurus bernhardus 539
427. Cancer pagurus 540
428. Typical Brachyura 541
429. Squilla 542
430. Diastylis stygia 543
431. Gammarus neglectus 544
432. Asellus aquaticus 545
433. Various Amphipoda 546
434. ,, Isopoda 546
435. Orchestia cavimana, anatomy 548
436. Euphausia pellucida 549
437. Nervous system of Crab 550
438. Cypris-stage of Lepas 552
439. Larvæ of Crabs 554
440. Diagram illustrating the mutual relationships of the orders of Crustacea 557
441. Dalmanites and Phacops 558
441 *bis.* Triarthrus beckii 559
442. Peripatus capensis 560
443. ,, ,, ventral view of head 560
444. ,, anatomy 561
445. ,, edwardsii, nephridium 563
446. ,, novæzealandiæ, development 564
447. ,, capensis ,, ... 565
448. Scolopendrella immaculata 567
449. Scolopendra 568
450. Lithobius forficatus 568
451. Pauropus huxleyi 569
452. Strongylostoma, development 570
453. Periplaneta americana 572
454. ,, mouth-parts 573
455. ,, americana, lateral view of head 573
456. ,, muscular system 575
457. ,, anatomy 576
458. ,, salivary glands 577
459. Trachea of caterpillar 577
460. Periplaneta, tracheal system 578
461. ,, nervous system 578
462. ,, male reproductive organs 579
463. ,, female reproductive organs 579
464. Segmentation of ovum of Insect 580
465. Ventral plate of embryo Cockroach 581
466. Germinal layers and amnion of Insect 582
467. Lepisma 583
468. Podura 584
469. Locusta 584
470. Ephemera 584

FIG. PAGE
471. Aphis rosæ . . . 585
472. Cicada . . . 585
473. Pulex and larva . . . 586
474. Gastrophilus equi . . . 586
475. Pieris . . . 586
476. Crioceris . . . 587
477. Section of integument of Insect . . . 588
478. Mouth-parts of Honey-bee . . . 589
479. ,, ,, Diptera . . . 590
480. ,, ,, Lepidoptera . . . 591
481. Digestive organs of Beetle . . . 592
482. Nervous, tracheal, and digestive systems of the Honey-bee . . . 593
483. Tracheal gills of Ephemerid . . . 594
484. Heart of Cockchafer . . . 594
485. Nervous system of Diptera . . . 595
486. Ocellus of Dytiscus larva . . . 596
487. Chordotonal organ of Isopteryx . . . 597
488. Sexual apparatus of Honey-bee . . . 598
489. Segmentation of ovum of Insect . . . 599
490. Germinal layers and amnion of Insect . . . 600
491. Development of Hydrophilus . . . 601
492. ,, ,, . . . 601
493. Apis mellifica, queen, worker, and drone . . . 603
494. Formica rufa . . . 603
495. Euscorpio . . . 605
496. Ventral surface of cephalothorax and præ-abdomen of Scorpion . 605
497. Endosternite of Scorpion . . . 606
498. Scorpion, anatomy, lateral view . . . 608
499. ,, ,, dorsal ,, . . . 609
500. ,, development . . . 610
501. Embryo of Scorpion . . . 610
502. Chelifer bravaisii . . . 613
503. Phrynus . . . 613
504. Galeodes dastuguei . . . 614
505. Epeira diadema . . . 615
506. ,, ,, cheliceræ and pedipalpi of female . . . 615
507. ,, ,, ,, ,, male . . . 615
508. Sarcoptes scabiæi . . . 616
509. Trombidium fuliginosum . . . 616
510. Limulus . . . 617
511. ,, ventral view . . . 618
512. Eurypterus fischeri . . . 619
513. Anatomy of dipneumonous Spider . . . 620
514. Limulus, sagittal section . . . 621
515. Lung-book of Spider . . . 621
516. Tracheal system of Spider . . . 621
517. Gill-books of Limulus . . . 622
518. Lateral eye of Euscorpius . . . 622
519. Central ,, ,, . . . 623

FIG. PAGE

520. Nymphon hispidum 625
521. Pentastomum tænioides 625
522. Macrobiotus hufelandi 626
523. Diagram to illustrate affinities of Arthropoda 629
524. Anodonta cygnea 632
525. ,, ,, interior of valve and animal removed from shell. 633
526. ,, section of shell and mantle 634
527. ,, cygnea, animal after removal of mantle-lobe . . . 636
528. ,, ,, dissection from left side 637
529. ,, ,, structure of gills 638
530. ,, ,, transverse sections 639
531. ,, diagram of circulation 641
532. ,, otocyst 642
533. ,, early embryo 643
534. ,, later embryos 643
535. ,, advanced embryo 644
536. ,, metamorphosis 645
537. Anatomy of Pecten 648
538. Valves of Mya, Modiola, and Vulsella 649
539. Cardium edule 649
540. Venus gnidia 650
541. Scrobicularia piperata 650
542. Solecurtus strigillatus 651
543. Diagram of concrescence of mantle-lobes 651
544. Requienia and Hippurites 652
545. Teredo navalis 652
546. Aspergillum 653
547. Mytilus edulis 653
548. Nucula nucleus 654
549. Gills of Pelecypoda 655
550. Gill-filaments of Mytilus 656
551. Dissection of Poromya 656
552. Donax, enteric canal 657
553. Diagram of Nucula 657
554. Nervous system and auditory organs of Nucula 658
555. Eye of Pecten 659
556. Development of Ostrea 660
557. Veliger of Ostrea 660
558. Embryos of Cyclas 661
559. Diagram illustrating the mutual relationships of the Pelecypoda . 662
560. Chætoderma nitidulum 664
561. Neomenia carinata 664
562. Chiton spinosus, dorsal view 665
563. ,, ventral view 665
564. ,, valves of shell 665
565. Chætoderma nitidulum, longitudinal section 666
566. Chiton, longitudinal section 667
567. Nervous system of Amphineura 667
568. Neomenia carinata, reproductive organs 668

FIG. PAGE
569. Chiton, nephridial and genital systems . . . 669
570. ,, development . . . 670
571. Triton nodiferus, shell . . . 672
572. Triton nodiferus, shell, median section . . . 673
573. ,, ,, operculum . . . 674
574. ,, ,, lateral view of body . . . 674
575. ,, ,, diagram of introvert . . . 675
576. ,, ,, dissection from dorsal side . . . 677
577. ,, ,, buccal mass . . . 678
578. ,, ,, vertical section of buccal cavity . . . 678
579. ,, ,, nervous system from dorsal side . . . 680
580. ,, ,, ,, ,, and related parts, lateral view . 681
581. ,, ,, section of eye . . . 682
582. Solarium perspectivum . . . 685
583. Terebra oculata . . . 686
584. Cypræa moneta . . . 687
585. Doris tuberculata . . . 687
586. Carinaria mediterranea . . . 687
587. Limax . . . 687
588. Sigaretus lævigatus . . . 688
589 Aplysia . . . 688
590. Shell-bearing Pteropoda . . . 689
591. Atlanta peronii . . . 689
592. Pterotrachea scutata . . . 690
593. Helix nemoralis . . . 690
594. Pleurophyllidia lineata . . . 691
595. Patella vulgata . . . 691
596. Pulmonary cavity and related parts in Limax . . . 692
597. Nervous system of Patella . . . 693
598. Diagrams of displacement of mantle-cavity, &c. . . . 694
599. Nervous system of Aplysia . . . 695
600. ,, ,, ,, Limnæus . . . 695
601. Eyes of Gastropoda . . . 696
602. Osphradium of Murex . . . 696
603. Reproductive organs of Helix . . . 697
604. Hermaphrodite gland of Gastropoda . . . 698
605. Forms of egg-cases in Gastropoda . . . 699
606. Segmentation and formation of germinal layers in Gastropoda . 700
607. Early development of Patella . . . 701
608. Trochospheres of Patella . . . 702
609. Later trochosphere of Patella . . . 703
610. Veliger of Vermetus . . . 704
611. Diagram illustrating the relationships of the Gastropoda . . 705
612. Dentalium, section of shell . . . 706
613. ,, anatomy . . . 706
614. ,, larvæ . . . 706
614 *bis.* Rhodope . . . 707
615. Sepia cultrata . . . 709
616. ,, sucker . . . 710

FIG. PAGE
617. Sepia, cultrata, shell 711
618. ,, chromatophore 711
619. ,, cultrata, cranial cartilage 712
620. ,, ,, nuchal cartilage 712
621. ,, ,, mantle-cavity 713
622. ,, officinalis, jaws 714
623. ,, section of buccal mass 715
624. ,, officinalis, enteric canal 715
625. ,, cultrata, dissection of male from posterior aspect . . . 716
626. ,, ,, lateral dissection of male 717
627. ,, officinalis, longitudinal section of ink-sac 718
628. ,, cultrata, vascular system 719
629. ,, ,, cephalic ganglia 719
630. ,, ,, pedal and pleuro-visceral ganglia 719
631. ,, section of eye 720
632. ,, cultrata, otolith 721
633. ,, officinalis, renal organs 722
634. ,, ,, diagrammatic sagittal section of female . . . 723
635. ,, male reproductive organs 724
636. ,, sperms and spermatophore 725
637. Nautilus pompilius, section of shell 726
638. ,, ,, female, in shell 727
639. ,, ,, spadix 728
640. ,, ,, cephalic cartilage 729
641. ,, ,, mantle-cavity of male 730
642. ,, ,, dissection of male from left side . . . 731
642 *bis*. ,, ,, arteries 733
643. ,, ,, renal sacs, ctenidia, &c. 733
644. ,, ,, male reproductive organs 735
645. ,, ,, female ,, ,, ... 735
646. Octopus vulgaris 737
647. Loligo vulgaris 738
648. Argonauta argo 739
649. Octopus lentus, male 739
650. Amphitretus pelagicus 740
651. Shell of Spirula 740
652. Spirula peronii 741
653. Ammonite 741
654. Shell of Belemnite 742
655. ,, Argonauta argo 742
656. Segmentation of Loligo 745
657. Blastoderm of Sepia 745
658. ,, ,, sections 746
659. Development of Loligo 747
660. ,, ,, ... 748
661. ,, ,, ... 748
662. ,, ,, ... 749
663. Diagram to illustrate the relationships of the Cephalopoda . . 750

CLASSIFICATION OF THE ANIMAL KINGDOM ADOPTED IN THIS BOOK.

KINGDOM ANIMALIA.

Phylum I. PROTOZOA.

- Class I. **RHIZOPODA.**
  - Order 1. Lobosa.
  - ,, 2. Labyrinthulidea.
  - ,, 3. Foraminifera.
  - ,, 4. Heliozoa.
  - ,, 5. Radiolaria.
- Class II. **MYCETOZOA.**
- Class III. **MASTIGOPHORA.**
  - Order 1. Flagellata.
  - ,, 2. Choanoflagellata.
  - Order 3. Dinoflagellata.
  - ,, 4. Cystoflagellata.
- Class IV. **SPOROZOA.**
  - Order 1. Gregarinida.
  - ,, 2. Coccidiidea.
  - ,, 3. Myxosporidea.
  - ,, 4. Sarcocystidea.
- Class V. **INFUSORIA.**
  - Order 1. Ciliata.
  - ,, 2. Tentaculifera.

Phylum II. PORIFERA.

- Class **PORIFERA.**
  - Sub-class I. **Calcarea.**
    - Order 1. Homocœla.
    - ,, 2. Heterocœla.
  - Sub-class II. **Non-Calcarea.**
    - Tribe I. Myxospongiæ.
    - ,, II. Silicispongiæ.
    - Order 1. Hexactinellida.
    - ,, 2. Desmospongiæ.

Phylum III. CŒLENTERATA.

- Class I. **HYDROZOA.**
  - Order 1. Leptolinæ.
    - Sub-order *a. Anthomedusæ.*
    - ,, *b. Leptomedusæ.*
  - Order 2. Trachylinæ.
    - Sub-order *a. Trachymedusæ.*
    - ,, *b. Narcomedusæ.*
  - Order 3. Hydrocorallina.
  - ,, 4. Siphonophora.
  - ,, 5. Graptolithida.

Phylum III. CŒLENTERATA—*continued.*

- Class II. **SCYPHOZOA.**
  - Order 1. Stauromedusæ.
  - ,, 2. Peromedusæ.
  - ,, 3. Cubomedusæ.
  - ,, 4. Discomedusæ.
- Class III. **ACTINOZOA.**
  - Sub-class I. **Zoantharia.**
    - Order 1. Actiniaria.
    - ,, 2. Madreporaria.
    - ,, 3. Antipatharia.
  - Sub-class II. **Alcyonaria.**
    - Order 1. Alcyonacea.
    - Order 2. Gorgonacea.
    - ,, 3. Pennatulacea.
- Class IV. **CTENOPHORA.**
  - Order 1. Cydippida.
  - ,, 2. Lobata.
  - ,, 3. Cestida.
  - ,, 4. Beroïda.

Appendix to Ctenophora—*Ctenoplana* and *Cœloplana.*

Appendix to Cœlenterata—*Mesozoa, Salinella*, and *Trichoplax.*

Phylum IV. PLATYHELMINTHES.

- Class I. **TURBELLARIA.**
  - Order 1. Polycladida.
  - ,, 2. Tricladida.
  - ,, 3. Rhabdocœlida.
- Class II. **TREMATODA.**
  - Order 1. Monogenetica.
  - ,, 2. Digenetica.
- Class III. **CESTODA.**
  - Order 1. Monozoa.
  - ,, 2. Polyzoa.

Appendix to Platyhelminthes—Class **NEMERTINEA.**

Phylum V. NEMATHELMINTHES.

- Class I. **NEMATODA.**
  - Order 1. Nematoidea.
  - ,, 2. Gordioidea.
- Class II. **ACANTHOCEPHALA.**
- Class III. **CHÆTOGNATHA.**

Appendix to Nemathelminthes—*Chætosomidæ*, *Echinoderidæ*, and *Desmoscolecidæ.*

Phylum VI. TROCHELMINTHES.

- Class I. **ROTIFERA.**
  - Order 1. Rhizota.
  - ,, 2. Bdelloïda.
  - ,, 3. Ploïma.
    - Sub-order *a. Illoricata.*
    - ,, *b. Loricata.*
  - Order 4. Scirtopoda.
  - ,, 5. Trochosphærida.
- Class II. **DINOPHILEA.**
- ,, III. **GASTROTRICHA.**

Phylum VII. MOLLUSCOIDA.

- Class I. **POLYZOA.**
  - Sub-class I. **Ectoprocta.**
    - Order 1. Gymnolæmata.
      - Sub-order *a. Cyclostomata.*
      - ,, *b. Cheilostomata.*
      - ,, *c. Ctenostomata.*
    - Order 2. Phylactolæmata.
  - Sub-class II. **Endoprocta.**
- Class II. **PHORONIDA.**
- ,, III. **BRACHIOPODA.**
  - Order 1. Inarticulata.
  - ,, 2. Articulata.

Phylum VIII. ECHINODERMATA.

- Class I. **ASTEROIDEA.**
  - Order 1. Phanerozonia.
  - ,, 2. Cryptozonia.
- Class II. **OPHIUROIDEA.**
  - Order 1. Ophiurida.
  - ,, 2. Euryalida.
- Class III. **ECHINOIDEA.**
  - Order 1. Palæo-echinoidea.
  - ,, 2. Regularia.
  - ,, 3. Clypeastridea.
  - ,, 4. Spatangoidea.
- Class IV. **HOLOTHUROIDEA.**
  - Order 1. Elasipoda.
  - ,, 2. Pedata.
  - ,, 3. Apoda.
- Class V. **CRINOIDEA.**
  - Order 1. Palæocrinoidea.
  - ,, 2. Neo-Crinoidea.
- Class VI. **CYSTOIDEA.**
- ,, VII. **BLASTOIDEA.**

Phylum IX. ANNULATA.

- Class I. **CHÆTOPODA.**
  - Sub-class I. **Polychæta.**
    - Order 1. Archi-Chætopoda.
    - ,, 2. Errantia.
    - ,, 3. Sedentaria.
  - Sub-class II. **Oligochæta.**
    - Order 1. Naidomorpha.
    - ,, 2. Lumbricomorpha.
  - Appendix to the Chætopoda—Class **MYZOSTOMIDA.**
- Class II. **GEPHYREA.**
  - Order 1. Inermia.
  - ,, 2. Armata.
- Class III. **ARCHI-ANNELIDA.**
- ,, IV. **HIRUDINEA.**
  - Order 1. Rhynchobdellida.
  - ,, 2. Gnathobdellida.

Phylum X. ARTHROPODA.

- Class I. **CRUSTACEA.**
  - Sub-class I. **Entomostraca.**
    - Order 1. Phyllopoda.
      - Sub-order *a. Euphyllopoda.*
      - ,, *b. Cladocera.*
    - Order 2. Ostracoda.
    - ,, 3. Copepoda.
      - Sub-order *a. Eucopepoda.*
      - ,, *b. Branchiura.*
    - Order 4. Cirripedia.
      - Sub-order *a. Eucirripedia.*
      - ,, *b. Rhizocephala.*
  - Sub-class II. **Malacostraca.**
    - Order 1. Phyllocarida.
    - ,, 2. Schizopoda.
    - ,, 3. Decapoda.
      - Sub-order *a. Macrura.*
      - ,, *b. Brachyura.*
    - Order 4. Stomatopoda.
    - ,, 5. Cumacea.
    - Order 6. Arthrostraca.
      - Sub-order *a. Amphipoda.*
      - ,, *b. Isopoda.*
  - Appendix to Crustacea—Class **TRILOBITA.**
- Class II. **ONYCHOPHORA.**
- ,, III. **MYRIAPODA.**
  - Order 1. Symphyla.
  - ,, 2. Chilopoda.
  - ,, 3. Diplopoda.
  - ,, 4. Pauropoda.
- Class IV. **INSECTA.**
  - Order 1. Aptera.
  - ,, 2. Orthoptera.
  - ,, 3. Neuroptera.
  - ,, 4. Hemiptera.
  - ,, 5. Diptera.
  - ,, 6. Lepidoptera.
  - ,, 7. Coleoptera.
  - ,, 8. Hymenoptera.

Phylum X. ARTHROPODA—*continued.*

Class V. **ARACHNIDA**.
Order 1. Scorpionida.
,, 2. Pseudoscorpionida.
,, 3. Pedipalpida.
,, 4. Solpugida.
,, 5. Phalangida.
,, 6. Araneida.
Order 7. Acarida.
,, 8. Xiphosura.
,, 9. Eurypterida.

Appendix to the Arachnida—The Pycnogonida, Linguatulida, and Tardigrada.

Phylum XI. MOLLUSCA.

Class I. **PELECYPODA**.
Order 1. Protobranchia.
,, 2. Filibranchia.
,, 3. Pseudo-lamellibranchia.
,, 4. Eulamellibranchia.
Sub-order *a. Integripalliata.*
,, *b. Sinupalliata.*

Class II. **AMPHINEURA**.
Order 1. Placophora.
,, 2. Aplacophora.

Class III. **GASTROPODA**.
Sub-class I. **Streptoneura**.
Order 1. Aspidobranchia.
Sub-order *a. Docoglossa.*
,, *b. Rhipidoglossa.*
Order 2. Pectinibranchia.
Sub-order *a. Platypoda.*
,, *b. Heteropoda.*
Sub-class II. **Euthyneura**.
Order 1. Opisthobranchia.
Sub-order *a. Tectibranchiata.*
,, *b. Nudibranchiata.*
Order 2. Pulmonata.

Appendix to the Gastropoda—Class **SCAPHOPODA** and **RHODOPE**.

Class IV. **CEPHALOPODA**.
Sub-class I. **Dibranchiata**.
Order 1. Decapoda.
,, 2. Octopoda.
Sub-class II. **Tetrabranchiata**.

Phylum XII. CHORDATA.

Sub-phylum I. ADELOCHORDA.

Class. **ADELOCHORDA**.

Sub-phylum II. UROCHORDA.

Class. **UROCHORDA**
Order 1. Larvacea.
,, 2. Thaliacea.
Sub-order *a. Cyclomyaria.*
,, *b. Hemimyaria.*
,, *c. Pyrosomata.*
Order 2. Ascidiacea.
Sub-order *a. Ascidiæ simplices.*
,, *b. Ascidiæ compositæ.*

Sub-phylum III. VERTEBRATA.

Division A. **Acrania**.

Class. **ACRANIA**.

Division B. **Craniata**.

Class I. **CYCLOSTOMATA**.
Order 1. Petromyzontes.
,, Myxinoidei.

Class II. **PISCES**.
Sub-class I. **Elasmobranchii**.
Order 1. Cladoselachea.
,, 2. Pleuracanthea.
,, 3. Acanthodea.
,, 4. Selachii.
Sub-order *a. Protoselachii.*
,, *b. Euselachii.*
Section α. Squalida.
,, β. Rajida.
Sub-class II. **Holocephali**.
,, III. **Teleostomi**.
Order 1. Crossopterygii.
,, 2. Chondrostei.

PHYLUM XII. CHORDATA—*continued.*

Order 3. HOLOSTEI.
,, 4. TELOSTEI.
  Sub-order *a. Physostomi.*
  ,, *b. Anacanthini.*
  ,, *c. Acanthopteri.*
  ,, *d. Pharyngognathi.*
  ,, *e. Plectognathi.*
  ,, *f. Lophobranchii.*

Sub-class IV. **Dipnoi.**
Order 1. MONOPNEUMONA.
,, 2. DIPNEUMONA.

Appendix to Pisces—The **Ostracodermi.**

Class III. **AMPHIBIA.**
Order 1. URODELA.
,, 2. ANURA.
,, 3. GYMNOPHIONA.
,, 4. STEGOCEPHALA.

Class IV. **REPTILIA.**
Order 1. SQUAMATA.
  Sub-order *a. Lacertilia.*
  ,, *b. Ophidia.*
  ,, *c. Pythonomorpha.*
Order 2. RHYNCHOCEPHALIA.
,, 3. CHELONIA.
,, 4. THEROMORPHA.
,, 5. CROCODILIA.
,, 6. SAUROPTERYGIA.
,, 7. ICHTHYOSAURIA.
,, 8. DINOSAURIA.
,, 9. PTEROSAURIA.

Class V. **AVES.**
Sub-class I. **Archæornithes.**
,, II. **Neornithes.**

Section A. **Ratitæ.**

Order 1. MEGISTANES.
,, 2. RHEÆ.
,, 3. STRUTHIONES.
,, 4. ÆPYORNITHES.
,, 5. GASTORNITHES.

Section B. **Carinatæ.**

Order 1. STEREORNITHES.
,, 2. ODONTOLCÆ.
,, 3. ICHTHYORNITHES.
,, 4. PYGOPODES.
,, 5. IMPENNES.
Order 6. TURBINARES.
,, 7. STEGANOPODES.
,, 8. HERODIONES.
,, 9. ANSERES.
,, 10. ACCIPITRES.
,, 11. CRYPTURI.
,, 12. GALLINÆ.
,, 13. GRALLÆ.
,, 14. GAVIÆ.
,, 15. LIMICOLÆ.
,, 16. PTEROCLETES.
,, 17. COLUMBÆ.
,, 18. PSITTACI.
,, 19. STRIGES.
,, 20. PICARIÆ.
,, 21. PASSERES.

Class VI. **MAMMALIA.**
Sub-class I. **Prototheria.**
,, II. **Theria.**
Section A. **Metatheria** (MARSUPIALIA).
Order 1. POLYPROTODONTIA.
,, 2. DIPROTODONTIA.
Section B. **Eutheria.**
Order 1. EDENTATA.
,, 2. SIRENIA.
,, 3. CETACEA.
,, 4. UNGULATA.

Division A. Ungulata Vera.
  Sub-order *a. Artiodactyla.*
  ,, *b. Perissodactyla.*

Division B. Subungulata.
  Sub-order *a. Hyracoidea.*
  ,, *b. Proboscidea.*
  ,, *c. Amblypoda.*
  ,, *d. Condylarthra.*
  ,, *e. Toxodontia.*
  Group Tillodontia.
Order 5. RODENTIA.
,, 6. CARNIVORA.
  Sub-order *a. Carnivora vera.*
  ,, *b. Pinnipedia.*
  ,, *c. Creodonta.*
Order 7. INSECTIVORA.
,, 8. CHIROPTERA.
,, 9. PRIMATES.
  Sub-order *a. Lemuroidea.*
  ,, *b. Anthropoidea.*

REESE LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

ZOOLOGY

INTRODUCTION

Zoology, the branch of Natural History which deals with animals, is one of the two subdivisions of the great science **Biology,** which takes cognisance of all *organisms,* or things having life, as distinguished from such lifeless natural objects as rocks and minerals. The second of the two subdivisions of Biology is **Botany,** which deals with plants.

The subject-matter of Zoology, then, is furnished by the animals which inhabit the land-surface, the air, and the salt and fresh waters of the globe: the aim of the science is to find out all that can be known of these animals, their structure, their habits, their mutual relationships, their origin.

The first step in the study of Zoology is the recognition of the obvious fact that the innumerable individual animals known to us may be grouped into what are called **species,** the members of which resemble one another so closely that to know one is to know all. The following example may serve to give the reader a fairly accurate notion of what Zoologists understand by species, and of the method of naming species which has been in use since the time of the great Swedish naturalist Linnæus.

The Domestic Cat, the European Wild Cat, the Ocelot, the Leopard, the Tiger, and the Lion are animals which agree with one another in the general features of their organisation—in the number and form of their bones and teeth, in the possession of retractile claws, and in the position and characters of their internal organs. No one can fail to see that these animals, in spite of differences of size, colour, markings, &c., are all, in the broad sense of the word, "Cats." This is expressed in the language of systematic Zoology by saying that they are so many **species** of a single **genus**.

According to the system of *binomial nomenclature* introduced by Linnæus, each kind of animal receives two names—one the *generic* *name*, common to all species of the genus; the other the *specific name*, peculiar to the species in question. Both generic and specific names are Latin in form, and are commonly Latin or Greek in origin, although frequently modern names of persons or places, with Latinised terminations, are employed. In giving the name of an animal, the generic name is always placed first, and is written with a capital letter, the specific name following it, and being written, as a rule, with a small letter. For instance, to take the examples already referred to, the Domestic Cat is called *Felis domestica*, the European Wild Cat *F. catus*, the Leopard *F. pardus*, the Tiger *F. tigris*, the Lion *F. leo*. Thus the systematic name of an animal is something more than a mere appellation, since it indicates the affinity of the species with other members of the same genus: to name an animal is, in fact, to classify it.

It is a matter of common observation that no two individuals of a species are ever exactly alike: two tabby Cats, for instance, however they may resemble one another in the general characters of their colour and markings, invariably present differences in detail by which they can be readily distinguished. *Individual variations* of this kind are of universal occurrence. Moreover, it often happens that the members of a species are divisible into groups distinguishable by fairly constant characters: among Domestic Cats, for instance, we find white, black, tabby, gray, and tortoiseshell Cats, besides the large long-haired Persian breed, and the tailless Manx Cat. All these are distinguished as *varieties* of the single species *Felis domestica*.

It is often difficult to decide whether two kinds of animals should be considered as distinct species or as varieties of a single species, and no universal rule can be given for determining this point. Among the higher animals mutual fertility is a fair practical test, the varieties of a species usually breeding freely with one another and producing fertile offspring, while distinct species either do not breed together or produce infertile *hybrids* or mules. Compare, for instance, the fertile mongrels produced by the union of the various breeds of Domestic Dog with the infertile mule produced by the union of the Horse and Ass. But this rule is not without exception, and in the case of wild animals is, more often than not, impossible of application: failing it, the only criterion of a "good species" is usually the presence of constant differences from allied species. Suppose, for instance, that a naturalist receives for description a number of skins of wild Cats, and finds, after an accurate examination, that in some specimens the tail is two-thirds the length of the body and the skin of a uniform reddish tint with a few markings on the head, while in the rest the tail is nearly half as long as the body, and the skin tawny with black stripes. If there are no intermediate gradations between these two sets of individuals, they will be placed without hesitation in distinct species: if, on the other hand, there is a complete series of gradations between them, they will be considered to form a single variable species.

As, therefore, animals have to be distinguished from one another largely by structural characters, it is evident that the foundations of a scientific Zoology must be laid in **Morphology**, the branch of science which deals with form and structure. Morphology may be said to begin with an accurate examination of the external characters; the divisions of the body, the number and position of the limbs, the characters of the skin, the position and relations of the mouth, eyes, ears, and other important structures. Next the internal structure has to be studied, the precise form, position, &c., of the various organs, such as brain, heart, and stomach being made out: this branch of morphology is distinguished as **Anatomy.** And, lastly, the various parts must be examined by the aid of the microscope, and their minute structure, or **Histology,** accurately determined. It is only when we have a fairly comprehensive knowledge of these three aspects of a given animal—its external characters, its rough anatomy, and its histology—that we can with some degree of safety assign it to its proper position among its fellows.

An accurate knowledge of the structure of an animal in its adult condition is not, however, all-sufficient. Nothing has been made more abundantly clear by the researches of the last half-century than that the results of anatomy and histology must be checked, and if necessary corrected, by **Embryology**—*i.e.* by the study of the changes undergone by animals in their development from the egg to the adult condition. A striking instance is afforded by the common Barnacles which grow in great numbers on ships' bottoms, piers, &c. The older zoologists, such as Linnæus, grouped these creatures, along with Snails, Mussels, and the like, in the group Mollusca, and even the great anatomical skill of Cuvier failed to show their true position, which was made out only when Vaughan Thompson, about fifty years ago, proved, from a study of the newly hatched young, that their proper place is among the Crustacea, in company with Crabs, Shrimps, and Water-fleas.

Given a sound knowledge of the anatomy, histology, and embryology of animals, their **Classification** may be attempted—that is, we may proceed to arrange them in groups and sub-groups, each capable of accurate definition.

The general method of classification employed by zoologists is that introduced by Linnæus, and may be illustrated by reference to the group of Cats which we have already used in the explanation of the terms genus, species, and variety.

We have seen that the various kinds of true Cat—Domestic Cat, Lion, Tiger, &c.—together constitute the genus *Felis.* Now there is one member of the cat-tribe, the Cheetah, or Hunting Leopard, which differs from all its allies in having imperfectly retractile claws and certain peculiarities in its teeth. It is therefore placed in a distinct genus, *Cynælurus*, to mark the fact that the differences separating it from any species of Felis are of a more fundamental character than those separating the species of Felis from one another.

The nearest allies of the Cats are the Hyænas, but the presence of additional teeth and of non-retractile claws—to mention only two points—makes the interval between Hyænas and the two genera of Cats far greater than that between Felis and Cynælurus. The varying degree of difference is expressed in classification by placing the Hyænas in a separate **family,** the *Hyænidæ*, while Felis and Cynælurus are placed together in the family *Felidæ*. Similarly, the Civets and Mongooses form the family *Viverridæ;* the Dogs, Wolves, Jackals, Foxes, &c., the family *Canidæ;* Bears, the family *Ursidæ;* and so on.

All the foregoing animals have sharp teeth adapted to a flesh diet, and their toes are armed with claws. They therefore differ fundamentally from such animals as Sheep, Deer, Pigs, and Horses, which have flat teeth adapted for grinding vegetable food, and hoofed feet. The differences here are obviously far greater than those between any two of the families mentioned above, and are emphasised by placing the flesh-eaters in the **order** *Carnivora*, the hoofed animals in the order *Ungulata*. In the same way gnawing animals, such as Rats, Mice, and Beavers, form the order *Rodentia;* pouched animals, such as Kangaroos and Opossums, the order *Marsupialia;* and so on.

Carnivora, Ungulata, Rodentia, Marsupialia, &c., although differing from one another in many important respects, agree in the possession of a hairy skin and in the fact that they all suckle their young. They thus differ from Birds, which have a covering of feathers and hatch their young from eggs. The differences here are considerably more important than those between the orders of quadrupeds referred to, and are expressed by placing the latter in the **class** *Mammalia*, while Birds constitute the class *Aves*. In the same way the scaly, cold-blooded Lizards, Snakes, Tortoises, &c., form the class *Reptilia;* the slimy-skinned, scaleless Frogs, Toads, and Salamanders the class *Amphibia;* and the finned, water-breathing Fishes the class *Pisces*.

Mammals, Birds, Reptiles, Amphibians, and Fishes all agree with one another in the possession of red blood and an internal skeleton—an important part of which is the backbone or vertebral column—and in never having more than two pairs of limbs. They thus differ in some of the most fundamental features of their organisation from such animals as Crabs, Insects, Scorpions, and Centipedes, which have colourless blood, a jointed external skeleton, and numerous limbs. These differences—far greater than those between classes—are expressed by placing the backboned animals in the **phylum** or **sub-kingdom** *Chordata*, the many-legged armoured forms in the phylum *Arthropoda.* Similarly, soft-bodied animals with shells, such as Oysters and Snails, form the phylum *Mollusca*, Polypes and Jelly-fishes the phylum *Coelenterata.* And finally the various phyla recognised by zoologists together constitute the **kingdom** *Animalia.*

Thus the animal kingdom is divided into phyla, the phyla into classes, the classes into orders, the orders into families, the families into genera, and the genera into species, while the species themselves are assemblages of individual animals agreeing with one another in certain constant characters. It will be seen that the *individual* is the only term in the series which has a real existence: all the others are mere groups formed, more or less arbitrarily, by man.

To return to the animal originally selected as an example, it will be seen that the zoological position of the Domestic Cat is expressed as follows:—

Kingdom—ANIMALIA.
  Phylum—CHORDATA.
    Class—MAMMALIA.
      Order—CARNIVORA.
        Family—*Felidæ.*
          Genus—*Felis.*
            Species—*F. domestica.*

The object of systematic zoologists has always been to find a *natural* as opposed to an *artificial* classification of animals. Good instances of artificial classification are the grouping of Bats with Birds on the ground that they both possess wings, and of Whales with Fishes on the ground that they both possess fins and live in the water. An equally good example of a natural classification is the grouping of both Bats and Whales under the head of Mammalia because of their agreement, in all essential points of anatomy, histology, and embryology, with the hairy quadrupeds which form the bulk of that class.

With the older zoologists the difficulty was to find some general principle to guide them in their arrangement of animals—some true criterion of classification. It was believed by all but a few advanced thinkers that the individuals of each species of animal were descended from a common ancestor, but that the original progenitor of each species was totally unconnected with that of every other, having, as Buffon puts it, "participated in the grace of a distinct act of creation." To take an instance—all Wolves were allowed to be descended from a pair of ancestral Wolves, and all Jackals from a pair of ancestral Jackals, but the original pair in each case was supposed to have come into being by a supernatural

REESE
UNIV

process of which no explanation could or ought to be offered. Nevertheless it was obvious that a Jackal was far more like a Wolf than either of them was like a Tiger, and that in a natural system of classification this fact should be expressed by placing the Wolf and Jackal in one family, the Tiger in another.

All through the animal kingdom the same thing occurs: no matter what group we take, we find the species composing it resemble one another in varying degrees, or, as it is sometimes expressed, have varying degrees of *relationship* to one another. On the view that each species was separately created the word relationship was used in a purely metaphorical sense, as there could of course be no real relationship between two groups of animals having a totally independent origin. But it was assumed that creation had taken place according to a certain scheme in the Divine Mind, and that the various species had their places in this scheme like the bits of glass in a mosaic. The problem of classification was thus to discover the place of each species in the pattern of the unknown design.

The point of view underwent a complete change when, after the publication of Darwin's *Origin of Species* in 1859, the **Doctrine of Descent** or of **Organic Evolution** came to be generally accepted by biologists. A species is now looked upon, not as an independent creation, but as having been derived by a natural process of descent from some pre-existing species, just as the various breeds of Domestic Fowl are descended from the little Jungle-fowl of India. On this view the resemblances between species referred to above are actually matters of relationship, and species are truly allied to one another in varying degrees since they are descended from a common ancestor. Thus a natural classification becomes a genealogical tree, and the problem of classification is the tracing of its branches.

This, however, is a matter of extreme difficulty. Representing by a tree the whole of the animals which have ever lived on the earth, those existing at the present day would be figured by the topmost twigs, the trunk and main branches representing extinct forms. Thus the task of arranging animals according to their relationships would be an almost hopeless one but from two circumstances: one, that remains of many extinct forms have been preserved; the other, that the series of changes undergone by an animal in its development from the egg often forms an epitome of the changes by which, in the course of ages, it has been evolved from an ancestral type. Evidence furnished by the last-named circumstance is, of course, furnished by embryology: the study of extinct animals constitutes a special branch of morphology to which the name **Palæontology** is applied.

The solid crust of the earth is composed of various kinds of rocks divisible into two groups: (1) *Igneous rocks,* such as granite and basalt, the structure of which is due to the action of the internal heat of the globe, and which originate below the surface and are not arranged in layers or strata; (2) *Aqueous* or *sedimentary rocks*, which arise by the disintegration, at the surface of the earth, of pre-existing rocks, the fragments or débris being carried off by streams and rivers and deposited at the bottom of lakes or seas. Being formed in this way by the deposition of successive layers or strata, the sedimentary rocks have a *stratified* structure, the lowest being in every case older than the more superficial layers. The researches of geologists have shown that there is a general *order of succession* of stratified rocks: that they may be divided into three great *groups*, each representing an *era* of time of immense but unknown duration, and that each group may be subdivided into more or fewer *systems* of rocks, each representing a lesser *period* of time. The following table shows the thirteen rock-systems usually recognised, arranged under the three great groups in chronological order, the oldest being at the bottom of the list.

III. Cainozoic or Tertiary. .	13. Quaternary and Recent.
	12. Pliocene.
	11. Miocene.
	10. Eocene.
II. Mesozoic or Secondary.	9. Cretaceous.
	8. Jurassic.
	7. Triassic.
I. Palæozoic or Primary . .	6. Permian.
	5. Carboniferous.
	4. Devonian.
	3. Silurian.
	2. Cambrian.
	1. Laurentian.

Imbedded in these rocks are found the remains of various extinct animals in the form of what are called *fossils*. In the more recent rocks the resemblance of these to the hard parts of existing animals is perfectly clear: we find shells hardly differing from those we pick up on the beach, bones easily recognisable as those of Mammals, Birds, or Fishes, and so on. But in the older rocks the fossils are in many cases so different in character from the animals existing at the present day as to be referable to no existing order. We find Birds with teeth, great aquatic Reptiles as large as Whales, Fishes, Molluscs, Crustacea, &c., all of an entirely different type from any now existing. We thus find that the former were in many cases utterly unlike the present animal inhabitants of the globe, and we arrive at the notion of a *succession of life in time*, and are even able, in exceptionally favourable circumstances, to trace back existing forms to their extinct ancestors.

By combining the results of comparative morphology, embryology, and palæontology we get a department of Zoology called **Phylogeny,** the object of which is to trace the pedigrees of the various groups. There are, however, very few cases in which this can be done with any approach to exactness: most "phylogenies" are purely hypothetical, and merely represent the views at which a particular zoologist has arrived after a more or less exhaustive study of the group under discussion.

Animals may also be studied from the point of view of **Distribution**. One aspect of this study is inseparable from Palæontology, since it is obviously necessary to mention in connection with a fossil the particular system or systems of rocks in which it occurs: thus we distinguish **geological distribution** or **distribution in time.**

The distribution of recent forms may be studied under two aspects, their **horizontal** or **geographical distribution,** and their **vertical** or **bathymetrical distribution.** To mention the latter first, we find that some species exist only on plains, others—hence called *alpine forms*—on the higher mountains; that some marine shells, fishes, &c., always keep near the shore (*littoral* species), others live at great depths (*abyssal* species), while others (*pelagic* species) swim on the surface of the ocean. Among aquatic animals, moreover, whether marine or fresh-water, three principal modes of life are to be distinguished. These are animals, such as Jelly-fishes, which float on or near in the water, and are carried about passively by currents: such forms are included under the term *Plankton.* Most Fishes, Whales, and Cuttle-fishes, on the other hand, are strong swimmers, and are able to traverse the water at will in any direction; they together constitute the *Nekton.* Finally, such animals as Crabs, Oysters, Sponges, Zoophytes, &c., remain permanently fixed to or creep over the surface of the bottom, and are grouped together, as the *Benthos.*

Under the head of geographical distribution we have such facts as the absence of all Land-mammals, except Bats, in New Zealand and the Polynesian Islands, the presence of pouched Mammals, such as Kangaroos and Opossums, only in some parts of America and in Australia and the adjacent islands, the entire absence of Finches in Australasia, and so on. We find, in fact, that the *fauna—i.e.* the total animal inhabitants—of a country is to a large extent independent of climate, and that the faunæ of adjacent countries often differ widely. In fact, it is convenient in studying the geographical distribution of animals largely to ignore the ordinary division into continents, and to divide the land-surface of the globe into what are called *zoo-geographical* regions. The characteristics of these regions will be discussed in a future section; at present it is only necessary, for convenience of reference, to give their names and boundaries.

1. The *Holarctic Region* includes the whole of Europe, Asia as far south as the Himalayas, Africa north of the Sahara, together with the corresponding portion of Arabia, and North America as far south as Mexico. For convenience of reference it is often customary to divide this region into two: its Eurasian portion is then called the *Palæarctic*, its American portion the *Nearctic* region.

2. The *Ethiopian Region* includes Africa south of the Sahara, Southern Arabia, and Madagascar with the adjacent islands.

3. The *Oriental Region* includes India, Ceylon, South China, the Malayan Peninsula, and what are known as the Indo-Malayan islands, *i.e.* those islands of the Malayan Archipelago which lie to the west of a line—called *Wallace's line*—passing to the east of the Philippines, between Borneo and Celebes and between Bali and Lombok.

4. The *Australian Region* includes Australia, Tasmania, and the Austro-Malayan islands, *i.e.* the islands of the Malayan Archipelago lying to the east of Wallace's line.

5. The *New Zealand Region* includes New Zealand and the adjacent islands, such as the Chatham, Auckland, and Campbell groups.

6. The numerous groups of islands lying between Australia and Southern Asia to the west, and America to the east, are conveniently grouped together as the *Polynesian Region.*

7. The *Neotropical Region* includes the whole of South and Central America and part of Mexico.

There are still two departments of zoological science to be mentioned. As it is impossible to have a right understanding of a machine without knowing something of the purpose it is intended to serve, so the morphological study of an animal is imperfect without some knowledge of its **Physiology,** *i.e.* of the functions performed by its various parts, and the way in which they work together for the welfare of the whole. It is hardly possible to give more than occasional references to physiological matters in a text-book of Zoology, but in order to pave the way for such references a brief account of the general principles of Physiology will be given in the next section.

Not only may we study the action of a given animal's organs, but also the actions of the animal as a whole, its habits, its relations to other animals, whether as friends, as enemies, or as prey, to the vegetable kingdom, and to its physical surroundings, such as temperature, humidity, &c. In a word, the whole question of the relation of the *organism* to its *environment* gives us a final and most important branch of Natural History which has been called **Ethology** or **Bionomics.**

SECTION I.

THE GENERAL STRUCTURE AND PHYSIOLOGY OF ANIMALS

1. AMŒBA.

IF we examine under the microscope a drop of water containing some of the slimy deposit which collects at the bottom of pools of rain-water and in similar situations, we occasionally find it to abound in microscopic life; and among the minute moving creatures in such a drop we frequently find examples of a remarkable organism—the *Amœba* or Proteus Animalcule (Fig. 1). This is a little particle of irregular shape, which we should be likely, on a cursory examination, to put down as motionless; it appears somewhat like an irregular particle of some colourless glass-like substance with a more granular central portion. If, however, we make an exact drawing of the outline of the Amœba, and, after an interval, compare the drawing with the original, we find that the drawing appears no longer to represent what we see; a change has taken place in the shape of the Amœba; and careful observation shows that this change is constantly going on: the Amœba is constantly varying in shape. This change is effected by the pushing out of projections or processes, called pseudopods (*psd.*), which undergo various alterations of size and shape, and may become withdrawn, other similar processes being developed in their place. At the same time careful

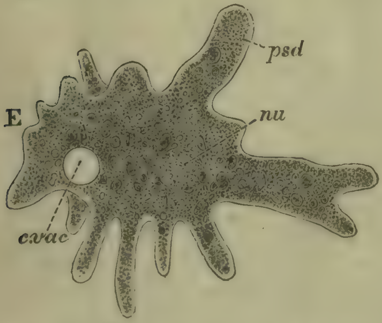


FIG. 1.—**Amœba proteus,** a living specimen. *c. vac.* contractile vacuole; *nu.* nucleus; *psd.* pseudopods. (From Parker's *Biology*, after Gruber.)

watching shows that the Amœba is also, with extreme slowness, changing its *position.* This it effects by a kind of streaming motion. A projection forms itself on one side, and the entire substance of the Amœba gradually streams into it; a fresh projection appears towards the same side, the streaming movement is repeated, and, by a constant succession of such movements, an extremely gradual locomotion, which it often takes very close watching to detect, is brought about. In these movements, it is to be noticed, the Amœba is influenced to some extent by contact with other minute objects; when the processes come in contact with small grains of sand or other similar particles their movements are modified in such a way that the Amœba, in its slow progress onwards, passes on one side of them, so that it might be said to feel its way among the solid particles in the drop of sediment.

Judging from the nature of these movements, we are obliged to infer that the substance of which this remarkable object is composed must be soft and semi-fluid, yet not miscible with the water, and, therefore, preserving a sharp contour. These and other characteristics to be mentioned subsequently enable us to conclude that we have to do with the substance of complex chemical composition termed *protoplasm*, which constitutes the vital material of all living organisms whether animals or plants. In Amœba the protoplasm is clearly distinguishable into two parts, an outer homogeneous, glassy-looking layer completely enclosing a more granular internal mass.

Examination of the Amœba with a fairly high power of the microscope reveals the presence in its interior of two objects which with a low power we should be likely to overlook. One of these is a small rounded body of a homogeneous appearance, which preserves its form during all the changes which the Amœba as a whole undergoes. This is termed the *nucleus* (Fig. 1, *nu.*); it is enclosed in an extremely delicate membrane, and consists of a protoplasmic material differing from that which forms the main bulk of the Amœba in containing a substance which refracts the light more strongly and which has a stronger affinity for certain colouring matters. The other minute object to be distinguished in the interior appears as a clear rounded space (*c. vac.*) in the protoplasm. When this is watched it will be observed to increase gradually in size till it reaches a maximum of, let us say, a fifth of the total diameter of the Amœba; when, by a contraction of its walls, it suddenly disappears, to reappear presently and gradually grow again to its maximum size. This pulsating clear space is the *contractile vacuole.*

By watching the Amœba carefully for some time we may be enabled to observe that the movements of the protoplasm of the body not only effect locomotion, but are connected also with the reception of certain foreign particles of organic nature—*i.e.* either entire minute animals or plants, or minute fragments of larger forms—into the interior of the protoplasm. A process of the protoplasm is pressed against such a particle, which becomes sunk in the soft substance, and passes gradually into the interior. Here it becomes surrounded by a little globule of watery fluid, and by degrees partially or wholly disappears; the part, if any, which remains subsequently passes outwards from the protoplasm into the surrounding water. The matter which disappears evidently mixes with the protoplasm and adds to its bulk. All, in fact, of the matter of the foreign body that is capable of it becomes digested and assimilated by the protoplasm. The globule of watery fluid enclosing the food-particle (for such is the true nature of the foreign body) probably contains some ingredient of the nature of a *ferment*, capable of acting on certain substances and rendering them more soluble or capable of being more readily taken up by the protoplasm. This we infer mainly from what we know of the digestion and absorption of food in the higher animals; but the fact, which has been established by experiment, that the Amœba is able readily to digest certain classes of organic substances, while others, when taken into the interior of the protoplasm, remain unaltered, seems to indicate that some special property, similar to those possessed by the digestive ferments of the higher animals, is present in the watery fluid surrounding the food-particle.

The movements of the Amœba, slow and gradual though they are, must involve a certain expenditure of energy or working power: this can only be derived from the energy of *chemical affinity* which the protoplasm possesses in virtue of its complex chemical composition. The protoplasm loses some of this energy by its conversion into energy of movement. This loss implies the breaking up of the complex chemical ingredients of which protoplasm is made up into simpler ones; the protoplasm falls a grade in the scale of chemical compounds, and by its fall generates the force by means of which the Amœba moves. The energy of chemical affinity which the protoplasm possesses is thus analogous to the potential energy which the weight of a clock has when it is wound up. As the weight, by virtue of its position, is able as it falls to deal out working power so as to cause the movement of the machinery of the clock, so the protoplasm is able, by the degradation or decomposition of its complex compounds, to deal out working power enabling the Amœba to move. In the case of the clock-weight there comes a time when all the potential energy is expended; the weight reaches its lowest limit, and unless it is wound up again the clock stops. The like holds good of the Amœba: the protoplasm is continually being used up—broken up into compounds of a lower order—and, in course of time, the whole potential energy would become exhausted, were it not that a new supply is being constantly received. This new supply of energy is derived from the substance of the food-particles; and this at the same time maintains the *bulk* of the Amœba, which, if food particles are absent from the water, gradually diminishes.

Accompanying the degradation, or *destructive metabolism* as it is termed, of the protoplasm, and intimately connected with it, is the passage inwards of oxygen from the air dissolved in the water, and the passage outwards of carbonic acid gas. Oxygen is a necessary agent in the process of destructive metabolism, and carbonic acid is a constant waste-product of such action. This interchange of oxygen and carbonic acid is the essence of the process of *respiration* observable in all living things. In addition to the carbonic acid given off in this process other waste-products are formed and have to be got rid of. In all probability the *contractile vacuole* already referred to has to do with this process—the process of *excretion*—since *uric acid*, which in higher animals is the typical form assumed by such waste-products, is said to have been detected in the interior of the contractile vacuole in the case of certain near relatives of Amœba.

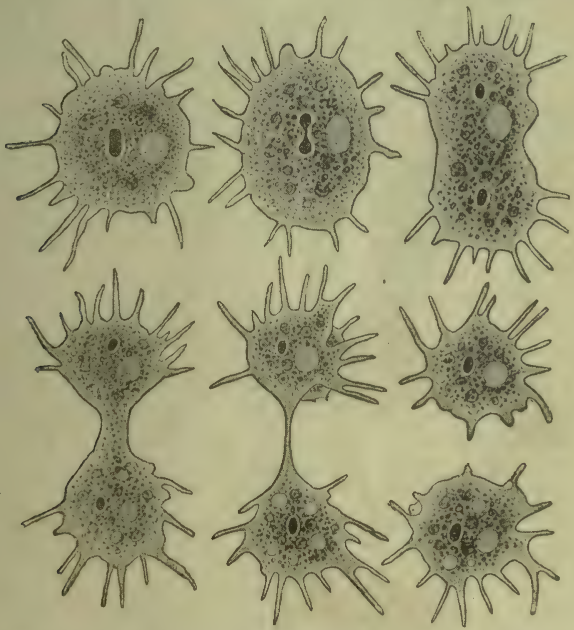


FIG. 2.—**Amœba polypodia** in successive phases of division. The light spot is the contractile vacuole; the dark the nucleus. (From Lang's *Text-Book*, after F. E. Schulze.)

When food is abundant the Amœba increases in bulk—more food being ingested than is required for simply maintaining the size unaltered—and soon a remarkable change takes place. The processes become withdrawn, and a fissure appears dividing the Amœba into two parts (Fig. 2). This fissure grows inwards, and the two parts become more and more completely separated from one another till eventually the separation becomes complete, and we have two distinct Amœbæ resulting from the division of the one. While the protoplasm has been undergoing this division into two halves the nucleus also divides, and each of the two new Amœbæ possesses a nucleus similar to the original one, and developed from it by division. It is mainly by this simple process of division into two, or *binary fission* as it is called, that reproduction or multiplication takes place in the Amœba.

In spite of the great simplicity of its structure, the Amœba thus carries on a number of different functions. The practically structureless particle of protoplasm is able to act on matter absorbed as food in such a way as to alter the chemical composition of the latter and to assimilate it; it is able to carry on movements of locomotion as well as movements—those involved in the taking in of food particles—which may be looked upon as movements of prehension; it exhibits a certain degree of sensitiveness or irritability, as shown by the modifications of its movements which result from contact with foreign bodies; it is able to respire; it carries on processes of excretion; and, finally, it is capable of reproducing its kind. It is these functions that characterise *living* beings as distinguished from *non-living* matter. The power of locomotion, the capacity for assimilating organic substances, and the absence of two special compounds—*chlorophyll* and *cellulose*—are specially characteristic of the animal as distinguished from the plant.

2. The Animal Cell.

In all but the lowest animals the various functions just enumerated are carried on by means of a more or less complex machinery of organs—*muscles*, *alimentary* or *enteric canal*, *glands*, *heart* and *blood-vessels*, *gills* or *lungs*, *nervous system*, *organs of excretion*, and *organs of reproduction*. But in all animals, however complex, the same substance, *protoplasm*, which in Amœba constitutes the bulk of the body, is the essential and active part. Wherever in the body active functions are being discharged and active changes are going on, there we find protoplasm present: where there is no protoplasm there is no vital activity. In the earliest stages of their existence all animals are formed entirely of protoplasm. Every animal consists at first of a single minute particle of protoplasm, not widely different from an Amœba. Soon this particle divides into a number of parts which, instead of separating completely from one another, like the parts of a divided Amœba, remain associated together, forming a clump of minute particles of protoplasm. Such minute protoplasmic particles are termed *cells;* every animal consists, at first, of a single cell, and afterwards, in all higher animals, this single cell becomes converted by division and subdivision into a little cluster or clump of cells.

It is time that we should inquire more particularly as to the meaning of these two terms—cell and protoplasm—evidently so important in the study of both plants and animals. **Protoplasm,** we have already seen, is a semi-fluid, gelatinous, clear or finely granular substance of complex chemical composition. It is known not to be a definite compound, but to be a somewhat varying mixture of chemical compounds, the most essential of which are bodies of the class of *proteids*—highly complex substances, into the composition of which the elements carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, nitrogen, and sulphur all enter. Living protoplasm always contains a large amount of water. It is soluble in weak acids or weak alkalies; and is capable of being coagulated—rendered firmer and more opaque—by the action of heat and of strong alcohol. Its reaction is slightly alkaline. As regards its minute structure, it is generally acknowledged that there are two kinds of substance in the protoplasm, in some cases more, in others less, distinctly marked off from one another. One of these substances (*mitome*) is less fluid than the other, and appears to be arranged in the form of a network of threads, composed of numerous minute rounded granules, enclosing the second, more fluid substance (*paramitome*) in its meshes.

To a particle of protoplasm, usually containing a nucleus in its interior, constituting the entire body of such a simple organism as Amœba, and forming one of the constituent elements of which a higher plant or animal is made up, the term **cell** is applied. The word was first employed in reference to the microscopic structure of plants, in connection with which it is much more appropriate than in connection with the microscopic structure of animals; for a plant-cell has, nearly always, a definite, firm, enclosing envelope or *cell-wall* (Fig. 3, I, *c.w*)—a structure which is only exceptionally present in the case of animals. In the interior of the cell-protoplasm, or *cytoplasm*, is a body termed the *nucleus* similar to the nucleus of Amœba; usually of rounded shape, with a thin enclosing *nuclear membrane* (A, *nu.m*), which is perforated by numerous minute apertures. In the nucleus is a single coiled thread, or a network of threads, or one or more rounded clumps, of a substance—*chromatin* (*chr.*)—which differs from ordinary protoplasm in having a stronger affinity for most staining agents. A rounded body termed the *nucleolus* (*nu'*), which usually occurs in the interior of the nucleus, is formed either of a solid mass of chromatin, or of a substance—*achromatin*—differing somewhat from chromatin in its properties and less strongly affected by staining agents. Allied to the achromatin of which such nucleolar clumps may be composed is a constituent of the nucleus to which the name of *linin* is applied. This assumes the form of a network of delicate threads—*linin filaments*—which usually have associated with them, embedded in their substance or adhering to their surfaces, rows of chromatin granules, the interstices being filled with a granular material—the *nuclear sap*. When the nucleus divides during the process of division of the cell, its contents, more particularly the chromatin, in many cases go through a remarkable series of changes, to which the term *karyokinesis* or *mitosis* is applied.

At the time when this *mitotic division* is about to be initiated either one or two minute bodies (Fig. 3, A, *c*) are to be distinguished situated close together in the cytoplasm in the immediate neighbourhood of the nucleus. These are the *centrosomes*—minute masses of a protoplasmic substance which seems to resemble the matter of the nucleolus. The centrosomes, at first close together, gradually separate from one another, a spindle-shaped bundle of very fine fibres of achromatic[1] material—the *nuclear spindle*—extending between them (Fig. 3, C). At the same time each centrosome becomes the centre of a system of fine achromatin fibres (apparently made up, like the fibres of the spindle, of rows of granules) which are arranged round it in a radiating manner forming a structure termed the *attraction-sphere* or *astrosphere* (Fig. 3, A, *s*). Meantime important changes have been in progress in the nucleus. The chromatin first becomes arranged in a close tangle, and then becomes divided up into a number of parts—the *chromatin segments* or *chromosomes*—which frequently have the form of loop-like threads (Fig. 3, C, *chr*), but often assume other forms. The nuclear membrane disappears. Each of the chromatin segments splits lengthwise into two parts—the *daughter-segments* of the chromatin or *daughter-chromosomes* (Fig. 3, D, E), and with these the filaments of the spindle become connected.

At this point the segments of the chromatin form a single group—the *equatorial plate*—extending across the axis of the spindle. The latter has shifted its position, so that its fibres now run across the original site of the nucleus, each of them having become interrupted and divided into two halves, each of which extends inwards from the corresponding centrosome, and has become connected with one of the daughter-chromosomes. The spindle-fibres now contract, and, apparently as a result of this contraction, half the daughter-chromosomes become drawn towards

---

[1] The term *achromatin* is usually applied to all the matter of the *nucleus* that has not the special characteristics of chromatin; but it applies to *cytoplasmic* structures—*i.e.* structures belonging to the body of the cell—as well.

one of the centrosomes and half towards the other (Fig. 3, F, G, H), so that they are now separated into two distinct groups. When the groups have approached the extremity of the spindle, the segments of each unite, and eventually the entire chromatin of each of the two groups assumes the arrangement which the chromatin of the original nucleus exhibited before division began.

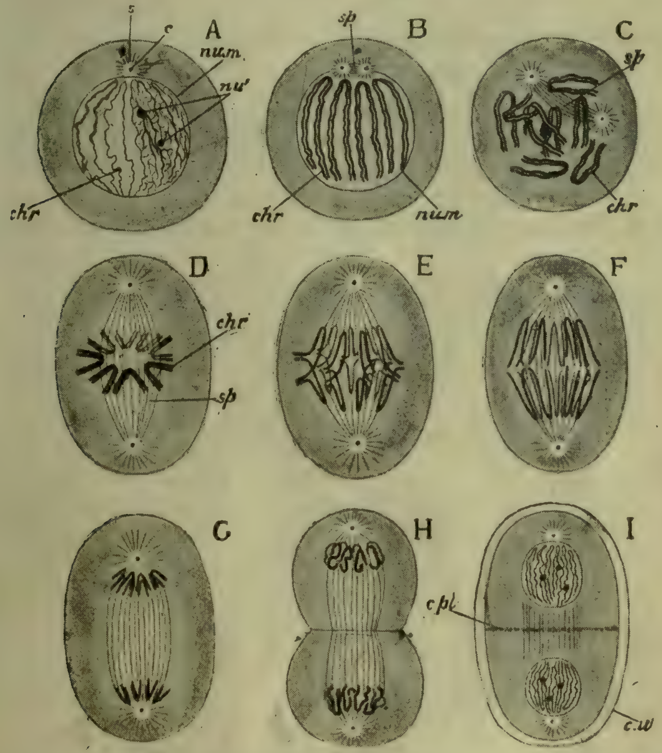


Fig 3.—Diagrams illustrating karyokinesis. A, the resting cell; B, C, D, successive phases in the formation and arrangement of the chromatin loops and of the nuclear spindle; E, F, G, separation of the two sets of daughter-chromosomes and their passage towards the poles of the spindle; H, I, division of the cell-body and formation of the two new nuclei; *c.* centrosome; *chr.* chromatin; *cpl.* cell-plate; *nu'.* nucleoli; *nu. m.* nuclear membrane; *s.* astrosphere; *sp.* spindle (From Parker's *Biology*, after Flemming, Rabl, &c.)

A new nuclear membrane becomes formed around each chromatin group, and the whole assumes the character of a complete nucleus —the *daughter-nucleus.* A furrow which appears on the surface of the cell-protoplasm (Fig. 3, H, I), surrounding it in the form of a ring in a plane at right angles to the long axis of the spindle, deepens gradually so as to give rise to a cleft, eventually completely separating the substance of the cell into two halves. Each of these halves encloses one of the daughter-nuclei and has assumed the character of a complete *daughter-cell.* In some instances the division of the nucleus is *direct* or *amitotic*, the nucleus simply becoming separated into two equal parts, without disappearance of the nuclear membrane, and without any complicated re-arrangement of the chromatin.

3. THE OVUM: MATURATION, IMPREGNATION, AND SEGMENTATION: THE GERMINAL LAYERS.

Amœba is simply an independent animal cell; or, to express the same meaning in another way, is a unicellular animal, and as such it is a member of the phylum of the *Protozoa* or unicellular animals. All the rest of the animal kingdom, forming the division *Metazoa*, are *multicellular* in the fully developed condition; but each of these multicellular animals or Metazoa originates from a single cell—the **ovum.** The ovum is a typical cell (Fig. 4), usually spherical in shape, with one or more enclosing membranes, with cell protoplasm enclosing a nucleus (*germinal vesicle*) in which are contained one or more rounded masses of chromatin (*germinal spot* or *spots*). The ovum may contain in addition to the protoplasm a quantity of non-protoplasmic nutrient material or *yolk.*

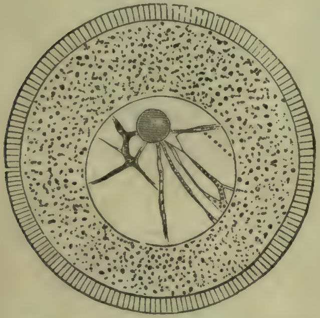


FIG. 4.—Ovum of a Sea-Urchin, showing the radially striated cell-membrane, the protoplasm, containing yolk granules, the large nucleus (germinal vesicle), with its network of chromatin and a large nucleolus (germinal spot). (From Balfour's *Embryology*, after Hertwig.)

Before the process of impregnation or fertilisation which gives the impulse to development, the ovum undergoes a change which is termed **maturation** (Fig. 5, A). This consists, in essence, of the throwing out of portions of the nucleus. The latter approaches the surface and divides, mitotically, into two parts—one coming to project on the surface and finally becoming completely separated off from the ovum as a rounded particle—the *first polar body* (*pol.*). A second division of the nucleus results in the throwing off of a *second polar body;* and, after this has been formed, the portion which remains in the ovum resumes its central position and forms what is termed the *female pronucleus* (♀ *pron.*).

In the process of **impregnation** a very minute body, the *male cell*, *sperm-cell*, or *sperm*, penetrates into the interior of the female cell or *ovum*, and the nucleus which it contains—the *male pro-*

nucleus (♂ *pron.*) coalesces with the female pro-nucleus to form a single nucleus called the *segmentation nucleus* (*seg. nucl.*). The principal part in the process of fertilisation is thus played by the two nuclei; but the centrosomes, one (♂ *cent.*) derived from the sperm, and the other (♀ *cent.*) from the ovum, also seem to take a share. Sometimes each of these divides into two, and the two centrosomes resulting from the division of that derived from the

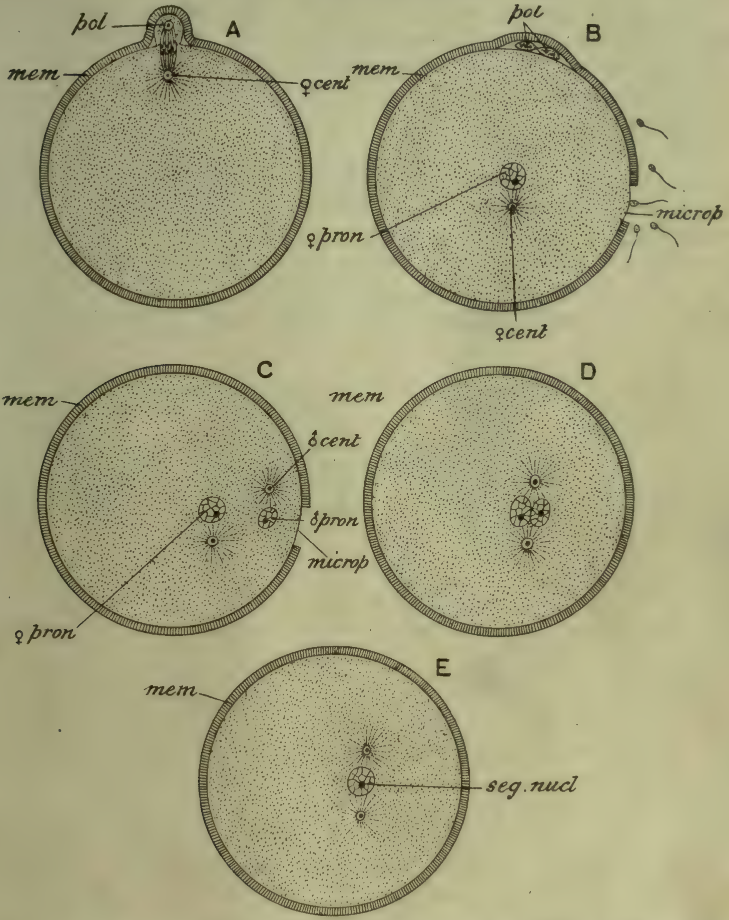


FIG. 5.—Diagram illustrating the maturation and fertilization of the ovum. A, formation of first polar globule ; B, beginning of fertilization, spermatozoa approaching the micropyle ; C, formation of the male pronucleus ; D, approximation of the male and female pronuclei ; E, formation of segmentation-nucleus ; ♀ *cent.* female centrosome ; ♂ *cent.* male centrosome ; *mem.* egg-membrane ; *microp.* micropyle ; *pol.* polar bodies ; ♀ *pron.* female pronucleus ; ♂ *pron.* male pronucleus ; *seg. nucl.* segmentation nucleus.

sperm coalesce with the two formed by division of that belonging to the ovum; but, more commonly, the centrosome of the ovum disappears before the two nuclei come into contact. The result of these changes is the formation of the *impregnated ovum*, or *oosperm* as it is called. The oosperm, it is to be noted, before development begins, consists of the primary ovum *minus* the portions of the substance of its nucleus removed in the polar bodies, and also, usually, *minus* its centrosome, and *plus* the sperm with its nucleus and centrosome.

On impregnation follows shortly the process of division already briefly referred to, which is known as **segmentation** (Fig. 6). This either affects the entire substance (*holoblastic* or *complete* segmentation) or only a part (*meroblastic* or *incomplete* segmentation) of the oosperm. In the former case the ovum usually contains little or no food-yolk, consisting exclusively, or nearly so, of protoplasmic matter. The first stage in the process of segmentation is the mitotic division of the segmentation-nucleus, accompanied by the division into two parts of the substance of the protoplasm—the result being the formation of two cells, each with its nucleus (Fig. 6). Each of these two cells then divides—four cells being thus formed; the four divide to form eight; the eight divide to form sixteen, and so on, until, by the process of division and subdivision, the oosperm becomes segmented into a large number of comparatively small cells which are termed the *blastomeres.* This mass of cells is spherical in shape, and the rounded blastomeres of which it is composed, project on its surface so as to give it somewhat the appearance of the fruit of the mulberry, whence it is termed the *mulberry body* or *morula* stage. The blastomeres next become arranged regularly in a single layer—the embryo assuming the form of a hollow sphere, the *blastosphere* or *blastula*, with a wall composed of a single layer of cells enclosing a cavity—the *segmentation cavity* or *blastocœle*.

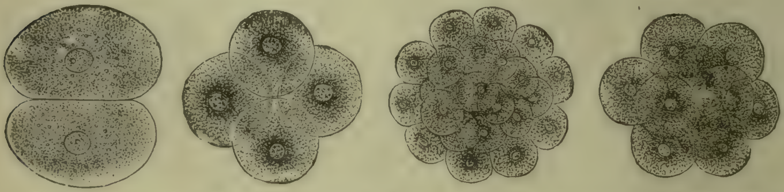


FIG. 6.—Various stages in the segmentation of the ovum. (From Gegenbaur's *Comparative Anatomy*.)

One side of the hollow blastula next becomes pushed inwards or *invaginated*, as one might push in one side of a hollow india-rubber ball—the result of this process of invagination, or *gastrulation*, as it is termed, being the formation of a cup—the *gastrula* (Fig. 7)—with a double wall. The cavity of the cup-shaped gastrula is the *archenteron* or primitive digestive cavity; the opening is termed the *blastopore*, the outer layer of the wall of the cup is the *ectoderm* (or *epiblast*), the inner the *endoderm* (or *hypoblast*). The ectoderm and endoderm are the *primary germinal layers* of the embryo; from one or both of them are developed the cells of a third layer—the *mesoderm* (*mesoblast*)—which is subsequently formed between them.

This mode of formation of the primary germinal layers in holoblastic oosperms by a process of gastrulation prevails in a number of different sections of the animal kingdom. In many animals, however, it becomes modified or disguised in various ways; and in many meroblastic oosperms it is doubtful if there occurs anything of the nature of true gastrulation.

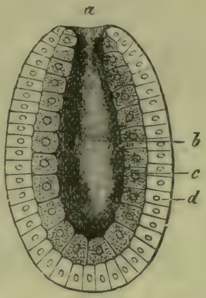


FIG. 7.—Gastrula in longitudinal section. *a*, mouth; *b*, enteron; *c*, endoderm; *d*, ectoderm. (From Gegenbaur's *Comparative Anatomy*.)

The cells of the three germinal layers give rise to the various organs of the body of the fully-formed animal—each layer having a special part to play in the history of the development. As the various parts of the embryo become gradually moulded from the cells of the germinal layers, it becomes evident on comparison that their internal structure—the form and arrangement of their constituent cells—is undergoing gradual modifications, the nature of which is different in the case of different parts. A *differentiation* of the cells is going on in the developing organs, resulting in the formation of a variety of different kinds of *tissues*.

4. TISSUES.

The cells of the tissues of the animal body differ greatly in form in different cases. Some are rounded, others cubical, others polygonal; some are shaped like a pyramid, others like a cone, others like a column or cylinder; others are flattened and tabular or scale-like. Cells situated on free surfaces are in many cases beset at their free ends with delicate, hair-like structures or *cilia* which vibrate to and fro incessantly during the life of the cell (Fig. 8, *a*); sometimes there is on each cell a single, relatively long, whip-like cilium, which is then termed a *flagellum* (*g*, *h*). Cells provided with cilia are termed *ciliated*, such as bear flagella *flagellate* cells.

Some tissues are composed entirely of cells. Others, though originating from cells or by the agency of cells, consist in greater or less measure of non-protoplasmic matter formed between the cells. Tissues composed entirely of cells take the form, for the most part, of membranes covering various surfaces—external and internal. Such membranes are known under the general name of **epithelia** (Fig. 8); they may consist of a single layer of cells (*a–h*) or may be many-layered (*i*); the former are termed *non-stratified*, the latter *stratified*, epithelia. The cells of an epithelium may be flattened (*c*, *d*), their edges being cemented together, so as to form a continuous membrane; or they may be cubical or cylindrical or prismatic (*a*, *b*); in the case of a stratified epithelium the cells may be of different forms in different strata (*i*). The *epidermis*, which covers the outer surface of the body of an animal, is an example of an epithelium; sometimes it is stratified, sometimes unstratified: its cells sometimes possess cilia, sometimes are devoid of them. Lining the internal cavities of the body are layers of cells, or epithelia, sometimes in a single layer, sometimes in several layers, sometimes ciliated, sometimes nonciliated.

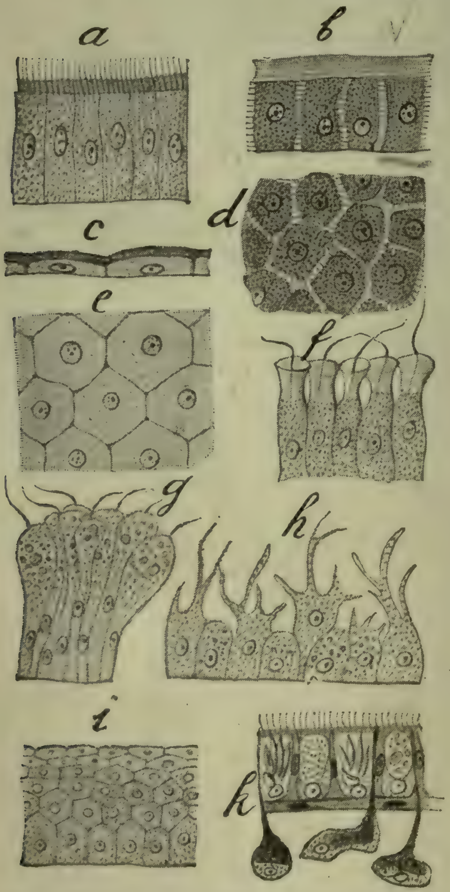


FIG. 8.—Various forms of epithelium. *a*, ciliated epithelium; *b*, columnar; *d*, surface view of the same; *c*, tesselated; *e*, the same from the surface; *f*, flagellate epithelium with collars; *g*, flagellate epithelium without collars; *h*, epithelium of intestine with pseudopodia; *i*, stratified epithelium; *k*, deric epithelium of a marine planarian with pigment cells, rod-cells, and sub-epithelial glands. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*.)

Glands (Fig. 9) are formed for the most part by the modification of certain cells of epithelia. In many cases a single cell of the epithelium forms a gland, which is then termed a *unicellular gland* (Fig. 9, *A*). The *secretion* (or substance which it is the function of the gland to form or collect) gathers in such a case in the interior of the cell, and reaches the surface of the epithelium through a narrow prolongation of the cell which serves as the *duct* of the gland (*B*). In other cases the gland is *multicellular*—formed of a number of cells of the epithelium lining a depression or infolding, simple or complex in form, of the latter (*D–G*). In the central cavity of such a gland the secretion collects to reach the general surface or cavity lined by the epithelium through the passage or *duct*.

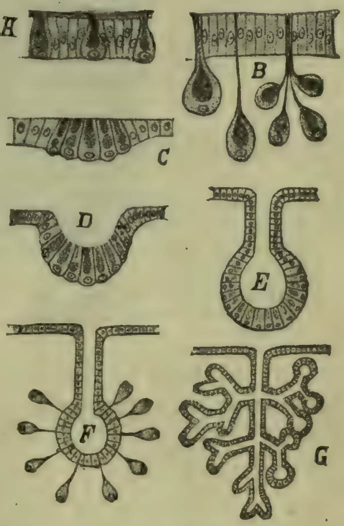


FIG. 9.—Diagram to illustrate the structure of glands. A, unicellular glands in an epithelium; B, unicellular glands lying below epithelium and communicating with the surface by narrow processes (ducts); C, group of gland-cells; D, group of gland-cells lining a depression; E and F, simple multicellular gland; G, branched multicellular gland. (From Lang.)

A series of tissues in which the cells are, in most instances, subordinate, as regards bulk, to substances formed between them, is the group known as the **connective tissues**, including *gelatinous connective tissue, retiform connective tissue, fibrous connective tissue, cartilage*, and *bone*. In the majority of forms of connective tissue the cells lie embedded in an intermediate substance called the *matrix* or ground-substance of the connective tissue.

In the case of *gelatinous connective tissue* (Fig. 10) the ground substance (g) is of a gelatinous character, sometimes supported by systems of fibres (b^2), and the cells are usually stellate or star-shaped with radiating processes. *Retiform* or *reticulate connective tissue* (Fig. 11) consists of stellate or branching cells with processes which are prolonged into fibres—the fibres from neighbouring cells joining so as to form a network. In this form of connective tissue there is no true ground-substance—the interspaces between the cells being filled with other tissue elements.

Fibrous connective tissue, which is a very common form, has a ground-substance containing gelatin, and consisting of numerous fibres, usually arranged in bundles. Thicker yellow elastic fibres may be present among the others, and may be so numerous as to give the entire tissue an elastic character. Associated with fibrous tissue, and produced by modification of its cells is *adipose tissue* or *fat* (Fig. 12). Fat consists of masses of large cells in which the protoplasm has more or less completely become replaced by fat, the cells being bound together into groups and masses or *lobules* by means of fibrous connective tissue.

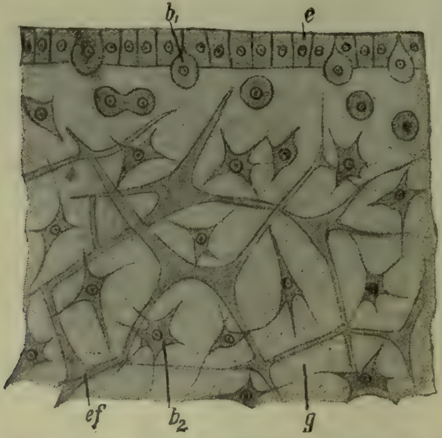


Fig. 10.—Gelatinous connective tissue of a Jelly-fish; *e*, epithelium; *g*, gelatinous matrix; b_2 branching cells; *ef*, elastic fibres. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*.)

In the case of *cartilage* the matrix is of a firm but elastic character, sometimes quite homogeneous in appearance (*hyaline cartilage*, Fig. 13), sometimes permeated by systems of fibres (*fibro-cartilage*, Fig. 14), which may be of an elastic nature (*yellow elastic cartilage*). The cells are usually rounded, and as a rule several

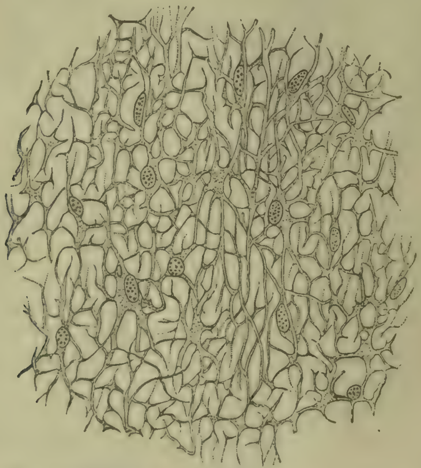


Fig. 11.—Reticular connective tissue. (From Lang.)

occur together in spaces scattered through the matrix; sometimes condensation of the matrix round each of the spaces in which the cells are contained forms a cell-capsule. The outer surface is covered over by a fibrous membrane—the *perichondrium*. Cartilage is frequently hardened by the deposition in the matrix of salts of lime—and is then known as *calcified cartilage*.

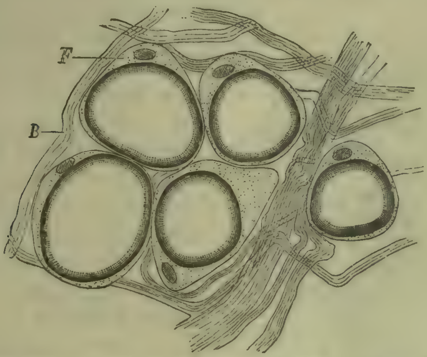


FIG. 12.—Fatty tissue; *F*, fat cells; *B*, connective-tissue fibrils. (From Lang, after Ranvier.)

In *bone* or *osseous connective tissue* (Fig. 15) the matrix is exceedingly dense and hard owing to its being strongly impregnated with carbonate and phosphate of lime. It consists of numerous thin plates or lamellæ, which are arranged partly parallel with the surface, partly concentrically around certain canals (*c*)—the *Haversian canals*—in which blood vessels lie. The cells, or *bone-corpuscles*, lie in minute spaces—the *lacunæ*—between the lamellæ, and a system of exceedingly fine channels—the *canaliculæ*—extend from lacuna to lacuna, containing fine protoplasmic processes by means of which neighbouring cells are placed in communication with one another. The outer surface of the bone is covered by a vascular fibrous

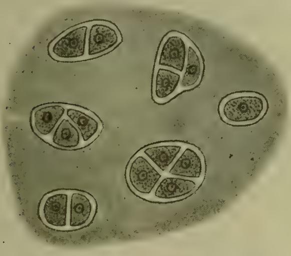


FIG. 13.—Hyaline cartilage.

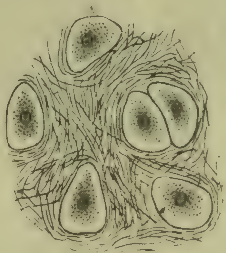


FIG. 14.—Fibro-cartilage.

membrane—the *periosteum*—which takes an active part in its growth and nutrition.

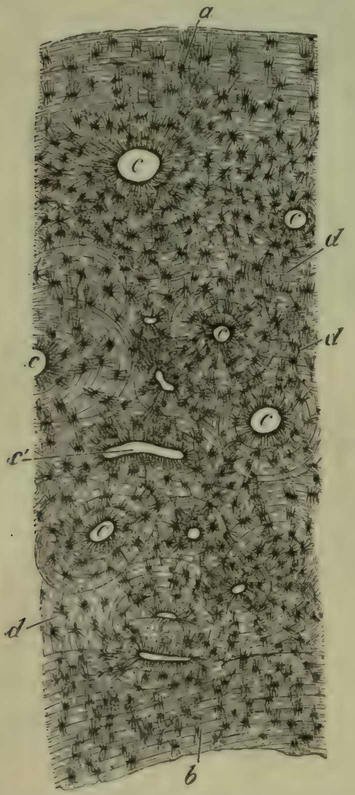


FIG. 15.—Transverse section of compact bone. *a*, lamellæ concentric with the outer surface; *b*, lamellæ concentric with the surface of the marrow cavity; *c*, section of Haversian canals; *c'*, section of a Haversian canal just dividing into two; *d*, interstitial lamellæ. (From Huxley's *Lessons in Physiology*.)

The connective tissues are all more or less passive in the functions which they perform, serving mainly for support and for binding together the various organs. **Muscular tissue,** on the other hand, has an active part to play—this being the tissue by means of which, in general, all the *movements* of the body of an animal are brought about. Muscular tissue varies greatly in minute structure in different groups of animals, and even in different parts of the same animal. It consists of microscopic fibres aggregated together into large bundles or layers. These fibres are composed of a substance—the *muscle substance*—which when living has the special property of *contractility*, contracting or becoming shorter and thicker on the application of a *stimulus*. There are two principal varieties of muscular tissue to be distinguished, termed respectively *non-striated* and *striated* muscle. Each fibre of non-striated muscle (Fig. 16) is usually a single, greatly elongated cell, sometimes branched, with a single nucleus; it may contain a core of unaltered protoplasm, or all except the nucleus may be altered into muscle substance; cross-striation is absent. A fibre of striated muscular tissue (Fig. 17) is formed by the union together of several cells which are represented by their nuclei (*n*). Sometimes there is a core of protoplasm; but more usually the entire fibre is composed of muscle substance, with perhaps a remnant of protoplasm in the neighbourhood of each nucleus. The substance of the fibre is crossed by numerous transverse bands and striæ, the precise significance of which is a matter of controversy. The fibre is usually enclosed in a delicate sheath—the *sarcolemma*. Striated muscular tissue is specially characteristic of parts in which rapid movement is necessary.

The principal elements of **nervous tissue** are *nerve cells* and *nerve fibres.*

Nerve cells (Fig. 18) vary greatly in form; they are relatively large cells with large nuclei, and one or several processes produced into nerve fibres.

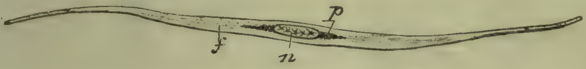


FIG. 16.—Non striated muscle cell; *f.* substance of fibre; *n.* nucleus; *p.* unaltered protoplasm in the neighbourhood of the nucleus. (From Huxley's *Lessons in Physiology.*)

The *nerve fibres* (Fig. 19), which are to be looked upon as greatly produced processes of nerve cells, are arranged for the most part in strands which are termed *nerves.* The fibres themselves vary greatly in structure in different classes of animals. In the higher animals the most characteristic form of nerve fibre is that which is termed the *medullated nerve-fibre.* In this there is a central cylinder —the *axis-cylinder* or *neuraxis* (*A, an*)—which is the essential part of the fibre, and is made up of numerous extremely fine *primitive fibrillæ*; this is surrounded by a layer of a white glistening material—the *white substance of Schwann* or *medullary sheath* (*med*), enclosed in turn in a very delicate membrane—the *neurilemma* (*neur*).

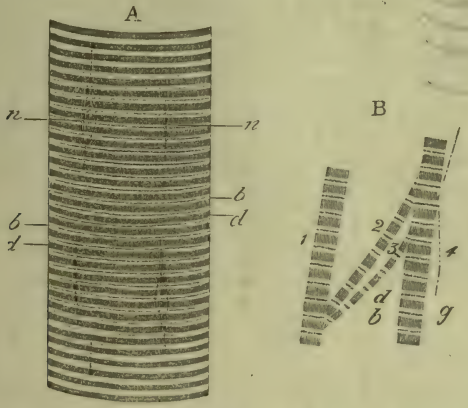


FIG. 17.—Striated muscle. *A*, part of a muscular fibre of a Frog; *B*, portion of striated muscle teased out to show separation into fibrillæ. (From Huxley's *Lessons in Physiology.*)

The blood, the lymph, and other similar fluids in the body of an animal may be looked upon as **liquid tissues**, having certain cells

—the *corpuscles*—disseminated through a liquid *plasma*, which takes the place of the ground substance of the connective tissues.

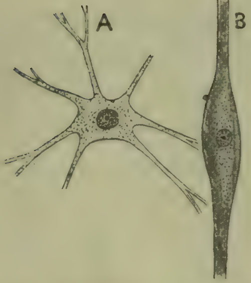


FIG. 18.—Nerve cells. *A*, multipolar; *B*, bipolar.

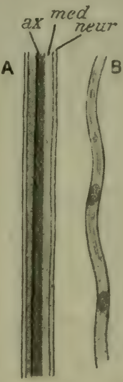


FIG. 19.—Nerve fibres. *A*, medullated; *B*, non-medullated; *ax*, neuraxis; *med*, medullary sheath; *neur*, neurilemma.

In a large proportion of cases such corpuscles are similar to Amœbæ in their form and movements (*amœboid corpuscles, leucocytes*). In the blood of Vertebrates leucocytes occur along with coloured corpuscles of definite shape containing the red-colouring matter (*hæmoglobin*) of the blood. The leucocytes are able like Amœbæ to ingest solid particles, and under certain conditions a number of them may unite together to form a single mass of protoplasm, with many nuclei, termed a *plasmodium*.

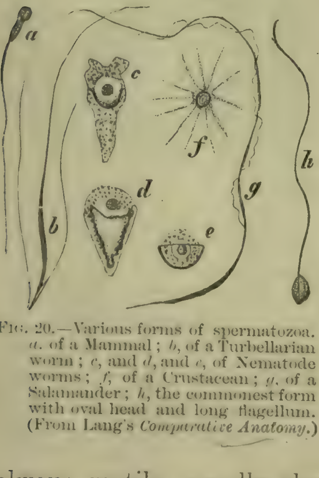


FIG. 20.—Various forms of spermatozoa. *a*, of a Mammal; *b*, of a Turbellarian worm; *c*, and *d*, and *e*, of Nematode worms; *f*, of a Crustacean; *g*, of a Salamander; *h*, the commonest form with oval head and long flagellum. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*.)

The characteristic cells of the **reproductive tissues** are the *ova* and the *spermatozoa* or *sperms*. The ova (Fig. 4), when fully formed, are relatively large, usually spherical cells, sometimes composed entirely of protoplasm, sometimes with an addition of nutrient *food-yolk*. Each ovum, as already mentioned, encloses a large nucleus (*germinal vesicle*) and in the interior of that one or more nucleoli or *germinal spots*. The sperms (Fig. 20) are extremely minute bodies, nearly always motile, usually slender and whip-like, tapering towards one extremity, and commonly with a rounded *head* at the other.

The sperms are developed by a succession of cell-divisions from certain cells—the *primitive male cells*—similar in character to immature ova.

5. ORGANS.

The chief systems of organs of an animal are the *integumentary*, the *skeletal*, the *muscular*, the *alimentary* or *digestive*, the *vascular*, the *respiratory*, the *nervous*, the *excretory*, and the *reproductive*.

The **skin** or **integument** consists in the majority of animals of a cellular membrane—the *epidermis*—to which reference has already been made, with, superficial to it, in many animals a non-cellular layer the *cuticle*, and below it usually a fibrous layer which is known as the *dermis*. The epidermis may consist of a single layer or may be stratified; it is frequently ciliated, and some of its cells frequently assume the form of unicellular glands. Modification of its superficial layers of cells gives rise frequently to the formation of hard structures contributing to the development of an *exoskeleton* (*vide infra*).

The *cuticle*, when present, varies greatly in thickness and consistency. Sometimes it is very thin and delicate; in many animals it becomes greatly thickened and hardened so as to form a strong protecting crust, sometimes of a material termed *chitin*, somewhat akin to horn in consistency, sometimes solidified by the deposition of calcareous salts. The cuticle is to be looked upon as a secretion from the cells of the epidermis; but the term is frequently applied in the case of the higher animals, in which a cuticle in the strict sense of the term is absent, either to a superficial part of the epidermis, in which the cells have become altered and horny, or to the whole of that layer.

The layer or layers of the integument situated beneath the epidermis consist of fibrous connective tissue and muscular fibres, constituting the *derm* or *dermis*.

The term **skeleton** or **skeletal system** is applied to a system of hard parts, external or internal, which serves for the protection and support of softer organs and often for the attachment of muscles. This system of hard parts may be external, enclosing the soft parts, or it may lie deep within the latter, covered by integument and muscles: in the former case it is termed an *exoskeleton* or *external skeleton;* in the latter an *endoskeleton* or *internal skeleton*. In many groups of animals both systems are developed. An *exoskeleton* is formed by the thickening and hardening of a part or the whole of one of the layers of the integument enumerated above; or more than one of these layers may take part in its formation. In many invertebrate animals, such as Insects, Crustaceans, and Molluscs, it is a greatly thickened and hardened cuticle which forms the exoskeleton. The horny scales of Reptiles, the feathers of Birds, and the fur of Mammals are examples of an exoskeleton derived from the epidermis, while the bony shell of Turtles and the bony scales of Fishes are examples of a dermal exoskeleton.

When an *endoskeleton* is present, it usually consists either of cartilage or bone or of both; but sometimes it is composed of numerous minute bodies (*spicules*) of carbonate of lime or of a siliceous material.

A skeleton, whether internal or external, is usually composed of a number of pieces which are movably articulated together, and which thus constitute a system of jointed levers on which the muscles act.

The **alimentary** or **digestive system** consists of a cavity or system of cavities into which the food is received, in which it is digested, and through the wall of which the nutrient matters are absorbed; together with certain glands.

In the lowest groups in which a distinct *alimentary* or *enteric cavity* is present it is not distinct from the general cavity of the body, but in all higher forms there is an *enteric canal* which is suspended within the cavity of the body, and the lumen of which is completely shut off from the latter. It may have simply the form of a sac or bag with a single opening which serves both as *mouth* and *anus;* in other cases the sac becomes branched and may take the form of a system of branching canals. In most animals, however, the alimentary canal has the form of a longer or shorter tube beginning at the mouth and ending at the anal opening (Fig. 21). In most cases there are organs in the neighbourhood of the mouth serving for the seizure of food: these may be simply *tentacles* or soft finger-like appendages, or they may have the form of *jaws*, by means of which the food is not only seized but torn to pieces or pounded up to small fragments in the process of mastication. The alimentary canal itself is usually divided into a number of regions which differ both in structure and in function.

In general there may be said to be three regions in the alimentary canal—the *ingestive*, the *digestive* and *absorbent*, and the *egestive* or *efferent.* The *ingestive* region is the part following behind the mouth, by which the food reaches the digestive and absorbent region. But, besides serving as a passage, it may also act as a region in which the food undergoes certain processes, chiefly mechanical, which prepare it for digestion. This ingestive region may comprise a *mouth cavity* or *buccal cavity*, a *pharynx*, an *œsophagus* or *gullet*, with sometimes a muscular *gizzard*, which may be provided with a system of teeth for the further breaking up of the food, and sometimes a *crop* or food-pouch.

The *digestive* and *absorbent* region is the part in which the chemical processes of digestion go on, and from which takes place the absorption of the digested food-substances. Into this part are poured the secretions of the various *digestive glands*, which act on the different ingredients of the food so as to render them more soluble. Through the lining membrane of this part the digested nutrient matter passes, to enter the blood system. This region may present a number of different parts; nearly always there are at least two—a wide sac, the *stomach*, and a narrow tube, the *intestine*.

The *egestive* or *efferent* part of the alimentary canal is the posterior part of the intestine in which digestion and absorption do not go on, or only go on to a limited extent, and which serves merely for the passage to the anal opening of the *fæces* or unabsorbed effete matters of the food.

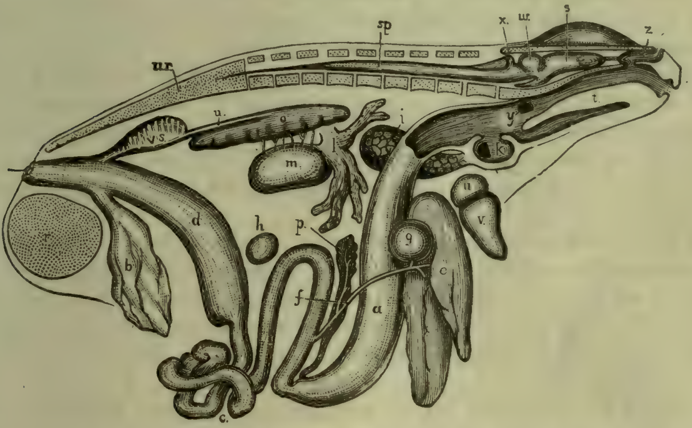


FIG. 21.—General view of the viscera of a male **Frog,** from the right side. *a*, stomach; *b*, urinary bladder; *c*, small intestine; *cl*, cloacal aperture; *d*, large intestine; *e*, liver; *f*, bile duct; *g*, gall bladder; *h*, spleen; *i*, lung; *k*, larynx; *l*, fat body; *m*, testis; *n*, ureter; *o*, kidney; *p*, pancreas; *s*, cerebral hemisphere; *sp*, spinal cord; *t*, tongue; *u*, auricle; *ur*, urostyle; *v*, ventricle; *v.s*, vesicula seminalis; *w*, optic lobe; *x*, cerebellum; *y*, Eustachian recess; *z*, nasal sac. (From Marshall.)

The whole of the interior of the alimentary canal is lined by a layer of cells—the *alimentary* or *enteric epithelium*. The form and arrangement of the cells of this epithelium vary greatly in different groups of animals. Usually, they are vertically elongated, prismatic, or columnar, or pyramidal in shape; frequently they are ciliated. In some lower forms, the cells lining the alimentary cavity have the power, like Amœba, of thrusting forth processes of their protoplasm (Fig. 8, *h*), and of taking minute particles of food into their interior to become digested and absorbed (*intracellular digestion*). Sometimes they are all more or less active in secreting a fluid destined to act on the food and render it more soluble; sometimes this function is confined to certain of the cells, which have a special form; very often the secreting cells line special little pouch-like, simple or branched *glands*, opening by a passage or *duct* into the main cavity of the alimentary canal. Besides these glands formed from specially modified cells of the enteric epithelium there are nearly always present certain large special glands, separate from the alimentary canal itself but opening into it by means of ducts. Of these the most generally-occurring are the glands termed *salivary glands*, *liver*, and *pancreas.* The *salivary glands* have the function of secreting a fluid called the *saliva*, which, in many cases at least, has a special action on starchy matters, converting them into sugar. The ducts of these glands open always, not into the digestive, but into some part of the ingestive part of the alimentary system.

The most important function of the *liver*—properly so called—is one distinct from the process of digestion; its secretion—the *bile*—has, however, at least a mechanical effect on this process, and assists the secretion of the pancreas in its effects upon fat. In lower forms the organ to which the term liver is commonly applied appears in many cases to combine the functions of a true liver with that of a pancreas, and is thus more appropriately termed *hepato-pancreas* or *liver-pancreas.*

The *pancreas* secretes a fluid—the *pancreatic juice*—which has a very important effect in digestion. It renders substances of the nature of albumins soluble by converting them into modifications termed *peptones;* it converts starch into the soluble substance sugar; it acts on fatty matters in such a way as to convert them into *emulsions* which are capable of being taken up and absorbed, and it effects the splitting up of part of the fat into fatty acids and glycerine.

When the food has been acted on by the various digestive secretions, the soluble part of it is fitted to be taken up and absorbed through the wall of the alimentary canal into the blood (in animals in which a blood-system exists), or into the fluid which takes its place. In the higher animals a part of the soluble matter of the food passes directly into the blood contained in the blood-vessels; while another part is taken up by a set of special vessels, the *lacteals*, which are a part of the lymphatic system, and reaches the blood indirectly.

In some of the lower groups of animals there is no system of **blood-vessels,** and the nutrient matter of the food, absorbed through the alimentary canal merely passes from cell to cell throughout the body, or is received into a space or series of spaces containing fluid intervening between the alimentary canal and the wall of the body. But in the majority of animals there is a system of branching tubes containing a special fluid—the *blood*—and it is into this that the nutrient matter absorbed from the food sooner or later finds its way. The blood has for one of its principal functions the conveyance of the nutrient matters from the alimentary canal throughout the body, so that the various organs may select from it the material which they require for the carrying on of their functions. To carry out this office the blood is contained in a complicated system of branching tubes or *blood-vessels.*

The essence of the process of **respiration,** as we have already seen, is an interchange of oxygen and carbonic acid, which goes on between the tissues of an organism and the surrounding medium, whether air or water. During the vital changes which go on in the bodies of all animals, as in Amœba, oxygen is constantly being used up and carbonic acid being formed. The necessary supply of oxygen has to be got from the air, or, in the case of aquatic animals, from the air dissolved in the surrounding water. At the same time the carbonic acid has to be got rid of. In the lowest animals—as for instance Amœba, and many of higher organisation—the oxygen passes inwards and the carbonic acid outwards through the general surface of the body. But in the great majority of animals there is a special set of organs—the organs of respiration—having this particular function. In some animals these organs of respiration are processes, simple or branched, lined by a very delicate membrane, and richly supplied with blood-vessels. Such processes are called *gills* or *branchiæ;* they are specially adapted for the absorption of oxygen dissolved in water.

In other animals the oxygen is obtained directly from the air; and in such air-breathing forms the organ of respiration is very often a sac, either simple or compound, termed a *lung.* The interior of this sac is lined with an epithelium of extreme delicacy, immediately outside of which is a network of microscopic blood-vessels or *capillaries* with thin walls, and the oxygen readily passes from the air in the cavity of the lung through the membrane and the thin wall of the blood-vessel into the blood. In other air-breathing forms the organs of respiration are *tracheæ,* which are ramifying tubes, by means of which the air is conveyed to all parts of the body. In such forms, of which the Insects are examples, the air is conveyed, by means of these tubes, from openings on the surface of the body to all parts, and respiration goes on in all the organs.

In order that the air or water in contact with the surface of the lungs or gills may be renewed, there are usually special mechanical arrangements. In many gill-bearing animals the gills are attached to the legs, and are thus moved about when the animal moves its limbs. In others certain of the limbs are constantly moving in such a way as to cause a current of water to flow over the gills. In air-breathing forms there is usually a pumping apparatus, by means of which the air is alternately drawn into and expelled from the lungs.

In a great number of animals there is in the blood a substance called *hæmoglobin*, which has a strong affinity for oxygen; and the oxygen from the air, when it enters the blood, enters into a state of loose chemical combination with it. In this state, or simply dissolved in the fluid plasma of the blood, the oxygen is conveyed throughout the body.

Thus the blood, besides receiving the solid and liquid food from the alimentary canal and carrying it throughout the body for distribution, receives also the *oxygen* or *gaseous food*, and supplies it to the parts requiring it. In all parts of the body in which vital action is taking place chemical changes are constantly going on. These chemical changes in the tissues, having for their result the production of heat, of motion, secretion, and nerve-action, are for the most part of the nature of *oxidations*, and involve a constant consumption of oxygen, while a product which becomes formed as a result of this action is *carbonic acid gas*.

To carry out all the functions which it has to perform as a distributor of nourishment and oxygen, and a remover of carbonic acid, the blood has to be moved about through the vessels—to *circulate* throughout the various organs. In the lowest forms in which a definite blood-system is to be recognised, this movement is effected in great measure by the general movements of the body of the animal. In others certain of the vessels contract and drive the blood through the system; such contractions are of a *peristaltic* character, the contractions being of the nature of constrictions running in a definite direction along the course of the vessel with an effect similar to that produced by drawing the hand along a compressible india-rubber tube.

In all higher forms the movement of the blood is effected by means of a special organ—the *heart*. The heart is a muscular organ which by its contractions forces the blood through the system of vessels. In its simplest form it usually consists of two chambers, both with muscular walls,—the one, called the *auricle*, receiving the blood and driving it into the other, which is called the *ventricle*. The latter, in turn, when it contracts, drives the blood through the vessels to the various parts of the body—the return of the blood backwards to the auricle from the ventricle being prevented by the presence of certain *valves*, which act like folding doors opening from the auricle towards the ventricle, but closing when pressure is exerted in the opposite direction. In the higher animals the heart becomes a more complex organ than this, with a larger number of chambers and a more elaborate system of valves.

Carbonic acid, as already mentioned, is a waste-product constantly being produced in the tissues, and being carried off by the blood to pass out by the gills or lungs. Besides the carbonic acid, there are constantly being formed waste-substances of another class—viz., substances containing nitrogen, of which *uric acid* and *urea* are the principal ultimate forms. These are separated from the blood and thrown out of the body by a distinct set of organs called **renal organs,** or **organs of urinary excretion.** The form of these organs varies greatly in the different groups; in many cases they are more or less intimately connected with the genital system.

In place of the simple contractions and extensions of the protoplasm which constitute the only movements of Amœba, the higher animals are capable of complex and definite movements. These are brought about by the agency of a set of organs termed the **muscles.** A muscle is a band or sheet of muscular fibres endowed in the living state with the property of *contractility*, by virtue of which, when stimulated in certain ways, it contracts in the direction of its length, becoming shortened, and, at the same time, thickened (Fig. 22). The extremities of the muscle are frequently composed, not of contractile muscular fibres, but of a form of strong fibrous connective tissue—the *tendon* of the muscle. The ends of the muscle are usually firmly attached to two different parts of the jointed framework or skeleton, external or internal, and, when the muscle contracts and becomes shortened, these two parts are drawn nearer to one another.

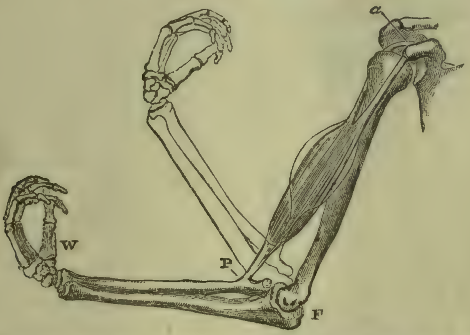


FIG. 22.—Bones of the human arm and fore-arm with the biceps muscle, showing the shortening and thickening of the muscle during contraction and the consequent change in the relative position of the bones—viz., flexion of the fore-arm on the upper arm. (From Huxley's *Physiology*.)

In all but the most lowly-organised animals there is a system of organs—the **nervous system**—by means of which a communication is effected between the various parts of the body, enabling them to work in harmony, and by means of which also a communication is established between the organism and the external world, The two essential elements of the nervous system—the nerve-cells and nerve-fibres—have a regular arrangement which varies in the different animal types, both as regards structural details and the relations borne to the other systems of organs; but there are always to be recognised two chief parts or sets of parts—the *central* and the *peripheral*.

The *central parts* of the nervous system consist (Fig. 23) of certain aggregations of nerve matter, known as *nerve-ganglia*, containing a large number of nerve-cells; when a relatively large mass of this matter is collected together it is termed the *brain*. To or from these central parts pass all the systems of nerve-fibres, constituting the *peripheral* part of the system; the former have the office both of receiving impressions conveyed by the nerve-fibres from the surface, from the organs of special sense, and from the internal organs, and of sending off messages through similar channels to the various parts of the body, to muscles, to glands, to alimentary canal, and to vascular system. When a movement is to be effected a message passes from the nerve-centre along a nerve-fibre to a muscle and causes it to contract; when an organ requires the amount of blood supplied to it to be increased or diminished a message is conveyed along a nerve-fibre and causes the dilatation or contraction of the blood-vessels of the part; and a similar initiatory or controlling influence is exerted over the activities of all the organs.

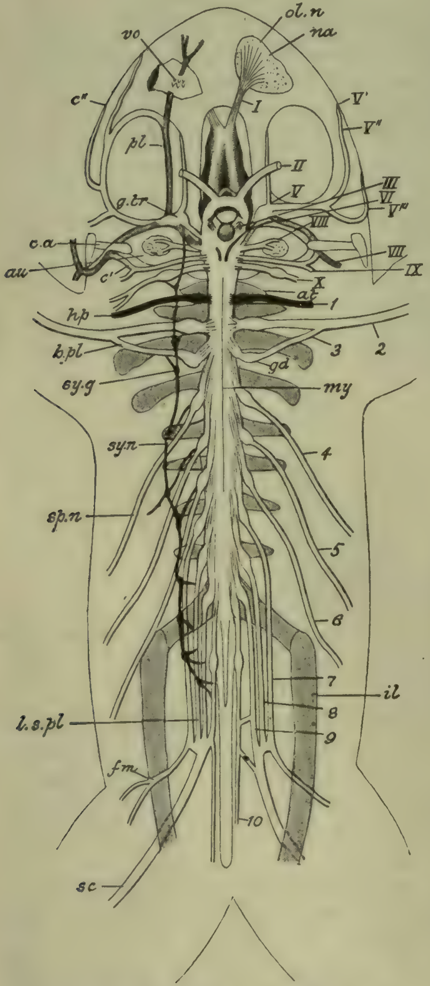


FIG. 23.—Nervous system of the **Frog**. (From Howes's *Atlas*.)

In certain groups of animals all the impressions from the external world are received through the integument of the general surface, and this is the case in all animals with the general impressions of touch and of heat and cold. The sensitiveness of the integument to such general impressions may be increased by the presence in it of a variety of tactile papillæ or corpuscles having nerve-fibres terminating in them. In most animals, however, there are certain organs, the **organs of special sense,** adapted to receiving impressions of special kinds—*eyes* for the reception of the impressions produced by light, *ears* for the reception of those produced by the waves of sound, *olfactory organs* or organs of smell, and *gustatory organs* or organs of taste. The most rudimentary form of eye is little more than a dot of pigment which absorbs some of the rays of bright light—these producing a nerve-disturbance in certain neighbouring nerve-cells. To this may be added clear, highly-refracting bodies which intensify the effect. In the higher types of eye there are the same essential parts—the clear, highly-refracting substance, the pigment and the nerve-cells; but each has undergone a development resulting in the construction of an organ adapted to the reception of light-impressions of a very definite character. The highly-refracting body assumes the form of a *lens* for the focussing of the light-rays; the nerve-cells are arranged in a regular layer, the *retina,* from which nerve-fibres pass to the central part of the nervous system; the pigment is so arranged as to absorb the light rays and prevent their passage beyond the retina, and in certain cases lines also a diaphragm, the *iris*, with a central aperture through which the rays of light are admitted to the central parts of the eye. In some animals (Insects, Crustacea) the eye consists of a very large number of independent elements, each with its refracting apparatus, its nervous element, and its absorbing pigment.

The *ear* in its simplest form is a membranous sac or *otocyst* with internally projecting stiff cilia, and containing a liquid in which there lie a number of particles of carbonate of lime. The sound-waves evidently set in vibration the liquid and its contained calcareous particles, and by means of these vibrations acting on the cilia, an impression of a definite character is produced in the cells of a neighbouring nerve-ganglion. In higher forms the apparatus for receiving the vibrations becomes extremely complex, and there is elaborated a nervous mechanism by which sounds of different pitch and intensity produce impressions of a distinct character. The organ of hearing frequently assumes the additional function of an organ ministering to the sense of *rotation* and thus has an important part to play in the maintenance of the equilibrium of the body.

The essential elements of the **reproductive organs**—the *ova* and *spermatozoa*—have already been briefly alluded to (p. 28). The ova are developed in an organ termed the *ovary*, and the sperms in an organ termed the *spermary* or *testis*. Sometimes ovaries and testes are developed in the same individual, when the arrangement is termed *monœcious* or *hermaphrodite*; sometimes the ovaries occur in one set of individuals—the females—and the testes in another set—the males, when the term *unisexual* or *diœcious* is employed. Very frequently the male differs from the female in other respects besides the nature of the reproductive elements—in size, colour, and the like; when such differences are strongly marked the animal is said to be *sexually dimorphic.* The ova and sperms are usually conveyed to the exterior by canals or ducts—the ovarian ducts or *oviducts*, and the *testicular ducts*, *spermiducts*, or *vasa deferentia.* In some instances the ova are impregnated after being discharged from the oviducts, and the development of the young takes place externally; in other cases the impregnation takes place in the oviduct, and the young become fully developed in the interior of a special enlargement of the oviduct termed the *uterus.* In the former case the animal is said to be *oviparous*, in the latter *viviparous*; but there are numerous intermediate gradations between these two extremes.

6. THE REPRODUCTION OF ANIMALS.

In a limited number of groups of animals reproduction takes place by means of cells corresponding to ova developed in organs similar to ovaries, but without impregnation by means of sperms. This phenomenon is known as **parthenogenesis.**

Besides the sexual process of reproduction by means of ova and spermatozoa, there are in many classes of animals various **asexual** modes of multiplication. One of these—the process of *simple fission*—has been already noticed in connection with the reproduction of Amœba. The formation of *spores* is an asexual mode of multiplication which occurs only in the Protozoa, and will be described in the account of that group. Multiplication by *budding* takes place in a number of different classes of animals. In this form of reproduction a process or *bud* (Fig. 24, *bd*) is given off from some part of the parent animal; this bud sooner or later assumes the form of the complete animal, and may become detached from the parent either before or after its development has been completed, or may remain in permanent vital connection with the parent form.

When the buds, after becoming fully developed, remain in vital continuity with the parent, a sort of compound animal, consisting of a greater or smaller number of connected units, is the result. Such a compound organism is termed a *colony*, and the component units are termed *zooids.* In some cases such a colony is produced by a process which is more correctly termed *incomplete fission* than budding.

Alternation of generations; heterogamy; pædogenesis.—In the life-history of a considerable number of animals, a stage in which reproduction takes place by a process of budding or fission alternates with a stage in which there occurs a true sexual mode of reproduction. Such a phenomenon is termed *alternation of generations* or *metagenesis*. The term *heterogamy* is applied to cases in which two different sexual generations—usually a true sexual and a parthenogenetic—alternate with one another. *Pædogenesis*, or the development of young by a sexual process from individuals that have not attained the adult condition, is a phenomenon which is to be observed in some groups of animals.

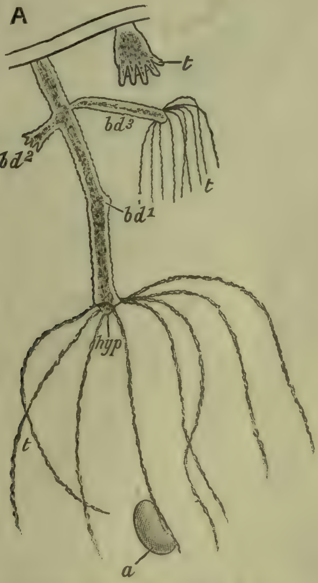


FIG. 24.—Fresh-water polype (**Hydra**), two specimens, the one expanded, the other contracted, showing multiplication by budding. *bd.*¹ *bd.*² *bd.*³ buds in various stages of growth. (From Parker's *Biology*.)

7. SYMMETRY.

The general disposition or **symmetry** of the parts in an animal presents two main modifications—the *radial* and the *bilateral*. The *gastrula* (p. 21) is the simplest and most generalised form among multicellular animals or Metazoa; but no adult animal retains this simple shape. In the gastrula we may imagine a central *primary axis* (Fig. 25, *AB*) passing through the middle of the blastopore and of the archenteric cavity, and a series of *secondary axes* (*ab*, *cd*,) running at right angles to this to the outer surface. In a symmetrical gastrula the secondary axes would be all equal. Many animals are in the adult condition similar in their symmetry to the gastrula, except that there are special developments along a series of regularly arranged radiating secondary axes; these radial developments may be in the form of tentacles or radially arranged processes (Fig. 26), or may assume the character of a radial arrangement of internal parts. Such an animal is said to be *radially symmetrical.* The body of a radially symmetrical animal is capable of being divided into a series of equal radial parts or *antimeres,* each of which is symmetrically disposed with regard to one of the secondary or radial axes.

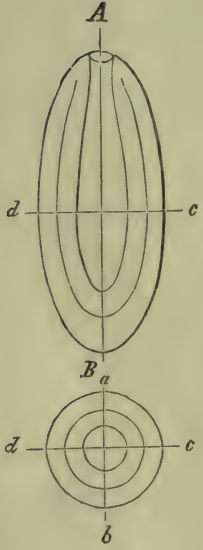


Fig. 25.—Diagram of the axes of the body. AB, primary axis; ab, cd, secondary axes. The lower figure is a transverse section of the upper one showing its two secondary axes. (From Gegenbaur.)

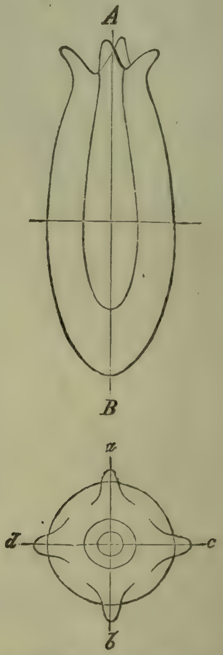


Fig. 26.—Radial symmetry. Letters as in Fig. 25. The processes at A are the tentacles; the lower figure represents the upper or oral surface. (From Gegenbaur.)

In animals which are not permanently fixed, locomotion usually takes place in the direction of the primary axis of the body, and one side, habitually directed downwards, becomes modified differently from the other which is habitually directed upwards; a *lower* or *ventral* surface becomes distinguishable from an *upper* or *dorsal.* The radial symmetry now becomes disturbed; the secondary axes have become unequal; the *dorso-ventral* or *vertical* secondary axes are, to a greater or less extent, different from the *transverse* or *horizontal* secondary axes, and the body of an animal having such a disposition of the parts is divisible into two equal lateral halves or *hemisomes* by a median vertical plane passing through the primary axis. This is the *bilateral symmetry* observable in all but a few types of animals.

Sometimes the bilaterally symmetrical animal is unsegmented; sometimes it is divided into a series of *segments* or *metameres*. A distinct *head* may be present or absent. The head end or anterior end is that which, save in exceptional cases, is directed forwards in locomotion. It is towards this end that the organs of special sense are situated, as well as the opening of the mouth and the organs for the prehension and mastication of food. A head is developed when the anterior part bearing these structures is separated off externally from the rest. In segmented animals the head consists of a number of segments amalgamated together, and it contains the brain or the principal central ganglia of the nervous system.

8. THE PRIMARY SUBDIVISIONS OR PHYLA OF THE ANIMAL KINGDOM.

The various systems of organ)—digestive, circulatory, nervous, excretory, etc.—present under one form or another in all the higher groups of animals, are variously arranged and occupy various relative positions in different cases, producing a number of widely different plans of animal structure. According as their structure conforms to one or another of these great plans, animals are referred to one or another of the corresponding great divisions or *phyla* of the animal kingdom. That animals do present widely differing plans of structure is a matter of common knowledge. We have only to compare the true Fish, such as Cod, Haddock, etc., in a fishmonger's shop with the Lobsters and the Oysters, to recognise the general nature of such a distinction. The first-named are characterised by the possession of a backbone and skull, with a brain and spinal cord, and of two pairs of limbs (the paired fins); they belong to the great vertebrate or backboned group—the division *Vertebrata* of the phylum *Chordata*. The Lobsters, on the other hand, in which these special vertebrate structures are absent, possess a jointed body enclosed in a hard jointed case, and a number of pairs of limbs also enclosed in hard jointed cases, and adapted to different purposes in different parts of the body—some being feelers, others jaws, others legs: their general type of structure is that which characterises the phylum *Arthropoda*. The Oysters, again, with their hard calcareous shell secreted by a pair of special folds of the skin constituting what is termed the *mantle*, and with a special arrangement of the nervous system and other organs which need not be described here, are referable to the phylum *Mollusca.* Other familiar animals are readily to be recognised as belonging to one or other of these great phyla. A Prawn, a Crab, a Blue-bottle Fly, a Spider, are all on the same general plan as the Lobster: they are jointed animals with jointed limbs, and they have the internal organs occupying similar positions with relation to one another. They are all members of the phylum *Arthropoda.* Again, a Mussel, a Snail, a Squid are all to be set side by side with the Oyster as conforming to the same general type of structure; they are all members of the phylum *Mollusca.* While a Dog, a Lizard, a Fowl are obviously nearer the Fish: they all have skull and backbone, brain and spinal cord, and two pairs of limbs; they are all members of the great group *Chordata.*

Altogether twelve phyla are to be recognised, viz.:—

I. *Protozoa*
II. *Porifera*
III. *Cœlenterata*
IV. *Platyhelminthes*
V. *Nemathelminthes*
VI. *Trochelminthes*
VII. *Molluscoida*
VIII. *Echinodermata*
IX. *Annulata*
X. *Arthropoda*
XI. *Mollusca*
XII. *Chordata*

SECTION II

PHYLUM PROTOZOA

In the preceding section we learnt the essential structure of an animal cell, and it was pointed out that in the lowest organisms the entire individual consists of a single cell. All such *unicellular* animals are placed in the lowest primary subdivision of the animal kingdom—the phylum Protozoa.

We have also learnt that cells vary considerably in character. They may be *amœboid* or capable of protruding temporary processes of protoplasm called pseudopods; *flagellate*, or produced into one or more—always a small number—of threads having an intermittent lashing movement; *ciliated*, or produced into numerous rhythmically moving threads of protoplasm; or *encysted*, the protoplasm being enclosed in a cell-wall. Moreover, under certain circumstances, amœboid cells may fuse with one another to form a *plasmodium*.

These well-marked phases in the life of the cell allow us to divide the Protozoa into subdivisions called *Classes*. The same organism may be amœboid, flagellate, encysted, and plasmodial at various stages of its existence, but nevertheless we find certain forms in which the dominant phase in the life-history is amœboid, others which are characteristically flagellate or ciliated, others again in which the tendency to form plasmodia is a distinctive feature. In this way five well-marked groups of unicellular organisms may be distinguished.

Class 1. Rhizopoda.—Protozoa in which the amœboid form is predominant, the animal always forming pseudopods. Flagella are often present in the young, and occasionally in the adult. Encystation frequently occurs.

Class 2. Mycetozoa.—Terrestrial Protozoa in which the plasmodial phase is specially characteristic, as also is the formation of large and often complex cysts.

Class 3. Mastigophora.—Protozoa in which the flagellate form is predominant, although the amœboid and encysted conditions frequently occur.

Class 4. SPOROZOA.—Parasitic Protozoa without organs of locomotion in the adult. Encystation is almost universal, and the young may be flagellate or amœboid.

Class 5. INFUSORIA.—Protozoa which are always ciliated, either throughout life or in the young condition.

CLASS I.—RHIZOPODA.

1. EXAMPLE OF THE CLASS—*Amœba proteus.*

Amœba has been fully described in the preceding chapter; it will therefore be unnecessary to do more than recapitulate the most essential features in its organisation.

It is an irregular mass of protoplasm (Fig. 27, E) about $\frac{1}{8}$ mm. in diameter, produced into irregular processes or *pseudopods* (*psd*) of variable size and form, and capable of being protruded and retracted often with considerable rapidity. The protoplasm is divisible into a granular internal substance or *endosarc* and a clear outer layer or *ectosarc;* the difference between the two is hardly a structural one, but depends simply on the accumulation of granules in the central portion. The granules are, for the most part, various products of metabolism—proteinaceous or fatty.

Imbedded in the endosarc is a large *nucleus* (*nu*), of spherical form, and consisting of a clear achromatic substance, enclosed in a membrane, and containing minute granules of chromatin. The *contractile vacuole* (*c. vac.*), a very characteristic organ of the Protozoa, lies in the ectosarc, and exhibits rhythmical movements, contracting and expanding at more or less regular intervals.

Amœba feeds by ingesting minute organisms (Fig. 27, C, *f. vac.*) or fragments of organisms—*i.e.*, by enveloping them in its substance, retaining them until the proteids they contain are dissolved and assimilated, and then crawling away and leaving the undigested remnants behind.

Amœbæ are sometimes found to undergo *encystation;* the pseudopods are withdrawn and the protoplasm surrounds itself with a cell-wall or *cyst* (D, *cy*), from which, after a period of rest, it emerges and resumes active life. The cyst is formed of a *chitinoid* material—*i.e.*, a nitrogenous substance allied in composition to horn and to the chitin of which the armour of Insects, Crayfishes, etc., is composed.

Reproduction takes place by *simple* or *binary fission;* direct or amitotic division of the nucleus is followed by division into two of the cell-body (I). Rarely two Amœbæ have been observed to *conjugate* or undergo complete fusion, but nothing is known of the result of this process or of its precise significance in this particular case.

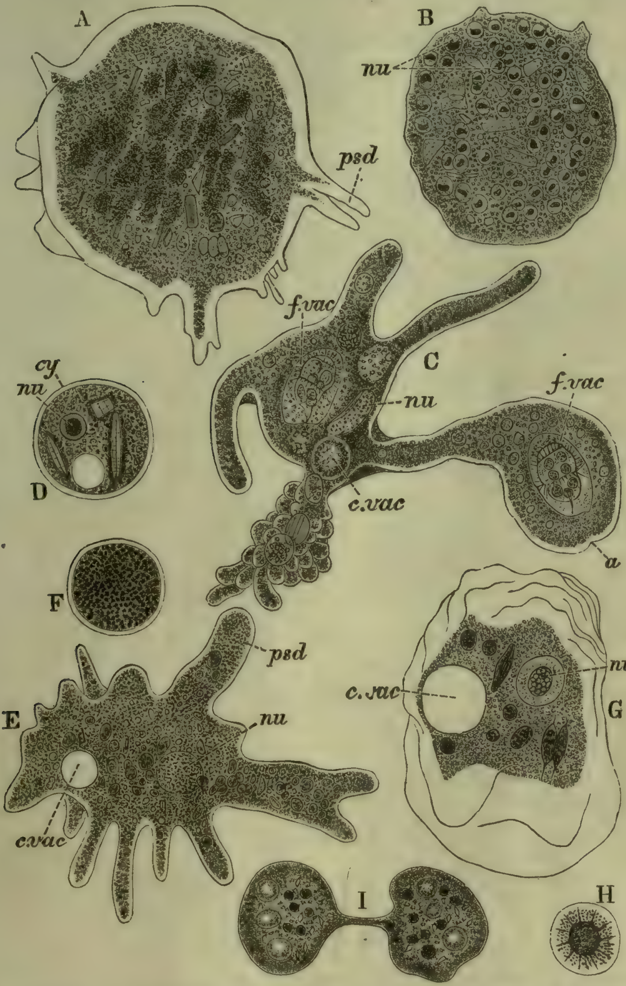


Fig. 27.—**Amœba.** A, *A. quarta;* B, the same killed and stained; C, *A. proteus;* D, encysted specimen; E, *A. proteus;* F, nucleus of same, stained; G, *A. verrucosa;* H, nucleus of same, stained; I, *A. proteus*, undergoing binary fission; *a*, point of union of enclosing pseudopods; *c. vac.* contractile vacuole; *cy.* cyst; *f. vac.* food vacuole; *nu.* nucleus; *psd.* pseudopod. (From Parker's *Biology*, after Leidy, Gruber, and Howes.)

2. CLASSIFICATION AND GENERAL ORGANISATION.

The Rhizopoda differ among themselves in the character of their pseudopods, which may be short and blunt or long and delicate; in the number of nuclei; and in the presence or absence of a hard shell within or around the protoplasm. The following five orders may be distinguished:—

ORDER 1.—LOBOSA.

Rhizopoda with short, blunt pseudopods.

ORDER 2.—LABYRINTHULIDEA.

Rhizopoda having a network of fine pseudopods, in which corpuscles travel to and fro.

ORDER 3.—FORAMINIFERA.

Shelled Rhizopoda with fine, branched, and anastomosing pseudopods.

ORDER 4.—HELIOZOA.

Rhizopoda with fine, stiff, radiating pseudopods.

ORDER 5.—RADIOLARIA.

Rhizopoda having a shell in the form of a perforated central capsule, and usually, in addition, a siliceous skeleton: the pseudopods are long and delicate.

Systematic Position of the Example.

Amœba proteus is one of many species of the genus *Amœba*, belonging to the family *Amœbidæ*, of the order *Lobosa*. The blunt pseudopods not uniting to form networks place it among the Lobosa: the absence of a shell among the Amœbidæ. The genus Amœba is distinguished by the presence of one or more nuclei, and of a contractile vacuole. In A. proteus the pseudopods are of considerable length and sometimes branched, and there is a single nucleus, having its chromatin in the form of scattered granules.

ORDER 1.—LOBOSA.

General Structure.—The members of this group all agree with Amœba in essential respects, their most characteristic feature being the short, blunt pseudopods. The chief variations in structure upon which the genera and species are founded have to do with the number and character of the nuclei, the form of the pseudopods, and the presence or absence of a shell.

In Amœba itself there may be one (Fig. 27, E) or several (B) nuclei, the chromatin of the nucleus may be arranged in various ways (F, H), and the pseudopods may be prolongations of considerable relative size (C), or mere wave-like elevations of the surface (G). Sometimes specimens are found in which neither nucleus nor vacuole is present; these are placed in the genus *Protamœba* (Fig. 28). Very probably, however, future investigation will show this and other non-nucleate forms to possess a potential nucleus in the form of minute scattered granules of chromatin.

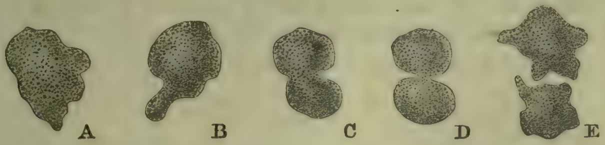


FIG. 28.—**Protamœba primitiva.** Showing changes of form and three stages in binary fission. (After Haeckel, from Parker's *Biology.*)

The largest of the naked or shell-less Lobosa is *Pelomyxa*, which may be as much as 8 mm. in diameter; it is multi-nucleate and is further distinguished by numerous non-contractile vacuoles in the endosarc.

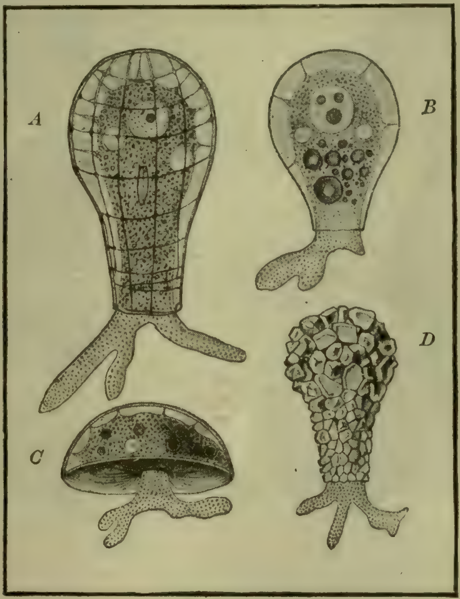


FIG. 29.—A, **Quadrula symmetrica**; B, **Hyalosphenia lata**; C, **Arcella vulgaris**; D, **Difflugia pyriformis.** (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy.*)

Skeleton.—We may understand the relation of the shelled to the shell-less Lobosa by supposing an Amœba to draw in the pseudopods from the greater part of its body, and to secrete, from that part only, a cell-wall; such a cell-wall or capsule would differ from a cyst in having an aperture at one end to allow of the protrusion of pseudopods from a small naked area. This is exactly what we find in *Arcella* and its allies (Fig. 29, A–C), in which the shell is chitinoid. A different kind of shell is found in *Difflugia* (D), which secretes a gelatinous coating to which minute sand-grains and other foreign particles become attached.

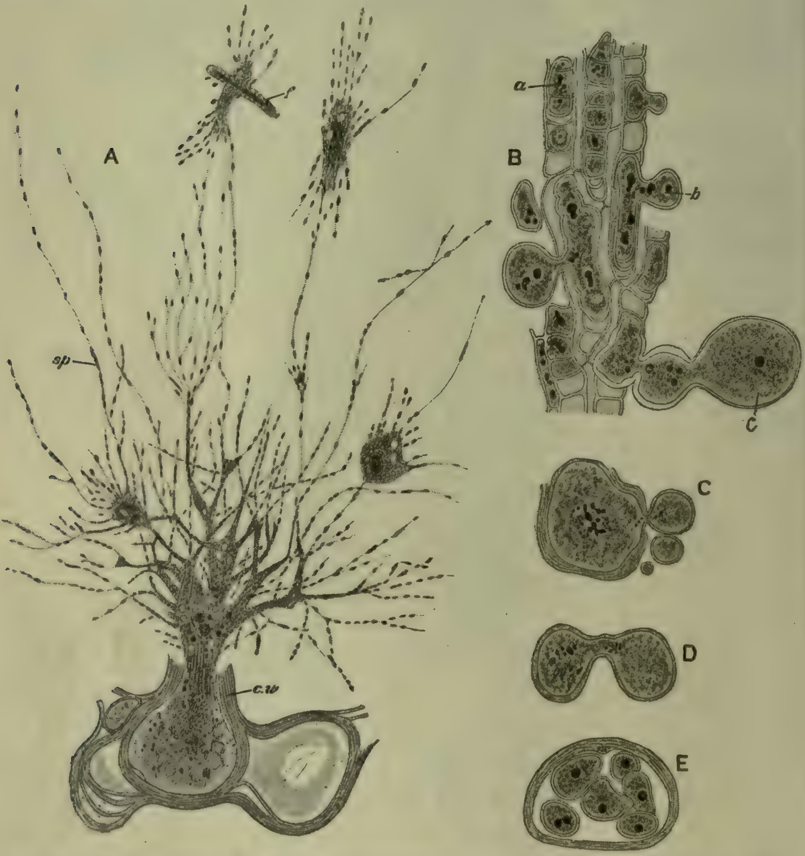


FIG. 30.—**Chlamydomyxa labyrinthuloides.** A, active phase; *c.w.* cell-wall; *f.* fragment of Alga ingested as food; *sp.* spindles in course of pseudopods; B, resting stage—numerous individuals in the cells of a fragment of *Sphagnum*; *a*, specimen completely enclosed in cell; *b* and *c*, specimens which have emerged through the ruptured cell-wall; C, specimen multiplying by budding; D, by binary fission; E, by internal fission. (A after Archer, B—E after Geddes.)

ORDER 2.—LABYRINTHULIDEA.

In this group there are only two genera—*Labyrinthula* and *Chlamydomyxa*. *Chlamydomyxa* (Fig. 30) has hitherto been found only in Ireland, where it occurs in association with the common Bog-moss (*Sphagnum*). Like Amœba, it may exist either in the active or in the resting condition. In the resting stage (B, *a*, *b*, *c*) it consists of a mass of protoplasm surrounded by a laminated wall of cellulose and coloured green by *chlorophyll*—the ordinary pigment of green plants. There are also specks of bright red, due to a pigment called *hœmatochrome*, allied to chlorophyll, and small globular bodies of a bluish tint. In the young condition (*a*) the resting cells are globular and microscopic, lying enclosed within the cells of the Sphagnum, but as they grow in this confined space they become elongated and irregular, and finally burst through the wall of the moss-cell, forming masses (*b*, *c*) quite visible to the naked eye. These may bud (C) or undergo binary fission (D); or the protoplasm, retreating from the cell-wall, may divide into numerous small masses, each of which surrounds itself with a new cell-wall (E).

During the whole of the resting stage there is nothing to distinguish Chlamydomyxa from a plant, and it would certainly be placed among the lower Algæ if the active phase of its existence were unknown.

In the active stage (A) the protoplasm protrudes from the ruptured cell-wall in the form of pseudopods produced into a complex network of extremely delicate filaments, which may unite to form larger masses of protoplasm at a considerable distance from the original cell. At the same time the bluish spheres (*sp.*) found in the resting stage take on a spindle shape and travel slowly along the filaments.

The filaments are used to capture living organisms (*f.*) which are digested by the protoplasm surrounding them, the products of nutrition being conveyed along the network to all parts of the organism. Thus in the active condition the nutrition of Chlamydomyxa is *holozoic*, *i.e.* strictly like that of an animal, the food consisting of living protoplasm. In the resting stage, on the other hand, nutrition is purely *holophytic*, *i.e.* like that of an ordinary green plant, the food consisting of the carbon dioxide and various mineral salts dissolved in the water.

Labyrinthula (Fig. 31) differs in many respects from Chlamydomyxa. In the resting stage (B) it consists of a heap of small nucleated cells (*c.*) connected by a homogeneous substance. In the active condition (A) it is produced into long delicate filaments, not formed of protoplasm, along which the cells (*c.*) travel, in the same manner as the spindles of Chlamydomyxa. Labyrinthula has, therefore

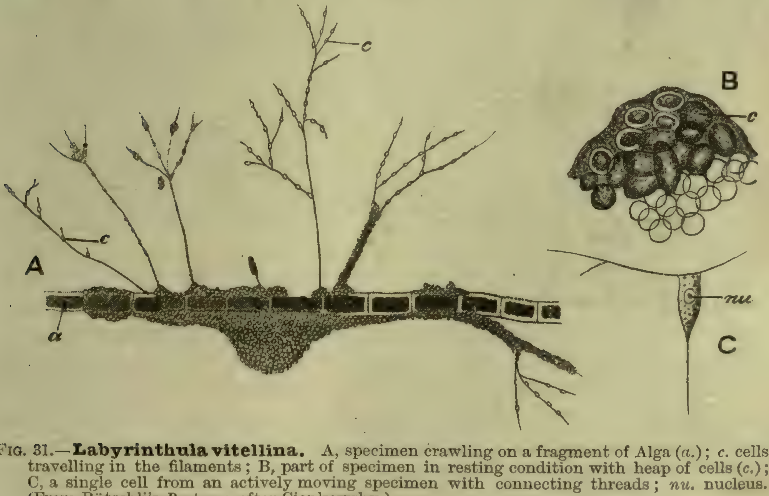


Fig. 31.—**Labyrinthula vitellina.** A, specimen crawling on a fragment of Alga (*a.*); *c.* cells travelling in the filaments; B, part of specimen in resting condition with heap of cells (*c.*); C, a single cell from an actively moving specimen with connecting threads; *nu.* nucleus. (From Bütschli's *Protozoa*, after Cienkowsky.)

the character, not of a single cell, but of a *cell-colony*, formed of numerous cells connected by a non-protoplasmic substance. Chlamydomyxa, on the other hand, has the character of a single cell, and no nuclei have been found in the spindles. Thus further investigation is necessary before the association of these two organisms in one group is fully justified, and it has recently been proposed to include Labyrinthula among the Mycetozoa.

ORDER 3.—FORAMINIFERA.

General Structure.—The members of this order differ from the Lobosa and agree with the active phase of Chlamydomyxa in the fact that their pseudopods are long and delicate, and unite to form networks; moreover, with few exceptions, they agree with Arcella and its allies in possessing a shell. In the majority of cases this shell is formed of calcium carbonate.

One of the simplest members of the group is *Microgromia* (Fig. 32). It consists of a protoplasmic body (B), with a single nucleus (*nu.*) and contractile vacuole (*c. vac.*), enclosed in a chitinoid cell-wall or shell (*sh.*) with an aperture at one end through which the protoplasm protrudes and is produced into delicate radiating pseudopods. The animal multiplies by binary fission, and the individuals or *zooids* thus produced remain united in larger or smaller clusters or cell-colonies (A). Sometimes the cell-body of a zooid divides, and one of the daughter-cells creeps out of the cell-wall (C), and, after moving about for a time like an Amœba, draws in its pseudopods, assumes an oval form, and sends out two flagella by means of which it is propelled through the water (D). We shall find other instances in which the young of a Rhizopod is

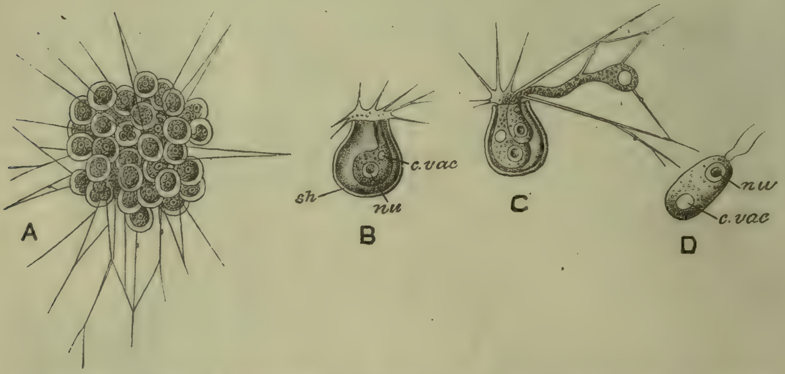


FIG. 32.—**Microgromia socialis.** A, entire colony; B, single zooid; C, zooid which has undergone binary fission, with one of the daughter-cells creeping out of the shell; D, flagellula; *c. vac.* contractile vacuole; *nu.* nucleus; *sh.* shell. (From Bütschli's *Protozoa*, after Hertwig and Lesser.)

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

a *flagellula, i.e.* a cell provided with one or more flagella, which, if its history were not known, would be included among the Mastigophora.

Platoum (Fig. 33, A) is a form resembling Microgromia, but illustrating a very interesting type of colony. The protoplasm flows out of the mouth of the shell in the form of a long plate (B) which sends off rounded side branches, and each of these, acquiring a cell-wall, becomes a zooid of the simple cell-colony.

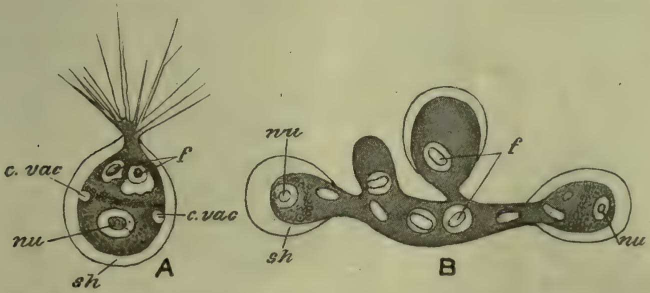


Fig. 33.—**Platoum stercoreum.** A, single zooid; B, formation of colony; *c. vac.* contractile vacuole; *f.* food particles; *nu.* nucleus; *sh.* shell. (From Bütschli's *Protozoa*, after Cienkowsky.)

Gromia (Fig. 34, *1*) leads us to the more typical Foraminifera. The protoplasm of this form protrudes from the mouth (*a*) of the chitinoid shell (*sh.*) and flows around it so that the shell becomes an internal structure. The pseudopods are very long and delicate, and unite to form a complicated network, exhibiting a streaming movement of granules, and serving, as usual, to capture prey.

Skeleton.—*Squammulina* (Fig. 34, *3*) differs from Gromia mainly in having the shell formed of calcium carbonate, so as to have the character of a hollow, stony sphere, with an aperture at one end. It appears that all the calcareous Foraminifera begin life in this simple form; but in the majority of cases the adult structure attains a considerable degree of complexity. The protoplasm of the original globular chamber overflows, as it were, through the aperture; but, instead of forming an elongated plate from which side buds are given off, as in Platoum, the extended mass rounds itself off, and secretes a calcareous shell in organic connection with the original shell, and communicating with it by the original aperture. In this way a two-chambered shell is produced, and a repetition of the process gives us the many-chambered shell found in most genera. New chambers may be added in a straight line (Fig. 35, *3*), or alternately on opposite sides of the original chamber (*5*), or with each new chamber enclosing its predecessor (*4*), or in a flat spiral, each new chamber being larger than its predecessor (*7*, *8*), or in a spire in which the newer chambers overlap the older (*9*, *10*), or in an irregular spiral of globular chambers (*6*), or in an extremely compact spiral in which the new chambers completely enclose their predecessors (*11*). In all cases adjacent chambers communicate with one another either by a single large hole or by numerous small ones: the protoplasm is thus perfectly continuous throughout the organism. With the

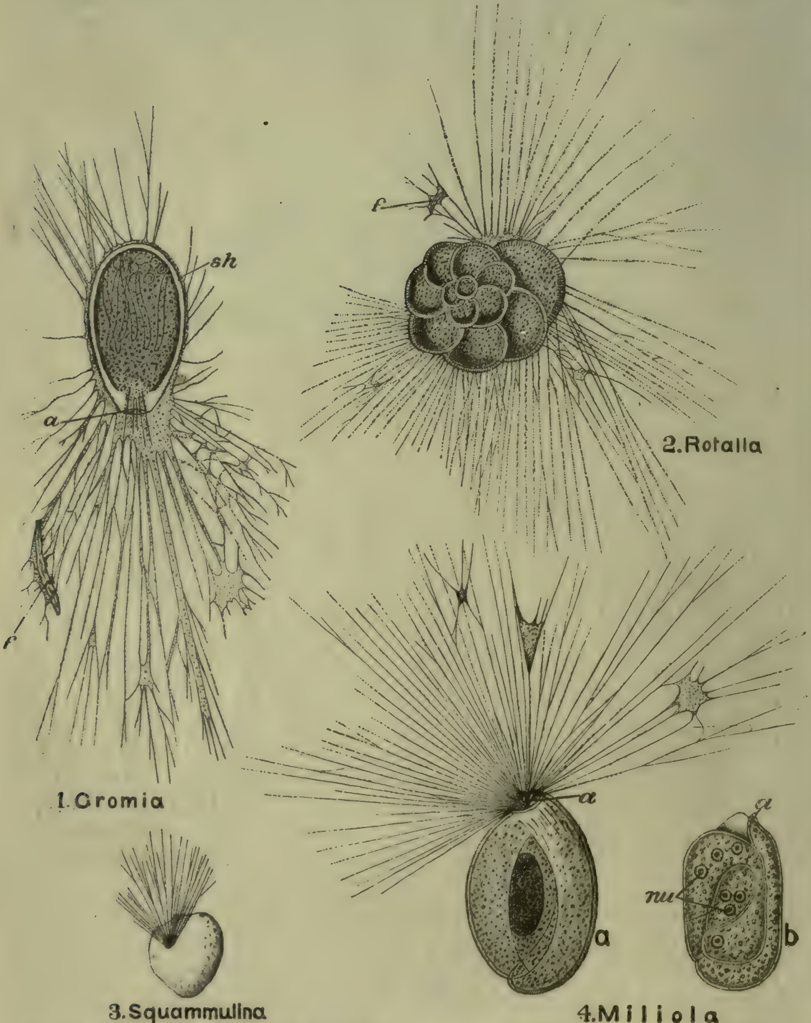


Fig. 34.—Various forms of **Foraminifera.** In *4*, Miliola, *a*, shows the living animal; *b*, the same killed and stained; *a*. aperture of shell; *f*. food particles; *nu*. nucleus; *sh*. shell. (From Bütschli's *Protozoa* and Claus's *Zoology*.)

increase in the number of chambers there is a multiplication of the nucleus (Fig. 34, 4, b, *nu*).

The shell presents two leading types of structure, apart from

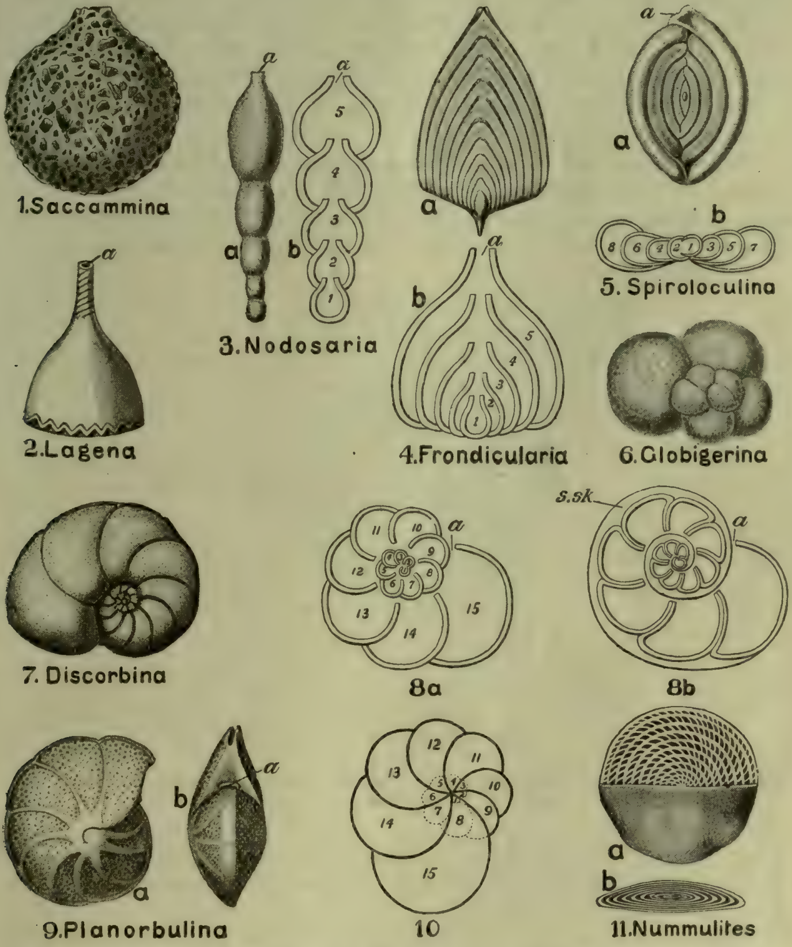

1.Saccammina
a
2.Lagena
a
a
a
b
5
4
3
2
1
3.Nodosaria
a
a
b
5
4
3
2
1
4.Frondicularia
a
a
b
8
6
4
2
1
3
5
7
5. Spiroloculina
6. Globigerina
7. Discorbina
11
10
a
9
12
8
6
7
13
15
14
8a
s.sk
a
8b
a
b
a
9.Planorbulina
12
11
13
10
5
4
3
6
2
9
7
8
14
15
10
a
b
11.Nummulites

FIG. 35.—Shells of **Foraminifera.** In *3*, *4*, and *5*, *a* shows the surface view, and *b* a section; *8a* is a diagram of a coiled cell without supplemental skeleton; *8b* of a similar form with supplemental skeleton (*s. sk.*); and *10* of a form with overlapping whorls; in *11a* half the shell is shown in horizontal section; *b* is a vertical section; *a*. aperture of shell; 1—15, successive chambers, 1 being always the oldest or initial chamber. (After Carpenter, Brady, and Bütschli.)

the form and arrangement of the chambers: either it is of a porcelain-like texture and provided with a single terminal aperture, (Fig. 34, *4*), or the texture is glassy and the whole shell perforated with very minute apertures, through which, as well as through the terminal aperture, pseudopods are protruded (Fig. 34, *2*).

In many cases additional complexity is attained by the development of what is called the *supplemental skeleton* (Fig. 35, *8b*, *s. sk.*). This consists of a deposit of calcium carbonate outside the original shell: it is traversed by a complex system of canals, containing protoplasm, and is sometimes produced into large spines. Foraminifera in which this secondary skeleton occurs are sometimes of considerable size—2–3 cm. in diameter—and of extraordinary complexity.

Many Foraminifera resemble Difflugia in having a skeleton formed of sand-grains, sponge-spicules, and other foreign bodies cemented together by a secretion from the protoplasm (Fig. 35, *1*). Some of these are formed on the imperforate type, having the protoplasm protruded from a single terminal aperture; others on the perforate type, small pseudopods being protruded between the particles forming the shell.

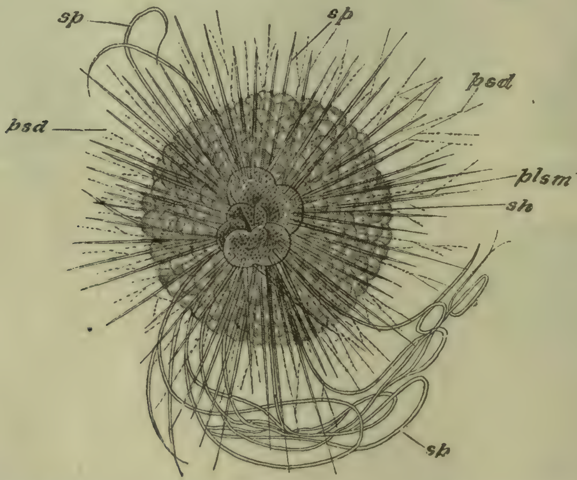


Fig. 36.—**Hastigerina murrayi.** *plsm.* vacuolated protoplasm surrounding shell: *psd.* pseudopods; *sh.* shell; *sp.* spines. (After Brady.)

In many cases the pseudopods are the only portions of **protoplasm** outside the shell, whereas in Gromia, as we saw, the shell is invested with a layer of protoplasm, and is thus in strictness an internal structure. In one of the calcareous forms with perforated spiral shell, called *Hastigerina* (Fig. 36), a very remarkable modification of this condition of things obtains. The shell (*sh.*) is surrounded with a mass of protoplasm (*plsm.*) many times its own diameter, and so full of vacuoles as to present a bubbly or frothy appearance. The shell itself, moreover, in this and allied forms is provided with numerous delicate, hollow, calcareous spines (*sp.*), which are only to be seen in perfect, freshly-caught specimens.

Many Foraminifera exhibit the phenomenon of **dimorphism**: the individuals of a single species occur under two distinct forms differing from one another in the size of the central chamber, the shape and mode of growth of the succeeding chambers, and the character of the nuclei.

The **reproduction** of the Foraminifera is very imperfectly known; but in some forms the protoplasm has been observed to divide into *flagellulæ* or swarm-cells, minute masses of protoplasm, each provided with a flagellum: usually these are of uniform size, but in some cases large and small spores are produced. In some species young forms, provided with a shell, are formed in the terminal chamber of the adult.

Distribution.—Gromia, Microgromia, and a few other forms are found in fresh-water: one species has been found in damp earth, but the great majority of the Foraminifera are marine, some being pelagic, *i.e.* occurring at or near the surface of the ocean, others abyssal, *i.e.* living at great depths. In the Atlantic, large areas of the sea-bottom are covered with a gray mud called Globigerina-ooze from the vast number of Globigerinæ contained in it.

From the palæontological point of view, the Foraminifera are a very important group. Remains of their shells occur in various formations from the Silurian period to the present day, certain rocks such as the White Chalk (Cretaceous period) and the Nummulitic limestone (Eocene) being largely made up of them.

ORDER 4.—HELIOZOA.

General Structure.—The Heliozoa are at once distinguished from the preceding groups by the character of their pseudopods, which have the form of stiff filaments radiating outwards from the more or less globular cell-body, presenting very little movement beyond the characteristic streaming of granules, and not uniting to form networks.

One of the simplest forms is the common "Sun-animalcule," *Actinophrys sol* (Fig. 37). The body is nearly spherical, and contains a large nucleus and numerous vacuoles, some of which, near the surface, are contractile. Each of the stiff, radiating pseudopods has a delicate axis, which is traceable through the protoplasm

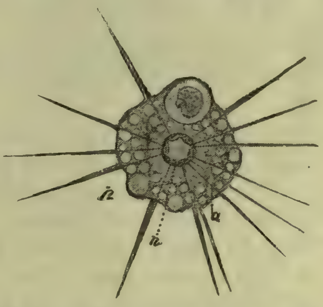


FIG. 37.—**Actinophrys sol.** *a.* axial filaments of pseudopods; *n.* nucleus; *p.* pseudopod. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*, after Grenacher.)

as far as the nucleus. Living organisms are devoured in much the same way as in Amœba: each is ingested along with a droplet of water, and is thus seen, during digestion, to lie in a definite cavity of the protoplasm, called a *food-vacuole.*

Actinosphærium (Fig. 38, A), another fresh-water form, is more complex. The protoplasm is distinctly divided into a central mass, the *medulla* or endosarc (B, *med.*), in which the vacuoles are small, and an outer layer, the *cortex* or ectosarc (*cort.*), in which they are very large. There are numerous nuclei (*nu.*) and chromatophores (*chr.*), the latter coloured green by chlorophyll.

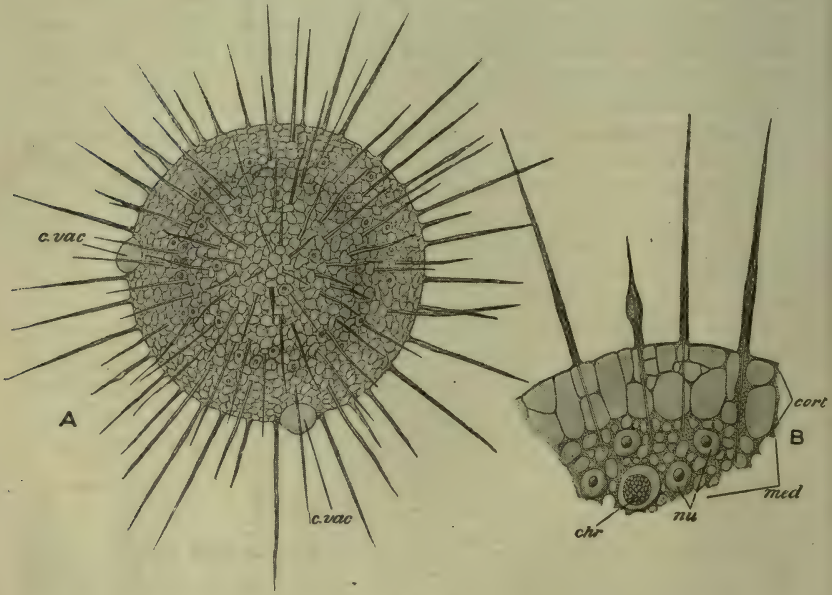


Fig. 38.—**Actinosphærium eichhornii.** A, the entire organism; B, a small portion highly magnified; *chr.* chromatophore; *cort.* cortex; *c. vac.* contractile vacuole; *med.* medulla; *nu.* nuclei. (From Bütschli's *Protozoa,* after Hertwig and Lesser.)

Many genera form **colonies.** Numerous zooids may be united by bridges of protoplasm into an open network, or the connecting bridges may be shorter and the zooids more numerous, giving the colony a more compact appearance.

Transitional stages occur between the naked genera already referred to and forms with a distinct **skeleton.** Sometimes the body simply surrounds itself with a temporary gelatinous investment (Fig. 39, *2*, *g.*), in other cases it is surrounded by a capsule of loosely woven fibres through which the pseudopods pass, thus reminding us of the state of things characteristic of perforate Foraminifera.

One genus has a shell formed of agglutinated sand-grains; in another (Fig. 39, A) the skeleton consists of loosely matted needles

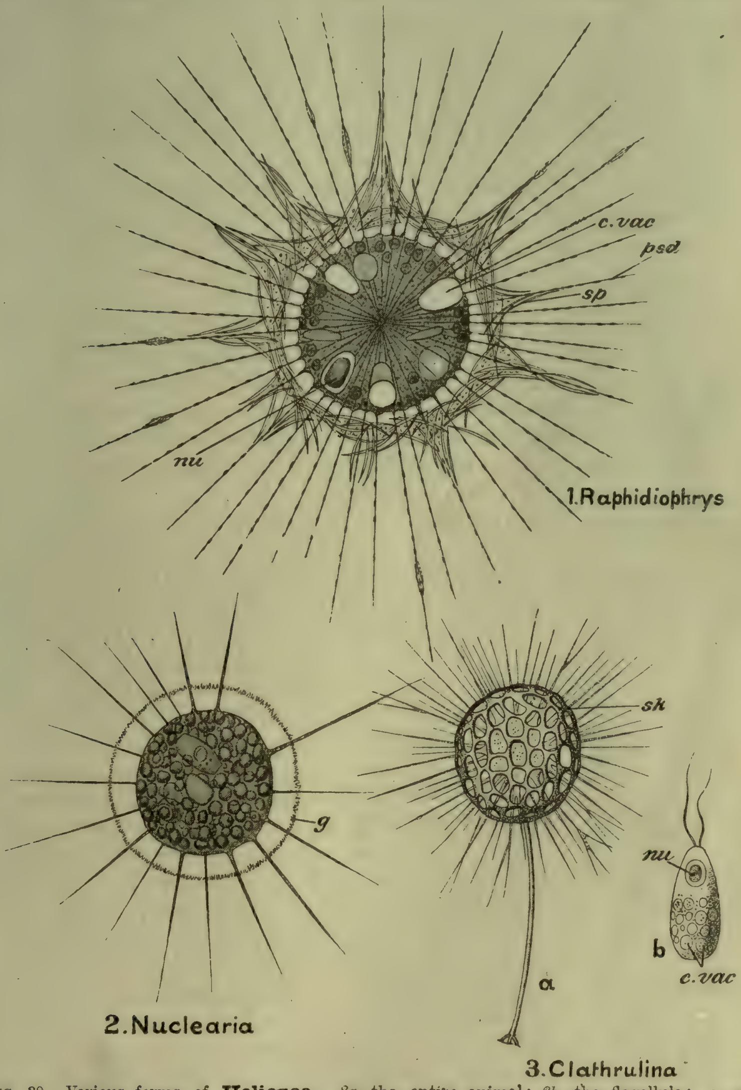

c. vac
psd
sp
nu
1. Raphidiophrys
sk
g
2. Nuclearia
nu
b
c. vac
a
3. Clathrulina

FIG. 39.—Various forms of **Heliozoa.** *3a*, the entire animal; *3b*, the flagellula; *c. vac.* contractile vacuole; *g.* gelatinous investment; *nu.* nucleus *psd.* pseudopods; *sk.* siliceous skeleton; *sp.* spicules. (From Bütschli's *Protozoa*, after Schulze and Greeff.)

of silica. Lastly, in the graceful *Clathrulina* (*3*) the body is enclosed in a perforated sphere of silica, quite like the skeleton of many of the Radiolaria (*vide infra*).

Reproduction ordinarily takes place by binary fission, but spore-formation also occurs. Actinosphærium, for instance, encloses itself in a gelatinous cyst and undergoes multiple fission, forming numerous spores each enclosed in a siliceous cell-wall. These *resting spores* remain quiescent throughout the winter, and in spring the protoplasm emerges from each and assumes the form of the ordinary active Actinosphærium. In Clathrulina spore-formation takes place in the active condition, and the spores (Fig. 39, *3 b*) are flagellulæ, each being an ovoid body provided with two flagella. *Conjugation* has been observed in some instances, but the precise nature and significance of the process is still imperfectly known.

ORDER 5.—RADIOLARIA.

The Radiolaria are a large and well-defined group of Rhizopods, noticeable, in most instances, by the presence of a siliceous skeleton of great beauty and complexity. They are all marine.

General Structure.—The most important characteristic of the group is the presence of a perforated membranous sac, called the *central capsule* (Fig. 40, *cent. caps.*), which lies embedded in the protoplasm, dividing it into intra-capsular (*int. caps. pr.*) and extra-capsular (*ext. caps. pr.*) regions. In the intra-capsular protoplasm is a large and complex nucleus (*nu.*), or sometimes many nuclei: from the extra-capsular protoplasm the pseudopods (*psd.*) are given off in the form of delicate radiating threads, which in some cases remain free, in others, *e.g. Lithocircus*, anastomose freely, *i.e.* unite to form networks. There is no contractile vacuole, but in many forms the extra-capsular protoplasm contains numerous large non-contractile vacuoles, which give it the frothy or bubbly appearance noticed previously in Hastigerina. The vacuolated portion of the protoplasm has a gelatinous consistency, and is distinguished as the *calymna*.

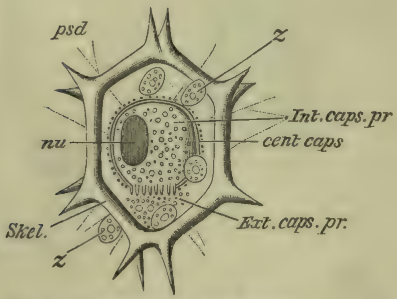


FIG. 40.—**Lithocircus annularis**. *cent. caps.* central capsule; *ext. caps. pr.* extra-capsular protoplasm; *int. caps. pr.* intra-capsular protoplasm; *nu.* nucleus; *psd.* pseudopods; *skel.* skeleton; *z.* cells of Zooxanthella. (After Bütschli, from Parker's *Biology*.)

The **central capsule** may be looked upon as a chitinoid internal skeleton, reminding us of the shell of Gromia and of the perforated calcareous shell of Hastigerina with its investment of vacuolated protoplasm. It is found in its simplest form in Thalassoplancta (Fig. 41), in which it is spherical and uniformly perforated with minute holes. In other forms, such as *Lithocircus* (Fig 40), it is more or less conical in form, and the apertures are restricted to the flat base of the cone. Lastly, in the most complex forms (Fig. 42), the membrane of the capsule is double, and there are three apertures—a principal one having a central position and provided with a lid or *operculum* (*op.*), and two subsidiary ones on the opposite side. In relation with the principal or lidded aperture there is found in the extra-capsular protoplasm a heap of pigment called the *phæodium* (*ph.*).

In some genera the central capsule is the only skeletal structure present, but in most cases there is in addition a **skeleton**—mainly external—formed, as a rule, of silica, but in one subdivision of the class of a chitinoid substance called *acanthin*, so transparent that it can only be distinguished from silica by chemical tests. The siliceous skeleton may consist of loosely woven spines (Fig. 41), but usually (and the acanthin skeleton always) has the form of a firm frame-work of globular, conical, stellate, or discoid shape, frequently produced into simple or branched spines. A very beautiful form of skeleton is exhibited by *Actinomma* (Fig. 43), in which there are three concentric perforated spheres (A, *sk. 1*, *sk. 2*, *sk. 3*) connected by radiating spicules. The outer of these spheres occurs in the extra-capsular protoplasm (B, *ex. caps. pr.*), the middle one in the intra-capsular protoplasm, and the inner one in the nucleus (*nu.*).

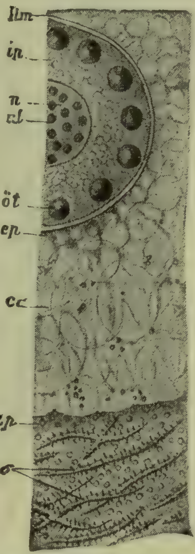


FIG. 41.—**Thalassoplancta brevispicula,** part of a section. *km.* central capsule; *ip.* intra-capsular protoplasm; *n.* nucleus, containing *nl.* numerous nucleoli; *öt.* oil drops; *ca.* calymna; *rp.* protoplasm surrounding calymna; *s.* spicules. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*, after Haeckel).

Colonial forms are comparatively rare in this order, but occur in some genera by the central capsule undergoing repeated divisions while the extra-capsular mass remains undivided. In this way is produced—in *Collozoum* for instance (Fig. 44, A, B, C)—a firm gelatinous mass, the calymna or vacuolated extra-capsular protoplasm (D, *vac.*) common to the entire colony, having embedded in it numerous central capsules (*c. caps.*) each indicating a zooid of the colony. Collozoum may attain a length of 3 or 4 cm.

Reproduction by binary fission has been observed in some cases, and is probably universal. The nucleus divides first, then the central capsule, and finally the extra-capsular protoplasm.

Spore-formation has been observed in Collozoum and some other genera: the intra-capsular protoplasm divides into small masses,

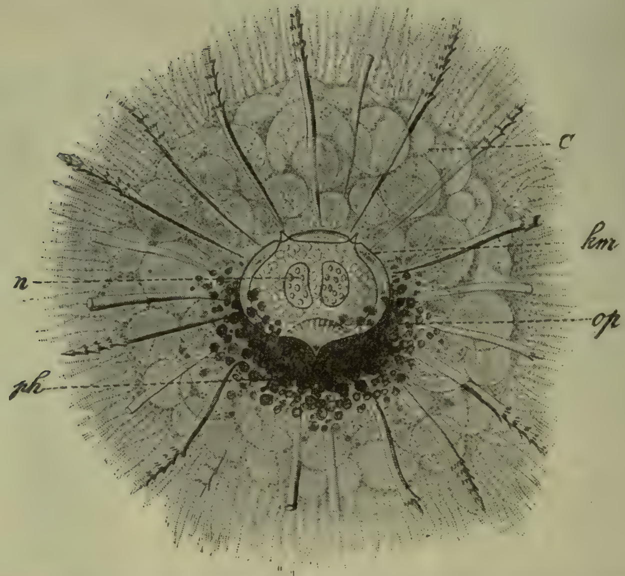


FIG. 42.—**Aulactinium actinastrum.** *c.* calymna; *km.* central capsule; *n.* nucleus; *op.* operculum; *ph.* phæodium. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*, after Haeckel.)

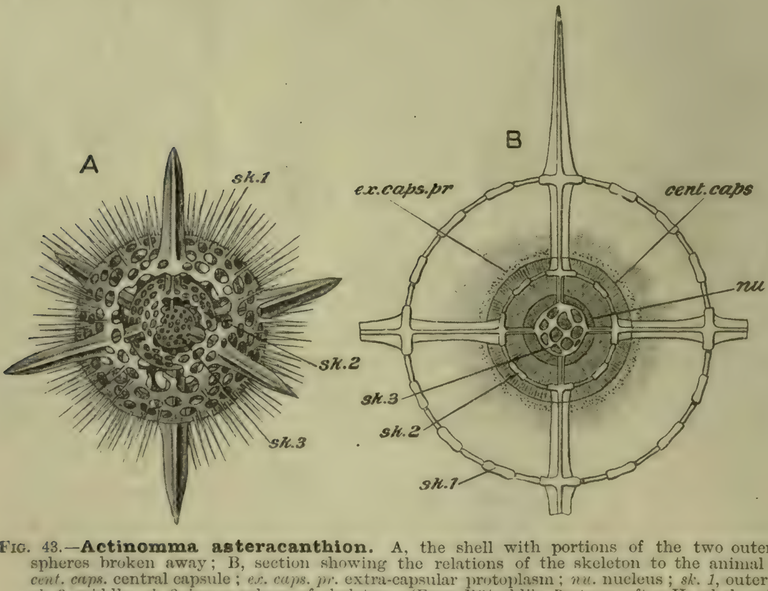

A
sk.1
sk.2
sk.3
B
ex.caps.pr
cent.caps
nu
sk.3
sk.2
sk.1

FIG. 43.—**Actinomma asteracanthion.** A, the shell with portions of the two outer spheres broken away; B, section showing the relations of the skeleton to the animal; *cent. caps.* central capsule; *ex. caps. pr.* extra-capsular protoplasm; *nu.* nucleus; *sk. 1*, outer, *sk. 2*, middle, *sk. 3*, inner sphere of skeleton. (From Bütschli's *Protozoa*, after Haeckel and Hertwig.)

each of which becomes a flagellula (Fig. 44, E, F) provided with a single flagellum. In some instances all the spores produced are alike (E), and each encloses a small crystal (*c.*): in other cases (F)—in the same species—the spores are dimorphic, some being small (*microspores*) others large (*megaspores*). Their development has not been traced.

Symbiosis.—One most characteristic and remarkable feature of the group has yet to be mentioned. In most species there occur in the extra-capsular protoplasm minute yellow cells (Fig. 40, *z.*) which multiply by fission independently of the Radiolarian. It is now known that these are unicellular plants belonging to the class of Algæ and to the species *Zooxanthella nutricola.* This intimate association of two organisms is called *symbiosis:* it is a mutually beneficial partnership, the Radiolarian supplying the Alga with carbon dioxide and nitrogenous waste matters, while the Alga gives off oxygen and produces sugar and other food-stuffs, some of which must make their way by diffusion into the protoplasm of the Radiolarian.

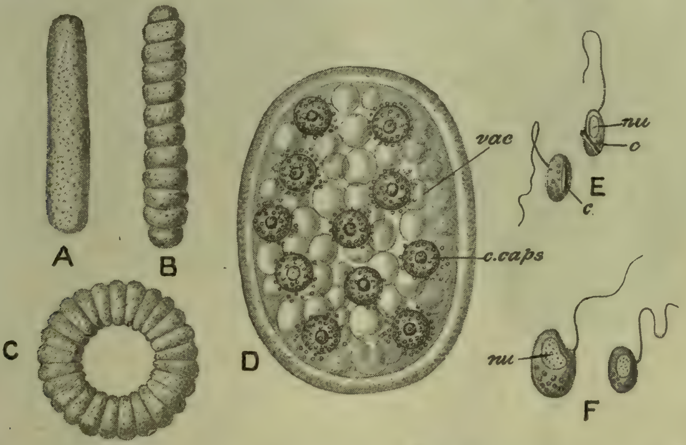


FIG. 44.—**Collozoum inerme.** A—C, three forms of the entire colony, nat. size; D, a small colony showing the numerous central capsules (*c. caps.*) and extra-capsular protoplasm with vacuoles (*vac.*); E, spores containing crystals (*c.*); F, mega- and microspore. (From Bütschli's *Protozoa*, after Hertwig and Brandt.)

CLASS II.—MYCETOZOA.

1. EXAMPLE OF THE CLASS—*Didymium difforme.*

Didymium occurs as a whitish or yellow sheet of protoplasm (Fig. 45, G), often several centimetres across, which crawls, like a gigantic Amœba, over the surface of decaying leaves. It shows the characteristic streaming movements of protoplasm and feeds by ingesting various organic bodies, notably the Bacilli which always occur in great numbers in decaying substances. Numerous nuclei are present.

After leading an active existence for a longer or shorter time, the protoplasm aggregates into a solid lump, surrounds itself with a cyst, and undergoes multiple fission, dividing into an immense number of minute spores. The cyst (Fig. 45, A, *spg.* 1, *spg.* 2) is therefore not a mere resting capsule, like that of Amœba, but a *sporangium* or spore-case. Its wall consists of two layers, an inner of a dark purple colour and membranous texture, formed of cellulose, and an outer of a pure white hue, formed of calcium carbonate. Thus the whole sporangium, which may attain a diameter of 3 or 4 mm., resembles a minute egg. From the inner surface of the wall of the sporangium spring a number of branched filaments of cellulose, which extend into the cavity among the spores and together constitute the *capillitium* (B, *cp.*).

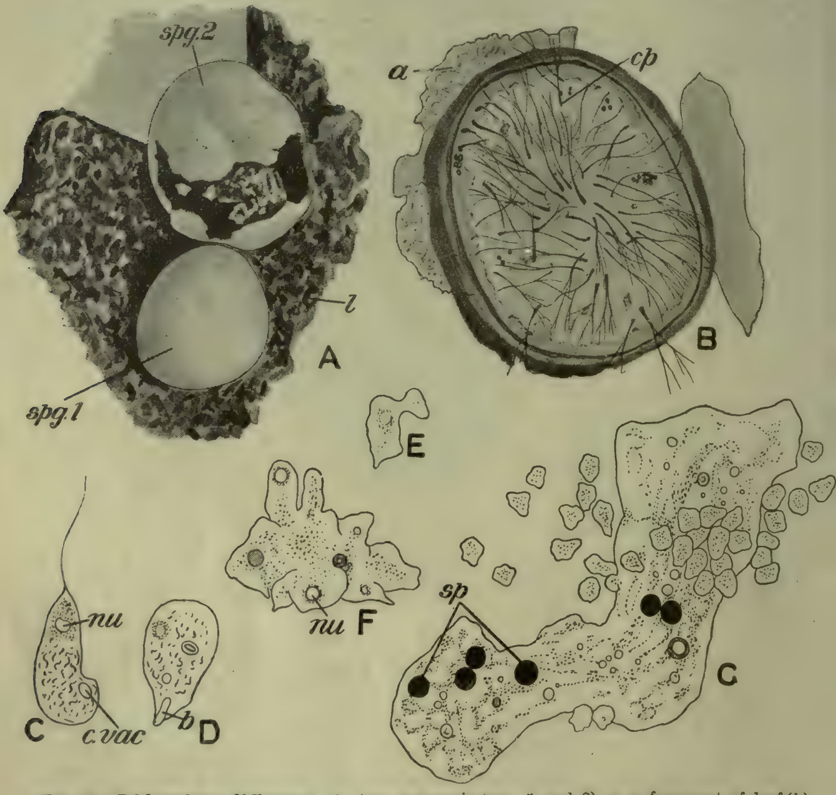


FIG. 45.—**Didymium difforme.** A, two sporangia (spg. 1 and 2) on a fragment of leaf (*l.*); B, section of sporangium, with ruptured outer layer (*a.*); and threads of capillitium (*cp.*); C, a flagellula with contractile vacuole (*c. vac.*) and nucleus (*nu.*); D, the same after loss of flagellum; *b*, an ingested Bacillus; E, an amœbula; F, conjugation of amœbulæ to form a small plasmodium; G, a larger plasmodium accompanied by numerous amœbulæ; *sp.* ingested spores. (After Lister.)

The spores consist of nucleated masses of protoplasm surrounded by a thick cellulose wall of a dark reddish-brown colour. After a period of rest the protoplasm emerges in the form of an amœboid mass which soon becomes a flagellula (C), provided with a single flagellum, a nucleus (*nu.*), and a contractile vacuole (*c. vac.*). The flagellulæ move freely and ingest Bacilli (D, *b.*); then, after a time, they become irregular in outline, draw in the flagellum, and become amœboid (E). The amœbulæ thus formed congregate in considerable numbers and fuse with one another (F), the final result being the production of the great amœboid mass (G) with which we started. There is no fusion of the nuclei of the amœbulæ. Thus Didymium in its active condition is a plasmodium, *i.e.* a body formed by the concrescence of amœbulæ.

2. GENERAL REMARKS ON THE MYCETOZOA.

Speaking generally, the Mycetozoa differ from all other Protozoa in their terrestrial habit. They are neither aquatic, like most members of the phylum, nor parasitic, like many other forms, but live habitually a sub-aërial life on decaying organic matter. They are also remarkable for their close resemblance in the structure of the sporangia and spores to certain *Fungi*, a group of parasitic or saprophytic plants in which they are often included, most works on Botany having a section on the *Myxomycetes* or "Slime-fungi," as these organisms are then called. They are placed among animals on account of the structure and physiology of the flagellate, amœboid, and plasmodial phases which exhibit automatic movements and ingest solid food. On the other hand, the Mycetozoa are sometimes included among the Rhizopoda, a course which their very peculiar reproductive processes appears to render inadvisable.

An interesting organism, called *Protomyxa*, probably belongs to this group. In its plasmodial phase it consists of orange-coloured masses of protoplasm, about 1 mm. in diameter, which crawl over sea-shells by means of their long, branched pseudopods, and ingest living prey. No nuclei are known. The protoplasm becomes encysted and breaks up into naked spores, which escape from the cyst as flagellulæ, but soon become amœboid and fuse to form the plasmodium.

CLASS III.—MASTIGOPHORA.

1. EXAMPLE OF THE CLASS—*Euglena viridis.*

Euglena (Fig. 46) is a flagellate organism commonly found in the water of ponds and puddles, to which it imparts a green colour. The body (E, H) is spindle-shaped, and has at the blunt anterior end a depression, the *gullet* (F, *œs.*), from the inner surface of which springs a single long flagellum (*fl.*). According to recent observations the flagellum is not a simple thread, but is beset with delicate cilium-like processes. The organism is propelled through the water by the lashing movements of the flagellum, which is always directed forwards; it can also perform slow worm-like movements of contraction and expansion (A—D), but anything like the free pseudopodial movements which characterise the Rhizopoda is precluded by the presence of a very thin skin or cuticle which invests the body. There is a nucleus (*nu.*) near the centre of the body, and at the anterior end a contractile vacuole (H, *c. vac.*), leading into a large non-contractile space or *reservoir* (*r.*) which discharges into the gullet.

The greater part of the body is coloured green by the characteristic vegetable pigment, chlorophyll, and contains grains of *paramylum* (H, *p.*), a carbo-hydrate allied to starch. In contact with the reservoir is a bright red speck, the *stigma* (*pg.*), formed of a pigment allied to chlorophyll and called *hæmatochrome.* It seems probable that the stigma is a light-perceiving organ or rudimentary eye.

Euglena is nourished like a typical green plant: it decomposes the carbon dioxide dissolved in the water, assimilating the carbon and evolving the oxygen. Nitrogen and other elements it absorbs in the form of mineral salts in solution in the water. But it has also been shown that the movements of the flagellum create a whirlpool by which minute fragments are propelled down the gullet and into the soft internal protoplasm. There seems to be no doubt that in this way minute organisms are taken in as food. Euglena thus combines the characteristically animal (holozoic) with the characteristically vegetable (holophytic) mode of nutrition.

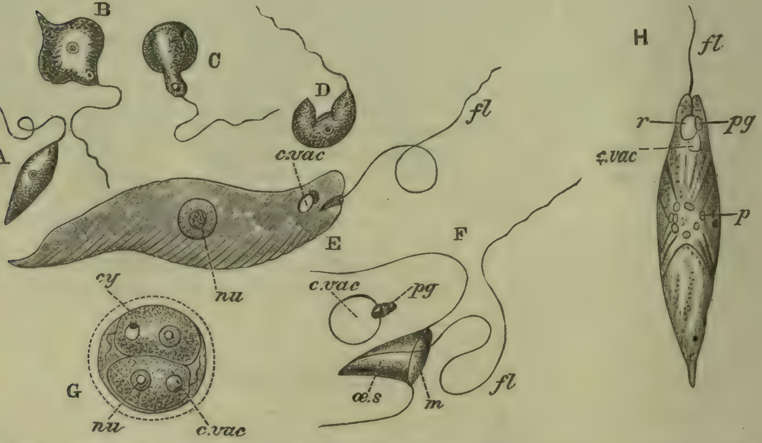


FIG. 46.—**Euglena viridis.** A—D, four views illustrating euglenoid movements; E and H, enlarged views; F, anterior end further enlarged; G, resting form after binary fission; *c. vac.* contractile vacuole in H, reservoir in E and F; *cy.* cyst; *fl.* flagellum; *m.* mouth; *nu.* nucleus; *œs*, gullet; *p.* paramylum bodies; *pg.* pigment spot; *r.* (in H), reservoir. (From Parker's *Biology*, after Kent and Klebs.)

Sometimes the active movements cease, the animal comes to rest and surrounds itself with a cyst or cell-wall of cellulose (G), from which, after a quiescent period, it emerges to resume active life. It is during the resting condition that reproduction takes place by the division of the body in a median plane parallel to the long axis (G). Under certain circumstances multiple fission takes place, and flagellulæ are produced, which, sometimes after passing through an amœboid stage, develop into the adult form.

2. CLASSIFICATION AND GENERAL ORGANISATION.

The Mastigophora form a very extensive group, the genera and species of which show a wonderful diversity in structure and habit. The only character common to them all is the presence of one or more flagella. Some approach plants so closely as to be claimed by many botanists; others are hardly to be distinguished from Rhizopods; while the members of one order present an interesting likeness to certain otherwise unique cells found in Sponges.

The class is divisible into four orders as follows:—

ORDER 1.—FLAGELLATA.

Mastigophora having one or more flagella at the anterior end of the body.

ORDER 2.—CHOANOFLAGELLATA.

Mastigophora having a single flagellum surrounded at its base by a contractile protoplasmic collar.

ORDER 3.—DINOFLAGELLATA.

Mastigophora having two flagella, one anterior, the other encircling the body like a girdle.

ORDER 4.—CYSTOFLAGELLATA.

Mastigophora having two flagella, one of which is modified into a long tentacle, while the other is small and contained within the gullet.

Systematic Position of the Example.

Euglena viridis is one of several species of the genus *Euglena*, and belongs to the Family *Euglenidæ*, sub-order *Euglenoidea*, and order *Flagellata.*

The presence of an anterior flagellum and the absence of a collar, transverse flagellum, or tentacle, indicate its position among the Flagellata. It is placed among the Euglenoidea in virtue of possessing a single flagellum and a small gullet into which the contractile vacuole opens. The genus Euglena is distinguished by its centrally placed nucleus, green chromatophore, red stigma, and euglenoid movements. E. viridis is separated from other species of the genus by its spindle-shaped body with blunt anterior and pointed posterior end, and by the flagellum being somewhat longer than the body.

ORDER 1.—FLAGELLATA.

The **cell-body** is usually ovoid or flask-shaped (Fig. 47, *6*, *7*, *9*, &c.), but may be almost globular (*1*), or greatly elongated (*3*).

Anterior and posterior ends are always distinguishable, the flagella being directed forwards in swimming, and, as a rule, dorsal and ventral surfaces can be distinguished by the presence of a mouth or by an additional flagellum on the ventral side. They are,

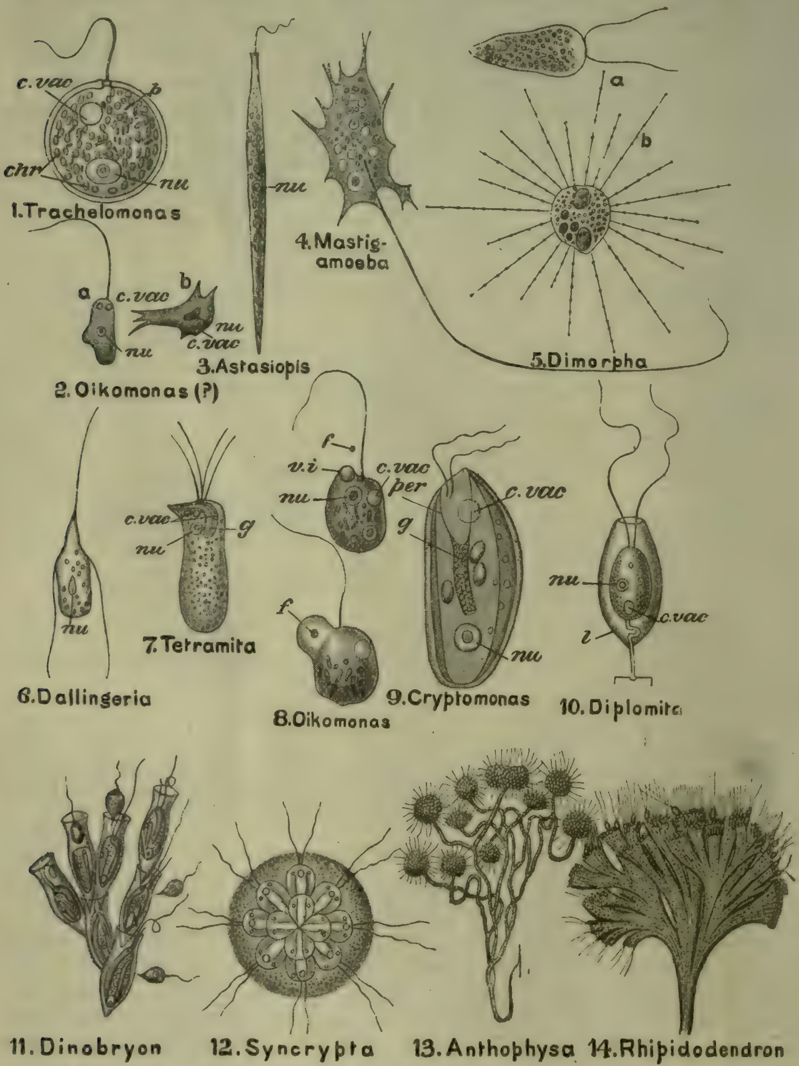

c.vac
b
chr
nu
1.Trachelomonas
a
c.vac
b
nu
nu
c.vac
2. Oikomonas (?)
nu
3.Astasiopis
4.Mastig-amoeba
a
b
5.Dimorpha
c.vac
nu
g
7.Tetramita
nu
6.Dallingeria
f
v.i
c.vac
nu
per
f
8.Oikomonas
c.vac
g
nu
9.Cryptomonas
nu
c.vac
l
10.Diplomita
11.Dinobryon
12.Syncrypta
13.Anthophysa
14.Rhipidodendron

FIG. 47.—Various forms of **Flagellata.**—In *2*, flagellate (*a*) and amœboid (*b*) phases are shown; in *5*, flagellate (*a*) and helizoan (*b*) phases; in *8* are shown two stages in the ingestion of a food particle (*f.*); *chr.* chromatophores; *c. vac.* contractile vacuole; *f.* food particle *g.* gullet; *nu.* nucleus; *l.* lorica; *p.* protoplasm; *per.* peristome; *v.i.* vacuole of ingestion. (Mostly from Bütschli's *Protozoa*, after various authors.)

therefore, usually *bilaterally symmetrical* or divisible into equal and similar right and left halves by a vertical antero-posterior plane.

Some of the lower forms have no distinct cuticle, and are able, under certain circumstances, to assume an amœboid form (*2*). The curious genus *Mastigamœba* (*4*) has a permanently amœboid form, but possesses, in addition to pseudopods, a single long flagellum. It obviously connects the Mastigophora with the Rhizopoda, and indeed there seems no reason why it should be placed in the present group rather than with the Lobosa. Similarly, *Dimorpha* (*5*) connects the Flagellata with the Heliozoa: in its flagellate phase (*a*) it is ovoid and provided with two flagella, but it may send out long stiff radiating pseudopods, while retaining the flagella, or may draw in the latter and assume a purely helizoan phase of existence provided with pseudopods only (*b*).

The **number of flagella** is subject to great variation. There may be one (Fig. 47, *1–3*), two (*9*, *10*), three (*6*), or four (*7*). Sometimes the flagella show a differentiation in function; in *Heteromita, e.g.* (Fig. 51) the anterior flagellum (*fl. 1*) only is used in progression, the second or ventral flagellum (*fl. 2*) is trailed behind when the animal is swimming freely or is used to anchor it to various solid bodies.

There are also important variations in structure correlated with varied **modes of nutrition.** Many of the lower forms, such as Heteromita, live in decomposing animal infusions: they have neither mouth nor gullet and take no solid food, but live by absorbing the nutrient matters in the solution; their nutrition is, in fact, saprophytic, like that of many fungi. A few live as parasites in various cavities of the body of the higher animals. One Euglena-like form lives as an intra-cellular parasite within the cells of one of the lower worms.

Hæmatococcus (Fig. 48), *Pandorina* (Fig. 49), *Volvox* (Fig. 50), and their allies present us with a totally different state of things. The mouthless body is surrounded by a cellulose cell-wall (*c.w.*), and contains chromatophores (*chr.*) coloured either green by chlorophyll or red by hæmatochrome. Nutrition is purely holophytic, *i.e.* takes place by the absorption of a watery solution of mineral salts and by the decomposition of carbon dioxide. It is, therefore, not surprising that these chlorophyll-containing Flagellata are often included among the Algæ or lower green plants.

Other genera live in a purely animal fashion by the ingestion of solid proteinaceous food, usually in the form of minute living organisms: in these cases there is always some contrivance for capturing and swallowing the prey. In *Oikomonas* (Fig. 47, *8*) we have one of the simplest arrangements: near the base of the flagellum is a slight projection containing a vacuole (*v.i.*); the movements of the flagellum drive small particles (*f.*) against this region where the protoplasm is very thin and readily allows the particles to penetrate into the vacuole, where they are digested. In Euglena, as we have seen, there is a short, narrow gullet, and in some genera (*9, g*) this tube becomes a large and well-marked structure.

Skeleton.—While a large proportion of genera are naked or covered only by a thin cuticle, a few fabricate for themselves a delicate chitinoid *shell* or *lorica* (10, *l.*), usually vase-shaped and widely open at one end so as to allow of the protrusion of the contained animalcule. In the chlorophyll-containing forms there is a closed cell-wall of cellulose (Fig. 48, *c.w.*).

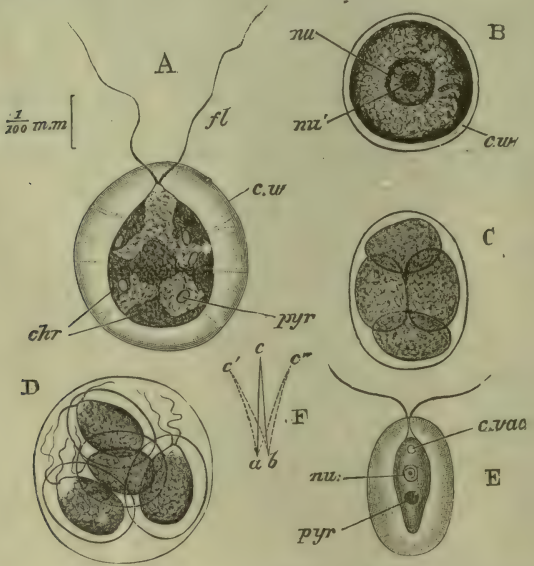


Fig. 48.—**Hæmatococcus pluvialis.** A, motile stage; B, resting stage; C, D, two modes of fission; E, *Hæmatococcus lacustris*, motile stage; F, diagram of movements of flagellum; *chr.* chromatophores; *c. vac.* contractile vacuole; *c.w.* cell-wall; *nu.* nucleus; *nu'.* nucleolus; *pyr.* pyrenoids. (From Parker's *Biology.*)

In many genera **Colonies** of various forms are produced by repeated budding. Some of these are singularly like a zoophyte (see Sect. IV.) in general form (Fig. 47, *11*), being branched colonies composed of a number of connected monads, each enclosed in a little glassy lorica; or green (chlorophyll-containing) zooids are enclosed in a common gelatinous sphere, through which their flagella protrude (*12*); or tufts of zooids, reminding us of the flower-heads of Acacia, are borne on a branched stem (*13*). In *Volvox* (Fig. 50) the zooids of the colony are arranged in the form of a hollow sphere, and in *Pandorina* (Fig. 49) in that of a solid sphere enclosed in a delicate shell of cellulose. Lastly, in *Rhipido-*

dendron (Fig. 47, *14*) a beautiful branched fan-shaped colony is produced, the branches consisting of closely adpressed gelatinous tubes each the dwelling of a single zooid.

Binary fission is the ordinary mode of **asexual multiplication,** and may take place either in the active or in the resting condition. Hæmatococcus (Fig. 48) and Euglena (Fig. 46), for instance, divide while in the encysted condition; Heteromita (Fig. 51) and other saprophytic forms while actively swimming: in the latter case the divison includes the almost infinitely fine flagellum.

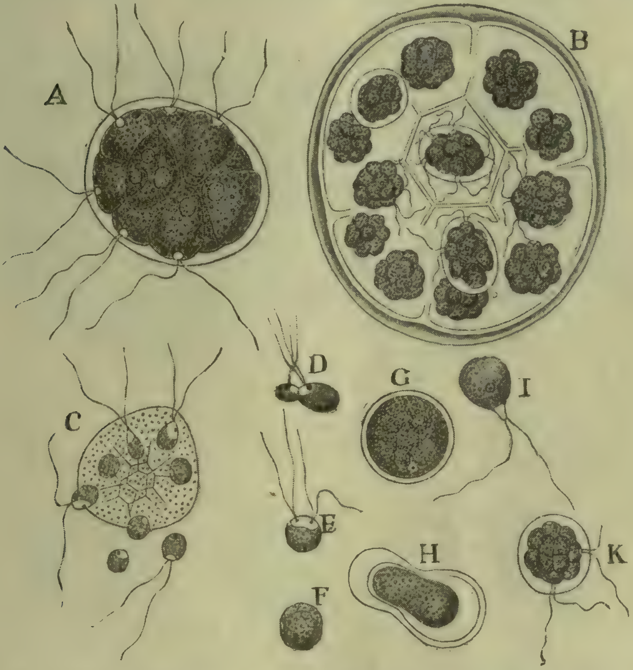


FIG. 49.—**Pandorina morum**. A, entire colony; B, asexual reproduction, each zooid dividing into a daughter-colony; C, liberation of gametes; D—F, three stages in conjugation of gametes; G, zygote; H--K, development of zygote into a new colony. (From Parker's *Biology*, after Goebel.)

In correspondence with their compound nature, the colonial genera exhibit certain peculiarities in asexual multiplication. In *Dinobryon* (Fig. 47, *11*) a zooid divides within its cup, in which one of the two products of division remains; the other crawls out of the lorica, fixes itself upon its edge, and then secretes a new lorica for itself. In *Pandorina* (Fig. 49) each of the sixteen zooids of the colony divides into sixteen (B), thus forming that number of daughter-colonies within the original cell-wall, by the rupture of which they are finally liberated. In *Volvox* (Fig. 50), certain zooids, called *parthenogonidia* (A, *a*), have specially assigned to them the function of asexual reproduction: they divide by a process resembling the segmentation of the higher animals (D^1–D^5), and form daughter-colonies which become detached and swim freely in the interior of the mother-colony.

A very interesting series of stages in **sexual reproduction** is found in this group. In Heteromita two individuals come together

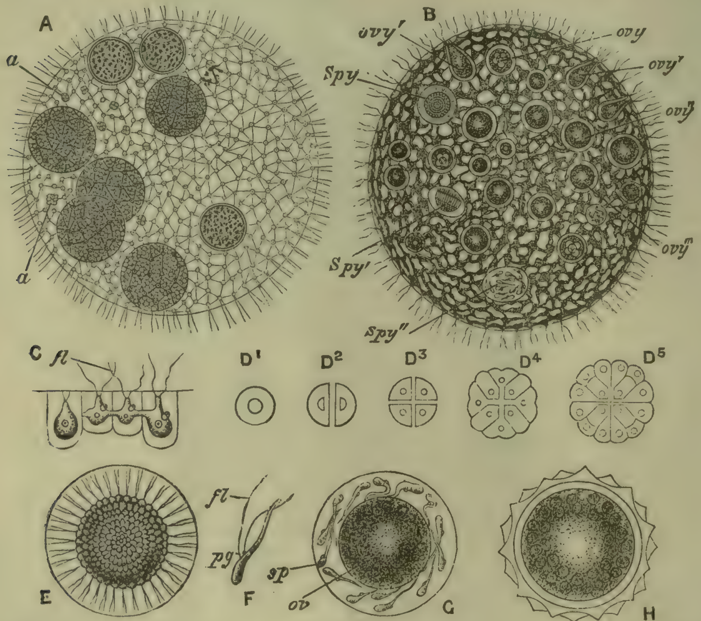


Fig. 50.—**Volvox globator.** A, entire colony, enclosing several daughter-colonies; B, the same during sexual maturity; C, four zooids in optical section; D^1—D^5, development of parthenogonidium; E, ripe spermary; F, sperm; G, ovary containing ovum and sperms; H, oosperm; *a*, parthenogonidia; *fl.* flagellum; *ov.* ovum; *ovy.* ovaries; *pg.* pigment spot; *spy.* spermaries. (From Parker's *Biology*, after Cohn and Kirchner.)

(Fig. 51, E^1) and undergo complete fusion (E^2—E^4): the result of this *conjugation* of the two *gametes* or conjugating cells is a thin-walled sac, the *zygote* (E^5), the protoplasm of which divides by multiple fission into very minute spores. These, when first liberated by the rupture of the zygote (E^6), are mere granules, but soon the ventral or trailing flagellum is developed, and afterwards the anterior flagellum (F^1—F^4). In Pandorina (Fig. 49) the cells of the colony escape from the common gelatinous envelope (C) and conjugate in pairs (D, E), forming a zygote (F, G), which, after a period of rest (H), divides and forms a new colony (K).

In some cases the conjugating cells are of two sizes, union always taking place between a large cell or *megagamete* and a small cell or *microgamete*. In Volvox (Fig. 50) this dimorphism reaches its extreme, producing a condition of things closely resembling what

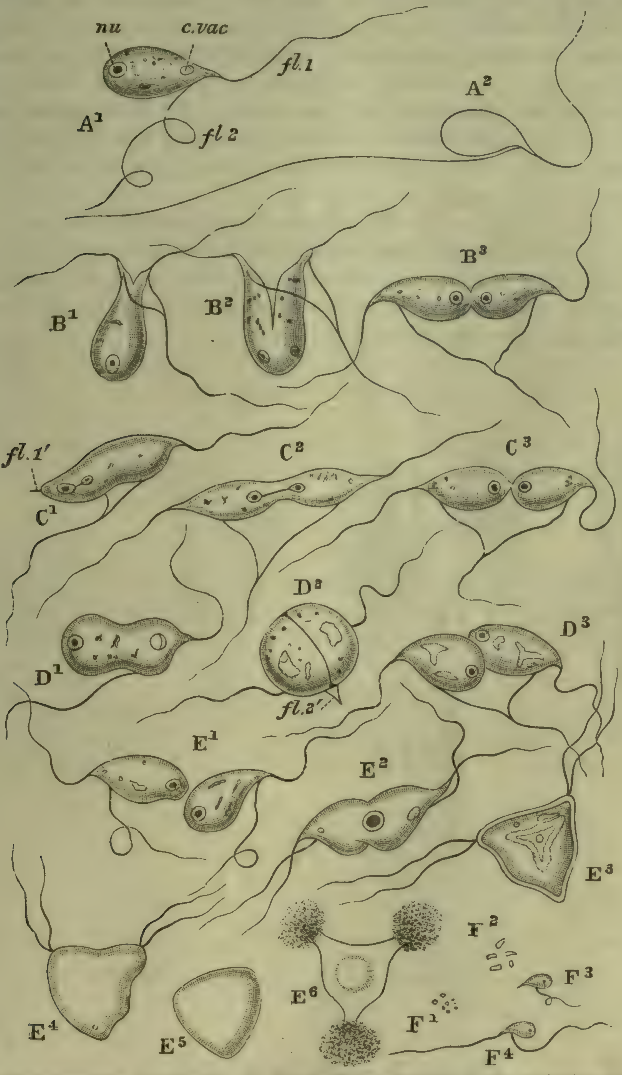
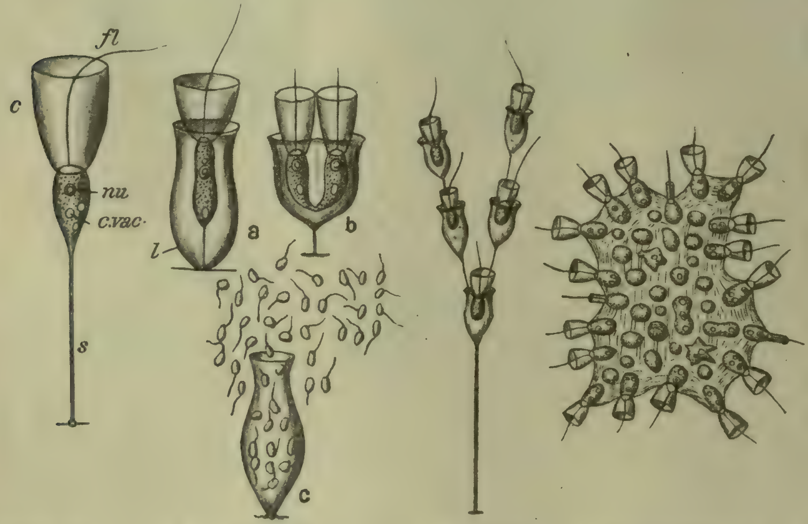


FIG. 51.—**Heteromita rostrata.** A, the positions assumed in the springing movements of the anchored form; B, longitudinal fission of anchored form; C, transverse fission of the same; D, fission of free-swimming form; E, conjugation of free-swimming with anchored form; E^5, zygote; E^6, emission of spores from zygote; F, development of spores; *fl.1*, anterior; *fl.2*, ventral flagellum. (From Parker's *Biology*, after Dallinger.)

we find in the higher animals. Certain of the zooids enlarge and form megagametes (B, *ovy.*), others divide repeatedly and give rise to groups of microgametes (B, *spy.* E, F), each in the form of an elongated yellow body with a red pigment-spot and two flagella. These are liberated, swim freely, and conjugate with the stationary megagamete (G), producing a zygote (H), which, after a period of rest, divides and reproduces the colony. It is obvious that the megagamete corresponds with the ovum of the higher animals, the microgamete with the sperm, and the zygote with the oosperm or impregnated egg.

It should be noticed that in the more complex cases of reproduction just described we meet with a phenomenon not seen in cases of binary fission, viz., *development*, the young organism being far simpler in structure than the adult, and reaching its final form by a gradual increase in complexity.



1.Monosiga. 2.Salpingoeca. 3.Polyoeca. 4.Proterospongia.

FIG. 52.—Various forms of **Choanoflagellata.** *2b* illustrates longitudinal fission; *2c*, the production of flagellulæ; *c.* collar; *c. vac.* contractile vacuole; *fl.* flagellum; *l.* lorica; *nu.* nucleus. (After Saville Kent.)

ORDER 2.—CHOANOFLAGELLATA.

General Structure.—The members of this group are distinguished by the presence of a vase-like prolongation of the protoplasm, called the *collar* (Fig. 52, *1*, *c.*), surrounding the base of the single flagellum (*fl.*). The collar is contractile, and, although its precise functions are not yet certainly known, there is evidence to show that its movements cause a flow of water, with minute particles in suspension, up the outside of the collar and down the inside, the solid particles being then ingested in the soft protoplasm between the base of the flagellum and that of the collar. The animalcule may draw in both collar and flagellum and assume an amœboid form.

The nucleus (*nu.*) is spherical, and there are one or two contractile vacuoles (*c. vac.*), but no trace of mouth or gullet. Some forms are naked (*1*), others (*2*) enclosed in a chitinoid shell or lorica of cup-like form. A stalk (*s.*) is usually present in the loricate and sometimes also in the naked forms.

The genera mentioned in the preceding paragraph are all simple, but in other cases **colonies** are produced by repeated fission. In *Polyœca* (*3*) the colony has a tree-like form, which may reach a high degree of complexity by repeated branching. A totally different mode of aggregation is found in *Proterospongia* (*4*), in which the zooids are enclosed in a common gelatinous matrix of irregular form.

Reproduction.—The "collared monads," as these organisms are often called, multiply by longitudinal fission (*2b*). In some cases multiple fission of encysted individuals has been observed (*2c*), small simple flagellulæ being produced which gradually develop into the perfect form.

The order is especially interesting from the fact that, with the exception of Sponges and the larva of a Sea-Urchin, it is the only group in the animal kingdom in which the collar occurs.

ORDER 3.—DINOFLAGELLATA.

The leading features of this group are the arrangement of the two flagella which they always possess, and the usual presence of a remarkable and often very beautiful and complex shell.

The body (Fig. 53, *1*) is usually bilaterally asymmetrical, *i.e.* it may be divided into right and left halves which are not precisely similar. On the ventral surface is a *longitudinal groove* (*l. gr.*), extending along the anterior half only, and meeting a *transverse groove* (*t. gr.*), which is continued round the body like a girdle. From the longitudinal groove springs a large flagellum (*fl. 1*), which is directed forwards and serves as the chief organ of propulsion ; a second flagellum (*fl. 2*) lies in the transverse groove, where its wave-like movements formerly caused it to be mistaken for a ring of small cilia.

The body is covered with a *shell* (*2*) formed of cellulose, and often of very complex form, being produced into long and ornamental process, and marked with stripes, dots, &c. Besides a nucleus and a contractile vacuole, the protoplasm contains chromatophores (*1, chr.*) coloured with chlorophyll or an allied pigment of a yellow colour, called *diatomin*. Nutrition is holophytic or holozoic.

The foregoing description applies to all the commoner genera. *Prorocentrum* (3) is remarkable for the absence of the transverse groove, while *Polykrikos* (4) has no fewer than eight transverse grooves and no shell. The latter genus also has *stinging-capsules* or *nematocysts* (*a*, *b*) in the protoplasm, resembling those of Zoophytes (see Sect. IV.), and has numerous nuclei of two sizes, distinguished as *meganuclei* (*nu.*), and *micronuclei* (*nu′.*).

Reproduction is, as usual, by binary fission, the process taking place sometimes in a free-swimming individual, sometimes in one which has lost its flagella and come to rest.

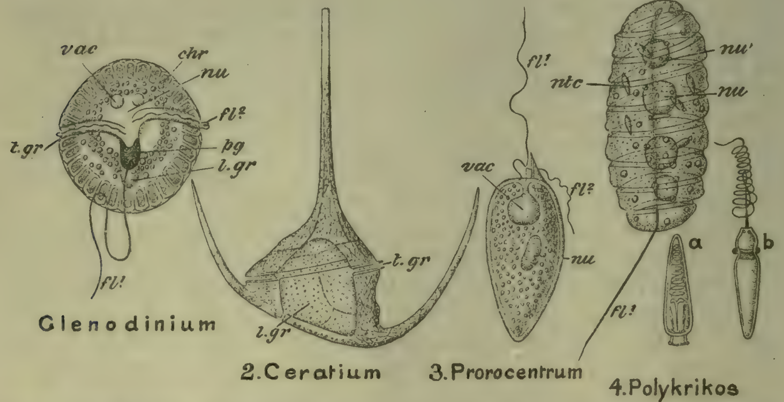


Fig. 53.—Various forms of **Dinoflagellata.** *2* shows the shell only; *4a* is an undischarged, and *b* a discharged stinging-capsule; *chr.* chromatophores; *fl. 1,* longitudinal flagellum; *fl. 2,* transverse flagellum; *l. gr.* longitudinal groove; *ntc.* nematocyst; *nu.* meganucleus; *nu'.* micronucleus; *pg.* pigment spot; *t. gr.* transverse groove. (From Bütschli's *Protozoa.*)

The Dinoflagellata are mostly marine. Some are phosphorescent. Certain kinds occasionally occur in such abundance in bays and estuaries as to cause a deep brownish or red discoloration of the sea-water.

ORDER 4.—CYSTOFLAGELLATA.

This group includes only two genera, *Noctiluca* and *Leptodiscus.* A description of *Noctiluca miliaris,* the organism to which the diffused phosphorescence of the sea is largely due, will serve to give a fair notion of the leading characteristics of the order.

Noctiluca (Fig. 54) is a nearly globular organism, about ½ mm. in diameter. It is covered with a delicate cuticle, and the medullary protoplasm is greatly vacuolated. On one side is a groove from which springs a very large and stout flagellum or *tentacle* (*bg.*), noticeable for its transverse striation. Near the base of this flagellum is the mouth (*m.*), leading into a short gullet in which is a second flagellum (*f.*), very small in proportion to the first. On the side opposite to the mouth is a strongly marked superficial ridge. The light-giving region is the cortical protoplasm.

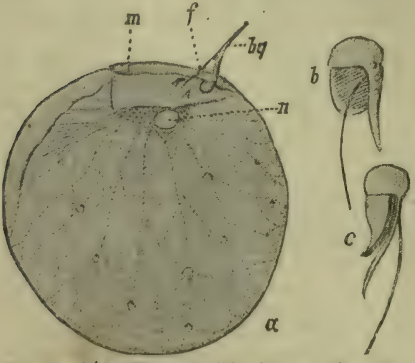


Fig. 54.—**Noctiluca miliaris.** *a.* the adult animal; *b, c.* flagellulæ; *bg.* tentacle; *f.* flagellum; *m.* mouth; *n.* nucleus. (From Lang.)

Reproduction takes place by binary fission, the nucleus dividing indirectly. Spore-formation also occurs, sometimes preceded by conjugation, sometimes not.

The spores (*b*, *c*), formed by the breaking up of the protoplasm of the parent, escape in a form very unlike the adult, the tentacle or large flagellum being represented by a short thick process, while the main swimming organ of the flagellula becomes the small oral flagellum of the adult.

CLASS IV.—SPOROZOA.

1. Example of the Class—*Monocystis agilis.*

One of the most readily procured Sporozoa is the microscopic worm-like *Monocystis agilis* (Fig. 55, A, B), which is commonly found leading a parasitic life in the vesiculæ seminales of the common Earthworm. It is flattened, greatly elongated, pointed at both ends, and performs slow movements of expansion and contraction, reminding us of those of Euglena. The protoplasmic body is covered with a firm cuticle, and is distinctly divided into a denser superficial portion, the *cortex*, and a central semi-fluid mass, the *medulla*. There is a large clear nucleus (*nu.*) with a distinct nucleolus and nuclear membrane, but the other organs of the protozoan cell-body are absent: there is no trace of contractile vacuole, of flagella or pseudopods, of mouth or gullet. Nutrition is effected entirely by absorption.

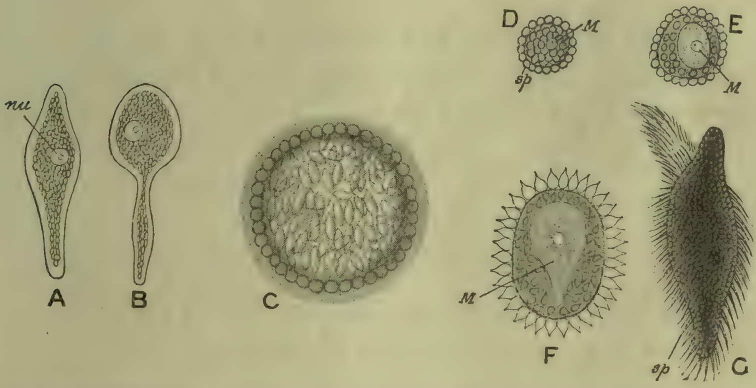


Fig. 55.—**Monocystis agilis.** A, B, two individuals in different stages of contraction; C, cyst containing spores; D—F, development of young (M) in a group of sperm-cells of the Earthworm; G, newly liberated Monocystis surrounded by sperms of the Earthworm; *M*, young Monocystis; *nu.* nucleus; *sp.* sperms or sperm-cells of Earthworm. (After Bütschli and Huxley.)

Reproduction takes place by a peculiar and characteristic process of spore-formation. Either a single individual, or two individuals closely applied together but not actually fused, become encysted. Multiple fission then takes place (C), the protoplasm becoming divided into an immense number of spindle-shaped spores, each surrounded with a strong chitinoid coat, and thus differing markedly from the naked spores of the Rhizopoda and Mastigophora. The protoplasm of each spore then undergoes fission, becoming divided into a number of somewhat sickle-shaped bodies, which are arranged within the spore-coat somewhat like a bundle of sausages. By the rupture of the spore-coat these *falciform young* are liberated and at once begin active movements, the thin end of the body moving to and fro like a clumsy flagellum. The falciform young appear, in fact, to be greatly modified flagellulæ. They make their way to the clumps of developing sperms, bore their way in, and are thus found surrounded by sperm-cells in various stages of development (D—F). After thus living an intra-cellular life for a time, they escape into the cavity of the vesicula (G) and grow into the adult form.

2. Classification and General Organisation.

The Sporozoa are exclusively parasitic, being the only group of Protozoa of which this can be said. They have no organs of locomotion and always multiply by spore-formation. The class is divisible into the following four orders:—

Order 1.—Gregarinida.

Sporozoa in which the adult is free and motile.

Order 2.—Coccidiidea.

Sporozoa in which the adult is a minute intra-cellular parasite.

Order 3.—Myxosporidea.

Sporozoa in which the adult is amœboid.

Order 4.—Sarcocystidea.

Elongated Sporozoa, usually found in muscle.

Systematic Position of the Example.

Monocystis agilis is a species of the genus *Monocystis*, belonging to the Family *Monocystidæ*, of the order *Gregarinida*. It is placed in the Gregarinida on account of being free and motile in the adult state. The absence of partitions dividing the protoplasm into segments indicates its position among the Monocystidæ. Monocystis is distinguished by its elongated form, by the absence of any special apparatus in the cyst for the liberation and dispersal of the spores, and by its spindle-shaped spores with thickened ends, each producing 4—8 falciform young. The differences between the species of Monocystis depend largely upon size.

ORDER 1.—GREGARINIDA.

All the more typical members of the class belong to this group. With the exception of Monocystis, already described, the only genus to which it will be necessary to draw attention is *Gregarina* (Fig. 56), the various species of which are parasitic in the intestines of Crayfishes, Cockroaches, Centipedes, and other articulated animals. It differs from Monocystis in having the medullary protoplasm of the adult divided into two sections, an anterior, the *protomerite* (*pr.*), and a posterior, the *deutomerite* (*deu.*), in which the nucleus is situated. Anteriorly to the protomerite there is sometimes found, especially in young individuals, a third division, the *epimerite* (*ep.*), which is sometimes provided with hooks (B^1), serving to attach the parasite to the epithelium of the intestine of its host. As maturity is reached the epimerite is thrown off (B^2), and the parasite then lies freely in the cavity of the intestine.

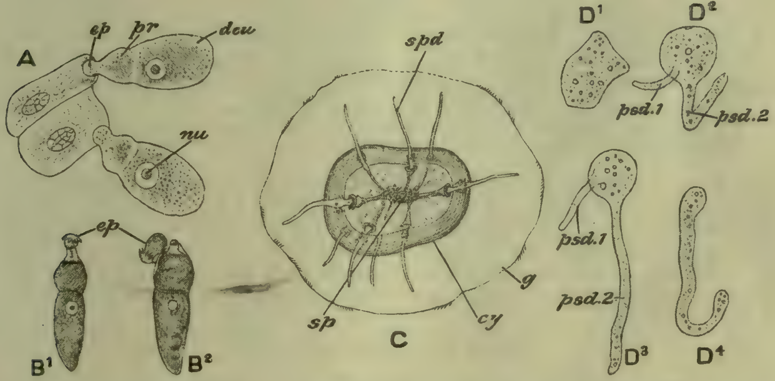
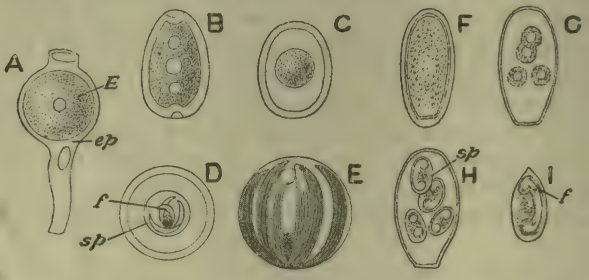


FIG. 56.—**Gregarina.** A, two specimens of *G. blattarum* partly embedded in enteric epithelial cells of Cockroach; B^1, B^2, two specimens of *G. dujardini*; in B^2 the epimerite (*ep.*) is cast off; C, cyst of *G. blattarum*, from which most of the spores have been discharged; D, four stages in the development of *G. gigantea*; *cy.* cyst; *deu.* deutomerite; *ep.* epimerite; *g.* gelatinous investment of cyst; *nu.* nucleus; *pr.* protomerite; *psd. 1*, short pseudopod; *psd. 2*, long pseudopod; *sp.* mass of spores; *spd.* sporoducts. (From Bütschli's *Protozoa*.)

The cysts of Gregarina (C) are often very complex and are provided with delicate ducts (*spd.*) in the thickness of the wall, through which the spores escape. In *Gregarina gigantea* of the Lobster, the young is liberated from the spore in the form of a non-nucleated amœbula (D^1), with one long and one short pseudopod (D^2); this divides by the long pseudopod (*psd. 2*) becoming separated off, and each product of fission, developing a nucleus, passes into the adult form (D^3, D^4.)

Order 2.—Coccidiidea

The members of this order are extremely minute and simple forms which occur as parasites, not in the intestine, but in the actual cells of various animals. *Eimeria* (Fig, 57, *1*), for instance, is found in the intestinal epithelium of the mouse and the sparrow, *Coccidium* (*2*) in the rabbit's liver, and *Klossia* in the epithelium of the kidney of molluscs. They are not locomotive, but remain quiescent in the cell (A), finally encysting (C), and producing one or more spores (D), in each of which one or more falciform young (E) are developed. The remarkable parasite, *Drepanidium ranarum*, found in the blood corpuscles of the frog, is probably the falciform stage of some unknown member of this order.



1. Eimeria **2. Coccidium**

Fig. 57.—**Coccidiidea.** A, adult *Eimeria* (E) in enteric epithelial cell (*ep.*) of mouse; B, encysted form; C, encysted form, the protoplasm contracting to form a spore; D, formation of falciform young (*f.*) in interior of spore (*sp.*); E, spore with falciform young; F, adult encysted form of *Coccidium* from liver of rabbit; G, division into spores; H, cyst containing ripe spores (*sp.*), each with a single falciform young; I, single spore with falciform young (*f.*). (From Bütschli's *Protozoa*, after Leuckart and Eimer.)

Order 3.—Myxosporidea.

This group includes a small number of genera, which differ from other Sporozoa in being amœboid (Fig. 58, A). Many nuclei are present, but whether this condition is due to the multiplication of a single nucleus or to the organism being a plasmodium is not known. A good example of the order is *Myxidium*, found in the urinary bladder of the pike.

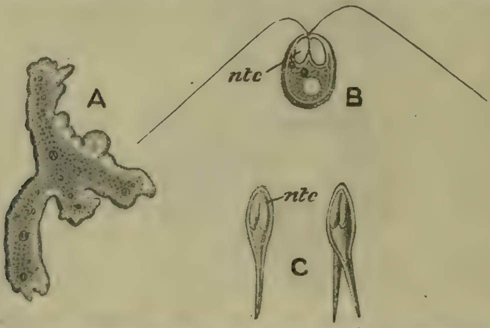


Fig. 58.—A, **Myxidium lieberkühnii,** amœboid phase; B, **Myxobolus mülleri,** spore with discharged nematocysts (*ntc.*); C, spores (psorosperms) of a Myxosporidian; *ntc.* nematocysts. (From Bütschli's *Protozoa.*)

The spores are often very complex; in some cases (B) they possess organs like the trichocysts of Infusoria and the nematocysts of Zoophytes (*vide infra*); in others they have the form of curious twisted bodies called *psorosperms*, found in the gills, kidneys, &c., of fishes; they have been seen to liberate amœbulæ.

ORDER 4.—SARCOCYSTIDEA.

The best known form of this order is *Sarcocystis* (Fig. 59), which occurs in the flesh of mammals, each parasite having the form of a long spindle embedded in a striped muscular fibre. They are often known as *Rainey's* or *Miescher's corpuscles.* The protoplasm divides into spores from which falciform young are liberated.

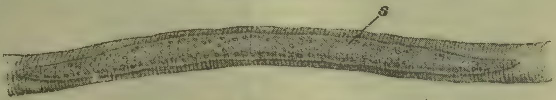


FIG. 59.—**Sarcocystis miescheri,** adult form (*s*) in striped muscle of pig. (From Bütschli's *Protozoa*, after Rainey.)

CLASS V.—INFUSORIA.

1. EXAMPLE OF THE CLASS—*Paramœcium caudatum.*

Structure.—*Paramœcium*, the "slipper-animalcule," is tolerably common in stagnant ponds, organic infusions, &c. The body (Fig. 60) is somewhat cylindrical, about $\frac{1}{4}$ mm. in length, rounded at the anterior and bluntly pointed at the posterior end. On the ventral face is a large oblique depression, the *buccal groove* (*buc. gr.*), leading into a short *gullet* (*gul.*), which, as in Euglena, ends in the soft internal protoplasm.

The body is covered with small cilia arranged in longitudinal rows and continued down the gullet. The protoplasm is very clearly differentiated into a comparatively dense *cortex* (*cort.*) and a semi-fluid *medulla* (*med.*), and is covered externally by a thin *cuticle* (*cu.*) continued down the gullet. The cilia are prolongations of the cortex, and perforate the cuticle.

In the cortex are found two nuclei, the relations of which are very characteristic. One, distinguished as the *meganucleus* (*nu.*), is a large ovoid body, staining evenly with aniline dyes, which, when it divides, does so directly by a simple process of constriction. The other, called the *micronucleus* (*pa. nu.*), is a very small body closely applied to the meganucleus: when it divides it goes through the complex series of stages characteristic of mitosis (p. 16).

The contractile vacuoles (*c. vac.*) are two in number, and are very readily made out. Each is connected with a series of radiating spindle-shaped cavities in the protoplasm which serve as feeders to it. After the contraction of the vacuole these cavities are seen gradually to fill, apparently receiving water from the surrounding protoplasm: they then contract, discharging the water into the vacuole, the latter rapidly enlarging while they disappear from

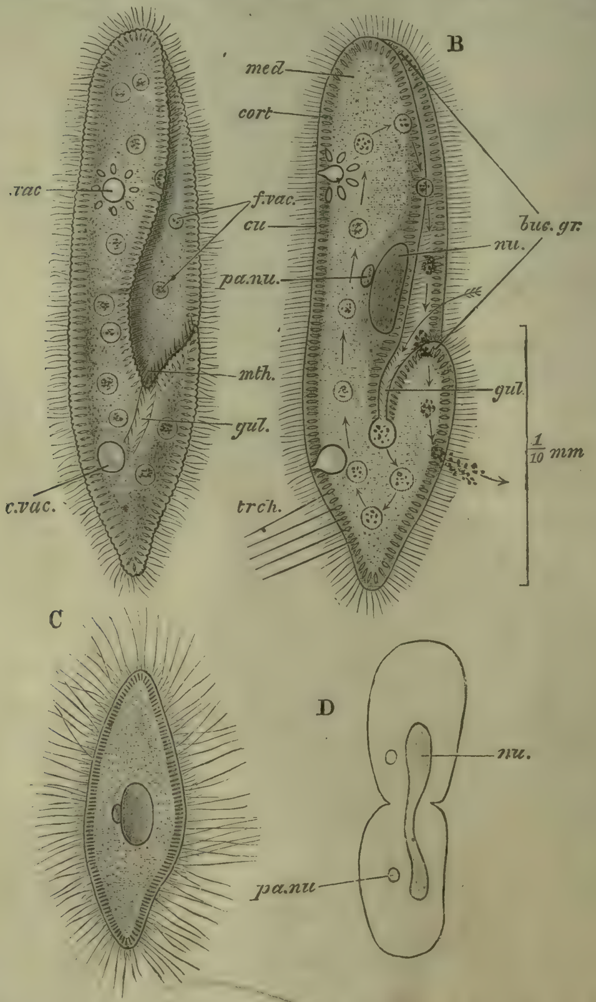


Fig. 60—**Paramœcium caudatum**. A, the living animal from the ventral aspect; B, the same in optical section: the arrow shows the course taken by food-particles; C, a specimen which has discharged its trichocysts; D, diagram of binary fission; *buc. gr.* buccal groove; *cort.* cortex; *cu.* cuticle; *c. vac.* contractile vacuole; *f. vac.* food vacuole; *gul.* gullet; *med.* medulla; *nu.* meganucleus; *pa. nu.* micronucleus; *trch.* trichocysts. (From Parker's *Biology.*)

view; finally the vacuole contracts and discharges its contents externally.

The cortex contains minute radially arranged sacs called *trichocysts* (*trch.*). When the animal is irritated, more or fewer of these suddenly discharge a long delicate thread, which, in the condition of rest, is very probably coiled up within the sac. In a specimen killed with iodine or osmic acid the threads can frequently be seen projecting in all directions from the surface (*C*).

Food, in the form of small living organisms, is taken in by means of the current caused by the cilia of the buccal groove. The food-particles, enclosed in a globule of water or "food-vacuole" (*f. vac.*), circulate through the protoplasm, when the soluble parts are gradually digested and assimilated. Starchy and fatty matters, as well as proteids, are available as food, the digestive powers of Paramœcium being thus considerably in advance of those of Amœba. Effete matters are egested at a definite *anal spot* posterior to the mouth, where the cortex and cuticle are less resistent than elsewhere. The whole feeding process can readily be observed in this and other Infusoria by placing in the water some insoluble colouring matter, such as carmine or indigo, in a fine state of division.

Reproduction.—Multiplication takes place by transverse fission (D), the division of the body being preceded by that of both nuclei. As already mentioned, the meganucleus divides directly, the micronucleus indirectly.

It has been proved, however, that multiplication by binary fission cannot go on indefinitely; but that after it has been repeated a certain number of times it is interrupted by *conjugation*. In this very remarkable and characteristic process two Paramœcia

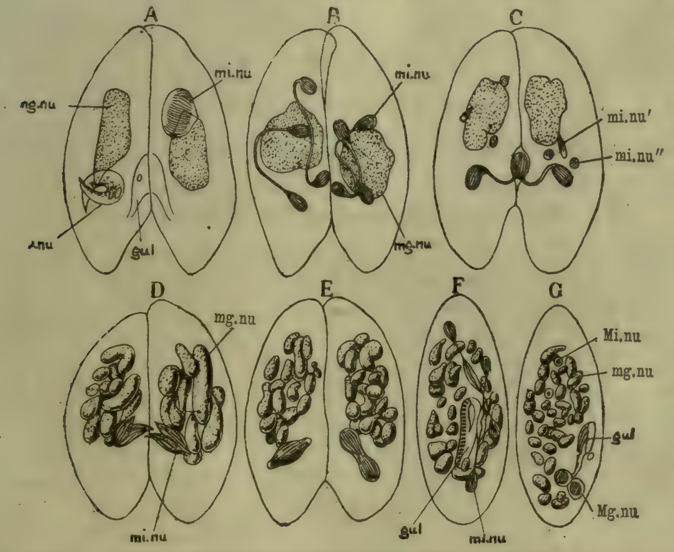


FIG. 61.—**Paramœcium caudatum,** stages in conjugation. *gul.* gullet; *mg. nu.* meganucleus; *mi. nu.* micronucleus; *Mg. nu.* reconstructed meganucleus; *Mi. nu.* reconstructed micronucleus. (From Parker's *Biology*, after Hertwig.)

become applied by their ventral faces (Fig. 61, A), but do not fuse. The meganucleus (*mg. nu.*) of each breaks up into small masses, which disappear, being apparently absorbed into the protoplasm. At the same time the micronucleus (*mi. nu.*) of each divides, each product of division immediately dividing again, so that each gamete or conjugating body is provided with four micronuclei (B). Two of these (*mi. nu.'*, *mi. nu.''*) disappear; of the remaining two one is distinguished as the *stationary pronucleus*, the other as the *active pronucleus*. The active pronucleus of each Infusor now passes into the body of the other and fuses with its stationary pronucleus (D), each individual thus coming to possess a single nuclear body derived in equal proportions from the two conjugating cells (E). The animalcules then separate from one another, and the nucleus of each divides and gives rise to the permanent mega- (G, *Mg. nu.*) and micronuclei (*Mi. nu.*).

2. CLASSIFICATION AND GENERAL ORGANISATION.

In the majority of the Infusoria the body is ciliated throughout life, but in certain forms cilia are present only in the immature condition, the adult being provided with peculiar organs of prehension or *tentacles*. We thus get two orders, viz.:—

ORDER 1.—CILIATA.

Infusoria provided with cilia throughout life.

ORDER 2.—TENTACULIFERA.

Infusoria possessing cilia in the young condition, tentacles in the adult.

Systematic Position of the Example.

Paramœcium aurelia is one of several species of the genus *Paramœcium*, belonging the Family *Paramœcidæ*, of the sub-order *Trichostomata*, and order *Ciliata*. The presence of cilia in the adult condition places it among the Ciliata: the presence of a permanently open mouth into which food particles are swept by the movement of the cilia, among the Trichostomata. The Paramœcidæ are free-swimming, asymmetrical, uniformly ciliated, with a ventrally placed mouth. P. caudatum is about $\frac{1}{4}$—$\frac{1}{5}$ mm. in length, its length about four times its breadth, rounded in front, and bluntly pointed behind, and has a single micronucleus.

ORDER 1.—CILIATA.

This order presents a wider range of variations—some of them of a truly extraordinary character—than any other group of Protozoa.

The **form of the body** is very varied: it may be ovoid (Fig. 62, *1*), kidney-shaped (*2*), trumpet-shaped (*3*), vase or cup-shaped (*4*, *9*); produced into a long, flexible, neck-like process (*5*), or into large paired lappets (*6*); flattened from above downwards, or elongated and divided into segments reminding us of those of an articulated worm (*8*).

Most species are free-swimming, but some are attached to weeds, stones, &c., by a **stalk.** This may be a purely cuticular structure (*9*), or may contain a prolongation of the cortex in the form of a delicate contractile *axial fibre* (Figs. 64 and 65, *ax. f.*), which serves to retract the Infusor, its contraction causing the stalk to coil up into a close spiral.

The **arrangement of the cilia** is also subject to great variation, and presents four chief types. In the *holotrichous type*, of which Paramœcium is an example, the cilia are all small, equal-sized or nearly so, and arranged in longitudinal rows (Fig. 60, Fig. 62, *1*). The second or *heterotrichous* type is seen in its simplest form in *Nyctotherus* (Fig. 62, *2*), in which the left side of the peristome is bordered by a row of specially large *adoral* cilia, the rest of the body being covered with small cilia. In *Stentor* (*3*) the peristome is situated on the broad distal end of the trumpet-shaped body, and the adoral band of cilia takes a spiral course. This leads us to the *peritrichous* type of ciliation: in *Vorticella* (Fig. 64) the vase-shaped body is, for the most part, quite bare of cilia, but around the thickened edge of the peristome passes one limb of a spiral band of large cilia, the other limb being continued round a raised lid-like structure, or *disc*, into which the distal region is produced. This arrangement of cilia reaches its greatest complexity in *Epistylis plicatilis* (Fig. 62, *9*), in which the ciliary spiral makes no fewer than four turns.

But it is in the *hypotrichous* type that the most extraordinary modifications are found. The flattened body bears on its dorsal surface mere vestiges of cilia in the form of very minute processes of the cuticle, while on the ventral surface the cilia take the form of large hooks, fans, bristles, and plates with fringed ends (Fig. 62, *7*). The hooks and plates do not vibrate rhythmically like ordinary cilia, but are moved as a whole at the will of the animal, thus acting as legs. The heterotrichous Ciliata, in fact, in addition to swimming freely in the water, creep over the surface of weeds, &c., very much after the manner of Woodlice. One of the most extraordinary forms in this group is *Diophrys*, the size and arrangement of its polymorphic cilia giving it a very grotesque appearance. In another genus (*10*) the distal end of the flask-shaped body bears a circlet of large fringed cilia, giving the animal the appearance of a Rotifer (*vide infra*, Section VII.).

In addition to cilia, many genera possess delicate sheets of protoplasm or *undulating membranes* in connection with the peristome. They contract so as to produce a wave-like movement which aids in the ingestion of food. In some cases (Fig. 62, *11*) the undulating membrane (*u. mb.*) is a very large and obvious structure.

Certain peculiar forms have yet to be mentioned. *Multicilia* (Fig. 62, *12*) has an irregular body of varying form, and bears a small number of very long flagellum-like cilia. Another genus in which the cilia approach to flagella is *Lophomonas* (*13*), the ovoid body of which bears a tuft of close-set cilia at its anterior end. *Actinobolus* (*14*) is remarkable for the possession, in addition to cilia, of long retractile tentacles used for attachment. In *Didinium* (*15*) the barrel-shaped body is encircled by two hoops of cilia.

As we have seen, the **meganucleus** in *Paramœcium* is ovoid: in other genera it may be elongated and band-like (3, *mg. nu.*), horseshoe-shaped (*9*), very long and constricted at intervals so as to look like a string of beads (*16*), or much convoluted and branched (*17*). In some genera the meganucleus undergoes repeated divison, forming at last a very great number of small bodies only discoverable by staining: this process of *fragmentation of the nucleus* may proceed so far that the protoplasm of a stained specimen has the appearance of being strewn with granules of chromatin. The discovery of this phenomenon has tended to throw doubt on the reported total absence of a nucleus in some Rhizopods.

In nearly all species one or more **micronuclei** are present, the number sometimes reaching nearly thirty. In *Opalina* (Fig. 66) numerous nuclear bodies (*nu.*) are present which divide by mitosis, and therefore resemble micronuclei: if they are to be considered as such, this genus must be held to differ from the other Ciliata in the total absence of a meganucleus.

In *Vorticella* and other peritrichous genera there is a single **contractile vacuole** (Fig. 64, *c. vac.*), which, like that of Euglena, opens through the intermediation of a reservoir into the gullet. In the remaining Ciliata there may be one, two, or many—sometimes a hundred—contractile vacuoles. They may be scattered all over the cortex (Fig. 62, *18*), or arranged in one or two rows (*8*). The star-like arrangement of radiating canals, described in Paramœcium, occurs in several genera: or there may be two long canals, or the number of these channels in the protoplasm may reach thirty (19, *c*). In some instances the protoplasm is hollowed out by numerous **non-contractile vacuoles** (18, *vac.*) so as to have a reticulate appearance, reminding us of the extra-capsular protoplasm of Radiolaria.

Trichocysts, like those of Paramœcium, are found in many holotrichous forms, but are rarely present in the other subdivisions of the order. In the peritrichous *Epistylis umbellaria*, however, there are found numerous minute capsules (Fig. 62, *9*, *ntc.*) arranged in pairs, each containing a coiled thread. They are

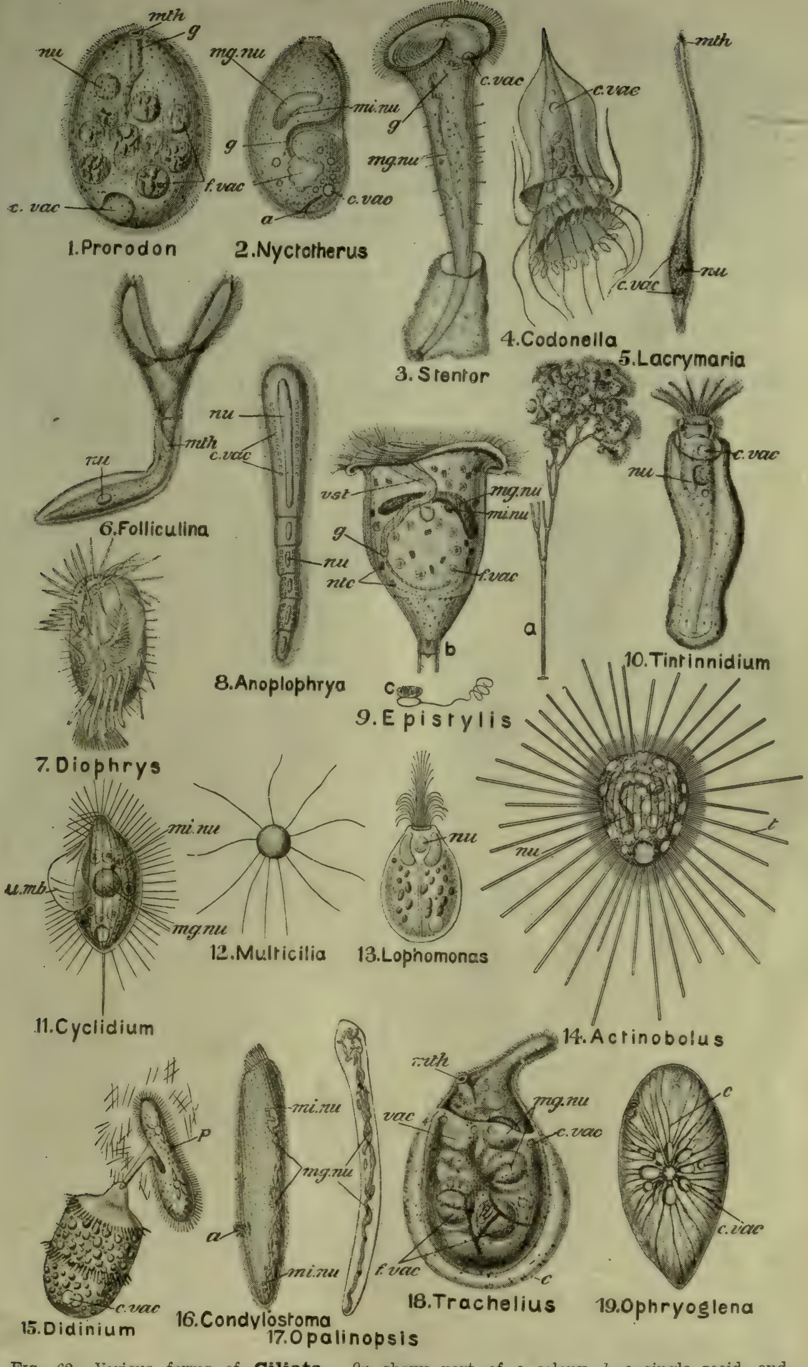

mth
g
nu
c. vac
f. vac
1. Prorodon
mg. nu
mi. nu
g
c. vac
a
2. Nyctotherus
c. vac
g
mg. nu
3. Stentor
c. vac
4. Codonella
mth
nu
c. vac
5. Lacrymaria
nu
mth
6. Folliculina
7. Diophrys
nu
c. vac
nu
8. Anoplophrya
vst
mg. nu
mi. nu
g
nu
ntc
f. vac
b
c
a
9. Epistylis
c. vac
nu
10. Tintinnidium
mi. nu
u. mb
mg. nu
11. Cyclidium
12. Multicilia
nu
13. Lophomonas
nu
t
14. Actinobolus
p
c. vac
15. Didinium
mi. nu
mg. nu
a
mi. nu
16. Condylostoma
17. Opalinopsis
mth
vac
mg. nu
c. vac
f. vac
c
18. Trachelius
c
c. vac
19. Ophryoglena

FIG. 62.—Various forms of **Ciliata.** *9a* shows part of a colony, *b* a single zooid, and *c* a couple of nematocysts; *a.* anus; *c.* (in 18) cuticle; *c.* (in 19) excretory canals; *c. vac.* contractile vacuole; *f. vac.* food vacuole; *g.* gullet; *mg. nu.* meganucleus; *mi. nu.* micronucleus; *mth.* mouth; *nu.* nucleus; *ntc.* nematocyst; *p.* (in 15) a *Paramœcium* seized by *Didinium*; *t.* tentacle; *u. mb.* undulating membrane; *vac.* non-contractile vacuole; *vst.* vestibule. (From Bütschli's *Protozoa*, after various authors.)

obviously structures of the same character as trichocysts, and their resemblance to the *nematocysts* so characteristic of Cœlenterata (*vide infra*, Section IV.) is singularly close.

Digestive Apparatus.—Many parasitic forms (Fig. 62, *8*, *17*; Fig. 66) have no mouth or gullet, and are nourished by absorption of the digested food in the intestine of their host. The simplest condition of the ingestive apparatus is found in *Prorodon* (Fig. 62, *1.*) and its allies, in which the mouth (*mth.*) is at one pole of the ovoid body and is closed except during the ingestion of food, and the gullet (*g.*) is a short, straight tube. Such forms, on account of the symmetrical disposition of their organs and the want of differentiation of their cilia—they are all holotrichous—may be considered as the lowest or least specialised of the Ciliata.

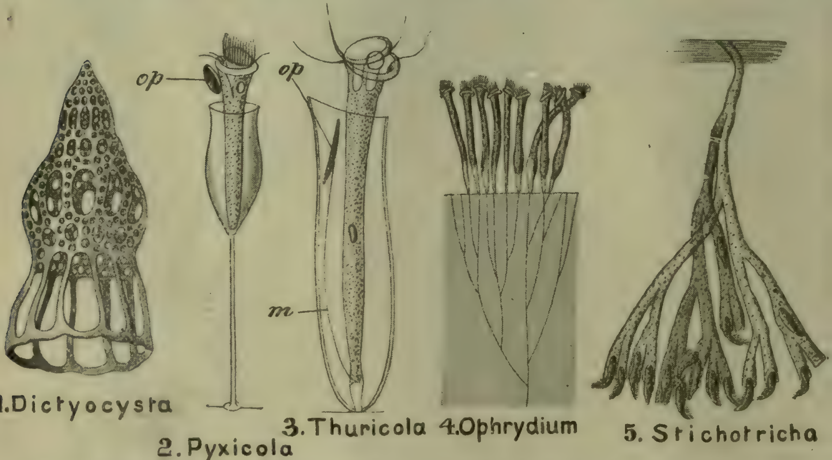


FIG. 63.—Various forms of **Ciliata**. In *1* the shell alone is shown; *m.* contractile fibre; *op.* operculum. (From Bütschli's *Protozoa*, after various authors.)

From them there is a fairly complete gradation to genera, like Paramœcium, having the permanently open mouth on the left side of the ventral surface, at the end of a well-marked buccal grove or peristome. *Vorticella* (Fig. 64) and its allies are peculiar in having the edge of the peristome (*per.*) thickened so as to form a projecting rim, and in the development of an elevated disc (*d.*) from the area thus enclosed: the mouth (*mth.*) lies between the peristome and the disc, and between it and the gullet proper (*gull.*) is interposed a section of the ingestive tube called the *vestibule*, into which the contractile vacuole opens, and which contains the anal spot. The distal end of Vorticella, with the peristome and disc, is considered to be dorsal, the narrow end, to which the stalk is attached, ventral: the mouth is, as usual, to the left. In *Nyctotherus* (Fig. 62, *2*) and some other genera there is, instead of the temporary anal spot described in Paramœcium, a distinct *anal aperture* (*a.*).

Most of the Ciliata are naked, having no shell or other form of **skeleton**; but in a few forms the body is provided with a shell or *lorica*, formed of a chitinoid material, and reminding us of the similar structure found in so many of the Mastigophora. Some (Fig. 62, *4*) have bell-like shells, variously ornamented, and in others (Fig. 63, *1*) the similarly shaped shell is perforated and resembles the skeleton of some of the Radiolaria. A chitinoid plate or *operculum* (Fig. 63, *2*, *op.*) may be fixed to the edge of the peristome, and, when the animal is retracted in its case accurately closes the mouth of the latter, or a similar operculum (*3*) is

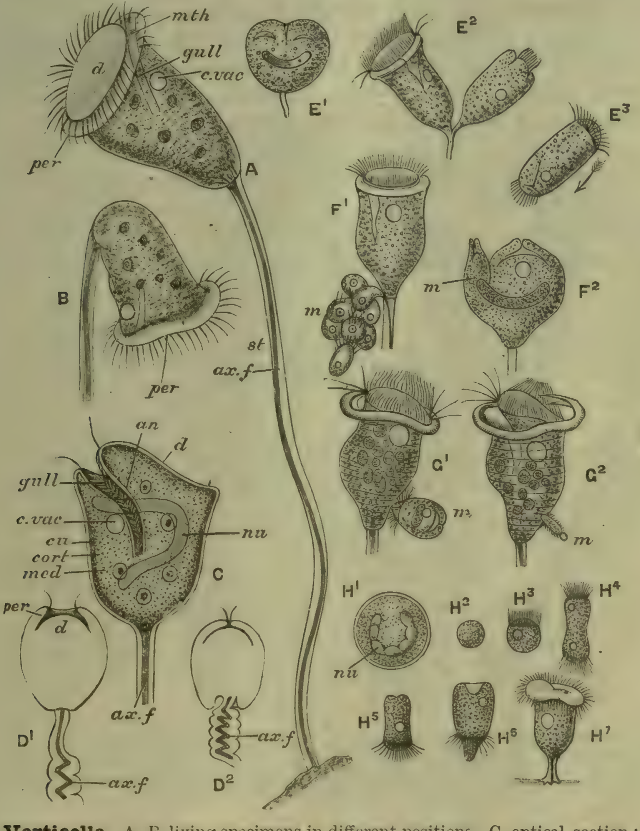


FIG. 64.—**Vorticella**. A, B, living specimens in different positions, C, optical section; D^1, D^2, diagrams illustrating coiling of stalk; E^1, E^2, two stages in binary fission; E^3, free zooid; F^1, F^2, division into mega- and microzooids; G^1, G^2, conjugation; H^1, multiple fission of encysted form; H^2, H^3, development of spores; *ax. f.* axial fibre; *cort.* cortex; *cu.* cuticle; *c. vac.* contractile vacuole; *d.* disc; *gull.* gullet; *m.* microzooid; *mth.* mouth; *nu.* meganucleus; *per.* peristome. (From Parker's *Biology*.)

attached to the interior of the tube, and is closed by a contractile thread of protoplasm (*m.*), which acts as a retractor muscle.

Compound forms or **colonies** are common among the Peritricha, rare in the other subdivisions. Many peritrichous forms occur as branched, tree-like colonies, often of great complexity (Fig. 62, *9*; Fig. 65). The stem of these may be a purely cuticular structure and non-contractile (Fig. 62, *9*, *b*), or may contain an axial fibre or muscle, like that of Vorticella (Fig. 64, *ax.f.*). In *Ophridium* (Fig. 63, *4*) the colony is an irregular mass, sometimes 3–4 cm. in diameter, consisting of a gelatinous substance in which a delicate, branching stem is embedded, each branch terminating in a zooid. Some genera (Fig. 63, *5*) secrete a hollow, brown, gelatinous tube, branched dichotomously; the end of each branch is the habitation of one of the zooids.

Reproduction.—*Transverse fission* is the universal method of reproduction, the entire process taking from half an hour to two hours in different species. In Vorticella (Fig. 64, E) and other Peritricha the plane of division is parallel to the long axis of the bell-shaped body, but as the distal surface probably corresponds with the dorsal surface of such forms as Paramœcium, fission is really transverse in this case also. In such simple Peritricha as Vorticella division proceeds until two zooids are produced on a single stalk; one of the two then acquires a second circlet of cilia near its proximal end, becomes detached (E^3), and, after leading a free-swimming life for a time, settles down and develops a stalk: in this way the dispersal of the non-locomotive species is ensured. In many species of *Zoothamnium* (Fig. 65) the zooids

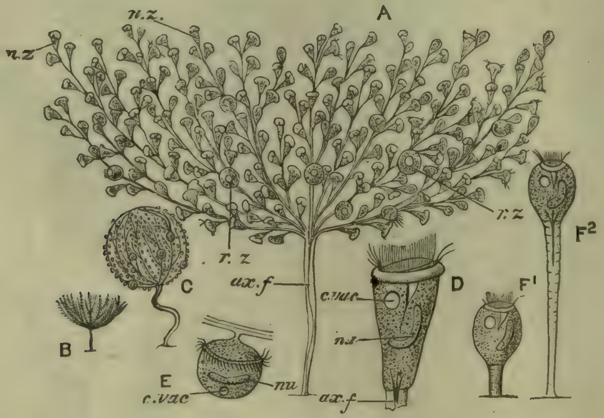


FIG. 65.—**Zoothamnium arbuscula.** A, entire colony; B, the same, natural size; C, the same, retracted; D, nutritive zooid; E, reproductive zooid; F^1, F^2, development of reproductive zooid; *ax.f.* axial fibre; *c. vac.* contractile vacuole; *nu.* nucleus; *n.z.* nutritive zooid; *r.z.* reproductive zooid. (From Parker's *Biology*, after Saville Kent.)

are *dimorphic:* the ordinary bell-shaped forms (*n.z.*) divide in the usual way, but as they remain attached, the process results only in the increased complexity of the colony, not in the development of a new one. The larger zooids (*r. z.*) are globular and mouthless: they become detached, swim off, and, after a short free existence, settle down, develop a stalk (F), divide, and so form a new colony.

In Vorticella multiplication by *budding* also occurs: a small process is given off from one side (Fig. 64, F), develops a basal circlet of cilia, and swims off as a *microzooid*, the parent individual or *megazooid* being left attached to the stalk. Obviously this process is simply a modification of binary fission, the products of division being of very different dimensions, instead of equal-sized as in the more usual case.

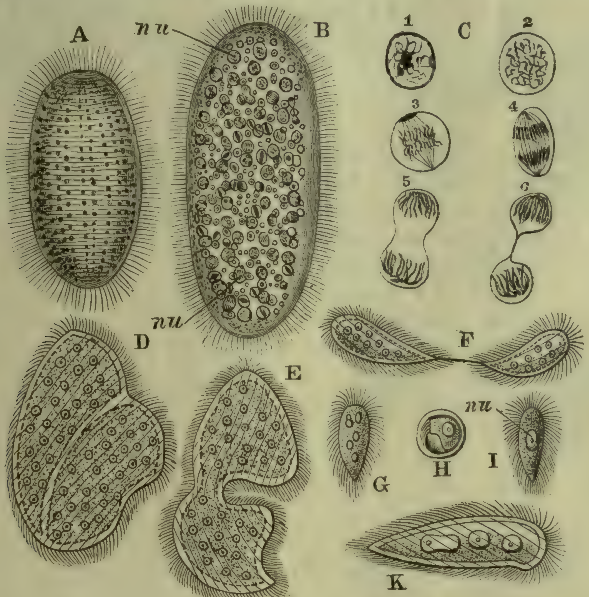


FIG. 66.—**Opalina ranarum.** A, living specimen; B, stained specimen showing nuclei; C, stages in nuclear division; D—F, stages in fission; G, final product of fission; H, encysted form; I, young form liberated from cyst; K, the same after multiplication of the nucleus has begun; *nu.* nucleus. (From Parker's *Biology*, after Saville Kent and Zeller.)

Spore-formation take place in *Colpoda.* The Infusor becomes encysted, and divides into two, four, and finally eight masses, each of which, becoming surrounded by a special investment, becomes a spore. A somewhat similar process has been described in Vorticella (Fig. 64, *H*).

A peculiar kind of spore-formation, specially adapted to the requirements of an internal parasite, takes place in *Opalina*

(Fig. 66), a parasite in the intestine of the Frog. Binary fission takes place (D, E, F), and is repeated again and again so rapidly that the daughter-cells are unable to grow to the adult size before the next division. The final results of the process are small bodies (G), each with only two or three nuclei instead of the large number characteristic of the adult. These become encysted (H), and in this passive condition are passed out of the Frog's intestine with its fæces, frequently being deposited on water-weeds. All this takes place during the Frog's breeding season: the tadpoles or Frog-larvæ feed upon the water-plants, and in doing so frequently take in the spores or encysted Opalinæ along with their food. When this occurs the cyst is dissolved by the digestive juices of the host, and the protoplasm of the spore is set free as a rounded body with a single nucleus (I), which rapidly grows into an adult Opalina (K).

Conjugation, in the form of a temporary union, accompanied by interchange of micronuclei, has been described in Paramœcium, and takes place in many other Ciliata. In *Stylonychia histrio* there is, instead, a complete union of the two gametes. In Vorticella union is also permanent, and takes place, not between two ordinary forms, but between one of the ordinary stalked individuals, or megagametes, and a free-swimming, small form, or microgamete, produced, as described above, by budding (G^1, G^2). The essence of conjugation is the reception of nuclear material derived from another individual: its effect appears to be increased activity in multiplication by fission.

ORDER 2.—TENTACULIFERA.

Judged from the adult structure alone, the members of this order would certainly be placed in a separate class of the Protozoa: it is only in virtue of the facts of development that they are united in a single class with the Ciliata.

The **body** may be globular (Fig. 67, *1a*), ovoid (*1b*), or cup-shaped (*2a*), but presents nothing like the variety of form met with among the Ciliata. The distinguishing feature of the group is furnished by the **tentacles** which are always present in greater or less number, and which, in some cases at least, are the most highly differentiated organs found in the whole group of Protozoa. The characters of the tentacles vary strikingly in the different genera.

In the common forms *Acineta* (*2*), and *Podophrya* (*1*), the tentacles spring either from the whole surface or in groups from the angles of the somewhat triangular body. Each tentacle is an elongated cylindrical structure (*1c*), capable of protrusion and retraction, and having its distal end expanded into a sucker. It is, moreover, practically tubular, the axial region consisting of a semi-fluid protoplasm, while the outer portion is tolerably firm and resistant. When partially retracted, a spiral ridge is sometimes observable

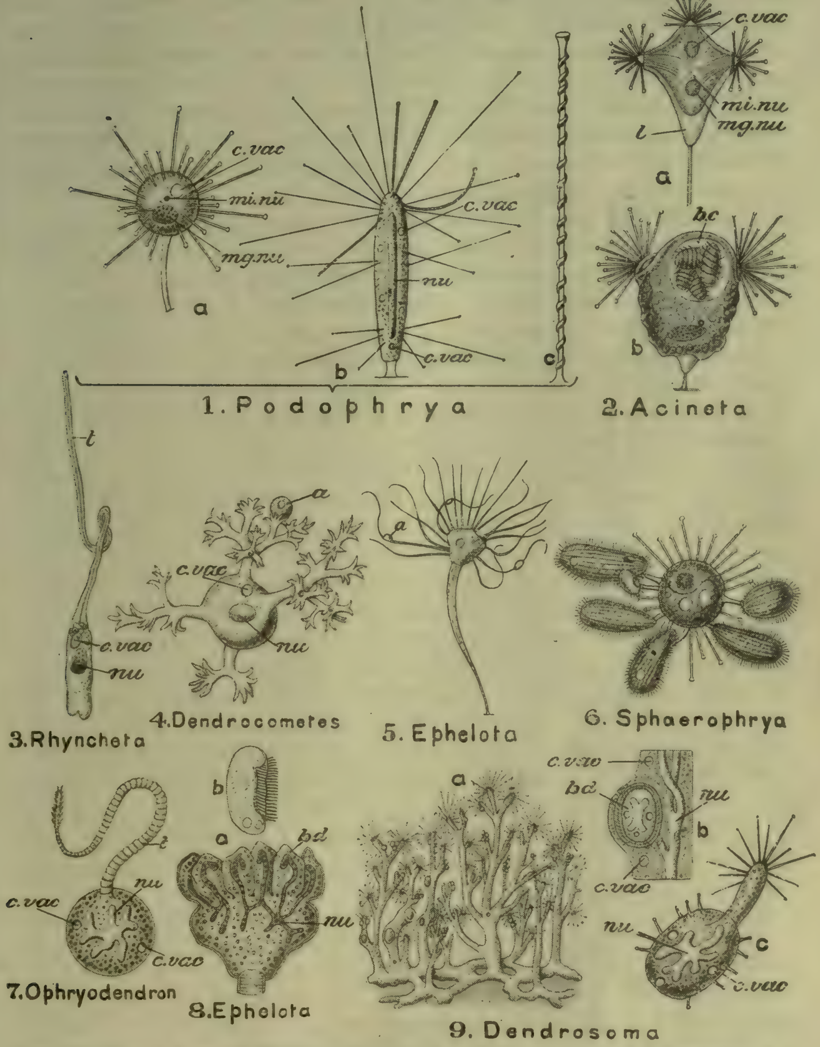

c.vac
mi.nu
mg.nu
a
c.vac
nu
c.vac
b
c
1. Podophrya
c.vac
mi.nu
mg.nu
l
a
b.c
b
2. Acineta
t
c.vac
nu
3. Rhyncheta
a
c.vac
nu
4. Dendrocometes
a
5. Ephelota
6. Sphaerophrya
t
nu
c.vac
c.vac
7. Ophryodendron
b
a
bd
nu
8. Ephelota
a
c.vac
bd
nu
b
c.vac
nu
c
c.vac
9. Dendrosoma

Fig. 67.—Various forms of **Tentaculifera.** *1a* and *b*, two species of *Podophrya; c*, a tentacle much enlarged; *2a*, Acineta jolyi; *2b*, A. tuberosa; in *6* the animal has captured several small Ciliata; *8a*, a specimen multiplying by budding; *8b*, a free ciliated bud; *9a*, the entire colony; *9b*, a portion of the stem; *9c*, a liberated bud; *a*, organism captured as food; *b.c.* brood-cavity; *bd.* bud; *c. vac.* contractile vacuole; *mg. nu.* meganucleus; *mi. nu.* micronucleus; *t.* tentacle. (After Bütschli and Saville Kent.)

around the tentacle: this may indicate the presence of a band of specially contractile protoplasm, resembling the axial fibre in the stalk of *Vorticella*. Infusors and other organisms are caught by the tentacles (*4*, *6*), the cuticle of the prey is pierced or dissolved where the sucker touches it, and the semi-fluid protoplasm can then be seen flowing down the tentacle into the body of the captor. A single tentacle only may be present (*3*), or the tentacle may be branched (*4*), the extremity of each branch being suctorial. In some forms there are no terminal suckers (*5*), and the tentacles are waved about to catch the prey instead of standing out stiffly as in Acineta. In other cases there are one or more long striated tentacles with tufted ends (*7*).

The **nucleus** may be ovoid (*1a*), horseshoe-shaped, or branched (*8*, *9*): in some cases a micronucleus (*1 a, mi. nu.*) has been found. There are one or more **contractile vacuoles** (*c. vac.*).

Some genera are naked (*1*): others form a stalked **shell** or *lorica* (*2 a*) like that met with in many of the Mastigophora.

The only **colonial form** is the wonderful *Dendrosoma* (*9*), in which the entire colony attains a length of about 2 mm., and bears an extraordinary resemblance to a zoophyte (*vide infra*, Sect. IV.). It consists of a creeping stem from which vertical branches spring, and the various ramifications of these are terminated in Podophrya-like zooids with suctorial tentacles. The nucleus is very remarkable, extending as a branched axis throughout the colony (b, *nu.*).

Reproduction by *binary fission* takes place in many species. In *Ephelota gemmipara* (*8*) a peculiar process of *budding* occurs: the distal end of the organism grows out into a number of projections or buds, into which branches of the nucleus extend. These become detached, acquire cilia on one surface, and swim off (b). After a short active existence tentacles appear and the cilia are lost. In this case budding is external, but in *Acineta tuberosa* (2 *b*) the buds become sunk in a depression, which is finally converted into a closed *brood-cavity* (*b.c.*): in this the buds take on the form of ciliated embryos, which finally escape from the parent. In *Dendrosoma* the common stem of the colony produces both internal and external buds (b, *bd.*).

Further Remarks on the Protozoa.

The majority of the Protozoa are aquatic, the phylum being equally well represented in fresh and salt water. They occur practically at all heights and depths, from 8,000 to 10,000 feet above sea-level, to a depth of 2,000 to 3,000 fathoms. Some forms, such as species of Amœba and Gromia, live in damp sand and moss, and may therefore be almost considered as terrestrial organisms. In accordance with their small size and the readiness with which they are transported from place to place a large proportion of genera and even of species are universally distributed, being found in all parts of the world where the microscopic fauna has been investigated.

Numerous parasitic forms are known. Besides the entire class of Sporozoa, species of Rhizopoda and of Infusoria occur both as internal and external parasites. Species of Amœba are common in the intestines of the higher animals, and one species has been found in connection with a cancerous disease in Sheep. Parasitic Vorticellæ are said to give rise to the skin-disease eczema in Man. A ciliate Infusor, *Ichthyophthirius*, is found in the skin of fresh-water Fishes, where it gives rise to inflammation and death.

Many instances have been met with in our survey of the Phylum, of compound or colonial forms, the existence of which seems at first sight to upset our definition of the Protozoa as unicellular animals. But in all such cases the zooids or unicellular individuals of the colony exhibit a quasi-independence, each, as a rule, feeding, multiplying, and performing all other essential animal functions independently of the rest, so that the only division of labour is in such forms as Zoothamnium and Volvox, in which certain zooids are incapable of feeding, and are set apart for reproduction. In all animals above Protozoa, on the other hand, the body is formed of an aggregate of cells, some of which perform one function, some another, and none of which exhibit the independent life of the zooid of a protozoan colony. It cannot, however, be said that there is any absolute distinction between a colony of unicellular zooids and a single multicellular individual: Proterospongia and Volvox approach very near to the border-land from the protozoan side, and a similar approach in the other direction is made by certain animals known as *Mesozoa*, which will be discussed hereafter (Sect. IV.). Moreover, the Mycetozoa, the plasmodia of which are formed by the fusion of Amœbulæ, the nuclei of the latter remaining distinct and multiplying, are rather non-cellular than uni-cellular. This point will also be referred to at the conclusion of the section on Sponges (Sect. III.).

In each division of the Protozoa we have found comparatively low or generalised forms side by side with comparatively high or specialised genera. For instance, among the Rhizopoda, there can be no hesitation in placing the Lobosa, and especially Protamœba, at the bottom of the list, and the Radiolaria at the top. Similarly, among the Mastigophora, such simple Flagellata as Oikomonas (Fig. 47, *2* and *8*) and Heteromita are obviously the lowest forms, Noctiluca and the Dinoflagellata the highest. But whether the Rhizopoda, as a whole, are higher or lower than the Flagellata, is a question by no means easy to answer. A flagellum certainly seems to be a more specialised cell-organ than a pseudopod, and some of the Mastigophora rise above the highest of the Rhizopoda in the possession of a firm cortex and cuticle, and the consequent assumption of a more definite form of body than can possibly be produced by the flowing protoplasm of a Foraminifer or a Radiolarian. On the other hand, the nucleus of the Radiolaria is a far more complex structure than that of the Mastigophora, and in Foraminifera, Radiolaria, and Heliozoa the organism frequently begins life as a flagellula, a fact which, on the hypothesis that the development of the individual recapitulates that of the race, appears to indicate that these orders of Rhizopoda are a more recently developed stock than at any rate the lower Flagellata. These circumstances, and the fact that Mastigamœba might equally well be classed as a lobose Rhizopod with a flagellum or as a Flagellate with pseudopods, seem to indicate that the actual starting-point of the Protozoa was a form

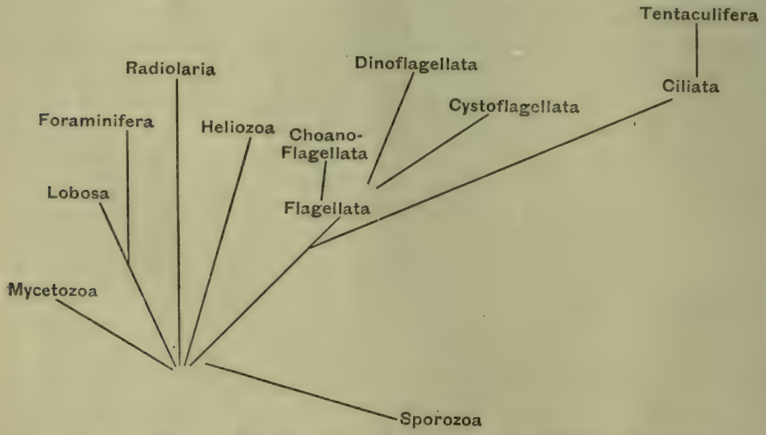


FIG. 68.—Diagram showing the mutual relationships of the chief groups of Protozoa.

capable of assuming either the amœboid or the flagellate phase. From such a starting-point the Lobosa, Foraminifera, Heliozoa, Radiolaria, and Flagellata diverge in different directions, the first four keeping mainly to the amœboid form, but assuming the flagellate form, in the young condition, in the case of Foraminifera, Heliozoa, and Radiolaria.

The Choanoflagellata, Dinoflagellata, and Cystoflagellata are obviously special developments of the Flagellate type along diverging lines.

As to the Ciliata, Lophomonas and Multicilia (Fig. 62, *12* and *13*) appear to indicate the derivation of the order from the Flagellate type, since their cilia are long and flagellum-like, but the evidence is not strong and no other is at hand. The derivation of the Tentaculifera from a ciliate type appears to be clear. The Tentaculifera and the hypotrichous Ciliata are undoubtedly the highest development of the Protozoan series, since they show a degree of differentiation attained nowhere else by a single cell.

The Mycetozoa appear to have been derived from the common amœboid-flagellate stock, since they are all predominantly amœboid in the adult condition, flagellate when young. The Sporozoa probably had a similar origin, but the characters of this class have evidently been profoundly modified in accordance with their parasitic mode of life.

The diagram on the previous page is an attempt to express these relationships in a graphic form.

SECTION III

PHYLUM AND CLASS PORIFERA.

THE microscopic animals described in the preceding section are, as already repeatedly pointed out, characterised by their unicellular character, and in this respect stand in contrast to the remainder of the animal kingdom. The animal kingdom is thus capable of division into two great subdivisions, the *Protozoa* or unicellular animals, and the *Metazoa* or multicellular—the latter comprising all the groups that remain to be dealt with. In the earliest stage of their existence all the multicellular animals or Metazoa are, as already pointed out (p. 18), in a unicellular condition, originating in a single cell, the fertilised ovum or oosperm. By the process of segmentation or yolk-division the unicellular oosperm becomes converted in all the Metazoa into a mass of cells from which the body of the adult animal is eventually built up. Of the Metazoa, the group which approximates most closely to the Protozoa is that now to be dealt with—the *Porifera* or Sponges.

1. EXAMPLE OF THE CLASS—*Sycon gelatinosum.*

General External Appearance and Gross Structure.—*Sycon gelatinosum*,[1] one of the Calcareous Sponges, has the form of a tuft, one to three inches long, of branching cylinders (Fig. 69), all connected together at the base, where it is attached to the surface of a rock or other solid body submerged in the sea. It is flexible, though of tolerably firm consistency; in colour it presents various shades of gray or light brown. To the naked eye the surface appears smooth, but when examined under the lens it is found to exhibit a pattern of considerable regularity, formed by the presence of

---

[1] This species is an inhabitant of southern seas. In all essential respects the account of it given above will apply to *S. ciliatum*, a common European species which differs chiefly in the absen[illegible] of the pore-membranes.

UNIVERSITY

innumerable elevations of a polygonal shape, which cover the whole surface and are separated off from one another by a system of depressed lines. In these depressions between the elevations are to be detected, under the microscope, groups of minute pores—the *inhalant pores.* At the free end of each of the cylindrical branches is a small but distinct opening, surrounded by what appears like a delicate fringe. When the branches are bisected longitudinally (Fig. 70), it is found that the terminal openings (*o*) lead into narrow passages, wide enough to admit a stout pin, running through the axes of the cylinders; and the passages in the interior of the various branches join where the branches join—the passages thus forming a communicating system. On the wall of the passages are numerous fine apertures which require a strong lens for their detection. The larger apertures at the ends of the branches are the *oscula* of the sponge, the passages the *paragastric cavities.* If a living Sycon is placed in sea-water with which has been mixed some carmine powder, it will be noticed that the minute particles of the carmine seem to be attracted towards the surface of the sponge, and will often be seen to pass into its substance through the minute inhalant pores already mentioned as occurring in groups between the elevations on the outer

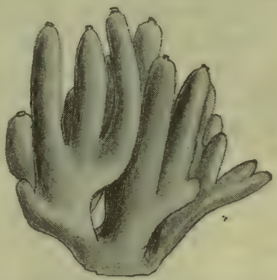


FIG. 69.—**Sycon gelatinosum.** —Entire sponge, consisting of a group of branching cylinders (natural size).

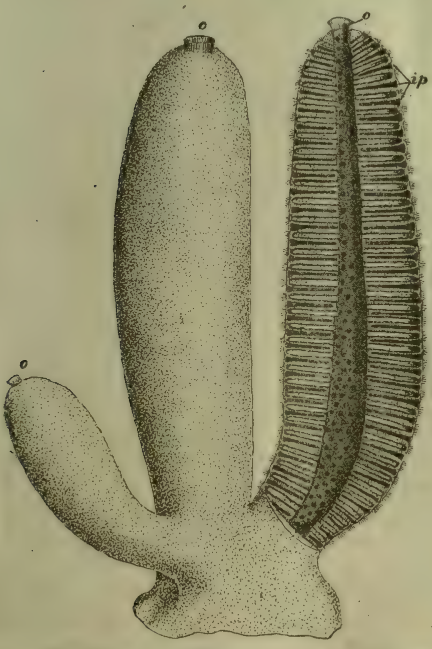


FIG. 70.—**Sycon gelatinosum.**—A portion slightly magnified; one cylinder (that to the right) bisected longitudinally to show the central paragastric cavity opening on the exterior by the osculum, and the position of the incurrent and radial canals; the former indicated by the black bands, the latter, dotted *ip.* marks the position of three of the groups of inhalant pores at the outer ends of the incurrent canals; *o.* osculum.

surface. This would appear to be due to the passage of a current of water into the interior of the sponge through these minute openings dotted over the surface; and the movement of the floating particles shows that a current is at the same time flowing out of each of the oscula. A constant circulation of water would thus appear to be carried on—currents moved by some invisible agency flowing through the walls of the sponge to the central paragastric cavities, and passing out again by the oscula.

If a portion of the Sycon is firmly squeezed, there will be pressed out from it first sea-water, then, when greater pressure is exerted, a quantity of gelatinous-looking matter, which, on being examined microscopically, proves to be partly composed of a protoplasmic material consisting of innumerable, usually more or less broken, cells with their nuclei, and partly of a non-protoplasmic, jelly-like substance. When this is all removed there remains behind a toughish felt-like material, which maintains more or less completely the original shape of the sponge. This is the *skeleton* or supporting framework. A drop of acid causes it to dissolve with effervescence, showing that it consists of carbonate of lime. When some of it is teased out and examined under the microscope, it proves to consist of innumerable, slender, mostly three-rayed microscopic bodies (Figs. 71 and 72, *sp*) of a clear glassy appearance. These are the *calcareous spicules* which form

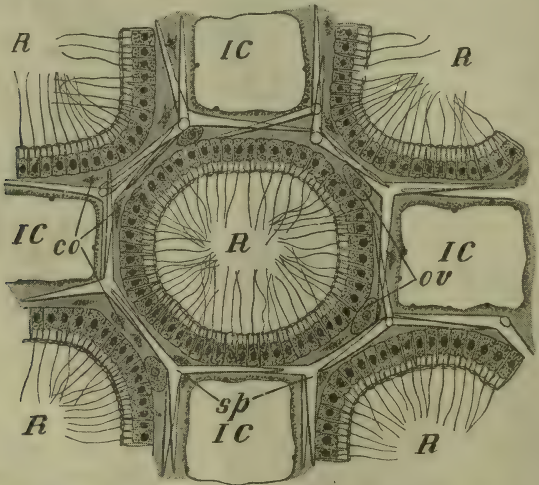


FIG. 71.—**Sycon gelatinosum.** Section through the wall of a cylinder taken at right angles to the long axes of the canals, highly magnified; *co*, collencytes; *IC*, incurrent canals; *ov.* young ova; *R*, radial canals; *sp.* triradiate spicules.

the skeleton of the Sycon.

The arrangement of the spicules, their relation to the protoplasmic parts, and the structure of the latter, have to be studied in thin sections of hardened specimens (Figs. 71 and 72). An examination of such sections leads to the following results.

Microscopic structure.—Covering the outer surface of the sponge is a single layer of cells—the *ectoderm* (Fig. 72, *ec*)—through which project regularly-arranged groups of needle-like and spear-like spicules (*sp′*), forming the pattern of polygonal elevations on the outer surface. The cells of the ectoderm are in the form of thin scales, which are closely cemented together by their edges to form a *syncytium*, or membrane consisting of cells so intimately united that their boundaries are not readily distinguishable. The paragastric cavities are lined by a layer of cells (*en*) which are like those of the ectoderm, but are somewhat thicker and more granular: this is the *endoderm* of the paragastric cavity. Running radially through the thick wall of the cylinders are a large number of regularly-arranged straight passages. Of these there are two sets, those of the one set—the *incurrent canals* (Figs. 71

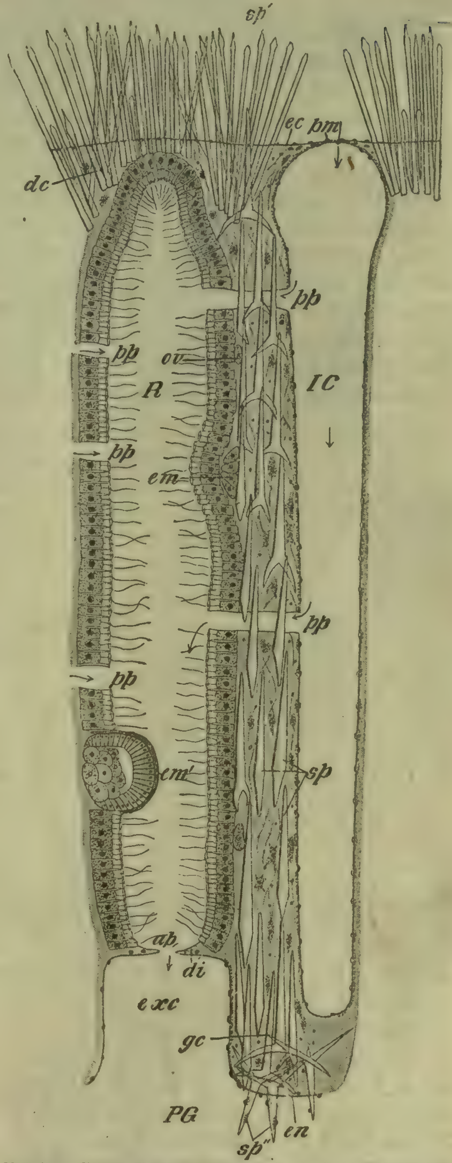


FIG. 72.—**Sycon gelatinosum.** Transverse section through the wall of a cylinder (parallel with the course of the canals), showing one incurrent canal (*IC*), and one radial (*R*) throughout their length; *sp.* triradiate spicules; *sp′.* oxeote spicules of dermal cortex (*dc.*); *sp″.* tetraradiate spicules of gastral cortex (*gc.*); *ec.* ectoderm; *en.* endoderm; *pm.* pore membrane; *pp.* prosopyles; *ap.* apopyle; *di.* diaphragm; *exc.* excurrent passage; *P.G.* paragastric cavity; *em.* early embryo; *em′.* late embryo. The arrows indicate the course of the water through the sponge.

and 72 *IC*)—narrower, and lined by ectoderm similar to the ectoderm of the surface; those of the other set—the *radial* or *flagellate canals* (*R*)—rather wider, octagonal in cross-section, and lined by endoderm continuous with the lining of the paragastric cavity. The incurrent canals end blindly at their inner extremities—not reaching the paragastric cavity; externally each becomes somewhat dilated, and the dilatations of neighbouring canals often communicate. These dilated parts are closed externally by a thin membrane—the *pore membrane* (Fig. 72, *pm*, and Fig. 73), perforated by three or four small openings (Fig. 73, *p*)—the inhalant pores already referred to. The flagellate canals are blind at their *outer* ends, which lie at a little distance below the surface opposite the polygonal projections referred to above as forming a pattern on the outer surface; internally, each communicates with the paragastric cavity by a short wide passage—the *excurrent canal* (Fig. 72 *exc*). Incurrent and flagellate canals run side by side separated by a thin layer of sponge substance, except at certain points, where there exist small apertures of communication—the *prosopyles* (*pp*),—uniting the cavities of adjacent incurrent and flagellate canals.

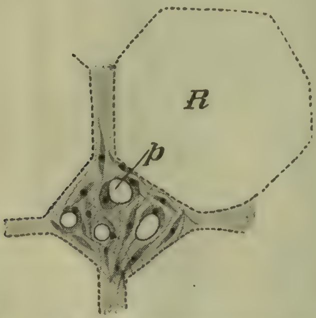


Fig. 73.—**Sycon gelatinosum.** Surface view of a pore membrane highly magnified; *p*. inhalant pore; *R*, position of the outer end of a radial canal.

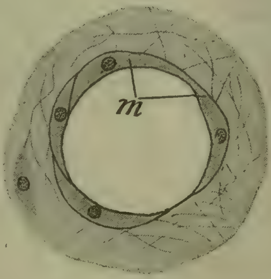


Fig. 74.—**Sycon gelatinosum.** An apopyle surrounded by its diaphragm; *m*. contractile cells.

The ectoderm lining the incurrent canals is of the same character as the syncytium of the outer surface. The endoderm of the flagellate canals, on the other hand, is totally different from that which lines the paragastric cavity. It consists of cells of columnar shape ranged closely together so as to form a continuous layer. Each of these *flagellate endoderm cells*, or *collared cells*, as they are termed, is not unlike one of the Choanoflagellate Protozoa (p. 72); it has its nucleus, one or more contractile (?) vacuoles, and, at the inner end, a single, long, whip-like flagellum, surrounded at its base by a delicate, transparent, collar-like upgrowth, similar to that which has already been described as occurring in the Choanoflagellata. If a portion of a living specimen of the sponge is teased out in sea-water, and the broken fragments examined under a tolerably high power of the microscope, groups of these collared cells will be detected here and there, and in many places the movement of the flagella will be readily observed. The flagellum is flexible, but with a certain degree of stiffness, especially towards the base, and its movements resemble those which a very supple fishing-rod is made to undergo in the act of casting a long line—the movement being much swifter and stronger in the one direction than in the other. The direction of the stronger movement is seen, when some of the cells are observed in their natural relations, to be from without inwards. It is to these movements that the formation of the currents of water passing along the canals is due. The collars of the cells in specimens teased in this way become for the most part drawn back into the protoplasm.

The short passage or excurrent canal, which leads inwards from the flagellate canal to the paragastric cavity, differs from the former in being lined by flattened cells similar to those of the paragastric cavity; it is partly separated from the flagellate canal by a thin diaphragm (Fig. 72, *di*, and Fig. 74), perforated by a large circular central aperture—the *apopyle* (*ap*)—which is capable of being contracted or dilated: its opposite aperture of communication with the paragastric cavity, which is very wide, is termed the *gastric ostium* of the excurrent canal.

The effect of the movement of the flagella of the cells in the flagellate canals is to produce currents of water running from without inwards along the canals to the paragastric cavity. This causes water to be drawn inwards through the prosopyles from the incurrent canals, and, indirectly, from the exterior through the perforated membranes at the outer ends of the latter.

Between the ectoderm of the outer surface and of the incurrent canals and the endoderm of the inner surface and of the flagellate canals are a number of spaces filled by an intermediate layer—the *mesoderm* or *mesoglœa*—in which the spicules of the skeleton are embedded. Each spicule is developed from a single cell of the middle layer, the remains of the cell—the scleroblast—being sometimes distinguishable on the surface of the fully developed spicule as a thin investment. The spicules (Figs. 71 and 72, *sp*) are regularly arranged, and connected together in such a way as to protect and support the soft parts of the sponge. Most are, as already noticed, of triradiate form. Large numbers, however, are of simple spear-like or club-like shape (*sp′*); these, which are termed the *oxeote spicules*, project on the outer surface beyond the ectoderm, and are arranged in dense masses, one opposite the outer end of each of the ciliated canals, this arrangement producing the pattern already referred to as distinguishable on the outer surface. The thick outer layer in which the bases of these oxeote spicules lie embedded, is termed the *dermal cortex* (*dc*). A thick stratum at the inner ends of the canals and immediately surrounding the paragastric cavity is termed the *gastral cortex* (*gc*). It is supported by triradiate and also by tetraradiate spicules, one ray of each of which (*sp''*) frequently projects freely into the paragastric cavity, covered over by a thin layer of flattened endoderm cells.

The mesoderm itself, as distinguished from the spicules which lie embedded in it, consists of a clear gelatinous substance containing numerous nucleated cells of several different kinds. Most of these are small cells of stellate shape, with radiating processes—the *connective-tissue cells* or *collencytes* (Fig. 71, *co*); others are fusiform; a good many, the amœboid *wandering cells*, are Amœba-like, and capable of moving about from one part of the sponge to another.

Around the inhalant pores and the apopyles are elongated cells (Figs. 73 and 74), sometimes prolonged into narrow fibres. These are contractile—effecting the closure of the apertures in question,—and are therefore to be looked upon as of the nature of *muscular fibres*. In the case of the inhalant pores they are ectodermal; in that of the apopyles they are endodermal. A band of similar fibres surrounds the osculum—the *oscular sphincter*.

The sexual reproductive cells—the ova (Figs. 71 and 72, *ov*) and sperms—are developed immediately below the flagellate endoderm cells of the flagellate canals, and in the same situation are to be found developing embryos (*em*, *em'*), resembling in their various stages those of *Sycon raphanus*, as described below.

2.—DISTINCTIVE CHARACTERS AND CLASSIFICATION.

Sponges are plant-like, fixed, aquatic Metazoa, all, with the exception of one family, inhabitants of the sea. The primary form is that of a vase or cylinder, the sides of which are perforated by a number of pores, and in the interior of which is a single cavity; but in the majority of Sponges a process of branching and folding leads to the formation of a structure of a much more complex character. The surface of the Sponge is covered by a single layer of flattened cells—the *ectoderm*—and the internal cavities, or a part of them, are lined by a second single layer—the *endoderm*—part or the whole of which consists of a single layer of columnar cells each provided internally with a long flagellum. Between these two layers is a quantity of tissue usually of a gelatinous consistency—the *mesoderm* or *mesoglœa*—containing a number of cells of various kinds, some of which secrete the elements of the skeleton. The skeleton or supporting framework, developed in the mesoderm, consists in some cases of fine flexible fibres of a material termed *spongin;* in others of spongin fibres supplemented by microscopic siliceous spicules; in others of siliceous spicules alone; in others of spicules of carbonate of lime. Reproduction takes place both asexually by the formation of *gemmules*, and sexually by means of ova and sperms. The ovum develops into a ciliated free-swimming larva, which afterwards becomes fixed and develops into the plant-like adult Sponge.

The Sponges are sufficiently far removed in structure from their nearest allies—the Protozoa on the one hand and the Cœlenterata on the other—to justify us in looking upon them as constituting one of the great divisions or phyla of the animal kingdom. At the same time there is so much uniformity of structure within the group that a division into classes is not demanded; the phylum Porifera contains a single class.

The class Porifera is classified as follows:—

Sub-Class I.—Calcarea.

Sponges with a skeleton of calcareous spicules, and with comparatively large collared cells.

ORDER 1.—HOMOCŒLA.

Calcareous Sponges in which the endoderm consists throughout of flagellate collared cells.

ORDER 2.—HETEROCŒLA.

Calcareous Sponges in which the endoderm consists partly of flattened cells, the collared cells being restricted to flagellate canals or chambers.

Sub-Class II.—Non-Calcarea.

Sponges in which the skeleton is either absent, or composed of spongin fibres, or of siliceous spicules.

TRIBE I.—MYXOSPONGIÆ.

Non-Calcarea devoid of skeleton.

TRIBE II.—SILICISPONGIÆ.

Non-Calcarea provided with a skeleton.

ORDER 1.—HEXACTINELLIDA.

Silicispongiæ with six-rayed siliceous spicules.

ORDER 2.—DESMOSPONGIÆ.

Silicispongiæ devoid of six-rayed spicules.

Systematic Position of the Example.

Sycon gelatinosum is one of many *species* of the *genus Sycon*. *Sycon* is one of several genera of the *family Sycettidæ;* and the family *Sycettidæ* is one of several families of the *order Heterocœla* of the *class Calcarea.* Among the families of the *Heterocœla,* that of the *Sycettidæ* is distinguished by the following features, which characterise all its members:—

"The flagellate chambers are elongated, arranged radially around a central paragastric cavity, their distal ends projecting more or less on the dermal surface, and not covered over by a continuous cortex. The skeleton is radially symmetrical."

Of the genera into which the *Sycettidæ* are divided, *Sycon* is characterised as follows:—

"The flagellate chambers are not intercommunicating; their distal ends are provided each with a tuft of oxeote spicules."

The members of one of the other genera of the family—*Sycetta*—while possessing the general characteristics of the family, differ from those of the genus *Sycon* in wanting the tufts of oxeote spicules; those of a third—*Sycantha*—have the flagellate chambers united in groups; the chambers of each group intercommunicating by openings in their walls, and each group having a single common opening into the gastric cavity. The members of this genus resemble *Sycon,* and differ from *Sycetta* in the presence of tufts of oxeote spicules at the distal ends of the flagellate chambers.

These distinctions between classes, orders, families, and genera are of an entirely arbitrary character. No such divisions exist in nature; and they are merely established as a convenient way of grouping the sponges and facilitating their classification. But a classification of this kind, if carried out on sound principles, should nevertheless have something corresponding to it in nature, inasmuch as the grouping of the various divisions and subdivisions aims at expressing the relationships of their members to one another. The members, for example, of the family *Sycettidæ* are all regarded, on account of the features which they possess in common, as being more nearly related to one another than to the members of the other families, and as having been derived from a common ancestor which also possessed those features—the divergences of structure which we observe in the different genera and species being the result of a gradual process of change.

Within the limits of the genus Sycon, S. gelatinosum is distinguished from the rest as a group of individual Sponges all possessing certain *specific* characters which it will be unnecessary to detail here. But the individual Sponges referable to this species frequently differ somewhat widely from one another: there are numerous *individual variations.* If we compare a number of specimens all possessing the species-characters of Sycon gelatinosum, we find that they differ in the number of branches, in the shape of the cylinders—some being relatively narrow, some relatively wide—in the degree of development of the oscular crown of spicules, in the ratio of the thickness of the wall to the width of the contained paragastric cavities, and in many other more minute points; in fact, we find as a result of the comparison that no two specimens are exactly alike. These differences are so great that some very distinct races or *varieties* of S. gelatinosum have been recognised, and some have received special names. Here again, as in the case of the families and orders, the distinctions are of an arbitrary character—some writers on Sponges setting down as several species what others regard merely as varieties of one species. It is impossible, in fact, to draw a hard and fast line of distinction between species and varieties. In the higher groups of animals the attempt is made to establish a *physiological* distinction; all the members of a species are regarded as being fertile *inter se*, and capable of producing fertile offspring as a result of their union; but such a mode of distinguishing species is impossible of application among lower forms such as the sponges. In these lower groups, accordingly, a species can only be defined as an assemblage of individuals which so closely resemble one another that they might be supposed to be the offspring of a parent form similar to themselves in all the most essential features. And, according to the view taken of the relative importance of different points of colour, shape, and internal structure, the conceptions of the species and their varieties and mutual relationships formed by different observers must often differ widely from one another.

3. General Organisation.

General Form and Mode of Growth.—The simplest Sponges are vase-shaped or cylindrical in form, either branched or unbranched, and, if branched, with or without anastomosis or coalescence between neighbouring branches. But the general form of the less simple Sponges diverges widely from that of such a branching cylinder as is presented by Sycon gelatinosum (Fig. 69).

From the point to which the embryonic sponge becomes attached it may spread out horizontally, following the irregularities of the surface on which it grows, and forming a more or less closely adherent encrustation like that of an encrusting lichen (Fig. 75, *A*). The surface of such an encrustation may be smooth; more commonly it is raised up into elevations—rounded bosses, cones, ridges or lamellæ; and the edges may be entire or lobed. In other cases the sponge grows at first more actively in the vertical than in the horizontal direction, and the result may be a long, narrow structure, cylindrical or compressed, and more or less branched (Fig. 75, *B*). Sometimes vertical and horizontal growth is almost equal, so that eventually there is formed a thick, solid mass of a rounded or polyhedral shape (Fig. 75, *C*), with an even, or lobed, or ridged surface. Very often, after active vertical growth has resulted in the formation of a comparatively narrow basal part or stalk, the Sponge expands distally, growing out into lobes or branches of a variety of different forms, and frequently anastomosing. Sometimes, after the formation of the stalk with root-like processes for attachment, the Sponge grows upwards in such a way as to form a cup or tube with a terminal opening. Such a cup-shaped Sponge, exemplified in the gigantic Neptune's Cup (*Poterion*, Fig. 75, *D*), is not to be confounded with the simple vase or cup referred to above as the simplest type of Sponge, being a much more complex structure with many oscula. Sometimes the Sponge grows from the narrow base of attachment into a thin flat plate or lamella; this may become divided up into a number of parts or lobes, which may exhibit a divergent arrange-

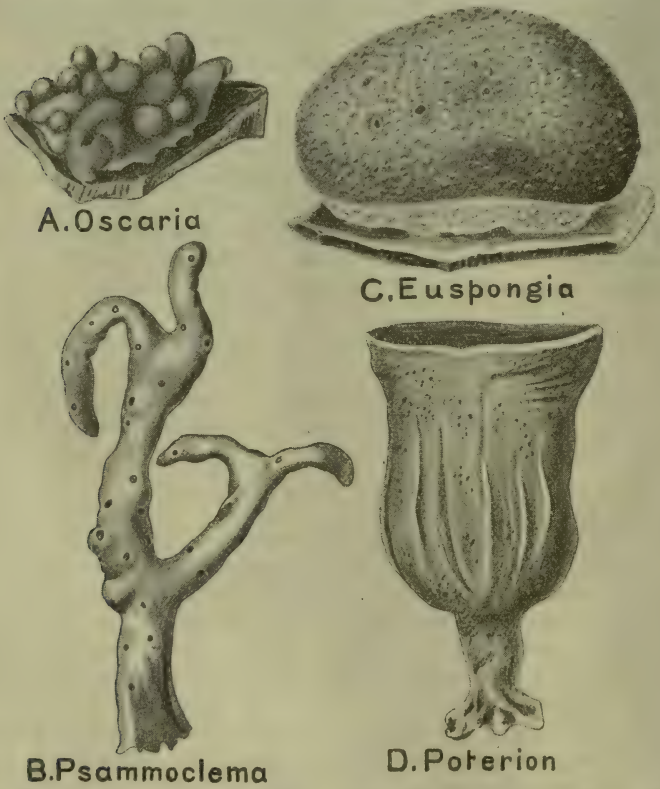


FIG. 75.—External form of various Sponges. *A*, **Oscaria**, an encrusting form, with the upper surface raised up into a number of rounded prominences; *B*, **Psammoclema**, a ramifying subcylindrical Sponge; *C*, **Euspongia** (toilet sponge), a massive form with a broad base; *D*, **Poterion** (Neptune's Cup), an example of a complex Sponge assuming the form of a vase. (After Vosmaer.)

ment like the ribs of an open fan. Often the lamella becomes folded, and sometimes there is a coalescence between the folds, resulting in the development of a honey-comb-like form of sponge.

Sponges resemble plants, and differ from the higher groups of animals, in the readiness with which, in many cases, their form becomes modified during growth by external conditions (environment). Different individuals of the same kind of Sponge, while still exhibiting the same essential structure and the same general mode of growth, may present a variety of minor differences of form, in accordance with differences in the form of the supporting surface or in the action of waves and currents.

Leading Modifications of Structure.—Sycon gelatinosum belongs to a type of Sponges intermediate between the very simplest forms on the one hand, and the more complex on the other. The simplest and most primitive of known Sponges is one named *Ascetta primordialis* (Fig. 76). It is vase-shaped, contracted at the base to form a sort of stalk by the expanded extremity of which it is attached; at the opposite or free end is the circular osculum. So far there is a considerable resemblance to Sycon gelatinosum; but the structure of its wall in Ascetta is extremely simple. Regularly arranged over the surface are a number of small rounded apertures, the inhalant or incurrent pores; but, since the wall of the Sponge is very thin, these apertures lead directly into the central or paragastric cavity (Fig. 77, *A*), the long passages or canals through which the communication is effected in Sycon being absent. The wall consists of the same three layers as in Sycon, but the middle one, though it contains a small number of spicules, is very thin. The ectoderm is a syncytium; the endoderm, which lines the paragastric cavity, consists throughout of flagellate collared cells similar to those of the flagellate canals of Sycon.

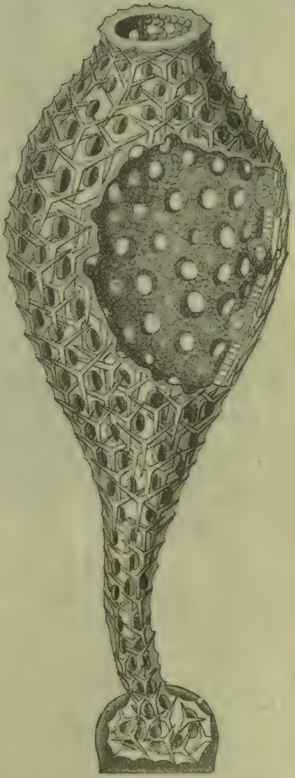


Fig. 76.—**Ascetta primordialis.** A portion of the wall of the vase-like sponge removed to show the paragastric cavity. (After Haeckel.)

A somewhat more complex type of structure than that of Ascetta is exhibited by those Sponges in which the wall becomes thickened and perforated by radially-arranged canals, which open directly on the outer surface by means of *inhalant pores,* and lead directly into the paragastric cavity by means of *apopyles*—the whole inner surface as well as the radial canals being lined with flagellate endoderm cells. In forms which may be regarded as representing the next stage of development (Fig. 77, *B*: see also the figures of Sycon gelatinosum), there are formed by infolding of the surface, in the intervals between the radial canals, canal-like spaces, the *incurrent canals,* lined by ectoderm and communicating with the exterior on the one hand, either by a wide opening or by pores perforating a pore-membrane, and on the other by means of small openings, the *prosopyles,* with the radial canals. In some Sponges of this grade, as in those of the last described, the whole endoderm may consist of flagellate

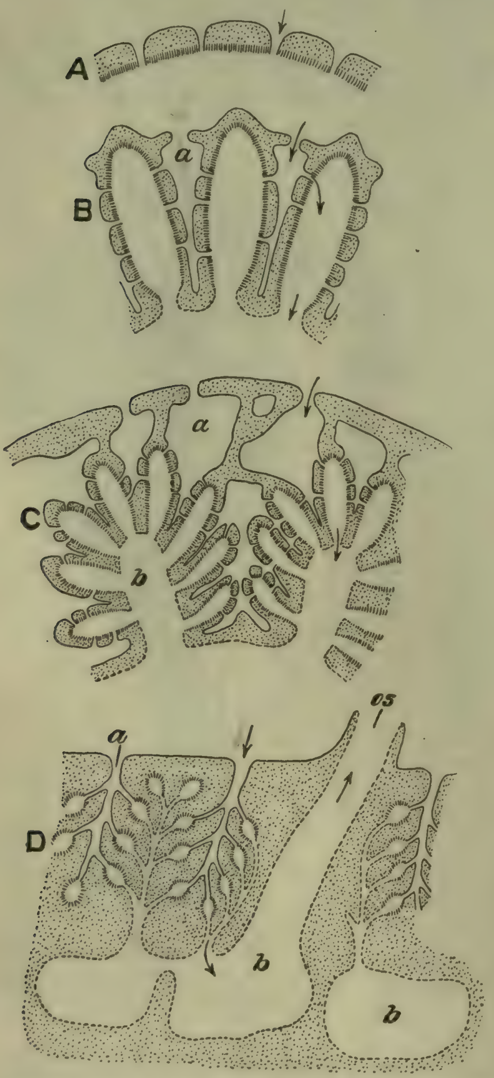


Fig. 77.—Diagram of the canal system of various sponges, the ectoderm denoted by a continuous narrow line; the flattened endoderm by an interrupted line; the flagellate endoderm by short parallel strokes. *A*, cross-section through a part of the wall of an Ascon; *B*, cross-section through a part of the wall of a Sycon; *C*, cross-section through a part of the wall of *Leucilla convexa*; *D*, vertical section through *Oscarella*; *a*, spaces of the incurrent canal system; *b*, spaces of the excurrent canal system; *os*. osculum. (After Korschelt and Heider.)

collared cells, but in many, as in Sycon, these cells are found only in the radial canals, and not in the paragastric cavity, which is lined with flattened cells like those of the ectoderm. Sponges similar to Sycon gelatinosum, but with *branching* flagellate canals (Fig. 77, *C*), afford us the next grade of advancing complexity. In these the incurrent as well as the flagellate canals may form a branching system. In all the higher groups of Sponges (Fig. 77, *D*, and Fig. 78) the flagellate endoderm cells are confined to certain special enlargements of the canals—the so-called "ciliated chambers" *C*—and the rest of the canals are lined by flattened cells.

Special names have been applied to the main types of canal-system briefly sketched above. Forms in which the paragastric cavity is lined by flagellate cells are said to belong to the *Ascon* type, whether the paragastric cavity communicates directly or by flagellate canals with the exterior. Forms in which there is a paragastric cavity lined by flattened cells, and a system of radially arranged flagellate chambers, are said to possess the *Sycon* type of structure. Such Sponges as have small rounded flagellate chambers ("ciliated chambers"), communicating in most cases by narrow branching incurrent canals with the exterior (directly or indirectly) on the one hand, and by similar excurrent canals with the paragastric cavity on the other—the flagellate cells being confined to the flagellate chambers—are said to possess the *Rhagon* type of canal-system.

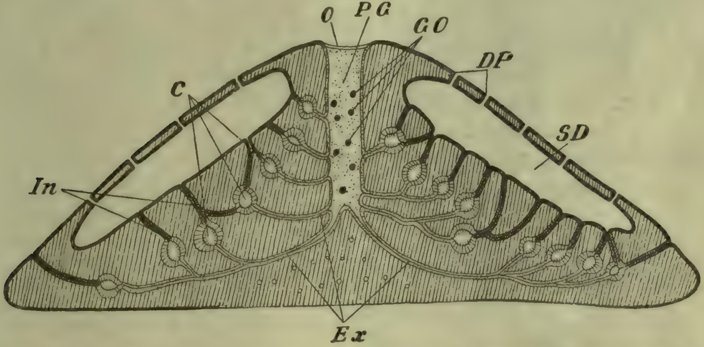


FIG. 78.—Vertical section of a fresh-water sponge (**Spongilla**), showing the arrangement of the canal-system. *C.* ciliated chambers; *DP.* dermal pores; *Ex.* excurrent canals; *GO.* openings of the excurrent canals; *PG.* paragastric cavity; *SD.* subdermal cavities; *O.* osculum. (Modified from Leuckart and Nitsche's diagrams.)

The development of branches from the originally simple Sponge, and the coalescence of neighbouring branches with one another, greatly obscure the essential nature of the Sponge as a colony of zooids similar to the branches of Sycon gelatinosum, and this effect is increased by the development of a variety of infoldings of the ectoderm which appear in the higher forms. The oscula distributed over the surface of the mass may indicate the component zooids, but these are not always recognisable, being carried inwards by the infoldings or closed up altogether.

A thicker or thinner specialised outer layer—the *dermal cortex*—situated immediately below the superficial ectoderm, is present in many Sponges. This is a layer of mesoderm with special skeletal elements, usually containing spaces and canals lined by ectoderm—*subdermal cavities* (Fig. 78, *SD*)—which communicate directly with the exterior, and, internally, usually with more deeply situated spaces (*subcortical cavities*), from which the incurrent canals lead to the ciliated chambers. This dermal cortex is present, though not highly developed, in Sycon gelatinosum (Fig. 72, *dc*), and the enlarged outer ends of the incurrent canals lying in the dermal cortex, and closed externally by the pore-bearing membrane, may be regarded as representing dermal cavities. In most higher sponges a special inner layer is developed; this is the *gastral cortex*, represented in a rudimentary form in Sycon gelatinosum (Fig. 72, *gc.*) as the internal layer with special spicules, in which the excurrent canals are situated.

Histology.—In the protoplasmic elements or cells of the various groups of Sponges there is little variation, except in minor points. The cells of the ectoderm (Fig. 79) are flattened and form a syncytium; very rarely they assume other forms; in some cases each flattened ectodermal cell is provided with a flagellum. The endoderm consists of flattened cells similar to those of the ectoderm, or of flagellate collared cells. In the gelatinous substance of the mesoderm are embedded connective-tissue cells, amœboid wandering cells, and, in certain positions (around orifices), muscle cells. Unicellular glands (see p. 22) are present in some sponges, both calcareous and siliceous; also cells containing the pigment to which the bright colour of many sponges is due, though in most cases the pigment is not confined to special cells, but occurs scattered through the connective-tissue cells and flagellate cells. Freshwater Sponges are green, owing to the presence of chlorophyll, the colouring matter to which the prevailing green colour of plants is due. Sensory cells or nerve cells have been described; but the nature of the elements which have been so regarded cannot be said to have been placed beyond question.

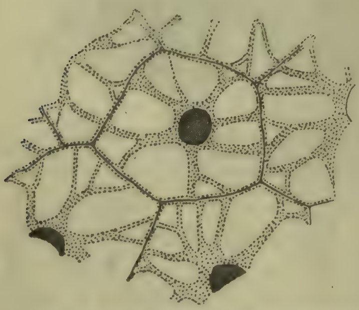


FIG. 79.—Cells of the ectoderm, very highly magnified. (After Von Lendenfeld.)

The elements of the **skeleton** differ in character in the different classes. In the Calcarea they consist of calcareous spicules, usually triradiate in form. Each of these spicules is developed from a single cell—the *scleroblast*. In the Non-Calcarea the skeleton either consists of spongin fibres alone (Fig. 80, A), or of siliceous spicules alone, or of a combination of spongin fibres with siliceous spicules (B): in some Myxospongiæ skeletal parts are altogether absent. Spongin is a substance allied to silk in chemical composition: the fibres are exceedingly fine threads, consisting of a soft granular core and an outer tube of concentric layers of spongin. These threads branch

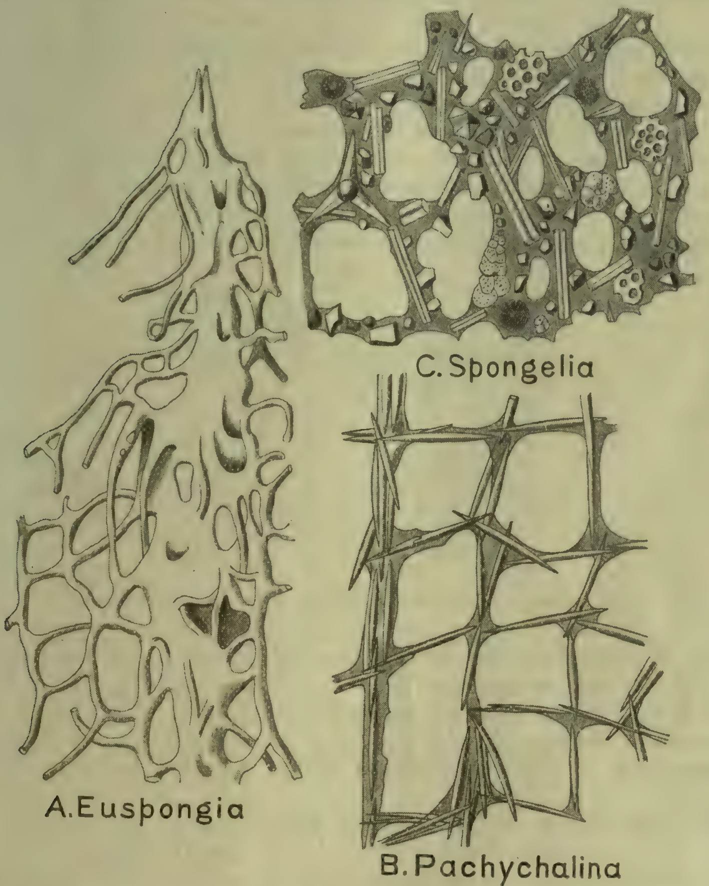


Fig. 80.—Microscopic structure of the skeleton in various sponges. *A*, **Euspongia**, network of spongin fibres; *B*, **Pachychalina**, spongin strengthened by siliceous spicules; *C*, **Spongelia**, spongin strengthened by various foreign siliceous bodies, fragments of spicules of other sponges, &c. (After Vosmaer.)

and anastomose, or are woven and felted together in such a way as to form a firm, elastic supporting structure. They are secreted by the activity of certain cells of the mesoderm, which are called the *spongin-blasts.* In certain exceptional cases the spongin assumes the form of spicules. The siliceous spicules (Fig. 81) are much more varied in shape than the spicules of the Calcarea, and in a single kind of Sponge there may be a number of widely differing forms of spicules, each form having its special place in the skeleton of the various parts of the Sponge-body. In most Non-Calcarea siliceous spicules and spongin fibres combine to form the supporting framework, the relative development of these two elements varying greatly in different cases. But in certain groups of the Non-Calcarea, including the common Washing-sponges (Fig. 80, A), spicules are completely absent, and the entire skeleton consists of spongin. In some Non-Calcarea which are devoid of spicules, the place of these is taken by foreign bodies—shells of Radiolaria, grains of sand, or spicules from other sponges (Fig. 80, C). In others, again, such as the Venus's Flower-Basket (*Euplectella*), the Glass-Rope Sponge (*Hyalonema*), and others, the skeleton consists throughout of siliceous spicules bound together by a siliceous cement.

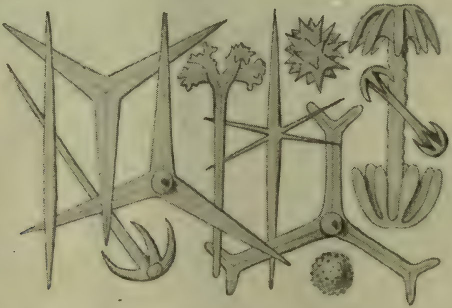


FIG. 81.—Various forms of sponge spicules. (From Lang's *Text-Book.*)

Reproduction in the Sponges is effected either sexually or asexually. The process by which, in all but the simplest forms of Sponges, a colony of zooids is formed from the originally simple cylinder or vase, may be looked upon as an asexual mode of reproduction by budding. Asexual multiplication also assumes the form in some cases of a process of production of internal buds in the shape of groups of cells called *gemmules,* which eventually become detached and develop into new individuals. In the Fresh-water Sponges (*Spongillidæ*) multiplication takes place very actively by means of such gemmules, each of which is a spherical group of cells enclosed in an envelope composed of peculiarly shaped siliceous spicules, termed *amphidiscs* (Fig. 81, right side). These gemmules are formed in the substance of the Sponge towards the end of the year; they are set free by the decay of the part of the parent sponge in which they are developed, and fall to the bottom. In spring the contained mass of protoplasmic matter reaches the exterior through an aperture—the *micropyle*—in the wall of the gemmule, and develops into the adult form.

All Sponges multiply by a sexual process—by means of male cells, or *sperms*, and female cells, or *ova*. These are developed from certain of the amœboid wandering cells of the mesoderm, which take up a special position, usually immediately below the collared cells of the endoderm. Ova and sperms are developed in the same Sponge, but rarely at the same time. The amœboid cell destined to form sperms divides into a number of small cells, giving rise to a rounded mass of sperms. The latter, when mature, have oval or pear-shaped heads and a long tapering appendage or tail. Each amœboid cell destined to form an ovum enlarges, and eventually assumes a spherical form. After a sperm has penetrated into its interior and effected impregnation, the ovum usually becomes enclosed in a brood-capsule formed for it by certain neighbouring cells, and in this situation, still enclosed in the parent Sponge, it undergoes the earlier stages of its development.

In Sycon the course of the **development** is as follows. Immediately after impregnation the ovum divides into two cells; each of these again divides into two, the plane of the second division being at right angles to that of the first. A vertical radial fissure then appears, dividing each of these four cells into two; so that the embryo (Fig. 82, *b*, *c*) now consists of eight cells, which are of a pyramidal shape, and arranged in one layer in a radiating manner, in such a way as to form a flat cone with a central aperture. The apices of the eight pyramidal cells are next separated off as a ring of eight small cells from the rest of the cells, which remain as eight larger cells. The eight small cells are the *endoderm* cells, the eight larger are the *ectoderm* cells. The cells are arranged so as to form the wall of a sphere—the *blastula* (Fig. 82, *d*)—with a central cavity, the ectoderm cells being on one side of the sphere and the endoderm cells on the other. The endoderm cells soon increase greatly in number by further division, and remain clear; the ectoderm cells divide more slowly, and become granular. The clear cells become elongated, and flagella are developed at their outer ends (Fig. 82, *e*). The granular cells become pushed inwards so as to be partially enclosed by the clear cells, the space (*segmentation cavity* or *blastocœle*) in the interior of the blastula becoming greatly reduced. In this stage of development—termed the *amphiblastula* (Fig. 82, *e*) the embryo Sycon escapes from the enclosing capsule into the flagellate canal and reaches the exterior. It is now an oval body consisting of a mass of cells, of which those on the one side are numerous, clear, narrow, arranged parallel with one another, and provided with cilia at their free ends; while those on the other are fewer and larger, of rounded shape, coarsely granular and devoid of cilia: between these two sets of cells is a cavity in which are a few cells—the beginning of the middle layer. The clear cells next become pushed in or invaginated within the granular cells (Fig. 82, *f*) so that the embryo becomes converted into a double-walled cup—the *gastrula*—the outer layer of the wall of which is formed by the granular ectoderm cells, and the inner by the clear endoderm. The flagella of the

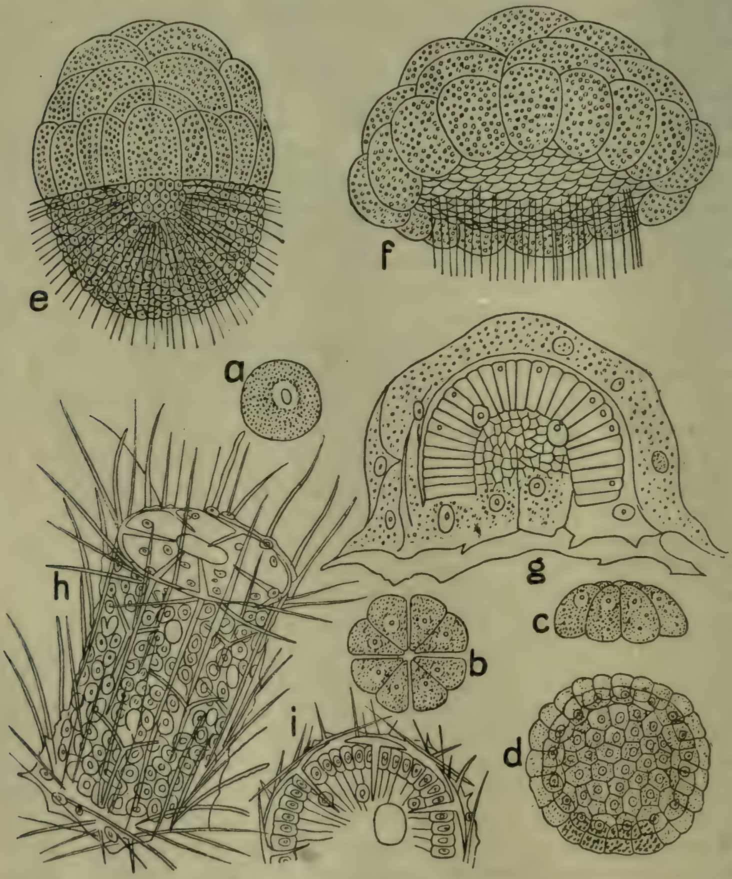


FIG. 82.—Development of **Sycon raphanus.** *a*, ovum; *b*, *c*, ovum segmented—*b*, as seen from above, *c*, lateral view; *d*, blastula; *e*, amphiblastula; *f*, commencement of invagination; *g*, gastrula attached by its oral face; *h*, *i*, young sponge—*h*, lateral view; *i*, as seen from above. (From Sollas, after Schulze.)

clear cells disappear at this stage, and the ectoderm cells become amœboid and lose their granular character. The opening of the cup or gastrula—the *blastopore*—at first a wide opening, soon becomes narrowed, and eventually closes up completely. A clear layer containing cells—the mesoglœa—has now become developed between the other two, and in this the first spicules become developed. The embryo has meanwhile become fixed by the side on which the blastopore was situated (Fig. 82, *g*), and soon assumes a cylindrical form (Fig. 82, *h*, *i*). An aperture which is developed at the free end becomes the osculum, and small perforations in the sides of the cylinder form the inhalant apertures. As the wall of the cylinder increases in thickness by the growth of the mesoglœa the radial canals are formed, the endoderm extending into them and its cells becoming flagellate.

The amphiblastula type of larva is characteristic of the Calcarea, and is probably universal in that sub-class, except in such primitive forms as Ascetta. In the latter there is an oval blastula with a wall composed of a single layer of flagellate cells. From the posterior pole of the blastula, where the cells are more granular, cells pass into the segmentation cavity, which they eventually completely fill. The central mass of cells thus formed gives rise to the collar-cells of the flagellate chambers, the outer layer to the flattened ectoderm.

In the Silicispongiæ, on the other hand, the typical larva is a solid body with a superficial layer of ciliated, and an internal mass of granular cells. From the former, apparently, the collared cells of the flagellate chambers are formed: from the latter the external ectoderm and the flattened cells lining the canals. The granular cells break through the ciliated cells at one end and grow over the latter as an investing layer. This is a remarkable reversal of what, as will be seen subsequently, is to be observed in the Cœlenterata and in fact in the rest of the Metazoa, but is readily reconcilable with what takes place in Sycon and the more complex Calcarea.

Distribution and Mode of Occurrence of Sponges, and their Position in the Animal Series.—Fossil remains of Sponges have been found in various formations from those of the Cambrian period onwards, the greatest abundance being found in the Chalk. No extinct class or order has been detected, the fossil forms being all members of existing groups. Some of the orders of existing Sponges—such as the Myxospongiæ—are incapable of being preserved as fossils, and the fossil forms belong, as we should expect, to the more highly silicified Non-Calcarea and to the more complex groups of the Calcarea.

Fresh-water Sponges (*Spongillidæ*) occur in rivers, canals, and lakes in all the great divisions of the earth's surface. Marine Sponges occur in all seas, and at all depths, from the shore between tide-marks to the deepest abysses of the ocean. The Calcarea and the true horny sponges (*Ceratosa*) are most abundant in shallow water, and have not been found below 450 fathoms. The Sponges found at the greatest depths are members of the groups *Hexactinellida* and *Choristida* of the Non-Calcarea.

Sponges do not appear to be edible by Fishes or even the higher Crustaceans or Molluscs. Countless lower animal forms, however, burrow in their substance, if not for food, at least for shelter, and the interior of a Sponge is frequently found to be teeming with small Crustaceans, Annelids, Molluscs, and other invertebrates. None of the Sponges are true parasites. The little Boring Sponge, *Cliona*, burrows in the shells of Oysters and other bivalves, but for protection and not for food. But a Sponge frequently lives in that close association with another animal or plant to which the term *messmateism*, or commensalism, is applied, associations which benefit one or both. Thus some species of Sponge are never found growing except on the backs or legs of certain Crabs. In these cases the Sponge protects the Crab and conceals it from its enemies, while the Sponge benefits by being carried from place to place and thus obtaining freer oxygenation. Certain Cirripede crustaceans (members of the order to which the Barnacles and Acorn-shells belong) are invariably found embedded in certain species of Sponge. Frequently a Sponge and a Zoophyte grow in intimate association, so that they seem almost to form one structure. Thus the Glass-rope Sponge (*Hyalonema*) is always found associated with a Zoophyte (*Palythoa*), and there are many other instances. Sponges often also grow in very close association with certain low forms of plants (Algæ).

The position of the Porifera in the animal series is unquestionably among the Metazoa. The view that they are compound Protozoa is now no longer maintained, since the significance of the facts of their development has been fully recognised. A Sponge is to be regarded as a colony of Protozoa only in the sense in which the same may be said of one of the higher animals. It consists of a complex of cells, some of which have a considerable degree of independence, and some of which have a close resemblance to certain Protozoa; but the same is true of one of the higher animals, the difference being one of degree and not of kind. Like the rest of the Metazoa, the Sponge develops from the oosperm by a process of yolk-division.

But the Porifera are perhaps somewhat nearer the Protozoa than are any of the other types of Metazoa; and among the Protozoa they appear to approach nearest to certain colonial Flagellata. The genus Proterospongia (Fig. 52), already referred to (p. 73), appears to be the member of the latter group which of all known forms most closely resembles a sponge. Proterospongia consists of a colony of collared Flagellates (Choano-Flagellata) embedded in a mass of gelatinous substance, in which there are also amœboid zooids similar to the amœboid wandering-cells of Sponges.

But, while the Porifera are clearly Metazoa, and not Protozoa, there is some room for difference of opinion as regards their relationships to the Cœlenterata, with which great type they are sometimes amalgamated. The reasons for and against such an arrangement will be discussed in considering the general relationships of the Cœlenterata.

SECTION IV

PHYLUM CŒLENTERATA

In the previous section we saw that the simplest type of Sponge has the general character of a cylinder, closed at one end and open at the other, and having walls perforated by minute pores, and composed of three layers—ectoderm, mesoglœa, and endoderm, the last consisting of collared flagellate cells.

In such an organism as this, imagine the pores to disappear, the internal cavity thus coming to communicate with the exterior by a single terminal aperture; the mesoglœa to be replaced by a very thin structureless layer containing no cells; the endoderm cells to lose their collars; and a circlet of arm-like processes, or tentacles, formed of the same layers as the body-wall, to be developed around the terminal aperture. The result would be a *polype*, and would serve as a type of the general structure of the group of animals with which we are now concerned.

The most familiar examples of Cœlenterata are the horny, seaweed-like "Zoophytes," or, as they are sometimes called, "Corallines," to be picked up on every sea-beach, Jelly-fishes, Sea-anemones, and Corals. The phylum is divided into four classes as follows:—

Class 1. HYDROZOA, including the Fresh-water Polypes, Zoophytes, many Jelly-fishes—mostly of small size—a few Stony Corals, and the peculiar Palæozoic fossils known as *Graptolites.*

Class 2. SCYPHOZOA, including most of the large Jelly-fishes.

Class 3. ACTINOZOA, including the Sea-anemones, and the vast majority of Stony Corals.

Class 4. CTENOPHORA, including certain peculiar Jelly-fishes known as "Comb-jellies."

CLASS I.—HYDROZOA.

1. EXAMPLE OF THE CLASS—*Obelia.*

General Structure.—Obelia is a common zoophyte occurring in the form of a delicate, whitish or light brown, almost fur-like growth on the wooden piles of piers and wharfs. It consists of branched filaments about the thickness of fine sewing-cotton: of these, some are closely adherent to the timber, and serve for attachment, while others are given off at right angles, and present at intervals short lateral branches, each terminating in a bud-like enlargement.

The structure is better seen under a low power of the microscope. The organism (Fig. 83) is a colony, consisting of a common stem or axis, on which are borne numerous zooids. The axis consists of a horizontal portion, resembling a root or creeping stem, and of vertical axes, which give off short lateral branches in an alternate manner, bearing the zooids at their ends. At the proximal ends of the vertical axes the branching often becomes more complex: the offshoots of the main stem, instead of ending at once in a zooid, send off branches of the third order on which the zooids are borne. In many cases, also, branches are found to end in simple club-like dilatations (*Bd. 1, 2*): these are immature zooids.

The large majority of the zooids have the form of little conical structures (*P. 1—P. 4*), each enclosed in a glassy, cup-like investment or *hydrotheca* (*h.th*), and produced distally into about two dozen arms or *tentacles* (*t*): these zooids are the *polypes* or *hydranths.* Less numerous, and found chiefly towards the proximal region of the colony, are long cylindrical bodies or *blastostyles* (*bls*), each enclosed in a transparent case, the *gonotheca* (*g.th*), and bearing numerous small lateral offshoots, varying greatly in form according to their stage of development, and known as *medusa-buds* (*m.bd*). By studying the development of these structures, and by a comparison with other forms, it is known that both blastostyles and medusa-buds are zooids, so that the colony is *trimorphic*, having zooids of three kinds.

To make out the structure in greater detail, living specimens should be observed under a high power. A polype is then seen to consist of a somewhat cylindrical, hollow *body*, of a yellowish colour, joined to the common stem by its proximal end, and produced at its distal end into a conical elevation, the *manubrium* or *hypostome* (*mnb*), around the base of which are arranged the twenty-four tentacles in a circle. Both body and manubrium are hollow, containing a spacious cavity, the *enteron* (*ent*), which communicates with the outer world by the *mouth* (*mth*), an aperture placed at the summit of the manubrium. The mouth is capable of great dilatation and contraction, and accordingly the manubrium appears now conical, now trumpet-shaped. Under favourable circumstances small organisms may be seen to be caught by the polypes and carried towards the mouth to be swallowed.

The hydrotheca (*h.th*) has the form of a vase or wine-glass, and is perfectly transparent and colourless. A short distance from its

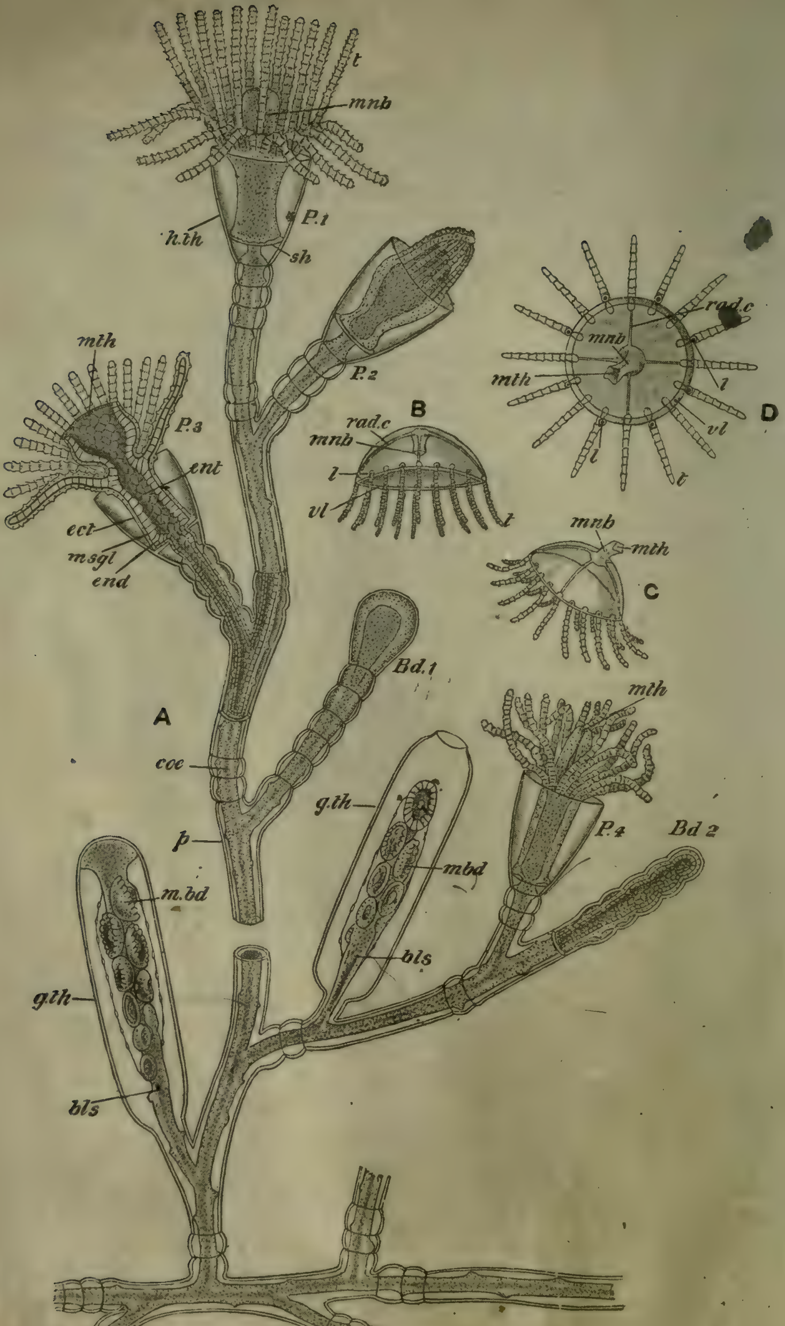

t
mnb
P.1
h.th
sh
P.2
mth
P.3
ent
ect
msgl
end
B
rad.c
mnb
l
vl
t
rad.c
mnb
mth
l
D
vl
l
t
mnb
mth
C
Bd.1
A
coe
g.th
mth
P.4
Bd 2
p
mbd
m.bd
bls
g.th
bls

FIG. 83.—**Obelia sp.** A, portion of a colony with certain parts shown in longitudinal section; B, medusa; C, the same with reversed umbrella; D, the same, oral aspect; *Bd. 1, 2*, buds; *bls.* blastostyle; *cœ.* cœnosarc; *ect.* ectoderm; *end.* endoderm; *ent.* enteric cavity; *g.th.* gonotheca; *h.th.* hydrotheca; *l*, lithocyst; *m.bd.* medusa-bud; *mnb.* manubrium; *msgl.* mesoglœa; *mth.* mouth; *p.* perisarc; *P. 1, 2. 3*, polypes; *rad. c.* radial canal; *t.* tentacle; *vl.* velum.

narrow or proximal end, it is produced inwards into a sort of circular shelf (*sh*), perforated in the centre: upon this the base of the polype rests, and through the aperture it is continuous with the common stem. When irritated—by a touch or by the addition of alcohol or other poison—the polype undergoes a very marked contraction: it suddenly withdraws itself more or less completely into the theca, and the tentacles become greatly shortened and curved over the manubrium (*P. 2*).

The various branches of the common stem show a very obvious distinction into two layers: a transparent, tough, outer membrane, of a yellowish colour and horny consistency, the *perisarc* (*p*), and an inner, delicate, granular layer, the *cœnosarc* (*cœ*), continuous by a sort of neck or constriction with the body of each hydranth. The cœnosarc is hollow, its tubular cavity being continuous with the cavities of the polypes, and containing a fluid in which a flickering movement may be observed, due, as we shall see, to the action of cilia. At the base of each zooid or branch the perisarc presents several annular constrictions, giving it a ringed appearance: for the most part it is separated by an interval from the cœnosarc, but processes of the latter extend outwards to it at irregular intervals, and in the undeveloped zoöids (*Bd. 2*) the two layers are in close apposition.

In the blastostyle both mouth and tentacles are absent, the zooid ending distally in a flattened disc: the hydrotheca of a polype is represented by the gonotheca (*g.th*), which is a cylindrical capsule enclosing the whole structure, but ultimately becoming ruptured at its distal end to allow of the escape of the medusa-buds. These latter are, in the young condition, mere hollow offshoots of the blastostyle: when fully developed they have the appearance of saucers attached by the middle of the convex surface to the blastostyle, produced at the edge into sixteen very short tentacles, and having a blunt process, the manubrium, projecting from the centre of the concave surface. They are ultimately set free through the aperture in the gonotheca as little medusæ or jelly-fish (B—D), which will be described hereafter.

The **microscopical structure** of a polype (Fig. 84) reminds us, in its general features, of that of such a simple sponge as Ascetta, but with many characteristic differences. The body is composed of two layers of cells, the ectoderm (*ect*) and the endoderm (*end*): between them is a very delicate transparent membrane, the *mesoglœa* or *supporting lamella* (*msgl*), which, unlike the intermediate layer of sponges, contains no cells and is practically structureless. The same three layers occur in the manubrium, the ectoderm and endoderm being continuous with one another at the margin of the mouth. The tentacles are formed of an outer layer of ectoderm, then a layer of mesoglœa, and finally a solid core of large endoderm cells arranged in a single series. The cœnosarc, blastostyles, and medusa-buds all consist of the same layers, which are thus continuous through the entire colony.

The perisarc or transparent outer layer of the stem shows no cell-structure, but only a delicate lamination. It is, in fact, not a cellular membrane or epithelium, like the ectoderm and endoderm, but a *cuticle*, formed, layer by layer, as a secretion from the ectoderm cells (see p. 29). It is composed of a substance of chitinoid or horn-like consistency, and, like the lorica of many Protozoa, serves as a protective external skeleton. When first formed it is of course in contact with the ectoderm, but when the full thickness is attained the latter retreats from it, the connection being maintained only at irregular intervals. In the same way the hydro- and gonothecæ are cuticular products of the polypes and blastostyles respectively: in the young condition both occur in the form of a closely fitting investment of the knob-like rudiment of the zooid (Fig. 83, B, *1*, *2*).

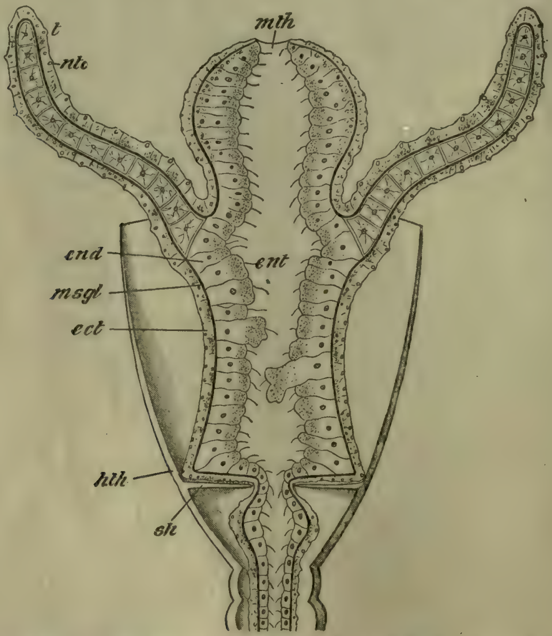


FIG. 84.—**Obelia sp.** Vertical section of a polype, highly magnified; *ect.* ectoderm; *end.* endoderm; *ent.* enteric cavity; *h.th.* hydrotheca; *msgl.* mesoglœa; *mth.* mouth; *ntc.* nematocysts; *sh.* shelf-like prolongation of hydrotheca; *t.* tentacles.

The ectoderm has the general character of a columnar epithelium (see p. 22), but exhibits considerable differentiation of its component cells. It is mainly composed of large conical cells with their bases outwards, and having between their narrow inner ends clumps of small rounded *interstitial cells*, and occasional large branched *nerve-*

cells (Fig. 86, *nv.c*). The tentacles and the manubrium contain, in addition, a layer of unstriped *muscle-fibres* between the ectoderm and the mesoglœa: they are arranged longitudinally, and serve for the rapid shortening of the tentacles (Fig. 86, *m.f*). This muscular layer is a derivative of the ectoderm, and may be looked upon as a rudimentary mesoderm.

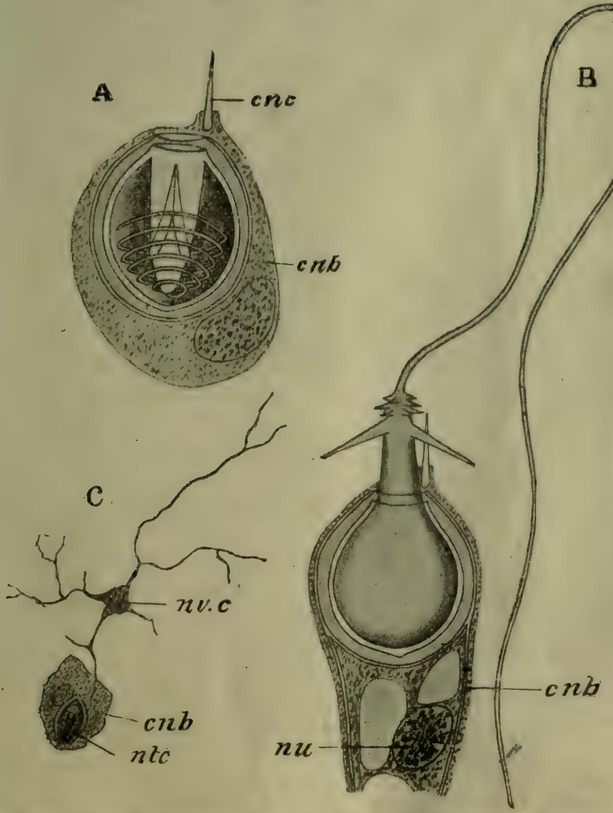


FIG. 85.—Nematocysts of **Hydra.** A, undischarged; B, discharged; C, nerve-supply; *cnb.* cnidoblast; *cnc.* cnidocil; *nu.* nucleus; *ntc.* nematocyst; *nv.c.* nerve-cell. (From Parker's *Biology*, after Schneider.)

Embedded in the ectoderm are numerous clear ovoid bodies, the *stinging-capsules* or *nematocysts* (Figs. 83—86, *ntc*), organs closely resembling those of Epistylis umbellaria (p. 84), and like them serving as weapons of offence. Each consists (Fig. 85, A) of a tough ovoid capsule, full of fluid, and invaginated at one end in the form of a hollow process continued into a long, coiled, hollow thread. The whole apparatus is developed in an interstitial cell called a *cnidoblast* (*cnb*), which, as it approaches maturity, migrates towards the surface and becomes embedded in one of the large ectoderm cells. At one point of its surface the cnidoblast is produced into a delicate protoplasmic process, the *cnidocil* or *trigger-hair* (*cnc*): when this is touched—for instance by some small organism brought into contact with the waving tentacle—the cnidoblast undergoes a sudden contraction, and the pressure upon the stinging capsule causes an instantaneous eversion of the thread (B), at the base of which are minute barbs. The threads are poisonous and exert a numbing effect on the animals upon which Obelia preys.

The endoderm also has the general character of a columnar epithelium. In the body of the polype the cells are very large and have the power of sending out pseudopods at their free ends (Fig. 84), which apparently seize and ingest minute portions of the partly-digested food. As in many Protozoa, the pseudopods may be drawn in and long flagella protruded, the contraction of which causes a constant movement of the food particles in the enteron. Amongst these large cells are narrow cells with very granular protoplasm: they are gland-cells, and secrete a digestive juice. In the manubrium a layer of endodermal muscle-fibres has been described taking a transverse direction, and so serving to antagonise the longitudinal muscles and contract the cavity. In the tentacles (Figs. 84 and 86) the endoderm (*end*) consists of a single row of short cylindrical cells, nearly cubical in longitudinal section: their protoplasm is greatly vacuolated and their cell-walls so thick that they may be considered as forming a sort of internal skeleton to the tentacles.

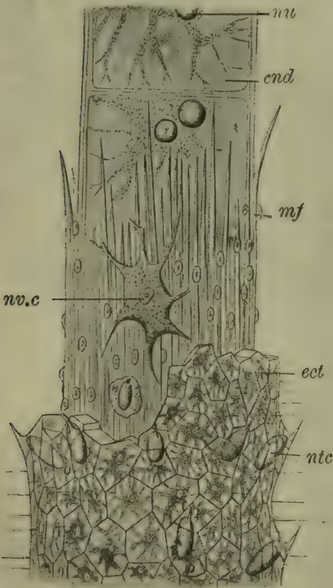


FIG. 86.—Tentacle of **Eucopella.** The lower part of the figure shows the external surface, in the middle part the ectoderm is removed, and the muscular and nervous layer exposed, in the upper part these latter are removed so as to show the core of endoderm cells; *ect.* ectoderm; *end.* endoderm; *m.f.* muscle-fibres; *ntc.* nematocyst; *nu.* nucleus; *nv.c.* nerve-cell. (After von Lendenfeld.)

The structure of the **Medusæ**—formed as we have seen by the development of medusa-buds liberated from a ruptured gonangium—yet remains to be considered. The convex outer surface of the bell or umbrella (Fig. 83, B—D) by which the zooid was originally attached to the blastostyle is distinguished as the *ex-umbrella*, the concave inner surface as the *sub-umbrella.* From the centre of the sub-umbrella proceeds the manubrium (*mnb*), at the free end of which is the four-sided mouth (*mth*). Very commonly, as the medusa swims the umbrella becomes turned inside out, the sub-umbrella then forming the convex surface and the manubrium springing from its apex (Fig. 83, C, and Fig. 87).

The mouth (Figs. 83, 87, and 88, *mth*) leads into an enteric cavity which occupies the whole interior of the manubrium, and from its dilated base sends off four delicate tubes, the *radial canals* (*rad. c*), which pass at equal distances from each other through the substance of the umbrella to its margin, where they all open into a *circular canal* (*circ. c*), running parallel with and close to the margin. By means of this system of canals the food, taken in at the mouth and digested in the manubrium, is distributed to the entire medusa.

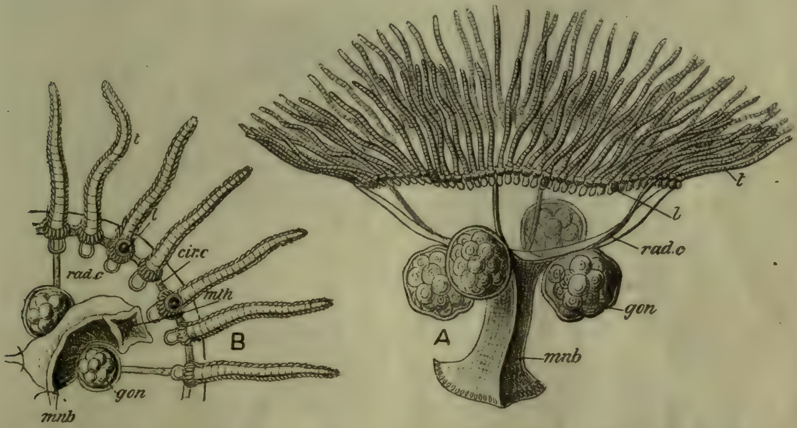


FIG. 87.—**Obelia sp.** A, mature medusa swimming with everted umbrella; B, one quarter of the same, oral aspect; *circ.c.* circular canal; *gon.* gonad; *l.* lithocyst; *mnb.* manubrium; *mth.* mouth; *rad. c.* radial canal; *t.* tentacle. (After Haeckel.)

The edge of the umbrella is produced into a very narrow fold or shelf, the *velum* (Fig. 88, *vl*), and gives off the tentacles (*t*), which are sixteen in number in the newly-born medusa (Fig. 83), very numerous in the adult (Fig. 87). At the bases of eight of the tentacles—two in each quadrant—are minute globular sacs (*l*), each containing a calcareous particle or *lithite.* These are the *marginal sense-organs* or *lithocysts:* they were formerly considered to be organs of hearing, and are hence frequently called *otocysts:* in all probability their function is to guide the medusa by enabling it to judge of the direction in which it is swimming. The marginal organs, in this case, may therefore be looked upon as organs of the sense of direction.

The manubrium (Fig. 88, *mnb*) of the medusa consists of precisely the same layers as that of the hydranth—ectoderm, mesoglœa, and endoderm. The ectoderm is continued on to the sub-umbrella, and then round the margin of the bell on to the ex-umbrella, so that both surfaces of the bell are covered with ectoderm. The endoderm is continued from the base of the enteric cavity into the radial canals, and so to the circular canal, so that the whole canal-system is lined by endoderm. In the portions of the bell between the radial canals there is found, between the outer and inner layers of ectoderm, a thin sheet of endoderm, the *endoderm-lamella* (*end. lam*), which stretches between adjacent radial canals and between the circular canal and the enteric cavity. In the bell, as in the manubrium, a layer of mesoglœa everywhere intervenes between ectoderm and endoderm.

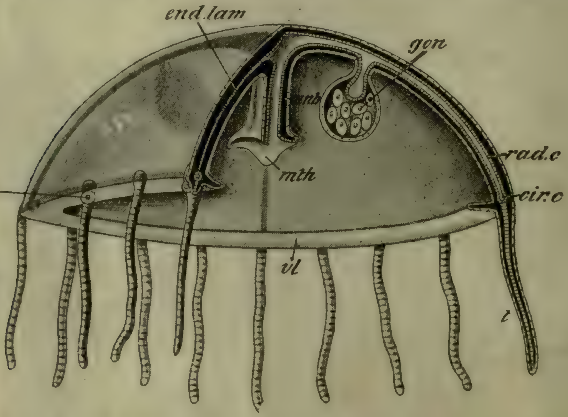


FIG. 88.—Dissection of a **medusa** with rather more than one-quarter of the umbrella and manubrium cut away (diagrammatic). The ectoderm is dotted, the endoderm striated, and the mesoglœa black; *circ. c.* circular canal; *end. lam.* endoderm lamella; *gon.* gonad; *l.* lithocyst; *mnb.* manubrium; *mth.* mouth; *rad. c.* radial canal; *vl.* velum.

The velum (*vl*) consists of a double layer of ectoderm and a middle one of mesoglœa: there is no extension of endoderm into it. The tentacles, like those of the hydranth, are formed of a core of endoderm covered by ectoderm, the cells of the latter being abundantly supplied with stinging-capsules.

Comparison of Polype and Medusa.—Striking as is the difference between a polype and a medusa, they are strictly homologous structures, and the more complex medusa is readily derivable from the simpler polype form. It is obvious, in the first instance, that the apex of the umbrella corresponds with the base of a hydranth (Fig. 89, A and D), being the part by which the zooid is attached in each case to the parent stem: the mouth and the manubrium are also obviously homologous structures in the two cases. Suppose the tentacular region of a polype to be pulled out, as it were, into a disc-like form (B), and afterwards to be bent into the form of a saucer (C) with the concavity distal,

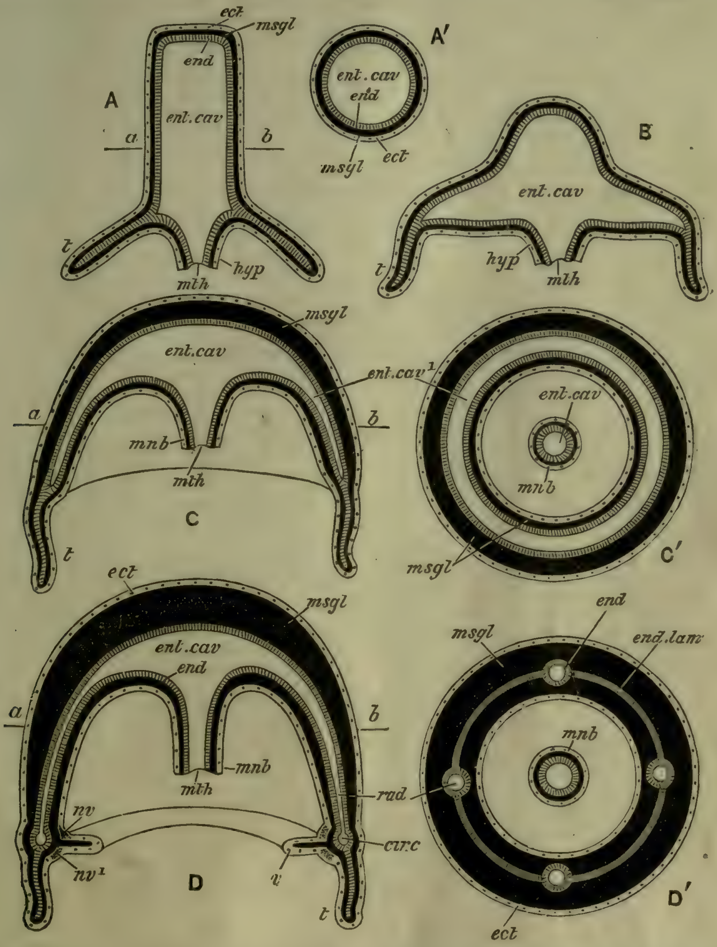

ect
msgl
end
A
ent.cav
a
b
t
hyp
mth
A′
ent.cav
end
msyl
ect
B
ent.cav
t
hyp
mth
msgl
ent.cav
ent.cav¹
a
b
mnb
mth
C
t
ent.cav
mnb
msgl
C′
ect
msgl
ent.cav
end
a
b
mnb
mth
rad
nv
circ
nv¹
D
v
t
end
msgl
end.lam
mnb
D′
ect

FIG. 89.—Diagrams illustrating the derivation of the **medusa** from the **polype**. A, longitudinal, and A′, transverse section (along the line *ab*) of polype-form ; B, polype-form with extended tentacular region ; *C*, vertical, and C′, transverse section (along the line *ab*) of form with tentacular region extended into the form of a bell ; D, vertical, and D′, transverse section (along the line *ab*) of medusa. The ectoderm is dotted, the endoderm striated, and the mesoglœa black ; *cir. c.* circular canal ; *ect.* ectoderm ; *end* endoderm ; *end. lam.* endoderm lamella ; *ent. cav.* enteric cavity ; *hyp.* hypostome or manubrium ; *mnb.* manubrium ; *msgl.* mesoglœa ; *mth.* mouth ; *nv. nv′*, nerve-rings ; *t.* tentacle ; *v.* velum. (From Parker's *Biology*.)

i.e. towards the manubrium. The result of this will be a medusa-like body (C, C′) with a double wall to the entire bell, the narrow space between the two layers containing a prolongation of the enteron (*ent. cav'*) and being lined with endoderm. From such a form the actual condition of things found in the medusa would be produced by the continuous cavity in the bell being for the most part obliterated by the growing together of its walls so as to form the endoderm-lamella (D', *end. lam*), and remaining only along four meridional areas—the radial canals (*rad. c*), and a circular area close to the edge of the bell—the circular canal (*cir. c*).

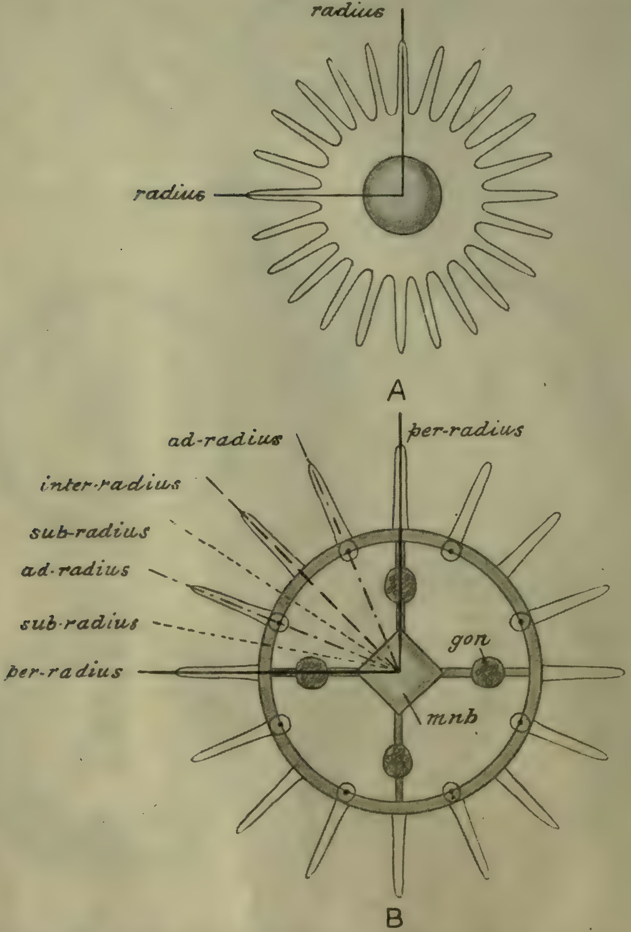

radius
radius
A
ad-radius
per-radius
inter-radius
sub-radius
ad-radius
sub-radius
per-radius
gon
mnb
B

FIG 90.—Projections of **polype** (A) and **medusa** (B), showing the various orders of radii; *gon.* gonad; *mnb.* manubrium.

While both polype and medusa are radially symmetrical, the increase in complexity of the medusa is accompanied by a differentiation of the structures lying along certain radii. If a polype is projected on a plane surface (Fig. 90, A), taken at right angles to its long axis, a large number of radii—about twenty-four—can be drawn from the centre outwards, all passing through similar parts, *i.e.* along the axis of a tentacle and through similar portions of the body and manubrium. But in the medusa (B) the case is different. The presence of the four radial canals allows us to distinguish four *principal radii* or *per-radii.* Half way between any two per-radii a *radius of the second order*, or *inter-radius*, may be taken; half way between any per-radius and the inter-radius on either side a *radius of the third order*, or *ad-radius*, and half way between any ad-radius and the adjacent per- or inter-radius, a *radius of the fourth order*, or *sub-radius.* Thus there are four per-radii, four inter-radii, eight ad-radii, and sixteen sub-radii. In Obelia the radial canals, the angles of the mouth, and four of the tentacles are per-radial, four more tentacles are inter-radial, and the remaining eight tentacles, bearing the lithocysts, are ad-radial. The sub-radii are of no importance in this particular form.

Reproduction.—In the description of the fixed Obelia-colony no mention was made of cells set apart for reproduction, like the ova and sperms of a sponge. As a matter of fact, such sexual cells are found only in their fully developed condition, at least in the medusæ. Hanging at equal distances from the sub-umbrella, in immediate relation with the radial canal, and therefore per-radial in position, are four ovoid bodies (Figs. 87 and 88, *gon*), each consisting of an outer layer of ectoderm, continuous with that of the sub-umbrella, an inner layer of endoderm, continuous with that of the radial canal and enclosing a prolongation of the latter, and of an intermediate mass of cells which have become differentiated into ova or sperms. As each medusa bears organs of one sex only (testes or ovaries, as the case may be), the individual medusæ are *diœcious.* It will be noticed that the gonad has the same general structure as an immature zoöid—an outpushing of the body-wall consisting of ectoderm and endoderm, and containing a prolongation of the enteric cavity.

Development.—When the gonads are ripe the sperms of the male medusæ are shed into the water and carried by currents to the females, impregnating the ova, which thus become oosperms or unicellular embryos. The oosperm undergoes complete segmentation (Fig. 91, A—F), and is converted into an ovoidal body called a *planula* (G, H), consisting of an outer layer of ciliated ectoderm cells and an inner mass of endoderm cells in which a space appears, the rudiment of the enteron. The planula swims freely for a time (H), then settles down on a piece of timber, sea-weed, &c., fixes itself by one end (K), and becomes converted into a *hydrula* or simple polype (L, M), having a disc of attachment at its proximal end, and at its distal end a manubrium and circlet of tentacles. Soon the hydrula sends out lateral buds, and, by a frequent repetition of this process, becomes converted into the complex Obelia-colony with which we started.

This remarkable life-history furnishes the first example we have yet met with of *alternation of generations*, or *metagenesis* (see p. 39).

The Obelia-colony is sexless, having no gonads, and developing only by the asexual process of budding; but certain of its buds—the medusæ—develop gonads, and from their impregnated eggs

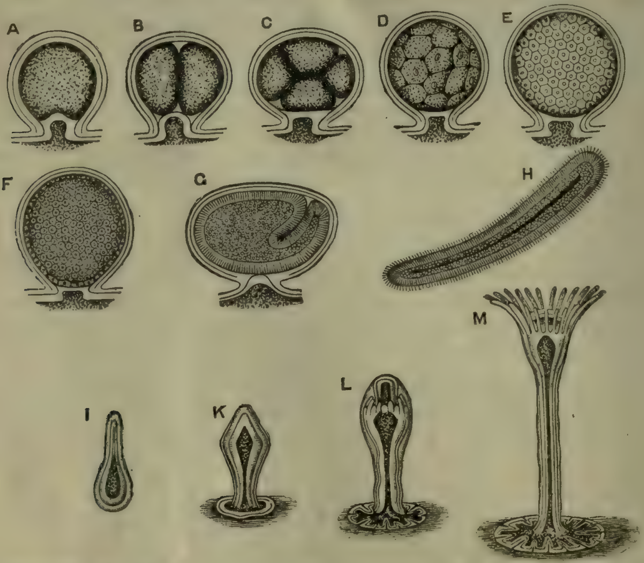


FIG. 91.—Stages in the development of two Zoophytes (A—H, **Laomedea**, I—M, **Eudendrium**) allied to Obelia; A—F, stages in segmentation; G, the planula enclosed in the maternal tissues; H, the free-swimming planula; I—M, fixation of the planula and development of the hydrula. (From Parker's *Biology*, after Allman.)

new Obelia-colonies arise. We thus have an alternation of an *asexual generation*, or *agamobium*—the Obelia-colony, with a *sexual generation*, or *gamobium*—the medusa.

2. GENERAL STRUCTURE AND CLASSIFICATION.

The Hydrozoa may be defined as multicellular animals in which the cells are arranged in two layers, ectoderm and endoderm, separated by a gelatinous, non-cellular mesoglœa, and enclosing a continuous digestive cavity which communicates directly with the exterior by a single aperture—the mouth—and is lined throughout by endoderm. The ectoderm consists of epithelial cells, interstitial cells, muscle-fibres, and nerve cells. Certain of the interstitial cells give rise to characteristic organs of offence—the stinging-capsules. The endoderm consists of flagellate or amœboid cells, gland-cells, and sometimes muscle-fibres. There are two main forms of zooids, polypes or nutritive zooids, which are usually sexless, and medusæ or reproductive zooids. In correspondence with its locomotive habits, the medusa attains a higher degree of organisation than the polype, having more perfect muscular and nervous systems, distinct sense organs, and a digestive cavity differentiated into central and peripheral portions, the latter taking the form of radial and circular canals. The reproductive products are discharged externally, and are very commonly, though not always, of ectodermal origin.

Many Hydrozoa agree with Obelia in exhibiting alternation of generations, the asexual generation being represented by a fixed, more or less branched hydroid colony, the sexual generation by a free-swimming medusa. In other forms there are no free medusæ, but the hydroid colony produces fixed reproductive zooids. In others, again, there is no hydroid stage, the organism existing only in the medusa-form. Then, while in most instances the only skeleton or supporting structure is the horny perisarc, there are some forms in which the cœnosarc secretes a skeleton of calcium carbonate, forming a massive stony structure or *coral*. Lastly, there are colonial forms which, instead of remaining fixed, swim or float freely on the surface of the ocean, and such pelagic species are always found to exhibit a remarkable degree of *polymorphism*, the zooids being of very various forms and performing diverse functions.

Thus we have zoophyte colonies known to produce free medusæ, zoophyte colonies known not to produce free medusæ, and medusæ known to have no zoophyte stage. Moreover, there are many medusæ of which the life-history is unknown, so that it is uncertain whether or not a zoophyte stage is present. It is also found that in some cases closely allied zoophytes produce very diverse medusæ, while similar medusæ, in other cases, may spring from very different zoophytes. For these reasons a sort of double classification of the Hydrozoa has come about, some zoologists approaching the group from the point of view of the zoophyte, others from that of the medusa. On the whole the following scheme seems best adapted for bringing before the beginner the leading modifications of the class.

ORDER 1.—LEPTOLINÆ.

Hydrozoa in which there is a fixed zoophyte stage, and in which the sense organs are exclusively ectodermal.

Sub-Order a.—Anthomedusæ.

Leptolinæ in which the polypes are not protected by hydrothecæ or the reproductive zooids by gonothecæ: the medusæ bear the gonads in the manubrium and have no lithocysts.

Sub-Order b.—Leptomedusæ.

Leptolinæ in which hydro- and gonothecæ are present: the medusæ bear the gonads in connection with the radial canals and usually have lithocysts.

ORDER 2.—TRACHYLINÆ.

Hydrozoa in which no fixed zoophyte stage is known to occur, all members of the group being locomotive medusæ, some of which have been proved to develop directly from the egg. The sense organs are formed partly of endoderm.

Sub-Order a.—Trachymedusæ.

Trachylinæ in which the tentacles spring from the margin of the umbrella, and the gonads are developed in connection with the radial canals.

Sub-Order b.—Narcomedusæ.

Trachylinæ in which the tentacles spring from the ex-umbrella, some distance from the margin, and the gonads are developed in connection with the manubrium.

ORDER 3.—HYDROCORALLINA.

Hydrozoa in which a massive skeleton of calcium carbonate is secreted from the cœnosarc, the dried colony being a coral.

ORDER 4.—SIPHONOPHORA.

Pelagic Hydrozoa in which the colony usually exhibits extreme polymorphism of its zooids.

ORDER 5.—GRAPTOLITHIDA.

An extinct group of Hydrozoa, found only in rocks of palæozoic age, in the form of the fossilised perisarc of the branched colonies.

Systematic Position of the Example.

Obelia, in virtue of the possession of gono- and hydrothecæ, and of gonads formed in connection with the radial canals, belongs to the sub-order Leptomedusæ. It is placed in the family *Campanulariidæ*, distinguished by having cup-shaped thecæ borne at the ends of distinct branchlets: the genus Obelia is distinguished from other genera of the same family by the fact that the reproductive zooids are free-swimming medusæ.

ORDER 1.—LEPTOLINÆ.

The more typical members of this group agree in all essential respects with Obelia, consisting of branched colonies bearing two principal forms of zooids, which serve for nutritive and reproductive purposes respectively.

General Structure.—The form and size of the colonies are subject to great variation: they may be little insignificant tufts growing on shells, sea-weeds, &c., or may take the form of complex trees three feet in height, and containing many thousand zooids. The hydranths may be colourless and quite invisible to the naked eye, or, as in some Tubulariæ (Fig. 93, *5*), may be brilliantly coloured, flower-like structures, nearly an inch in diameter. The medusæ may be only just visible to the naked eye, or, as in *Æquorea*, may attain a diameter of 38 mm., or about 15 inches: they are often seen with great difficulty owing to the bubble-like transparency of the umbrella, but frequently the manubrium is brightly coloured, or brilliant dots of colour—the *ocelli* or eye-spots—may occur around the margin of the umbrella. They are also frequently phosphorescent, the phosphorescence of the ocean being often due to whole fleets of medusæ liberated in thousands from the hydroid colonies beneath the surface.

The two sub-orders of Leptolinæ are distinguished by the arrangement of the **perisarc.** In the Anthomedusæ, of which *Bougainvillea* (Fig. 92) is a good example, the cuticle stops short at the bases of the hydranths, and the reproductive zooids are not enclosed in gonothecæ. It is for this reason that, in classifications founded on the zoophyte stage, the Anthomedusæ are called *Gymnoblastea* or naked-budded zoophytes (see also Fig. 93, *1*, *4*, *5*). In the Leptomedusæ the cuticle is usually of a firmer consistency than in the first sub-order and furnishes hydrothecæ for the hydranths and gonothecæ for the reproductive zooids: they are hence often classified as *Calyptoblastea* or covered-budded hydroids. To this group belong the commonest species of hydroids found on the sea-shore, and often mistaken for sea-weeds, the "Sea-firs" or Sertularians.

The **medusæ** also exhibit characteristic differences in the two sub-orders. In the Anthomedusæ the umbrella is usually strongly arched, and may even be conical or mitre-shaped (Fig. 93, *7*; Fig. 96, *1* and *2*): its walls are thick owing to a great development of the gelatinous mesoglœa of the ex-umbrella, that of the sub-umbrella remaining thin: and the velum is considerably wider than in Obelia. But the most important characteristics are the facts that the gonads (*gon*) are developed in the manubrium and that lithocysts are absent. Sense organs are, however, present in the form of specks of red or black pigment at the bases of the tentacles. These *ocelli* (*oc*) consist of groups of ectoderm cells containing pigment, and it has been proved experimentally that they are sensitive to light: they are, in fact, the simplest form of eyes. In the Leptomedusæ the umbrella is usually less convex, thinner, and of softer consistency than in the Anthomedusæ, the gonads are developed as buds formed in connection with the radial canals and projecting from the sub-umbrella, the velum is feebly developed, and sense organs take the form sometimes of ocelli, but usually of lithocysts.

In the majority of Leptolinæ the **cœnosarc**, as in Obelia, consists of a more or less branched structure attached to stones, timber, seaweeds, shells, &c., by a definite root-like portion. The curious genus *Hydractinia* (Fig. 93, *1*) is remarkable for possessing a massive cœnosarc, consisting of a complex arrangement of branches which have undergone fusion so as to form a firm brownish crust on the surfaces of dead gastropod shells inhabited by Hermit-crabs. The constant association of Hydractinia with Hermit-crabs is a case of *commensalism:* the hydroid feeds upon minute fragments of the Hermit-crab's food, and is thus its commensal or messmate, and the Hermit-crab is protected from its enemies by the presence of the inedible, stinging hydroid. Hydractinia belongs to the Anthomedusæ: the Leptomedusan

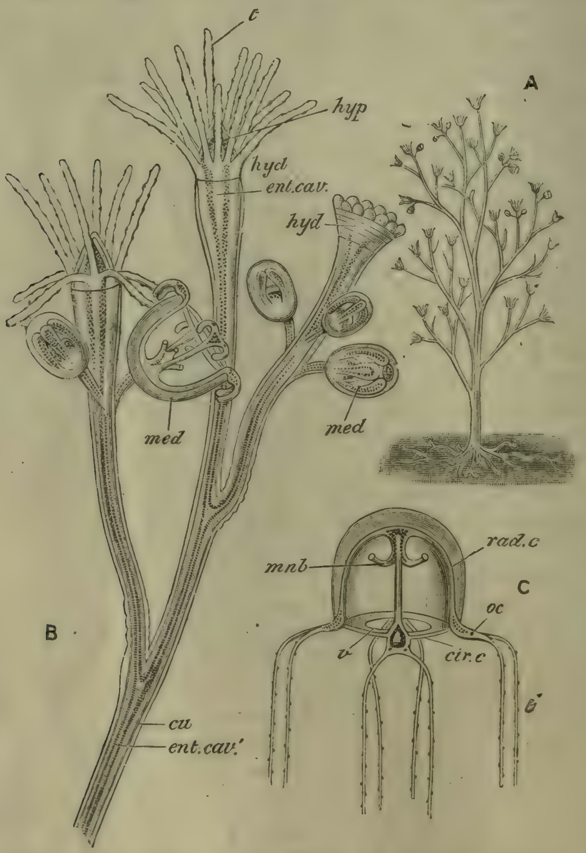


Fig. 92.—**Bougainvillea ramosa.** A, entire colony, natural size; B, portion of the same magnified; C, immature medusa; *cir. c.*, circular canal; *cu.* cuticle or perisarc; *ent. cav.* enteric cavity; *hyd.* polype or hydranth; *hyp.* hypostome or manubrium; *med.* medusa; *mnb.* manubrium; *rad. c.* radial canal; *t.* tentacle; *v.* velum. (From Parker's *Biology*, after Allman.)

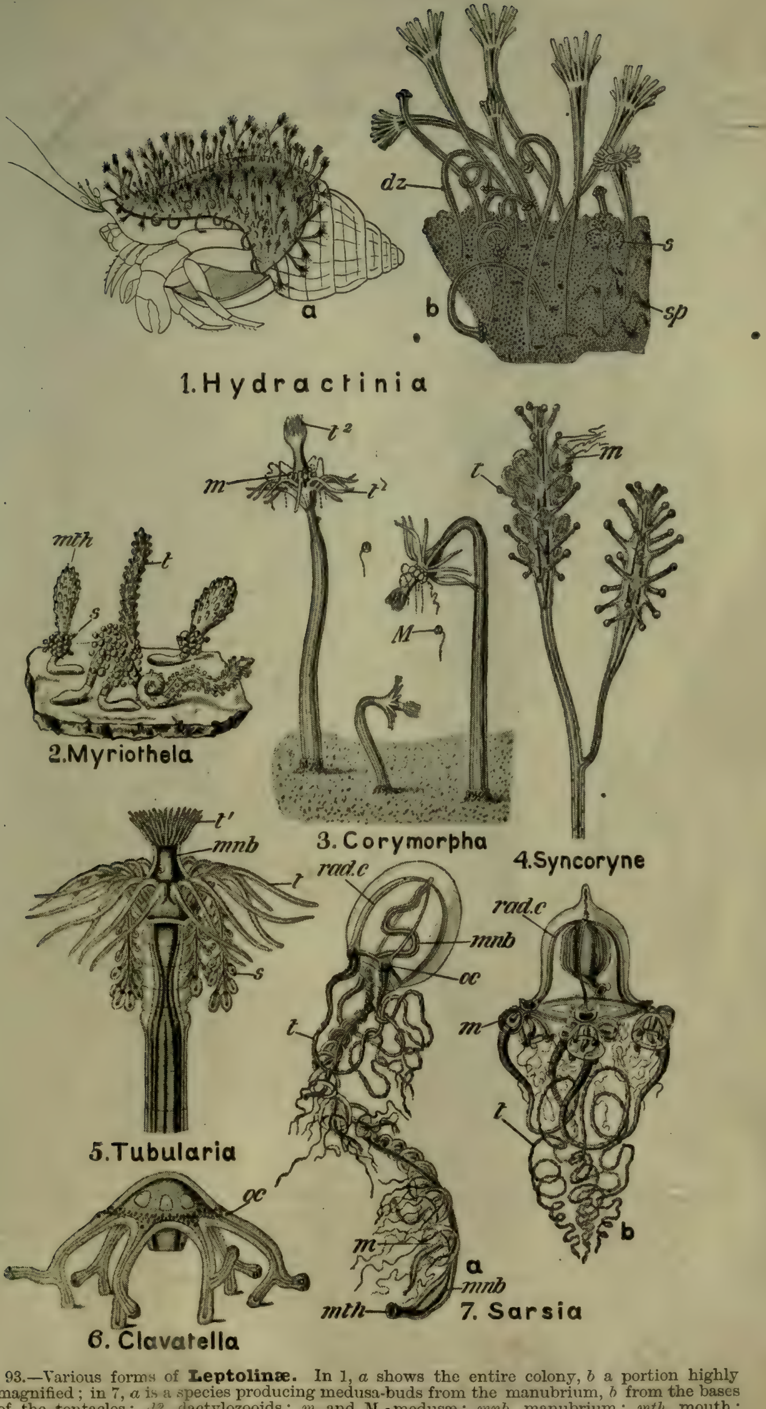

dz
s
sp
a
b
1. Hydractinia
t²
m
t²
M
t
m
mth
t
s
2. Myriothela
3. Corymorpha
4. Syncoryne
t′
mnb
t
s
5. Tubularia
rad.c
mnb
oc
t
m
mnb
mth
a
rad.c
m
t
b
7. Sarsia
oc
6. Clavatella

FIG. 93.—Various forms of **Leptolinæ.** In 1, *a* shows the entire colony, *b* a portion highly magnified; in 7, *a* is a species producing medusa-buds from the manubrium, *b* from the bases of the tentacles; *dz*, dactylozooids; *m*. and M. medusæ; *mnb*. manubrium; *mth*. mouth; *oc*. eye-spots; *rad. c.* radial canals; *s*. sporosacs; *sp*. spines; *t*, t^1, t^2, tentacles.

Clathrozoon, an Australian genus, resembles it in having branched and intertwined cœnosarcal tubes, the perisarc of which under-

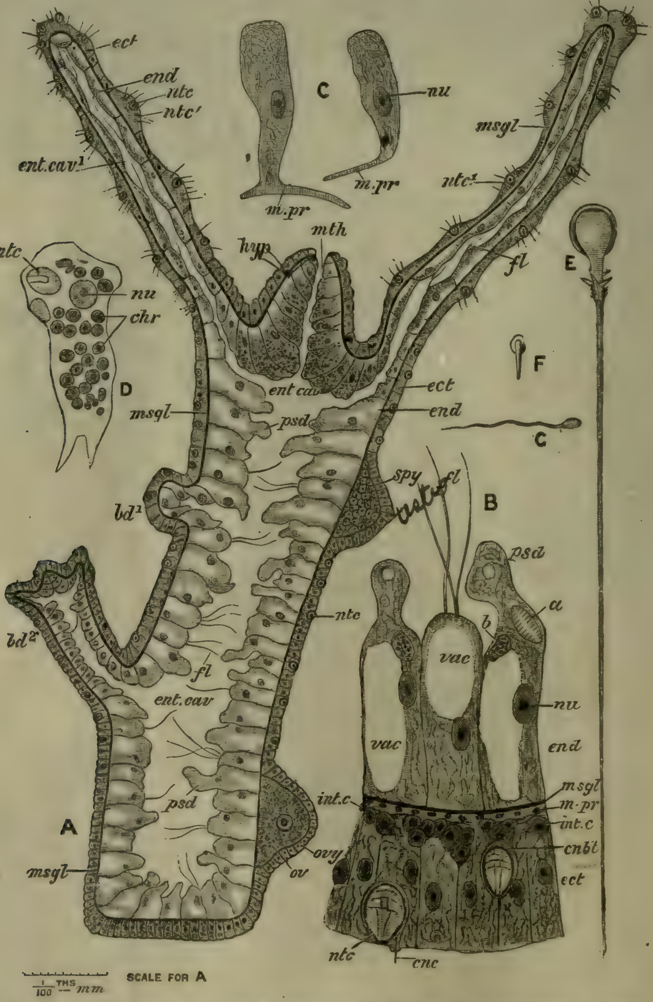

ect
end
ntc
ntc'
ent.cav¹
C
nu
m.pr
m.pr
msgl
ntc¹
ntc
nu
chr
D
hyp
mth
fl
E
F
ent.cav
ect
end
msgl
psd
C
spy
fl
B
bd¹
psd
a
b
vac
nu
ntc
bd²
fl
vac
end
ent.cav
msgl
m.pr
int.c
int.c
cnbl
psd
ect
A
ovy
ov
msgl
ntc
cnc
1/100 THS mm
SCALE FOR A

Fig. 94.—**Hydra.** A, vertical section of entire animal; B, portion of transverse section, highly magnified; C, two large ectoderm cells; D, endoderm cell of *H. viridis;* E, large nematocyst; F, small nematocyst; G, sperm; *a*, ingested diatom; *bd. 1, bd. 2,* buds; *chr.* chromatophores; *cnbl.* cnidoblast; *cnc.* cnidocil; *ect.* ectoderm; *end.* endoderm; *ent. cav.* enteric cavity; *ent. cav'.* its prolongation into the tentacles; *fl.* flagellum; *hyp.* hypostome or manubrium; *int. c.* interstitial cells; *m. pr.* muscle processes; *mth.* mouth; *msgl.* mesoglœa; *ntc.* large, and *ntc'.* small nematocysts; *nu.* nucleus; *ov.* ovum; *ovy.* ovary; *psd.* pseudopods; *spy.* spermary; *vac.* vacuole.

goes fusion, but the complex mass thus produced, instead of forming an incrustation on a shell, is a large, abundantly branched, tree-like structure, resembling some of the fan-corals or Gorgonacea (*vide infra*).

A great simplification of the colony is produced in *Myriothela* (Fig. 93, *2*) in which the short cœnosarc bears a single large terminal hydranth, and gives off numerous slender branches which bear the reproductive zooids (*s*). Even greater simplicity is found in *Corymorpha* (*3*), in which the entire organism consists of a single stalked polype, from the tentacular region of which the medusæ (*m*) arise.

But the simplest members of the whole class, with the exception of one or two imperfectly known forms which will be referred to below, are the Fresh-water Polypes of the genus *Hydra*. The entire organism (Figs. 24 and 94) consists of a simple cylindrical body with a conical hypostome and a circlet of six or eight tentacles. It is ordinarily attached, by virtue of a sticky secretion from the proximal end, to weeds, &c., but is capable of detaching itself and moving from place to place after the manner of a looping caterpillar. The tentacles are hollow, and communicate freely with the enteron. There are no distinct muscle-fibres, but the large ectoderm cells are produced into *muscle processes* (C, *m. pr*) which serve the same functions. There is no perisarc. Buds (*bd. 1*, *bd. 2*) are produced which develop into Hydræ, but these are always detached sooner or later, so that a permanent colony is never formed. There are no special reproductive zooids, but simple ovaries (*ovy*) and testes (*spy*) are developed, the former at the proximal, the latter at the distal end of the body. Even simpler than Hydra are *Protohydra* (Fig. 95) and *Microhydra*, in which the tentacles are absent.

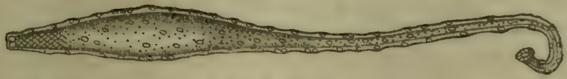


FIG. 95.—**Protohydra leuckartii.** (From Chun, after Greeff.) The mouth is to the left, the disc of attachment to the right.

The **polypes** are usually cylindrical, as in Obelia, but in some genera they are widened out into a vase-like form (Fig. 93, *5*), in others elongated into a spindle-shape (*4*). The tentacles may be disposed in a single circlet, as in Obelia and Hydra, or there may be an additional circlet round the hypostome (*3*, *5*) or at the base of the polype, or they may be scattered irregularly over the whole surface (*4*). In Myriothela (*2*) they are short and so numerous as to have the appearance of close-set papillæ. In some forms they are knobbed at the ends, the knobs being loaded with stinging-capsules (*4*).

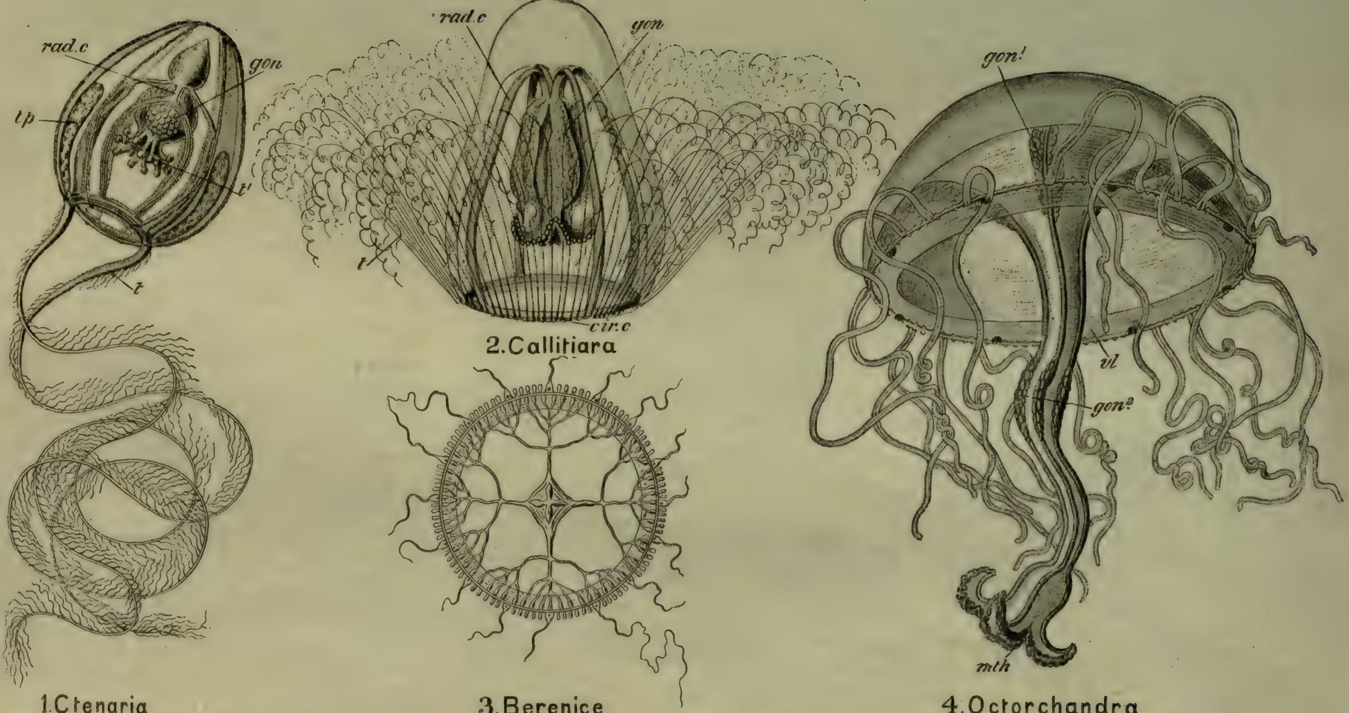
In some species a *dimorphism* of the hydranths obtains, some of them being modified to form protective zooids. In Hydractinia

(*1*) these are simply mouthless hydranths with very short tentacles abundantly supplied with nematocysts, capable of very active movements, and called *dactylozooids* (*dz*). In Plumularia there are small structures called "guard-polypes," resembling tentacles in structure, and each enclosed in a theca. In Hydractinia the cœnosarc is also produced into spines (*sp*), which may be much modified zooids.

But the most remarkable modifications occur in the **reproductive zooids**. In a large proportion of genera, both of Anthomedusæ and Leptomedusæ, these take the form of locomotive medusæ, agreeing in general structure with the descriptions already given, but exhibiting endless variety in detail. As to size they vary from about 1 mm. in diameter up to 400 mm. (16 inches). The number of tentacles may be very great (Fig. 96, *2*) or these organs may be reduced to two (Fig. 96, *1*), or even to one (Fig. 93, *3*); in the last-named cases it will be noticed that the medusa is no longer radially, but bilaterally symmetrical, *i.e.* it can be divided into two equal and similar halves by a single plane only, viz., the plane passing through the one or two tentacles. With the increase in the number of the tentacles a corresponding increase in that of the radial canals often takes place (Fig. 96, *3*).

Some medusæ creep over submarine surfaces, walking on the tips of their peculiarly modified tentacles (Fig. 93, *6*) but the majority propel themselves through the water in a series of jerks by alternately contracting and expanding the umbrella, and so, by rhythmically driving out the contained water, moving with the apex foremost. In correspondence with these energetic movements there is a great development of both muscular and nervous systems. The velum and the sub-umbrella possess abundance of muscle-fibres, presenting a transverse striation, and round the margin of the umbrella is a double ring of nerve-cells and fibres, one ring being above, the other below the attachment of the velum (Fig. 89, *D*, *nv*, *nv′*). The medusæ thus furnish the first instance we have met with of a *central nervous system*, *i.e.* a concentration of nervous tissue over a limited area serving to control the movements of the whole organism. It has been proved experimentally that the medusa is paralysed by removal of the nerve-ring. Over the whole sub-umbrella is a loose network of nerve-cells and fibres connected with the nerve-ring, and forming a peripheral nervous system.

In some medusæ the circular canal communicates with the exterior by minute pores placed at the summits of papillæ, the endoderm cells of which contain brown granules. There seems to be little doubt that these are *organs of excretion*, the cells withdrawing nitrogenous waste matters from the tissues and passing them out through the pores. If we except the contractile



rad.c
gon
t.p
t'
t
rad.c
gon
t
cir.c
gon!
vl
gon²
mth

1. Ctenaria 2. Callitiara 3. Berenice 4. Octorchandra

FIG. 96 Various forms of **leptoline Medusæ.** *cir. c.* circular canal; *gon* gon^1. gon^2. gonads; *rad. c.* radial canal; *t.* marginal tentacles; *t'.* oral tentacles; *t.p.* tentacle-pouch; *vl.* velum. (After Haeckel.)

vacuoles of Protozoa, this is the first appearance of specialised excretory organs in the ascending series of animals.

Besides producing gonads, some medusæ multiply asexually by budding, the buds being developed either from the manubrium (Fig. 93, 7*a*), or from the margin of the umbrella (7*b*). The buds always have the medusa form.

In many Leptolinæ the reproductive zooids undergo a degradation of structure, various stages of the process being found in different species. Almost every gradation is found, from perfect medusæ to ovoid pouch-like bodies called *sporosacs* (Fig. 93, *1b*, *5*, *s*), each consisting of little more than a gonad, but showing an indication of its true nature in a prolongation of the digestive cavity of the colony, representing the stomach of the manubrium (Fig. 97). We thus have a reproductive *zooid* reduced to what is practically a reproductive *organ*. It is obvious that a continuation of the same process might result in the production of a simple gonad like that of Hydra: there is, however, no evidence to show that the Fresh-water Polype ever produced medusæ, and the probabilities are that its ovaries and testes are simply gonads, and not degenerate zooids. The case is interesting as showing how a simple structure may be imitated by the degradation of a complex one. It is quite possible, on the other hand, that the reproductive organs of the Leptomedusæ (Fig. 88) are sporosacs, *i.e.* reproductive zooids, not mere gonads.

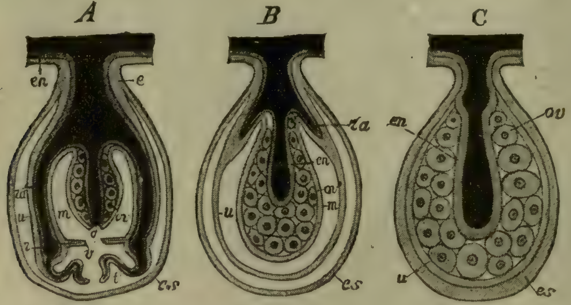


FIG. 97.—Diagram illustrating the formation of a sporosac by the degradation of a medusa. *A*, medusa enclosed in ectodermal envelope (*es*); *B*, intermediate condition with vestiges of umbrella (*u*) and radial canals (*ra*); *C*, Sporosac, *ec*, ectoderm; *en*, endoderm; *m*, manubrium; *ov*, ovary; *t*, tentacle; *v*, velum. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy.*)

In Obelia we found the medusæ to be budded off from peculiarly modified mouthless zooids—the blastostyles. This arrangement, however, is by no means universal: the reproductive zooids —whether medusæ or sporosacs—may spring directly from the cœnosarc, as in Bougainvillea (Fig. 92), or from the ordinary hydranths (Fig. 93, *4* and *5*). The primitive sex-cells, from which ova or sperms are ultimately developed, are sometimes formed from the endoderm or (more usually) ectoderm cells of the gonad; but in many cases originate in the cœnosarc, and slowly migrate to their final destination in the gonad, where they metamorphose, in the usual way, into the definitive reproductive products.

The **development** of the Leptolinæ frequently, but not always, begins within the maternal tissues, *i.e.* while the oosperm or impregnated egg-cell is still contained in the gonad of the medusa or in the sporosac. The oosperm divides into two cells, then into four, eight, sixteen, &c. Fluid accumulates in the interior of the embryo, resulting in the formation of a blastula or hollow globe formed of a single layer of cells (Fig. 97, A). The blastula elongates, and the cells at one pole undergo division, the daughter-cells passing into the cavity, which they gradually fill (B). At this stage the embryo is called a *planula*: it consists of an outer layer of cylindrical cells—the ectoderm—which acquire cilia, and an inner mass of polyhedral cells—the endoderm. In some cases the planula arises by a different process: a solid morula is formed, the superficial cells of which become radially elongated and form ectoderm, the central mass of cells becoming endoderm. By means of its cilia the planula swims freely, and before long a cavity appears in the middle of the solid mass of endoderm, the cells of which then arrange themselves in a single layer around the cavity or enteron (C, *al*). The planula then comes to rest, fixes itself at one end to some suitable support, and becomes converted into a simple polype or *hydrula* by the attached end broadening into a disc and the opposite extremity forming a manubrium and tentacles. The hydrula soon begins to send off lateral buds, and so produces the branched colony.

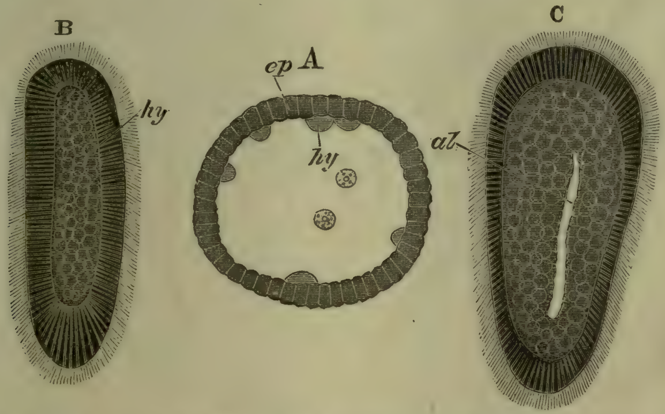


FIG. 98.—Early development of **Eucope.** A, blastula-stage; B, planula with solid endoderm; C, planula with enteric cavity; *al.* enteric cavity; *ep.* ectoderm; *hy.* endoderm. (From Balfour's *Embryology*, after Kowalevsky.)

In Tubularia the oosperm develops, while still enclosed in the sporosac, into a short hydrula, which, after leading a free existence for a short time, fixes itself by its proximal end, buds, and produces the colony. In Hydra development begins in the ovary, and is complicated by the fact that the ectoderm of the morula gives rise to a sort of protective shell: in this condition the embryo is set free, and, after a period of rest, develops into the adult form.

ORDER 2.—TRACHYLINÆ

General Structure.—The members of this order are all medusæ: no zoophyte stage is certainly known in any of them, and several species have been proved to develop directly from the egg.

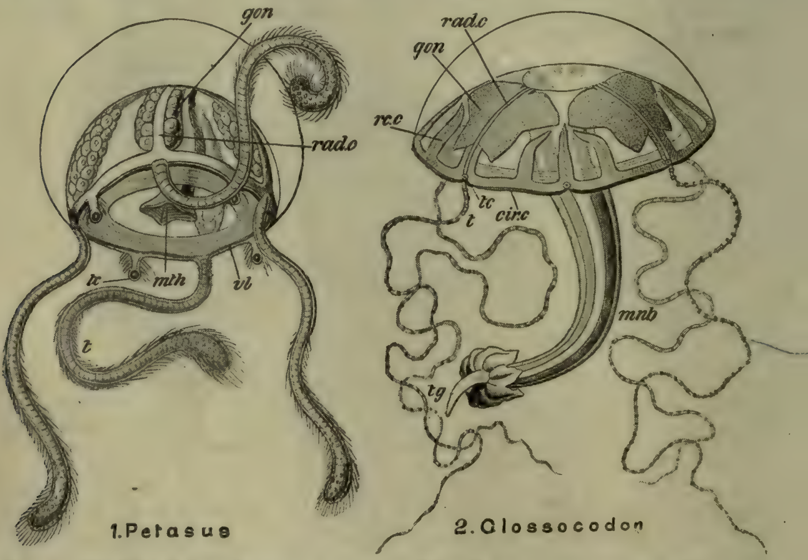


FIG. 99.—Two **Trachymedusæ.** *cir. c.* circular canal; *gon.* gonad; *mnb.* manubrium; *mth.* mouth; *rad. c.* radial canal; *rc. c.* recurrent canal; *t.* tentacle; *tc.* tentaculocyst; *tg.* tongue; *vl.* velum. (After Haeckel.)

They thus differ from the members of the preceding order in the fact that there is no alternation of generations in their life-history.

Most species are of small or moderate size, the largest not exceeding 100 mm. (4 inches) in diameter. The gelatinous tissue or mesoglœa of the ex-umbrella is usually well developed, giving the medusa a more solid appearance than the delicate jelly-fish of the preceding order: this is well shown in Fig. 99, in which the apical region of the umbrella has a comparatively immense thickness. The tentacles are also stiff and strong, and are always solid in the young condition, although they may be replaced in the adult by hollow tentacles.

But the most characteristic anatomical feature of the group is the structure of the **sense-organs,** which are club-shaped bodies

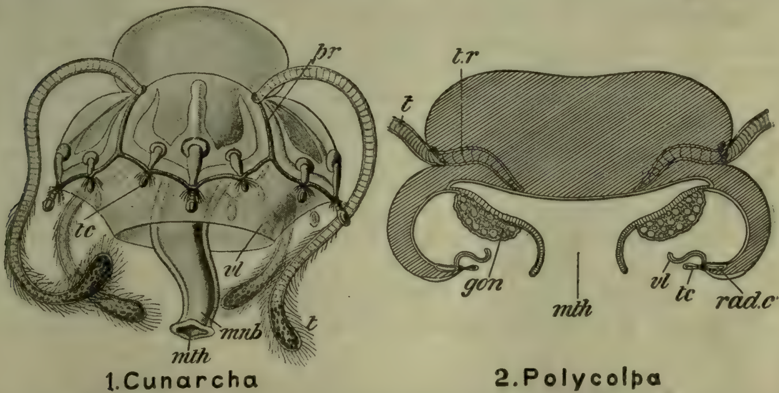


Fig. 100.—Two **Narcomedusæ**, 2 in vertical section. *gon.* gonad; *mnb.* manubrium; *mth.* mouth; *pr.* peronium; *t.* tentacle; *tc.* tentaculocyst; *t.r.* tentacle-root; *vl.* velum. (After Haeckel.)

(Figs. 99 and 100, *tc*) consisting of an outer layer of ectoderm enclosing a central axis of endoderm cells (Fig. 101): they have, therefore, the structure of tentacles. They contain one or more lithites, which are always derived from the endoderm. To distinguish them from the lithocysts of Leptomedusæ, and to mark the fact that they are modified tentacles, they are called *tentaculocysts.* They may either project freely from the margin of the umbrella, or may become enclosed in a pouch-like growth of ectoderm and more or less sunk in the tissue of the umbrella.

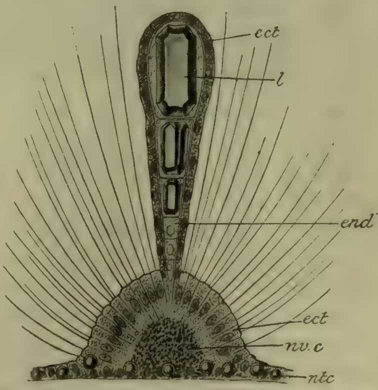


Fig. 101.—**Æginura myosura**, a tentaculocyst highly magnified. *ect.* ectoderm; *end.* endoderm; *l.* lithites; *ntc.* nematocysts; *nv.c.* group of nerve-cells. (After Haeckel).

The two sub-orders of Trachylinæ are characterised by the mode of origin of the **tentacles.** In Trachymedusæ, as in the preceding order, they arise near the edge of the umbrella (Fig. 99), but in the Narcomedusæ they spring about half-way between the edge and the vertex (Fig. 100), and are continued, at their proximal ends, into the jelly of the ex-umbrella in the form of "tentacle-roots" (*t.r*).

As to the position of the **reproductive organs,** there is the same difference between the two sub-orders of Trachylinæ as between the two sub-orders of Leptolinæ. In the Trachymedusæ the gonads (Fig. 99, *gon*) are developed in the course of the radial canals: in the Narcomedusæ (Fig. 100) they lie in the manubrium, sometimes extending into pouch-like offshoots of its cavity.

There is always a well-developed velum, which, as in Fig. 100, *1.* may hang down vertically instead of taking the usual horizontal position. In the Narcomedusæ the manubrium is short; in the Trachymedusæ it is always well developed, and is sometimes (Fig. 99, B) prolonged into a long, highly contractile peduncle, having its inner surface produced into a tongue-like process (*tg*) which protrudes through the mouth.

The simplest case of the **development** of Trachylinæ is seen in *Æginopsis,* one of the Narcomedusæ. The oosperm gives rise to a ciliated planula, which forms first two (Fig. 102), then four tentacles, and a mouth, hypostome, and stomach. The larva of Æginopsis is thus a *hydrula*, closely resembling the corresponding stage of Tubularia. After a time the tentacular region grows out, carrying the tentacles with it, and becomes the umbrella of the medusa. Thus the actual formation of the medusa from the hydrula of Æginopsis corresponds precisely with the theoretical derivation given above (p. 127). It will be seen that in the present case there is no metagenesis or alternation of generations, but that development is accompanied by a *metamorphosis*—that is, the egg gives rise to a larval form differing in a striking manner from the adult, into which it becomes converted by a gradual series of changes.

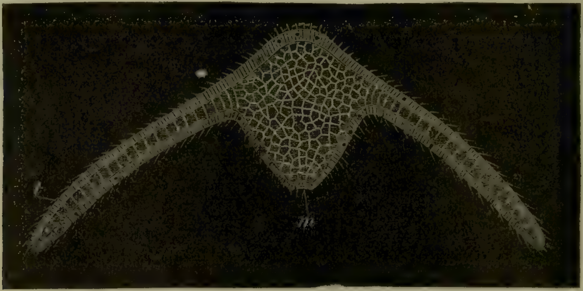


FIG. 102.—Larva of **Æginopsis.** *m.* mouth; *t.* tentacle. (From Balfour, after Metschnikoff.)

Metagenesis is, however, not quite unknown among the Trachylinæ. In a parasitic Narcomedusa (*Cunina parasitica*) the planula fixes itself to the manubrium of one of the Trachymedusæ which serves as its host, and develops into a hydrula. But the latter, instead of itself becoming metamorphosed into a medusa, retains the polype form and produces other hydrulæ by budding, these last becoming converted into medusæ in the usual way.

ORDER 3.—HYDROCORALLINA.

The best-known genus of Hydroid Corals is *Millepora*, one species of which is the beautiful Elk-horn Coral, *M. alcicornis.* The dried colony (Fig. 103 A) consists of an irregular lobed or branched mass of carbonate of lime, the whole surface beset with the numerous minute pores to which the genus owes its name. The pores are of two sizes: the larger are about 1 or 2 mm. apart, and are called *gastropores* (B, *g.p*); the smaller are arranged more or less irregularly round the gastropores, and are called *dactylopores* (*d.p*). The whole surface of the coral between the pores has a pitted appearance. Sections (C) show that the entire stony mass is traversed by a complex system of branched canals, which communicate with the exterior through the pores. The wide vertical canals in immediate connection with the gastropores are traversed by horizontal partitions, the *tabulæ* (*tb*).

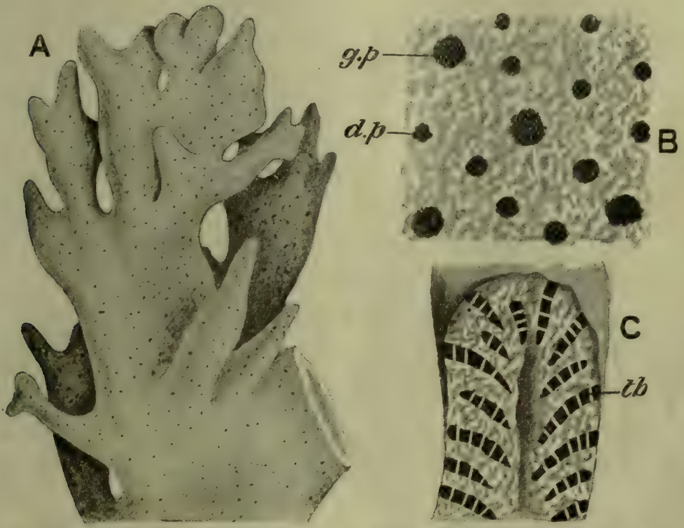


FIG. 103.—**Millepora alcicornis.** A, part of skeleton, natural size; B, portion of surface, magnified; C, vertical section, magnified; *d.p.* dactylopores; *g.p.* gastropores; *tb.* tabulæ. (After Nicholson and Lydekker.)

In the living animal each pore is the place of origin of a zooid: from the gastropores protrude polypes (Fig. 104, *P*) with hypostome and four knobbed tentacles; from the dactylopores long, filamentous, mouthless dactylozooids or feelers (*D.Z*), with irregularly disposed tentacles: the function of these latter is probably protective and tactile, like that of the guard-polypes of Plumularia and the dactylozooids of Hydractinia. The bases of the zooids are connected with a system of delicate tubes, which ramify through the canals of the coral, and represent a much-branched cœnosarc, recalling that of Hydractinia (p. 134).

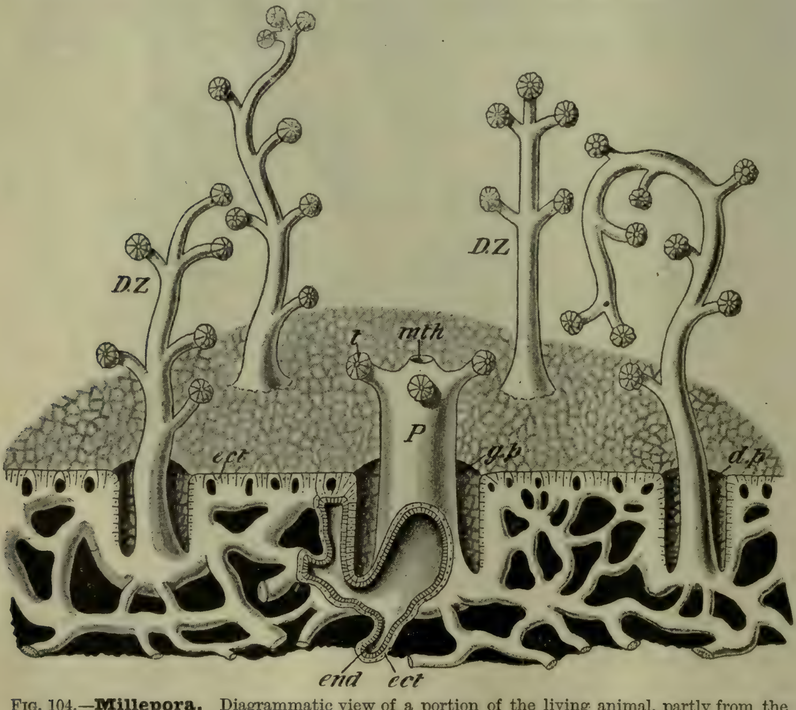


FIG. 104.—**Millepora.** Diagrammatic view of a portion of the living animal, partly from the surface, partly in vertical section. In the sectional part the ectoderm is dotted, the endoderm striated, and the skeleton black. *ect.* ectoderm; *end.* endoderm; *d.p.* dactylopore; *D.Z.* dactylozooid; *g.p.* gastropore; *mth.* mouth; *P.* polype; *t.* tentacle. (Altered from Moseley.)

The cœnosarcal tubes have the usual structure, consisting of ectoderm and endoderm, with an intervening mesoglœa. From the relative position of the parts it will be obvious that the calcareous skeleton is in contact throughout with the ectoderm of the colony: it is, in fact, like the horny perisarc of the Leptolinæ, a cuticular product of the ectoderm.

The only other genus to which we shall refer is *Stylaster* (Fig. 105), which forms a remarkably elegant tree-like colony, abundantly branched in one plane, and of a deep pink colour. On the branches are little cup-like projections, with radiating processes passing from the wall of the cup towards the centre, and thus closely resembling the true cup-corals belonging to the Actinozoa (*vide infra*). But in the case of Stylaster each "cup" is the locus, not of one, but of several zooids: a polyp projecting from its centre, and a dactylozooid from each of the compartments of its peripheral portion.

The *gonads* of Millepora are formed in small capsules, occurring in the course of the cœnosarcal canals; in Stylaster there are sporosacs or degraded reproductive zooids lodged in special chambers (*a*) of the coral.

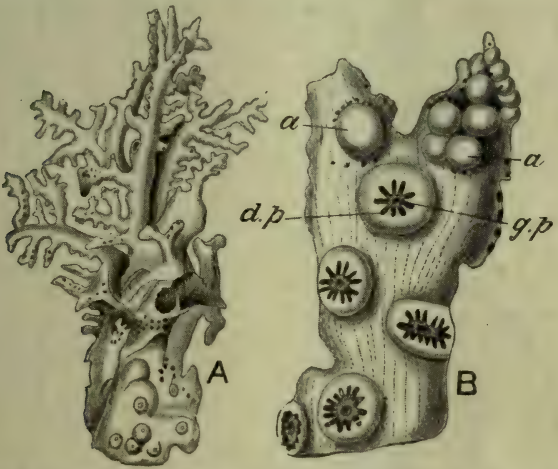


FIG. 105.—**Stylaster sanguineus.** A, portion of skeleton, natural size; B, small portion, magnified; *a.* ampullæ; *d.p.* dactylopores; *g.p.* gastropores. (After Nicholson and Lydekker.)

The Hydrocorallina occur only in the tropical portions of the Pacific and Indian Oceans, where they are found on the "coral reefs" partly or entirely surrounding many of the islands in those seas. Fossil forms are found as far back as the Triassic epoch.

ORDER 4.—SIPHONOPHORA.

The diversity of form exhibited by the members of this order is so great that anything like a general account of it would only be confusing to the beginner, and the most satisfactory method of presentation will be by the study of a few typical genera.

Halistemma (Fig. 106 A) occurs in the Mediterranean and other seas, and consists of a long, slender, floating stem, to which a number of structures, differing greatly in form, are attached. At one—the uppermost—end of the stem is an ovoid, bubble-like body con-

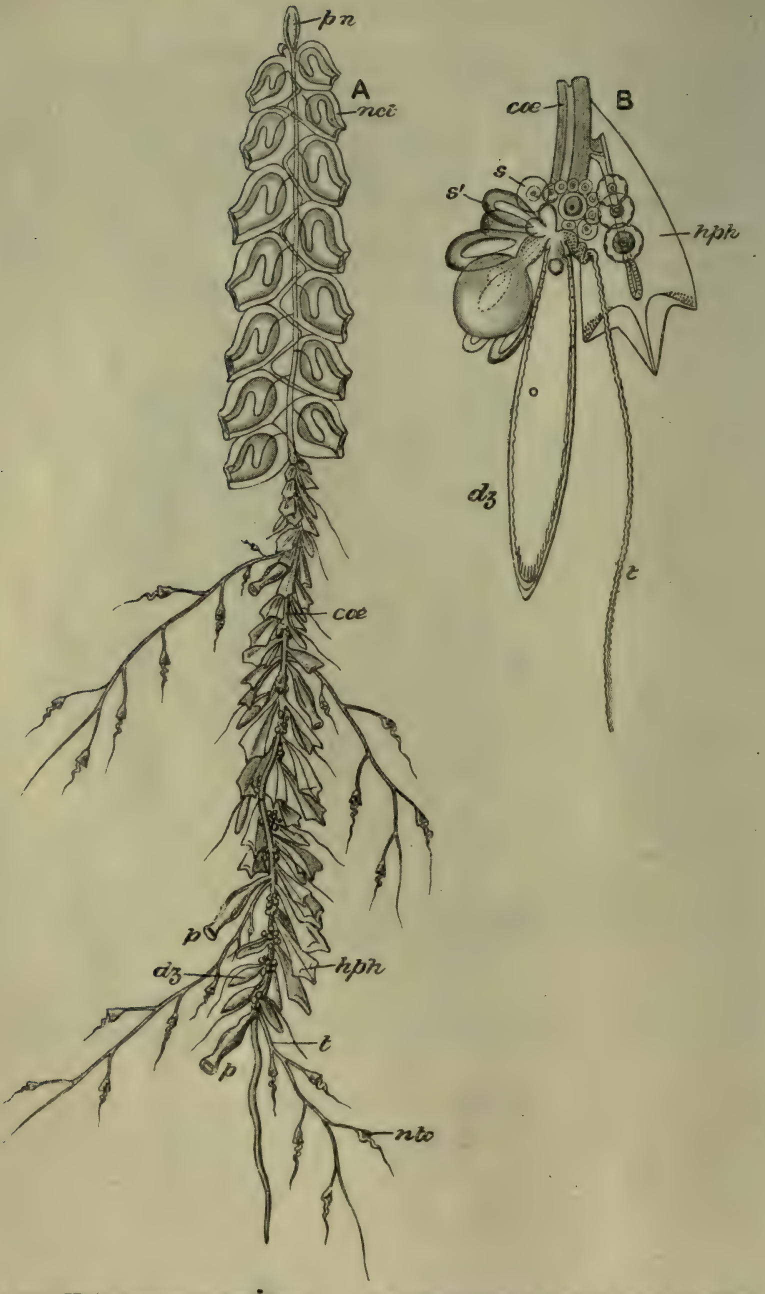

pn
A
nct
coe
B
s
s'
hph
dz
t
coe
p
dz
hph
t
p
ntc

FIG. 106.—**Halistemma tergestinum.** A, the entire colony; B, a single group of zooids; *cœ.* cœnosarc; *dz.* dactylozooid; *hph.* hydrophyllium or bract; *nct.* nectocalyx or swimming-bell; *ntc.* battery of nematocysts; *p.* polype; *pn.* pneumatophore or float; *s. s'.* sporocysts; *t.* tentacle. (After Claus.)

taining air—the *float* or *pneumatophore* (*pn*). Next come a number of closely set, transparent structures (*nct*), having the general characters of unsymmetrical medusæ without manubria, each being a deep, bell-like body, with a velum and radiating canals. During life these *swimming-bells* or *nectocalyces* contract rhythmically—*i.e.* at regular intervals—drawing water into their cavities, and immediately pumping it out, thus serving to propel the entire organism through the water. Below the last nectocalyx the character of the structures borne by the stem changes completely: they are of several kinds, and are arranged in groups which follow one another at regular intervals, and thus divide the stem into segments, like the nodes and internodes of a plant.

Springing from certain of the " nodes " are unmistakable polypes (*p*), differing however from those we have hitherto met with in having no circlet of tentacles round the mouth, but a single long branched tentacle (*t*) arising from its proximal end, and bearing numerous groups or " batteries " of stinging-capsules (*ntc*). In the remaining nodes the place of the polypes is taken by dactylozooids or feelers (*dz*)—mouthless polypes, each with an unbranched tentacle springing from its base. Near the bases of the polypes and dactylozooids spring groups of sporosacs (B, *s*, *s′*), some male, others female; and finally delicate, leaf-like, transparent bodies—the *bracts* or *hydrophyllia* (*hph*)—spring from the "internodes" and partly cover the sporosacs.

It is obvious that, on the analogy of such a hydroid polype as Obelia, Halistemma is to be looked upon as a polymorphic floating colony, the stem representing a cœnosarc, and the various structures attached to it zooids—the polypes nutritive zooids, the feelers tactile zooids, the sporosacs reproductive zooids, the bracts protective zooids, and the swimming-bells locomotory zooids. The float may be looked upon as the dilated end of the stem, which has become invaginated or turned-in so as to form a bladder filled with air, its outer and inner surfaces being furnished by ectoderm, and the middle portion of its wall by two layers of endoderm, between which the enteric cavity originally extended (Fig. 107, *pn*). The upper or float-bearing end is proximal—*i.e.* answers to the attached end of an Obelia-stem: it is the opposite or distal end which grows and forms new zooids by budding.

In some Siphonophora the bracts contain indications of radial canals, so that these structures, as well as the swimming-bells and sporosacs, are formed on the medusa-type, while the hydranths and feelers are constructed on the polype-type.

It will be noticed that the radial symmetry, so characteristic of most of the Hydrozoa previously studied, gives way, in the case of Halistemma, to a bilateral symmetry. The swimming-bells are placed obliquely, and the mouth of the bell is not at right angles to the long axis, so that only one plane can be taken dividing these structures into two equal halves: the same applies to the polype and feelers with their single basal tentacle. When first formed the various zooids are all on one side of the stem, but the latter becomes spirally twisted during growth, and so causes them to arise irregularly.

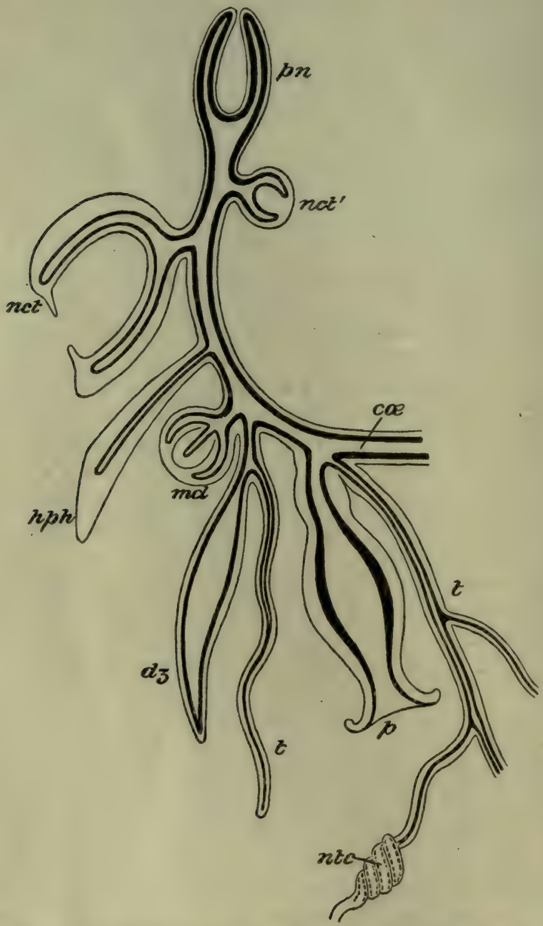


FIG. 107.—Diagram of a **Siphonophore**: the thick line represents endoderm; the space external to it, ectoderm; the internal space, the enteric cavity. *cœ.* cœnosarc; *dz.* dactylozooid; *hph.* hydrophyllium; *nct. nct'.* nectocalyces; *ntc.* battery of nematocysts; *p.* polype; *pn.* pneumatophore; *t* tentacle. (After Claus.)

The egg of Halistemma gives rise to a ciliated planula resembling that of the other Hydrozoa. At one pole the ectoderm becomes invaginated to form the float (Fig. 108, *cp*), the opposite extremity is gradually converted into the first polype (*po*), and a bud appears on one side which becomes the first tentacle (*t*). By gradual elongation, and the formation of new zooids as lateral buds, the adult form is produced; the various zooids are all formed between the first polype and the float, so that the two become further and further apart, being always situated at the distal and proximal ends of the colony respectively.

In an allied form (*Agalma*) the first structure to appear in the embryo is not the float, but the first bract, which grows considerably and envelops the growing embryo in much the same way as the umbrella of a medusa envelops the manubrium. On this and other grounds some zoologists look upon the Siphonophore-colony as a medusa the manubrium of which has extended immensely and produced lateral buds after the manner of some Anthomedusæ (Fig. 93, 7 *a*).

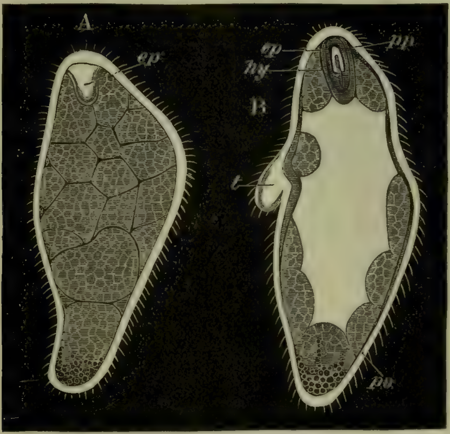


Fig. 108.—Two stages in the development of **Halistemma**: the endoderm is shaded, the ectoderm left white. *ep.* pneumatocyst or air-chamber of pneumatophore; *hy.* endoderm surrounding pneumatophore; *po.* polype; *pp.* pneumatophore; *t.* tentacle. (From Balfour, after Metschnikoff.)

On this theory the entire cœnosarc is an extended manubrium, and the first or primary bract is the umbrella. But frequently—as in Halistemma—a primary bract is not formed, and when present there appears to be no reason against regarding it as a lateral bud of the axis, of quite the same nature as the remaining zooids.

In the well-known "Portuguese man-of-war" (*Physalia*) there is a great increase in proportional size of the float and a corresponding reduction of the rest of the cœnosarc. The float (Fig. 109, *pn*) has the form of an elongated bladder, from 3 to 12 cm. long, pointed at both ends, and produced along its upper edge into a crest or sail (*cr*): as a rule it is of a brilliant peacock-blue colour, but orange-coloured specimens are sometimes met with. At one end is a minute aperture communicating with the exterior. There are no swimming-bells, but from the under size of the float hang polypes (*p*), feelers, groups of medusoids looking like bunches

REESE LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY

of grapes of a deep blue colour, and long retractile tentacles, sometimes several feet in length and containing batteries of stinging-capsules powerful enough to sting the hand as severely as a nettle. The male reproductive zooid remains attached, as in Halistemma, but the female apparently becomes detached as a free medusa.

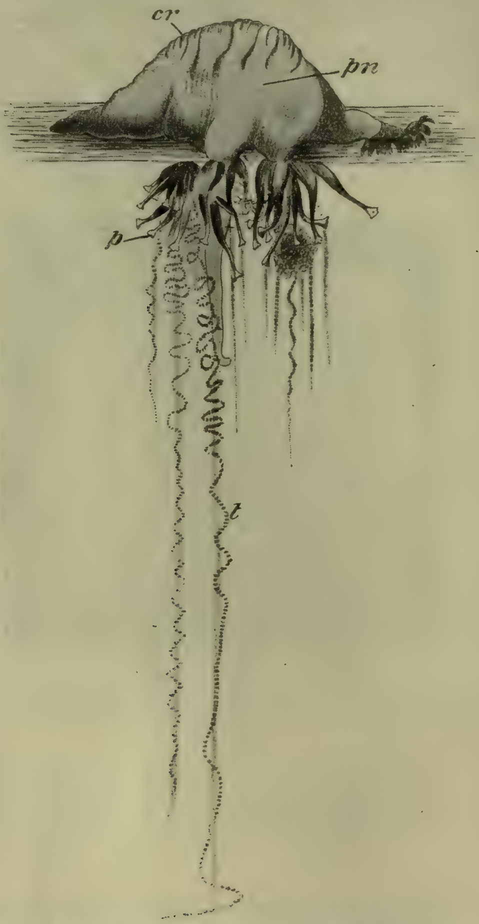


FIG. 109.—**Physalia** : the living animal floating on the surface of the sea. *cr.* crest ; *p.* polype ; *pn.* pneumatophore. (After Huxley.)

In *Diphyes* the float is absent. Two swimming-bells (Fig. 110, *m*) of proportionally immense size are situated at the proximal end of the cœnosarc, and are followed by widely-separated groups of zooids (*B*), each group containing a polype (*n*) with its tentacles (*i*), a medusoid (*g*), and a large enveloping bract (*t*). The stem often breaks at the internodes, and the detached groups of zooids then swim about like independent organisms.

Porpita is formed on a different type, and has a close general resemblance to a medusa. It consists (Fig. 111) of a discoid body, enclosing a chambered chitinoid shell (*sh*) containing air, and obviously corresponding with the float of Physalia. The edge of the disc is beset with long tentacles (*t*), and from its lower surface depend numerous closely set feelers or dactylozooids (*hy′*) and blastostyles bearing medusæ, while in the centre is a single polype (*hy*),

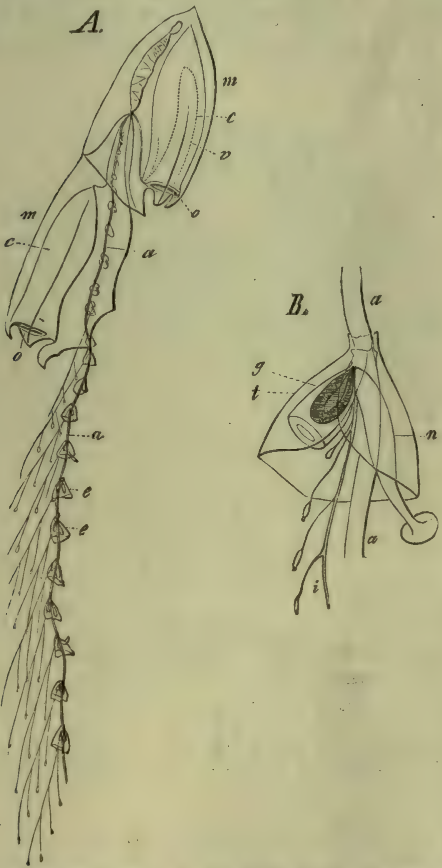


Fig. 110.—**Diphyes campanulata** A, the entire colony; B, single group of zooids; *a*, cœnosarc; *c*, cavity of swimming-bell; *e*, groups of zooids; *g*, medusoid; *i*, grappling line or tentacle; *m*, swimming-bell; *n*, polype; *o*, mouth of swimming-bell; *t*, bract. (From Parker's *Biology*, after Gegenbaur.)

which is the only nutritive zooid, taking in food for the entire colony. The closely allied genus *Velella* is of rhomboidal form, and bears on its upper surface an oblique sail.

The reproductive zooids are liberated as free medusæ. The eggs give rise to young which have a close resemblance to flat medusæ with manubrium, marginal tentacles, and an air-chamber or float developed in the ex-umbrella. Thus it is quite possible that the Siphonophora of the Porpita-type may be medusæ the sub-umbrella of which has given rise to buds forming the feelers and blastostyles. But, as their early development is not known, it is still quite legitimate to describe them in the same terms as the other Siphonophora—*i.e.* to consider them as hydroid colonies in which the cœnosarc is represented by the discoid or rhomboid body with its contained air-chamber.

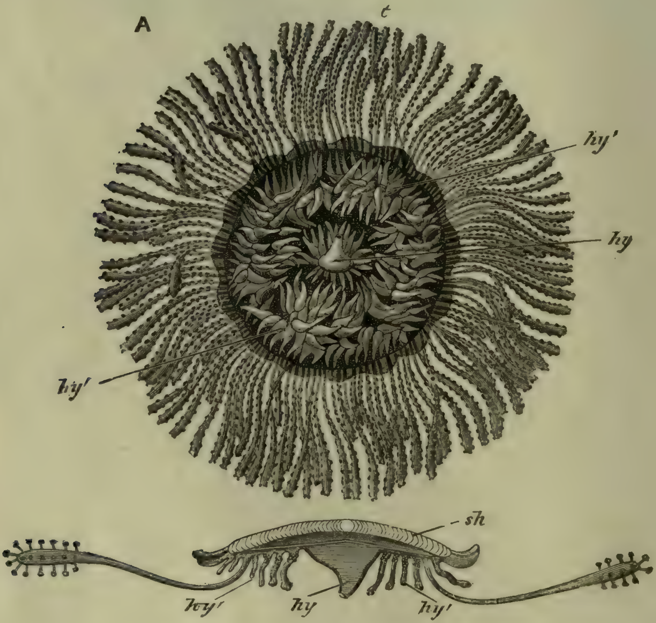


FIG. 111.—**Porpita pacifica.** A, from beneath; B, vertical section; *hy.* polype; *hy'.* dactylozooids; *sh.* chambered shell; *t.* tentacles. (From Parker's *Biology*, after Duperry and Koelliker.)

Order 5.—Graptolithida.

The "Graptolites" are fossil Hydrozoa found in the Upper Cambrian and Silurian rocks. They are known only by their fossilised chitinoid skeleton, all trace of the soft parts having, as in the majority of fossils, disappeared.

With one doubtful exception they are compound, consisting of an elongated tube, the perisarc of the common stem, having attached to it, either in a single or a double row, numerous small projections, the hydrothecæ (Fig. 112, *h.th*). The cœnosarcal skeleton is strengthened by a slender axis, the *virgula* (*v*), the proximal end of which is connected with a small dagger-shaped body, the *sicula* (*s*), supposed to be the skeleton of the primary zooid by the budding of which the colony was produced. In connection with some species oval or cup-like capsules have been found: these may probably be of the nature of gonothecæ.

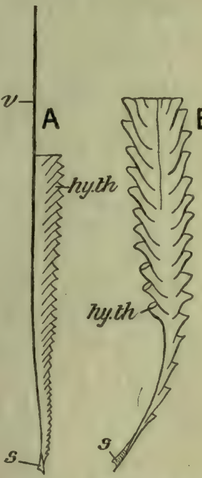


Fig. 112. — **Graptolites.** A, *Monograptus colonus*; B, *Dimorphograptus*, both magnified; *hy. th.* hydrotheca; *s.* sicula; *v.* virgula. (After Nicholson and Lydekker.)

Additional Remarks on the Hydrozoa.

The vast majority of Hydrozoa are marine, the only exceptions being *Hydra*, found all over the world; *Microhydra*, at present known only in North America; *Cordylophora*, one of the Anthomedusæ, found in Europe, America, Australia, and New Zealand; *Polypodium*, also an Anthomedusa, found in the Volga, where in one stage of its existence it is parasitic on the eggs of a Sturgeon; *Limnocodium*, a doubtful Trachymedusa, hitherto found only in a tank in the Botanical Gardens, Regent's Park, where it was probably introduced from the West Indies; and *Limnocnida*, found in Lake Tanganyika, Africa.

The oldest known Hydrozoa are the Graptolites, found first in the Cambrian rocks; Hydractinia occurs in the Cretaceous epoch, and Hydrocorallinæ from the Cretaceous onwards.

Parasitism, although rare, is not unknown in the class. Polypodium, one of the Anthomedusæ, is parasitic during part of its existence, in the ovary of the Sturgeon; and Cunina, one of the Narcomedusæ, is parasitic on a Trachymedusa.

In the section on the Protozoa we saw that while the majority of species are independent cells, each performing alone all the essential functions of an animal, others, such as Pandorina, Volvox, and Proterospongia, consist of numerous unicellular zooids associated to form a colony in which a certain division of labour obtains, the function of reproduction, for instance, being assigned to certain definite cells and not performed by all alike. Thus the colonial Protozoa furnish an example of *individuation*, numerous cells combining to form a colony in which the several parts are dependent one upon another, and which may therefore be said to constitute, from the physiological point of view, an individual of a higher order than the cell.

This is still more notably the case in the lower Metazoa, such as Ascetta and Hydra, in which we have numerous cells combined to form a permanent two-layered sac with a terminal aperture, some of the cells having digestive, others tactile, others reproductive functions. Thus while an Amœba or a Paramœcium is an *individual of the first order*, Hydra and Ascetta are *individuals of the second order*, each the equivalent of an indefinite number of individuals of the first order.

In the Hydrozoa we see this process carried a step further. Budding takes place and colonies are produced, the various zooids of which—each the equivalent of a Hydra—instead of remaining all alike, become differentiated both morphologically and physiologically, so as to differ immensely from one another both in form and function. In Obelia, for instance, reproduction is made over exclusively to the medusæ, while in Halistemma we have zooids specially set apart, not only for reproductive, but for tactile and protective purposes. Thus in Halistemma and the other Siphonophora there is a very complete subordination of the individual zooids to the purposes of the colony as a whole, the colony thus assuming, from the physiological point of view, the characteristics of a single individual, and its zooids the character of organs. In this way we get an *individual of the third order*, consisting of an aggregate of polymorphic zooids, just as the zooid or individual of the second order is an aggregate of polymorphic cells or individuals of the first order.

CLASS II.—SCYPHOZOA.

1. EXAMPLE OF THE CLASS—THE COMMON JELLY-FISH (*Aurelia aurita*).

Aurelia is the commonest of the larger jelly-fishes and is often found cast up on the sea-shore, when it is readily recognisable by its gelatinous, saucer-shaped umbrella, three or four inches in diameter, and having near the centre four red or purple horseshoe-shaped bodies—the gonads—lying embedded in the jelly.

External Characteristics.—The general arrangement of the parts of the body is very similar to what we are already familiar with in the hydrozoan jelly-fishes (Figs. 113 and 114, A). Most conspicuous is the concavo-convex *umbrella*, the convex surface of which, or ex-umbrella, is uppermost in the ordinary swimming position. The outline is approximately circular, but is broken by eight notches, in each of which lies a pair of delicate processes, the *marginal lappets* (*mg. lp*): between the pairs of lappets the edge of the umbrella is fringed by numerous close-set *marginal tentacles* (*t*).

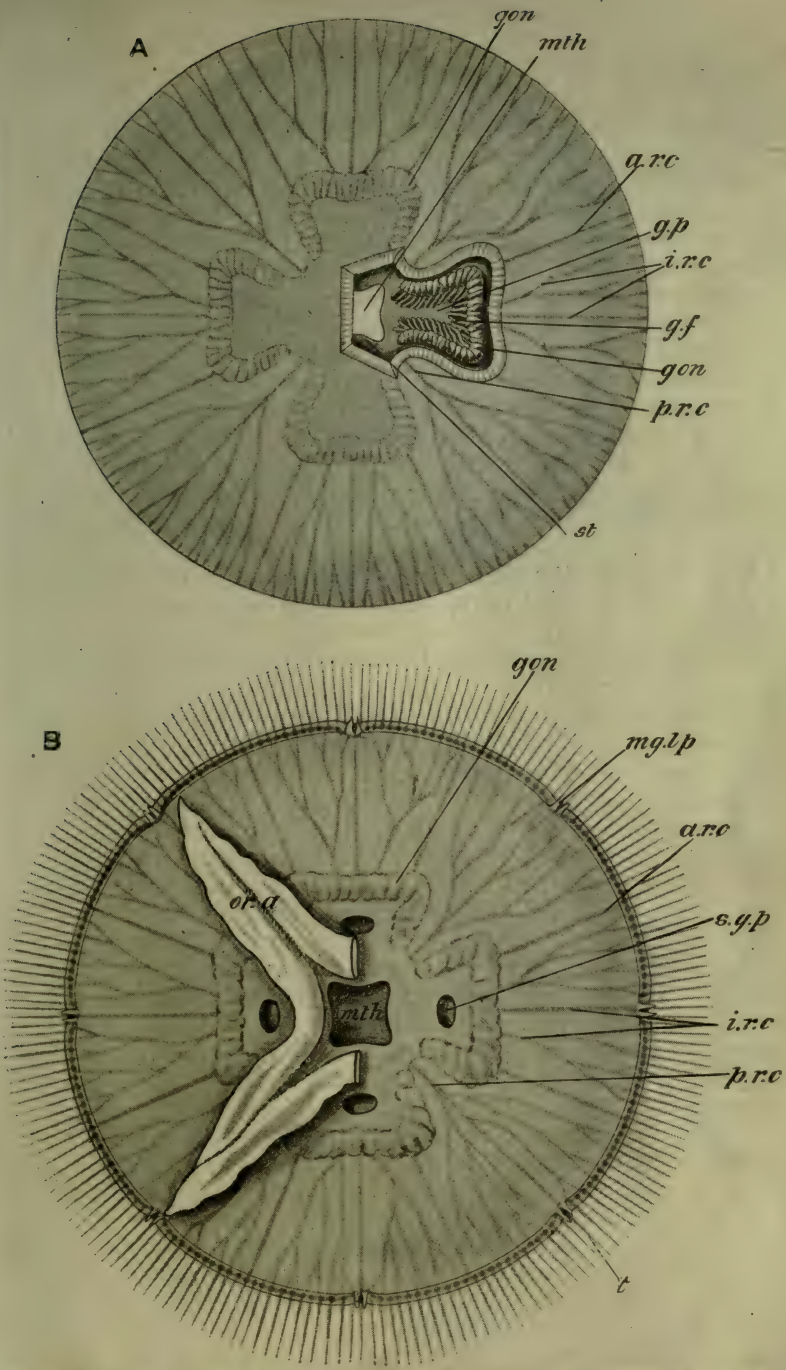

A
gon
mth
a.r.c
g.p
i.r.c
g.f
gon
p.r.c
st
B
gon
mg.lp
a.r.c
s.g.p
or.a
mth
i.r.c
p.r.c
t

FIG. 113.—**Aurelia aurita.** A, dorsal view, part of the ex-umbrella cut away to show part of the stomach and one of the four gastric pouches; B, ventral view—two of the oral arms are removed; *a.r. c.* adradial canal; *g. f.* gastric filaments; *gon.* gonads; *g. p.* gastric pouch; *i.r. c.* inter-radial canal; *mg. lp.* marginal lappet; *mth.* mouth; *or. a.* oral arm; *p.r. c.* per-radial canal; *s.g. p.* sub-genital pit; *st.* stomach; *t.* tentacles.

In the centre of the lower or sub-umbrellar surface is a four-sided aperture, the *mouth* (*mth*), borne at the end of an extremely short and inconspicuous *manubrium:* surrounding it are four long delicate processes, the *oral arms* (*or. a*), lying one at each angle of the mouth and uniting around it. Each arm consists of a folded membrane, tapering to a point at its distal end, beset along its edges with delicate processes, and abundantly provided with stinging-capsules. The angles of the mouth and the arms lie in the four per-radii, *i.e.* at the end of the two principal axes of the radially symmetrical body: of the marginal notches with their lappets, four are per-radial and four inter-radial.

At a short distance from each of the straight sides of the mouth, and therefore inter-radial in position, is a nearly circular aperture leading into a shallow pouch, the *sub-genital pit* (*s.g. p*), which lies immediately beneath one of the conspicuously coloured gonads (*gon*).

Digestive Cavity and Canal-System.—The mouth leads by a short tube or *gullet* (*gul*), contained in the manubrium, into a spacious *stomach* (*st*), which occupies the whole middle region of the umbrella, and is produced into four wide inter-radial *gastric pouches* (*g. p*), which extend about half-way from the centre to the circumference and are separated from one another by thick pillar-like portions of the umbrella-jelly. In the outer or peripheral wall of each gastric pouch are three small apertures, leading into as many *radial canals*, which pass to the edge of the umbrella and there unite in a very narrow *circular canal* (*circ. c*). The canal, which opens by the middle of the three holes, is of course inter-radial (*i.r. c*): it divides immediately into three, and each division branches again: the canals from the other two holes are adradial (*a.r. c*), and pass to the central canal without branching. There is also an aperture in the re-entering angle between each two gastric pouches: this leads into a per-radial canal (*p.r. c*), which, like the inter-radial, branches extensively on its way to the edge of the umbrella.

The general arrangement of the **cell-layers** in Aurelia is the same as in a hydroid medusa (Fig. 114, B). The main mass of the umbrella is formed of gelatinous mesoglœa, which, however, is not structureless, but is traversed by branching fibres and contains amœboid cells derived from the endoderm. Both ex- and sub-umbrellæ are covered with ectoderm, and the stomach and canal-system are lined with endoderm, which is ciliated throughout. Some observations seem to show that the short tube described above as a gullet is lined, not by endoderm, but by an in-turned portion of the ectoderm, as we shall see to be the case in Actinozoa and Ctenophora; but this matter cannot be considered as definitely settled.

It was mentioned above that in the free medusa the **gonads** appear through the transparent umbrella as coloured horseshoe-shaped patches. Their precise position is seen by cutting away a portion of the ex-umbrella so as to expose one of the gastric pouches from above (Fig. 113, A). It is then seen that the gonad (*gon*) is a frill-like structure lying on the floor of the pouch and bent in the form of a horse-shoe with its concavity looking inwards, *i.e.* towards the mouth. Being developed from the floor of the enteric cavity, the gonad is obviously an endodermal structure: when mature, its products—ova or sperms—are discharged into the stomach and pass out by the mouth. Here, then, is an important difference from the Hydrozoa, in which the generative products are usually ectodermal, and are always discharged directly on the exterior. The sexes are lodged in distinct individuals.

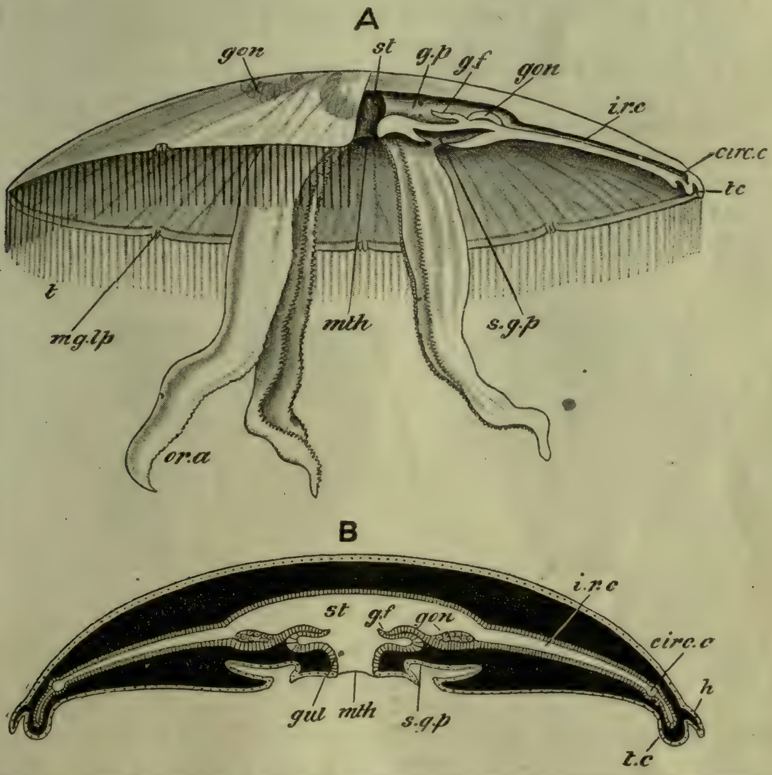


FIG. 114.—**Aurelia aurita.** A, side view, one-fourth of the umbrella cut away; B, diagrammatic vertical section, ectoderm dotted, endoderm striated, mesoglœa black; *circ. c.* circular canal; *g. f.* gastric filaments; *gon.* gonad; *g. p.* gastric pouch; *gul.* gullet; *h.* hood; *i.r. c.* inter-radial canal; *mg. lp.* marginal lappet; *mth.* mouth; *or. a.* oral arm; *s.g. p.* sub-genital pit; *st.* stomach.

Lying parallel with the inner or concave border of each gonad is a row of delicate filaments (*g. f*), formed of endoderm with a core of mesoglœa and abundantly supplied with stinging-capsules. These are the **gastric filaments**; their function is to kill or paralyse the prey taken alive into the stomach. No such endodermal tentacles are known in the Hydrozoa.

Muscular and Nervous Systems.—The contractions of the bell by which the animal is propelled through the water are effected by means of a muscular zone round the edge of the subumbrella. The nervous system is formed on a different plan from that of the hydroid medusæ. Instead of a double nerve-ring round the margin of the umbrella, there are eight groups of nerve-cells in connection with the marginal notches. The nerve-cells lie between the bases of the epithelial cells, and external to the muscular layer: they are obviously ectodermal structures.

The **sense organs** are lodged in the marginal notches in close relation with the nerve-patches: like the latter, therefore, four of them are per-radial and four inter-radial. Each consists of a peculiar form of sense-club or *tentaculocyst*, containing a prolongation of the circular canal, and thus representing a hollow instead of a solid tentacle. At the extremity are calcareous concretions or lithites (*l*) derived from the endoderm, and on the outer side is an ectodermal pigment-spot or ocellus (*oc*). The tentaculocysts are largely hidden by the marginal lappets (*mg. lp*) and by a hood-like process (*h*) connecting them; and in connection with each are two depressions, one on the ex-umbrella (*olf. 1*), the other immediately internal to the sense-club (*olf. 2*): these depressions are lined with sensory epithelium and are called *olfactory pits.*

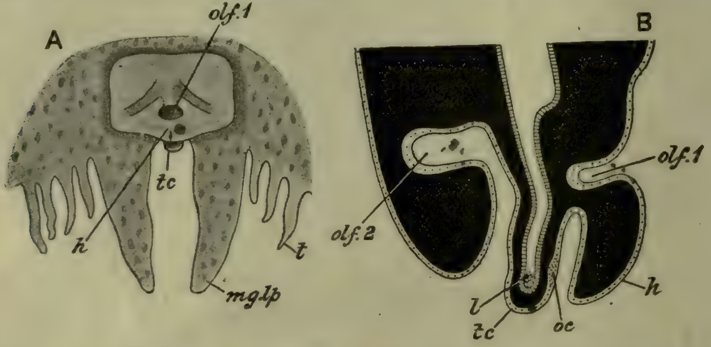


Fig. 115.—**Aurelia aurita.** A, small portion of edge of umbrella, showing the relations of the tentaculocyst; B, vertical section of the same region (diagrammatic); *h*, hood; *l*, lithite; *mg. lp*, marginal lappet; *oc*, ocellus; *olf. 1*, *olf. 2*, olfactory pits. (Altered from Lankester.)

The **development and life-history** of Aurelia present several striking and characteristic features. The impregnated egg-cell or oosperm divides regularly and forms a morula, which, by accumulation of fluid in its interior, becomes a blastula—a closed sac with walls formed of a single layer of cells. One end of this sac becomes invaginated to form the gastrula. The blastopore or gastrula-mouth closes, the embryo being converted into a closed two-layered sac or *planula* (Fig. 116, A), indistinguishable from that of a Hydrozoon, although formed by a totally different process.

The planula swims about by means of the cilia with which its ectodermal cells are provided, and, after a brief free existence, settles down, loses its cilia, and becomes attached by one pole. At the opposite pole a mouth is formed, the process taking place by a sinking-in or invagination of the surface so as to produce a depression lined with ectoderm (B, *st.*), the bottom of which becomes perforated so as to communicate with the enteric cavity (C, *st.*): the depression is the *stomodæum*, a structure of which there is no trace in the Hydrozoa. On two opposite sides of the mouth hollow processes grow out, forming the first two tentacles: soon two others appear at right angles to these, the organism thus being provided with four per-radial tentacles. Subsequently four inter-radial and eight adradial tentacles appear. At the same time the attached or proximal end is narrowed into a stalk-like organ of attachment (E), and the endoderm of the enteric cavity is produced into four longitudinal ridges, inter-radial in position, and distinguished as the *gastric ridges* or *tænioles* (D, *tn.*). The mouth (E, *mth.*) assumes a square outline, and its edges become raised so as to form a short manubrium (*mnb.*), and, finally, the ectoderm of the distal surface—*i.e.* the region lying between the mouth and the circlet of tentacles—becomes invaginated in each inter-radius so as to produce four narrow funnel-like depressions—the *septal funnels* or *infundibula* (E and F, *s. f.*)—sunk in the four gastric ridges.

The outcome of all these changes is the metamorphosis of the planula into a polype (E), not unlike a Hydra or the hydrula-stage of the Leptolinæ, but distinguished by a pronounced differentiation of structure, indicated by the sixteen tentacles developed in regular order, the stomodæum, and the four gastric ridges with their septal funnels. The Scyphozoon-polype is called a *Scyphula* or *Scyphistoma*.

The Scyphula may grow to a height of half an inch, and sometimes multiplies by budding. After a time it undergoes a process of transverse fission (G), becoming divided by a series of constrictions which deepen until the polype assumes the appearance of a pile of saucers, each with its edge produced into eight bifid lobes, four per- and four inter-radial. Soon the process of constriction is completed, the saucer-like bodies separate from one another, and each, turning upside down, begins to swim about as a small jelly-fish called an *Ephyrula* (H, I). The umbrella of the ephyrula is divided into eight long bifid arms (*a.*) with deep (adradial) notches: it has of course carried away with it a segment of the stomach with the gastric ridges of the Scyphula: during the process of constriction this becomes closed in on the proximal or ex-umbrellar side, while on the sub-umbrellar side it remains open, and its edges grow out to form a manubrium. On each gastric

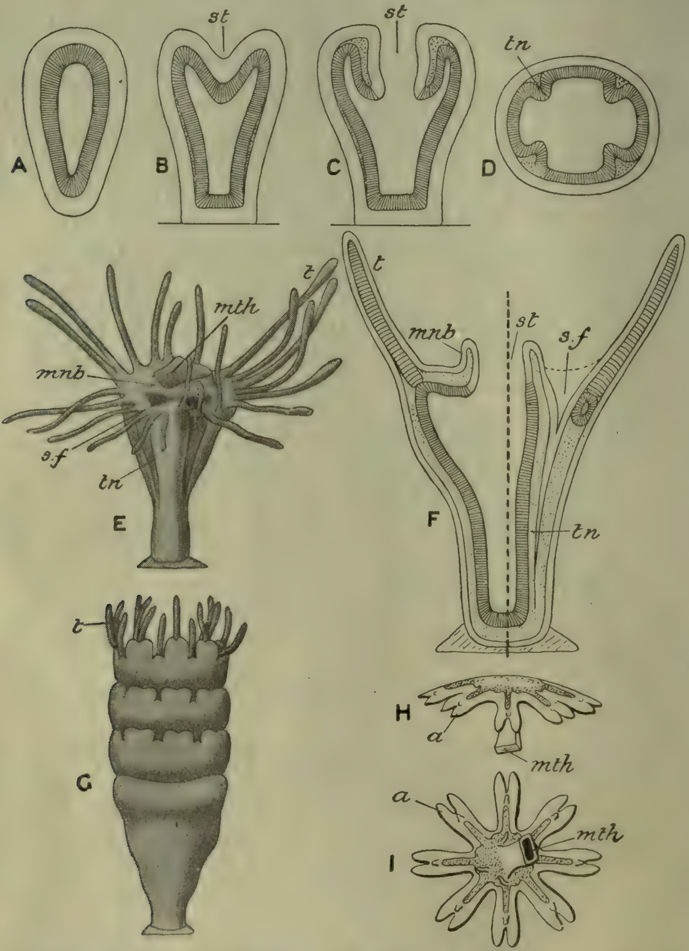


FIG. 116.—**Aurelia aurita,** development. A, planula; B, C, formation of stomodæum; D, transverse section of young Scyphula; E, Scyphula; F, longitudinal section of same: the section passes through a per-radius on the left of the dotted line, through an inter-radius on the right; G, division of Scyphula into ephyrulæ; H, ephyrula from the side; L, the same from beneath. In A—D and F the ectoderm is unshaded, the endoderm striated, and the mesoglœa dotted. *μ.* lobes of umbrella; *mnb.* manubrium; *mth.* mouth; *s.f.* septal funnel; *st.* stomodæum; *t.* tentacle; *tn.* tænioles. (From Korschelt and Heider's *Embryology.*)

ridge appears a single gastric filament, soon to be followed by others, and in the notches at the extremities of the eight arms tentaculocysts make their appearance. In the meantime the spacious enteric cavity is continued into the eight arms in the form of wide radiating canals.

As the ephyrula grows the adradial regions—at first deeply notched—grow more rapidly than the rest, the result being that the notches become gradually filled up, and the umbrella, from an eight-rayed star, becomes a nearly circular disc. Four oral arms are developed, and numerous marginal tentacles, and the ephyrula gradually assumes the form of the adult Aurelia. It seems probable that the sub-genital pits of the medusa are formed from sections of the septal funnels of the Scyphula.

Thus the life-history of Aurelia differs in several marked respects from that of any of the Hydrozoa. There is an alternation of generations, as in Obelia, the gamobium being represented by the adult Aurelia, the agamobium by the Scyphula. But instead of the medusa being developed either as a bud on a branched colony, as in Leptolinæ, or by direct metamorphosis of a polype, as in Trachylinæ, it is formed by the metamorphosis of an ephyrula developed as one of several transverse segments of a polype.

It has been shown that, under exceptional circumstances, the egg of Aurelia develops directly—*i.e.* without the interposition of a Scyphula-stage—into the adult medusa. As we shall see, this is the normal mode of development of many allied forms.

2. General Structure and Classification.

The Scyphozoa may be defined as medusoid Cœlenterata, having the same general structure and arrangement of the layers as the medusoid Hydrozoa, but differing from them in the possession of endodermal gastric tentacles; in having endodermal gonads discharging their products into the digestive cavity; and, in nearly all cases, by the absence of a velum, and in the presence of sense-organs in the form of hollow sense-clubs or tentaculocysts. How far a stomodæum or ectodermal gullet is characteristic of the group is uncertain. As in the Hydrozoa, the medusa develops directly from the egg in some species, while in others there is an alternation of generations, a polype-form (agamobium) giving rise to the medusa-form (gamobium) by a process of transverse fission. In the majority of cases, however, nothing is known of the life-history, the process of development having been worked out only in a few cases.

As far as is known the segmenting embryo gives rise to a gastrula by invagination: by the closure of the blastopore a planula is produced, at one end of which a second invagination takes place, forming the stomodæum.

The Scyphozoa are divisible into four orders, as follows:—

ORDER 1.—STAUROMEDUSÆ.

Scyphozoa having a conical or vase-shaped umbrella, sometimes attached to external objects by an ex-umbrellar peduncle: no tentaculocysts.

ORDER 2.—PEROMEDUSÆ.

Scyphozoa having a conical umbrella divided by a transverse constriction: four inter-radial tentaculocysts.

ORDER 3.—CUBOMEDUSÆ.

Scyphozoa with a four-sided cup-shaped umbrella: four per-radial tentaculocysts.

ORDER 4.—DISCOMEDUSÆ.

Scyphozoa with a flattened saucer- or disc-shaped umbrella: not fewer than eight tentaculocysts, four per- and four inter-radial.

Sub-Order a.—Cannostomæ.

Discomedusæ with a simple square mouth devoid of oral arms.

Sub-Order b.—Semostomæ.

Discomedusæ in which the square mouth is produced into four long oral arms.

Sub-Order c.—Rhizostomæ.

Discomedusæ having the mouth obliterated by the growth across it of the oral arms: the stomach is continued into canals which open by funnel-shaped apertures on the edges of the arms.

Systematic Position of the Example.

Aurelia aurita is one of several species of the genus *Aurelia*, and is placed in the family *Ulmaridæ*, the sub-order *Semostomæ*, and the order *Discomedusæ*.

Its saucer-shaped umbrella and eight tentaculocysts place it at once among the Discomedusæ: the presence of a distinct mouth surrounded by four oral arms excludes it from the first and third sub-orders of Discomedusæ and place it in the second sub-order or Semostomæ. The latter group contains six families, characterised mainly by differences in the canal-system: the Ulmaridæ are distinguished by narrow branched radial canals opening into a circular canal. Of the seven genera in this family, Aurelia stands alone in having its tentacles attached on the dorsal or ex-umbrellar side of the margin, and in the oral arms showing no trace of bifurcation. Eight species of Aurelia are recognised, *A. aurita* being distinguished by having the oral arms slightly shorter than the radius of the umbrella, and by having a trichotomous inter-radial canal and two unbranched adradial canals springing from each gastric pouch.

ORDER 1.—STAUROMEDUSÆ.

The simplest member of this order, and indeed of the whole class of Scyphozoa, is *Tessera* (Fig. 117), a small medusa about 4 mm. in diameter. It is interesting as having the same general characters as the Scyphula-stage of Aurelia, except that the bell-shaped body is free-swimming. The edge of the umbrella is surrounded by eight tentacles, four per- (*p.r. t*) and four inter-radial (*i.r. t.*), and movement is effected by a well-developed system of circular and radial muscles. The simplicity of the genus is well shown in the total absence of sense-organs. The manubrium (*mnb.*) leads into a spacious stomach (*st.*), from which four wide per-radial pouches are continued into the umbrella, and are connected with one another by a spacious cavity passing round its margin and called the circular sinus. There are only four gastric filaments (*g. f.*), one springing from each of the four inter-radial gastric ridges or tænioles (*tn.*). The gonads (*gon.*) are horseshoe-shaped, with their concavities directed towards the margin of the umbrella.

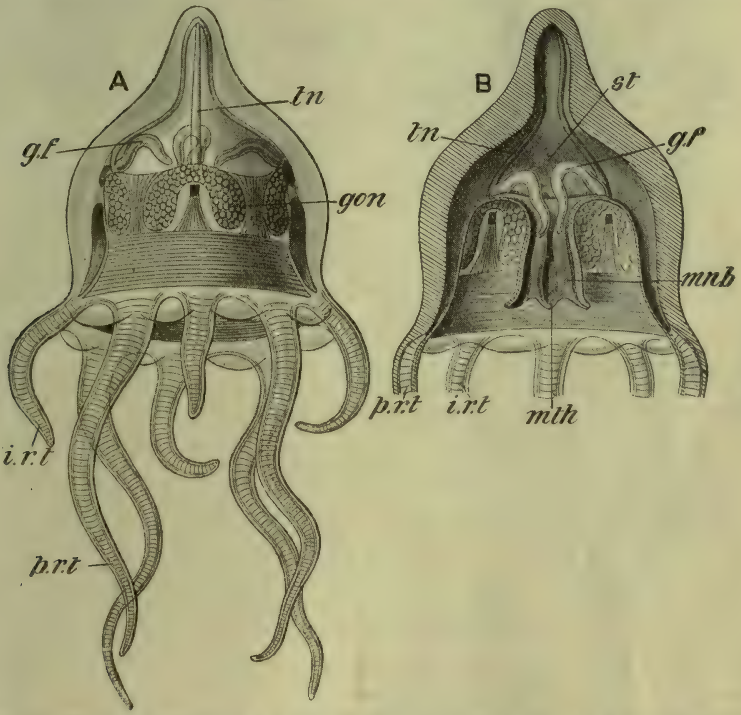


FIG. 117.—**Tessera princeps.** A, external view; B, vertical section; *g. f.* gastric filament; *gon.* gonad; *i.r. t.* inter-radial tentacle; *mnb.* manubrium; *mth.* mouth; *p.r. t.* per-radial tentacle; *st.* stomach; *tn.* tæniole. (After Haeckel.)

Lucernaria (Fig. 118), a genus not uncommon on the British coasts, is in one respect even more like a Scyphula, since it is attached by a peduncle developed from the centre of the ex-umbrella. The margin of the umbrella is prolonged into eight short hollow adradial arms, bearing at their ends groups of short adhesive tentacles (*t.*). As in the Scyphula, each gastric ridge contains an infundibulum, lined with ectoderm and opening on the sub-umbrella. The gastric filaments (*g. f.*) are very numerous—a distinct advance on Tessera—and the gonads (*gon.*) are band-like. There are no sense-organs in Lucernaria, but in an allied genus degenerate tentaculocysts are present.

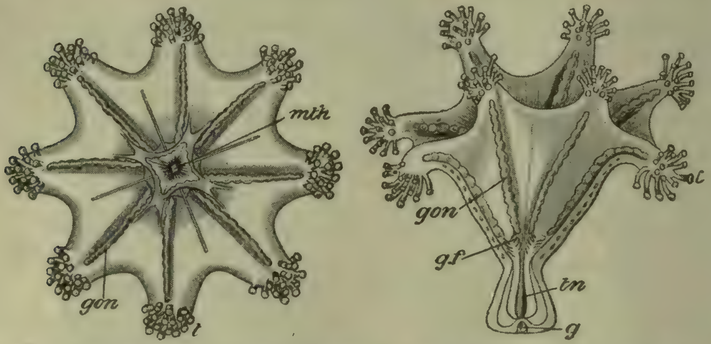


Fig. 118.—**Lucernaria.** A, oral aspect ; B, from the side ; *g.* foot-gland ; *g. f.* gastric filaments *gon.* gonad ; *mth.* mouth ; *t.* tentacles ; *tn.* tænioles. (After Claus.)

ORDER 2.—PEROMEDUSÆ.

This group includes a small number of rare and beautiful Medusæ of curiously complex structure, of which *Pericolpa* may be taken as an example. The umbrella (Fig. 119) is always conical, and is divided by a horizontal furrow into an apical region or *cone* (*cn.*) and a marginal region or *crown;* the crown is again divided by a second, rather irregular horizontal furrow into a series of *pedal lobes* (*pd. l.*), adjacent to the cone, and a series of *marginal lappets* (*mg. lp.*), forming the free edge of the bell.

Four of the pedal lobes, inter-radial in position, bear tentaculocysts (*tc.*), four others, per-radially situated, give origin to long, hollow tentacles (*t.*). In the more complex genera there are eight additional adradial tentacles.

The mouth (*mth.*) is very large, and leads by a wide manubrium (*mnb.*) into a spacious stomach (*st.*), which is continued quite to the apex of the cone. In the wall of the stomach are four wide per-radial slits, leading into an immense circular sinus (*circ. s.*). As in Lucernaria, there are four wide inter-radial infundibula. The gastric filaments (*g. f.*) are very numerous, and the elongated U-shaped gonads (*gon.*) are eight in number and adradial.

ORDER 3.—CUBOMEDUSÆ.

The Jelly-fishes forming this order are, as the name implies, of a more or less cubical form, resembling a deep bell with somewhat flattened top and square transverse section. They resemble the hydrozoan Medusæ more than any of the other Scyphozoa. The best known species, *Charybdæa marsupialis* (Fig. 120), is about 5 cm. in diameter and of very firm consistency.

As in the lower Peromedusæ, the margin of the umbrella bears four tentacles (*t.*) and four tentaculocysts (*tc.*), but the position of these organs is reversed, the tentaculocysts being per-radial, the tentacles inter-radial. The tentaculocysts are set in deep marginal notches, and the tentacles spring from conspicuous gelatinous lobes (*l.*), which probably answer to the pedal lobes of the preceding order.

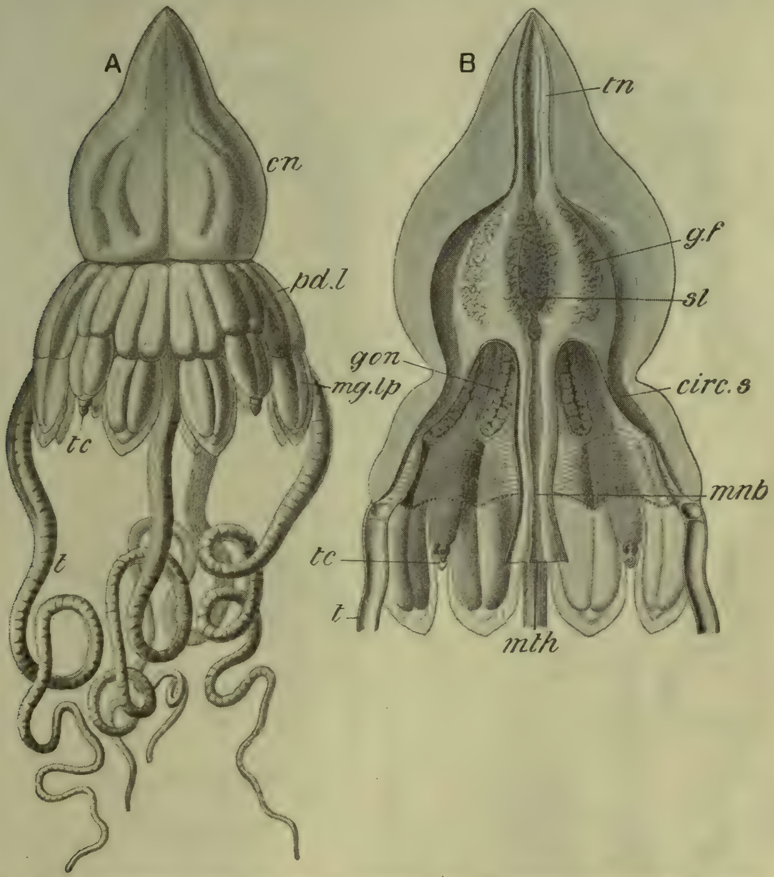


FIG. 119.—**Pericolpa quadrigata.** A, external view; B, vertical section; *circ. s.* circular sinus; *cn.* cone; *g. f.* gastric filaments; *gon.* gonads; *mg. lp.* marginal lappets; *mnb.* manubrium; *mth.* mouth; *pd. l.* pedal lobes; *st.* stomach; *t.* tentacles; *tc.* tentaculocysts; *tn.* tænioles. (After Haeckel.)

The margin of the umbrella is produced, in most cases but not in all, into a horizontal shelf (*vl.*), resembling the velum of the hydroid Medusæ, but differing from it in containing a series of branched vessels (*end. lam'.*) continuous with the canal-system, and of course lined with endoderm. In the Hydrozoa, it will be remembered, the velum is formed simply of a double layer of ectoderm with a supporting layer of mesoglœa. Owing to this fundamental difference, the velum-like organ of the Cubomedusæ is distinguished as the *velarium.*

The mouth is situated at the end of a short manubrium (*mnb.*) leading into a wide stomach, from which go off four very broad per-radial pouches (*rad. p.*), occupying the whole of the four flat sides of the umbrella, and separated from one another by narrow inter-radial septa or partitions placed at the four corners. These pouches are equivalent to wide radial canals, and the partitions between them to a poorly developed endoderm lamella (*end. lam.*). At the margin of the umbrella the pouches communicate with one another by apertures in the septa, so that a kind of circular canal is produced (*circ. c.*). Near the junction of the gastric pouches with the stomach are the usual four groups of gastric filaments (*g. f.*).

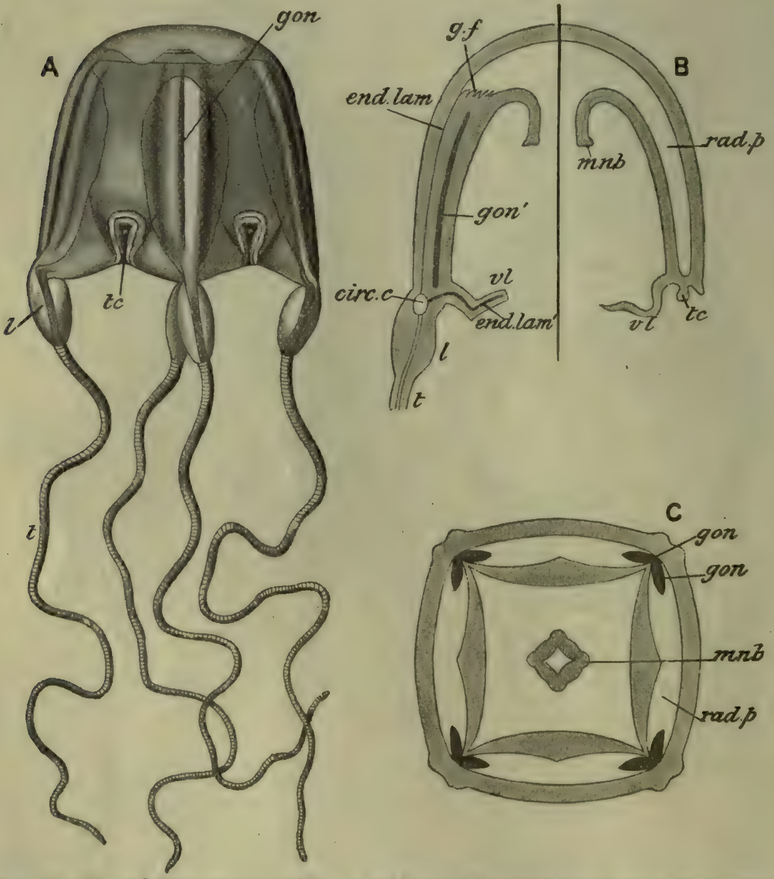


FIG. 120.—**Charybdæa marsupialis.** A, side view of the entire animal; B, vertical section passing on the left side through an inter-radius, on the right through a per-radius; C, transverse section; *circ. c.* circular canal; *end. lam.* endoderm lamella; *end. lam'.* its prolongation into the velarium; *g. f.* gastric filaments; *gon.* gonad; *gon'.* septum separating gonads; *l.* lappet; *mnb.* manubrium; *rad. p.* radial pouch; *t.* tentacle; *tc.* tentaculocyst; *vl.* velarium. (After Claus, somewhat altered.)

The gonads (*gon.*) are four pairs of narrow plate-like organs, attached one along each side of each inter-radial septum. The nervous system takes the form of a sinuous nerve-ring round the margin of the bell, bearing a distinct group of nerve-cells at the base of each tentaculocyst and tentacle. The Cubomedusæ are the only Scyphozoa which, like the Hydrozoa, have a complete nerve-ring. The tentaculocysts are very complex, each bearing a lithocyst and several eye-spots.

ORDER 4.—DISCOMEDUSÆ.

The preceding orders are all small ones, *i.e.* include a small number of genera and species. The vast majority of Scyphozoa belong to the present order—the "Disc-jellies" or "Sea-blubbers" as ordinarily understood.

The umbrella is always comparatively flat, having the form of an inverted saucer. The edge is produced primitively into eight pairs of marginal lappets, but in some of the more highly differentiated forms the number both of lappets and of tentaculocysts becomes greatly increased. Many of the species belonging to the lowest sub-order—the Cannostomæ—are small, not exceeding a few millimetres in diameter, but most of the Semostomæ and Rhizostomæ are large, and one of the former group—*Cyanea arctica*—may attain a diameter of 2 metres and upwards, while its marginal tentacles reach the astonishing length of 40 metres, or about 130 feet. But in spite of their size and apparent solidity, the amount of solid matter in these great Jelly-fishes is extraordinarily small; some of them have been proved to contain more than 99 per cent. of sea-water.

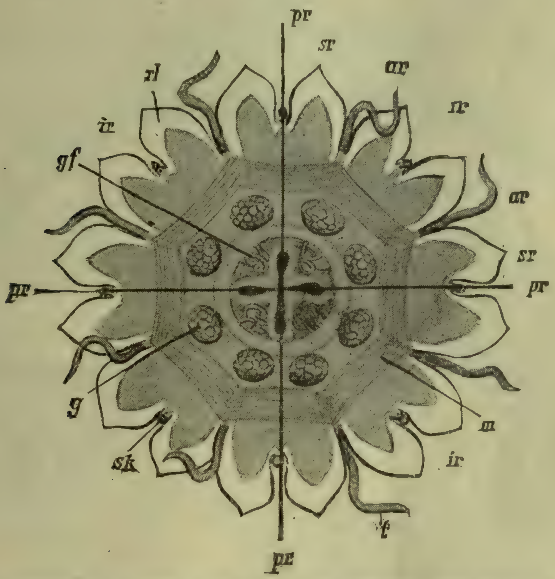


FIG. 121.—**Nausithoe.** The entire animal from the oral aspect. *ar.* adradii; *g.* gonads; *g. f.* gastric filaments; *ir.* inter-radii; *m.* circular muscle of sub-umbrella; *pr.* per-radii; *rl.* tentaculocysts; *sr.* sub-radii; *t.* tentacles. The black cross in the centre represents the mouth. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy.*)

The marginal tentacles are short and solid in the Cannostomæ (Fig. 121), hollow and often of great length in the Semostomæ (Fig. 113), and altogether absent in the Rhizostomæ (Fig. 122). The oral arms are absent in the Cannostomæ (Fig. 121), where there is a single square or four-rayed mouth: in the Semostomæ there are four oral arms (Fig. 113, *or. a.*), each resembling a leaf folded along its midrib, and having more or less frilled edges: in the Rhizostomæ each of the original four arms (Fig. 122, *or. a.*) becomes divided longitudinally in the course of development, the adult members of the group being characterised by the presence of eight arms, often of great length, and variously lobed and folded so as to present a more or less root-like appearance.

The arrangement of the enteric cavity and its offshoots presents an interesting series of modifications. In the Cannostomæ (Fig. 121) the resemblance to the Ephyrula-stage of Aurelia is very close, the stomach giving off eight pouches which bifurcate and enter the marginal lappets. In the Semostomæ (Fig. 113) the stomach lobes give off well-defined radial canals, which are frequently more or less branched, often unite into complex networks, and sometimes open into a circular canal round the margin of the umbrella.

In the Rhizostomæ (Fig. 122, B) a similar network of canals is found in the umbrella, but an extraordinary change has befallen the oral or ingestive portion of the enteric system. Looking at the oral or lower surface of one of these Jellyfishes, such as *Pilema*, no mouth is to be seen, but a careful examination of the oral arms shows the presence of large numbers—hundreds, or even thousands in some cases—of small funnel-like apertures (B, C, *s.mth.*) with frilled margins. Rhizostomes have been found with prey of considerable size, such as fishes, embraced by the arms and partly drawn into these apertures, which are therefore called the *suctorial mouths*. They lead into canals in the thickness of the arms (B, *c.*), the lesser canals unite into larger, and then finally open into the stomach (*st.*). We thus get a *polystomatous* or many-mouthed condition which is practically unique in the animal kingdom, the only parallel to it being furnished by the Sponges, in which the inhalant pores are roughly comparable with the suctorial mouths of a Rhizostome.

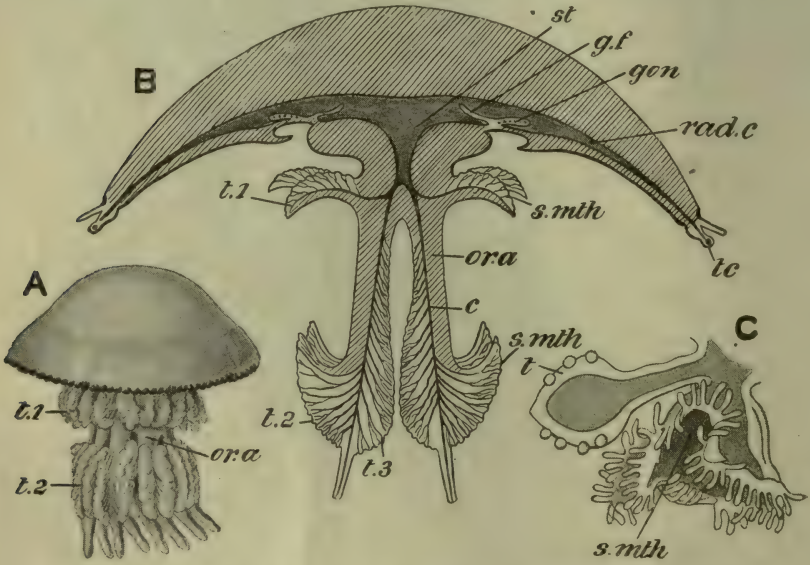


FIG 122.—**Pilema pulmo.** A, side view of the entire animal; B, vertical section, diagrammatic; C, one of the suctorial mouths, magnified; *c.* arm canal; *g. f.* gastric filaments; *gon.* gonads; *or. a.* oral arms; *rad. c.* radial canal; *s. mth.* suctorial mouths; *st.* stomach; *t1, t2, t3*, tentacles on oral arms. (After Cuvier, Claus, and Huxley.)

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

It has been found that this characteristic arrangement is brought about by certain changes taking place during growth. The young Rhizostome has a single mouth in the usual position, and more or less leaf-like arms, folded along the midrib so as to enclose a deep groove, from which secondary grooves pass, like the veins of a leaf, towards the edge of the arm. As development proceeds, these grooves become converted into canals by the union of their edges, thus forming a system of branching tubes opening proximally into the angles of the mouth and distally by small apertures—the suctorial mouths—on the edges of the arms. At the same time the proximal ends of the arms grow towards one another and finally unite across the mouth, closing it completely, and forming a strong horizontal *brachial disc*, which in the adult occupies the centre of the sub-umbrellar surface.

In *Ephyra*, the lowest of the Cannostomæ, only four gastric filaments are present, as in Tessera (p. 165) or a newly liberated Ephyrula (p. 163), but as a rule these characteristic structures are very numerous. The lower forms, also, have no sub-genital pouches, or indeed anything corresponding to the septal funnels of the preceding orders. In the higher Rhizostomæ a remarkable modification is produced in connection with these cavities: the four pouches approach the centre and fuse with one another, forming a single spacious chamber, the *sub-genital portico*, which lies immediately below the floor of the stomach and above the brachial disc.

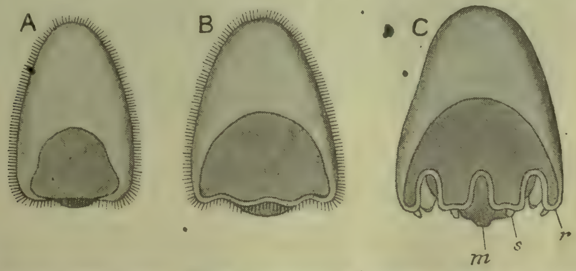


FIG. 123.—**Pelagia noctiluca**: Three developmental stages. *m.* mouth; *r.* marginal lappet; *s.* tentaculocyst. (From Korschelt and Heider, after Krohn.)

In many of the Discomedusæ development takes place in the same general way as in Aurelia, *i.e.* the impregnated egg gives rise to a Scyphula or asexual polype stage, which, by transverse division, produces sexual medusæ. But in other cases there is no alternation of generations, and development is direct. For instance, in *Pelagia* (Fig. 123)—one of the Semostomæ—a blastula is formed which becomes invaginated at one end, forming a gastrula. The blastopore or gastrula-mouth remains open, and a considerable space is left between the invaginated endoderm and the ectoderm. Next the mouth region becomes elevated, forming a manubrium, and around this a circular depression appears—the rudiment of the sub-umbrellar cavity—surrounded by a raised ridge, the umbrella margin, which soon becomes divided into lobes, the marginal lappets. Up to this time the embryo is ciliated externally, but soon the cilia disappear, and the little creatures assume somewhat the form of an Ephyrula, which gradually develops into the adult Pelagia.

ADDITIONAL REMARKS ON THE SCYPHOZOA.

The Scyphozoa are all marine, and the majority are pelagic, *i.e.* swim freely on the surface of the ocean. A few inhabit the deep sea, and have been dredged from as great a depth as 2,000 fathoms.

Nearly all are free-swimming in the adult state: some, however, live on coral-reefs or mud-banks, and are found resting, in an inverted position, on the ex-umbrella: and a few, such as Lucernaria, are able to attach themselves at will by a definite ex-umbrellar peduncle.

Considering the extremely perishable nature of these organisms, and the fact that many of them contain not more than 1 per cent. of solid matter, it is not to be expected that many of them should have left traces of their existence in the fossil state. Nevertheless, in the finely grained limestone of Solenhofen, in Bavaria, belonging to the Upper Jurassic period, remarkably perfect impressions of Jelly-fishes have been found, some of them readily recognisable as Discomedusæ.

Many of the Scyphozoa are semi-transparent and glassy, but often with brilliantly coloured gonads, tentacles, or radial canals. In many cases the umbrella, oral arms, &c., are highly coloured, and some species, *e.g.* Pelagia noctiluca, are phosphorescent. They are all carnivorous, and although mostly living upon small organisms, are able, in the case of the larger species, to capture and digest Crustaceans and Fishes of considerable size.

CLASS III.—ACTINOZOA

1. EXAMPLE OF THE CLASS—A SEA-ANEMONE (*Tealia crassicornis*).

Sea-anemones are amongst the most abundant and best known of shore-animals. They are found attached to rocks, sea-weeds, shells, &c., either in rock-pools or on rocks left high and dry by the ebbing tide. Usually their flower-like form and brilliant colour make them very conspicuous objects, but many kinds cover themselves more or less completely with sand and stones, and contract so much when left uncovered by water, that they appear like soft shapeless lumps stuck over with stones, and thus easily escape observation. Any of the numerous species will serve as an example of the group: the form specially selected is the "Dahlia Wartlet" (*Tealia crassicornis*), one of the commonest British species.

External characters.—Tealia (Fig. 124, A) has the form of a cylinder, the diameter of which slightly exceeds its height. It is often as much as 3 inches (8 cm.) across, is of a green or red colour, and habitually covers itself with bits of shell, small stones, &c. It is attached to a rock or other support by a broad sole-like *base*, sharply separated from an upright cylindrical wall or *column*, the surface of which is beset with rows of adhesive warts or tubercles: at its upper or distal end the column passes into a horizontal plate, the *disc* or *peristome*. In the middle of the disc, and slightly elevated above its surface, is an elongated slit-like aperture, the

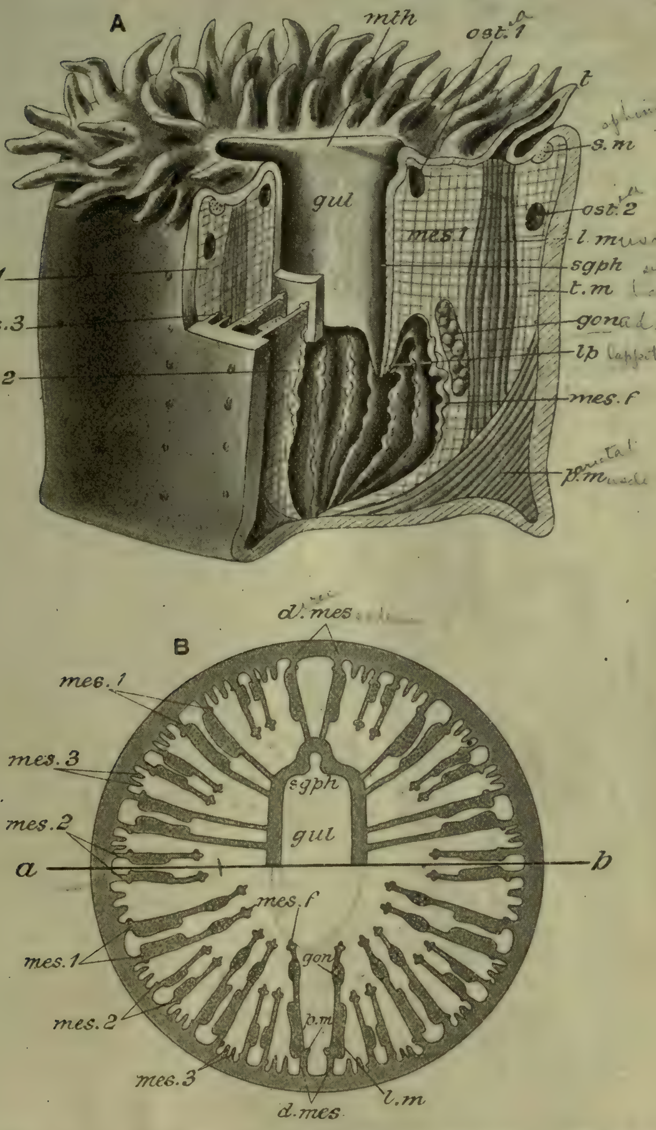

A
mth
ost. 1
a
t
sphincter muscle
s. m
ost. 2
ia
l. muscle
sgph
siphonoglyphe
t. m
transverse mu
gonads
lp
lappet
mes. f
parietal
p. m
muscle
gul
mes. 1
mes. 1
mes. 3
mes. 2
B
d. mes
mes. 1
mes. 3
mes. 2
a
b
sgph
gul
mes. f
gon
mes. 1
mes. 2
p. m
mes. 3
l. m
d. mes

FIG. 124.—**Tealia crassicornis.** A, dissected specimen; B, transverse section, the half above the line *ab* through the gullet, the lower half below the gullet; *d. mes.* directive mesenteries; *gon.* gonads; *gul.* gullet; *l. m.* longitudinal muscle; *lp.* lappet; *mes. 1*, primary; *mes. 2*, secondary; *mes. 3*, tertiary mesenteries; *mes. f.* mesenteric filaments; *mth.* mouth; *ost. 1*, *ost. 2*, ostia; *p. m.* parietal muscle; *sgph.* siphonoglyphe; *s. m.* sphincter muscle; *t. m.* transverse muscle.

mouth (*mth.*), from which streaks of colour radiate outwards. Springing from the disc and encircling the mouth are numerous short conical *tentacles* (*t.*), which appear at first sight to be arranged irregularly, but are actually disposed in five circlets, of which the innermost contains five, the next five, the third ten, the fourth twenty, and the fifth or outermost forty, making a total of eighty.

Obviously the Sea-anemone is a *polype*, formed on the same general lines as a Hydra or a Scyphula, but differing from them in having numerous tentacles arranged in multiples of five, and in the absence of a hypostome, the mouth being nearly flush with the surface of the disc. Its great size and bulk, and the comparative firmness of its substance, are also striking points of difference between Tealia and the polypes belonging to the classes Hydrozoa and Scyphozoa.

Enteric System.—Still more fundamental differences are found when we come to consider the internal structure. The mouth does not lead at once into a spacious undivided enteric cavity, but into a short tube (*gul.*), having the form of a flattened cylinder, which hangs downwards into the interior of the body, and terminates in a free edge, produced at each end of the long diameter into a descending lobe or *lappet* (*lp.*). This tube is the *gullet* or *stomodæum*, a structure we have already met with in the Scyphozoa, but which here attains a far greater size and importance. Its inner surface is marked with two longitudinal grooves (A and B, *sgph.*), placed one at each end of the long diameter, and therefore corresponding with the lappets: they are known as the gullet-grooves or *siphonoglyphes.*

The gullet does not simply hang freely in the enteric cavity, but is connected with the body-wall by a number of radiating partitions, the complete or *primary mesenteries* (*mes. 1*): between these are incomplete *secondary mesenteries* (*mes. 2*), which extend only part of the way from the body-wall to the gullet, and *tertiary mesenterics* (*mes. 3*), which are hardly more than ridges on the inner surface of the body-wall. Thus the entire internal cavity of a Sea-anemone is divisible into three regions: (1) the *gullet* or *stomodæum*, communicating with the exterior by the mouth, and opening below into (2) a single main digestive cavity, the *stomach* or *mesenteron*, which gives off (3) a number of radially arranged cavities, the *inter-mesenteric chambers* or *metentera.* It is obvious that we may compare the gullet and stomach with the similarly named structures in the Scyphula-stage of Aurelia, and the mesenteries with the gastric ridges; indeed, there seems to be little doubt that these structures are severally homologous. A further correspondence is furnished by the presence of an aperture or *ostium* (*ost. 1*) in each mesentery, placing the adjacent inter-mesenteric chambers in direct communication with one another: in Tealia a second ostium (*ost. 2*) is present near the outer edge of the mesentery. Moreover, the free edge of the mesentery below the gullet is produced into a curious twisted cord, the *mesenteric filament* (*mes. f.*), answering to the gastric filaments of the Scyphozoa.

The general arrangement of the **cell-layers** is the same as in the two preceding classes. The body-wall (Fig. 125)—base, column, and disc—consists of a layer of ectoderm outside, one of endoderm within, and between them an intermediate layer or mesoglœa, which is extremely thick and tough. The gullet (*gul.*), which, like that of the Scyphula, is an in-turned portion of the body-wall, is lined with ectoderm, and its outer surface—*i.e.* that facing the inter-mesenteric chambers—is endodermal. The mesenteries (*mes.*) consist of a supporting plate of mesoglœa, covered on both sides by endoderm. The tentacles (*t*) are hollow out-pushings of the disc, and contain the same layers.

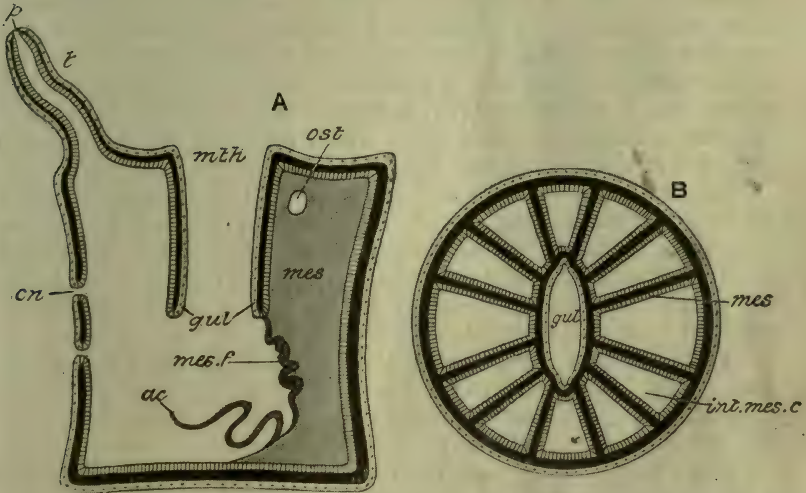


FIG. 125.—Diagrammatic vertical (A) and transverse (B) sections of a **Sea-anemone.** The ectoderm is dotted, the endoderm striated, the mesoglœa black. *ac.* acontium; *cn.* cinclis; *gul.* gullet; *int. mes. c.* inter-mesenteric chamber; *mes.* mesentery; *mes. f.* mesenteric filament; *mth.* mouth; *ost.* ostium; *p.* pore; *t.* tentacle.

Muscular System.—Sea-anemones perform various characteristic movements: the column may be extended or retracted, the tentacles extended to a considerable length, or drawn back and completely hidden by the upper end of the column being folded over them like the mouth of a bag; the gullet, and even the mesenteries, may be partially everted through the mouth; and lastly, the whole animal is able, very slowly, to change its position by creeping movements of its base.

These movements are performed by means of a very well-developed set of *muscles.* A mesentery examined from the surface is seen to be traversed by definite fibrous bands, the two most obvious of which are the *longitudinal* or *retractor muscle* (Fig. 124, *l.m.*), running as a narrow band from base to disc, and the *parietal muscle* (*p.m.*), passing obliquely across the lower and outer angle of the mesentery. Both these muscles are very thick, and cause a projection or bulging on one side of the mesentery, specially obvious in a transverse section (B. *l.m.*): a third set of fibres, forming the *transverse muscle* (*t.m.*), crosses the longitudinal set at right angles, but is not specially prominent. The longitudinal muscles shorten the mesentery, and draw the disc downwards or towards the base, thus retracting the tentacles; the parietal muscles approximate the column to the base, and the transverse fibres produce a narrowing of the mesentery, and thus, opposing the action of the longitudinal muscles, act as extensors of the whole body. The withdrawal of disc and tentacles, during complete retraction, has been compared to the closure of a bag by tightening the string, and is performed in much the same way, the string being represented by a very strong band of fibres, the *circular* or *sphincter muscle* (*s.m.*), which encircles the body at the junction of the column and disc.

The foregoing muscles can all be seen by the naked eye, or under a low magnifying power. They are supplemented by fibres, only to be made out by microscopic examination, occurring both in the body-wall and in the tentacles. The latter organs, for instance, are able to perform independent movements of extension and retraction by means of delicate transverse and longitudinal fibres.

It was mentioned above that the thickness of the longitudinal and parietal muscles produces a bulging on one surface of the mesenteries. A transverse section shows that the arrangement of the mesenteries and of their muscles is very definite and characteristic (Fig. 124, B). At each end of the gullet, opposite the siphonoglyphe, are two mesenteries (*d. mes.*), having their longitudinal muscles turned away from one another: they are distinguished as the *directive mesenteries,* and, in the case of Tealia, there are two *couples* of directive mesenteries, one at each end of the long axis of the gullet. Of the remaining complete or primary mesenteries there are four couples on each side (*mes. 1*), differing from the directive couples in having the longitudinal muscles turned towards one another. The secondary and tertiary mesenteries (*mes. 2*, *mes. 3*) are also arranged in couples, and in all of them the longitudinal muscles of each couple face one another.

Symmetry.—It will be noticed that Tealia, unlike the typical hydrozoan and scyphozoan polypes, presents a distinct *bilateral symmetry*, underlying, as it were, its superficial radial symmetry. It is divisible into equal and similar halves by two planes only, viz. a *vertical plane* taken through the long diameter of the gullet, and a *transverse plane* taken through its short diameter.

The general **microscopic structure** of a Sea-anemone is well shown by a section through a tentacle (Fig. 126). Both ectoderm (*ect.*) and endoderm (*end.*) consist mainly of very long columnar, ciliated, epithelial cells, and the mesoglœa (*msgl.*) is not only extremely thick, but has the general characters of connective tissue, being traversed by a network of delicate fibres with interspersed cells. The middle layer has, in fact, ceased to be a mere gelatinous supporting lamella or *mesoglœa*, and has assumed, to a far greater extent than in any of the lower groups, the characters of an intermediate cell-layer or *mesoderm*.

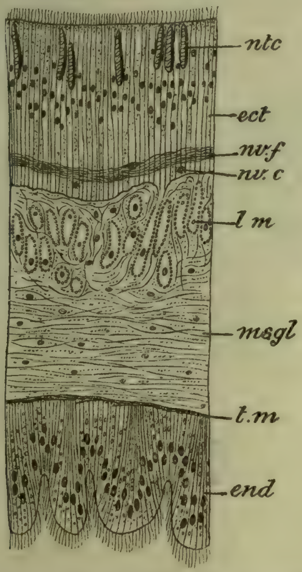


Fig. 126.—**Tealia crassicornis.** Transverse section of tentacle. *ect.* ectoderm; *end.* endoderm; *l.m.* longitudinal muscles; *msgl.* mesoglœa; *nv.c.* nerve cells; *nv.f.* nerve fibres; *ntc.* nematocysts; *t.m.* transverse muscles. (After Hertwig.)

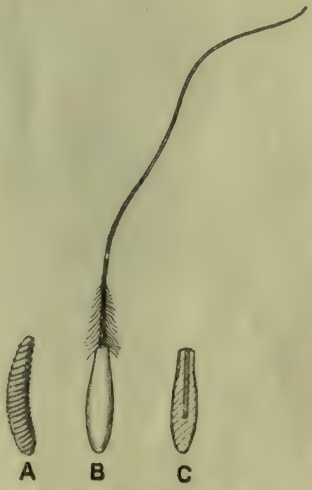


Fig. 127.—Three nematocysts of **Sagartia.** (After Hertwig.)

Stinging-capsules occur in the ectoderm, and are also very abundant in the mesenteric filaments. They (Fig. 127) resemble in general characters the nematocysts of Hydrozoa, but are of a more elongated form, and the thread is usually provided at the base with very numerous slender barbs (B). Very frequently the coiled thread is readily seen in the undischarged capsule (A). Gland-cells (Fig. 128, *gl.*) are very abundant in the ectodermal lining of the gullet and in the mesenteric filaments: the latter are trilobed in section, and the gland-cells are confined to the middle portion, the lateral divisions being invested with ordinary ciliated cells (*c.*). In virtue of possessing both stinging-capsules and gland-cells, the mesenteric filaments perform a double function. The animal is very voracious, and is able to capture and swallow small Fishes, Molluscs, Sea-urchins, &c. The prey is partly paralysed, before ingestion, by the nematocysts of the tentacles, but the process is completed, after swallowing, by those of the mesenteric filaments. Then as the captured animal lies in the stomach, the edges of the filaments come into close contact with one another and practically surround it, pouring out, at the same time, a digestive juice secreted by their gland-cells.

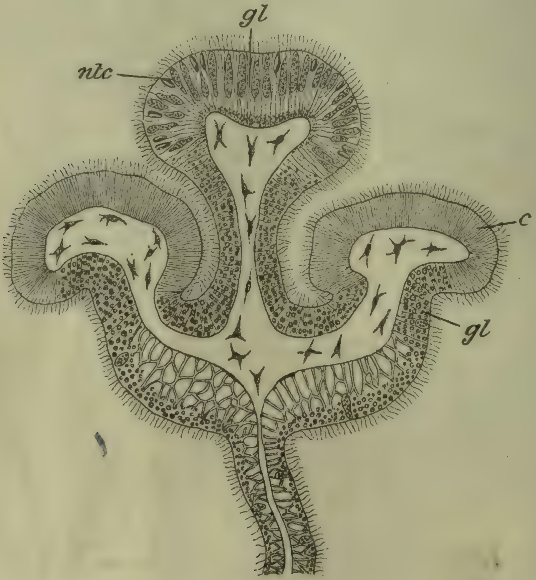


FIG. 128.—Transverse section of mesenteric filament of **Sagartia**. *c.* ciliated cells; *gl.* gland-cells; *ntc.* nematocysts. (After Hertwig.)

The muscles described above consist partly of spindle-shaped nucleated fibres, and partly of muscle-processes, like those of Hydra: the latter occur chiefly in the transverse muscular layer of the tentacles and are endodermal, the longitudinal layer is formed of distinct fibres of ectodermal origin: the great muscles of the mesenteries are of course endodermal. Although always derived either from the ectoderm or endoderm, many of the muscle-fibres of Tealia undergo a remarkable change of position by becoming sunk in the mesoglœa, and thus appearing to belong to that layer (Fig. 126, *l. m.*). This fact is significant from the circumstance that, as we shall see, the muscles of all animals above Cœlenterata are mesodermal structures.

The **nervous system** is very simple. It consists of a layer of delicate fibres lying between the epithelial and muscular layers of the ectoderm. Among the fibres are found nerve-cells (Fig. 126, *nv.c.*), often of large size, and occurring chiefly in the disc and tentacles. Thus, as in the polype-forms previously described, the nervous system is in a generalised condition, and shows no concentration into a definite central nervous system such as occurs in Medusæ.

Reproductive organs.—Sea-anemones are diœcious, the sexes being lodged in distinct individuals. The gonads—ovaries or testes —are developed in the substance of the mesenteries (Fig. 124, *gon.*), a short distance from the edge, and, when mature, often form very noticeable structures. The reproductive products are obviously, as in the Scyphozoa, endodermal. The sperms, when ripe, are discharged into the stomach and escape by the mouth: they are then carried, partly by their own movements, partly by ciliary action, down the gullet of a female, where they find their way to the ovaries and impregnate the eggs.

The **development** of Sea-anemones resembles, in its main features, that of Scyphozoa. The oosperm undergoes more or less regular division, the details differing considerably in individual cases, and becomes converted into a *planula*, an elongated ovoidal body with an outer layer of ciliated ectoderm, and an inner layer of large endoderm cells, surrounding a closed enteric cavity, usually filled with a mass of yolk, which serves as a store of nutriment.

In this condition the embryo escapes from the parent, through the mouth, swims about for a time, and then settles down, becoming attached by its broader or anterior end. At the opposite or narrow end a pit appears, the rudiment of the stomodæum; this deepens and, its lower or blind end becoming perforated, effects a communication with the enteron.

The mesenteries are developed in regular order, but in a way which would certainly not be suspected from their arrangement in the adult. First of all, a single pair of mesenteries (Fig. 129, A, *1*) grow from the body-wall to the gullet, being situated one on each side of the vertical plane, at right angles to the long diameter of the stomodæum, and near one end of that tube. The enteron thus becomes divided into two chambers, a larger or *dorsal* and a smaller or *ventral*, and the embryo acquires a distinct bilateral symmetry. Next a pair of mesenteries (*2*) appear in the dorsal chamber, dividing it into a median and two lateral compartments; then a third pair (*3*) in the ventral chamber, producing a similar division; then a fourth pair (*4*) in the middle compartment of the dorsal chamber; then a fifth pair (B, *5*) in the lateral compartments of the dorsal chamber; and a sixth (*6*) in the lateral compartments of the ventral chamber. Soon the longitudinal muscles are developed, and the fate of these primitive pairs of mesenteries can be seen. The third and fourth pairs become the two directive couples of the adult; another couple of primary mesenteries is constituted, on each side of the vertical plane, by one of the mesenteries of the first and one of the sixth pair ; a third couple is similarly formed by a mesentery of the second and one of the fifth pair. Thus it is only in the case of the directive mesenteries that an adult couple coincides with an embryonic pair : in other instances the two mesenteries of a couple are of different orders, belonging to distinct embryonic pairs.

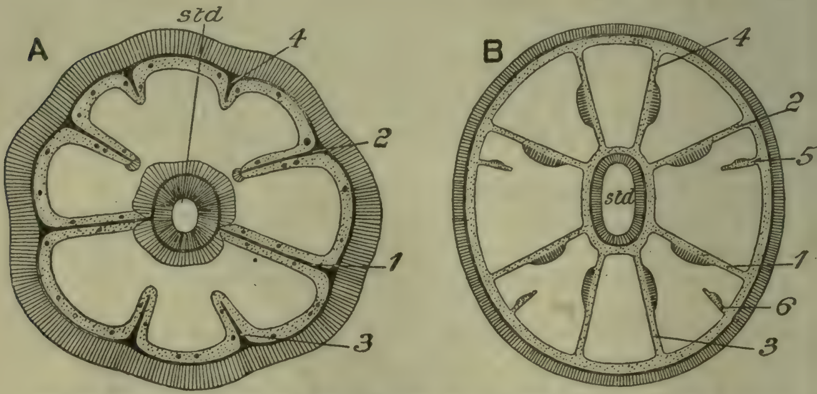


FIG. 129.—Transverse sections of early (A) and later (B) stages of an embryo Sea-anemone (**Actinia**.) The mesenteries are numbered in the order of their development ; *std*. stomodæum. (After Korschelt and Heider.)

The tentacles are developed in a somewhat similar order. The first to make its appearance is connected with the larger or dorsal enteric chamber mentioned above : for some time it remains much longer than any of its successors, and thus accentuates in a marked degree the bilateral symmetry of the embryo.

It will be noticed that the development of the Sea-anemone is accompanied by a well-marked metamorphosis, but that there is no alternation of generations. In this respect its life-history offers a marked contrast with that of Obelia or of Aurelia.

2. DISTINCTIVE CHARACTERS AND CLASSIFICATION.

The Actinozoa are Cœlenterata which exist only in the polype-form, no medusa-stage being known in any member of the class. The actinozoan differs from the hydrozoan polype mainly in possessing a stomodæum the relative size and physiological importance of which are far greater than in the Scyphozoa, the first group in which this structure is met with : it differs from both hydrozoan and scyphozoan polypes in the possession of mesenteries or vertical radiating partitions, which extend inwards from the body-wall, and in some cases join the stomodæum. The free margins of the mesenteries bear coiled mesenteric filaments, which appear to answer to the gastric filaments of Scyphozoa, but may be partly ectodermal in origin. The mesenteries are developed in pairs symmetrically on each side of a vertical plane: their final radial position is secondary.

The body-wall consists of ectoderm and endoderm separated by a stout mesoglœa containing fibres and cells. The stomodæum consists of the same layers reversed—*i.e.* its lining membrane is ectodermal. The mesenteries are formed of a double layer of endoderm with a supporting plate of mesoglœa. Nematocysts, frequently of a more complex form than those of Hydrozoa and Scyphozoa, are present in the tentacles, body-wall, stomodæum, and mesenteric filaments. The muscular system is well developed, and contains both ectodermal and endodermal fibres and endodermal muscle-processes. The nervous system consists of irregularly disposed cells and fibres; there is no concentration of these elements to form a central nervous system.

The gonads are developed in the mesenteries, the sex-cells are endodermal, and the ripe sexual products are discharged into the enteron. The impregnated egg develops into a planula, which, after a short free existence, settles down and undergoes metamorphosis into the adult form. Except in one doubtful instance there is no alternation of generations.

In some Actinozoa the animal remains simple throughout life, but in most members of the class an extensive process of budding takes place, the result being the formation of colonies of very various form and often of great size. Some kinds, again, resemble Tealia in having no hard parts or skeletal structures of any kind; but the majority possess a skeleton, formed either of carbonate of lime or of a horn-like or chitinoid material, and developed, in most cases though not in all, from the ectoderm.

The Actinozoa are classified as follows:—

Sub-Class I.—Zoantharia.

Actinozoa in which the tentacles and mesenteries are usually very numerous and are arranged, as a rule, in multiples of five or six. The tentacles are usually simple, unbranched, hollow cones. There are commonly two siphonoglyphes and two pairs of directive mesenteries: the remaining mesenteries are usually arranged in couples with the longitudinal muscles of each couple facing one another.

ORDER 1.—ACTINIARIA.

Zoantharia which usually remain simple, but in a few instances form small colonies. The tentacles and mesenteries are numerous, and there is no skeleton. This order includes the Sea-anemones.

ORDER 2.—MADREPORARIA.

Zoantharia which resemble the Actiniaria in the general structure of the soft parts, but which usually form colonies, and always possess an ectodermal calcareous skeleton. This order includes the vast majority of Stony Corals (Figs. 133 and 143).

ORDER 3.—ANTIPATHARIA.

Compound, tree-like Zoantharia in which the tentacles and mesenteries are comparatively few (6—24) in number. A skeleton is present in the form of a branched chitinoid axis, developed from the ectoderm, which extends throughout the colony. This order includes the "Black Corals" (Fig. 137).

Sub-Class II.—Alcyonaria.

Actinozoa in which the tentacles and mesenteries are always eight in number. The tentacles are pinnate, *i.e.* produced into symmetrical branchlets. There is never more than one siphonoglyphe, which is ventral in position, *i.e.* faces the proximal end of the colony. The mesenteries are not arranged in couples, and their longitudinal muscles are all directed ventrally, *i.e.* towards the same side as the siphonoglyphe.

ORDER 4.—ALCYONACEA.

Alcyonaria in which the skeleton usually consists of calcareous *spicules* or small irregular bodies, found in the mesoglœa, but probably originating from wandering ectoderm cells. The common "Dead men's fingers" (*Alcyonium*, Fig. 140) has a skeleton of this type. In some cases the spicules become aggregated so as to produce a coherent skeleton, which may form a branched axis to the whole colony, as in the precious Red Coral (*Corallium*, Fig. 132), or a series of connected tubes for the individual polypes, as in the Organ-pipe Coral (*Tubipora*, Fig. 135). In the "Blue Coral" (*Heliopora*) the skeleton is a massive ectodermal structure resembling that of the Madreporaria. Most genera are compound; a few, such as *Hartea* (Fig. 131), are simple.

ORDER 5.—GORGONACEA.

Compound tree-like Alcyonaria, with a calcareous or horny skeleton of ectodermal origin forming a branched axis throughout the colony. Spicules are present in the mesoglœa. There is no siphonoglyphe. The beautiful "Sea-fans" belong to this group (Fig. 141).

ORDER 6.—PENNATULACEA.

Alcyonaria in which the colony is usually elongated, and has one end embedded in the mud at the sea-bottom, while the opposite or distal end bears the polypes, usually on lateral branches. The stem is supported by a calcareous or horny skeleton. The polypes are dimorphic. The "Sea-pens" (*Pennatula*) are the commonest members of this group (Fig. 134).

Systematic Position of the Example.

Tealia crassicornis is one of several species of the genus *Tealia:* it belongs to the family *Tealidæ,* which, with several other families, make up the tribe *Hexactiniæ,* of the order *Actiniaria,* of the sub-class *Zoantharia.*

The presence of numerous tentacles, arranged in multiples of five, places it at once among the Zoantharia. The fact that it is simple and devoid of a skeleton causes it to be assigned to the Actiniaria. This order is divided into tribes characterised by differences in the arrangement of the mesenteries, especially by the presence of one or two couples of directive mesenteries, and by the direction in which the longitudinal muscles are turned. In the Hexactiniæ the mesenteries are all arranged in couples with the longitudinal muscles of each turned towards one another, except in the case of the two directive couples. The mesenteries are in multiples of five, and the stomodæum has two siphonoglyphes and two lappets.

The family Tealidæ is characterised by the possession of numerous mesenteries, tentacles of moderate length, which are completely covered by the closed-in disc during retraction, and by the presence of a large endodermal sphincter muscle. The genus Tealia is distinguished from other members of the same family by being broader than high, by having numerous retractile, equal-sized tentacles, and by the presence of longitudinal series of warts on the column. The species *crassicornis* is distinguished from other species of the genus by the warts being of approximately equal size.

3 GENERAL ORGANISATION.

The chief variations in the **external form** of the Actinozoa are due to the diverse modes of budding: as we shall see, the structure of the individual polypes or zooids is remarkably uniform—at least as regards all the essentials of their organisation.

Nearly all the Actiniaria or Sea-anemones are simple, and, in the few instances where colonies are formed, these are usually small, and contain a very limited number of zooids. In *Zoanthus* (Fig. 130), for instance, the original polype sends out a horizontal branch or *stolon* (*st.*), from which new polypes arise. Besides the Sea-anemones the only simple forms are certain Madreporarian corals, such as *Flabellum* (Fig. 142, A, B), and three genera of Alcyonacea, of which *Hartea* (Fig. 131) may be taken as an example.

The simplest mode of **budding** is that just described in Zoanthus, in which new zooids are developed from a narrow band-like or tubular stolon (Fig. 130, *st.*). A more usual method resembles that we are already familiar with in Hydrozoa, new buds being formed as lateral outgrowths, and a tree-like colony arising with numerous zooids springing from a common stem or cœnosarc. Corallium and Gorgonia (Figs. 132 and 141) are good examples of this type of growth. In other cases the buds grow more or less parallel with one another, producing massive colonies either of close-set zooids or of zooids separated by a solid cœnosarc. As examples of this type we may take *Palythoa*, the most complex of the Actiniaria, and many of the common Madreporaria, such as *Astræa* (Fig. 133). In the Sea-pens (*Pennatalacea*) the proximal end of the elongated colony (Fig. 134) is sunk in the mud, and the distal end bears zooids springing either directly from

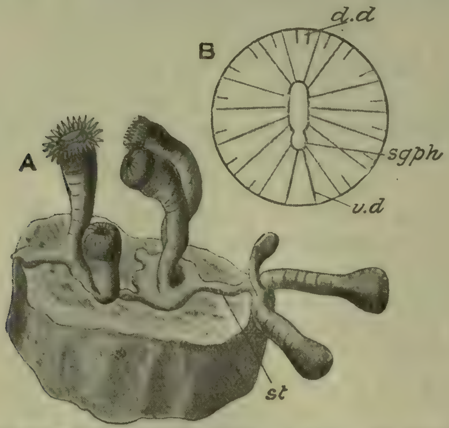


FIG. 130.—**Zoanthus sociatus.** A, entire colony; *st.* stolon. B, transverse section; *sgph.* siphonoglyphes; *d. d.* dorsal, and *v. d.* ventral directive mesenteries. (After McMurrich and Korschelt and Heider.)

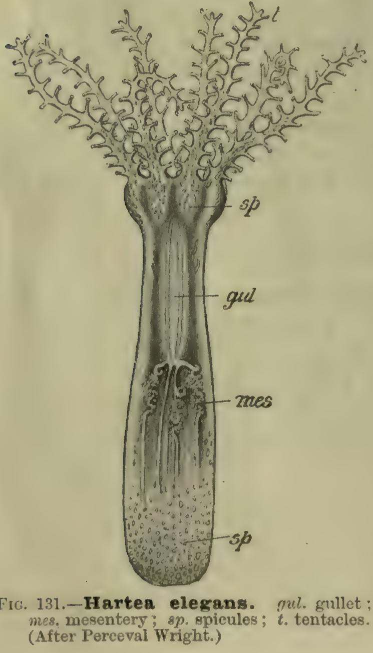


FIG. 131.—**Hartea elegans.** *gul.* gullet; *mes.* mesentery; *sp.* spicules; *t.* tentacles. (After Perceval Wright.)

the cœnosarc or, as in *Pennatula* itself, from flattened lateral branches.

A very peculiar mode of budding occurs in the Organ-pipe Coral (*Tubipora*). The base of the original polype (Fig. 135) grows out into a flattened expansion from which new polypes arise, diverging slightly from one another as they grow, and separated by tolerably wide intervals. The distal ends of the polypes then grow out into horizontal expansions or *platforms* (*pl.*), formed at first of ectoderm and mesoglœa only, but finally receiving prolongations of the endoderm. The platforms extend, come in contact with one another, and fuse. In this way platforms of considerable extent are formed (A, *pl.*), uniting the polypes with one another. From the upper surfaces of the platforms, between the older polypes, new buds arise, and in this way the colony tends to assume the form of an inverted pyramid, the number of zooids, and consequently the diameter of the colony, increasing *pari passu* with the vertical growth of the latter. The skeleton of this remarkable coral will be referred to hereafter.

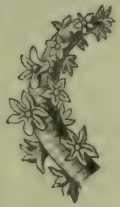


FIG. 132.—**Corallium rubrum,** portion of a branch. (After Claus.)

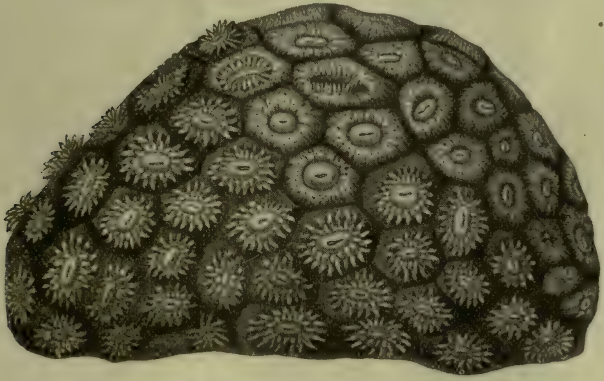


FIG. 133.—**Astræa pallida,** the living colony. (After Dana.)

Although the general **structure of the individual polypes** of the Actinozoa is, as mentioned above, very uniform, the variations in detail are numerous and interesting, especially among the Actiniaria. One of the most important points to consider is the *arrangement of the mesenteries.* In *Edwardsia* (Fig. 136), a genus which burrows in sand, instead of attaching itself to

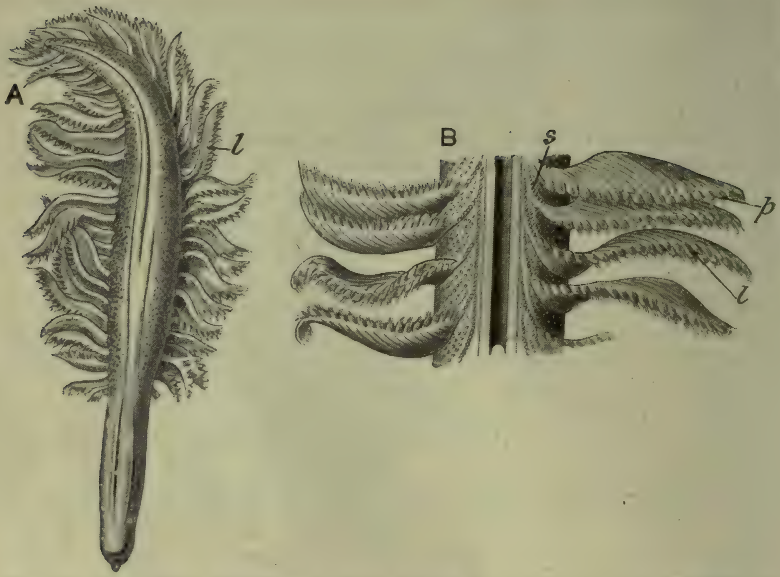


FIG. 134.—**Pennatula sulcata.** A, entire colony; B, portion of the same magnified. *l.* lateral branch; *p.* polype; *s.* siphonozooid. (After Koelliker.)

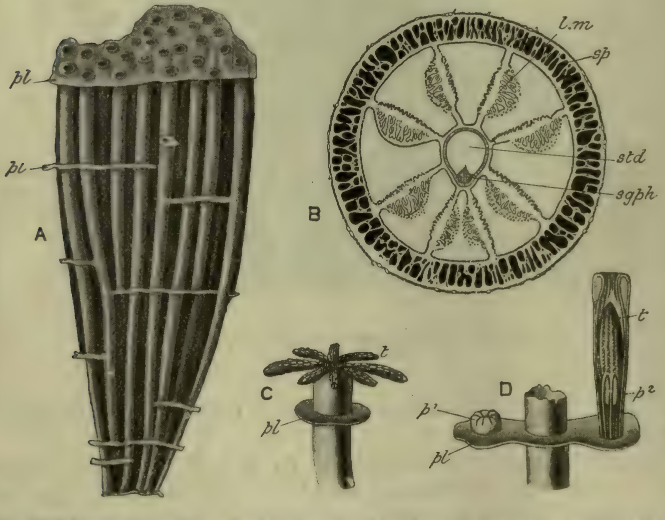


FIG. 135.—**Tubipora musica.** A, skeleton of entire colony; B, transverse sections of polype; C, single polype with tube and commencement of platform; D, growth of new polypes from platform; *l. m.* longitudinal muscles; p^1. p^2. polypes; *pl.* platform; *sgph.* siphonoglyphe; *sp.* spicules; *std.* stomodæum. (After Cuvier, Quoy and Gaimard, and Hickson.)

rocks, &c., there are only eight mesenteries (B), the usual two couples of directives, and two others on each side of the vertical plane, having their longitudinal muscles directed ventrally, and therefore not arranged in couples. The adult Edwardsia thus corresponds with a temporary stage in the development of one of the more typical sea-anemones, viz., the stage with eight mesenteries shown in Fig. 129, A; it is probably to be looked upon as the most primitive or generalised member of the order. In *Zoanthus* (Fig. 130, B) the dorsal directives (*d.d.*) do not reach the gullet, and each lateral couple consists of one perfect and one small and imperfect mesentery. In Cerianthus, another burrowing form, there is a couple of very small ventral directives, and the remaining mesenteries are very numerous, not arranged in couples, and all directed ventrally at their outer ends, so as to have a very obviously bilateral arrangement: in this genus as growth proceeds, new mesenteries are added on the dorsal side, and not, as is usual, between already formed couples. On the other hand, the newly discovered *Gyractis* exhibits a perfectly radial arrangement: the mesenteries are all arranged in couples with the longitudinal muscles facing one another. Lastly, in all the more typical Sea-anemones (forming the tribe *Hexactiniæ*) there are either six, eight, or ten pairs of perfect mesenteries, which, as well as the secondary and tertiary cycles, are all arranged in couples, the longitudinal muscles of all but the one or two directive couples facing one another.

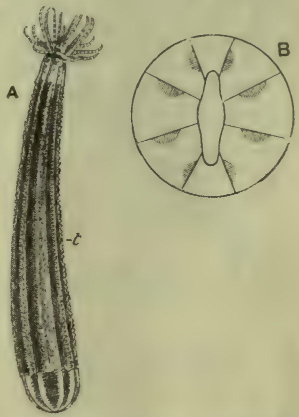


Fig. 136.—**Edwardsia claparèdii.** A, the entire animal; *t.* tube. B, transverse section. (After Andres, and Korschelt, and Heider.)

In the Madreporaria the mesenteries are arranged, so far as is known, in the way just described for the Hexactiniæ. In the Antipatharia there are six primary, and sometimes either four or six secondary, mesenteries. In the whole of the Alcyonaria the mesenteries are eight in number: they are not arranged in couples, and their longitudinal muscles are all turned the same way, viz., towards the ventral aspect (Fig. 135, B). In this whole sub-class, therefore, the resemblance to Edwardsia is very close, the main difference being that the longitudinal muscles of the ventral directives are turned inwards in the Alcyonaria, outwards in Edwardsia.

The *tentacles* in Zoantharia are usually very numerous, and in nearly all cases have the form of simple glove-finger-like out-pushings of the disc. In Edwardsia, however, they may be reduced to sixteen, and in some genera of Sea-anemones they are branched. In the Antipatharia (Fig. 137) they vary in number from six to twenty-four. In the Alcyonaria on the other hand, the tentacles, like the mesenteries, are eight in number and are always pinnate, *i.e.* slightly flattened and with a row of small branchlets along each edge (Fig. 131). Many Actiniaria have the tentacles perforated at the tip (Fig. 125, A, *p.*), and in some species these organs undergo degeneration, being reduced to apertures on the disc, which represent the terminal pores of the vanished tentacles, and are called *stomidia*.

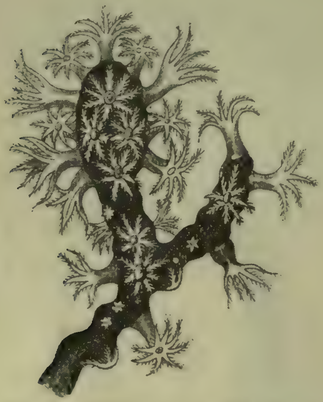


FIG. 137.—**Cirripathes anguina,** portion of colony. (After Bronn.)

Many Sea-anemones possess curious organs of offence called *acontia* (Fig. 125, A, and Fig. 144, *ac.*). These are long delicate threads springing from the edges of the mesenteries: they are loaded with nematocysts, and can be protruded through minute apertures in the column, called "port-holes" or *cinclides* (*cn.*).

Enteric System.—The *gullet* in the Actiniaria presents some remarkable modifications. It is usually a compressed tube with two siphonoglyphes, but in Zoanthus and some other genera the ventral gullet-groove alone is present (Fig. 130, B), and in Gyractis both grooves are absent, and the tube itself is cylindrical with a circular mouth. The ordinary compressed form of gullet often assumes, in the position of rest, a ∞-shaped transverse section, owing to its walls coming together in the middle and leaving the two ends wide open. In a deep-sea form, *Halcampoides*, there is a longitudinal partition dividing the stomodæum into dorsal and ventral tubes, the latter of which is said to serve for the egestion of waste matters, and so act as an intestine. In some forms the bluntly-pointed proximal or aboral end of the body is perforated by a small aperture which seems to serve as an anus. In two recently described genera, *Fenja* (Fig. 138) and *Ægir*, a very remarkable modification is described: the gullet is continued to the aboral end, when it opens on the exterior by an anus (*a.*), thus forming a complete digestive tube. By this arrangement the inter-mesenteric chambers are shut off from all communication with the digestive tube, and together constitute a cavity surrounding the latter and reminding us of the body-cavity met with in most of the higher animals. In Fenja each inter-mesenteric chamber communicates separately with the exterior by an aperture near the anus, through which the genital products escape.

Fixed and Free Forms.—A large proportion of Actinozoa are permanently fixed, such, for instance, as most of the Stony Corals, the Sea-fans, Black Corals, &c. Most Sea-anemones are temporarily attached by the base, but are able slowly to change their position: some forms, such as *Edwardsia* (Fig. 136) and *Cerianthus*, usually live partly buried in sand enclosed in a tube formed of discharged stinging-capsules, the oral end with its crown of tentacles alone being exposed: others, such as *Peachia* and *Fenja*, live an actually free life, habitually lying on the sea-bottom with the longitudinal axis horizontal like that of a worm: a few, such as *Minyas* (Fig. 139), have the aboral end dilated into a sac containing air and serving as a float; by its means these animals can swim at the surface of the sea, and are thus, alone among the Actinozoa, pelagic.

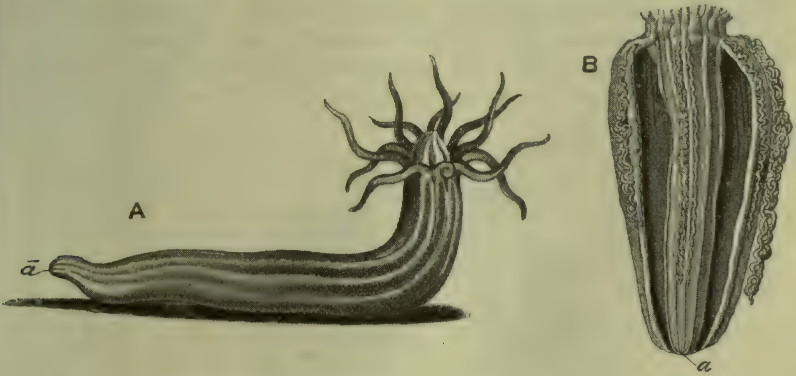


FIG. 138.—**Fenja mirabilis.** A, the entire animal; B, with the body-wall divided longitudinally *a.* anus. (After Daniel.)

Dimorphism.—With the exception of one genus of Stony Corals, the Zoantharia are all homomorphic, *i.e.* there is no differentiation of the zooids of a colony. But in the Alcyonaria dimorphism is common: the ordinary zooids or polypes are accompanied by smaller individuals, called *siphonozooids* (Fig. 134, *s.*), having no tentacles, longitudinal muscles, or gonads.

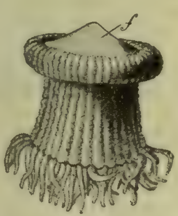


FIG. 139.—**Minyas.** *f.* float. (After Andres.)

None of the Actiniaria have a true **skeleton**: in some, however, there is a thick cuticle, and several kinds enclose themselves in a more or less complete tube (Fig. 136), which may be largely formed of discharged nematocysts. The simplest form of skeleton is found in the solitary Alcyonarian genus *Hartea* (Fig. 131), already referred to, in which minute irregular deposits of calcium carbonate, called *spicules* (*sp.*), are deposited in the mesoderm. A similar *spicular skeleton* occurs in the "Dead-men's fingers" (Alcyonium, Fig. 140), where spicules of varying form are found distributed throughout the mesoderm of the cœnosarc. In *Tubipora* (Fig. 135), the "Organ-pipe Coral," the mesodermal spicules become closely fitted together, and form a continuous tube for each polype, the tubes being united by horizontal calcareous platforms (*pl.*) formed by deposits of spicules in the expansions of the same name already referred to. The skeleton of Tubipora is, therefore, an internal skeleton, and in the living state is covered by ectoderm. In the Red Coral of commerce (*Corallium*, Fig. 132) the originally separate spicules are embedded in a cement-like deposit of carbonate of lime, the result being the production of an extremely hard and dense branched rod, which extends as an axis through the cœnosarc.

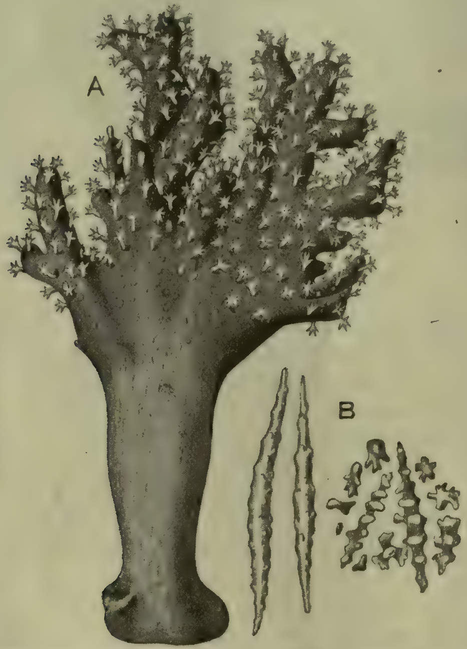


FIG. 140.—**Alcyonium palmatum,** A, entire colony ; B, spicules (After Cuvier.)

Another type of skeleton is found in the Antipatharia (Fig. 137) and in the Gorgonacea (Fig. 141). It also consists of an axial rod, extending all through the colony and branching with it, but is formed of a black horn-like material. Moreover it is not mesodermal, but ectodermal in origin: in close contact with it is an epithelium, from the cells of which it is produced as a cuticular secretion, and this epithelium is formed as an invagination of the base of the colony. In addition to its axis, Gorgonia contains numerous spicules in the mesoderm of the cœnosarc. In some of the Gorgonacea the axial skeleton is partly horny, partly calcareous.

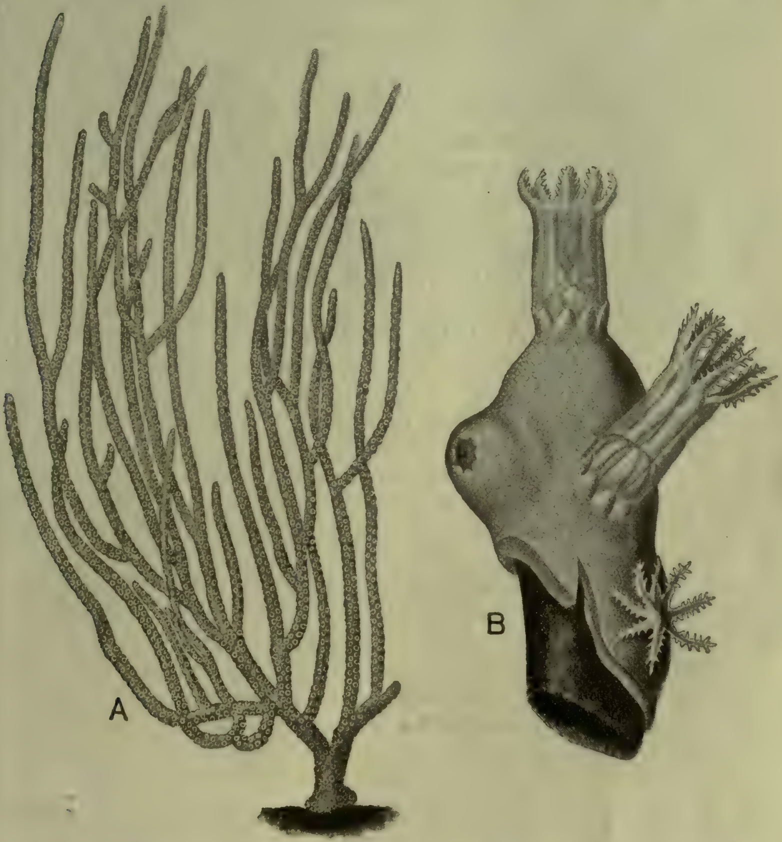


FIG. 141. **Gorgonia verrucosa.** A, entire colony; B, portion of the same magnified; *c.* cœnosarc; *p.* polype. (After Koch and Cuvier.)

In the Sea-pen (*Pennatula*, Fig. 134) and its allies the stem of the colony is supported by a horny axis which is unbranched, not extending into the lateral branches. In this case the axis is contained in a closed cavity lined by an epithelium, the origin of which is still uncertain. Spicules occur in the mesoderm, some of them microscopic, others readily visible to the naked eye.

In the Madreporaria we have a skeleton of an entirely different type, consisting, in fact, of a more or less cup-like calcareous structure, secreted from the ectoderm of the base and column of the polype. When formed by a solitary polype, such a "cup-coral" is known as a *corallite:* in the majority of species a large number—sometimes many thousands—of corallites combine to form a *corallum*, the skeleton of an entire coral-colony.

The structure of a corallite is conveniently illustrated by that of the solitary genus *Flabellum* (Fig. 142, A, B). It has the form of a short conical cup, much compressed so as to be oval in section. Its wall or *theca* (*th.*) is formed of dense stony calcium carbonate, white and smooth inside, rough and of a brownish colour outside, except towards the margin, where it is white. Its proximal or aboral end is produced into a short stalk or *peduncle*, by which the Coral is attached in the young state, becoming free when adult: in many other simple Corals there is no stalk, but attachment to the support is effected by means of a flattened proximal surface or *basal plate* (C, *b. pl.*). From the inner surface of the theca a number of radiating partitions, the *septa* (*sep.*), proceed inwards or towards the axis of the cup, and, like the mesenteries of a polype, are of several orders, those extending furthest towards the centre being called primary septa, the others secondary, tertiary, and so on. Towards the bottom of the cup the primary septa meet in the middle to form an irregular central mass, the *columella* (*col.*). In some Corals the columella is an independent pillar-like structure arising from the basal plate (D, *col.*).

In many Corals there is a distinct calcareous layer investing the proximal portion of the theca, and called the *epitheca* (C, *e.th.*). Some species have the inner portions of the septa detached so as to form a circlet of narrow upright columns, the *pali*. In others there are horizontal partitions or *dissepiments* passing from septum to septum, and in others, again, complete partitions or *tabulæ*, like those of Millepora (p. 145), extending across the whole corallite. In the Mushroom-coral (*Fungia*), the corallite is discoid, the theca is confined to the lower surface, and small calcareous rods, the *synapticulæ*, connect the septa with one another.

In the living condition the polype fills the whole interior of the corallite and projects beyond its edge to a greater or less degree according to its state of expansion (C). The proximal part of the body-wall is thus in contact with the theca, which has the relation of a cuticle, and is, in fact, a product of the ectoderm. The free portion of the body-wall is frequently, in the extended state, folded down over the edge of the theca so as to cover its distal portion. The septa alternate with the mesenteries, each lying in the space between the two mesenteries of one couple, and each being invested by an in-turned portion of the body-wall (E, F). Thus the septa, which appear at first sight to be internal structures, are really external: they lie altogether outside the enteric cavity, and are in contact throughout with ectoderm.

The ectodermal nature of the entire corallite is further proved by its development. The first part to appear is a ring-shaped deposit of carbonate of lime between the base of the polype and the body to which it adheres: sections show this ring to be formed by the ectoderm cells of the base. The ring is soon converted into a disc, the *basal plate*, from the upper surfaces of which a number of ridges arise, arrayed in a star-like fashion: these are the rudiments of the septa. Here, again, sections show that each septum corre-

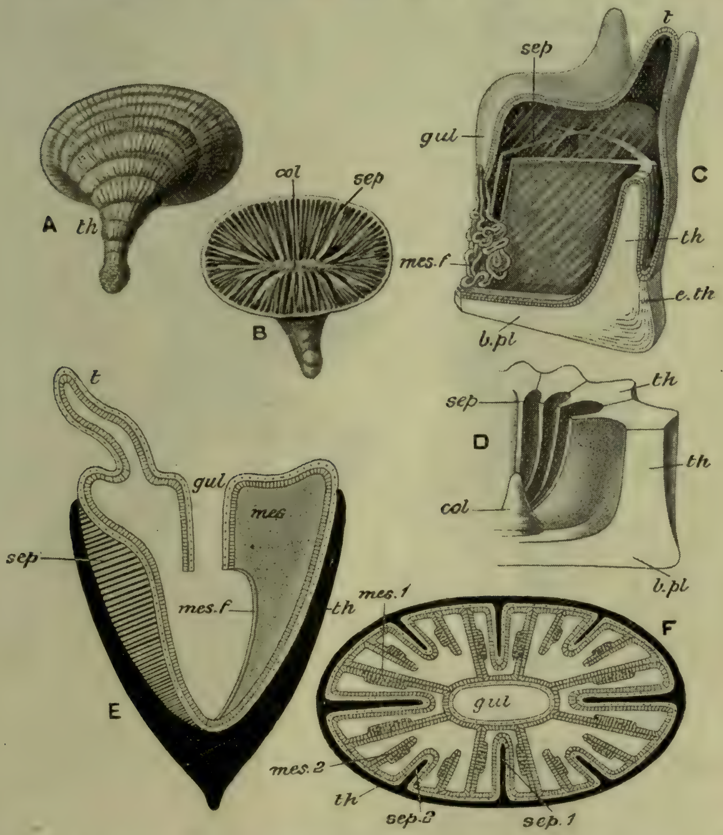


Fig. 142.—A, B, two views of **Flabellum curvatum.** C, semi-diagrammatic view of a simple coral; D, portion of a corallite; E, F, diagram of a simple coral in longitudinal and transverse section; ectoderm dotted, endoderm striated, skeleton black. *b. pl.* basal plate; *col.* columella; *e. th.* epitheca; *gul.* gullet; *mes. mes. 1, mes. 2*, mesenteries; *mes. f.* mesenteric filaments; *sep.* septa; *t.* tentacle; *th.* theca. (A and B after Moseley; C and D after Gilbert Bourne.)

sponds with a radial in-pushing of the base, and is formed as a secretion of the invaginated ectoderm. As the septa grow they unite with one another at their outer ends, and thus form the theca. In some cases, however, the theca appears to be an independent structure.

The almost infinite variety in form of the compound corals is due, in the main, to the various methods of budding, a subject which has already been referred to in treating of the actinozoan colony as a whole. According to the mode of budding, massive Corals are produced in which the corallites are in close contact with one another, as in Astræa (Fig. 133); or tree-like forms, such as Dendrophyllia (Fig. 143, A), in which a common calcareous stem, the *cœnenchyma* is formed by calcification of the cœnosarc (*cs.*), and gives origin to the individual corallites. It is by this last-named method, the cœnosarc attaining great dimensions and the individual corallites being small and very numerous, that the most complex of all Corals, the Madrepores (*Madrepora*, Fig. 143, B) are produced.

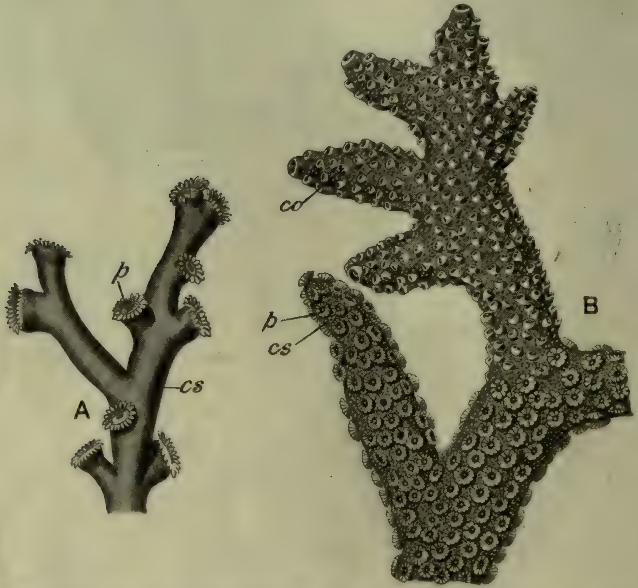


FIG. 143.—**Dendrophyllia nigrescans,** B, **Madrepora aspera.** *co.* corallites; *cs.* cœnosarc; *p.* polypes. (After Dana.)

The microscopic structure of corals presents two main varieties. In what are called the *aporose* or poreless corals, such as Flabellum, Astræa, &c., the various parts of the corallite are solid and stony, while in the *perforate* forms, such as Madrepora, all parts, both of the corallites and of the connecting cœnenchyma, have the characters of a mesh-work, consisting of delicate strands of carbonate of lime united with one another in such a way as to leave interstices, which in the living state are traversed by a network of interlacing tubes, representing the cœnosarc, and placing the polypes of the colony in communication.

The Blue Coral (*Heliopora*) one of the Alcyonacea, has a massive corallum having the same general appearance as a Madreporarian. The lobed surface bears apertures of two sizes, the larger being for the exit of the ordinary polypes, the smaller for the siphonozooids. Tabulæ are present, and septum-like ridges, which, however, have no definite relations to the mesenteries, and are inconstant in number.

Colour.—The Actinozoa are remarkable for the variety and brilliancy of their colour during life. Every one must have noticed the vivid and varied tints of sea-anemones; but most dwellers in temperate regions get into the habit of thinking of Corals as white, and have no conception of their marvellously varied and gorgeous colouring during life. The Madrepores, for instance, may be pink, yellow, green, brown, or purple: Tubipora has green polypes, contrasting strongly with its crimson skeleton; and the effect of the bright red axis of Corallium is greatly heightened by its pure white polypes. In Heliopora the whole coral is bright blue; the tropical Alcyonidæ are remarkable for their elaborate patterns and gorgeous colouration; and Pennatula, in addition to its vivid colours, is phosphorescent.

In most cases the significance of these colours is quite unknown. In some species, however, "yellow-cells" or symbiotic Algæ have been found in the endoderm, where they probably serve the same purpose as the similar structures which we have already studied in Radiolaria (p. 61).

Many Actinozoa, like many sponges (p. 116), furnish examples of **commensalism,** a term used for a mutually beneficial association of two organisms of a less intimate nature than occurs in symbiosis. An interesting example is furnished by the Sea-anemone *Adamsia palliata* (Fig. 144). This species is always found on a univalve shell—such as that of a Whelk—inhabited by a Hermit-crab. The Sea-anemone is carried from place to place by the Hermit-crab, and in this way secures a more varied and abundant food-supply than would fall to its lot if it remained in one place. On the other hand, the Hermit-crab is protected from the attack of predaceous Fishes by retreating into its shell and leaving exposed the Sea-anemone, which, owing to its toughness, and to the pain caused by its poisonous stinging-capsules, is usually avoided as an article of food.

Other Sea-anemones—such as the gigantic *Discosoma* of the great Barrier Reef—are found associated with Small Fishes or

Crustacea, which have their abode in the enteric cavity. In this case the Fish secures shelter in a place where it is very unlikely to be disturbed, and the two animals are strictly commensals or "messmates" since they share a common table. A somewhat similar instance is furnished by the Blue Coral (Heliopora), already referred to more than once. The corallum contains, not only the apertures for the polypes and siphonozooids, but also tubular cavities of an intermediate size, in each of which is found a small chætopod Worm, belonging to the genus *Leucodore*. As the polypes are frequently found retracted at a time when the Worms are protruded from their holes in search of food, it is not surprising that the latter should have been credited with the fabrication of the coral. *Trapezia*, a genus of Crabs, always lives in interstices of a particular species of Madrepore.

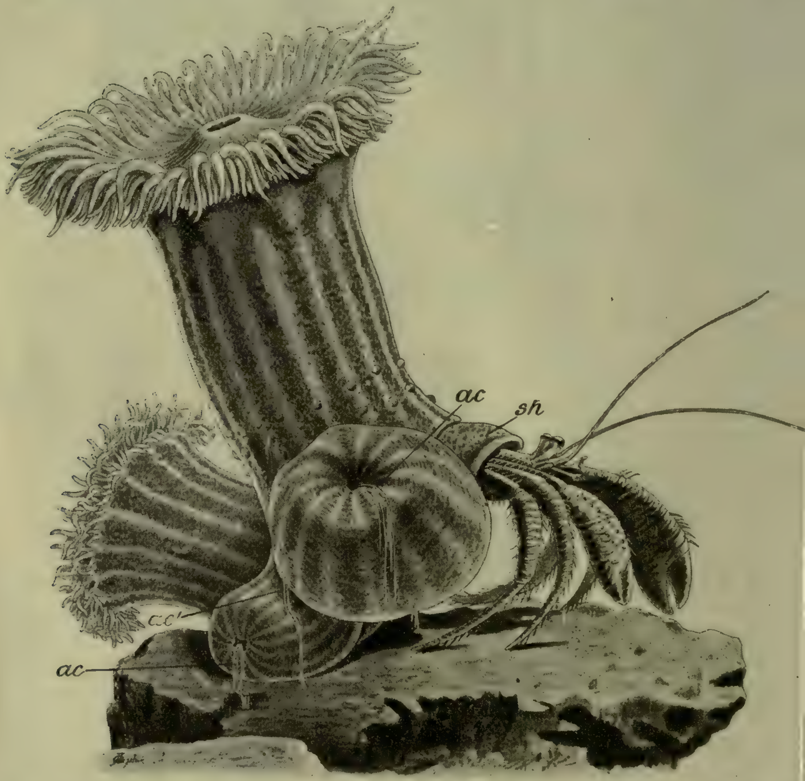


FIG. 144.—**Adamsia palliata,** four individuals attached to a Gastropod shell inhabited by a Hermit-crab. *ac*, ac^1. acontia ; *sh*. shell of Gasteropod. (After Andres.)

The **distribution** of the Actiniaria is world-wide, and in many cases the same genera are found in widely separated parts of the world. They are, however, larger and of more varied form and colour in tropical regions, for instance on coral-reefs. The largest reef-anemone, *Discosoma*, found also in the Mediterranean, attains a diameter of 2 feet. Most members of the order are littoral, living either between tide-marks or at slight depths, but a few are pelagic, and several species have been dredged from depths of from 10 to 2,900 fathoms.

The Madreporaria, taken as a whole, have also a wide distribution; but the number of forms in temperate regions is small, and the majority—including the whole of what are called reef-building Corals—are confined to the tropical parts of the Atlantic, Indian, and Pacific Oceans, flourishing only where the lowest winter temperature does not sink below 68° F. (20° C.). Thus their northernmost limits are the Bermudas in the Atlantic, and Southern Japan in the Pacific; their southernmost limits, Rio and St. Helena in the Atlantic, Queensland and Easter Island in the Pacific: in other words, they extend to about 30° on each side of the equator. Moreover, they have a curiously limited bathymetrical distribution, flourishing only from high-water mark down to a depth of about 20 fathoms, but not lower.

Many of the Pacific Islands are formed entirely of coral rock, others are fringed with reefs of the same, and the whole east coast of Northern Queensland is bounded, for a distance of 1,250 miles, by the Great Barrier Reef, a line of coral rock more or less parallel to and at a distance of from 10 to 90 miles from the land. Such reefs consist of gigantic masses of coral rock fringed by living coral, the latter growing upon a basis of dead coral, the interstices of which have been filled up with *débris* of various kinds, so as to convert the whole into a dense limestone.

The Antipatharia, and many of the Alcyonaria, such as the Gorgonacea and Pennatulacea, have also a world-wide distribution, and, even in temperate regions, both Black Corals and Sea-fans may attain a great size: the members of both these groups, as well as the Sea-pens, are found at moderate depths. The Red Coral is found only in the Mediterranean, at a depth of 10 to 30 fathoms. Tubipora and Heliopora have the same distribution as the reef-building Corals.

From the palæontological point of view, corals are of great importance: they are known in the fossil condition from the Silurian epoch upwards, and in many formations occur in vast quantities, forming what are called coral limestones. The majority of fossil forms are referable to existing families, but in the Palæozoic era the dominant group was the *Rugosa*, the affinities of which are still very obscure. The corallites are usually bilaterally symmetrical, the septa are arranged in multiples of four, and the cup presents on one side a pit, the *fossula*, where the septa are greatly reduced.

CLASS IV.—CTENOPHORA.

1. Type of the Class—*Hormiphora plumosa.*

External Characters.—Hormiphora is a pear-shaped organism, about 5–20 mm. in diameter, and of glassy transparency (Figs. 145 and 146). The species *H. plumosa* is found in the Mediterranean; allied forms belonging either to the same genus (often called *Cydippe*) or to the closely allied genus *Pleurobrachia* are common pelagic forms all over the world.

From opposite sides of the broad end depend two long *tentacles* (*t.*), provided with numerous little tag-like processes, and springing each from a deep cavity or *sheath*, into which it can be completely retracted (Fig. 146, *t.sh.*). At the narrow end—where the stalk of a pear would be inserted—is a slit-like aperture, the *mouth* (*mth.*): this end is therefore oral. At the opposite or aboral pole is a slight depression, in which lies a prominent *sense-organ* (*s.o.*), to be described hereafter.

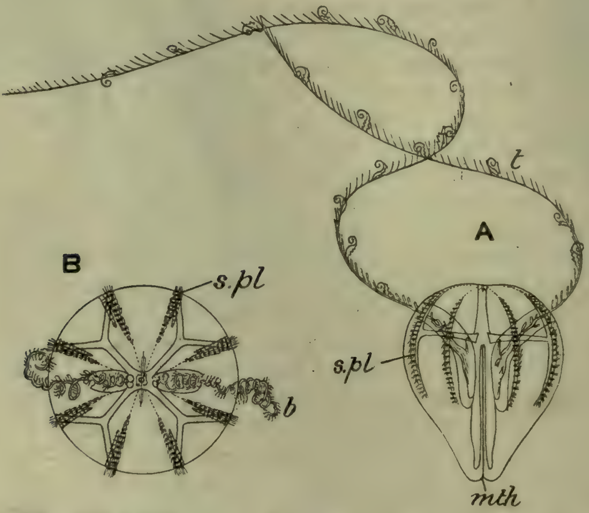


FIG. 145.—**Hormiphora plumosa.** A, from the side, B, from the aboral pole. *mth.* mouth; *s. pl.* swimming plates; *t.* and *b.* tentacles. (After Chun.)

But the most striking and characteristic feature in the external structure of Hormiphora is the presence of eight equidistant meridional bands (*s. pl.*), starting from near the aboral pole, and extending about two-thirds of the distance towards the oral pole. Each band is constituted by a row of transversely arranged comb-like structures, consisting of narrow plates frayed at their outer ends. During life the frayed ends are in constant movement, lashing to and fro,

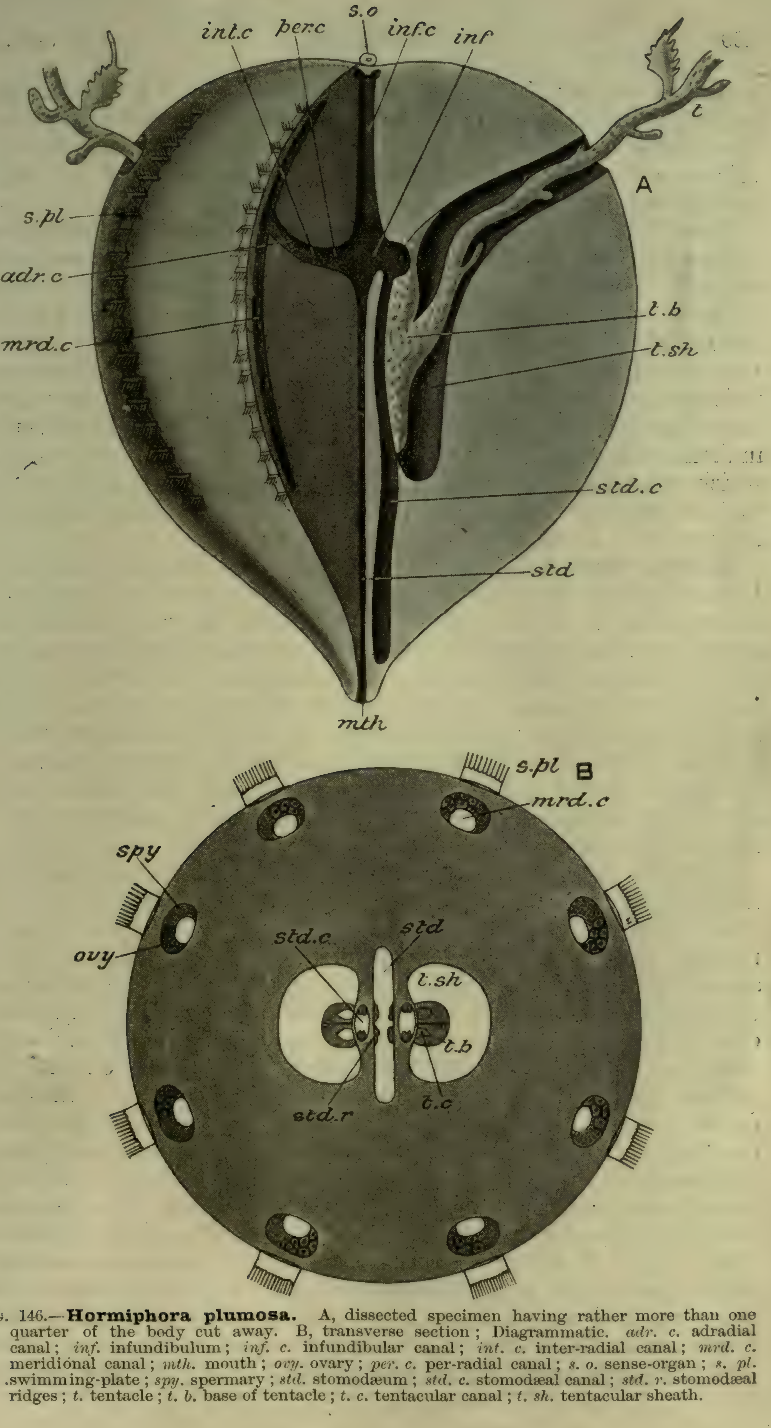

s.o
int.c
per.c
inf.c
inf
t
A
s.pl
adr.c
mrd.c
t.b
t.sh
std.c
std
mth
s.pl
B
mrd.c
spy
ovy
std.c
std
t.sh
t.b
std.r
t.c

FIG. 146.—**Hormiphora plumosa.** A, dissected specimen having rather more than one quarter of the body cut away. B, transverse section; Diagrammatic. *adr. c.* adradial canal; *inf.* infundibulum; *inf. c.* infundibular canal; *int. c.* inter-radial canal; *mrd. c.* meridional canal; *mth.* mouth; *ovy.* ovary; *per. c.* per-radial canal; *s. o.* sense-organ; *s. pl.* swimming-plate; *spy.* spermary; *std.* stomodæum; *std. c.* stomodæal canal; *std. r.* stomodæal ridges; *t.* tentacle; *t. b.* base of tentacle; *t. c.* tentacular canal; *t. sh.* tentacular sheath.

and so propelling the animal through the water. The *combs* are, in fact, rows of immense cilia, fused at their proximal ends: their presence and mode of occurrence—arranged in meridional *comb-ribs* or *swimming-plates*—are strictly characteristic of the class, and indeed give it its name.

It will be seen at once that—apart from all considerations of internal structure—Hormiphora presents a similar combination of radial with bilateral symmetry as some Hydrozoa, such as Ctenaria (Fig. 96, *1*), and as the majority of Actinozoa. The swimming-plates are radially arranged, and mark the eight adradii, but the slit-like mouth and the two tentacles indicate a very marked and characteristic bilateral symmetry. A plane passing through the longitudinal axis of the body, parallel with the long axis of the mouth, is called, as in Actinozoa (see p. 176), the *vertical plane:* it includes two per-radii, which are respectively dorsal and ventral. A plane at right angles to this, passing through both tentacles, and including right and left per-radii, is called the *transverse plane.*

Enteric System.—The mouth leads into a flattened tube (Fig. 146, *std.*),often called the stomach, but more correctly the gullet or *stomodæum.* It reaches about two-thirds of the way towards the aboral pole, and its walls are produced internally into ridges (*std. r.*), which increase the area for the absorption of digested food. Living prey is seized by the tentacles, ingested by the aid of the mobile edges of the mouth and digested in the stomodæum, which is thus physiologically, though not morphologically, a stomach. The products of digestion make their way into the various parts of the canal-system, presently to be described, and indigestible matters are passed out at the mouth.

Towards its upper or aboral end the stomodæum gradually narrows and opens into a cavity called the *infundibulum* (*inf.*), which probably answers to the stomach of an Actinozoon or a medusa, and is flattened in a direction at right angles to the stomodæum—*i.e.* in the transverse plane. From the infundibulum three tubes are given off: one, the *infundibular canal* (*inf. c.*), passes directly upwards, and, immediately beneath the aboral pole, divides into four short branches, two of which open on the exterior by minute apertures, the *excretory pores* (Fig. 147, A, *ex. p.*). The two other canals given off from the infundibulum are the *per-radial canals* (*per. c.*): they pass directly outwards, in the transverse plane, and each divides into two *inter-radial canals* (*int. c.*), which in their turn divide each into two *adradial canals* (*adr. c.*). These successive bifurcations of the canal-system all take place in a horizontal plane (Fig. 147, B), and each of the ultimate branches or adradial canals opens into a *meridional canal* (*mdr. c.*), which extends upwards and downwards beneath the corresponding swimming-plate. Furthermore, each per-radial canal gives off a *stomodæal canal* (*std. c.*), which passes downwards, parallel to and in close contact

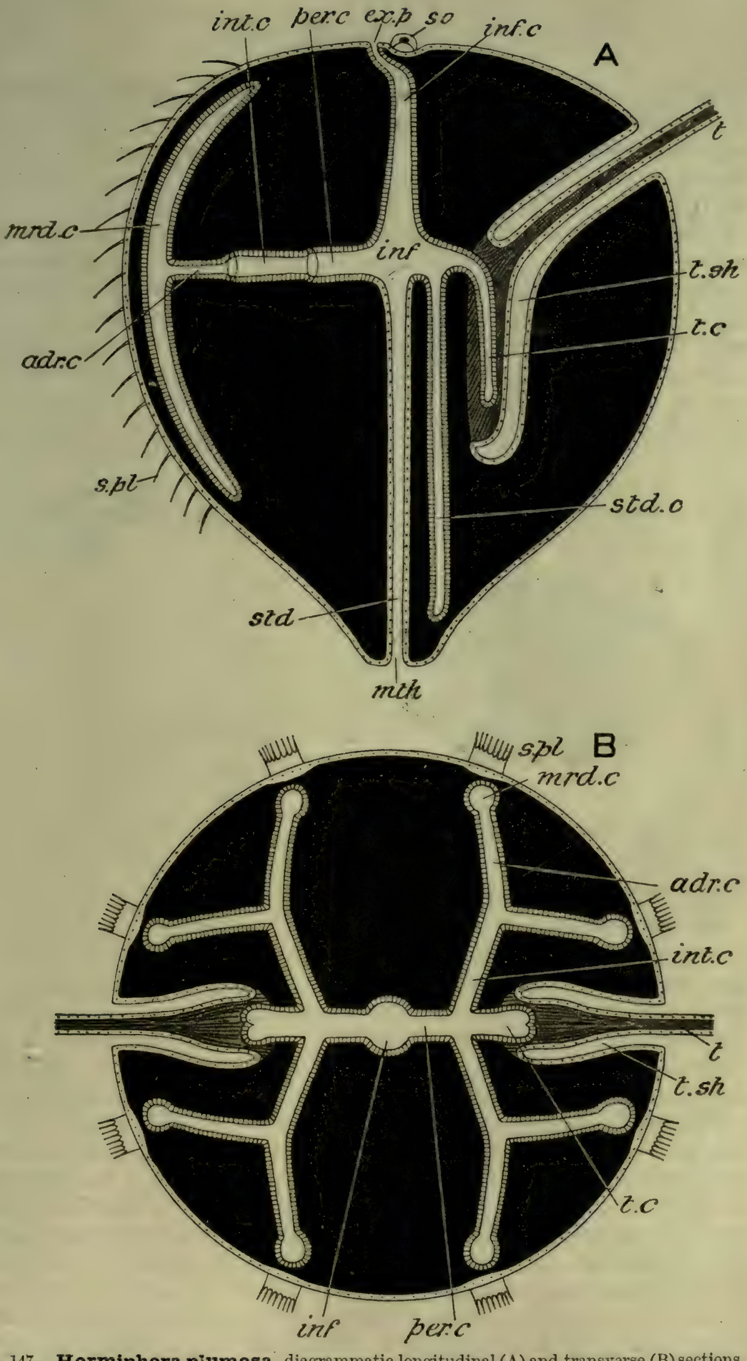

int.c
per.c
ex.p
so
inf.c
A
t
mrd.c
inf
t.sh
t.c
adr.c
s.pl
std.c
std
mth
s.pl
B
mrd.c
adr.c
int.c
t
t.sh
t.c
inf
per.c

FIG. 147.—**Hormiphora plumosa,** diagrammatic longitudinal (A) and transverse (B) sections. The ectoderm is dotted, the endoderm striated, the mesoglœa black, and the muscular axis of the tentacles gray. Lettering as in Fig. 146, except *ex. p.*, excretory pore.

with the stomodæum, and a *tentacular canal* (*t. c.*) which extends outwards and downwards into the base of the corresponding tentacle. Each tentacle presents a thickened *base* (*t. b.*), closely attached to the wall of the sheath, and giving off a long flexible filament, beset with processes of two kinds—one simple and colourless, the other leaf-like, beset with branchlets, and of a yellow colour.

Cell-layers.—The body is covered externally by a delicate ectodermal epithelium (Fig. 147), the cells from which the combs arise being particularly large. The epithelium of the stomodæum is found by development to be ectodermal, that of the infundibulum and its canals endodermal: both are ciliated. The interval between the external ectoderm and the canal-system is filled by a soft jelly-like mesoglœa. The tentacle-sheath is an invagination of the ectoderm, and the tentacle itself is covered by a layer of ectoderm, within which is a core or axis formed by a strong bundle of longitudinal muscular fibres, which, as we shall see, are of mesodermal origin, and which serve to retract the tentacle into its sheath.

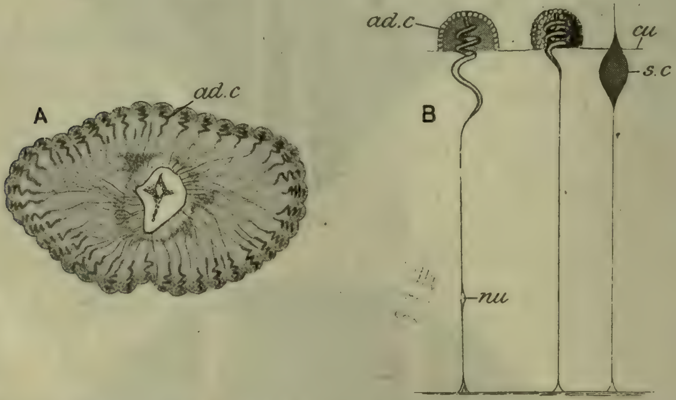


Fig. 148.—**Hormiphora plumosa**. A, transverse section of one of the branches of a tentacle; B, two adhesive cells (*ad. c*) and a sensory cell (*s. c*) highly magnified. *cu.* cuticle; *nu.* nucleus. (After Hertwig and Chun.

Delicate muscle-fibres lie beneath the external epithelium and beneath the epithelium of the canal-system, and also traverse the mesoglœa in various directions. The feeble development of the muscular system is, of course, correlated with the fact that the swimming-plates are the main organs of progression, the Ctenophora differing from all other Cœlenterata in retaining cilia as locomotory organs throughout life.

A further striking difference between our present type and the Cœlenterata previously studied is the absence, in Hormiphora, of stinging-capsules. The place of these structures is taken by the peculiar **adhesive-cells** with which the branches of the tentacles are covered. An adhesive-cell (Fig. 148, *ad. c.*) has a convex surface produced into small papillæ, which readily adheres to any object with which it comes in contact and is with difficulty separated. In the interior of the cell is a spirally coiled filament, the delicate inner end of which can be traced to the muscular axis of the tentacular branch. These spiral threads act as springs, and tend to prevent the adhesive-cells being torn away by the struggles of the captured prey.

Both the central **nervous system** and the principal **sense-organ** are represented by a peculiar apparatus situated, as already mentioned, at the aboral pole. In this region is a shallow depression (Fig. 149, *c.p.*) lined by ciliated epithelium and produced in the transverse plane into two narrow ciliated areas, the *polar plates* (*p.pl.*). From the depression arise four equidistant groups of very large S-shaped cilia (*sp*), united to form as many *springs* (*sp.*), which support a mass of calcareous particles (*l.*), like the lithites of Hydrozoa and Scyphozoa. From each spring a *ciliated groove* (*c.gr.*) proceeds outwards, bifurcates, and passes to the two swimming-plates of the corresponding quadrant. The otolithic mass, with its springs, is enclosed in a transparent case or *bell* (*b*), formed of coalesced cilia. It appears that the whole apparatus acts as a kind of steering-gear, or apparatus for the maintenance of equilibrium. Any inclination of the long axis must cause the otolithic mass to bear more heavily upon one or other of the springs: the stimulus appears to be transmitted by the corresponding ciliated groove to a swimming-plate, and results in a vigorous movement of the combs. Thus the sensory pit acts as a central nervous system, and the ciliated grooves as nerves.

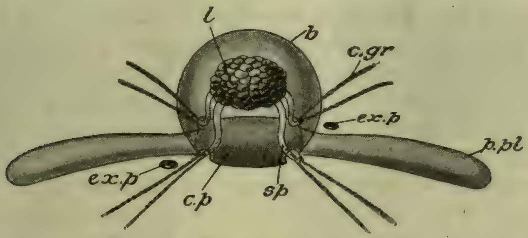


FIG. 149.—**Hormiphora plumosa,** Sense-organ : *b.* bell ; *c.p.* ciliated plate ; *c. gr.* ciliated groove ; *ex. p.* excretory pore ; *l.* lithites ; *p. pl.* polar plate ; *sp.* spring. (Modified from Chun.)

Reproductive Organs.—The animal is hermaphrodite, the organs of both sexes being found in the same individual. The *gonads* are developed in the meridional canals (Fig. 146, B), each of which has an ovary (*ovy.*) extending along the whole length of one side, a spermary (*spy.*) along the whole length of the opposite side. The organs are so arranged that in adjacent canals those of the

REESE LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY

same sex face one another. It will be seen that the reproductive products have, as in Scyphozoa and Actinozoa, the position of endoderm-cells: whether they are developed, in the first instance, from that layer is uncertain. When ripe the ova and sperms are discharged into the canals, make their way to the infundibulum, thence to the stomodæum, and finally escape by the mouth. Impregnation takes place in the water.

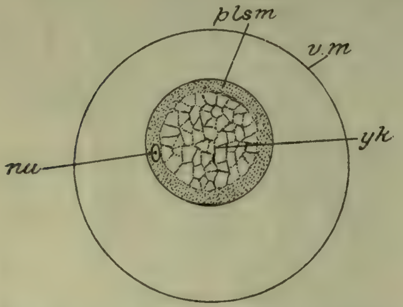


Fig. 150.—Ovum of **Lampetia.** *nu.* nucleus; *plsm.* protoplasm; *v. m.* vitelline membrane; *yk.* yolk. (After Chun.)

Development.—The process of development has been traced in several genera closely allied to Hormiphora, so that there is every reason to believe that, in all essential particulars, the following description will apply to that genus.

The egg (Fig. 150) consists of an outer layer of protoplasm (*plsm.*) containing the nucleus (*nu.*), and of an internal mass of a frothy or vacuolated nature (*yk.*): the vacuoles contain a homogeneous substance which serves as a store of nutriment to the growing embryo, and apparently corresponds with the *yolk* which we shall find to occur in a large proportion of animal eggs. Enclosing the egg is a thin *vitelline membrane* (*v.m.*), separated by a considerable space, filled with a clear jelly, from the protoplasm.

After impregnation the oosperm segments, but the details of the process are very different from those we are familiar with in the other Cœlenterata. The protoplasmic layer accumulates on the side which will become dorsal, and the oosperm divides along

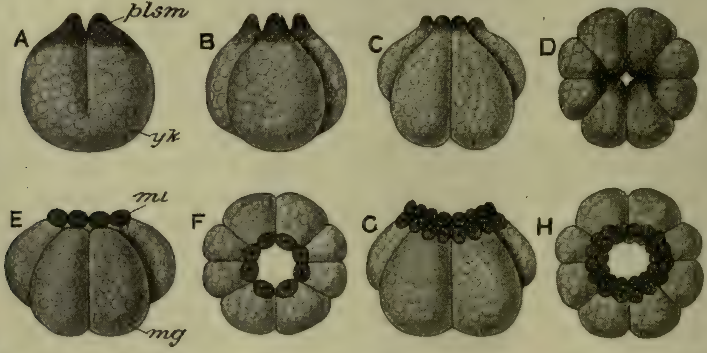


Fig. 151.—Segmentation of the oosperm in Ctenophora. *mg.* megameres; *mi.* micromeres; *plsm.* protoplasm; *yk.* yolk. (Modified from Korschelt and Heider.)

a vertical plane, forming two cells each with a sort of protoplasmic cap (Fig. 151, A, *plsm.*). A second division takes place at right angles to the first, producing a four-celled stage (B), and each of the four cells divides again into daughter-cells of unequal size, the result being an eight-celled embryo, each cell with a protoplasmic cap at its dorsal end (C, D). Next a horizontal division takes place, dividing off the protoplasmic caps as distinct cells, and so producing a sixteen-celled stage (E, F) in which we can distinguish eight large, ventral, yolk-containing cells or *megameres* (*mg.*), and eight small, dorsal, protoplasmic cells or *micromeres* (*mi.*).

The micromeres increase rapidly in number by division, and are further added to by new, small cells being budded off from the megameres (Fig, 151, G, H, and Fig. 152, A). The result of this increase is that the micromes gradually overspread the megameres (Fig. 152, C), the final result being the production of an embryo consisting of a central mass of large yolk-containing cells (*ma.*), partly surrounded by an epithelium-like layer, incomplete below, of small cells (*mi.*). This stage corresponds with the gastrula of preceding types, the micromeres forming the ectoderm, the megameres the endoderm, and the ventral edge of the ectodermal investment representing the blastopore. There is, however, no archenteron or gastrula-cavity, and the stage has been produced, not by a process of invagination or tucking-in, but by one of *epiboly* or overgrowth.

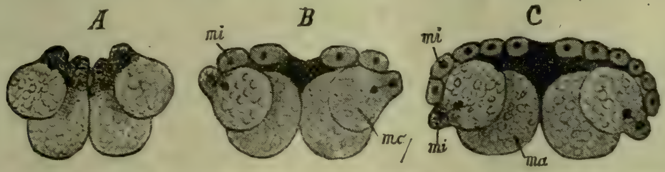


FIG. 152.—Three stages in the development of Ctenophora. *ma.* megameres; *mi.* micromeres. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy.*)

The endoderm-cells increase in number, and become much elongated, and arranged obliquely, their long axes radiating, upwards and outwards, from the long axis of the entire embryo (Fig. 153, A). Their lower (ventral) ends then become divided off, forming a number of small cells, which constitute the rudiment of a true middle cell-layer or *mesoderm* (A, *me.*). A kind of invagination of the megameres with their mesoderm cells then takes place, resulting in the formation of a cavity—the infundibulum (B, *d.*)—bounded below by the megameres, now placed horizontally, and above by the mesoderm. The mesoderm gradually retreats to the dorsal surface (C), finally spreading out between the dorsal ectoderm and the infundibulum. At the same time the ectoderm cells bounding the aperture of the infundibulum grow into it so as to line its ventral portion: in this way the stomodæum (*st.*) is produced. The remainder of the cavity widens out and becomes the definitive infundibulum (*d.*), and before long sends off four adradial pouches, the rudiments of the canal-system. At the same time a gelatinous layer (Fig. 154, *g.*), the mesoglœa, makes its appearance between the ectoderm and endoderm.

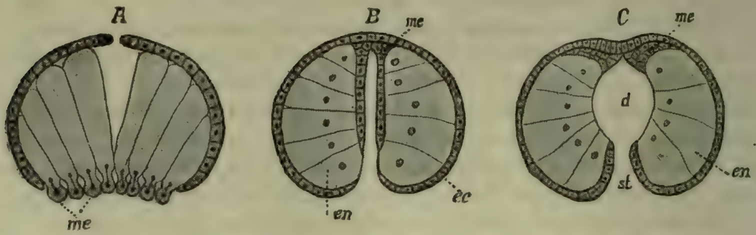


FIG. 153.—Three stages in the development of **Callianira.** *d.* infundibulum ; *ec.* ectoderm ; *en.* endoderm ; *me.* mesoderm ; *st.* stomodæum. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy.*)

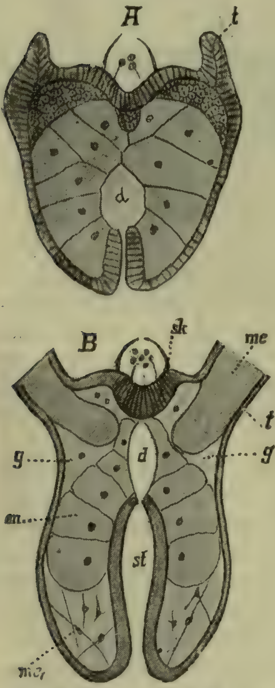


FIG. 154.—Two later stages in the development of **Callianira.** *d.* infundibulum ; *en.* endoderm ; *g.* mesoglœa ; *me.* mesoderm ; *sk.* sense-organ ; *st.* stomodæum ; *t.* tentacle. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy.*)

The later processes of development may be described very briefly. The canal-system gradually assumes its adult complexity and the swimming-plates appear. A thickening of the ectoderm on each side of the body gives rise to the epithelium of the tentacle and of its pouch. The muscle-fibres forming the axis of the tentacle (B, *me.*) are derived from the mesoderm, which also gives rise to the contractile fibres of the mesoglœa (*me*^{1}.). The otoliths are formed in the ectoderm-cells of the apical pole, but gradually make their way on to the free surface of the cells and become supported on four groups of fused cilia. Four outer groups of cilia unite with one another to form the bell (*sk.*).

The most noteworthy points in this somewhat complex process of development are the following:—

1. The distinction between a purely protoplasmic part of the egg and a yolk-containing portion. In the Hydrozoa and Actinozoa the yolk-material is small in amount and evenly distributed, the egg being described as *alecithal* or

yolkless. In the present instance the yolk is at first accumulated in the centre of the egg, which is thus *centrolecithal* or mid-yolked, but soon the protoplasm accumulates at one end and the yolk at the opposite end of the developing embryo, producing a *telolecithal* or end-yolked condition.

2. The fact that segmentation is *unequal*, there being a distinction into large cells or megameres, containing yolk, and purely protoplasmic small cells or micromeres.

3. The formation of a peculiar type of gastrula by epiboly or overgrowth, the ectoderm cells (micromeres) growing over and partly enclosing the endoderm cells (megameres).

4. The presence, for the first time in the ascending animal series, of a true middle embryonic layer or mesoderm. In the other Cœlenterata, as well as in the Sponges, two embryonic layers only are formed, and the intermediate layer of the adult is formed by the comparatively late separation of muscle-cells and connective-tissue fibres either from ectoderm or endoderm. In the present case a definite layer of mesoderm cells becomes separated from the endoderm during the gastrula stage.

2. Distinctive Characters and Classification.

The Ctenophora are pelagic Cœlenterata in which the formation of colonies is entirely unknown. No indication of a polype-stage, so characteristic of the remaining Cœlenterata, can be detected either in the adult or in the embryonic condition. Ciliary movement, instead of being a merely embryonic form of locomotion as in the preceding classes, is retained throughout life, the cilia being fused to form comb-like structures, which are arranged in eight meridional rows or swimming-plates. Tentacles, when present, are usually two in number, situated in opposite (right and left) per-radii, and retractile into pouches. The enteron communicates with the exterior by a large stomodæum which functions as the chief digestive cavity. From the enteron is given off a system of canals, the ultimate branches of which are adradial and have a meridional position, lying beneath the swimming-plates; a single axial canal is continued to the aboral pole, where it commonly opens by two excretory pores. There are no gastric filaments. The central nervous system is represented by a ciliated area on the aboral pole, and is connected with a single sensory organ, having the character of a peculiarly modified lithocyst. The organs of both sexes are lodged in the same individual, the ovaries and testes being formed on opposite sides of the meridional canals. The oosperm undergoes unequal segmentation, the gastrula is formed by epiboly or overgrowth, and a definite mesoderm is established during the gastrula stage. There is no alternation of generations; but in some cases development is accompanied by a well-marked metamorphosis.

The Ctenophora are divisible into four orders as follows:—

ORDER 1.—CYDIPPIDA.

Ctenophora having two tentacles, retractile into sheaths, and unbranched meridional and stomodæal vessels. The body is either circular in section or is slightly compressed in the transverse plane (Figs. 145 and 155).

ORDER 2.—LOBATA.

Ctenophora having numerous non-retractile lateral tentacles contained in a groove: the bases of the two principal tentacles are also present, but have no sheaths. The stomodæal and meridional vessels unite with one another. The body is compressed in the vertical plane, and is produced into two large oral lobes or lappets and into four pointed processes or auricles (Fig. 156).

ORDER 3.—CESTIDA.

Ctenophora having a band-like form owing to the extreme compression of the body in the vertical plane. The bases of the two principal tentacles are present, enclosed in sheaths, and there are also numerous lateral tentacles contained in a groove. Union or anastomosis of the meridional and stomodæal vessels takes place (Fig. 157).

ORDER 4.—BEROÏDA.

Ctenophora having no tentacles. The mouth is very wide, and the gullet occupies the greater part of the interior of the body. The meridional vessels are produced into a complex system of anastomosing branches (Fig. 158).

Systematic Position of the Example.

Hormiphora plumosa is a species of the genus *Hormiphora*, belonging to the family *Pleurobrachiadæ* and to the order *Cydippida*.

The presence of two tentacles, retractile into sheaths, and of unbranched meridional canals places it in the order Cydippida. In this order there are three families, amongst which the *Pleurobrachiadæ* are distinguished by the absence of any compression of the body, the transverse section being circular. The genus *Hormiphora* is distinguished by having a rounded body somewhat produced at the oral pole, and by the aperture of the tentacle-sheath being on a higher level than the funnel. In the species *plumosa* the stomodæal ridges are of a brown colour, and the leaf-like branchlets of the tentacles yellow.

3. General Organisation.

Compared with the two former classes of Cœlenterates, the Hydrozoa and Actinozoa, the organisation of the Ctenophora is remarkably uniform. This is due to the fact that all the species are pelagic, none are colonial, and none form skeletons. Nevertheless a very great diversity of form is produced in virtue of differences in proportion and modifications of the tentacular and canal systems.

The Cydippida agree in all essential respects with Hormiphora, the most important deviation from the type-form being the compression of the body in the transverse plane in some genera, *e.g. Euchlora* (Fig. 155, *2*), the result being an oval instead of a circular transverse section, with the tentacles at the end of the long axis. The aboral pole may be produced into wing-like appendages, as in *Callianira* (*1*), and in *Lampetia* (*3*) the mouth is so dilatable as to form, when expanded, a sole-like plate by which the animal retains itself on the surface of the water or creeps over submarine objects. In *Euchlora rubra* minute nematocysts have been found, and there is reason to believe that it was by the modification of these characteristic cœlenterate organs of offence that the adhesive cells of Ctenophora were evolved.

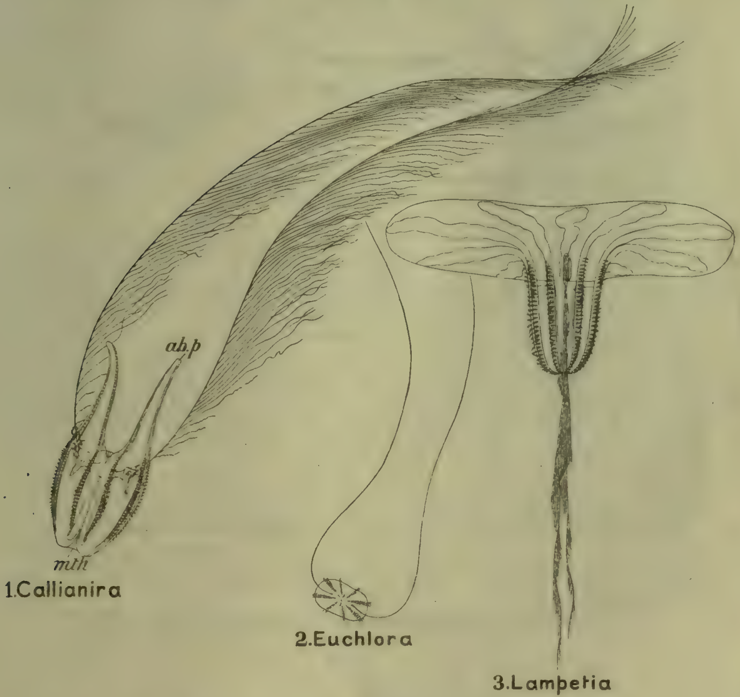


Fig. 155.—Three **Cydippida.** *ab. p.* aboral process ; *mth.* mouth. (After Chun.)

The Lobata, for instance *Deiopea*, are distinguished, as their name implies, by the presence of a pair of large lappets (Fig. 156, *lp.*), into which the oral surface is produced at either end of the vertical plane. Four of the swimming plates are shorter than the others, and at their bases arise elongated processes called *auricles* (*aur.*), which bear swimming-plates. The meridional canals (*mdr.c*) unite with one another, and, with the œsophageal canals, are continued into the lappets, where they become curiously coiled. The principal tentacles are usually absent in the adult, but are represented by their basal portions, which are small, situated at the oral end, and devoid of sheaths. From each tentacle-base grooves are continued along the oral surface to the auricles, and from the grooves depend numerous small lateral tentacles (*l.t.*). In the young condition the Lobata resemble such compressed Cydippida as Euchlora, having a pair of long principal tentacles, no lappets, and unbranched vessels (B).

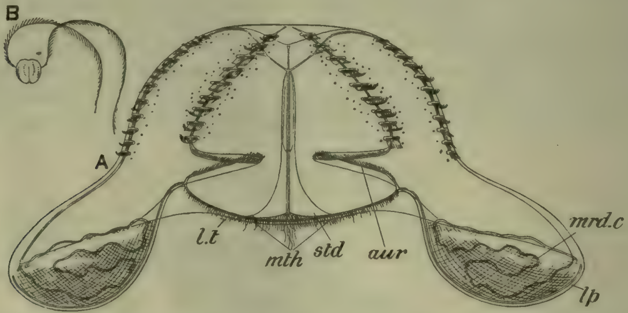


Fig. 156.—**Deiopea kaloknenota**. A, adult; B. young. *aur.* auricle; *lp.* lappet; *l. t.* lateral tentacles; *mrd. c.* meridional canal; *mth.* mouth. (After Chun.)

The *Cestida* are represented by the remarkable "Venus's Girdle" (*Cestus veneris*), a band-shaped Ctenophore (Fig. 157) which sometimes attains a length of 1½ metre, or nearly 5 feet. The body is greatly elongated horizontally in the vertical, and compressed in the transverse, plane, so as to have the form of a ribbon, which progresses by undulations of the whole body as well as by the action of its swimming-plates. Four of the swimming-plates (*s.pl.*^{1}) are very small; the other four (*s.pl.*^{2}) are continued all along the aboral edge of the body. The bases of the two principal tentacles (*t.*) are large and are enclosed in sheaths, and, as in Lobata, numerous small lateral tentacles (*l.t.*) spring from grooves

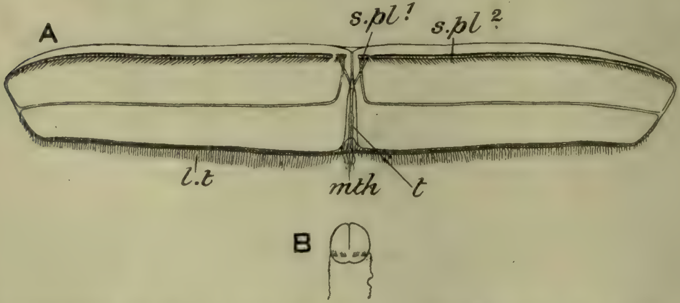


Fig. 157.—**Cestus veneris.** A, adult, B. young. *l. t.* lateral tentacles; *mth.* mouth; *s. pl.*^{1}, *s. pl.*^{2} swimming-plates; *t.* tentacle. (After Chun.)

which, in the present case, are continued the whole length of the oral edge. The young of Cestus (B) resembles a compressed Cydippid which undergoes gradual elongation in the median plane.

Beroë, the principal genus of the Beroïda, has the form of a cylinder (Fig. 158), one end of which is rounded and bears the sense-organ, the other truncated and occupied entirely by the immense mouth (*mth.*). The greater part of the body is taken up by the huge gullet; the infundibulum (*inf.*), per-radial and infundibular canals, &c., being all crowded into a small space at the aboral pole. The meridional canals send off branches which unite with one another, forming a complex network of tubes, and at their oral ends the four meridional canals of each (right and left) side and the corresponding stomodæal canal unite into a horizontal tube, which runs parallel with the margin of the mouth. There is no trace of tentacles either in the adult or in the embryonic condition.

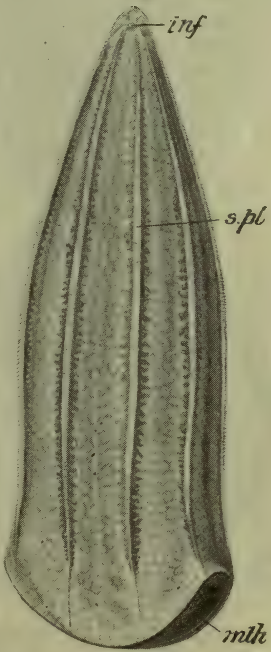


Fig. 158. — **Beroë forskälii** *inf.* infundibulum; *mth.* mouth; *s. pl.* swimming-plates. (After Chun.)

The Ctenophora are usually perfectly transparent, and quite colourless, save for delicate tints of red, brown, or yellow, in the tentacles and stomodæal ridges. Cestus has, however, a delicate violet hue, and when irritated shows a beautiful blue or bluish-green fluorescence. Beroë is coloured rose-pink.

Ctenophora are found in all seas from the arctic regions to the tropics. As is to be expected from their perishable nature, there is no trace of the group in the fossil state.

A very remarkable fact has been made out with regard to *Bolina hydatina*, one of the Lobata, a Ctenophore which attains a diameter of 25–40 mm. While still in the larval or cydippid condition, and not more than 0·5–2 mm. in diameter, it becomes sexually mature, the gonads producing ripe ova and sperms, and the eggs are impregnated and develop in the usual manner. Soon the gonads degenerate, the larva metamorphoses into the adult form, and a second period of sexual maturity supervenes. This precocious ripening of sex-cells occurs, as we shall see, in other animal groups and is called *pædogenesis*.

APPENDIX TO CTENOPHORA

Ctenoplana and Cœloplana.

Before leaving the Ctenophora mention must be made of two remarkable organisms which have been supposed to connect the present class with the Turbellaria Polycladida, or Planarians, a group of worms to be described in the following section.

Ctenoplana (Fig. 159) is a small marine animal, nearly circular in outline, flattened dorso-ventrally, and about 6 mm. in diameter. It has hitherto been found only twice—once in the Indian Ocean and once in New Britain. Instead of swimming freely, like a Ctenophoran, it creeps on its ventral surface, like a worm. In the centre of the dorsal surface is a vesicle (*s.o.*) containing an otolith surrounded by eight radiating ridges (*r.r.*), alternating with which are as many clefts (*cl.*), each containing a protrusible row of stiff processes, resembling the swimming-plates of Ctenophora. The mouth is in the centre of the ventral surface, and leads into a stomach, from which are given off numerous anastomosing canals, as well as a vertical canal which passes upwards and ends beneath the sense-organ. In diverticula of this system are formed the testes, which have independent ducts opening on the exterior. There are two solid tentacles contained in sacs, and a nerve-centre lies beneath the sense-organ (*s.o.*). Beneath the ectoderm is a basement-membrane, which acts as an organ of support, and the muscular system is complex. Near each tentacle is an aperture leading into a branched canal which is probably excretory, like the nephridial tubes of flat-worms.

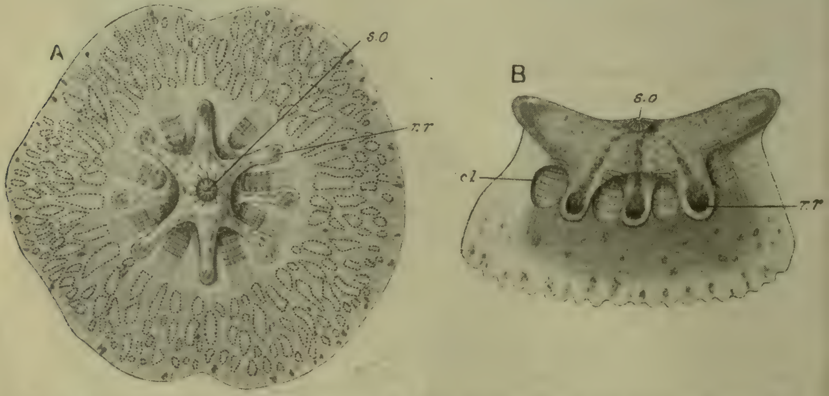


Fig. 159.—**Ctenoplana kowalevskii.** A, from above, B, from the side. *cl.* clefts; *r. r.* radiating ridges; *s. o.* sense-organ. (After Korotneff.)

Cœloplana is found in the Red Sea. It is also flattened dorso-ventrally, but is oval instead of circular in outline, its dimensions being about 6 by 4 mm. It resembles Ctenoplana in its ventral mouth, dorsal sense-organs, paired retractile tentacles, and complex system of anastomosing canals from the stomach. There are, however, no swimming-plates, and the ectoderm is ciliated.

Nothing is known of the development of either genus.

THE RELATIONSHIPS OF THE CŒLENTERATA

There can be little doubt that the lowest cœlenterate form known to us is the simple hydrozoan polype, represented by Hydra and by the hydrula stage of many Hydrozoa. Somewhat more complex, in virtue of its stomodæum and gastric ridges and filaments, is the scyphozoan polype, represented by the Scyphula of Aurelia. Still more complex is the actinozoan polype, or *Actinula*, as it may be called, with its large stomodæum, mesenteries and mesenteric filaments, and elaborate muscular system. Speaking generally, one may say that these three polype-forms represent as many grades of organisation along a single line of descent.

The medusa-form in the Hydrozoa is, as we have seen, readily derived from the hydrula by the widening out of the tentacular region into an umbrella. We may thus conceive of the Trachylinæ, or hydroid medusæ with no fixed zoophyte stage, as being derived from a pelagic hydrula.

The Leptolinæ may be considered to have arisen in consequence of the adoption of asexual multiplication, by budding, during the larval or hydrula stage. Instead of the hydrula giving rise directly to a medusa, we may suppose it to have formed a temporary colony, by budding, after the manner of Hydra, the individual zooids being ultimately set free as medusæ. The next stage would be the establishment of a division of labour, in virtue of which a certain proportion only of the zooids became medusæ, the rest retaining the polype-form, remaining permanently attached, and serving for the nourishment of the asexual colony.

The Hydrocorallina appear to be a special development of the leptoline stock, the nearest affinities of the order being with such forms as Hydractinia.

The Siphonophora may be conceived as having originated from a hydrula specially modified for pelagic life by the conversion of the basal disc into a float—something after the fashion of Minyas (Fig. 139). In such a form extensive budding, accompanied by division of labour, would give rise to the complex siphonophoran colony.

The lowest Scyphozoa are the Stauromedusæ, some of which, however, show evidence of degeneration, so that it is quite possible to conceive them as having been derived from more highly organised forms, instead of springing directly from simple polypes of the Scyphula type. The Cannostomæ, Semostomæ, and Rhizostomæ clearly represent three grades of increasing complexity along the same general line of descent. So little is known of the development of the remaining Scyphozoa that it is advisable to leave their position an open question.

The close similarity of Edwardsia and the Alcyonaria in the number and arrangement of the mesenteries seems to indicate the derivation of both Zoantharia and Alcyonaria from a common ancestor in the form of a simple actinozoan polype or actinula. Edwardsia clearly leads us to the Hexactiniæ or typical Sea-anemones, and the Madreporaria are undoubtedly to be looked upon as skeleton-forming Hexactiniæ.

The relationships of the Ctenophora to the other Cœlenterata are very doubtful. Ctenaria, one of the Anthomedusæ (Fig. 96, *1*), presents some remarkable resemblances to a Cydippid, such as Hormiphora. It has two tentacles, situated in opposite per-radii, and each having at its base a deep pouch in the umbrella resembling the sheath of Horm~~osira~~. There are eight radial canals formed by the bifurcation of four inter-radial offshoots of the stomach, and corresponding with them are eight bands of nematocysts diverging from the apex of the ex-umbrella. If these striking resemblances indicate true homologies we must compare the whole sub-umbrellar cavity of Ctenaria with the stomodæum of Hormiphora, the margin of the bell of Ctenaria with the mouth of Hormiphora, and the mouth of Ctenaria with the aperture between the stomodæum and the infundibulum of Hormiphora. But, as we have seen, the gullet of Ctenophora is a true stomodæum developed as an in-pushing of the oral ectoderm, and has therefore a totally different origin from the sub-umbrella of a medusa. Moreover the tentacles of Ctenaria have no muscular base contained in the sheath, but spring from the margin of the umbrella as in other Hydrozoa: its gonads are developed in the manubrium, not in the radial canals, and there is no trace of an aboral sense-organ.

On the other hand, the resemblance between transverse sections

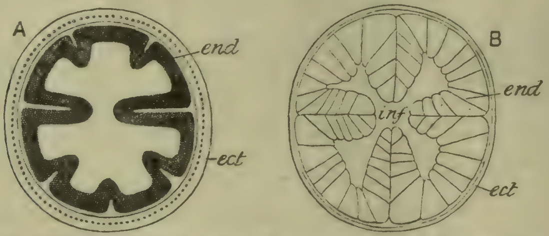


FIG. 160.—Transverse section of embryos of **Actinia** (A) and **Beroë** (B), *ect.* ectoderm; *end.* endoderm; *inf.* infundibulum. (After Chun.)

of an embryo Ctenophore (Fig. 160, B) and of an embryo Actinian (A) is very striking, and the presence of a well-developed stomodæum, and of gonads developed in connection with the endoderm and discharging their products through the mouth, may be taken as further evidences of affinity between the Ctenophora and the Actinozoa.

The special characteristics of the Ctenophora are, however, so numerous and so striking, and their development so utterly unlike that of any of the other Cœlenterata, that in our present state of knowledge it is impossible to determine their affinity with the other classes with any degree of certainty.

As to the orders of Ctenophora, it seems tolerably clear that both Lobata and Cestida are derived from cydippid forms, since they both pass through, in the course of development, a stage closely resembling the lower Cydippida. The Beroïda are more highly organised in certain respects, *e.g.* in the details of their histology, than the other Ctenophora, and it seems quite possible that they may be derived from tentaculate forms.

These relationships are expressed in the following diagram :—

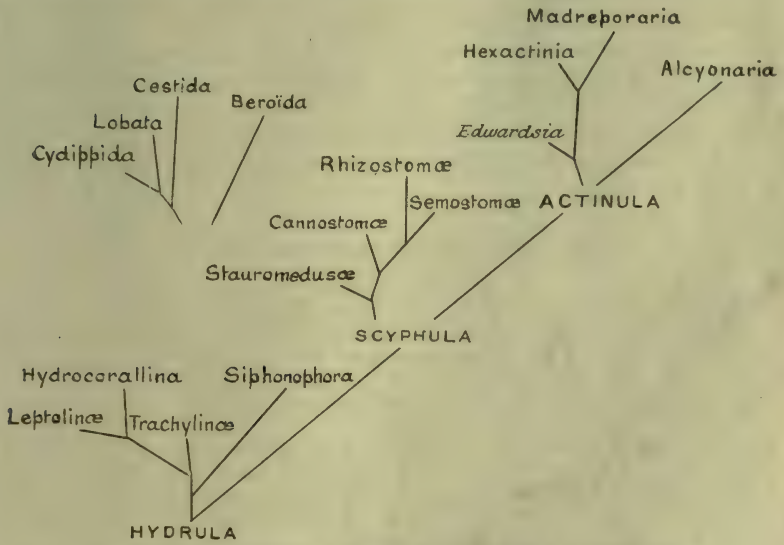

Madreporaria
Hexactinia
Alcyonaria
Cestida
Beroïda
Lobata
Cydippida
Edwardsia
Rhizostomæ
Semostomæ
ACTINULA
Cannostomæ
Stauromedusæ
SCYPHULA
Hydrocorallina
Siphonophora
Leptolinæ
Trachylinæ
HYDRULA

FIG. 161.—Diagram illustrating the mutual relationships of the Cœlenterata.

By many authors the Sponges have been looked upon as so closely related to the Cœlenterata to be capable of being regarded as members of the same great phylum. The points of resemblance are readily to be recognised: the simple structure, with the large central cavity into which a wide opening—the mouth or the osculum, as the case may be—leads; the absence of a well-developed mesoderm, the fixed mode of life, and, associated with it, the tendency to form compound structures or colonies by a process of budding. In addition, the occurrence in both groups of the planula and gastrula larval stages constitutes an important connecting link. But a closer examination of the subject shows that some of these apparent points of resemblance are superficial only, and establishes a number of differences between Sponges and Cœlenterates too important to allow us to suppose that a close relationship exists. One of these differences stands out beyond the others as the most radical. The osculum of a sponge is found, when we trace the development of the larva, to correspond in no sense with the mouth of the cœlenterate. The latter corresponds with the blastopore or gastrula mouth. In the Porifera the gastrula mouth is (Fig. 82, p. 114) found in all cases in which the details have been made out with certainty to become applied to the substratum when the larva fixes itself, and the osculum is developed at the opposite extremity of the body. This alone, apart from important differences in the adult structure, such as the presence in the wall of the sponge of the system of inhalant apertures, the presence of the peculiar collared endoderm cells, and the absence of stinging capsules would suffice to remove the Sponges from the Cœlenterata, and place them in a phylum apart. On the other hand, that the Sponges and Cœlenterates were originally derived by a common root from the Protozoa—*i.e.* possessed a common metazoan ancestor—is rendered very probable when we consider the similarity that exists between the members of the two groups in the earlier stages of their development.

APPENDIX TO THE CŒLENTERATA

THE MESOZOA.

Under the designation MESOZOA have been comprised certain lowly organised animal forms, formerly supposed to afford us something of the nature of a connecting link between the Protozoa and the Metazoa, but now more generally looked upon as degenerate members of the latter sub-division. It has been proposed to term them the Planuloidea, from the resemblance which they bear to the Planula larva of the Cœlenterates.

They are all multicellular, with an ectoderm composed of a single layer of cells ciliated in whole or in part, and an endoderm either composed of a single elongated cell or of several cells ; a mesoglœa is not represented. The Mesozoa comprise three families, the *Dicyemidæ*, the *Heterocyemidæ*, and the *Orthonectidæ*, all the members of which are internal parasites.

The *Dicyemidæ* are parasites in the kidneys of various Cuttle-fishes and Octopi (*Cephalopoda*). The animal (Fig. 162), the length of which is between 0·75 and 6 or 7 millimetres, consists of a head-part and an elongated body. The form of the head varies a good deal, according to age : in young specimens it is isotropic (*i.e.* symmetrical around the long axis) ; in the adult condition ventral and dorsal sides are distinguishable. It consists of a swollen disc of four cells and a ring of four or five *pole cells*. The cells of the head all bear cilia, which are shorter and thicker than those of the body cells.

The body consists of a single large axial endoderm cell and of a single layer of ectoderm cells, which completely invest the axial cell. The ectoderm cells which follow immediately on the head are distinguishable from the rest by their granular contents, and by their being dilated internally in such a way that the apex of the axial cell is constricted. Originally all the ectoderm cells are cubical; afterwards they become drawn out so as to be more spindle-shaped, and at the same time become bent in such a way as to present a concave internal and a convex external surface; the latter is always covered with long cilia. The two most posterior are usually semi-cylindrical and surround the posterior end of the endoderm cell.

The endoderm cell is either almost completely cylindrical or spindle-shaped. It is covered in its entire extent by ectoderm cells. There is a differentiated cortical layer, beneath which the finely granular gelatinous contents are at first homogeneous, but afterwards become vacuolated. In the middle of the cell is a large oval or ellipsoidal nucleus. In addition to the nucleus of the endoderm cell itself other nuclei also occur in it; these are the nuclei of the *germ-cells*.

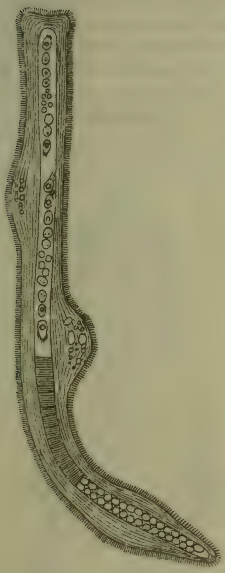


Fig. 162.—**Dicyema paradoxum,** with infusoriform embryos. (From Bronn's *Thierreich.*)

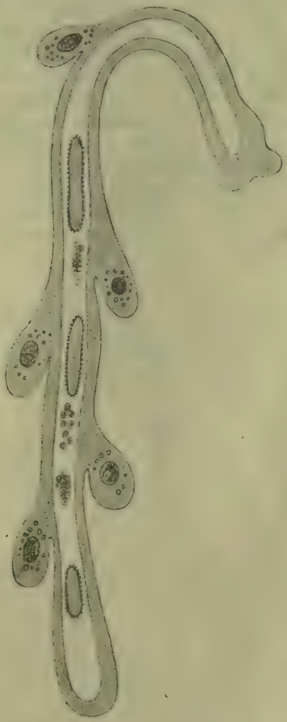


Fig. 163.—**Dicyema paradoxum,** with vermiform embryos. (From Bronn's *Thierreich.*)

Two forms of adults are to be distinguished, termed respectively the the *nematogene* and the *rhombogene:* the former (Fig. 163) give rise to *vermiform,* latter (Fig. 162) to *infusoriform* embryos. The rhombogenes are shorter and thicker than the nematogenes; the number of ectoderm cells is smaller, and the germ-cells small and produced endogenously in the axial cell, instead of being formed in special cells enclosed in the axial. The rhombogene and nematogene forms may be phases in the life-history of the same individual; but some always possess the nematogene form.

The first-formed germ-cells are derived by cell-division, accompanied by mitosis, from the nucleus of the axial cell. Subsequently they increase in numbers by division. A germ destined to give rise to one of the vermiform embryos goes through a process similar to segmentation. Of the cells thus formed one gives rise to the axial cell; the others, increasing in numbers and becoming smaller, gradually grow over the axial cell until they at length completely enclose it. This process is a simple form of epiboly, and the part which is last to be covered by ectoderm cells (the posterior end) corresponds to the blastopore. The embryo increases greatly in length, and escapes from the interior of the parent by perforating the body-wall.

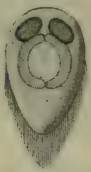


FIG. 164.—Embryo of **Dicyema paradoxum.** (From Bronn's *Thierreich.*)

The germ destined to give rise to an infusoriform embryo likewise undergoes segmentation and epibolic gastrulation. The fully formed infusoriform embryo (Fig. 164) is pear-shaped, the broader (head) end being that which is directed forward in swimming, and is completely bilaterally symmetrical. The ectoderm cells enclose an axial cell containing several smaller multi-nucleated cells which can be ejected—apparently voluntarily. The fate of these embryos is not known; it has been suggested that they may be males, and that the cells thrown out may be male cells.

The *Heterocyemidæ*, which are also parasites of the Cephalopoda, resemble the Dicyemidæ in most respects, but want the head.

The family *Orthonectidæ* comprises only one genus—*Rhopalura*—with two species, one of which is parasitic in the genital pouches of an Ophiuroid, while the other is a parasite of a Nemertean worm. In form they are spindle-shaped,

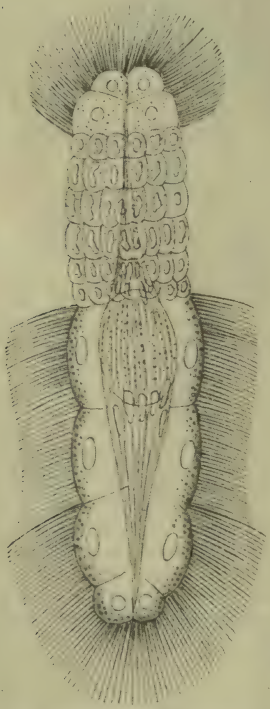


FIG. 165.—**Rhopalura Giardii,** male. (From Bronn's *Thierreich.*)

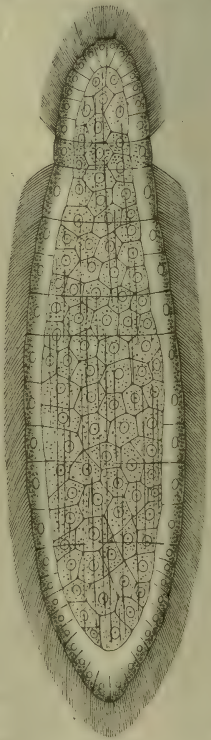


FIG. 166.—**Rhopalura Giardii,** female. (From Bronn's *Thierreich.*)

usually rounded at the ends, without any trace of bilateral symmetry. The body is divided into several rings or segments. Beneath the single layer of cells constituting the ectoderm is a layer of muscular fibres. In the centre is a mass of endoderm cells. There are distinct male (Fig. 165) and female (Fig. 166) individuals, the former fusiform in shape, the latter oval, cylindrical, or compressed. In one of the species there are two different forms of females, the one producing only male young, the latter only female.

Motile sperms are developed in the interior of a mass of sperm-cells—the *testis*. When mature these pass out between the muscular fibres; the ectoderm cells disintegrate and the sperms escape, the animals perishing. In the cylindrical female the conical anterior segment of the body becomes separated off from the rest as a sort of operculum, permitting of the discharge of the ova. In the compressed forms the body becomes broken up into fragments, in which the ova lie embedded. After impregnation the eggs are developed in the interior of protoplasmic masses, one such mass in some cases containing only male or only female embryos, in other cases both. The male ovum (Fig. 167) divides into two cells, a smaller and a larger; the latter remains for a time undivided, but subsequently segments to form the cells of the endoderm. The former at once divides to form a number of small cells, which grow over the large cell to form a continuous ectoderm layer by a process of epiboly. There is some discrepancy between the statements of different authors as to the development of the females; but there appears to be unequal segmentation followed by epiboly, the peripheral layer of the endoderm afterwards giving rise to the middle fibrous stratum (mesoderm).

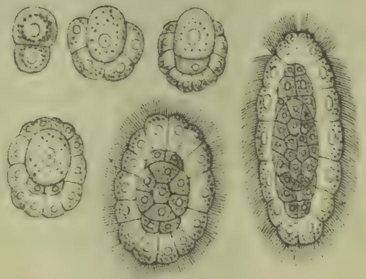


Fig. 167.—Stages in the development of **Rhopalura Giardii.** (From Bronn's *Thierreich.*)

SALINELLA.

Perhaps having more claim than the Orthonectidæ and Dicyemidæ to a position intermediate between the Protozoa and the Metazoa is a remarkable infusorian-

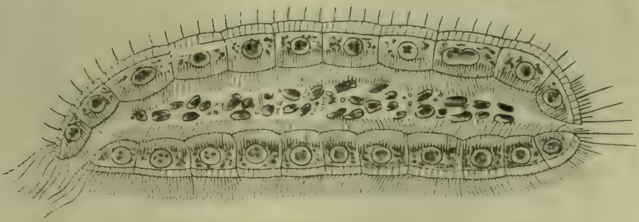


Fig. 168.—**Salinella,** longitudinal section. (After Frenzel.)

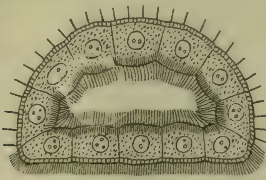


Fig. 169.—**Salinella,** transverse section. (After Frenzel.)

like animal, *Salinella*, found in brackish water from the Argentine Republic. Salinella (Figs. 168 and 169) is a minute animal in the form of a somewhat depressed cylinder, open at both ends and with a wall composed of a single layer of cells. The anterior end is somewhat pointed; around the anterior opening or *mouth*, which is ventrally directed, is a circlet of fifteen to twenty long whip-like cilia. The posterior aperture (*anus*), which is usually closed, is surrounded by a few stiff setæ. The ventral surface is flattened, and is covered with fine vibratile cilia, while on the dorsal surface and the sides are regularly arranged rows of straight setæ (non-motile cilia). The internal cavity (*enteron*) is found to contain sand, plant fragments, and Bacteria; its surface is beset with long cilia. Multiplication takes place by transverse fission; and a process of conjugation followed by encystation has also been observed.

TRICHOPLAX.

Another aberrant multicellular animal having affinities with the Protozoa, and not assignable to any of the recognised groups of the Metazoa, is *Trichoplax* (Fig. 170). Trichoplax is a compressed plate-like body of irregular and extremely variable shape, but circular in the resting condition, without trace of radial or bilateral symmetry. The whole surface is covered with cilia, by means of which the animal performs slow gliding movements, always in close contact with the substratum. Frequently it puts forth a process, or more than one, which may extend to a considerable distance and assume a variety of shapes. There are three distinct cell-layers—an upper epidermis, consisting of flattened cells closely united by their edges so as to form a syncytium like that of the ectoderm of Sponges; a lower epidermis, composed of pyramidal cells, the apices of which are produced and unite with the elements of the middle layer; and a middle layer of spindle-shaped or slightly branched cells, which anastomose to form a network containing in its meshes hyaline, fluid ground-substance. In addition to their nuclei, these cells of the middle layer enclose several kinds of highly refracting granules and spherules. There are no stinging-cells, and no trace of internal organs of any kind. Little hyaline papillæ which appear round the edges may be for temporary fixation. Multiplication by simple fission has alone been observed.

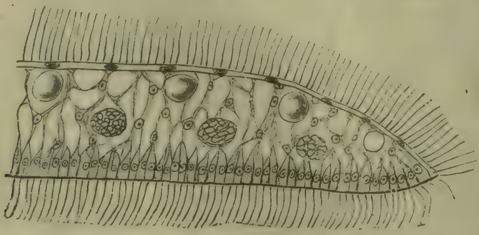


FIG. 170.—**Trichoplax adhærens,** part of a vertical section. (From Lang, after F. E. Schulze.)

The position of Trichoplax and of the nearly allied *Treptoplax* is quite uncertain. It cannot be a larval form, as it has been kept under observation for nearly a year without exhibiting any change. It is possible that both it and *Salinella*, neither of which have been observed in quite natural circumstances,[1] may be abnormal modifications brought about by the influence of exceptional conditions.

---

[1] Trichoplax has only been observed in marine aquaria; Salinella only in water in which salts from certain saline springs in South America had been dissolved.

SECTION V

PHYLUM PLATYHELMINTHES

A NUMBER of classes of Metazoa, some a little, others very decidedly, higher in organisation than the Cœlenterata, are commonly regarded as constituting one great sub-kingdom or phylum—the *Vermes* or Worms. The groups ordinarily referred to the Vermes differ, however, very widely from one another: points of agreement, except such as are merely negative, are, in fact, frequently hardly recognisable: and rather than group together under one common designation such a heterogeneous assemblage of forms, it seems better to avoid the term *Vermes* altogether and to endeavour to divide the "worms" into phyla the members of which shall have points of positive resemblance to one another. The four phyla *Platyhelminthes*, *Nemathelminthes*, *Trochelminthes*, *Molluscoida*, and *Annulata*, with their appendices, all consist of forms which are or have been comprised in the Vermes. They differ from the Cœlenterata in the presence of three well-developed body-layers—of which the middle one, or mesoderm, is of relatively predominant importance; and, for the most part, in the much higher stage of complexity attained by the various systems of organs. The first four phyla present no metameric segmentation: in the Annulata, metamerism is more or less strongly pronounced.

The *Platyhelminthes* or Flat-Worms are a group of soft-bodied, bilateral, usually flattened animals, which are devoid of true metameric segmentation (p. 41). With a sufficient degree of uniformity of structure to render the phylum a fairly compact and well-defined one, there is yet a considerable range in complexity, from the simplest forms, certain of which have been supposed to be nearly connected with the Ctenophora among the Cœlenterata, to the highest, which have all the various systems of organs very much more highly developed. The body is built up from three embryonic layers—*ectoderm*, *mesoderm*, and *endoderm*—as in all higher groups of animals. An excretory vascular system of a peculiar kind—the *water-vascular system*—is present in all members of the phylum. A body-cavity or cœlome (p. 279) is not present, the spaces between the various organs and the wall of the body being filled up with a peculiar form of connective-tissue termed the *parenchyma*. The egg is composite, the egg-shell enclosing not only the oosperm or impregnated ovum, but a quantity of nutrient material or *food-yolk*, derived in most instances from a special set of glands, the *yolk* or *vitelline glands*.

The main features which distinguish the Platyhelminthes from the Cœlenterata are, the pronounced bilateral symmetry with the many secondary features which it involves, the presence of a middle embryonic layer or mesoderm, and the non-occurrence of fixed colonies formed by budding.

1. Examples of the Phylum.

i. A Fresh-water Triclad (*Planaria* or *Dendrocœlum*).[1]

General Features.—Species of fresh-water Planarians of the genera *Planaria* and *Dendrocœlum* are common in the mud at the bottom of ponds of fresh-water in all quarters of the globe. They are small, thin, flattened worms a few millimetres in length, broader at one end, the *anterior*, than at the other, the *posterior*, which is more or less pointed. The animal (Figs. 171–173) is very readily recognised to be *bilaterally symmetrical*, with an *upper* or *dorsal* and a *lower* or *ventral* surface, *right* and *left* borders, and *anterior* and *posterior* ends. The colour varies in different species and in different individuals; but is usually gray, red, brown, or black. Movements of locomotion in the direction of the long axis of the body are recognisable in the living animal. Sometimes this is a steady gliding movement, which is brought about by the action of a coating of vibratile cilia on the surface; sometimes the worm moves along somewhat after the fashion of a Leech, the ventral surface of the anterior end of the body being of a sticky adhesive character, and performing the part of the anterior sucker of the Leech.

Close to the anterior extremity on the dorsal surface are two rounded black spots, the *eyes* (Fig. 172). On the ventral surface, a considerable distance behind the middle of the body, is the opening of the *mouth* (Fig. 171, *mo.*), and further back still, near the posterior pointed end, is a smaller median opening, the *genital aperture* (Fig. 173).

Digestive System.—The mouth (Fig. 171, *mo.*) leads through a short mouth-cavity into a cylindrical thick-walled chamber, the

---

[1] The account is sufficiently general to apply to species of either of these genera.

pharynx (*ph.*), which is highly mobile, and is capable of being thrust out as a *proboscis* through the mouth, beyond which it may then be extended to a relatively considerable distance. When retracted it lies within an enclosing muscular *sheath*. The

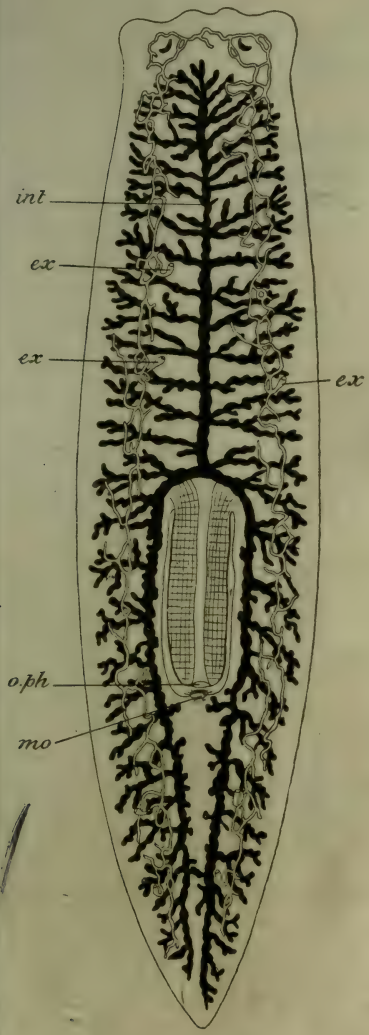


FIG. 171.—**Planaria.** Digestive and excretory systems. *ex.* openings of excretory system; *int.* intestine; *mo.* mouth; *o. ph.* opening of pharynx. (After Jijima and Hatschek.)

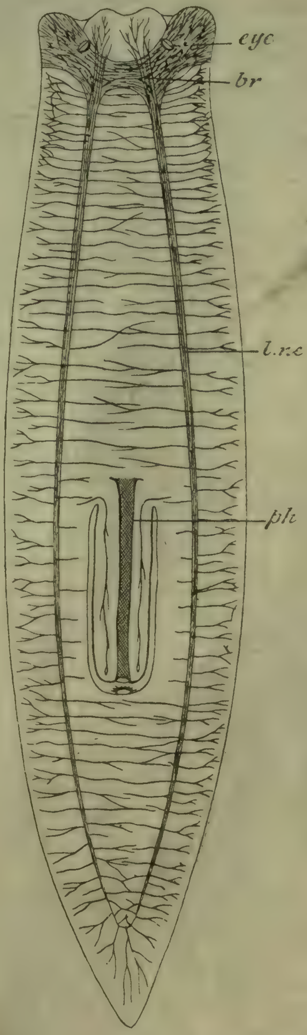


FIG. 172.—**Planaria.** Nervous system. *br.* brain; *eye* eye; *l. ne.* longitudinal nerve; *ph.* pharynx. (After Jijima and Hatschek.)

cavity of the pharynx opens in front into the *intestine* (*int.*), which almost immediately divides into three narrow main branches, one running forward in the middle line, the other two running backwards. Each of these three main branches gives off numerous smaller branches, which in turn become branched, so that the whole intestine forms a ramifying system, extending throughout the greater part of the body; all the branches terminate blindly, an anal aperture being absent.

A system of vessels—the **water-vessels** or vessels of the *excretory system* (*ex.*)—sends ramifications through all parts of the body. There are two main, considerably coiled, longitudinal trunks, right and left, which open externally on the dorsal surface by means of several minute pores; in front they are connected together by a transverse vessel. Each main trunk gives origin to a number of branches, which in turn give off a system of extremely fine *capillary vessels*, many of which terminate in *flame-cells* (Fig. 203, p. 253). A flame-cell is a nucleated cell having in its protoplasm a small space, into which one of the capillaries leads; in this space lies a bundle of vibratile cilia, or a single thick cilium, which performs regular undulating movements, giving it somewhat the appearance of a flickering candle-flame. Cilia also occur in the course of some of the capillaries. This system of vessels is usually regarded as excretory; but it may also have a respiratory function.

A well-developed **nervous system** (Fig. 172) is present. At the anterior end is a central knot of nerve-matter, the *brain* (*br*), from which proceed backwards two *longitudinal nerve-cords* (*l. ne.*). The brain consists partly of transverse fibres connecting together the two longitudinal nerve-cords, partly of groups of nerve-cells situated at the ends, or in the course of, the nerve-fibres. The nerve-cords give off both internally and externally numerous transverse branches, which divide into finer twigs; the internal branches of the two cords frequently anastomose, thus forming *commissures* or connecting nerve-strands between the two. A number of nerves extend forwards to the anterior margin, which is highly sensitive.

Reproductive System.—The reproductive organs (Fig. 173) are *hermaphrodite* or *monœcious* in their arrangement, both male and female organs occurring in the same individual. The genital aperture leads into a small chamber, the *genital cloaca*, which is common to both the male and the female reproductive systems.

The male part of the apparatus consists of *testes*, *vasa deferentia*, and *cirrus* or *penis*. The testes (*tes.*) are numerous rounded glands, situated near the right and left borders. Two ducts, the right and left *vasa deferentia* (*v.d.*), run backwards from the neighbourhood of the testes and unite in the middle line posteriorly. The median duct formed by the union of the two vasa deferentia traverses a protrusible muscular organ, the *cirrus* or *penis* (*p*), to open into the genital cloaca. At the base of the penis, where the vasa differentia meet, the median canal is slightly enlarged to form a rounded dilatation, the *vesicula seminalis.* Into the median canal open the narrow ducts of a number of unicellular glands, the *prostate glands* (*pr*).

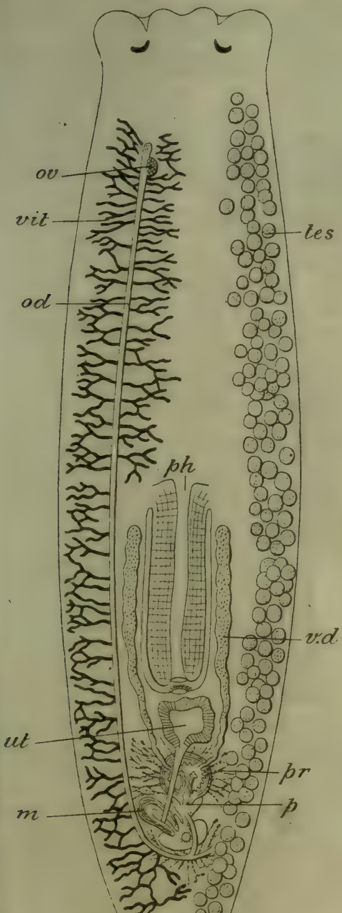


FIG. 173.—**Planaria.** Reproductive system. *m.* muscular sac; *ov.* ovary; *ph.* pharynx; *p.* penis; *pr.* prostate; *tes.* testes; *ut.* uterus; *v.d.* vas deferens; *vit.* vitelline glands. (After Jijima and Hatschek.)

The female part of the reproductive apparatus consists of *ovaries, oviducts, vitelline glands, uterus,* and *muscular sac.* The *ovaries* (*ov.*) are two in number—small rounded bodies situated near the anterior end, each connected with an elongated duct, the *oviduct.* The two oviducts (*od.*) unite posteriorly to form a short median *common oviduct* opening into the genital cloaca. With this cavity are connected also the *uterus* (*ut.*), a median rounded chamber, and a thick-walled muscular body, the *muscular sac* (*m.*). Numerous branching tubes—the *vitelline glands* (*vit.*)—open into the oviducts.

Reproduction is entirely sexual. The oosperm is enclosed within a protecting case or shell, which contains also a quantity of *food-yolk* derived from the vitelline glands. When the larva has reached a certain stage it develops a temporary larval mouth and gullet and swallows the food-yolk, by the aid of which it grows rapidly. The larval mouth disappears, and a new one—the permanent mouth—is developed in its place. When the embryo leaves the shell it has assumed the characteristic shape of the parent.

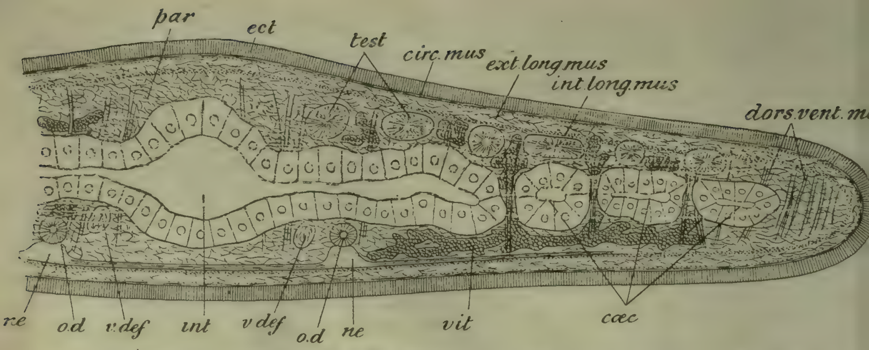


FIG. 174.—Transverse section of a **Planarian.** *circ. mus.* circular muscular fibres; *cæc.* intestinal cœca; *dors. vent. mus.* dorso-ventral muscular fibres; *ect.* ectoderm; *ext. long. mus.* external layer of longitudinal muscular fibres; *int.* central lumen of the intestine; *int. long. mus.* internal layer of longitudinal muscular fibres; *ne.* nerve-cords; *o. d.* oviducts; *par.* parenchyma; *test.* testes; *v. def.* vas deferens; *vit.* vitelline glands. (From Hatschek's *Lehrbuch.*)

ii. The Liver-Fluke (*Distomum hepaticum*).

General Features.—The Liver-Fluke of the Sheep, which is to be found in the interior of the larger bile-ducts of the infested animal, is a soft-bodied worm of flattened leaf-like shape (Fig. 175), with a triangular process, the *head-lobe*, projecting from the broader end. The symmetry of the parts is distinctly bilateral as in the Planarian. Externally the body is quite equilateral, the right and left portions exactly balancing one another, but, as will appear subsequently, this complete symmetry does not extend to all the internal organs.

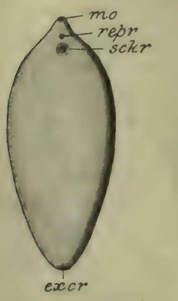


FIG. 175.—**Distomum hepaticum,** natural size. *excr.* excretory pore; *mo.* mouth; *repr.* reproductive aperture; *sckr.* posterior sucker.

The surface is devoid of vibratile cilia, but is covered with innumerable minute *spinules* or *papillæ*, which are prolongations of the homogeneous external layer or *cuticle* investing the whole animal. At the extreme anterior end of the triangular head-lobe is the small opening of the *mouth* (*mo.*) surrounded by a muscular *oral sucker.* Some distance back on the ventral surface, just behind the head-lobe, is a second much larger *posterior sucker* (*sckr.*). Between the two suckers, but rather nearer the posterior one, is a median aperture, the *genital opening* (*repr.*), through which a curved muscular process, the *cirrus* or *penis* may be protruded. In the middle of the posterior end of the body is a minute opening, the *excretory pore* (*excr.*).

Body-wall.—The body-wall (Fig. 176) is found on section to comprise three layers:—(1) A homogeneous *cuticle* (*cut.*) of which the spinules (*sp.*) are special developments; (2) a layer of circularly disposed muscular fibres (*circ. mus.*); (3) a layer of longitudinal muscular fibres (*long. mus.*). A cellular epidermis is wanting. Beneath the muscles are numerous *unicellular glands* (*gl.*), the ducts of which, in the form of processes of the cells, open on the outer surface. Internally, the interspaces between the organs are filled by a peculiar form of connective-tissue, the *parenchyma*.

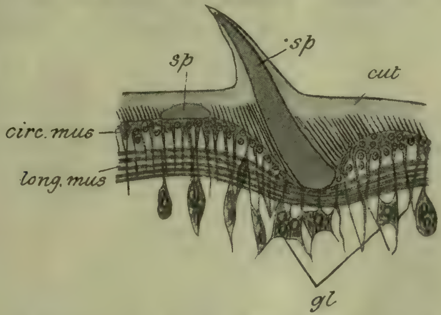


FIG. 176.—**Distomum hepaticum.** Section of the integument. *circ. mus.* layer of circular muscular fibres; *cut.* cuticle; *gl.* unicellular glands; *long. mus.* layer of longitudinal muscular fibres; *sp.* spinules. (After Braun.)

Digestive System.—The mouth (Fig. 177) leads to a small rounded bulb-like body, the *pharynx* (*ph.*), with thick muscular walls and a small cavity. From this a short passage, the *œsophagus* leads to the *intestine.* The latter (*int.*) is frequently a very conspicuous structure, owing to its being filled with the dark biliary matter on which the Fluke feeds. It divides almost immediately into two main limbs, right and left, and from each of these are given off, both internally and externally, a number of blind branches or *cœca*, those on the inner side being short and simple, while those on the outer side are longer and branched. The two limbs of the intestine with their branches thus form, as in the Planarian, a complicated system, the ramifications of which extend throughout the whole of the body. There is no aperture of communication between the intestine and the exterior, the only external opening of the alimentary system being through the mouth.

A branching system of vessels—the **water-vessels** or vessels of the **excretory system**—ramify throughout the body. A longitudinal *main trunk* opens behind by means of the excretory pore already mentioned as occurring at the posterior end. In front it gives off four large trunks, each of which branches repeatedly, the branches giving off smaller vessels, and these again still smaller twigs, until we reach a system of extremely fine microscopic vessels or *capillaries.* Each of these ends internally in a slight enlargement situated in the interior of a large cell, an *excretory cell* or *flame-cell*, similar to the flame-cells of the Planarian.

The Liver-Fluke has a well differentiated **nervous system,** which shares in the prevailing bilateral arrangement of the parts. The central part of this system consists of a ring of nerve matter which surrounds the œsophagus, and presents two lateral thickenings, or *ganglia*, containing nerve-cells, and a single ganglion in the middle line below. From this are given off a number of nerves, of which the chief are a pair of *lateral cords* running back to the posterior end and giving off numerous branches. There are no organs of special sense.

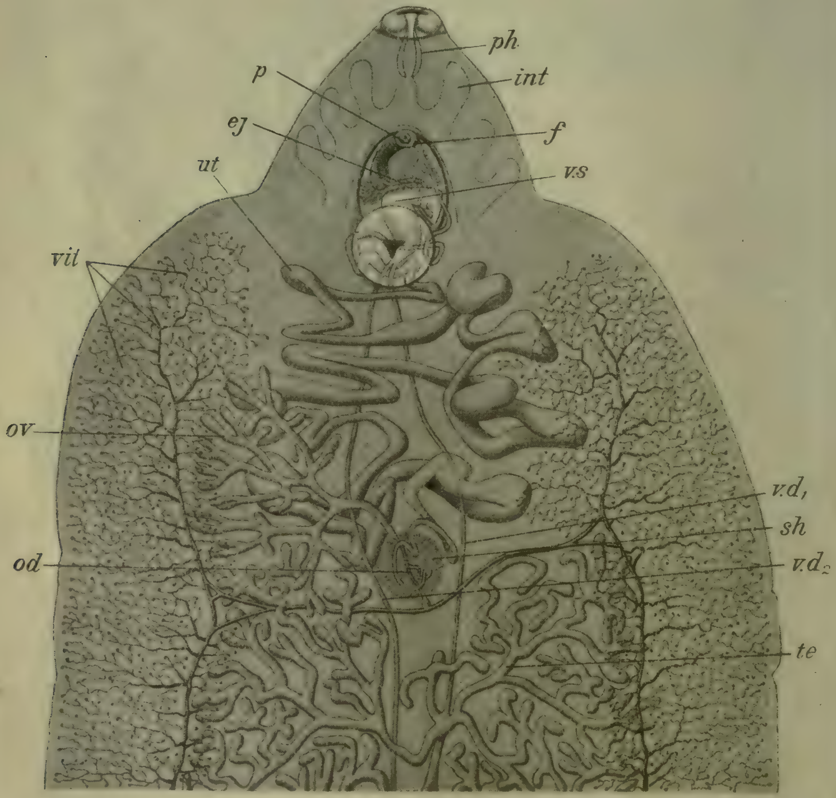


FIG. 177.—**Distomum hepaticum.** Internal organisation. General view of the anterior portion of the body, showing the various systems of organs as seen from the ventral aspect. *ej.* ejaculatory duct; *f.* female reproductive aperture; *int.* anterior portion of the intestine (the rest is not shown); *od.* commencement of oviduct; *ov.* ovary; *p.* penis; *ph.* pharynx; *sh.* shell gland; *to.* testes; *ut.* uterus; vd^1. left vas deferens; vd^2. right vas deferens; *vit.* lobes of vitelline glands; *vs.* vesicula seminalis. (After Sommer.)

The **reproductive organs** (Fig. 177) are constructed on the hermaphrodite plan, *i.e.* both male and female organs occur in the same individual. The male part of the apparatus consists of *testes*, *vasa deferentia*, and *cirrus*. The *testes* (*to.*) are two greatly ramified tubes, which occupy the middle part of the body, one situated behind the other. From each testis there runs forwards a duct, the *vas deferens*, the two vasa deferentia (*v.d.*) opening anteriorly into an elongated sac, the *vesicula seminalis* (*v. s.*), from which a narrow tube—the *ejaculatory duct* (Fig. 178 *ej.d.*)—leads to the male aperture at the extremity of the penis. The female part of the reproductive apparatus consists of a single *ovary*, an *oviduct*, a *uterus*, *vitelline glands*, *vitelline ducts*, and *shell-glands*. The *ovary* (Fig. 177, *ov.*) is a branched tube situated on the right-hand side in front of the testes; the branches open into a common narrow tube, the *oviduct* (*od.*). The *vitelline glands* (*vit.*) consist of very numerous, minute, rounded follicles, which occupy a considerable zone in the lateral regions of the body. On each side are two large ducts, anterior and posterior, uniting to form a single main lateral duct, right or left; and these run nearly transversely inwards to open into a small sac, the *yolk reservoir*. From this a single median *vitelline duct* runs backwards for a short distance to join the oviduct. Around the junction are grouped a mass of unicellular *shell-glands* (*sh. gl.*), each of which is produced into a narrow process or duct opening into the end of the oviduct or the beginning of the uterus. The *uterus* (*ut.*) is a wide convoluted tube, formed by the union of the oviduct and median vitelline duct; in front it opens close to the base of the penis. When the penis is withdrawn, a small cavity, the *genital sinus* or *cloaca*, is formed, common to the external apertures of both male and female ducts. A canal, termed the *canal of Laurer*, leads from the junction of the oviduct and median vitelline duct to open externally on the dorsal surface.

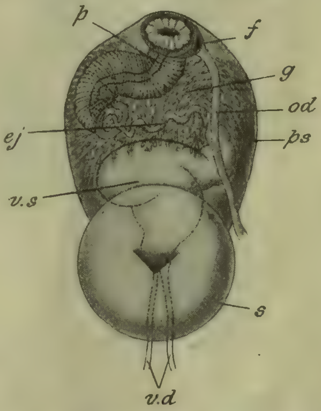


FIG. 178.—**Distomum hepaticum.** Terminal part of the reproductive apparatus. *ej.* ejaculatory duct; *f.* female aperture; *g.* unicellular glands; *od.* terminal part of oviduct; *p.* penis; *ps.* penis sheath; *s.* sucker; *v. d.* vasa deferentia; *v. s.* vesicula seminalis. (After Sommer.)

Development.—Each ovum on impregnation becomes surrounded by a mass of vitelline matter or *yolk* derived from the yolk-glands. It then becomes enclosed in a chitinous shell, the substance of which is derived from the shell-glands. The completed egg remains for a little time in the uterus while the contained ovum is undergoing the process of segmentation; eventually it is discharged, and passing down the bile-ducts of the Sheep into the intestine, reaches the exterior with the fæces. A portion of the egg-shell at one end then becomes separated off as a sort of lid or *operculum*, and gives exit to the contained embryo. This, the *ciliated embryo* (Fig. 179, *A*), is a somewhat conical body covered all over with vibratile cilia, and with two spots of pigment, the *eye-spots* (*eye*), near the broader or anterior end, which is provided with a triangular head-lobe (*pap.*). There is no vestige of internal organs, with the exception of a pair of flame-cells. The ciliated larva swims about in water, or moves over damp herbage for a time, and perishes unless it happens to reach a Pond-snail (*Lymnæa*) ~~or a Land-snail (*Helix*),~~ as a parasite of which it is alone able to enter upon the next phase in its life-history. When it meets with the Snail, the embryo bores into it by means of the head-lobe. Established in the interior of the

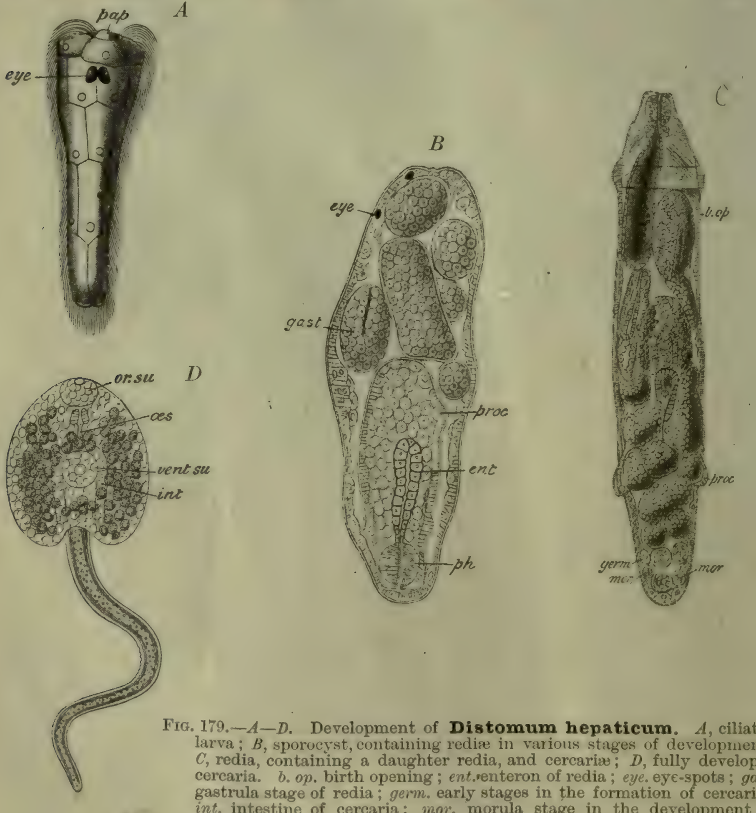


FIG. 179.—*A*—*D*. Development of **Distomum hepaticum.** *A*, ciliated larva; *B*, sporocyst, containing rediæ in various stages of development; *C*, redia, containing a daughter redia, and cercariæ; *D*, fully developed cercaria. *b. op.* birth opening; *ent.* enteron of redia; *eye.* eye-spots; *gast.* gastrula stage of redia; *germ.* early stages in the formation of cercariæ; *int.* intestine of cercaria; *mor.* morula stage in the development of cercariæ; *œs.* œsophagus; *or. su.* oral sucker; *pap.* head-papilla of ciliated embryo; *ph.* pharynx; *proc.* processes of redia; *vent. su.* ventral sucker. (After Thomas.)

snail, it loses its ectoderm and grows rapidly into the form of an elongated sac, the *sporocyst* (Fig. 179, *B*), with an internal cavity, with remnants of the eye-spots, and with flame-cells. The sporocyst may divide into two similar bodies by a process of transverse fission, but this is exceptional. Eventually cells are budded off from the layer that lines the internal cavity of the sporocyst, and these undergo a process of segmentation similar to the holoblastic segmentation of the impregnated ovum, resulting in the formation of a morula, which becomes converted into a stage resembling a gastrula. The gastrula elongates and gives rise to a body called a *redia* (*C*), which begins to move about, and eventually forces its way out of the interior of the sporocyst. When fully formed, the redia is a cylindrical body with a pair of short processes (*proc.*) near the posterior end, and with a circular ridge near the anterior end (*C*). It possesses a mouth leading to a pharynx and simple sac-like intestine, and there is a system of excretory vessels. In the interior of the redia cells are budded off and develop into gastrulæ, exactly as in the case of the sporocyst; these gastrulæ either develop into a fresh generation of rediæ, or give rise to bodies termed *cercariæ*. The latter (*D*) are provided with long tails: they have anterior and posterior suckers, and a mouth and pharynx, followed by a bifid intestine. An opening, *birth-opening* (*b. op.*), is formed in the wall of the redia near the circular ridge, and through this the cercariæ escape; they move actively by means of their tails, and force their way out of the body of the Snail. They then, losing the tail, become encysted, attached to blades of grass or leaves of other herbage. The transference of the larval Fluke in this stage to its final host, the Sheep, is effected if the latter swallow the grass on which the cercaria has become encysted. The young Fluke then escapes from the cyst and forces its way up the bile-ducts to the liver, in which it rapidly grows, and, developing reproductive organs, attains the adult condition.

iii. The Common Tape-Worm of Man (*Tænia solium*).

General Features.—*Tænia solium* occurs as a parasite in the intestine of man. It has the form of a narrow ribbon (Fig. 180), which may attain a length of several yards, attached at one end to the wall of the intestine, the remainder hanging freely in the interior. Towards the attached end the ribbon becomes very much narrower than it is towards the opposite end; and at this narrower extremity is a small, rounded, terminal knob, which is known as the *head* or *scolex;* the rest of the animal is termed the *body* or *strobila;* the narrow part immediately behind the head is sometimes termed the *neck*. The attachment of the Tape-worm to the wall of the intestine is slight and temporary; it is effected by certain organs of adhesion, the *hooks* and *suckers* on the head.

The *head* (Fig. 181) may be roughly described as pear-shaped, but becomes four-sided at the broader end. In the middle of this broader, anterior end is a rounded prominence, the *rostellum*, round the base of which there is a double row of usually about twenty-eight curved and pointed chitinous hooks. The rostellum is capable of being protruded and retracted to a slight extent, and the position

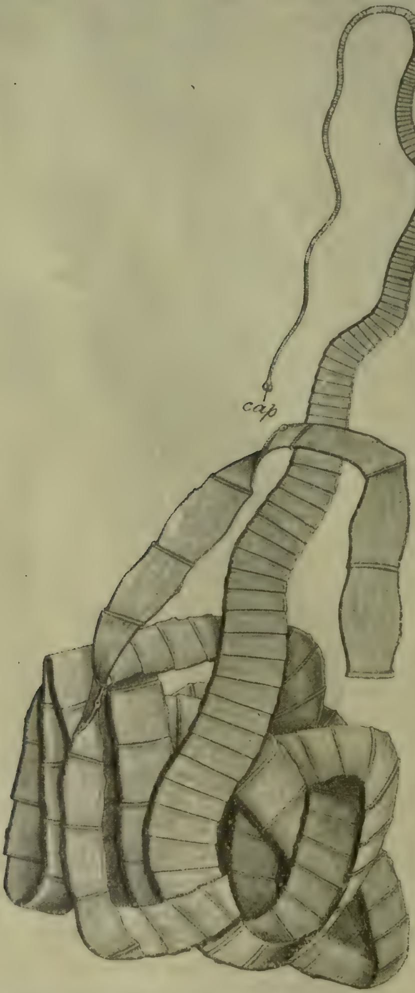


FIG. 180.—**Tænia solium.** Entire specimen, reduced; *cap.* head. (After Leuckart.)

of the hooks varies accordingly: when the rostellum is fully retracted the points of the hooks are directed forwards, and may even meet in the centre; as the rostellum is protruded the hooks become rotated until their apices come to be directed backwards. Four cup-shaped suckers project slightly from the surface behind the circlet of hooks.

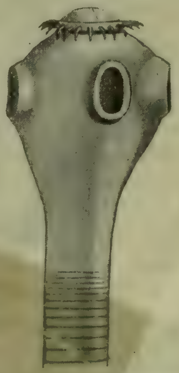


FIG. 181.—Head of **Tænia solium**, magnified. (After Leuckart.)

The *body* or *strobila* has a jointed appearance, owing to its being made up of a string of segments, or *proglottides*—about 850 altogether. These are narrower and shorter in front, gradually increasing in size towards the posterior free extremity. The *neck* or part immediately following the head is devoid of any trace of segmentation. The two surfaces of the proglottides are not to be distinguished by any differences visible to the unassisted eye; but that side towards which the female reproductive organs are more nearly approximated is regarded as the *ventral*, the opposite as the *dorsal* surface. On one border, sometimes the right, sometimes the left, of each proglottis, is a little prominence, the *genital papilla*, on which is the opening of a chamber, the *genital cloaca*, into which both the male and female reproductive ducts open.

An examination of entire living, and of preserved and stained Tape-Worms under the microscope shows (1) that an alimentary system is not present; (2) that nervous and excretory systems are represented; (3) that there is a complete set of reproductive organs, constructed on the same general plan as those of the Liver-Fluke, present in each of the proglottides.

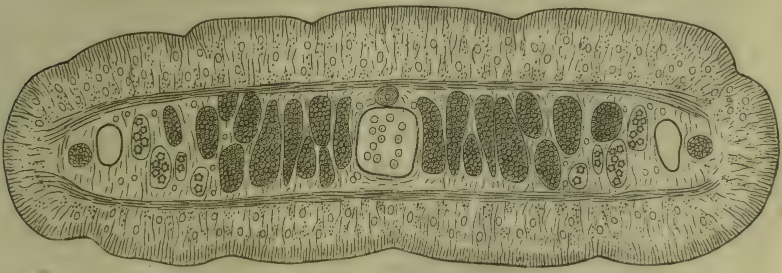


FIG. 182.—Transverse section of **Tænia solium.** (After Shipley.)

The **nervous system** consists of two not very well-defined *ganglia*—united by a broad transverse commissure—in the head; of slender nerves passing from these to the suckers, and of two *longitudinal nerves* which run backwards through all the proglottides to the posterior end of the body. The ganglia obviously correspond to the ganglia on the nerve-ring of the Liver-Fluke.

The **excretory organs** consist of a richly branched system of excretory vessels. There are four *main trunks* (Fig. 183, *can. excret.*), which extend throughout the entire length of the body, two near each lateral margin. The two pairs of longitudinal vessels are connected together in the head by a ring-like vessel, and in each proglottis near its posterior margin by a straight, transverse, connecting branch. Posteriorly the longitudinal trunk opens into a pulsatile *caudal vesicle*, communicating with the exterior. These main trunks of the excretory system give origin to a number of branches, and these in turn give off numerous fine canalicules, or capillaries, terminating in flame-cells similar to those of Distomum hepaticum.

The **reproductive organs** (Fig. 183) repeated in each fully formed proglottis, are in essential respects very similar to those of the Liver-Fluke. In the most anterior proglottides they are not developed; it is only at about the 200th proglottis that they first appear: at first the male parts of the system are alone differentiated: then in the succeeding proglottides, till we approach near the posterior extremity of the body, the female organs are likewise developed. In the most posterior segments modifications and reductions of some of the parts take place, owing to the great increase in size of the uterus. The male portion of the apparatus consists of the *testes* with their *efferent ducts*, the *vas deferens* (*vas. def.*), and the *cirrus* or *penis*, with its *sac*. The *testes* consists of numerous rounded lobes situated nearer the dorsal than the ventral

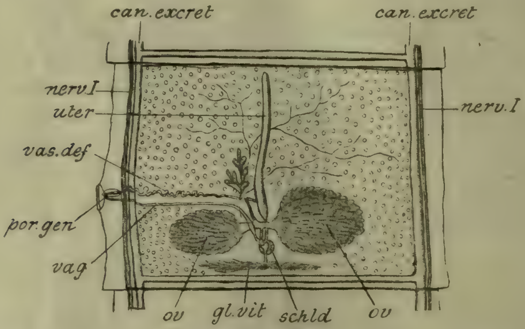


FIG. 183.—A proglottis of **Tænia solium** with mature reproductive apparatus. *can. excret.* longitudinal excretory canals with transverse connecting vessels; *gl. vit.* vitelline glands; *nerv. l.* longitudinal nerves; *ov. ov.* ovaries; *por. gen.* genital pore; *schld.* shell-glands; *uter.* uterus; *vag.* vagina; *vas. def.* vas deferens. The numerous small round bodies are the lobes of the testes. (After Leuckart.)

surface, and extending throughout the greater part of the length and breadth of the proglottis. With each lobe is connected a fine *efferent duct;* the ducts of neighbouring lobes unite together to form somewhat larger ducts; and the larger ducts, receiving numerous tributaries, eventually open into the inner extremity of the *vas deferens*, or main duct of the testis. The *vas deferens* is a convoluted tube which extends outwards towards the lateral margin (right or left as the case may be) of the proglottis.

The terminal part of the vas deferens, which is somewhat narrower than the rest, traverses a narrow protrusible process, the *cirrus* or *penis*, and opens at its extremity by the *male genital aperture.* The cirrus is enclosed at the base by a muscular sac, the *cirrus sac.*

The *ovary* (*ov.*) differs from that of the Liver-Fluke in being a paired organ, consisting of two approximately equal, right and left, halves. It is situated towards the posterior border of the proglottis. Like that of the Liver-Fluke, it consists of a number of branching tubes, in the interior of which the ova are developed. From opposite sides these tubes converge towards the median line, where they open into the *oviduct.* A *yolk-gland* (*gl. vit.*), of less relative extent than in the Liver-Fluke, consists of a number of minute lobules; a duct, the *yolk-duct*, which runs forward from it, opens into the oviduct. The numerous lobules of a rounded *shell-gland* (*schld.*) surround the yolk-duct where it passes forward to join the oviduct; and the *uterus* (*uter.*) opens into it at this point. A short distance from its origin the oviduct presents a dilatation, the *receptaculum seminis*, in which the secretion of the testes is stored during copulation. The remainder of the oviduct, frequently known as the *vagina* (*vag.*), is a long narrow tube leading to the female generative opening. The *uterus* is, in the segments in which it first makes its appearance, a simple cylindrical diverticulum of the oviduct; it retains its simple form as far back as about the 600th proglottis, where it begins to branch, the ramifications increasing in extent and volume in the posterior segments.

The testicular secretion (probably from the same proglottis) passes in the act of copulation along the vagina to the *receptaculum seminis.* Here, or in the proximal part of the oviduct, it fertilises the ova as they ripen and become discharged from the ovary. As in the case of the Liver-Fluke, the oosperm proper becomes surrounded by a quantity of food-yolk developed in the yolk-glands, and is then enclosed in a firm chitinous shell formed for it by the secretion of the shell-gland. It then passes into the uterus. The first completed eggs are found in the uterus in some proglottis between the 400th and the 500th. From this point backwards they rapidly accumulate, until the cavity of the uterus, which now becomes branched, is filled and distended with them. Eventually in the most posterior, so-called "ripe" proglottides

(Fig. 184), the uterus, with its contained accumulation of eggs, becomes so large as to fill the greater part of the interior of the proglottis, the remainder of the reproductive apparatus meanwhile having become absorbed.

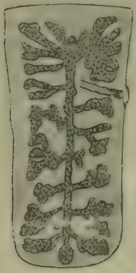


FIG. 184.—"Ripe" proglottis of **Tænia solium.** (After Leuckart.)

Development.—When the ripe proglottides are detached they pass to the exterior with the fæces of the host. For a time they exhibit movements of contraction. The embryos contained within the eggs have meantime assumed the form of rounded bodies, each armed with six chitinoid hooks—the *six-hooked* or *hexacanth embryo* (Fig. 185, A)—enclosed within two membranes. If the proglottides or the eggs which have escaped from them, should now be taken into the alimentary canal of the Pig, which forms the ordinary second host of the parasite, the hooked embryos, becoming freed from their coverings, bore their way with the aid of their hooks through the wall of the alimentary canal, and reach the voluntary

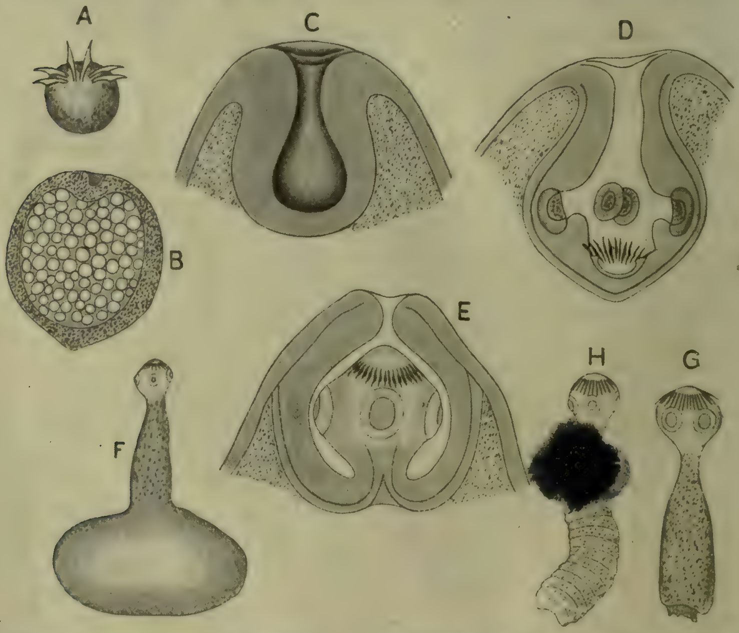


FIG. 185.—Development of **Tapeworm.** *A*, hexacanth embryo; *B*, Proscolex of *Tænia saginata*; *C—E*, stages in the formation of the scolex of the same; *C*, the invagination before the hooks and suckers have become developed; *D*, after the appearance of the hooks and suckers; *E*, partly evaginated; *F*, fully evaginated scolex of *T. solium* with caudal vesicle; *G*, scolex of *T. serrata* with remains of the vesicle; *H*, young tapeworm of *T. serrata*. (After Leuckart.)

muscles. Here they increase greatly in size, and develop into rounded cysts with a large cavity filled with watery fluid—the *proscolex* stage (B). On the wall of the proscolex, at one side, is formed a hollow ingrowth, or invagination (C); and on the inner surface of this are developed the hooks and suckers characteristic of the head or scolex of the adult (D). When these are fully formed the hollow ingrowth becomes everted (E), the suckers and hooks thus coming to be situated on the outer surface (F). The whole embryo has now the form of a bladder or vesicle, with which is connected at one point a process having all the characters of the head and neck of the mature Tænia solium; this is the bladder-worm stage, or *Cysticercus*. If a portion of Pig's muscle containing *Cysticerci* which have not been killed by cooking, is taken into the stomach of Man, the bladder is thrown off, the scolex attaches itself to the wall of the intestine by its hooks and suckers, and develops the series of proglottides of the adult Tape-Worm.

2. Distinctive Characters and Classification.

The Platyhelminthes are bilaterally symmetrical, usually dorso-ventrally compressed animals, devoid of hard supporting skeleton, either external or internal, and devoid of metameric segmentation; with three embryonic layers—ectoderm, mesoderm, and endoderm—entering into the formation of the body. A body-cavity is not present. There is a system of excretory vessels, communicating in the majority of cases with the exterior, and furnished with ciliary flames. There is no blood-vascular system. An enteric cavity may be absent, may be rudimentary, or may be highly developed: it is never provided with an anal aperture. The completed egg contains, in addition to the oosperm, a quantity of yolk-matter, usually in the form of definite yolk-cells, and usually produced by a special set of yolk-glands. Development is sometimes direct, sometimes accompanied by a metamorphosis.

CLASS I.—TURBELLARIA.

Mostly non-parasitic Platyhelminthes with a ciliated cellular epidermis; with a digestive cavity (except in the sub-division *Acœla*).

Order 1.—Polycladida.

Flattened leaf-shaped Turbellaria, without separate yolk-glands; testes and ovaries numerous; male and female genital apertures usually separate; intestine complexly branched.

Order 2.—Tricladida.

Turbellaria with elongate depressed body; with numerous yolk-glands, two ovaries, numerous testes: a single genital aperture;

intestine consisting of a median anterior division and two lateral posterior limbs which are provided with side branches.

ORDER 3.—RHABDOCŒLIDA.

Comparatively small Turbellaria, with the body usually elongate and cylindrical or compressed: with simple, or nearly simple, sac-like intestine; with or without yolk-glands; with one or two ovaries and two or many testes.

CLASS II.—TREMATODA.

Ecto- or endo-parasitic Platyhelminthes devoid of cilia,[1] or of a cellular epidermis;[2] with a well-developed digestive apparatus.

ORDER 1.—MONOGENETICA.

Mostly ecto-parasitic Trematodes; with direct development.

ORDER 2.—DIGENETICA.

Endo-parasitic Trematodes with complicated life-history.

CLASS III.—CESTODA.

Endo-parasitic Platyhelminthes without cilia and without digestive cavity, the animal consisting in most cases of a rounded head bearing organs of adhesion in the form of suckers and hooks, and an elongated compressed body consisting of a string of similar proglottides, each containing a complete set of hermaphrodite reproductive organs.

ORDER 1.—MONOZOA.

The body not divided into proglottides.

ORDER 2.—POLYZOA.

The body consisting of head or scolex, and string of proglottides.

Systematic Position of the Examples.

Planaria and *Dendrocœlum* are genera of the family *Planaridæ*, or fresh-water Planarians, which is one of the two families of the order *Tricladida*, differing from the other family, the *Geoplanidæ* or Land Planarians, mainly in having the body less elongated and more dorso-ventrally compressed.

Distomum hepaticum is one of the very many species of the genus *Distomum*, which is distinguished from the other three genera of the family *Distomidæ* by being hermaphrodite (two of the genera—*Bilharzia* and *Kœllikeria*—having the sexes distinct), and by having both anterior and posterior suckers, but no retractile tentacles (present in the genus *Rhopalophorus*). The *Distomidæ* are a family of the order *Digenetica*, and differ from the remaining families by the union of the following characters:—The anterior sucker is perforated for the mouth; the posterior sucker is on the ventral surface and not terminal; the sexual aperture is usually on the ventral surface and in the anterior third of the body, in front of the posterior sucker; the eggs are almost always furnished with an operculum.

---

[1] Except in certain species of *Temnocephala*.

[2] Except in the *Temnocephaleæ* and *Actinodactylella*.

G.Y.

Tænia solium is one of the many species of the genus *Tænia*, of the family *Tæniadæ*, which is distinguished from the other families of Cestodes by the possession of four suckers, with or without a circlet of hooks, and by the development of well-defined proglottides which become separated off when mature.

3. General Organisation.

General External Features.—As the name of the phylum denotes, the body in the Platyhelminthes is, in the great majority of cases, much compressed in the dorso-ventral direction; very thin, so that when very short it may be described as leaf-like, or, when more elongated, as ribbon-like; or thickish in the middle and becoming thinner towards the margin. Some, however, have the body comparatively thick, usually with a certain amount of dorso-ventral compression; a few are approximately cylindrical or fusiform. The symmetry is always *bilateral* (p. 41), the radial arrangement of parts so prevalent in the Cœlenterata and primarily, as we have seen, associated with a fixed or stalked condition, never being observable. A Flat-Worm has dorsal and ventral surfaces, right and left sides or borders, and anterior and posterior ends. The anterior end is that which is directed forwards in ordinary locomotion: it usually has one or other of the characters of a head-end; but a distinct head is rarely distinguishable, and the mouth, when present, is usually placed some distance back on the ventral surface.

In the *Turbellaria* (Fig. 186) the leaf-form is the prevailing one, a general shape resembling that of Planaria being very common. In many, however, the body is greatly elongated, and it may assume the shape of a thin ribbon with puckered edges, as in some marine forms; or may be thickened and band-like, as in the Land Planarians; or it may approach the shape of a cylinder, as in some Rhabdocœles. A head-region is not usually distinct; but there is always something to mark off the anterior from the posterior end—a difference in shape, the presence of eyes, and, sometimes, of a pair of short tentacles;

in some a slight constriction separates off an anterior lobe, on which the eyes are borne, from the rest of the body. In others the anterior end is retractile, and may be everted as a proboscis. The mouth is never at the extreme anterior end, but always ventrally placed, sometimes behind the middle. In some Polycladida there is a large ventral sucker serving for temporary fixation; and in some Rhabdocœles both the anterior and posterior ends, though not provided with suckers, are adhesive, so that the animal can loop along like a Hydra or a Caterpillar. There is never any external appearance of segmentation, though in at least one exceptional instance (*Gunda segmentata*, Fig. 187) the internal parts may be so disposed as to approximate to the metameric arrangement (*pseudo-metamerism*). A number of transverse muscular septa are present, imperfectly dividing the body internally into a series of segments; and various internal organs—intestinal cœca, gonads, transverse commissures of the nervous system—are arranged in pairs following this division. A few multiply by *budding*, and these form long chains, having something in common with the string of proglottides of a Cestode, but differing radically, as will be shown later, in the mode of development. *Colour* is very general in the Turbellarian, though some are transparent and

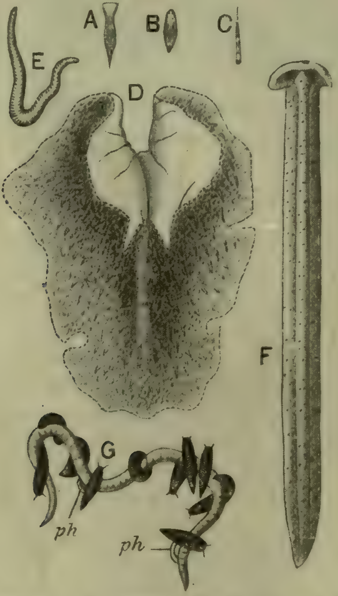


FIG. 186.—Various **Planarians.** *A*, Convoluta; *B*, Vortex; *C*, Monotus; *D*, Thysanozoon; *E*, Rhynchodemus; *F*, Bipalium; *G*, Polycelis. All natural size. (After Von Graff.)

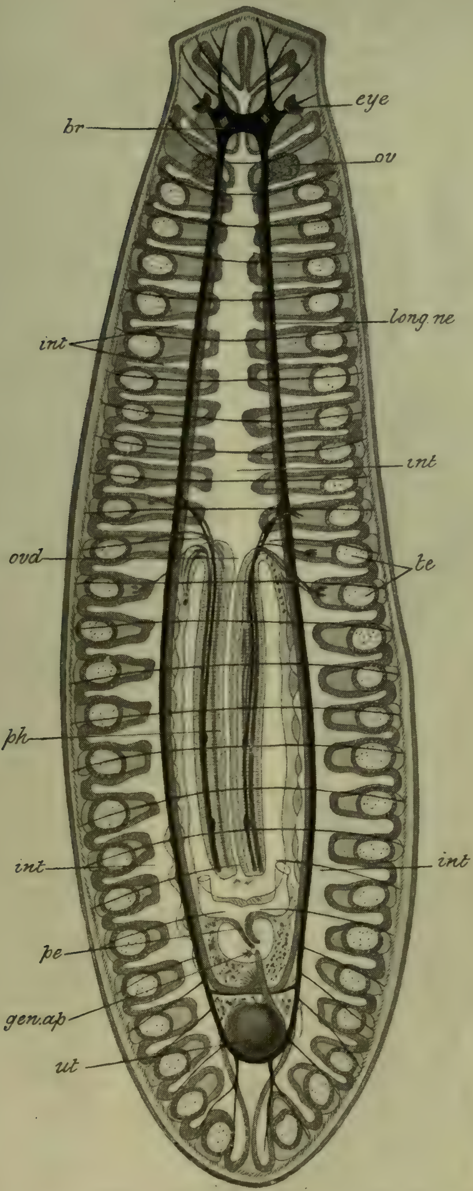

eye
br
ov
long. ne
int
int
ovd
te
ph
int
int
pe
gen.ap
ut

Fig. 187.—**Gunda segmentata.** General view of the organisation. *br.* brain; *eye* eye; *gen. ap.* genital aperture; *int.* intestine with its cœca; *long. ne.* longitudinal nerve cord; *ov.* ovary; *ovd.* oviduct; *pe.* penis; *ph.* pharynx; *te.* testes; *ut.* uterus. (After Lang.)

colourless. The most vivid coloration characterises some of the marine Planarians, the Rhabdocœles being comparatively obscure. The surface is covered with a coating of fine *vibratile cilia*, the vibration of which subserves respiration as well as (in the smaller forms) locomotion. Among the ordinary cilia are frequently disposed longer whip-like cilia or flagella, likewise motile; and sometimes non-motile (sensory) cilia may occur here and there.

The *Trematodes*, nearly related to the Turbellarians in internal organisation, resemble them also in external form, with certain modifications connected with a parasitic mode of life. As in the latter class, the leaf-shape prevails; an elongated form also occurs, though more rarely. The body is usually thicker and more solid than in most Turbellaria. The anterior end is distinguished from the posterior by its shape, by the arrangement of the suckers, and, in many of those Trematodes that are external parasites, by the presence of eyes. Suckers, present in the Turbellaria only in some of the Polycladida, are universal in their occurrence. They are always ventrally placed, their chief function being to fix the parasite to the surface of its host in such a way as to facilitate the taking in by the mouth of animal juices and epithelial débris. Their number and arrangement vary considerably. There are nearly always present an anterior set of suckers (or a single anterior sucker surrounding the mouth) and a posterior set, or a single large posterior sucker. The arrangement already described as characterising the Liver-fluke is that which is typical in the digenetic forms: a single anterior and a single posterior sucker.

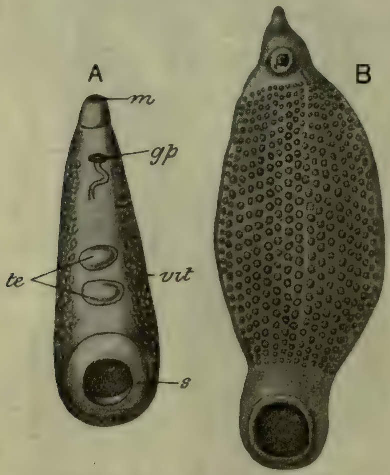


FIG. 188.——**Digenetic Trematodes.** A, *Amphistomum*; B, *Homalogaster*. *g. p.* genital aperture; *m.* mouth; *s.* posterior sucker; *te.* testes; *vit.* vitelline glands. (After M. Braun.)

In the Monogenetica the suckers are often more numerous; in the family *Gyrodactylidæ* (Fig. 189, A) there is no anterior sucker, but

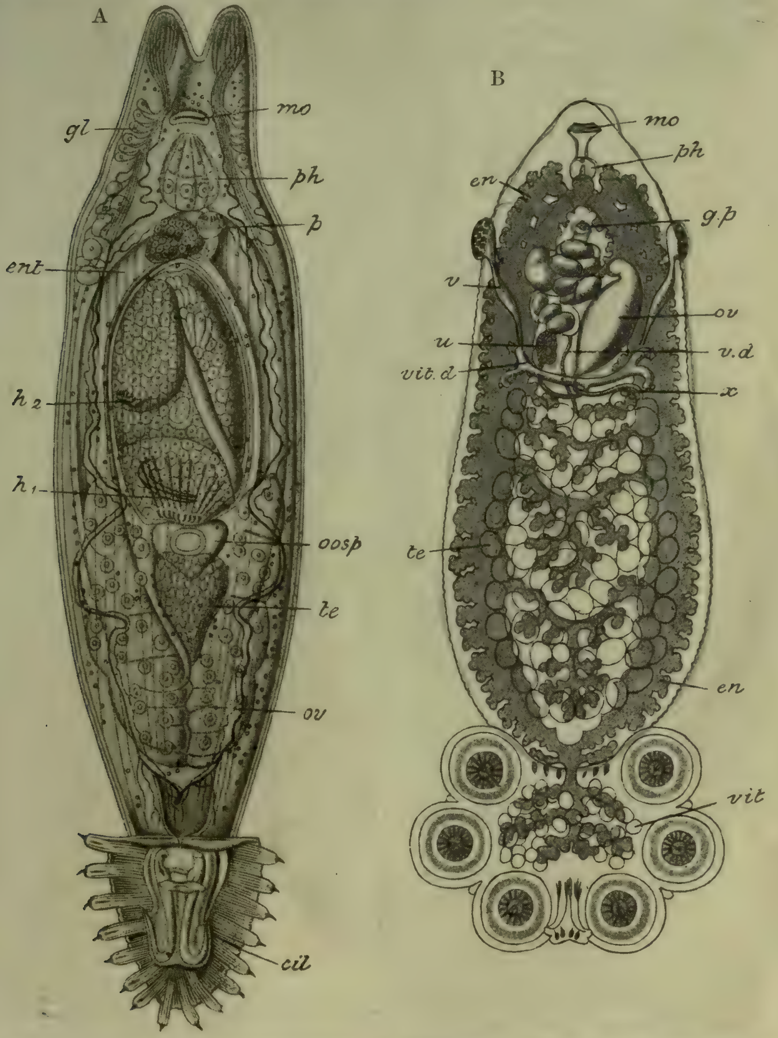


FIG. 189.—**Monogenetic Trematodes.** A, *Gyrodactylus.* *cil.* disc bearing hooks and processes at the posterior end; *ent.* intestine; *gl.* unicellular glands whose ducts open on the surface about the anterior end; *mo.* mouth; *oosp.* oosperm; *ov.* ovary; *p.* penis; *ph.* pharynx; *te.* testes. B, *Polystomum.* *en.* intestine; *g. p.* genital pore; *mo.* mouth; *ph.* pharynx; *ov* ovary; *te.* testes; *u.* uterus; *v.*, *v. d.* vas deferens; *vit.* vitelline glands; *vit. d.* vitelline ducts; *x.* sperm-duct probably directly connecting the testes with the oviduct. (From M. Braun.)

at the posterior end one or two discs armed with hooks: in the *Polystomeæ* (Fig. 189, B) there is also a posterior disc on which are

KEENE LIBRARY OF THE

six suckers with several hooks; in the *Temnocephaleæ* (Fig. 190) there is no anterior sucker, but the anterior end develops a row of adhesive tentacles, while in *Actinodactylella* (Fig. 191) a series of marginal tentacles are present in addition to both anterior and posterior suckers. In general the monogenetic forms, being external parasites, require more powerful organs of adhesion, and have the suckers better developed than the digenetic, and often armed with bristles or hooks. The suckers are used also in locomotion, and here also there is necessity for greater development in the case of the external parasites, which in many cases move about with considerable activity after the looping fashion of

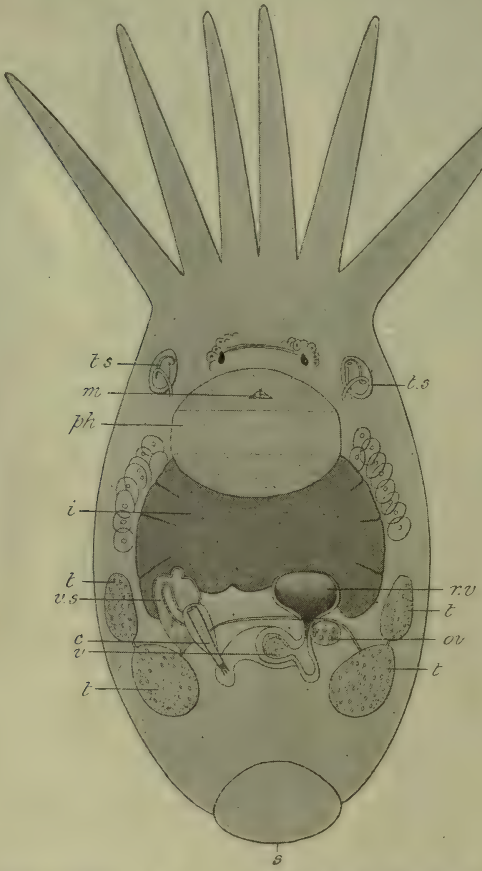


Fig. 190.—**Temnocephala.** *c.* cirrus; *i.* intestine; *m.* mouth; *ov.* ovary; *ph.* pharynx; *r. v.* receptaculum vitelline; *t.* testes; *t. s.* terminal sac of excretory system; *v.* vitellarium; *v. s.* vesicula seminalis. (After Haswell.)

Leeches. Save in two exceptional cases (*Temnocephala*) vibratile cilia are not known to occur on the surface in the adult condition; in some there are groups of non-motile cilia, situated on little conical elevations—the *tactile cones.* Pigment is rare in the endoparasitic Digenetica, save in a few that live in the interior of transparent animals, though many appear coloured variously by the internal organs shining through the translucent body wall, or are stained by some fluid derived from their host. But pigment is found in some of the ectoparasitic forms.

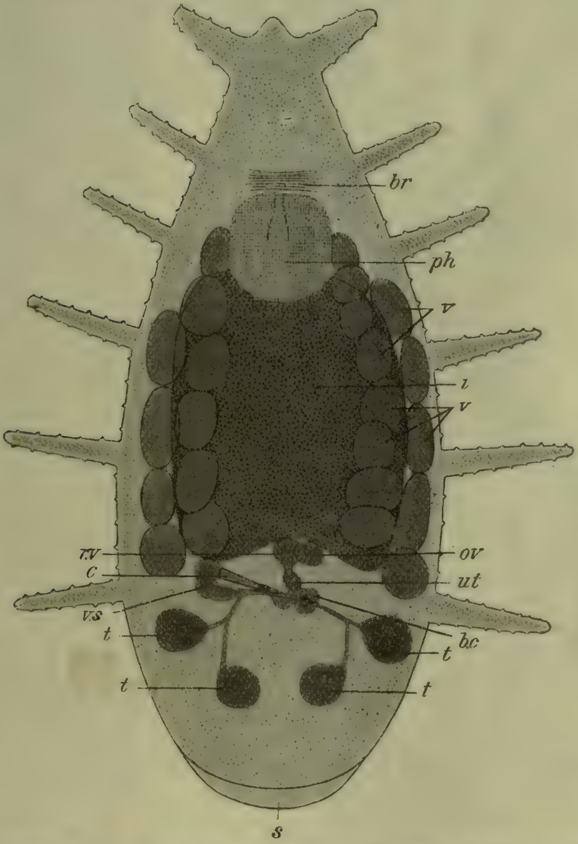


Fig. 191.—**Actinodactylella.** *b.c.* bursa copulatrix; *br.* brain; *c.* penis; *i.* intestine; *ov.* ovary; *ph.* pharynx; *r. v.* receptaculum vitelli; *t., t.* testes; *v.* vitelline glands; *v. s.* vesicula seminalis. (After Haswell.)

The relationship of the *Cestoda* to the Trematoda is, as will be subsequently shown, fairly close; but, though there are connecting forms between the two classes, the shape of the average Cestode is very different from that of such an average Trematode as the Liver-fluke. The body of an ordinary Cestode is of great length, sometimes extending even to a good many feet, and relatively narrow, being compressed into the form of a ribbon. The anterior end is attached to the host by means of suckers and hooks placed on a rounded lobe, the *head* or *scolex*, connected with the body by a narrow part or *neck*. The head is usually rather radially than bilaterally symmetrical, with four suckers and a circlet of hooks. The hooks, when present, are borne on a longer or shorter retractile process, the *rostellum*, the long axis of which is in line with the long axis of the body. In *Tetrarhynchus* (Fig. 192) there are four very long and narrow rostella covered with hooklets.

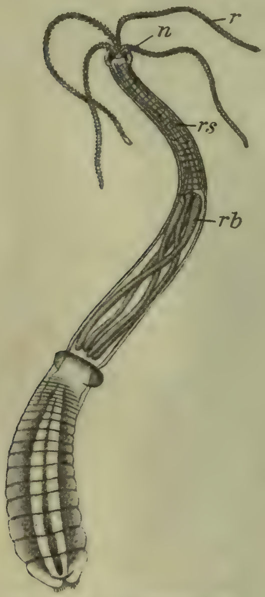


Fig. 192.—**Tetrarhynchus.**

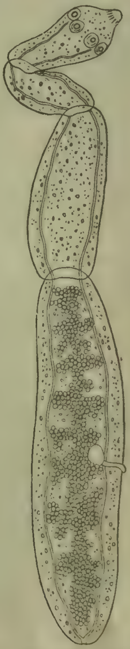


Fig. 193.—**Tænia echinococcus.** (After Cobbold.)

The Cestoda are devoid of mouth, and in most of them the genital apertures are marginally placed, so that, externally, there is, except in the case of a few in which the genital apertures are not marginal, nothing to distinguish the dorsal surface from the ventral. The *body*, or *strobila*, which is narrower in front than it becomes further back, is made up throughout its length of a series of segments, or *proglottides*, which become larger and more distinctly marked off from one another as we pass backwards. *Tænia* *echinococcus* (Fig. 193) is exceptional in possessing only three or four proglottides. In a few (*Ligula* and its allies—Fig. 194), though the body has the normal elongated ribbon-like form, the segments are not distinct, and in *Caryophyllæus* (Fig. 195), *Amphilina*, *Amphiptyches* (Fig. 196), and *Archigetes* (Fig. 197), (Monozoa), segmentation is entirely absent, the whole body in

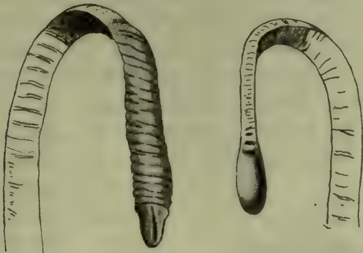


FIG. 194.—**Ligula.** (After Leuckhart.)

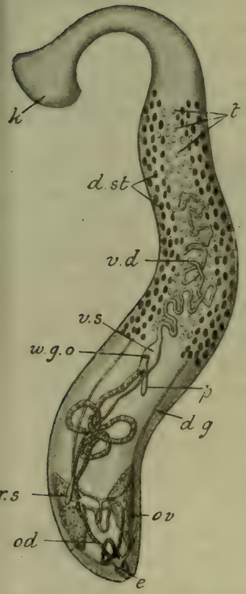

k
t
d.st
v.d
v.s
w.g.o
p
d g
r.s
ov
od
e

FIG. 195.—**Caryophyllæus.** (After Leuckhart.)

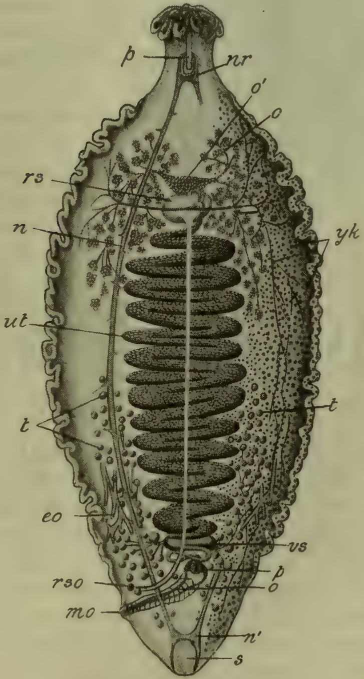

p
nr
o'
o
rs
n
yk
ut
t
t
eo
vs
p
o
rso
mo
n'
s

FIG. 196.—**Amphiptyches.** (After Spencer.)

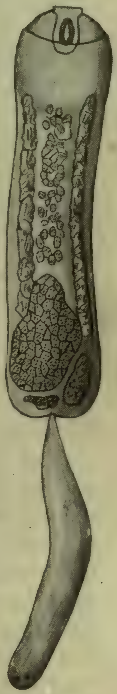


FIG. 197.—**Archigetes.** (After Leuckhart.)

these genera consisting of a single proglottis. The surface in the Cestodes is devoid of cilia, and there is no pigment.

Integument and Muscular Layers.—In the Platyhelminthes in general there are *integumentary* layers and underlying layers of *muscle*, which are more highly differentiated than in the Cœlenterates. But considerable differences exist between the members of the three classes. In the Turbellaria (Fig. 198) there is, as already noticed in the account given of the Planarian, a distinct *epidermis* (Fig. 198, *ep*) in the form of a layer of cells, most of which are ciliated. A delicate *cuticle* is usually, though not always, distinguishable, investing the epidermis externally. In one family the cuticle is developed, along the margin of the body, into a series of chitinous bristles. Among the ordinary epidermal cells there are in the Polycladida numerous cells containing short rod-like bodies—the *rhabdites* (*rh.*); in the other orders of the Turbellaria these rhabdite-forming cells are sunk deeply within the parenchyma, and, in the Rhabdocœla, have very long ducts, formed of processes of the cells, by means of which the rods, together with a viscid matter, reach the exterior at certain points of the surface, chiefly around the anterior extremity. The function of these rhabdites is not in all cases certain; they have been supposed to add to the sensitiveness of the parts in which they are situated after the fashion of hairs or nails, or to have a skeletal function. In the Rhabdocœla and Tricladida they undoubtedly aid in adhesion, and probably have the function of assisting in the entanglement and capture of food. In certain of the Turbellaria stinging capsules occur similar to those of the Cœlenterata, and transition forms between rhabdites and stinging capsules occur in some cases. *Adhesive cells* with processes also frequently occur in the epidermis. Beneath the epidermis is a *basement membrane* (*b. m.*), which in the Polycladida is of a thick resistent character, and contains stellate cells.

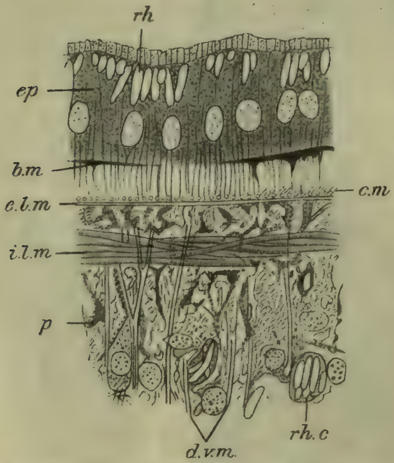


FIG. 198.—Section of the body-wall of a **Triclad.** *b. m.* basement membrane; *c. m.* circular muscles; *d. v. m.* dorso-ventral muscles; *e. l. m.* external longitudinal muscles; *ep.* epidermis; *i. l. m.* internal longitudinal muscles; *p.* parenchyma; *rh.* rhabdites; *rh. c.* rhabdite-forming cells. (After Jijima.)

In a small number of the Trematoda three distinct layers are distinguishable in the integument—a homogeneous, or nearly homogeneous, outer *cuticle;* a cellular, or at least, nucleated, *epidermis*, and a *basement membrane;* but the cellullar epidermal layer is absent as such in the adult condition in the majority of the Trematodes, and there is only a homogeneous, non-nucleated outer layer, which may be the modified epidermis, or may be the cuticle, with or without a basement-membrane. *Rhabdite-forming*, and other *unicellular glands* derived from the epidermis, are frequently present beneath the integument.

In the Cestodes, as in the majority of the Trematodes, no definite epidermis is present. The external layer, sometimes divided into two, is of a homogeneous non-cellular character, and is usually termed *cuticle*, though it perhaps partly corresponds to the basement membrane of other groups. Beneath this is a thin layer which appears to consist of elastic fibres. Beneath this again is a layer of fusiform cells, narrow prolongations of which pass to the surface. It is possible these may be concerned in the absorption of nutrient matter, but some of them are undoubtedly of the nature of nerve-cells and have nerve-fibres connected with them.

The *muscular layers* of the body-wall vary somewhat in their arrangement in the different groups of Platyhelminthes. Most commonly there is an external layer of circularly arranged, and an internal layer of longitudinally arranged fibres; frequently layers of fibres running in a diagonal direction are present also.

Characteristic of the flat-worms is a peculiar form of connective tissue, the **parenchyma** (Fig. 199), mention of which has already been made in the descriptions of the examples, presenting many varieties, filling up the interstices between the organs—leaving

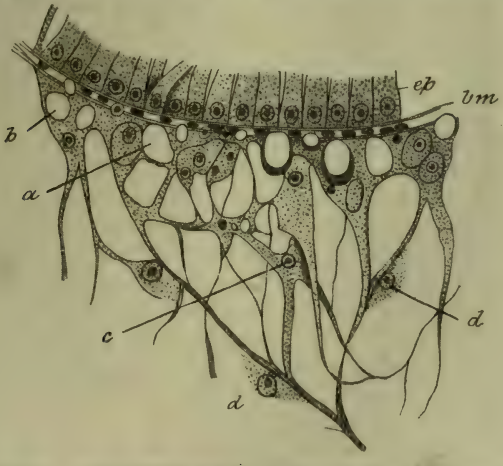


FIG. 199.—Parenchyma. *a*, *b*, intercellular spaces; *bm*. basement membrane; *c*, nuclei; *d*, nuclei; *ep*. epidermis. (After Braun.)

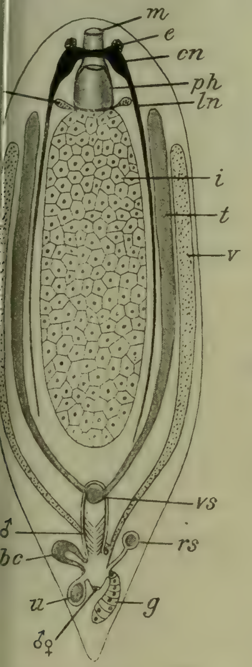
REESE L

only, in some instances, very small spaces—sometimes regarded as representing the body-cavity, or *cœlome*, which we shall meet with in other groups of worms. Sometimes the parenchyma appears to consist of distinct large cells with greatly vacuolated protoplasm, with interspaces here and there in which groups of rounded cells are enclosed. Sometimes the constituent cells run together, and the parenchyma then appears as a nucleated, finely fibrillated, vacuolated mass in which the boundaries of the cells are not recognisable. Pigment occurs in the parenchyma in some Rhabdocœle Turbellarians and a few Monogenetic Trematodes. In some Turbellaria—species of *Convoluta* and *Vortex*—the parenchyma contains numerous cells enclosing chlorophyll corpuscles; these are symbiotic unicellular Algæ, similar in their mode of occurrence to the yellow cells which have been referred to as found in the Radiolaria. Running through the body, for the most part in a dorso-ventral direction, are numerous slender muscular fibres, the fibres of the *parenchyma muscle;* many of these become inserted externally into the basement membrane.

Great differences exist between the various groups of Platyhelminthes as regards the development of the **alimentary system,** differences which are, broadly, to be correlated with differences in the mode of nutrition. Some of the Flat-worms —the Turbellaria and some of the Monogenetic Trematodes—procure their food, in the shape of small living animals or vegetable organisms, or floating organic débris, by their own active efforts. Others—the Digenetic Trematodes and the Cestodes—having reached a favourable situation in the interior of their host, remain relatively or completely passive. An alimentary canal is completely absent in the last-named group, nutrition being effected by the absorption of digested matter from the interior of the animal in which the Cestode lives. In all the rest of the Platyhelminthes there is an alimentary canal, which never opens on the exterior by an anal aperture. All the Turbellaria and Trematoda have an alimentary apparatus consisting of two well-defined parts —a muscular *pharynx* and an *intestine.* The pharynx is usually a rounded muscular bulb, but is sometimes (some Turbellaria) of a cylindrical shape; it is usually capable of eversion and retraction. *Actinodactylella* (Fig. 191) is exceptional in having an extensile proboscis with a pin-shaped style, which becomes retracted within the opening of the mouth. Unicellular ("salivary") glands open into the pharynx in most cases.

The *mouth* is always ventral, but varies greatly in its position on the ventral surface, being sometimes central, sometimes behind, sometimes in front of, the middle of the length of the body.

In the most lowly organised group of Turbellaria the *intestine* is represented merely by a vacuolated nucleated mass of protoplasm without lumen. In the others it is sometimes a simple sac (Rhabdocœle Turbellaria (Fig. 200), a few Trematoda), with or without short lateral diverticula. In the majority of the Trematodes it consists of a pair of simple canals; but in some, as in the Liver-fluke, there is a pair of canals which give off numerous branches. In the Polycladida (Fig. 201) there is a central cavity from which numerous branching canals are given off. In the Tricladida (Fig. 202) one median canal passes forwards from the pharynx,



IG. 200.—General plan of the structure of a **Rhabdocœle Turbellarian.** *b.c.* bursa copulatrix; *cn.* brain; *e.* eye; *g.* germarium; *i.* intestine; *ln.* longitudinal nerve; *m.* mouth; *ph.* pharynx; *rs.* receptaculum seminis; *s.* unicellular glands; *t.* testis; *u.* uterus; *vs.* vesicula seminalis; ♂ ejaculatory duct; ♂♀ common genital aperture. (After Von Graff.)

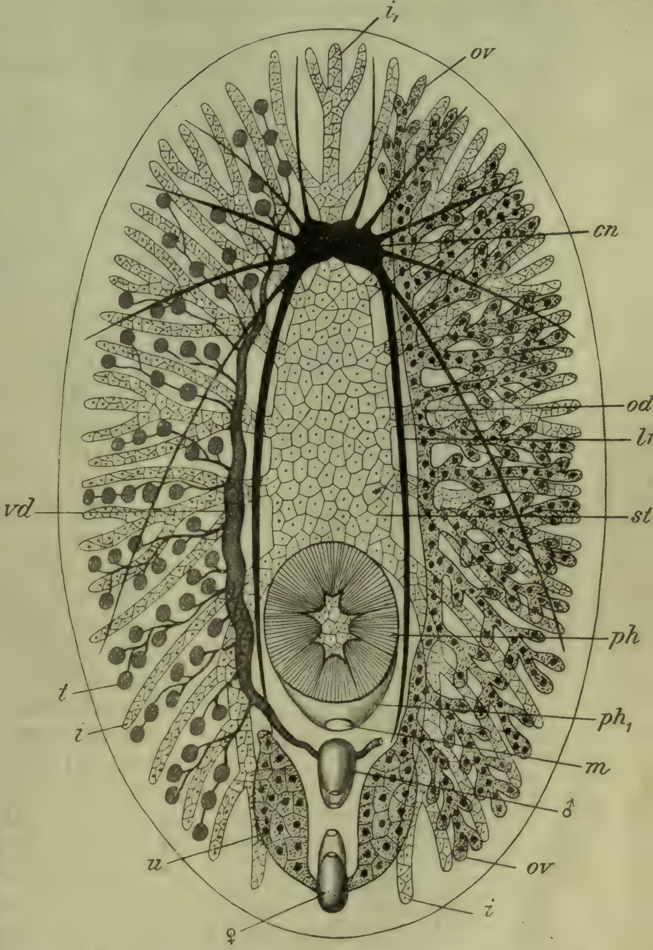


FIG. 201.—General plan of the structure of a **Polyclad.** *cn.* brain; *e.* eye; *i.* intestine; *ln.* longitudinal nerve cord; *m.* mouth; *ov.* ovary; *ph.* pharynx; *ph*¹. sheath of pharynx; *t.* testes; *u.* uterus; *vd.* vas deferens; *vs.* vesicula seminalis; ♂ male aperture; ♀ female aperture. (After Von Graff.)

and a pair of canals backwards from it, all three giving off branches which again branch. In some *Polyclada* there are minute pores, by means of which certain of the canals are placed in communication with the exterior. A number of unicellular glands, which probably produce a digestive secretion, open in many Trematodes and Rhabdocœles, at the junction of pharynx and stomach-intestine.

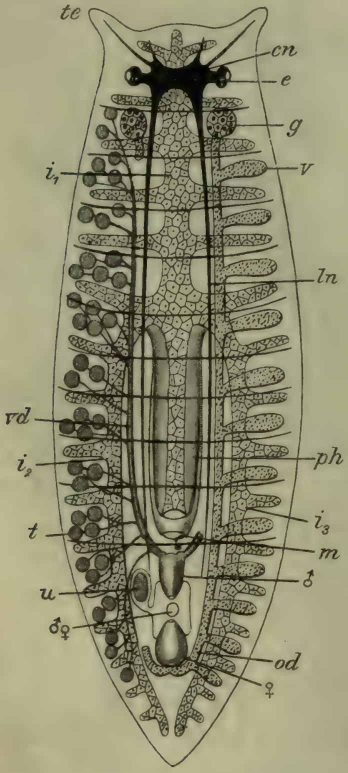


FIG. 202.—General plan of the structure of a **Triclad.** *cn.* brain; *e.* eye; *g.* germarium; *i.* median limb of the intestine; i_2. right limb; i_3. left limb; *ln.* longitudinal nerve-cord; *m.* mouth; *od'.* oviduct; *ph.* pharynx; *t.* testes; *te.* tentacles; *vd.* vas deferens; *u.* uterus; ♂ ejaculatory duct; ♀ vagina; ♂♀ common genital aperture. (After Von Graff.)

A bilateral **nervous system** is developed in all the Platyhelminthes. Its elements are *nerve-fibres*, or rather *nerve-tubes*, and *nerve-cells*. The former are tubes containing a very delicate, finely fibrillated, material. The nerve-cells, which are usually bipolar, more rarely uni- or multipolar, lie in the course of these tubes, with the contained delicate material of which the substance of the cells is in continuity. The degree of development of a central part of the nervous system, or *brain*, varies in the different groups; it is rudimentary in the Turbellaria Acœla and in the Cestodes, and best developed in some Polycladida and some Monogenetic Trematodes. It consists of numerous nerve-tubes which here converge from the various parts of the body and pass across from one side to the other, together with a central mass of matter similar to that contained in the nerve-tubes, and a number of nerve-cells. It is situated in the anterior portion of the body, almost invariably in front of the mouth. When the peripheral part of the nervous system is best developed, as it is in the Polycladida, the Tricladida, and some Trematodes, there are three pairs of longitudinal *nerve-cords* running backwards from the brain throughout the body, connected together by frequent transverse connecting nerves, or *commissures.* To these there are sometimes super-added fine networks or *plexuses* of nerves, situated superficially under the dorsal integument, or on both dorsal and ventral surfaces. Sometimes nerves run forwards from the brain as well as backwards. In the Rhabdocœles and some of the Trematodes the whole system is simpler, and the number of longitudinal cords fewer. In the Cestodes there are two longitudinal trunks which run throughout the length of the body, and are connected together in the head by a commissure which represents the brain of other Platyhelminthes.

In addition to the *tactile cones* of some Trematodes and the *sensory cilia* of the Turbellaria, already referred to, the *sensory organs* of the Platyhelminthes are the eyes and the octocysts. *Eyes* occur in the Turbellaria and some Monogenetic Trematodes, but are wanting in the Digenetic Trematodes ~~and in the~~ Cestodes. In some of the Polyclada they are extremely numerous, collected into groups over the brain, and frequently arranged also round the margin of the body. In the Rhabdocœles and Monogenetic Trematodes, they are much less numerous—usually two or four. In some cases each eye simply consists of a pigment spot; to this may be added a refractive body. When most highly developed the eye is still of very simple structure, consisting of a cup of pigment enclosing refractive bodies, and having nerve-cells in close relation to it. The *otocysts* are sacs containing *otoliths* of carbonate of lime. The function of these bodies, which occur only in a small number of the Turbellaria, is unknown; there is no sufficient evidence that, as their name is meant to imply, they are organs of hearing.

The only **vascular system** present in the Platyhelminthes is the system of *water-vessels* which are commonly regarded as performing an excretory function. The arrangement of these, the mode of ending internally of the finest branches, and the way in which the system communicates with the exterior vary somewhat in the different groups. A series of *main longitudinal trunks* give off branches which subdivide to form a system of minute interlacing branches or *capillaries.* In little spaces at the ends of the capillaries are a number of highly characteristic structures—the *ciliary flames.* Each ciliary flame consists of a bundle of vibratile cilia; typically each is situated in the interior of a cell—the flame-cell (Fig. 203)—terminating one of the capillary branches. The finer branches, and in some cases the larger trunks also, are *intra-cellular,* and are to be looked upon as perforations in linear rows of elongated cells. In the Cestoda, at least the larger trunks are *inter-cellular,* being lined by an epithelium of

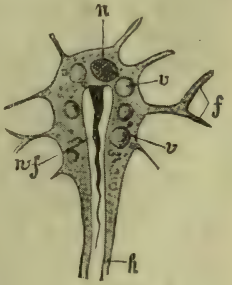


FIG. 203.—A flame-cell. *f.* processes; *k.* termination of capillary; *n.* nucleus *v.* vacuoles; *wf.* ciliary flame. After Lang.)

small cells. This system of water-vessels opens on the exterior in a variety of different ways: sometimes it opens by a number of minute pores; sometimes, as in the Liver-fluke, there is a single posterior aperture; frequently there are two. In the Tricladida there are two longitudinal canals which open on the exterior through special branches by a series of pores. In the Rhabdocœlida there are either two longitudinal main vessels or a single median one; the communication with the exterior in the former case may be by a pair of ventral apertures, or indirectly through the pharynx; or there may be a common short passage in which the two trunks unite, opening by a posterior median aperture. When a single main trunk is present it opens at the posterior end of the body. In the Trematodes there are two principal longitudinal trunks, which either unite behind to open at the posterior end of the body, or (Monogenetica) remain separate and open independently on the dorsal surface, each having, where it opens, a contractile *excretory sac.*

In the Cestodes there are usually four longitudinal trunks, which open through a contractile excretory sac at the posterior end of the body. In many cases it has been shown that the main trunks communicate with the exterior at intervals by means of fine canals. The excretory sac is thrown off when the last proglottis becomes separated off and does not in most cases become renewed, though in at least one species of Tape-worm (*Tænia cucumerina*), a new vesicle is developed again and again at the end of the body as a fresh segment is thrown off. The main trunks are connected together by a *ring vessel* in the head and by a *transverse branch* in each proglottis, and where the latter originate from the main trunks are valves formed by folds of the wall of the vessel.

The sexes are united in all the Platyhelminthes, with only one or two exceptions, and the **reproductive organs** are sometimes somewhat complicated—presenting a remarkable advance on those of the Cœlenterata. The male part of the apparatus consists of *testes*, with their ducts, the *vasa deferentia*, often with a contractile terminal enlargement or *vesicula seminalis*, a *cirrus* or *penis*, and often *prostate* or *granule glands.* The female part comprises *ovary* or *ovaries*, *receptaculum seminis*, *oviduct*, *uterus* or *ootype*, often a *bursa copulatrix*, *shell glands*, *vitelline* or *yolk glands*, and *cement glands.* In most, though not in all, there is an *ovary* or *ovaries* in which the ova are formed, and a set of *vitelline glands* or *yolk glands* producing material which surrounds each of the mature impregnated ova before it becomes enclosed in its shell. The *shell glands* secrete the chitinoid substance of the egg shells. The *cement glands* secrete a viscid material for causing the eggs to adhere together, enclosing them in a cocoon or fastening them to some foreign body. The *oviduct* is the passage by which the ova reach the exterior from the ovary, but an enlarged part of this passage, into which (usually) the shell glands and the ducts of the vitelline glands open, is termed *uterus* or *ootype*, while a terminal portion leading from the uterus towards the exterior is known as the *vagina*. The uterus receives the ova with their investing yolk matter, and retains them frequently for some considerable time while the shell is being formed and the earlier stages of development are proceeding: often the uterus is found to contain large numbers of ova, each enclosed in its chitinoid shell, in other instances it may enclose only one egg at a time. The *vagina* is sometimes a copulatory apparatus for receiving the penis, and is often provided internally with horny spines or teeth; sometimes a special sac or *bursa copulatrix*, lined with spines, acts as the female copulatory organ. A sac opening into the distal part of the oviduct, or that most remote from the genital opening, is termed *receptaculum seminis* or *receptaculum vitelli* (Fig. 190, *r.v.*) according as it serves as a reservoir for the semen received in copulation or for the vitelline matter or yolk. Male and female ducts sometimes have separate and independent openings; but very commonly there is a common chamber or *genital cloaca* into which both lead, opening on the exterior by a single aperture.

In the Polyclad Turbellaria (Fig. 201) the *testes* are numerous, and there are a corresponding number of fine tubes which combine to form the two *vasa deferentia* leading to the male aperture with its penis. The *ovaries* consist of numerous small rounded masses of cells, and there are no separate yolk-glands. Numerous narrow oviducts lead from the ovaries, and unite to form larger ducts; these, in turn, open into elongated uteri, in which numerous eggs collect. The uteri open into a median vagina, into which the ducts of the shell glands open, and in which the eggs receive their chitinoid investment.

In the Tricladida (Fig. 202) there are also numerous testes, but the fine tubes connecting them with the two *vasa deferentia* are absent. There are only two ovaries, situated far forwards, but numerous yolk glands. Two oviducts, into which the yolk is discharged from the yolk glands by a series of lateral apertures, lead from the ovaries to unite in a median chamber or uterus receiving the ducts of the shell glands.

In the Rhabdocœles (Figs. 200 and 204) there are usually only two testes and two vasa deferentia leading to the unpaired male aperture at the extremity of the cirrus. The *prostate* or *granule glands*—a set of unicellular glands, which secrete round bright granules destined to mix with the sperms—are specially well developed in the Rhabdocœles, though present in some other Turbellaria, and in certain Trematodes. Ovaries alone are present in some, ovaries and yolk glands in others; there are either two ovaries or one only.

The Trematodes nearly all have two testes, sometimes compact sometimes branched; in a few instances there are four. The vasa deferentia unite into a median duct, which is dilated at the base of the penis to form a vesicula seminalis. There is a single oval or branched ovary, and two sets of vitelline glands. A canal termed *Laurer's canal* leads from the exterior to the oviduct or vitelline duct.

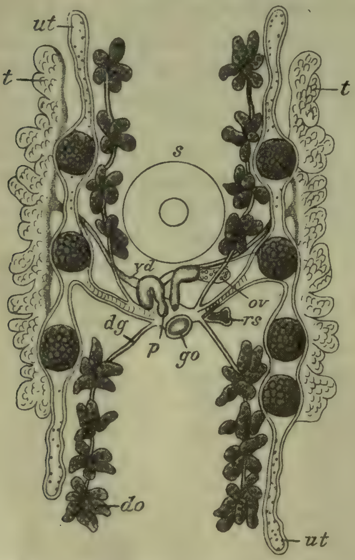


FIG. 204. Reproductive organs of **Mesostomum Ehrenbergii.** *dg.* duct of vitelline glands; *do.* vitelline glands; *go.* common reproductive aperture; *ov.* ovary; *p.* penis; *rs.* receptaculum seminis; *s.* pharynx; *t., t.* testes; *ut.* uterus; *vd.* vas deferens. (From Claus, after von Graff and Schneider.)

In the ordinary Cestodes each segment or proglottis contains a set of reproductive organs similar to those of a Trematode. There may be a single genital aperture leading into a genital cloaca into which both male and female ducts open; or the male and female apertures may be distinct though close together. The testis is divided into a number of minute lobes, from which proceed a number of fine canals, joining together to form the vas deferens, at the extremity of which is the chitinous cirrus. There are two ovaries, and either a single vitelline gland, or two. One or two vitelline ducts and the two oviducts open into the ootype, from which the vagina leads to the external aperture. There is in the Cestodes a uterus distinct from the ootype in the form of a diverticulum of the latter into which the eggs are received; this becomes greatly enlarged, lobed, and branched in the "ripe" posterior proglottides, so that it soon becomes by far the most conspicuous part of the reproductive apparatus—the rest eventually becoming absorbed. In *Bothriocephalus* and its allies the uterus has an independent duct of its own, opening at some distance from the common genital aperture; in *Caryophyllæus* this uterine duct joins the vagina.

The **development** of some of the Platyhelminthes (Rhabdocœla, Monogenetic Trematodes) is direct—*i.e.*, not complicated by the occurrence of a metamorphosis; in the Digenetic Trematodes, the Cestodes, and some of the Planarians a metamorphosis occurs.

The ovum of a Polyclad (Fig. 205) on impregnation divides first into two equal parts, then into four. From each of these four cells is then separated off a small cell. The embryo at this stage consists of eight cells, four large—the *megameres*, and four small—the *micromeres.* The four micromeres increase rapidly by division, and extend over the embryo, forming a layer, the *ectoderm,* completely covering it in all parts except for a median fissure, the *blastopore,* which runs along what is destined to become the middle ventral line: this soon closes up. The ectoderm cells soon develop a coating of cilia. The four megameres then give off four more small cells or micromeres, which increase in number by division, and eventually form the middle layer or *mesoderm* of the embryo. The megameres give off a number of additional micromeres, which form the *endoderm* layer, giving rise to the epithelium of the intestine; finally they become disintegrated, and their substance goes to nourish the cells of the developing embryo. The process by which the germinal layers have become formed is, as in the Ctenophora (p. 205), a process of *epibolic gastrulation,* and is to

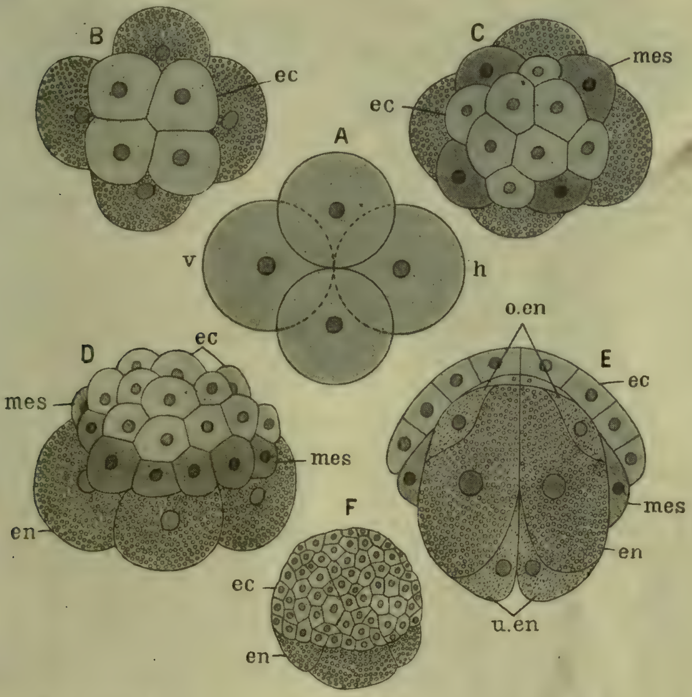


FIG. 205.—Early stages in the development of a **Polyclad.** *A*, stage of four cells, of which those lettered *v* and *h* correspond to the anterior and posterior portions of the body; *B* to *D*, later stages; *B* and *C*, seen from above; *D*, from the side; *E*, earlier, and *F*, later stage of epibolic gastrula, lateral view. *ec.* ectoderm; *en.* endoderm; *mes.* mesoderm; *o. en.* and *u. en.* upper and lower endoderm. (From Korschelt and Heider, after Lang.)

be contrasted with the *embolic* gastrulation of Sycon (p. 114). In many cases the embryo develops into a characteristic larval form known as *Müller's larva* (Fig. 206). It assumes an oval shape, with a series of eight elongated processes, covered with long cilia, and connected together by a ciliated band. There are eye-spots at the anterior end, and a mouth in the middle of the ventral surface. The form of the body alters after a time, becoming gradually longer and flatter, and the arms become gradually reduced in length, till, eventually, they become completely absorbed.

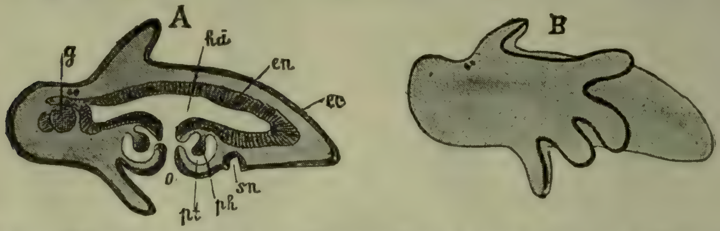


FIG. 206.—**Müller's larva.** *A*, longitudinal section; *B*, lateral view. *ec.* ectoderm; *en.* endoderm; *g.* brain; *hd.* enteron; *o.* mouth; *ph.* pharynx; *pt.* pharyngeal pouch; *sn.* sucker. (From Lang).

Little is known of the development of the Rhabdocœles or of the Monogenetic Trematodes: in both groups development is direct, and in many the young animal, when it escapes from the interior of the egg, has already assumed the form of the parent. Gyrodactylus (Fig. 189, A) is peculiar in being viviparous; before the embryo is born a second has become developed in its interior and a third in the interior of that again. Even more remarkable is the case of *Diplozoon*, in which two young animals become fused together to form a double mature individual.

An account has already been given (p. 230, Fig. 179) of the development and metamorphosis of the Liver-Fluke (*Distomum hepaticum*), which may ~~be looked~~ upon as typical of the Digenetic Trematodes in general.

As in the majority of the Platyhelminthes, the egg-shell of the Digenetic Trematodes, formed from the secretion of the shell-glands, encloses not only the ovum derived from the ovary, but also a number of small yolk-cells contributed by the yolk-glands; these soon lose their cell character. The ovum has been fertilised by a sperm before the shell is formed, and undergoes division into a number of cells which gradually displace and absorb the yolk, the latter taking no direct part in the development of the embryo, but serving only for its nourishment in the earliest stages. The embryo escapes from the egg as a *ciliated larva*, which develops in the interior of the second or intermediate host into a *sporocyst*. This may multiply by budding or fission. The *central cells* of the larva, which are regarded as ova that develop parthenogenetically, give rise to the development of *rediæ* in the interior of the sporocyst, and these give rise, either directly or through the intermediation of a second generation of rediæ, to tailed *cercariæ*. The cercariæ escape from the body of the intermediate host, and, in many cases, instead of merely becoming attached to herbage, as in the Liver-Fluke, make their way into the body of a *second* intermediate host (usually an invertebrate), and there become encysted. The encysted larva is eventually taken into the interior of the final host (generally a vertebrate) by the second intermediate host being swallowed by the latter: the cyst-wall becomes dissolved, and the young Trematode becomes free, and develops into the sexually mature condition, either in the interior of the alimentary canal itself, or in some related part. There is thus to be recognised in the Digenetic Trematodes an *alternation of generations* comparable to that which has been described as so general in the Cœlenterata. In the Trematoda, however, it is to ~~be observed~~, it is an alternation of a sexual, not with an asexual, but with a parthenogenetic generation (the sporocyst), the ova of which develop into a second parthenogenetic generation (the rediæ); and these finally produce larvæ (the cercariæ) capable of developing into the sexually mature form. The term *heterogeny* is applied to a life-history of this kind, in which several distinct generations succeed one another in a regular series.

The egg of a Cestode is similar in essential respects to that of a Trematode: there is a tough, chitinoid membrane or egg-shell, which encloses not only the ovum but a number of yolk-cells, the latter becoming absorbed as the process of segmentation of the ovum goes on. The result of segmentation is the formation of a superficial layer of cells (*ectoderm*) and a central mass, all enclosed in a membrane composed of a single layer of cells thrown off when the embryo escapes from the egg. The ectodermal cells become ciliated, so far as is known, only in *Bothriocephalus;* in the others they become thrown off or ultimately absorbed without developing cilia. The central mass of cells alone forms the embryo. The embryo, while still consisting of a small number of cells, develops a series of six chitinous hooks. These early changes all take place in the majority while the egg is still in the uterus of one of the most posterior of the proglottides of the parent worm. When the proglottis in question becomes separated off, and has passed out from the body of the *final host*, the eggs become discharged. In order that development may proceed further the embryo must reach the interior of a second or *intermediate host*. This is a passive migration, since the embryo of the Cestode is still confined within the egg-shell, and the transference has to take place in the water or food. The digestive fluids of this intermediate host dissolve the egg-shell and set free the contained six-hooked *hexacanth embryo*, which bores its way by means of its hooks to some part of the body in which it is destined to pass through the next phase in its life-history, and there becomes encysted. The phase which follows presents two main varieties. In cases in which the intermediate host is an invertebrate animal the hooked embryo develops into a form to which the name of *Cysticercoid* is given; when, on the other hand, the intermediate host is a vertebrate, the form assumed is nearly always that termed *Cysticercus*, or bladder-worm. The cysticercoid (Figs. 207 and 208) form is to be regarded as the more primitive and less modified. Cysticercoids of various tape-worms occur in a great variety of different invertebrates, *e.g.* Insects of all kinds, Water-fleas, Centipedes, Earthworms. The hooked embryo loses its hooks and develops into the cysticercoid in some part of the invertebrate intermediate host. The cysticercoid consists of three parts—a tape-worm *head* or *scolex*, with the hooks and suckers of the mature worm, a so-called *body*, and a *caudal vesicle*. Sometimes there is a tail recalling to some extent the tail of a cercaria. Sometimes the caudal vesicle is absent: when present it, either from the first, or as a result of later changes, encloses the head as well as the body after the manner of a cyst. While undergoing these changes the cysticercoid is usually enclosed in an adventitious cyst formed for it by the tissues of its host, but it often lies free in the body cavity. The transference to the final host is effected by the intermediate host, or the part of it containing the cysticercoid, being taken into the alimentary canal of the final host. Sometimes, if the intermediate host is a relatively small animal, such as a water-flea, this may take place "accidentally"; in other cases the invertebrate intermediate host actually forms the food of the final host. Thus a cysticercoid having as an intermediate host an Earthworm is taken with the latter into the alimentary canal of a Sea-Gull—its final host. In this way the cysticercoid is set free in the alimentary canal of the final host, the head becomes pushed out from the enclosing caudal vesicle and body (probably owing to the stimulus of the higher temperature) so that the

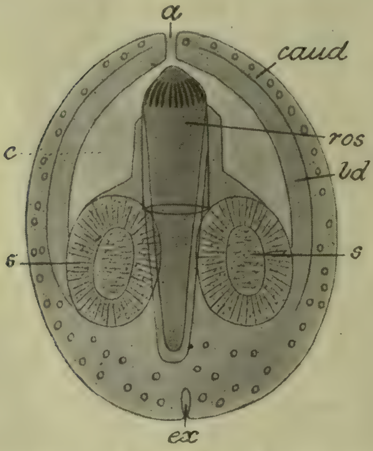


FIG. 207.—A **Cysticercoid** (*Polycercus*) with the head and rostellum enclosed by the caudal vesicle. *a.* aperture through which evagination takes place; *bd.* body; *c.* cavity of cyst; *caud.* caudal vesicle; *ex.* aperture of excretory system; *ros.* rostellum; *s.* sucker.

suckers and hooks come into play and attach the young tape-worm to the wall of the alimentary canal.

The *cysticercus* or bladder-worm differs from the cysticercoid mainly in its much greater size and in the development of a relatively large caudal vesicle or caudal bladder. When the hooked embryo has reached that part of the vertebrate host in which it is destined to develop into the cysticercus it undergoes a remarkable change; it becomes greatly enlarged, and a cavity, filled with fluid or with a very loose form of connective-tissue, appears in its interior, so that it assumes the appearance of a relatively large bladder. On one side of this bladder appears a small invagination with a cavity opening freely on the exterior. On the bottom of this is formed an elevation projecting into its interior; this is the rudiment of the rostellum on which the hooks are borne; at its base, on the inner surface of the side walls of the invagination, appear the suckers. When everted this invagination corresponds closely with the head and body of the cysticercoid; the bladder corresponds to the caudal vesicle. The chief difference between a cysticercus and a cysticercoid is that in the former the caudal vesicle is relatively very large, and that the order of development of the parts is somewhat modified.

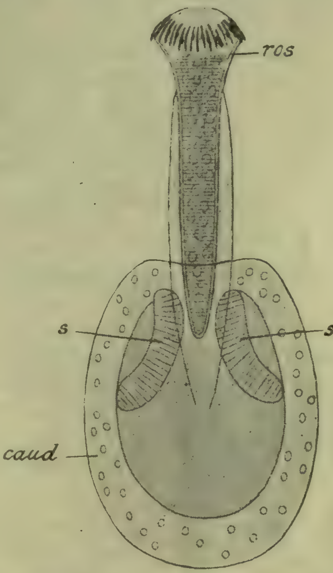


FIG. 208.—A **Cysticercoid**, with the head evaginated. *ros.* rostellum; *s.*, *s.* suckers; *caud.* caudal vesicle.

A very small number both of cysticercoids and cysticerci multiply by proliferation—by the formation of more than one tape-worm head from one embryo. In the few instances in which this occurs among the cysticercoids the hooked embryo gives rise, not directly to a cysticercoid, but to a mass of cells, from which are given off a number of buds, each developing into a cysticercoid with the three parts already described. One such form occurs in certain Earth-worms; another in a Myriapod (*Glomeris limbatus*).

Tænia cœnurus of the Dog has a bladder-worm stage, in the Sheep and Rabbit, which gives rise to several tape-worm heads. But the best known instance of multiple production of scolices in a cysticercus is *Tænia echinococcus*—well known as cause of the disease termed *hydatids*, common in Man and in various domestic animals. In this case the hooked embryo develops into a large *mother-cyst*, from the interior of which *daughter-cysts* are budded off (Fig. 209). Eventually from the walls of these daughter-cysts there are formed numerous tape-worm heads, or *scolices* (Figs. 210 and 211) which, when fully formed, assume the appearance of cysticercoids without the caudal vesicle. These are readily detached, and, should the organ in which the cyst has been developed be devoured by a Dog—which is the final host of the parasite—some of these scolices become attached to the wall of the intestine and develop into the—as compared with the size of the cyst, and as compared with other tape-worms—very small adult *Tænia echinococcus*. The eggs which the latter produces, passing out with the fæces of the Dog, may be taken into the digestive canal of Man or of one of the domestic animals, and the minute embryos escaping reach some organ, such as the liver or lung, in which they are capable of developing into a comparatively enormous cyst.

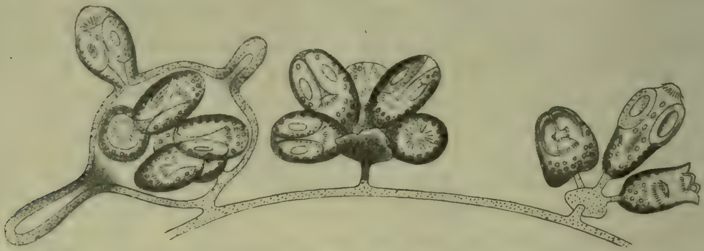


FIG. 209.—Cyst of **Tænia echinococcus** with the developing daughter-cysts and scolices. (After Leuckart.)

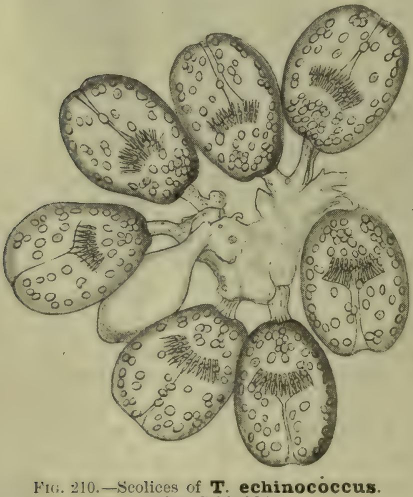


FIG. 210.—Scolices of **T. echinococcus**. (After Cobbold.)

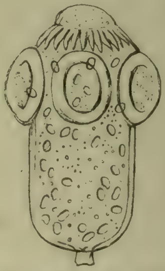


FIG. 211.—Separate scolex of **T. echinococcus**. (After Cobbold.)

Asexual reproduction also occurs in some Platyhelminthes. In some Rhabdocœle Turbellaria (*Microstomum*) a process of budding (Fig. 212) results in the formation of strings of sexual individuals which may eventually separate; the new bud is always formed from the posterior end of the last individual of the string.

The sporocyst stage in the Trematodes may, as already mentioned, multiply by budding or fission. The formation of new proglottides in the Tape-worm may be looked upon either simply as growth accompanied by segmentation, or as asexual multiplication, according as we regard the proglottides as segments of a simple animal or *zooids* of a colony. There is this essential difference between this formation of proglottides and the asexual multiplication by budding in Microstomum, that in the former the proglottides, when they have been formed by segmentation of the undivided part behind the head, do not in turn give rise by budding to new proglottides. Spontaneous transverse fission has been observed in certain Tricladida, and has often been observed to be followed by the regeneration of the lost portion.

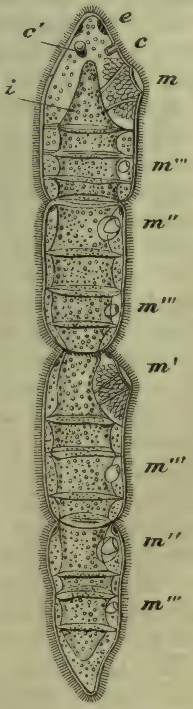


FIG. 212.—Process of budding in **Microstomum**. *c.*, *c.'* ciliated groove; *e.* eye-spot; *i.* intestine; *m.*, *m.'*, *m.''*, *m.'''* mouth. (After Von Graff.)

6. Distribution, Mode of Occurrence, and Mutual Relationships.

Of all the great groups of the animal kingdom above the Protozoa the Platyhelminthes are the widest in their *distribution*. Members of the phylum occur on land, in fresh-water down to the bottom of some of the deepest lakes, on the sea-shore, in deep sea, and on the surface of the ocean; and parasitic Flat-worms live, in one phase or another, in animals of nearly every class of the Metazoa.

As regards their *mode of life*, they present almost every possible gradation between free-living forms which procure their food, consisting of minute animals and plants, by their own exertions, and forms that are only capable of living in a special part of the interior of a certain other animal, and are quite incapable of procuring food for themselves, living by the passive absorption of the juices of their host or of its digested food. The Turbellaria are for the most part free living, and their food consists of small

Crustacea or the larvæ of larger forms, Insect larvæ, Water-mites, Rotifers, small Worms, and the like; sometimes of Diatoms and minute Algæ of various kinds. Some, however, live a life of true parasitism. Such are certain Rhabdocœles which are parasitic in the alimentary canal of various Holothurians and Gephyreans (*vide infra*, Sect. IX.). In these there is, correlated with the inactive mode of life, a tendency to degradation of structure, a degradation which is characteristic of parasites in general; the pharynx is reduced in size as compared with that of non-parasitic allied forms, not being required for the capture and swallowing of living prey; and the eyes, useless to an animal living in complete darkness, are absent. Some of the Turbellaria, though not parasitic in the strict sense, live in a state of *commensalism* with another, larger animal, that is to say, are more or less constantly associated with it, living on its surface or in one of its cavities that open freely on the exterior, and often sharing its food. An example of this mode of life is the Triclad *Bdelloura*, which lives on the surface of the King-Crab (*Limulus*).

While a free existence is the rule in the Turbellaria, true parasitism is the rule in the Trematodes, and is universal in the Cestodes. The majority of the Monogenetic Trematodes are external parasites, living on some part of the outer surface of some larger animal, and feeding on mucus and other secretions of the integument. Many are parasites on the gills of Fishes. A few, however, inhabit the interior of various organs, and are true internal parasites: one, for example (*Polystomum*), lives in the urinary bladder of the Frog; another, (*Aspidogaster*) lives in the pericardial cavity of a Fresh-water Mussel. At least one family of the Monogenetica (the *Temnocephaleæ*) are not parasites at all in the strict sense of the term, living on the surface of the "host" animal, depositing their eggs there, and being carried about by it, but subsisting on minute living animals captured in the water.

The Digenetic Trematodes are all internal parasites, and in the adult condition inhabit, in nearly all cases, the alimentary canal, or the liver, or the lungs of some vertebrate animal, swallowing the digested food or various secretions of their host. But, as mentioned before in the account given of their development, they are internal parasites, not only in the adult condition, but throughout the greater part of their life. After a short period of freedom as ciliated larvæ, they again enter into a state of parasitism as sporocysts or rediæ in a second host, and, after a second free interval as cercariæ, may enter the body of a third to become encysted. The second host is, very generally, a Mollusc, and the cercaria may become encysted in the same animal.

The Cestodes are, of all the Platyhelminthes, those that are most modified in accordance with the condition of internal parasitism in which they remain throughout life. The adult Cestode is almost always an inhabitant of the alimentary canal of a vertebrate. The intermediate host is frequently also a vertebrate—commonly of a kind which is liable to become the prey of the final host. In the case of *Tænia crassicollis* of the intestine of the domestic Cat, for example, the Cysticercus stage occurs in the livers of Rats and Mice; the Cysticercus of *Tænia serrata* of the Dog is found in Hares and Rabbits; and so with other tape-worms. But in many cases the intermediate host is an invertebrate. In either case the passage from one host to another is a passive *translation*, not an active *migration* as in the Trematodes.

A few human parasites belong to the Trematoda; but none that are of very common occurrence among Europeans. *Distomum hepaticum* has occasionally been found in the human liver. *D. rathousii* is a common intestinal parasite in China. *D. sinense* occurs in the liver of Man in China and Japan. *Distomum lanceolatum* and various other species of the genus occasionally occur in the human subject. *Bilharzia hæmatobium*, which differs from most other Trematodes in being unisexual, is found in the portal system of veins among the natives of Abyssinia.

The commonest human Cestode parasites among Europeans are *Tænia solium* and *T. saginata* (otherwise called *T. mediocanellata*). The Cysticercus stage of *T. solium*—*Cysticercus cellulosæ*—occurs, as already stated, chiefly in the muscles of the Pig; that of *T. saginata* in the muscles of the Ox; and the relative prevalence in different countries of these two Tape-Worms varies with the habits of the people with regard to flesh-eating: where more swine's flesh is eaten in an imperfectly cooked state *Tænia solium* is the more prevalent; where more beef, *T. saginata*. *Bothriocephalus latus*, a very large tape-worm without hooks, and with a pair of longitudinal sucking-grooves on the head, instead of ordinary suckers, is a common human parasite in eastern countries. Its *Cysticercus*, which is elongated and solid, occurs in the Pike and certain other fresh-water Fishes.

Of all the Cestode parasites of man, however, the most formidable is one which occurs in the human body, not in the sexually mature or strobila condition, but in that of the Cysticercus. This is *Tænia echinococcus*, the presence of which produces what is termed hydatid disease. The adult *Tænia echinococcus* is a very small tapeworm with only three or four proglottides, occurring in the intestine of the domestic Dog. The eggs passing out with a liberated proglottis in the fæces, may reach the alimentary canal of Man uninjured in drinking-water, on the surface of salad vegetables, and the like; and, the egg-shells becoming dissolved, the contained hooked embryos bore their way to the liver or the lungs or some other organ. Arrived at its final destination, the embryo develops into a cyst, which may become of enormous size. In the interior of the *primary* or *mother-cyst* are developed a number of *secondary* or *daughter-cysts*, and from the walls of these, both internally and externally, are formed very numerous scolices in the way that has already been described (p. 262). Hydatid cysts are very common in some domestic animals—Oxen, Sheep—as well as in Man. Various other Cestodes occur in the bladder-worm stage occasionally in Man—*e.g.* the *Cysticercus cellulosæ* of *Tænia solium*.

The most primitive of the Platyhelminthes are, without doubt, some of the simplest Turbellaria, and it is among these that we are to look for the nearest existing relatives to the Cœlenterata. In none, however, is the relationship very close. *Cœloplana* and *Ctenoplana* (p. 212) are, probably, rather to be looked upon as Ctenophores specially modified in accordance with a creeping mode of progression than as intermediate forms between Ctenophores and Turbellaria. The relationship with the Cœlenterata is shown, perhaps, most strikingly when we take into account the development of the Turbellaria, in the earlier stages of which there is to be recognised a marked tendency towards a radial symmetry. In their development the Turbellaria, that is to say the Planarians, show some special points of resemblance to the Ctenophora; the ectoderm cells are formed and spread over the rest in a similar way, and the bands of cilia have a disposition and mode of movement that strongly bring to mind the ciliary swimming plates of the Ctenophora. But though there is much to be said in favour of the view that the Turbellaria and the Ctenophora were derived from a common, not very distant stock, the latter are too specially modified to be looked upon as the direct ancestors of the former.

The connection between the Turbellaria and the Monogenetic Trematodes is very close—so much so that it is difficult to give any characters of universal occurrence distinguishing all the members of the two classes. The Trematodes are, in fact, to be looked upon as Turbellaria some of whose external characteristics and, in the case of the Digenetica, whose life-history, have been specially modified in accordance with a parasitic mode of life. It is not unlikely that the Trematodes may be a *polyphyletic* group—*i.e.*, that different families may have become developed from different families of Turbellaria altogether independently, some of them appearing to be nearer the Rhabdocœles, others nearer the Polyclads, others, again, nearer the Triclads, in the majority of their characters.

The remarkable life-history of the Digenetic Trematodes is, as already pointed out, to be looked upon as a special form of alternation of generations—the alternation of a *sexual* with a *pædogenetic* and *parthenogenetic* one (heterogeny). The sporocyst and redia are to be looked upon as intercalated stages—as cercariæ which exhibit pædogenesis. The cercaria is the characteristic larval stage of the Trematodes, and corresponds to the cysticercus or cysticercoid of the Cestode. The most important difference between these is in the presence in the former of an enteric cavity, and its absence in the latter. There seems to be something to be said in favour of the view that the enteric cavity of the cercaria is represented by the frontal sucker of some scolices, and by the rostellum of the majority.

Between the adult Cestodes and the Trematodes an intimate relationship is traceable. *Caryophyllæus* (Fig. 195) is a Cestode which, but for the absence of an enteric cavity and the want of organs of adhesion at the posterior end, is not far distant from the Trematodes; and the same might be said of *Amphiptyches* (Fig. 196), *Amphilina*, and *Archigetes* (Fig. 197). The most important differences between a Cestode and a Trematode, in addition to the absence of an enteric cavity in the former and its presence in the latter, is the occurrence in the Cestodes of strobilation. *Ligula* in a certain sense forms a connecting link in this respect between the Trematode and the ordinary Cestode, the body being elongated, and the reproductive organs repeated as in the normal Tape-Worm, but without the corresponding division of the body into a string of definitely separated proglottides.

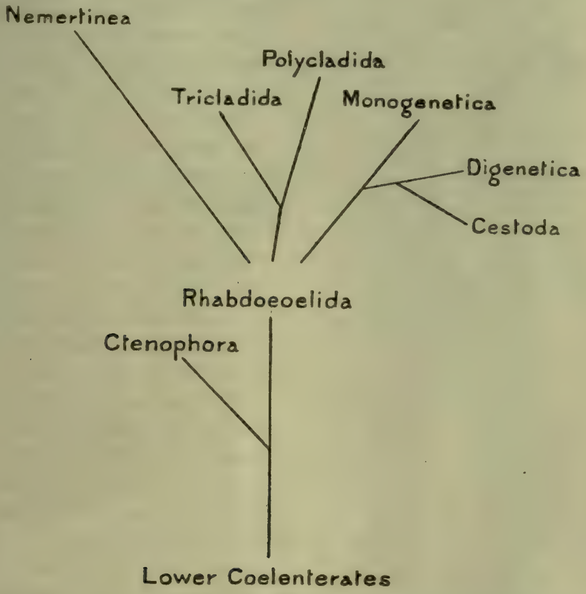


FIG. 213.—Diagram of the relationships of the Platyhelminthes (together with the Nemertinea).

APPENDIX TO PLATYHELMINTHES.

CLASS NEMERTINEA.

General Features.—The Nemerteans are non-parasitic, unsegmented worms, most of which are marine, only a few forms living on land or in fresh-water. They are commonly looked upon as nearly related to the Turbellaria, and were formerly included in that class; but they are in some respects higher in organisation than the Turbellaria, and they exhibit certain special features distinguishing them from the rest of the lower Worms.

The body (Fig. 214) is narrow and elongated, cylindrical or depressed, unsegmented, and devoid of appendages. In length it varies from a few millimetres to as much as ten metres. The entire surface is covered with vibratile cilia. Frequently the integument is vividly coloured. The cells of the *epidermis* secrete a mucous matter, which may serve as a sheath or tube for the animal. The *mouth* (*m.*) is at or near the anterior extremity on the ventral aspect. Close to it above there is an opening, through which can be protruded a very long muscular organ, the *proboscis* (*pr.*), the possession of which is one of the most characteristic features of this class of Worms. The proboscis is hollow; when it is extended to its utmost, a part still remains which is not capable of being everted, and at the junction between the eversible and non-eversible parts, *i.e.* at the extremity of the organ when it is fully protruded, there is in many of the Nemerteans a pointed or serrated *stylet* (Figs. 215, 217, and 218), which probably permits of the proboscis being used as a weapon: when a stylet is absent, the surface of the extremity is sometimes

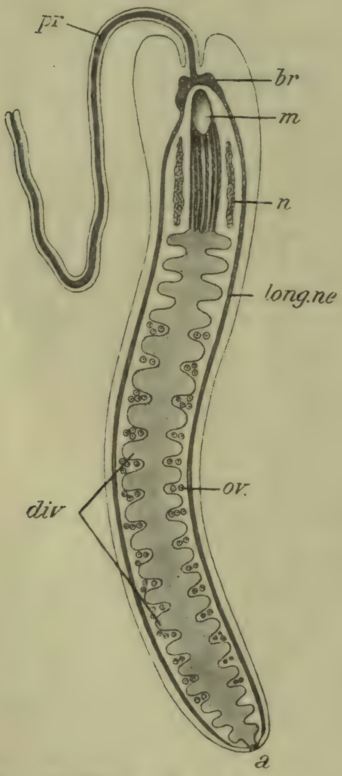


FIG. 214.—Diagram of the organs of a Nemertine, from below. *a.* anus; *br.* brain; *div.* cœca; *long. ne.* longitudinal nerve-cords; *m.* mouth; *n.* nephridia; *ov.* ovaries; *pr.* proboscis. (After Hubrecht.)

abundantly provided with *stinging-capsules;* sometimes it is beset with glandular *adhesive papillæ.* Posteriorly, this non-eversible part of the proboscis passes into a *retractor muscle,* by means of which the whole organ is capable of being retracted within the interior of an investing sheath, the *proboscis sheath* (Figs. 216 and 219, *p. s.*). It is by the contraction of the muscular walls of this sheath that the proboscis is everted; sometimes the contraction takes place with such force that the proboscis is broken off entirely from the body. The abundant nerve-supply of the proboscis points to its use being mainly as a tactile organ.

The **alimentary canal** is a simple tube distinguishable into *œsophagus* (Fig. 214) with longitudinally folded walls, and *intestine* with lateral *cœca* (*div.*). It ends in an *anal opening* (*a*) situated near the posterior extremity of the body.

The outermost layer of the **integument** is an *epidermis* of ciliated cells, with enclosed *unicellular glands* containing bodies similar to the *rhabdites* of the Turbellaria. Beneath this is sometimes a thin homogeneous *basement membrane;* then a layer of longitudinally arranged muscular fibres, among which are unicellular glands with long ducts that perforate the epidermis, together with pigment. From this layer there is a gradual

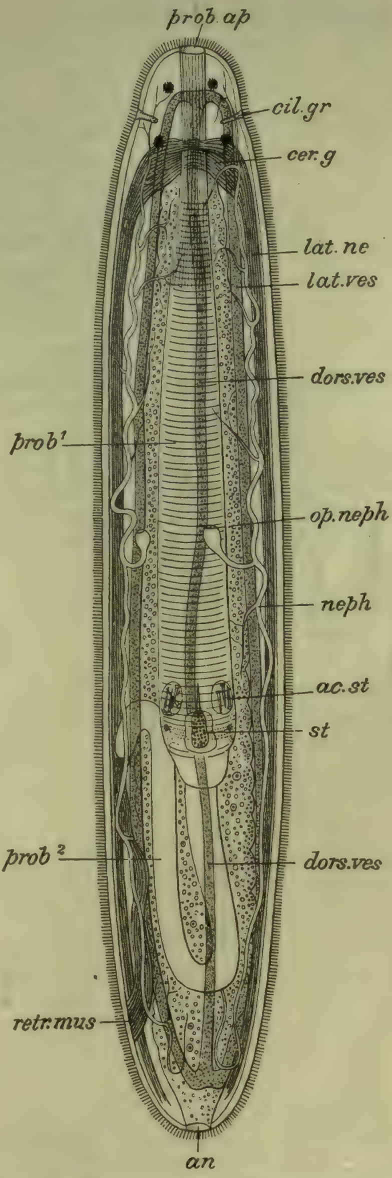


FIG. 215.—**Tetrastemma.** General view of the internal organs. *an.* anus; *ac. st.* accessory stylet; *cer. g.* brain; *cil. gr.* ciliated groove; *dors. ves.* dorsal vessel; *lat. ne.* lateral nerve; *lat. ves.* lateral vessel; *neph.* nephridium; *op. neph.* nephridial aperture; *prob*¹. eversible part of proboscis; *prob*². non-eversible part of proboscis; *prob. ap.* aperture for the protrusion of the proboscis; *retr. mus.* retractor muscle of the proboscis; *st.* stylet. (From Hatschek's *Lehrbuch.*)

transition to a layer consisting altogether of *longitudinal muscular fibres.* A layer of *circularly* arranged muscular fibres always is present; but the arrangement of the layers of muscle varies in different forms. The muscular layers are embedded in compact connective-tissue, and a mass of the same tissue fills all the space between the body-wall and the enteric cavity, there being no body-cavity. Vertical muscular *dissepiments* extend across between the intestinal cœca and produce an appearance of internal segmentation.

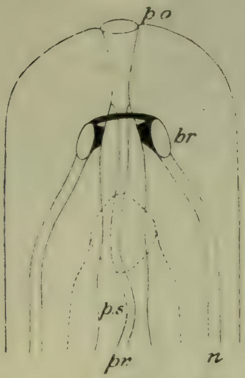
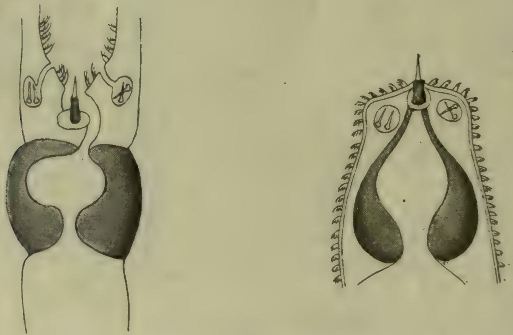


FIG. 216.—Anterior portion of the body of a Nemertine. *br.* brain-lobes; *n.* lateral nerves; *p.o.* external opening through which the proboscis is everted; *p.s.* proboscis sheath; *pr.* proboscis. Œsophagus and mouth shown by dotted lines. (After Hubrecht.)

The Nemerteans possess a system of **blood-vessels** (Fig. 220) with well-defined walls formed of an epithelium and a layer of muscle. There are three principal longitudinal trunks—a *median dorsal* (*med. bl. v.*) and two *lateral* (*lat. bl. v.*). The blood follows no regular course through the vessels, but is moved about by the muscular contractions of the body. The blood is colourless, and contains rounded or elliptical corpuscles.

The **excretory vessels** of the Platyhelminthes are represented by a pair of greatly coiled and branched tubes (Fig. 220, *neph.*), opening on the exterior; the fine terminal branches of the system are provided with *ciliary flames*, and cilia occur also in the course of the vessels themselves.



FIGS. 217 and 218.—Proboscis of a **Hoplonemertean,** with stylet reserve-sacs and muscular bulb. Fig. 217 retracted, Fig. 218 everted. (After Hubrecht.)

The **nervous system** is in some respects more highly developed than in the *Turbellaria.* The *brain* (Fig. 216, *br.*) is composed of two large ganglia with lobed surfaces, connected together by two *commissures,* dorsal and ventral, between which pass the proboscis and its sheath. From the brain pass backwards a pair of thick nerves which run throughout the length of the body; usually these are lateral in position, sometimes approximated dorsally, sometimes ventrally. In the Nemerteans devoid of stylet there is a *nerve-plexus* between the muscular layers. In the stylet-bearing forms such a plexus is absent, but metamerically arranged branches are given off by the nerve-cords; these divide into smaller nerves for the supply of the various organs. Sometimes the lateral cords unite behind above the anus.

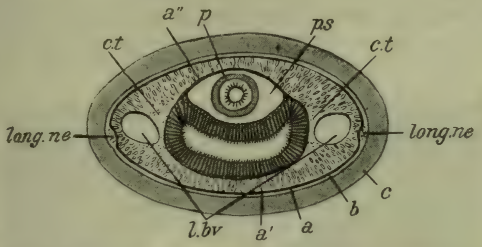


Fig. 219.—Diagrammatic transverse section of a **Nemertean** (*Carinella*). *a*, *b*, c. layers of body-wall; *c. t.* connective tissue between body-wall and enteron; *l. bv.* lateral blood-vessels; *long. ne.* longitudinal nerve; *p.* proboscis; *p. s.* proboscis sheath. (After Hubrecht.)

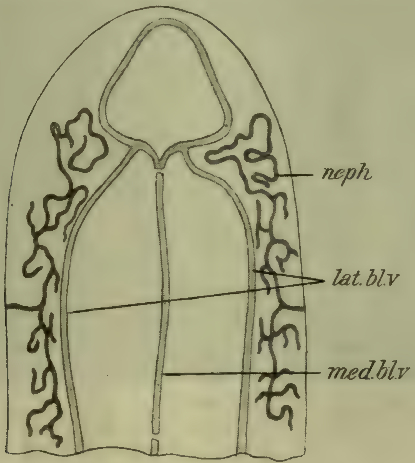


Fig. 220.—Anterior portion of a **Nemertean** (Drepanophorus), showing the blood-vascular and excretory systems. *lat. bl. v.* lateral blood-vessels; *med. bl. v.* median blood-vessels; *neph.* nephridial (excretory) tubes. (After Oudemans.)

A remarkable apparatus connected with the nervous system is the system of **lateral organs.** These consist of a pair of ciliated tubes (Fig. 215, *cil. gr.*) opening externally at the sides of the head, usually in a groove or slit, and ending internally in the interior of a pair of *posterior brain lobes*, which are sometimes distinct from, sometimes united with, the rest of the brain. The posterior brain lobes are developed in the larva as outgrowths from the œsophagus; the ciliated tubes appear quite independently of them as ingrowths from the epidermis of the head, the two structures only subsequently coming into relation with one another, and the outgrowths from the œsophagus usually altering their cellular structure so as to become converted into nerve-tissue. This apparatus is probably a special arrangement for oxygenating the brain substance; but perhaps it has also a sensory function.

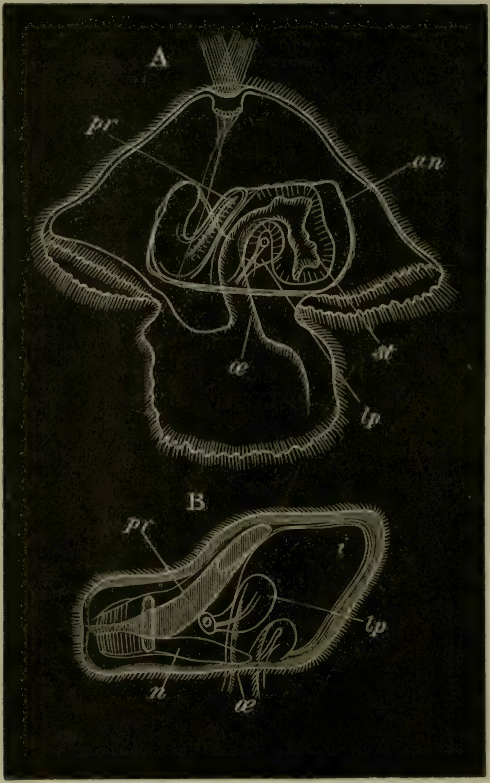


Fig. 221.—*A*, Pilidium with advanced Nemertine worm; *B*, Ripe embryo of Nemertes from interior of Pilidium. *an.* amnion, or investment of the embryo; *i.* intestine; *lp.* lateral pit; *n.* nervous system; *œ.* gullet; *pr.* proboscis; *st.* stomach. (From Balfour, after Bütschli.)

Eyes are present in the majority of Nemerteans, and, in the most highly organised species occur in considerable numbers.

Sometimes they are of extremely simple structure, consisting merely of spots of pigment; in other cases they are more highly developed, having a spherical refractive body with a cellular "vitreous body," and a "retina" consisting of a layer of rods enclosed in a sheath of dark pigment, each rod having a separate nerve-branch connected with it. **Otocysts** containing otoliths have been found in only a few of the Nemerteans.

Reproductive System.—Most species are *diœcious*. The *ovaries* (Fig. 214, *ov.*) and *testes* are situated in the intervals between the intestinal cœca. The ovary or testis is a sac the cells lining which give rise to ova or spermatozoa; when these are mature each sac opens by means of a narrow duct leading to the dorsal surface, where it opens by a pore.

Development.—Some of the Nemerteans go through a metamorphosis; in the others the development is direct. The characteristic larval form is the *Pilidium* (Fig. 221.) This is a helmet-shaped body with side lobes representing ear-lappets, and a bunch of cilia representing a spike. In the metamorphosis two pairs of ectodermal invaginations, growing inwards around the intestine, fuse together and form the integument and body-wall of the future worm, which subsequently frees itself from its investment and develops into the adult form. In others there is a ciliated creeping larva called the "*larva of Desor*," in the interior of which the larval worm is developed much as in the case of the Pilidium.

Though none of the Nemerteans exhibit metameric segmentation, yet in some of them there is, as in *Gunda segmentata* (p. 241) among the Turbellaria, a serial repetition of the internal parts (pseudo-metamerism). Transverse fission is of frequent occurrence.

Distinctive Characters and Classification.

The Nemertinea are ciliated, unsegmented, worms with elongated body, without distinct cœlome. There is an eversible proboscis enclosed in a sheath and capable of being protruded to a great length through an aperture situated in front of and above the mouth. The intestine usually has distinct lateral diverticula, and there is a posteriorly situated anus. There is a blood-vascular system and also a system of excretory vessels.

Sub-Class I—Palæonemertinea.

Nemertinea in which the head is devoid of deep lateral longitudinal grooves, and in which the proboscis is not armed with a stylet

Sub-Class II.—Schizonemertea.

Nemertinea in which there is a deep lateral longitudinal groove on each side of the head and in which the proboscis is devoid of stylets.

Sub-Class III.—Hoplonemertea.

Nemertinea in which there are no deep lateral grooves on the head and in which (except in *Malacobdella*) the proboscis is armed with a stylet.

The Nemerteans are almost exclusively marine, only a small number of species living in fresh water or in damp localities on land. None appear to be true parasites; but a few are commensals, living for the most part in the pharynx or atrial cavity of Ascidians or Sea-Squirts. All are carnivorous, and either capture living prey in the shape of small-bodied invertebrates of various kinds, or feed on dead fragments.

SECTION VI

PHYLUM NEMATHELMINTHES

THE members of the preceding phylum are characterised, as a whole by a marked dorso-ventral flattening In the Worms included in the present group the body is elongated and cylindrical, whence their general name of Round- or Thread-worms. The phylum includes the following classes:—

Class 1. NEMATODA.—The Round-worms in the strict sense of the term. The best known forms are internal parasites, but many genera and species are extremely abundant in fresh- and salt-water.

Class 2. ACANTHOCEPHALA.—The "Hook-headed Worms," a group of formidable internal parasites.

Class 3. CHÆTOGNATHA.—The "Arrow-worms," a small group of pelagic organisms.

The affinities of the Acanthocephala and Chætognatha with the Nematoda are somewhat doubtful, and the association of the three classes is largely a matter of convenience.

CLASS I.—NEMATODA.

1. EXAMPLE OF THE CLASS—THE COMMON ROUND-WORM OF MAN. (*Ascaris lumbricoides*).

Ascaris lumbricoides is a common parasite in the human intestine: a closely allied if not identical form (*A. suilla*) occurs in the Pig, and another (*A. megalocephala*) in the Horse. The following description will apply to any of these. The female worm is about 12–28 mm. (5–11 inches) long, and about 6–8 mm. ($\frac{1}{4}$ inch) in diameter; the male is considerably smaller.

External Characters.—When fresh the animal is of a light yellowish-brown colour: it is marked with four longitudinal streaks, two of which, very narrow and pure white in the living Worm, are respectively dorsal and ventral in position, and are called the *dorsal* (Fig. 222, *d.l.*) and *ventral* (*v. l.*) *lines*: the other two are lateral in position, thicker than the former, and brown in colour, and are distinguished as the *lateral lines.* The *mouth* is anterior and terminal in position, and is bounded by three lobes, or *lips*, one median and dorsal (*d. lp.*), the other two ventro-lateral (*v. lp.*). A very minute aperture on the ventral side, and about 2 mm. from the anterior end, is the *excretory pore* (*ex. p.*). At about the same distance from the pointed and down-turned posterior end is a transverse aperture with thickened lips, the *anus* (*an.*), which in the male serves also as a reproductive aperture and gives exit to a pair of needle-like chitinoid bodies, the *penial setæ* (*pn. s.*). In the female the reproductive aperture or *gonopore* is separate from the anus, and is situated on the ventral surface about one-third of the length of the body from the anterior end (Fig. 225, *gnp.*). The sexes are also distinguished externally by the form of the short *tail*, or post-anal portion of the body, which in the male is sharply curved downwards (Fig. 222, *D*), while in the female (*C*) its ventral contour is nearly straight.

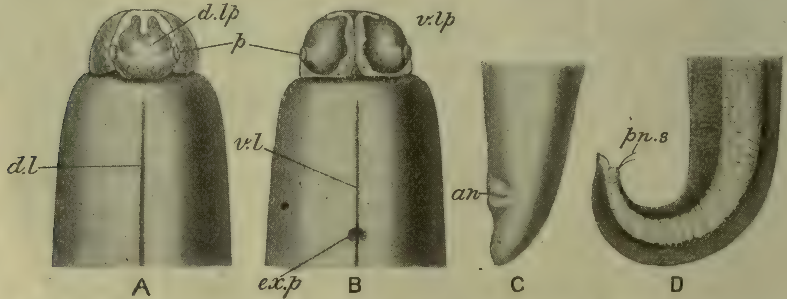


FIG. 222.—**Ascaris lumbricoides.** A, anterior end from above; B, the same from below; *C.* posterior end of female, D. of male, side view *an.* anus; *d. lp.* dorsal lip; *d. l.* dorsal line; *ex. p.* excretory pore; *p.* papillæ; *pn. s.* penial setæ; *v. l.* ventral line; *v. lp.* ventral lip. (After Leuckart.)

Body-wall.—The outer surface of the body is furnished by a delicate, transparent, elastic membrane, of a chitinoid nature, the *cuticle* (Fig. 223, *cu.*). It is divisible into several layers, and is wrinkled transversely, so as to give the animal a segmented appearance. Beneath the cuticle is a protoplasmic layer (*der. epthm.*) containing scattered nuclei and longitudinal fibres, and representing a *syncytial ectoderm*—*i.e.* an ectoderm in which the cell-bodies are not differentiated, and its cellular nature is recognisable only by the nuclei. The cuticle is, as usual, a secretion of the ectoderm.

Beneath the ectoderm is a single layer of *muscular fibres* (*m.*), arranged longitudinally, and bounding the body-cavity. The structure of the muscles is very peculiar: each (Fig. 224, *A*) has the form of a spindle, striated longitudinally, and produced on its inner face (*i.e.* towards the cœlome) into a large and almost bladder-like mass of protoplasm (*p*) containing a nucleus (*nu.*). Apparently the whole of this structure is derived from a single cell, part of which has become differentiated into contractile substance (*c*), the rest remaining protoplasmic. In transverse section the contractile portion (B. *c*) has the form of a plate bent upon itself so as to be, as it were, wrapped round the protoplasmic portion (*p*). The protoplasmic processes project to a greater or less extent into the body-cavity, sometimes practically obliterating it, and are produced into delicate filaments (*f.*) which take a transverse direction and are mostly inserted into the dorsal and ventral lines.

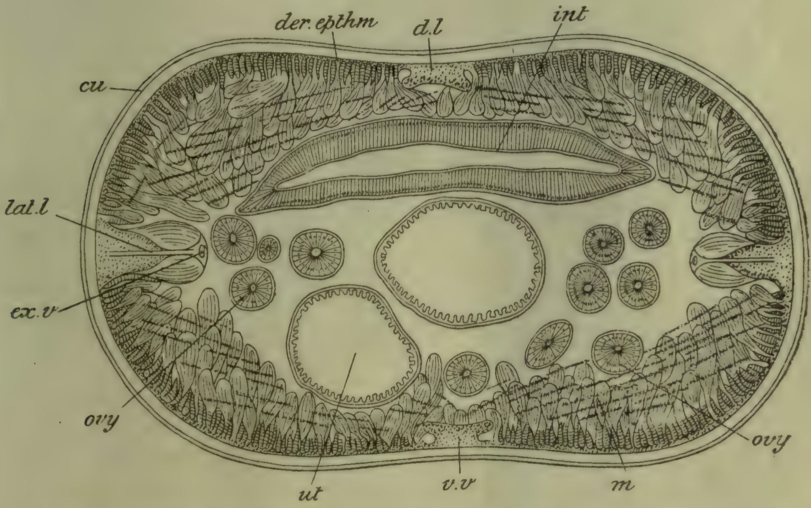


FIG. 223.—**Ascaris lumbricoides,** transverse section, *cu.* cuticle; *d. l.* dorsal line; *der. epthm.* deric epithelium or epidermis; *ex. v.* excretory vessel; *int.* intestine; *lat. l.* lateral line; *m.* muscular layer; *ovy.* ovary; *ut.* uterus; *v. v.* ventral line. (After Vogt and Yung.)

The muscular layer is not continuous, but is divided into four longitudinal bands or quadrants, two dorso-lateral and two ventro-lateral, owing to the fact that at the dorsal, ventral, and lateral lines the ectoderm undergoes a great thickening and projects inwards, between the muscles, in the form of four longitudinal ridges (Fig. 223, *d.l.*, *v.v.*, *lat. l.*). It is this arrangement that gives rise to the lines seen externally. The ridges forming the lateral lines are much more prominent than the other two.

Digestive Organs.—The mouth leads into the anterior division of the enteric canal, the *pharynx* or *stomodæum* (Fig. 225 *ph.*): its walls are very muscular, its cavity is three-rayed in cross-section, and it is lined by a cuticle secreted from its epithelial layer and continuous, at the mouth, with that of the body-wall. Posteriorly the pharynx opens into the *intestine* (*int.*), a thin-walled tube, flattened from above downwards, and formed of a layer of epithelial cells bounded both internally and externally by a delicate cuticle: it has no muscular layer (Fig. 223, *int.*). Posteriorly the intestine narrows considerably to form the short *rectum*, which has a few muscular fibres in its walls and opens externally by the anus (*an.*). The food, consisting of the semi-fluid contents of the intestine of the host, is sucked in by movements of the pharynx, and is then absorbed into the system through the walls of the intestine. The food being already digested by the host, there is no need of digestive gland-cells, such as occur in animals which prepare their own food for absorption.

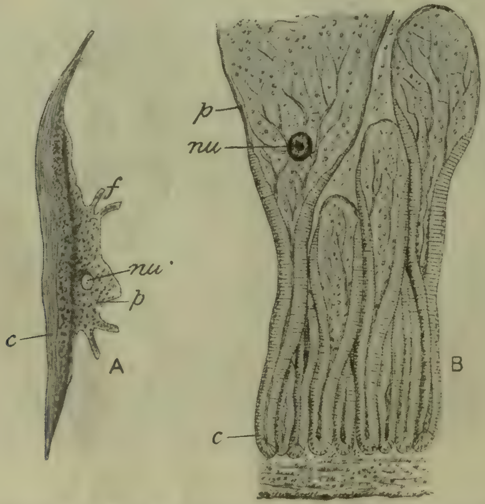


FIG. 224.—**Ascaris lumbricoides.** A, a single muscle fibre; B, several fibres in transverse section with portion of ectoderm (below); *c.* contractile substance; *f.* fibrous processes; *nu.* nucleus; *p.* protoplasmic portion. (After Leuckart.)

It will be noticed that in the above description the pharynx is also called stomodæum. This must not be taken to indicate that the two terms are synonymous, but that, in the present instance, the epithelial lining of the pharynx is derived from the ectoderm, being formed as an in-turned portion of the outer layer of the body-wall. The epithelium of the intestine, on the other hand, is endodermal, this portion of the canal being derived from the archenteron of the embryo.

Between the enteric canal and the body-wall is a distinct space, the **cœlome** or *body-cavity*, containing a clear fluid and more or less encroached upon by the protoplasmic processes of the muscle-cells. The cavity is bounded externally by these processes, internally by the outer cuticle of the intestine: there is no trace of epithelial lining such as occurs in most of the higher animals.

The **excretory system** presents a certain resemblance to that of Platodes. It consists of two longitudinal canals (*ex. v.*), one in each lateral line. Anteriorly they pass to the ventral surface, unite with one another, and open by the minute excretory pore (*ex. p.*) already noticed.

The **nervous system** consists of a ring (*nv. r.*) surrounding the pharynx and giving off six nerves forwards and six backwards (Fig. 226). Of the latter two are of considerable size and run in the dorsal and ventral lines respectively (*dln*, *vln.*). They are connected with one another by transverse commissures (*c.*), and the ventral nerve swells into a ganglion just in front of the anus. The pharyngeal nerve-ring contains nerve-cells, and its ventral portion (*un.*) is thickened and ganglion-like. The only sense-organs are little elevations, the *sensory papillæ* (Fig. 222, *p.*), on the lips.

The **reproductive organs** are formed on a peculiar and very characteristic pattern. The *testis* (Fig. 227, *ts.*) is a long coiled thread, about the thickness of fine sewing-cotton, and occupying a consider-

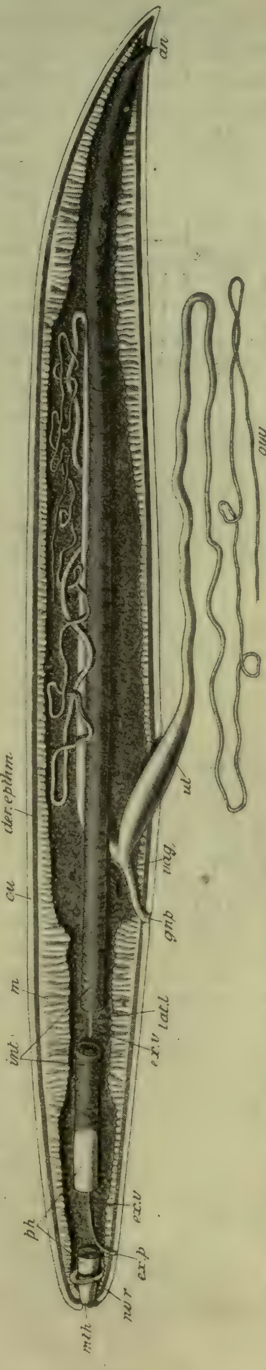


Fig. 225.—**Ascaris lumbricoides.** Semi-diagrammatic dissection of the female. *an.* anus; *cu.* cuticle; *der. epthm.* deric epithelium; *ex. p.* excretory pore; *ex. c.* excretory vessel; *gnp.* gonopore; *int.* intestine partly cut away; *lat. l.* lateral line; *m.* muscular layer; *mth.* mouth; *nv. r.* nerve-ring; *ovy.* ovary, that of the right side in situ, the left spread out; *ph.* pharynx, partly cut away; *ut.* uterus.

able portion of the body-cavity. At its posterior end it is continuous with the *vas deferens*, the two passing insensibly into one another so that the junction is not visible externally. The vas deferens, in its turn, becomes continuous with a wide canal, the *vesicula seminalis* (*vs. sem.*), which opens by a short, narrow muscular tube, the *ductus ejaculatorius*, into the rectum. Behind the rectum, and opening into its dorsal wall, are paired muscular sacs (*s.*), containing the *penial setæ* (*pn. s.*) already noticed. The anterior end of the testis consists of a solid mass of sex-cells: passing backwards there is found a cord or *rachis* occupying the axis of the tube and having the sperm-cells attached to it: still further back the sperms become gradually differentiated, and are finally set free in the vas deferens. The sperms are peculiar rounded cells (Fig. 20, p. 28, *c. d. e.*); when transferred into the body of the female they exhibit amœboid movements, but as long as they remain in the male ducts they are non-motile: they have no trace at any stage of the characteristic tail of the typical sperm. In this connection it may be mentioned that the tissues of Ascaris are remarkable for the total *absence of cilia*.

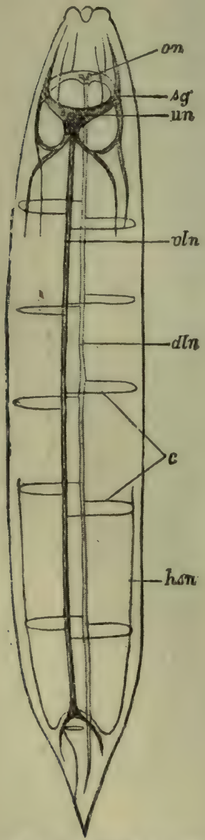


FIG. 226.—Diagram of Nervous system of Nematoda. *c.* commissures; *dln.* dorsal nerve; *hsn.* posterior lateral nerve; *o. n.* upper and *un.* under portion of nerve-ring; *s. g.* lateral swellings; *vln.* ventral nerve. (From Lang, after Bütschli.)

The organs of the female (Fig. 225) resemble those of the male, but are double instead of single. There are two coiled, thread-like ovaries (*ovy.*), each passing insensibly into a uterus (*ut.*). In the ovary, as in the testis, the eggs are developed in connection with an axial cord or rachis. The two uteri unite in a short muscular vagina (*vag.*) which opens, as already seen, on the ventral surface of the body (*gnp.*) at about one-third of the entire length from the head.

Development.—The eggs are produced in immense numbers—at the rate, it has been reckoned, of about 15,000 a day. They are fertilised in the upper part of the uterus, each becoming enclosed in a chitinoid egg-shell, and are passed out of the body of the host with its fæces. Segmentation is complete, but the details of development are not known in this species, neither is the precise manner in which the worm gains access to the human intestine. It is possible that the eggs containing developing embryos, or the embryos themselves, after liberation from the egg-shell, may be taken in by drinking, without previous filtering, water into which fæcal matter has been discharged. On the other hand it is quite possible that there may be an intermediate host such as we have met with in the Flukes and Tape-worms, and shall also find to occur in several members of the class now under discussion.

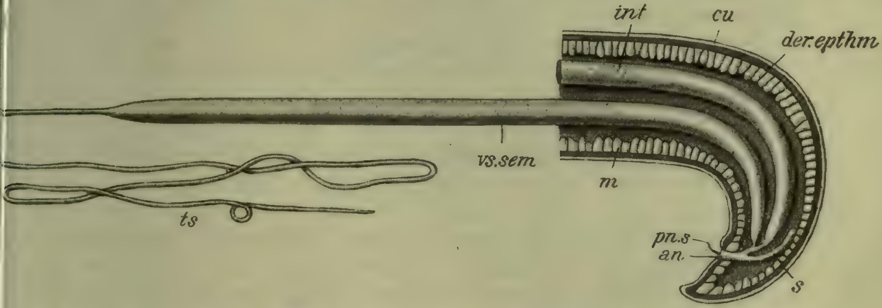


FIG. 227.—**Ascaris lumbricoides,** posterior extremity of male, dissected. *an.* anus; *cu.* cuticle; *der. epthm.* epidermis; *m.* muscular layer; *p. s.* penial seta; *s.* sacs containing penial seta; *ts.* testis; *vs. sem.* vesicula seminalis.

2. DISTINCTIVE CHARACTERS AND CLASSIFICATION.

The Nematoda are Nematelminthes having a cylindrical body of great length in proportion to its diameter, and pointed at both ends. The body-wall consists of a tough external cuticle, an ectoderm in the form of a syncytium or protoplasmic layer containing nuclei and rarely exhibiting cell-structure, and a single layer of longitudinal muscular fibres which are interrupted along one or more (dorsal, ventral, and lateral) lines. The body-wall encloses a body-cavity containing a clear fluid and more or less encroached upon by processes of the muscle-cells or other mesodermal tissues. The enteric canal is straight, and consists of pharynx, intestine, and rectum: the pharynx is a stomodæum. The mouth is anterior and terminal, the anus ventral and situated a short distance from the posterior end. Excretory canals, running in the lateral lines, are usually present. The nervous system consists of a pharyngeal ring containing nerve-cells and giving off nerves forwards and backwards: of the latter a single ventral nerve-cord, or two cords, respectively dorsal and ventral, are of considerable size and extend to the posterior end of the body. The Nematoda are in nearly all cases diœcious: eggs are produced in immense numbers, and are impregnated within the body of the female. The sperms are non-motile, or perform amœboid movements only after entering the female organs. Cilia are wholly absent.

A large proportion of Nematoda are free-living, spending their whole life in fresh- or salt-water, damp earth, decaying matter, &c.; the remainder are parasitic during the whole or a part of life.

The class is divided into two orders.

ORDER 1.—NEMATOIDEA.

Nematoda in which the cœlome is not lined by epithelium, but is bounded directly by the body-muscles. There are two chief nerve-cords given off backwards from the pharyngeal ring and lying in the dorsal and ventral lines. There are two excretory canals lying in the lateral lines and opening anteriorly and ventrally. The gonads are continuous with their ducts and consist of long, more or less convoluted cords. This order includes the whole of the free-living Nematodes as well as the large majority of parasitic forms.

ORDER 2.—GORDIOIDEA.

Nematoda in which the cœlome is lined by a distinct epithelium. The pharyngeal nerve-ring sends off a single large ventral nerve-cord well supplied with nerve-cells. The gonads, or at least the ovaries, are arranged metamerically, and the reproductive products are discharged into the body-cavity and pass thence into the gonoducts. This order includes a small number of greatly elongated thread-like worms which are parasitic in the asexual, free-living in the sexual stage.

Systematic Position of the Example.

Ascaris lumbricoides is one of many species of the genus Ascaris, and belongs to the family *Ascaridæ* of the order *Nematoidea*.

The absence of an epithelial lining to the body-cavity, and the presence of elongated gonads continuous with their ducts, indicate its position as one of the Nematoidea. Among the numerous families constituting this order the Ascaridæ are distinguished by the possession of three lips furnished with papillæ, and by the body of the male being curved ventrally. Ascaris is distinguished from the other genera of the family by the absence of a bulb-like enlargement at the posterior end of the pharynx, by the posterior extremity of the body having the form of a short blunt cone, and by the presence of two penial setæ in the male.

3. General Organisation.

External Characters.—The Nematoda vary much in *size:* the little *Anguillula*, one of the commonest of aquatic animals, does not exceed 1 mm. in length, while the dreaded parasite known as the Guinea-worm (*Dracunculus*) is sometimes as much as 2 metres (6 feet) long. The length is always great in proportion to the diameter, and the body is always bluntly pointed at the anterior end and either pointed or forked posteriorly. One of the most striking cases of disproportion between length and breadth is exhibited by the free, sexual form of *Gordius*, one of the Gordiacea; it is found in earth or water and resembles a tangle of brown string, the length being frequently as much as 15 or 16 cm., while the diameter does not exceed 0·5 mm.

Body-wall.—The body is always covered by a cuticle secreted by the deric epithelium or external ectoderm: the latter usually takes the form of a protoplasmic layer with scattered nuclei, but in the Gordiacea it consists in part of a true epithelium—a single layer of distinct cells. Beneath the ectoderm is a muscular layer, which in many genera has the same structure as in Ascaris, *i.e.* consists of a single layer of longitudinal fibres, interrupted at the dorsal, ventral, and lateral lines, each fibre being spindle-shaped and produced into a protoplasmic process which projects into the body-cavity. But in many forms (*e.g. Strongylus*) the muscle-cells are flat rhomboidal plates (Fig. 228), and each quadrant contains only two rows, the total number in a transverse section being therefore eight. In the Gordiacea the muscles are interrupted along the ventral line only, the dorsal and lateral lines being absent. (Fig. 230.) Moreover the muscular layer in this order is lined by a layer of epithelial cells which bounds the body-cavity.

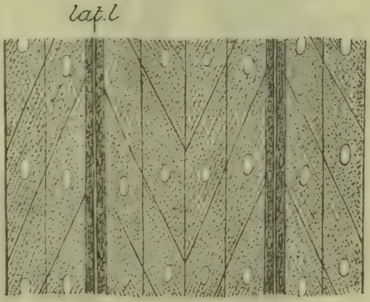


FIG. 228.—The body-wall of a platymyarian Nematode, spread out. *lat. l.* lateral lines. (After Leuckart.)

Enteric Canal.—The mouth is frequently armed with spines (Fig. 229, C), by means of which the worms draw blood from the intestinal blood-vessels of their host. Many free-living forms have a sharp stylet for piercing the tissues of the plants on which they feed, and a suctorial apparatus for absorbing their juices. The posterior end of the pharynx is often dilated to form a globular chamber with muscular walls, the *gizzard* (Fig. 231, *gz.*). The only specially interesting variation in the structure of the intestine is that occurring in *Trichina*, one of the Nematodes parasitic in Man, in which this part of the enteric canal consists of a single row of perforated cells: the lumen is therefore not *inter-* but *intra-*cellular, like the gullet of an Infusor. In the sexual stage of Gordius the enteric canal undergoes more or less complete degeneration. There are never any digestive glands, but in Dochmius a pair of pear-shaped bodies of unknown function, the *cervical glands* (Fig. 229, *B*, *cv. gl.*), lie one on either side of the pharynx and probably open externally near the mouth.

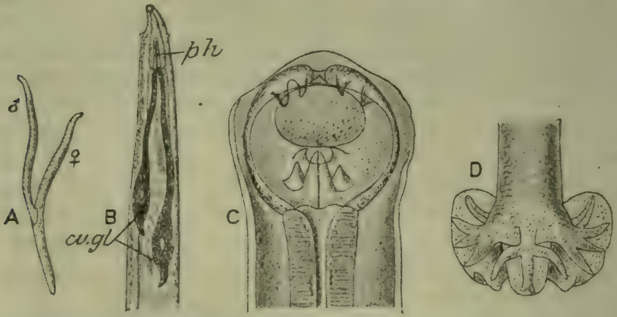


FIG. 229.—**Dochmius duodenalis.** A, male and female in coitu. B, anterior end, showing, *cv. gl.* cervical glands; *ph.* pharynx. C, mouth with spines; D, posterior end of male, with bursa. (After Leuckart).

In Nematoidea the **cœlome** or *body-cavity* is always a single continuous chamber crossed in various directions by delicate fibres, but in Gordius sheets of cœlomic epithelium or *mesenteries* (Fig. 230, *mes.*) extend longitudinally through it, dividing it into several compartments. The most important of these are a median ventral

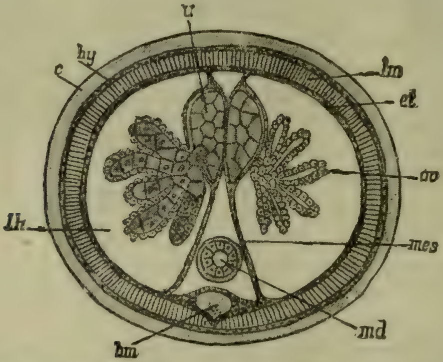


FIG. 230.—Transverse section of **Gordius.** *bm.* ventral nerve-cord; *c.* cuticle *et.* cœlom epithelium; *hy.* epiderm; *lh.* cœlome; *lm.* muscular layer; *md.* intestine; *mes.* mesentery; *o* ovary; *u.* uterus. (From Lang, after Vejdovsky.)

compartment containing the intestine and the nerve-cord, a pair of large lateral compartments containing the ovaries, and a pair of small dorso-median canals which act as oviducts. It is stated that the median ventral compartment acts as an **excretory canal** and opens posteriorly along with the oviducts: in the Gordiacea there are no lateral excretory canals like those of Ascaris and the other typical Nematodes

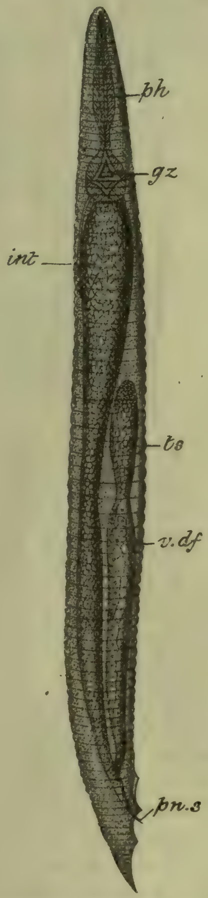


FIG. 231.—**Oxyuris,** from the right side. *gz.* gizzard; *int.* intestine; *ph* pharynx; *pn. s.* penial sitæ; *ts.* testis; *v. df.* vas deferens. (From Shipley, after Galeb.)

In the Nematoidea the **nervous system** has the structure already described in Ascaris: it is, however, apparently absent in some free-living forms. But in Gordius it is much more highly developed: the pharyngeal ring is of great thickness and is continued into a single ventral cord (Fig. 230, *bm.*), containing nerve-cells, which compares very well in size with the corresponding organ in the higher Worms. **Eye-spots** have also been described in the sexual form of Gordius.

The **reproductive organs** in all the Nematoidea resemble those of Ascaris, the only important variation depending upon the fact that in the smaller forms the entire genital tube (gonad *plus* gonoduct) is short and not coiled (Fig. 231, *ts.* and *v. df.*). A few forms are hermaphrodite, but, instead of having a double set of reproductive organs, as in Platodes, organs of the ordinary female nematode type are present, and the gonads produce first sperms and afterwards ova. Such animals are said to be *protandrous* (male products ripe first), and self-impregnation is as effectually prevented as if the organs of the two sexes were distinct. A totally different arrangement is met with in the Gordiacea: the female having numerous pairs of ovaries (Fig. 232, A, *ovy.*) arranged segmentally and attached to one of the partitions (*mes.*) of the body-cavity. The ripe eggs are discharged into large egg-sacs, formed by the lateral compartments of the body-cavity, and finally make their way into the medio-dorsal compartments which act as uteri (C, *ut.*) and are continued posteriorly by short vaginæ (*vag.*) into a median chamber. The latter opens externally, and also receives the duct of a large *spermatheca* (*spth.*) or chamber for storing the sperms received in copulation. In the male Gordius the testes are not known: they seem to disappear very early, after discharging their contents into large reservoirs or *vesiculæ seminales* (B, *vs.sem.*): from these vasa deferentia are continued into a *cloaca* (*cl.*) or dilated extremity of the intestine, part of which can be everted as a *bursa copulatrix* (*b.c.*).

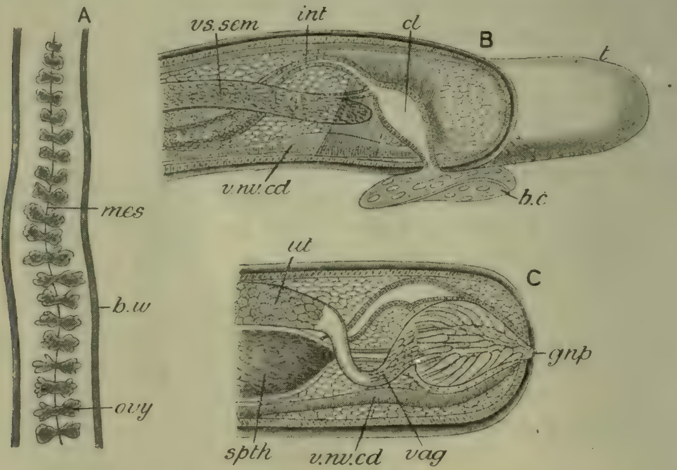


FIG. 232.—**Gordius.** A, horizontal section of female, showing ovaries (*ovy*) attached to mesentery (*mes.*); *b. w.* body-wall; B, posterior extremity of male, sagittal section, *b. c.* bursa copulatrix; *cl.* cloaca; *int.* intestine; *t.* tail; *v. nv. cd.* ventral nerve cord; *vs. sem.* vesicula seminalis; C, posterior extremity of female, sagittal section. *gnp.* gonopore; *spth.* spermatheca; *ut.* uterus; *vag.* vagina; *v. nv. cd.* ventral nerve cord. (After Vejdowsky.)

The **development** of Nematoda has been best worked out in Ascaris nigrovenosa. Segmentation is complete, but somewhat unequal (Fig. 233, A, B), and the ectoderm cells grow over the endoderm (C), forming an epibolic gastrula with a long slit-like blastopore (D–F). The mesoderm is developed from a single pair of endoderm cells (D., *mes.*), which enlarge, multiply, and form a distinct cell-layer between ecto- and endoderm (E–H). The epithelium of the pharynx is formed by an invagination of ectoderm, so that this division of the enteric canal is a true stomodæum (I, *stdm.*). The nervous system is developed from certain cells (G–I, *n.*) which bud off from the ectoderm at the anterior end of the body. The reproductive organs originate from a single mesoderm cell on each side (H, I, *g.*).

Many of the Nematoda have a curious and complex **life-history:** a few examples will be selected for description.

Ascaris nigrovenosa lives, in the sexual condition, in the lungs of Frogs and Toads: it is remarkable among members of the class in being hermaphrodite. The eggs are laid and the embryos pass from the lungs into the enteric canal of the host, are expelled with its fæces, and develop in water into a sexual Nematode, called the *Rhabditis*-form, in which the sexes are separate: in this the fertilised eggs develop in the body of the female, and, when fully formed, make their way through the wall of the uterus and proceed to devour the whole of the maternal tissues, leaving nothing but the cuticle.

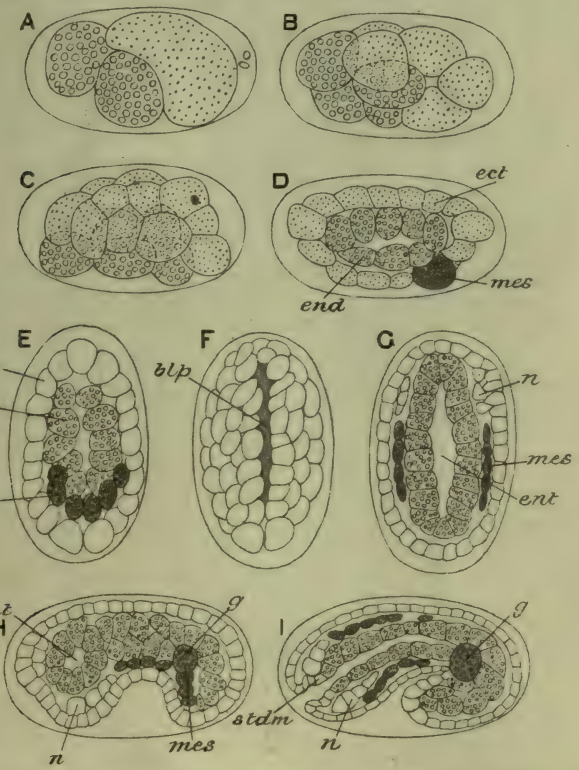


FIG. 233.—Development of **Ascaris nigrovenosa.** *blp.* blastopore ; *ect.* ectoderm ; *end.* endoderm ; *ent.* enteron ; *mes.* mesoderm ; *n.* nervous system ; *stdm.* stomodæum. (From Korschelt and Heider, after Goette.)

Being set free, they live in mud until they succeed in gaining access to a frog's mouth, when they pass into the lung, develop hermaphrodite reproductive organs, and so re-commence the cycle. It will be seen that we have here a peculiar form of alternation of generations, distinguished not by the alternation of a sexual with an asexual form (metagenesis) as in Hydrozoa, but by the alternation of a hermaphrodite with a diœcious form. This type of alternation of generations is distinguished as *heterogeny*

One of the most terrible parasites of man is *Trichina spiralis* (Fig. 234), a minute worm, the male (C) a little over 1 mm. ($\frac{1}{18}$ in.) in length, the female (B) about 3 mm. ($\frac{1}{8}$ in.). In the adult or sexual condition it lives in the intestine of Man, the Pig, and other mammals. Internal impregnation takes place, the eggs develop in the uterus of the female, and the minute young (B, *e.*), to the

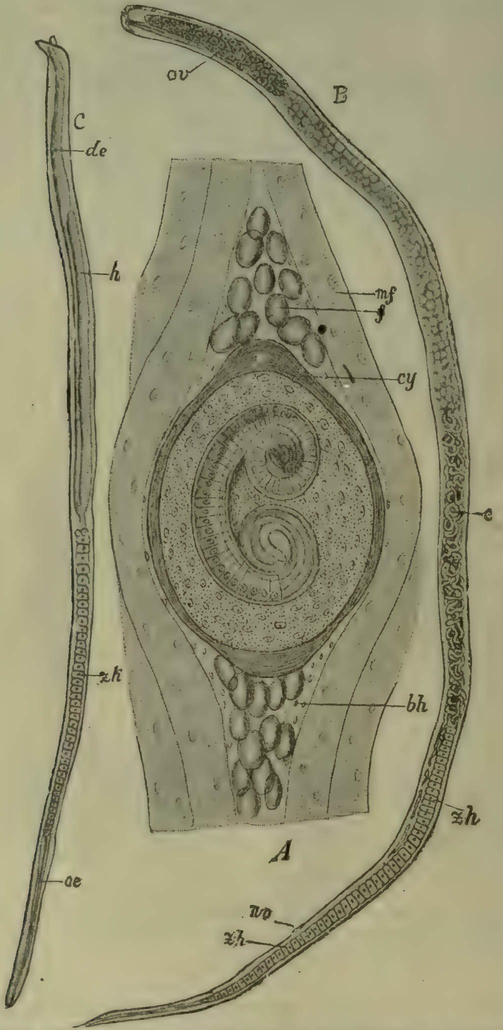


Fig. 234.—**Trichina spiralis.** A, encysted form, in muscle of host ; B, female ; C. male. *bh.* connective tissue envelope ; *cy.* cyst ; *de.* ejaculatory duct ; *e.* embryos ; *f.* fat globules ; *h.* testis ; *m. f.* muscle fibre ; *oe* pharynx ; *ov.* ovary ; *wo.* gonopore ; *zh.* cell-masses in intestine. (From Lang's Comparative Anatomy, after Claus.)

number of at least a thousand, are born alive. Soon after birth the young worms migrate through the walls of the intestine, and, following the course of the connective-tissues, reach the voluntary muscles of the host, such as those of the limbs, back, tongue, etc. Each Worm then penetrates the sarcolemma of a muscle-fibre and coils itself up in the muscle-substance (A): a spindle-shaped cyst (*cy.*) is formed round it, and the muscle undergoes more or less degeneration. This process gives rise to various morbid symptoms in the host, but, after some months the cysts become calcified and the danger to the infected individual is over. The flesh of a "trichinised" human subject has been estimated to contain 100,000,000 encysted worms, and that of an infected pig 85,000 to the ounce. In order that further development of the encysted and sexless Trichinæ should take place, it is necessary for the infected flesh of the host to be eaten by another animal in which the Worm is capable of living, *e.g.* that of Man by a Pig or Rat, or that of a Pig by Man. When this is done the cysts are dissolved by the digestive juices, the worms escape, develop reproductive organs, and copulate, the young migrating into the muscles and producing the disease as before. The result of eating an ounce of "trichinised" or "measly" pork, improperly cooked, might be the liberation in the human intestine of perhaps 80,000 worms, and, if half of these were females, each producing 1,000 embryos, some 40,000,000 worms would shortly begin to migrate into the muscles, and produce the various symptoms of "trichiniasis."

It will be noted that in this case the parasite is able to exist in various hosts, and that both sexual and asexual stages are passed through in the same host, dispersal of the species taking place by the flesh of an infected animal being eaten by another, either of the same or a different species.

The female Guinea-worm (*Dracunculus medinensis*) attains a length of 30–200 cm. (1–6 ft.), and lives in the subcutaneous connective-tissue of Man. The eggs develop in the uterus, and the new-born young pass out of the body of the host through abscesses caused by the presence of the parasite. If, as must often be the case, they escape into water, they make their way into the body of a Water-flea (*Cyclops*), and in this condition probably reach their human host once more in his unfiltered drinking-water.

CLASS II.—ACANTHOCEPHALA.

This class contains a few genera of parasitic worms, of which *Echinorhynchus* is the chief. The present section will be devoted to this genus, a not uncommon parasite in the intestine of Mammals, Birds, Reptiles, Amphibians, and Fishes. The largest species, *E. gigas*, is found in the Pig (Fig. 235, A), and has once been recorded in the human subject: it may attain, in the female, a length of 50 cm., or more than half a yard. Most species are small, not exceeding 1 cm. in length.

External Characters.—The body is cylindrical, and ends in front in a protrusible portion, the *proboscis* (A, *p.*; B, *pr.*), which is also cylindrical and is covered with many rows of recurved chitinoid hooks. The worm lies with the proboscis sunk in the wall of the intestine of its host, which is sometimes riddled with holes formed in this way. In some species there is a distinct neck (B. *n.*) between the proboscis and the trunk, and there may be a globular dilatation at the anterior end of the neck. At the hinder end of the body is a single aperture, the gonopore or reproductive aperture (*gnp.*): connected with this, in the male, is a protrusible, bell-like structure, the *bursa* (*b.*), which acts as a copulatory organ, like the somewhat similar organ in certain Nematoda. There is no trace of mouth, anus, or excretory pore.

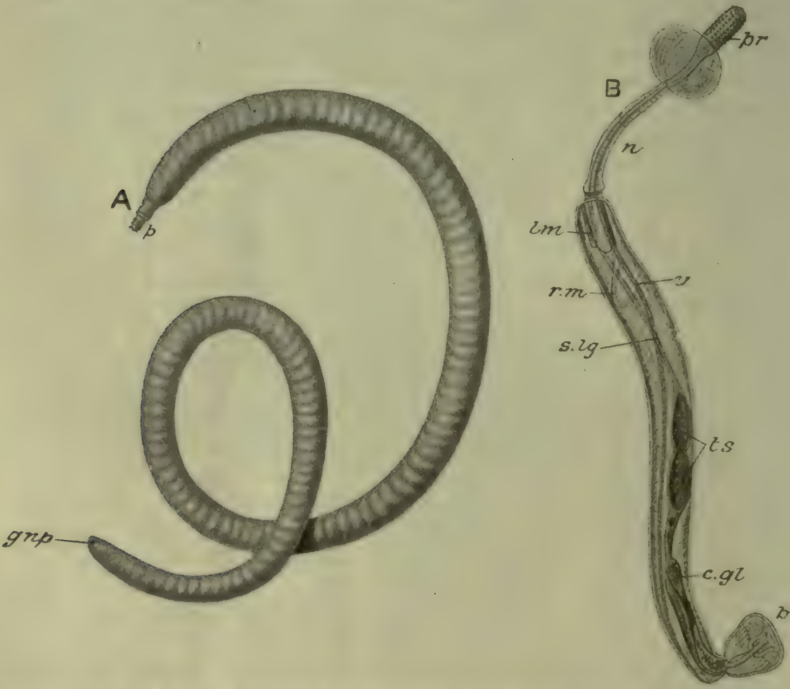


FIG. 235.—A, **Echinorhynchus gigas**, female, from the Pig (nat. size); B, **E. lesiniformis,** male, from the edible Frog (magnified). *b.* bursa; *c. gl.* cement glands; *gnp.* gonopore; *lm.* lemnisci; *n.* neck; *p.* or *pr.* proboscis; *r. m.* retractor muscle of proboscis; *s. lg.* suspensory ligament; *t.* testis; *v.* vessel.

The **body-wall** is covered with a stout cuticle, beneath which is a striated protoplasmic layer, probably representing the ectoderm. Then comes a layer of transverse, and then one of longitudinal muscles. The body-wall thus constituted encloses a spacious **body-cavity** containing a clear fluid.

In correspondence with the absence of mouth and anus there is no trace of enteric canal, the Acanthocephala resembling, in this respect, the Cestoda, the only other class of Metazoa which is entirely anenterous. Food is thus, as in tapeworms, taken entirely by absorption by the general surface of the body.

The proximal end of the **proboscis** is contained in a muscular sheath sunk in the anterior end of the trunk, and is provided with four retractor muscles.

(Fig. 235, *r.m.*). The muscles of the sheath are circular and act as protractors. At the sides of the base of the proboscis two club-shaped organs, the *lemnisci* (*lm.*), hang down into the body-cavity. Their function is quite unknown, but they have been compared with the cervical glands of Nematodes (p. 284).

In the body-wall run two longitudinal **vessels** (*v.*) containing a granular fluid, and connected with a network of fine canals in the proboscis, bursa, &c. The function of these vessels is not known with certainty: they may have to do with the absorption and circulation of nourishment.

The **central nervous system** (Fig. 236, *nv.*) is represented by a single large ganglion placed at the base of the proboscis, and sending off nerves in various directions. In the male there are also two ganglia supplying the reproductive organs. Organs of sense are wholly absent.

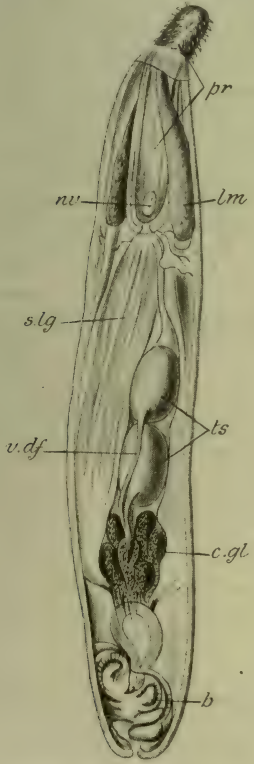


FIG. 236.—**Echinorhynchus gigas**. Dissection of male. *b.* bursa; *c. gl.* cement glands; *lm.* lemnisci; *nv.* nerve ganglion; *pr.* proboscis; *s. lg.* suspensory ligament; *ts.* testis; *v. df.* vas deferens. (After Leuckart.)

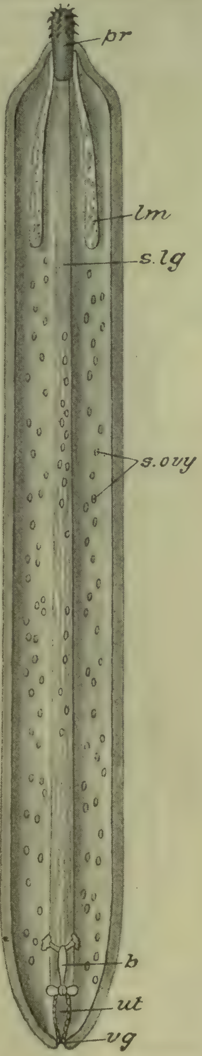


FIG. 237.—**Echinorhynchus gigas.** Dissection of female (semi-diagrammatic). *b.* bell; *lm.* lemnisci; *pr.* proboscis; *s. ovy.* swimming ovaries; *ut.* uterus; *vg.* vagina.

A pair of remarkable **excretory organs** or **nephridia** have been found to occur in Echinorhynchus gigas. These consist of a pair of ramified protoplasmic masses situated in the body-cavity at the posterior end near the genital aperture. In the interior is a system of branching canals, the terminal branches of which, each contained in one of the terminal lobes of the tree-like nephridium, are provided with ciliary flames; at the end of each lobe are a number of fine perforations placing the contained canal in communication with the body-cavity. The stalk of each nephridium contains a single main canal; these unite to form a wide median dorsal channel which opens behind in the female into the unpaired portion of the oviduct and in the male into the ejaculatory duct.

The greater part of the body-cavity is occupied by the **reproductive organs.** The sexes are separate, and the female is larger than the male. In both sexes the gonads and their ducts are connected with a great *suspensory ligament* (*s.lg.*), which extends backwards from the end of the proboscis-sheath.

In the male there are two ovoidal *testes* (Fig. 236, *ts.*) connected with the suspensory ligament. From each a *vas deferens* (*v.df.*), furnished with several *vesiculæ seminales* or sacs for the storage of the spermatic fluid, passes backwards and unites with its fellow to form an *ejaculatory duct*, with which are connected about half a dozen *cement glands* (*c.gl.*). The ejaculatory duct opens into the bursa or bell-like copulatory organ (*b*), and has at its opening a small papilla acting as a penis.

In the female the ovary is connected with the suspensory ligament (Figs. 237 and 238, *s.lg.*). When ripe groups of ova—known as the "swimming ovaries" (*s.ovy.*)—become detached and swim freely in the body-cavity, where they are impregnated. The ducts are very peculiar. On each side of the body is a muscular *uterine bell* (*b*), widely open anteriorly (Fig. 238, *x*) into the cœlome, and having towards its posterior end a small aperture, also communicating with the cœlome (*y*). Each bell is connected with an oviduct, and the two oviducts open into a uterus (*ut.*), which itself opens by the genital aperture at the posterior end of the body. The uterine bells perform rhythmical swallowing movements, and as the eggs—containing partly developed embryos—float in the cœlome they are swallowed by the bells. The immature eggs, which are globular, are passed back into the cœlome through the posterior aperture (*y*) of the bell; but the mature eggs, which are spindle-shaped and covered with a chitinous investment, make their way from the bell to the uterus, and so to the vagina.

The early stages of **development** take place in the cœlome. Segmentation is regular, and, according to recent researches, a peculiar form of gastrula is produced, having neither archenteron nor blastocœle—in other words the ectoderm and endoderm are in close contact with one another, and no central cavity is enclosed by the latter. The ectoderm cells secrete a cuticular membrane investing the embryo, then a second membrane is formed within the first, and a third within the second; the embryo thus comes to be enclosed in a triple case, which differs from an egg-shell in being formed by the developing ectoderm. At what will become the anterior end chitinoid hooks appear.

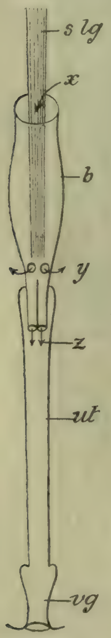


FIG. 238.—Female organs of **Echinorhynchus.** *b.* uterine bell; *s. lg.* suspensory ligament; *ut.* uterus; *vg.* vagina; *x.y.* apertures of bell. (After Hertwig.)

At about this period the embryo is born, and reaching the intestine of the host, is extruded with its fæces. Its further development depends upon its being swallowed by an intermediate host, which, in the case of E. gigas of the Pig is a maggot, the larva of a Beetle, *Cetonia aurata*. The Echinorhynchi of fresh-water Fish have for their intermediate host certain small fresh-water Crustacea belonging to the genera *Gammarus* and *Asellus*.

Having reached the intestine of the intermediate host, the chitinoid embryonic membranes are dissolved by its digestive juices, and the embryo either fixes itself to the wall of the intestine or makes its way into the cœlome; in either case it soon begins to undergo further development. The endoderm, hitherto a solid mass of cells, undergoes a process of splitting, becoming divided into an outer layer in contact with the ectoderm and a solid central axis. The latter gives rise to the reproductive organs and the suspensory ligament, the outer layer to a cœlomic epithelium, from which the body-muscles arise; the cavity formed by the splitting of the endoderm is the cœlome. Part of the proboscis and its sheath are also of endodermal origin. The ectoderm gives rise to the protoplasmic layer of the body-wall, to the whole system of vessels, and to the lemnisci. The larval cuticle is thrown off and a new one formed. The larva reaches adult proportions and attains sexual maturity only if the intermediate is eaten by the permanent host.

CLASS III.—CHÆTOGNATHA.

The present group, like that just discussed, is a very small one, containing only two genera (*Sagitta* and *Spadella*) of curious arrow-shaped worms, all but one species of which are pelagic.

External Characters.—The body (Fig. 239) is elongated and nearly cylindrical, and is divided into *head*, *trunk*, and *tail*, the head being marked off by its somewhat rounded form, while the junction of trunk and tail is indicated by the ventrally placed anus (*a*). The tail bears a horizontal expansion, or *caudal fin* (*s.fl.*), and there are also horizontal *lateral fins* (*fl.*)—a single pair in Spadella, two pairs in Sagitta.

Body-wall.—There is no cuticle, but the outer layer of the body-wall is formed by an epidermis or deric epithelium (Fig. 240, *d.epthm.*), which, instead of being syncytial as in the two preceding classes, is formed of several layers of epithelial cells. Next comes a delicate *basement membrane*, and then a layer of muscles (*m.*), the fibres of which are striated and disposed longitudinally in four bands—two dorso-lateral and two ventro-lateral—an arrangement which recalls that of the corresponding layer in Nematoda. Beneath the muscle comes a delicate layer of cœlomic epithelium (*cœl. epthm*).

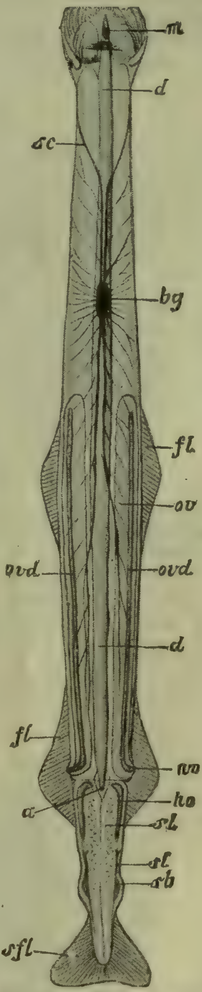


Fig. 239.—**Sagitta hexaptera,** from the ventral aspect. *a.* anus; *bg.* ventral ganglion; *d.* intestine; *fl.* lateral fins; *ho.* testis; *m.* mouth; *ov.* ovary; *ovd.* oviduct; *sc.* œsophageal connective; *sb.* vesicula seminalis; *s. fl.* tail fin; *sl.* spermiduct. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*, after Hertwig.)

Enteric Canal.—The mouth (Fig. 239, *m.*) is a longitudinal slit-like aperture on the ventral surface of the head; on either side of it are several sickle-shaped chitinoid hooks (Fig. 241, *gh.*) which are moved by muscles in a horizontal plane and serve as jaws. The anterior region of the head also bears spines, and is strengthened by chitinoid plates and partly covered by a hood-like fold of the integument.

The mouth leads by a muscular *pharynx* or stomodæum into a straight *intestine* (*d*), which extends through the trunk and opens by the anus (*a*) at the junction of trunk and tail. The wall of the intestine is made of two layers of cells—an inner of columnar cells, the enteric epithelium ; and an outer of very delicate flattened cells, the cœlomic epithelium.

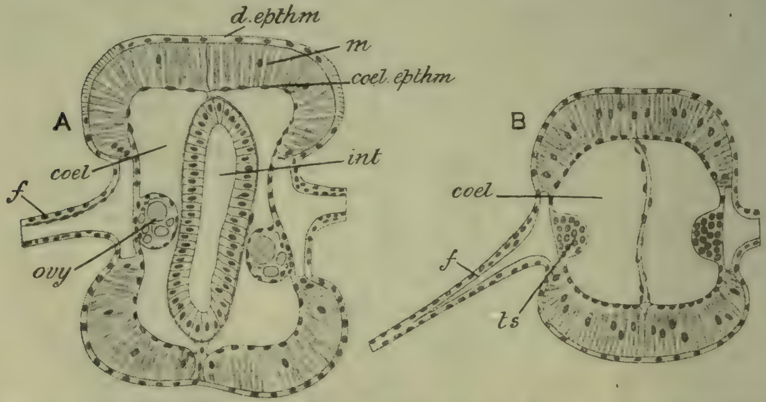


FIG. 240.—**Sagitta bipunctata.** Transverse sections, A, of trunk ; B, of tail. *coel.* cœlome ; *cœl. epthm.* cœlomic epithelium ; *d. epthm.* deric epithelium ; *f.* fin ; *int.* intestine ; *m.* muscles ; *ovy.* ovary ; *ts.* testis. (After Hertwig.)

Cœlome.—At the junction of the head with the trunk, and of the trunk with the tail, are transverse partitions or *septa*, dividing the cœlome into compartments. The trunk-region of that cavity is further sub-divided by two longitudinal partitions, the *dorsal* and *ventral mesenteries*, which connect the dorsal and ventral surfaces respectively of the intestine with the body-wall. The formation of the mesenteries is best seen in a transverse section (Fig. 240, A), which shows that at the middle dorsal line the layer of cœlomic epithelium lining the body-wall (*parietal layer*) becomes deflected downwards, forming a two-layered membrane, the *dorsal mesentery ;* the two layers of this, on reaching the intestine, diverge and pass one on either side of it, forming the *visceral layer* of cœlomic epithelium : uniting again below the intestine, they are continued downwards as the *ventral mesentery*, and on reaching the body-wall diverge once more to join the parietal layer. The tail-region of the cœlome (B) is similarly divided into right and left chambers by a longitudinal vertical partition.

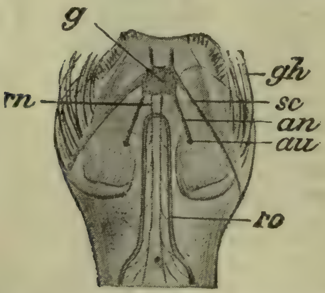


FIG. 241.—Head of **Sagitta bipunctata,** from above. *an.* optic nerve ; *au.* eye ; *g.* brain ; *gh.* hooks ; *rn.* olfactory nerve ; *ro.* olfactory organ ; *sc.* œsophageal connective. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*, after Hertwig.)

There is no trace of **vascular system** or of **excretory canals.** The **nervous system,** on the other hand, is much better developed than in either of the preceding classes, in accordance with a free life and active movements. On the dorsal side of the pharynx is a comparatively large *brain* (Fig. 241, *g*), which sends off on each side a long nerve-cord, the *œsophageal connective* (*sc.*). The two connectives sweep round the enteric canal and unite on the ventral surface, not far from the middle of the trunk, in an elongated *ventral ganglion* (Fig. 239, *bg.*), from which numerous nerves are given off. The brain sends nerves to the eyes (Fig. 241, *an.*) and to the olfactory organs (*ro.*), and is also connected with two pairs of ganglia in the head, which lie deeply sunk in the mesoderm: all the rest of the nervous system retains its primitive connection with the ectoderm.

Sensory Organs.—On the surface of the body are numerous little papillæ carrying stiff bristle-like processes, and probably serving as organs of touch. There are two eyes (Fig. 242), situated one on each side of the dorsal surface of the head: each is globular and contains three biconvex lenses (*l.*), separated by pigment (*p.*) and surrounded by rod-like sensory cells (*rz.*). The dorsal surface of the head also bears an annular ridge of peculiarly modified and in part ciliated cells (Fig. 241, *ro.*): to this an olfactory function has been assigned.

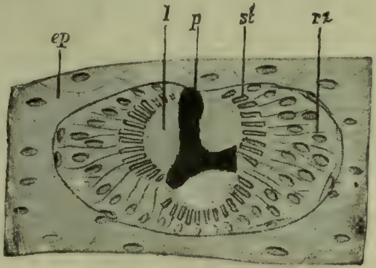


Fig. 242.—Section of eye of **Sagitta hexaptera.** *ep.* epiderm; *l.* lens; *p.* pigment; *rz.* visual cells; *st.* rods. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*, after Hertwig.)

Reproduction.—The Chætognatha are monœcious. The *ovaries* (Fig. 239, *ov.*, Fig. 240, *ovy.*) are elongated organs situated one on each side of the trunk-region of the cœlome, and opening by a narrow oviduct just in front of the posterior septum. The *testes* (Fig. 239, *ho.*, Fig. 240, *ts.*) are similarly situated in the tail-region of the cœlome, and have the form of narrow ridges from which immature seminal cells are given off and develop into sperms in the cœlome. The spermiducts or vasa deferentia are delicate tubes (*sl.*) opening at one end into the cœlome by a ciliated funnel-like extremity, and at the other end dilating into a reservoir or *vesicula seminalis* (*sb.*), which opens externally in the posterior region of the tail.

Development.—Internal impregnation takes place, and the oosperm, segmenting completely and regularly, forms a typical gastrula by invagination (Fig. 243, A). Two endoderm cells (*g.*) at the anterior end of the archenteron, *i.e.* the end opposite to the blastopore, soon increase greatly in size, and are the rudiments of the gonads. This precocious differentiation of the sex-cells is a point of considerable importance, as will be seen hereafter. Before long these cells migrate into the archenteron and divide, forming a group of four cells (B, *g.*), two of which subsequently become the ovaries and two the testes. At the same time two folds

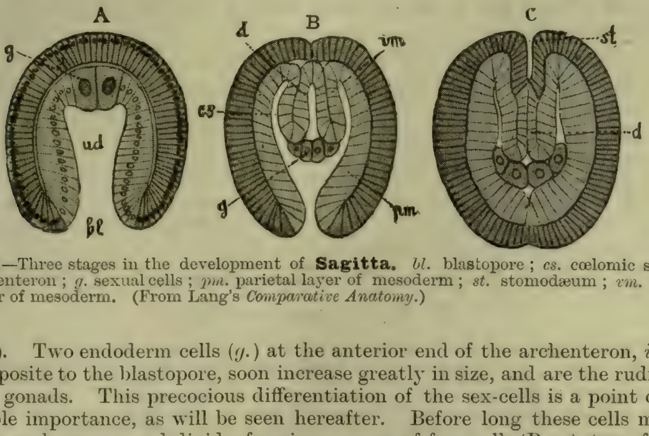


Fig. 243.—Three stages in the development of **Sagitta.** *bl.* blastopore; *cs.* cœlomic sacs; *d.* mesenteron; *g.* sexual cells; *pm.* parietal layer of mesoderm; *st.* stomodæum; *vm.* visceral layer of mesoderm. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy.*)

of endoderm grow into the archenteron from its anterior end, partly dividing the cavity into three parts—a middle division or *mesenteron* (*d*), the rudiment of the intestine; and two lateral divisions, the *metentera*, or cœlomic sacs (*cs*). There is some doubt as to the fate of these lateral divisions. According to the account which is usually accepted they become the right and left compartments of the cœlome of the trunk. According to another account, however, their cavities completely disappear and the trunk portion of the cœlome arises from a fissure which appears subsequently between the ectoderm and the endoderm; the tail-region of the body-cavity is formed from the posterior, undivided portion of the archenteron. The blastopore (*bl.*) now closes and an invagination of ectoderm—the stomodæum (*st.*)—takes place at the anterior end, and finally communicates with the mesenteron.

From this it will be seen that the ectoderm of the gastrula gives rise to the deric epithelium of the adult and to the epithelium of the pharynx, which is therefore a stomodæum; from the same layer the nervous system arises at a later stage. The epithelium of the intestine arises from the mesial (inwardly-turned) layers of the two endodermal ridges; their lateral (outwardly-turned) layers form the visceral layer of cœlomic epithelium. The muscular layer of the body wall and the parietal layer of cœlomic epithelium arise from the rest of the endoderm, *i.e.* that portion of it which remains in immediate contact with the ectoderm. Thus, in Sagitta the mesoderm is entirely derived from the endoderm of the gastrula.

APPENDIX TO NEMATHELMINTHES.

1. Family *Chætosomidæ*.

This family includes three genera of small worms, *Chætosoma*, *Tristicochæta* and *Rhabdogaster*, which are sometimes included among the Nematoda.

The body is elongated, its anterior region sometimes dilated to form a head. Either the whole body, or the dorsal surface only, is beset with fine setæ, and there may be a double row of movable chitinoid hooks round the head, reminding us of the "jaws" of Sagitta. The ventral surface bears curious *locomotor rods*, either hooked or with knobbed ends: by these the animals crawl. The mouth is anterior and terminal, the anus posterior and ventral; there is a muscular pharynx. The sexes are separate. The male has a single testis: the vas deferens opens along with the anus: there are two penial setæ. The female has paired ovaries and a single vagina opening near the middle of the body on the ventral side.

2. Family *Echinoderidæ*.

Echinoderes is a minute marine worm of cylindrical form with a flattened ventral surface. The body is segmented or divided into rings, eleven or twelve in number, all strongly cuticularised, and most of them bearing spines. The mouth is placed at the anterior, the anus at the posterior end of the body: the former opens into a sac, which can be everted so as to form a proboscis or *introvert*, and is armed with spines. The enteric canal consists of a muscular pharynx and a straight intestine. A pair of sacs opening by ciliated ducts on the tenth segment appear to be excretory organs. The sexes are separate: the gonads are paired sacs opening at the posterior end of the body.

3. Family *Desmoscolecidæ*.

Desmoscolex is also a minute marine worm, having a globular head and a variable number of segments. The head bears four movable chitinoid rods or setæ, and a pair of similar structures occurs on many of the other segments. The terminal mouth leads by a muscular pharynx into a straight intestine: the anus is dorsal in position. The animal is diœcious: the gonads have the form of simple sacs, the testis opening along with the anus, the ovary on the ventral surface anterior to the anus. The male has a pair of penial setæ.

AFFINITIES AND MUTUAL RELATIONSHIPS OF THE NEMATHELMINTHES.

The affinities of all the classes of Nemathelminthes are very obscure, and the propriety of grouping them into a single phylum is extremely doubtful. They all agree in being elongated, cylindrical worms with a cœlome; there is a certain resemblance between Nematoda and Chætognatha in the muscular system; and the lemnisci of Acanthocephala have been compared with the cervical glands of Nematoda. Beyond these points there is little to unite the three classes, and, on the other hand, the proboscis of Acanthocephala recalls the rostellum of Cestoda.

The three families placed as an Appendix to the phylum present some undoubted resemblance to the Nematoda: this is especially the case in the reproductive organs of the Chætosomidæ, and still more in those of Desmoscolex. But the segmentation of the body in both Desmoscolecidæ and Echinoderidæ and the presence of setæ show a certain resemblance to higher worms or Annulata, which will be more fully appreciated when that phylum has been studied.

SECTION VII

PHYLUM TROCHELMINTHES

THE typical larval form of a number of the groups which have yet to be studied is a form which is known as the *Trochosphere* or *Trochophore*. It is necessary that a clear idea should be formed at this stage of this important larva, reference to which will very frequently be made in the sections that follow. The general shape of a typical trochosphere is oval or pear-like (Fig. 244) with a broader and a narrower end and distinct bilateral symmetry. Encircling the body about the middle, or rather nearer the broad than the narrow end, is a double circlet of strong cilia, the *præoral circlet* (*pr.or.ci.*) or *prototroch*, situated on a corresponding ring-like thickening of the ectoderm; behind the mouth is often a second circlet of cilia, the *post-oral circlet*, and a ciliated groove or ciliated streak usually runs backwards from it along the middle of the ventral surface. The mouth, situated just behind the præoral circlet, leads into an alimentary canal, which at first runs nearly transversely, and then bends round so as to run back towards the narrow end, near which it opens on the exterior in an anal aperture. About the middle of the broader (anterior) end of the trochosphere is a thickening, the *apical plate* (*Br*), projecting from which are usually a number of sensory cilia; and in many trochospheres eye-spots and a pair of short tentacles occur in close relation with the apical plate, which is the nerve-centre of the larva. A pair of ciliated tubes which may be present are the excretory organs or nephridia.

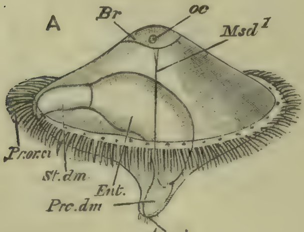


FIG. 244.—A Trochosphere. *an. ci.* anal cilia; *Br.* brain; *ent.* stomach; *Msd^1.* mesodermal bands; *pro. dm.* intestine; *pr. or. ci.* præ-oral circlet of cilia; *stdm.* gullet. (From Parker's *Biology*, after Fraipont.)

In the higher groups in which this form of larva occurs, the adult condition is attained by modifications and new developments of so radical a nature that the transition from larva to adult is of the nature of a metamorphosis. Sometimes the narrow part of the larva elongates and becomes divided into a series of sections foreshadowing the metameres of the adult animal; in other cases, in which no metamerism occurs, radical changes of other kinds lead to the adult form. But in all these higher groups, whatever the nature of the changes involved, there is a metamorphosis, and the adult animal is totally unlike the larva. In a small number of forms now to be dealt with, however, there is no such radical change, and the adult may be looked upon as a somewhat modified trochosphere. The groups thus associated together may not be genetically related: they may have become independently developed from trochosphere-like ancestors, but the possession of the general characters which have been referred to above renders it convenient to group them together and regard them as constituting a small but well-marked phylum. The groups referred to are the *Rotifera* or Wheel-animalcules, together with the *Dinophilea* and the *Gastrotricha*.

CLASS I.—ROTIFERA.

The Rotifers or "Wheel-animalcules" are microscopic creatures, very abundant in pools, gutters, &c., and formerly classed with the Infusoria, to which several of them bear a superficial resemblance. But in spite of their minute size they are multicellular animals, having an enteric canal, a cœlome, nephridial tubes, gonads, a nervous system, and sense-organs, and have therefore no real relationship with the Protozoa.

1. Example of the Class—*Brachionus rubens.*

External Characters.—Brachionus (Fig. 245) is one of the commonest members of the class, being frequently found in abundance in ponds, ditches, &c. It is about $\frac{1}{3}$ mm. ($\frac{1}{75}$ in.) in length, and is divisible into two distinct parts—a broad anterior region, the *trunk*, and a slender movable *tail* (*t.*). The trunk is enclosed in a glassy cuirass or *lorica* (*lr.*), formed by a thickening of the cuticle and produced into several spines: the tail is wrinkled superficially and ends in two slender processes, together forming a kind of forceps. One surface of the trunk is flattened, and owing to the position of the mouth is considered as *ventral*, the opposite or *dorsal* surface is convex both from before backwards, and from side to side.

The anterior portion of the body projects from the lorica in the form of a transverse disc (*tr.d.*), with a prominent edge fringed with

REESE LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY

cilia: this is the *trochal disc* and is one of the most characteristic organs of the class. By the action of the cilia the animal is propelled through the water, and, as in Vorticella, their successive flexion gives an appearance of rotation to the disc or "wheel-organ" whence the name of the class is derived. Within the circlet of cilia arise three prominences (*c.l.*) covered with cilia of large size. The trochal disc is not perfectly symmetrical, but has at one part of its circumference a depression in which the mouth lies: this marks the ventral surface. The anus (*a.*) is dorsal in position, and is placed at the junction of the tail with the body-trunk.

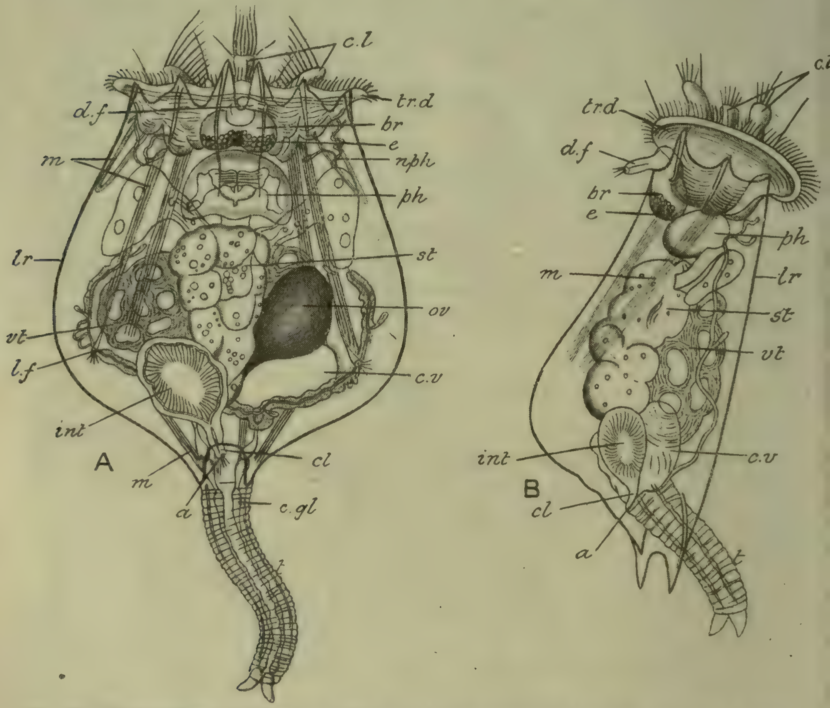


FIG. 245.—**Brachionus rubens.** A, from the dorsal aspect; B. from the right side. *a.* anus; *br.* brain; *d.f.* dorsal feeler; *c. gl.* cement gland; *cl.* cloaca; *c. l.* ciliary lobes; *c. v.* contractile vesicle; *e.* eye-spot; *int.* intestine; *lr.* lorica; *l. f.* lateral feeler; *m.* muscular bands; *nph.* nephridial tubes; *ov.* ovary; *ph.* pharynx; *st.* stomach; *t.* tail; *tr. d.* trochal disc; *vt.* vitellarium. (After Hudson and Gosse.)

The **body-wall** consists of an epidermal layer covered by a chitinoid cuticle: it is by a thickening of the latter in the region of the trunk that the lorica is produced. There is no continuous muscular layer, but several bands of unstriped muscle (*m.*) pass from the lorica to the trochal disc in front and to the tail behind, and act as retractors of those organs.

Digestive Organs.—The *mouth* (Fig. 248, *mth.*) lies, as already mentioned, in the ventral region of the trochal disc, anterior to the ciliary circlet, but posterior to the three ciliated lobes; it leads by a short *buccal cavity* into a *pharynx* (*ph.*) of peculiar structure, known as the *mastax,* and constituting one of the most characteristic organs of the class. The mastax is a muscular chamber (Fig. 246) of rounded form, and contains, as a thickening of its cuticular lining, an elaborate apparatus for triturating the food. In the middle line is a forked structure, the *incus,* consisting of a small base or *fulcrum* (*f.*) and of two branches or *rami* (*r.*). On either side of the incus is a hammer-like structure, the *malleus,* consisting of a handle or *manubrium* (*m.*) and of a toothed head or *uncus* (*u.*). By means of the muscular walls of the chamber the heads of the mallei are worked backwards and forwards upon the forked incus, and thus reduce the organisms taken as food to a fine state of division.

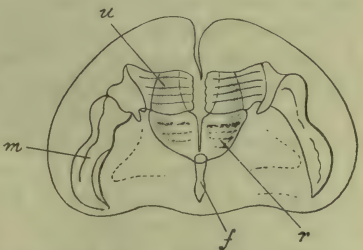


FIG. 246.—Pharynx of **Brachionus rubens.** *f.* fulcrum; *m.* manubrium; *u.* uncus; *r.* ramus. (After Hudson and Gosse.)

The pharynx leads by a short *gullet* into a spacious *stomach* (*st.*), having a wall composed of very large epithelial cells, ciliated internally: with it are connected paired digestive glands. The stomach opens into a rounded *intestine* (*int.*), also ciliated internally, which communicates, by means of a short *cloaca* (*cl.*), with the exterior. The stomach and intestine are formed from the archenteron of the embryo and are therefore lined by endoderm: the rest of the enteric epithelium is ectodermal, the pharynx being derived from the stomodæum, the cloaca from the proctodæum. Between the body-wall and the enteric canal is a spacious **cœlome** containing a fluid which serves the purpose of blood and contains minute granules.

The **excretory system** consists of paired *nephridial tubes* (Figs. 245 and 248, *nph.*) resembling those of the Platyhelminthes. Their general direction is longitudinal, but they are a good deal coiled and give off little tag-like processes ending in flame-cells. The lumen of the tubes is intra-cellular: it is uncertain whether or not the cavities of the flame-cells communicate with the cœlome by apertures in their walls. Posteriorly the nephridial tubes open into a bladder or *contractile vesicle* (*c. v.*), the contents of which are discharged, by periodical contractions, into the cloaca.

Nervous System and Sense Organs.—There is a single ganglion or *brain* (*br.*), of proportionally large size, situated at the anterior end of the body, above (dorsal to) the mouth and pharynx. On the dorsal surface of the brain, where it comes into contact with the body-wall, is a small red *eye-spot* (*e.*). The only other organs which can be considered as sensory are three structures known as *tactile rods* or *feelers;* one of these (*d. f.*) is a small cylindrical process tipped with stiff hair-like bodies, which projects from the dorsal surface just behind the trochal disc: the other two (*l. f.*) are paired, situated on the dorsal surface of the lorica and not prominent.

The tail contains a pair of *cement glands* (*c. gl.*) by the secretion of which the animal is able temporarily to attach itself.

Reproduction and Development.—The sexes are lodged in distinct individuals, which present a striking degree of sexual dimorphism. The preceding description applies to the female, which is the form most commonly met with. In addition to the organs already mentioned it has an *ovary* (*ov*), connected with a large *vitellarium* (*vt*) and opening by an oviduct into the cloaca.

The male (Fig. 247, A) is a very minute creature, not more than one-fourth the size of the female, and is strangely degenerate in structure. The enteric canal is absent, the trochal disc simple in structure, the nervous system and nephridial tubes greatly reduced, and the greater part of the body occupied by a large testis (*ts.*) which opens by a duct at the extremity of a protrusible, dorsally placed penis (*p.*).

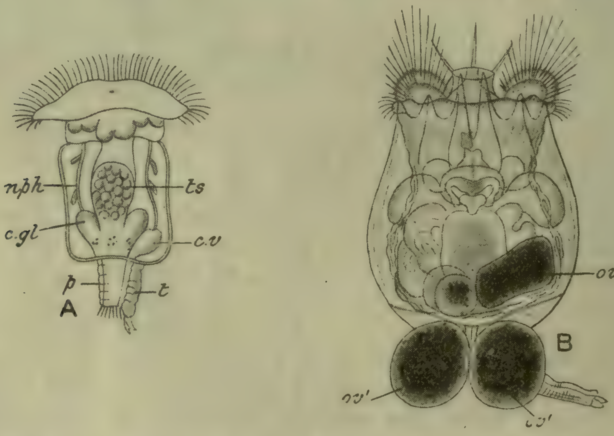


FIG. 247.—**Brachionus rubens.** A, male; B, female, with attached eggs; *nph.* nephridial tube; *c. gl.* cement glands; *ov.* ovum in body; *ov.*^{1} ova attached to base of tail; *p.* penis; *t.* tail; *ts.* testis. (After Hudson and Gosse.)

After extrusion the eggs are attached to the base of the tail of the female (B, *ov'.*), where they undergo development: they are of two sizes, the larger giving rise to females, the smaller to males. Probably both kinds develop parthenogenetically, but in the autumn thick-shelled *winter eggs* are produced which appear to require fertilisation. These remain quiescent during the winter, and in the spring develop into females.

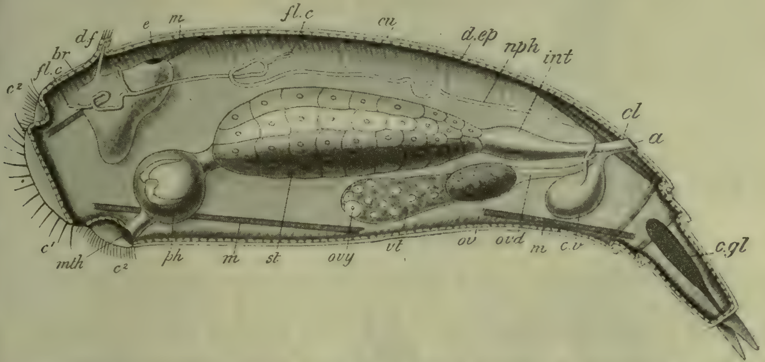


FIG. 248.—Diagram of a **Rotifer.** *a.* anus; *br.* brain; c^1. præ-oral; c^2. post-oral circlet of cilia; *c. gl.* cement gland; *cl.* cloaca; *cu.* cuticle; *d. ep.* deric epithelium; *d. f.* dorsal feeler; *e.* eye; *fl. c.* flame-cells; *int.* intestine; *m.* muscles; *mth.* mouth; *nph.* nephridial tube; *ov.* ovum; *ovd.* oviduct; *ovy.* ovary; *ph.* pharynx; *st.* stomach; *vt.* vitellarium.

2.—Distinctive Characters and Classification.

The Rotifera are Trochelminthes of microscopic size. The anterior end is modified into a retractile trochal disc, with variously arranged cilia; the posterior end usually forms a mobile and often telescopically jointed tail. The mouth is anterior and more or less ventral in position, the pharynx contains a chitinous masticatory apparatus, and the anus is placed dorsally at the junction of the trunk with the tail. There is a spacious cœlome. The excretory organs are a pair of nephridial tubes provided with flame-cells. The nervous system consists of a single dorsal ganglion. The sexes are separate, and the males are, in nearly all cases, smaller than the females and degenerate in structure.

The class is divided into five orders as follows:—

Order 1.—Rhizota

Rotifera which are fixed in the adult state by the truncated end of the non-retractile tail.

Including *Floscularia, Stephanoceros, Melicerta,* etc.

Order 2.—Bdelloïda.

Rotifera which both swim freely by means of the cilia of the disc and creep after the manner of a Leech. The tail is telescopic and forked distally.

Including *Rotifer, Philodina,* etc.

ORDER 3.—PLOÏMA.

Rotifera in which locomotion is performed by the ciliated disc only. The tail is usually forked and more or less retractile.

Sub-order a.—Illoricata

Ploïma in which the trunk is not covered by a lorica.
Including *Hydatina, Polyarthra, Asplanchna*, etc.

Sub-order b.—Loricata

Ploïma in which a lorica is present.
Including *Brachionus, Euchlanis*, etc.

ORDER 4.—SCIRTOPODA.

Rotifera provided with setose appendages moved by striped muscles: skipping movements are performed by the aid of these as well as swimming movements by the trochal disc. The tail is either absent or is represented by a pair of ciliated processes.
Including *Pedalion* and *Hexarthra*.

ORDER 5.—TROCHOSPHÆRIDA

Globular Rotifera having the trochal disc represented by an equatorial circlet of cilia; tail absent.
Including *Trochosphæra* only.

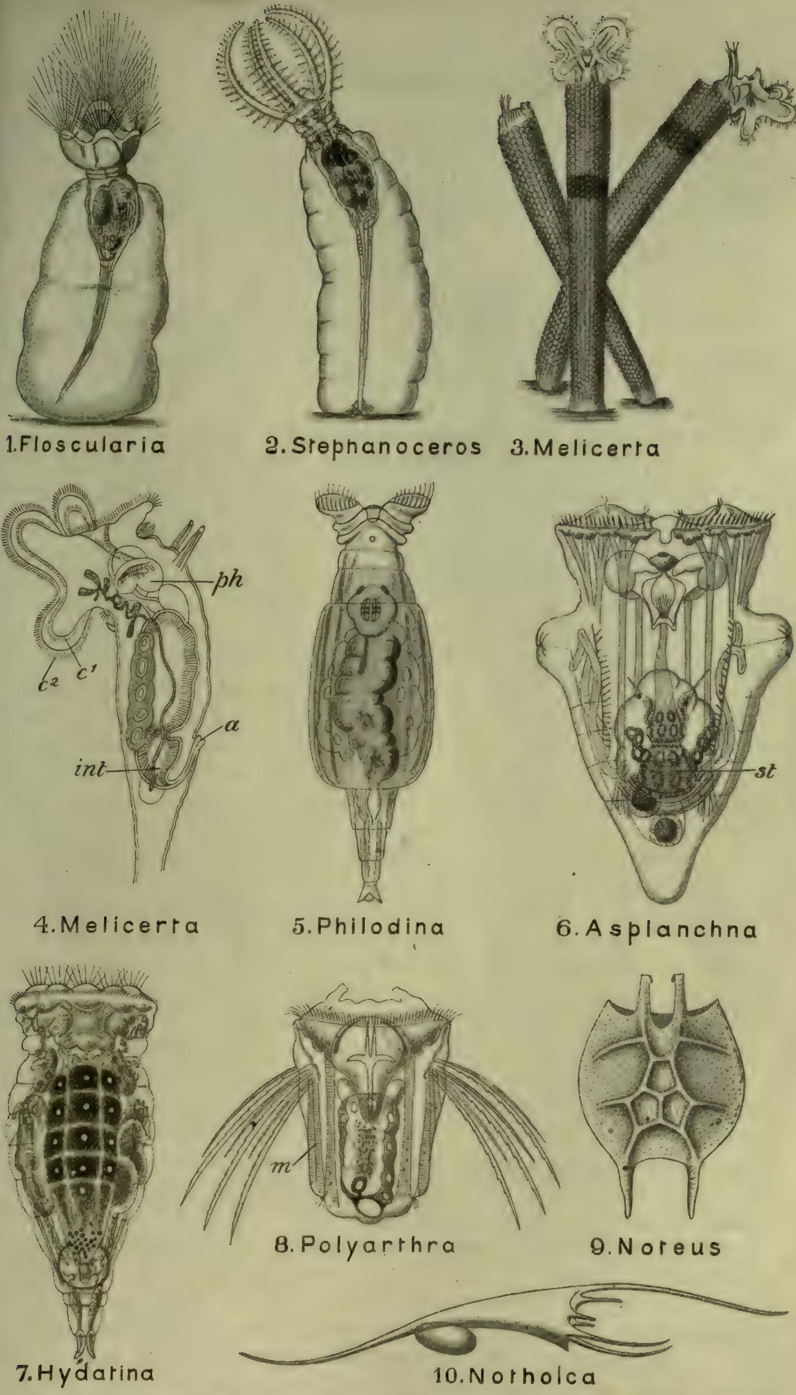
Systematic Position of the Example.

Brachionus rubens is one of several species of the genus *Brachionus:* it belongs to the family *Brachionidæ*, and to the sub-order *Loricata* of the order Ploïma.

It is placed in the order Ploïma in virtue of its active swimming habits and the absence of looping or skipping movements. The presence of a distinct lorica places it in the sub-order Loricata. The family Brachionidæ is distinguished by having a box-like lorica open at both ends, and a long, flexible, retractile tail with wrinkled surface and forceps-like termination. In the genus Brachionus the lorica is not marked with ridges, and the tail is very long and perfectly retractile. In B. rubens the anterior edge of the lorica is produced dorsally into six spines and is sinuous ventrally.

3. GENERAL ORGANISATION.

External Characters.—The majority of the Rotifera are free-swimming, being propelled rapidly through the water by the action of the trochal disc. But in the Bdelloïda (Fig 249, *5*), in addition to this mode of progression, the animal performs looping movements like those of a leech: the tail in this order is freely jointed,



1. Floscularia 2. Stephanoceros 3. Melicerta

4. Melicerta 5. Philodina 6. Asplanchna

7. Hydatina 8. Polyarthra 9. Noteus

10. Notholca

Fig. 249.—Typical forms of **Rotifera.** 9 and 10 show the lorica only. *an.* anus; c^1. c^2. ciliary circlets; *int.* intestine; *m.* muscle; *ph.* pharynx. (After Hudson and Gosse.)

the various segments fitting into one another like the tubes of a telescope, and the body is fixed alternately by it and by the anterior end, the trochal disc being kept retracted while the animal moves in this way. Many of the Ploïma also have a telescopic tail, but in some, *e.g.* *Asplanchna* (Fig. 249, *6*), this organ is absent. In *Pedalion* (Fig. 250, *1*) curious skipping movements are performed by the aid of six hollow limbs or appendages, one dorsal, one ventral, and two on each side. These curious organs are terminated by feathered setæ, and closely resemble the limbs of some of the lower Crustacea: each is moved by two opposing muscles which extend into its cavity (*1*, B, *m*). Three pairs of similar appendages are present in the other genus of Scirtopoda, *Hexarthra* (Fig. 250, *2*), the resemblance of which to the *Nauplius* larva of Crustacea is very striking (see Fig. 395), and four genera of unarmoured Ploïma, *e.g.* *Polyarthra* (Fig. 249, *8*) possess simple or fringed setæ moved by muscles attached to their bases.

In the Rhizota the adult is permanently fixed (Fig. 249, *1–4*). The end of the tail is devoid of the characteristic fork, and is attached to plants or other supports. Moreover the animal is surrounded by a tube, into which it can retract itself completely, protruding the anterior end with the trochal disc when undisturbed. In most instances, as for example in *Floscularia* (*1*) and *Stephanoceros* (*2*), the tube is formed of a delicate, transparent, gelatinous secretion of the epidermis, but in *Melicerta* (*3*) it is built up of rounded pellets, which the animal moulds in a cup-like depression on the dorsal surface and places in position one by one. The pellets are usually formed of foreign particles, but in some species are made of the animal's own fæces.

The ciliation of the trochal disc is subject to considerable variation. In its simplest form the disc is surrounded by a single circlet of cilia, within which lies the mouth. A modification of this type may be produced by the prolongation of the ciliary crown into long arm-like processes fringed with cilia, as in *Stephanoceros* (*2*), or, as in *Floscularia* (*1*), into blunt elevations bearing long stiff cilia like those of the Heliozoa. The single circlet may be folded upon itself, or a second type may be produced by the addition of a second circlet within and parallel to the first. The mouth in this case is always placed between the two circlets on the ventral side (Fig. 248), so that the inner or anterior circlet is præ-oral and corresponds with the chief ciliary band of a Trochosphere larva, while the outer or posterior circlet corresponds with the post-oral band found in many worm larvæ. In the curious globular *Trochosphæra* (Fig. 250, *3*) there is a single equatorial circlet, which is præ-oral, and a few post-oral cilia: here the correspondence with the typical worm larva is singularly close. Lastly both the præ- and post-oral circlets may be produced into more or less complex lobes, as in Melicerta (Fig. 249, *4*), or may be interrupted as in Brachionus, in which the præ-oral circlet is represented by three distinct lobes, or as in Pedalion, in which both circlets are divided into right and left moieties. In one genus the trochal disc is absent.

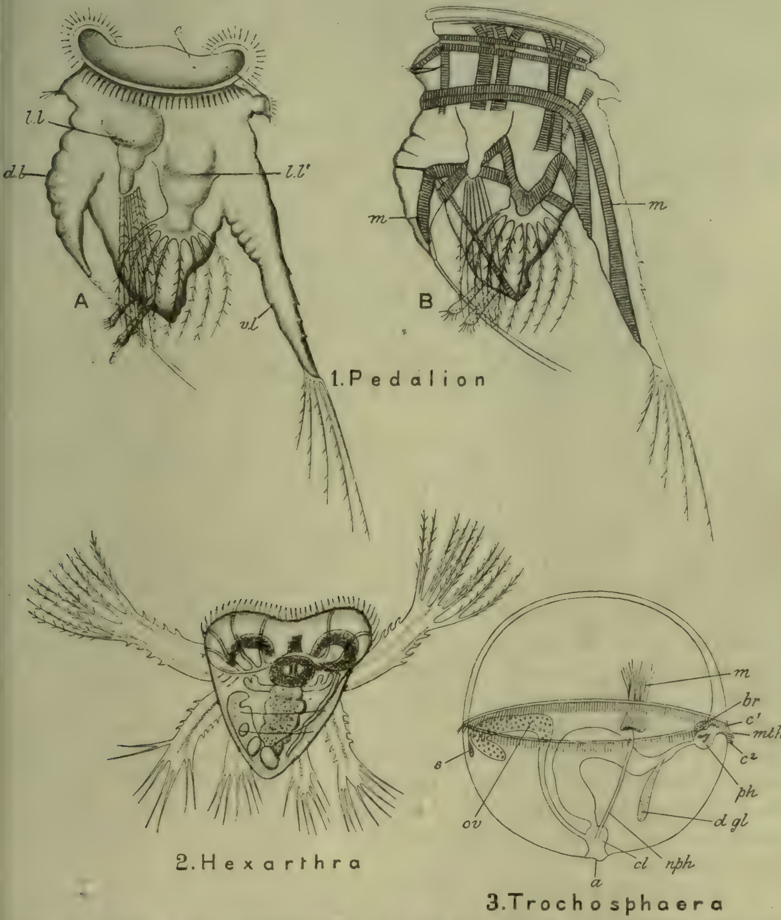


FIG. 250.—Typical forms of **Rotifera.** In *1*, *a* shows the outer form, *b* the muscular system. *a.* anus; *br.* brain; c^1. c^2. ciliary circlets; *cl.* cloaca; *d. gl.* digestive gland; *d. l.* dorsal limb; *e.* eye-spot; *l. l.*, *l. l′.* lateral limbs; *m.* muscles; *nph*, nephridial tube; *ov.* ovary; *ph.* pharynx; *s.* sense organ; *v. l.* ventral limb. (After Hudson and Gosse (1 and 2) and Korschelt and Heider (3).)

Digestive Organs.—The typical form of mastax or pharyngeal mill is that described in Brachionus (Fig. 246). There is an unpaired *incus* consisting of a short stem or *fulcrum* (*f*), and of two broad branches or *rami* (*r*), and a pair of *mallei*, each consisting of a stout handle or *manubrium* (*m*) and a broad, toothed head or *uncus* (*u*). In some forms all the parts of the apparatus become very slender, the incus assuming the form of forceps (Fig. 251, A). Or the mallei may be absent and the two rami movable upon one another so as to convert the incus into a pair of forceps (B) used to seize prey, the mastax being in this case protrusible. Lastly, the fulcrum and manubrium may be absent, and the unci and rami very strong and massive (C).

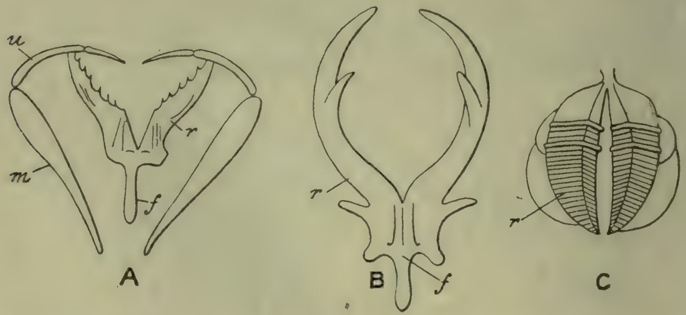


FIG. 251.—Typical forms of mastax. A, forcipate type; B, incudate type; C, ramate type *f.* fulcrum; *m.* manubrium; *r.* ramus; *u.* uncus. (After Hudson and Gosse.)

The *stomach* is always large, and usually has a pair of digestive glands opening into it: it may pass insensibly into the intestine, or the latter may be a distinct chamber of more or less globular form. In the Rhizota the intestine turns forwards so as to allow of the anus being brought over the edge of the tube in defæcation (Fig. 249, *4*, *a*). In *Asplanchna* (*b*) the stomach ends blindly, the intestine, cloaca, and anus being absent.

The **excretory system** is very uniform in structure. It consists of a pair of more or less coiled nephridial tubes, placed longitudinally and giving off lateral branchlets which end in flame-cells. Frequently, but not always, the two tubes open posteriorly into a contractile vesicle or bladder which discharges into the cloaca.

Nervous System and Sense Organs.—The nervous system always consists of a single ganglion (Fig. 248, *br*) towards the dorsal aspect of the anterior part of the body, and representing the brain or supra-œsophageal ganglion of the higher Worms: it sends nerves to the muscles, trochal disc, and tactile organs. One or more *eye-spots* (*e*) are usually present, and are always mere spots of pigment in close relation with the brain. The only other organs of sense are the *tactile rods* (*d.f.*, *l.f*), of which there is usually one on the dorsal surface near the anterior end of the body, and frequently two others, one on each side of the trunk. They are more or less rod-like structures, tipped with delicate sensory hairs and receiving nerves from the brain.

Reproduction and Development.—In most cases the female reproductive organs have the same general character as in Brachionus, *i.e.* the gonad is unpaired (*ov*), consists of germarium and vitellarium, and is provided with an oviduct. But in some of the Bdelloïda, such as *Philodina*, there are two ovaries, not divisible into germ-gland and yolk-gland, and the oviduct is absent. The males are smaller than the females and degenerate in structure, the enteric canal being atrophied (Fig. 247, A). There is a large testis (*t*) with a duct opening at the end of a protrusible penis (*p*). Apparently *hypodermic impregnation* sometimes takes place, *i.e.* the body-wall of the female may be perforated at any place for the entrance of the sperms.

Three kinds of eggs are produced: large and small *summer eggs*, which always develop parthenogenetically, the larger giving rise to females, the smaller to males; and thick-shelled *winter eggs*, which probably require impregnation and remain in an inert condition all through the winter, finally developing in the spring. Most Rotifers are oviparous, but some (Philodina, &c.) bring forth living young, which are born by breaking through the body-wall or through the cloaca, thus causing the death of the parent.

Segmentation is total and irregular, the oosperm dividing into megameres and micromeres. An epibolic gastrula is formed, the blastopore closes, and invaginations of ectoderm give rise to the stomodæum and proctodæum. The tail is formed as a prolongation of the postero-ventral region of the embryo, and contains at first an extension of the endoderm. No metamorphosis is known to take place in any member of the class.

Ethology.—A few Rotifers live in the sea, but the majority are fresh-water forms, occurring in lakes, streams, ponds, and even in puddles the water of which is rendered foul and opaque by mud and sewage. Frequently the water in which they live is dried up, and the thick-shelled winter eggs may then be widely dispersed by wind. It is even stated that the adult animals may survive prolonged desiccation and resume active life when again placed in water. Many forms cling to the bodies of higher animals in order to obtain a share of their food, thus leading a kind of commensal existence. Others go a step further and become true external parasites, like *Drilophaga* on a fresh-water Oligochæte (*vide infra*), or *Seison* on the little crustacean *Nebalia* (Fig. 422). Others, again, are internal parasites, such as *Albertia* in the cœlome of Earth-worms, and the intestines of fresh-water Oligochætes (*Nais*) or *Notommata werneckii* in the cells of the fresh-water Alga *Vaucheria*.

Affinities.—The affinities of the Rotifera are very obscure. Their general resemblance to the free-swimming larvæ of Annelids is extremely close, and, in particular, the curious Trochosphæra is, to all intents and purposes, a sexually mature trochosphere with a mastax. The excretory organs recall those of the Platyhelminthes, and also resemble the provisional nephridia or head-kidneys of Annulate larvæ. Lastly, the hollow muscular appendages of Pedalion and Hexarthra give those genera a certain resemblance, which is probably, however, merely adaptive, to the Nauplius or free-swimming larva of Crustacea.

Class II.—DINOPHILEA.

The various species of the genus *Dinophilus* are to be looked upon, like the Rotifera, as modified Trochospheres.

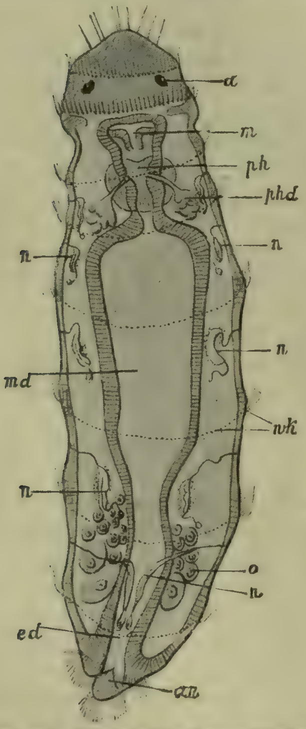


FIG. 252.—**Dinophilus gyrociliatus,** female. *an.* anus; *e.* eye; *ed.* hind-gut; *m.* mouth; *md.* stomach; *n.* nephridia; *o.* ovary; *ph.* pharynx; *phd.* pharyngeal glands; *wk.* ciliated rings. (From Lang, after E. Meyer.)

Dinophilus (Fig. 252) is a minute worm-like animal with a head or prostomium, a body composed of five to eight segments separated from one another by constrictions, and a short ventral tail. The prostomium bears two eye-spots (*a*) and some sensory hairs; it is either covered uniformly with cilia or bears two or three annular ciliated bands, apparently representing the prototroch of the Trochosphere. The body is in some of the species uniformly ciliated; in others the cilia are disposed in rings (*wk*) corresponding to the segments, except on the ventral surface, where the ciliation is always uniform. The mouth (*m*), which is situated on the ventral aspect of the prostomium, leads into an alimentary canal consisting of pharynx, œsophagus, stomach, and intestine, all of which are ciliated; the anus (*an*) is placed dorsally over the tail. A protrusible muscular proboscis lies when retracted in a recess opening close to the mouth. There is a cœlome which is crossed by strands of connective tissue. A nervous system is present, and consists of a large ganglion in the prostomium, giving off two anterior and two posterior nerves, or two lateral cords (sometimes segmented into a series of ganglia) all situated in the epidermis.

In one species (*D. gigas*) there is an excretory system which is comparable with that of the flat-worms, and contains flame-cells, the internal openings of which are provided with triangular ciliated appendages; in others there are five pairs of tubular nephridia (*n*). The sexes are separate. In the male there is a conical penis; the last pair of nephridia act as vesiculæ seminales. In the ovary two sets of ova are developed, larger ones destined to give rise to females, and smaller destined to form males. They pass into the cœlome and reach the exterior by an aperture on the ventral surface in front of the anus. A process of unequal segmentation is followed by the formation of an epibolic gastrula.

The various species of Dinophilus are marine, with the exception of one which is an inhabitant of brackish water. In certain of its characters—the tendency to a segmentation of the body, and the disposition of nephridia in pairs corresponding to the imperfectly separated segments—Dinophilus approximates towards a phylum that has yet to be dealt with—the Annulata—and is sometimes looked upon as a member of the class *Archi-Annelida* of that phylum.

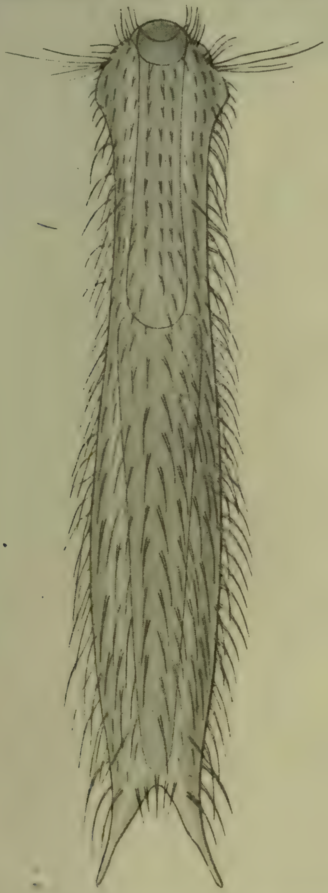


Fig. 253. — **Chaetonotus maximus.** Highly magnified. (After Zelinka.)

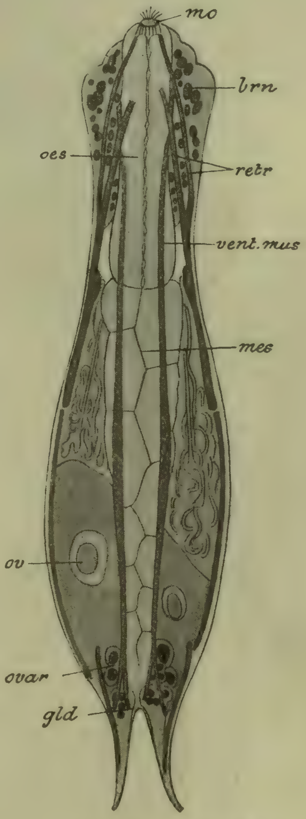


Fig. 254.—**Chaetonotus maximus,** organisation. *brn.* brain; *gld.* adhesive gland; *mes.* mesenteron; *mo.* mouth; *œs.* œsophagus; *ov.* ovum; *ovar.* ovary; *retr.* retractor muscles; *vent. mus.* ventral muscle. (After Zelinka.)

Class III.—GASTROTRICHA.

The *Gastrotricha* (Figs. 253 and 254) are a small group of minute fresh-water animals, which are apparently allied, though certainly not very closely, to the *Rotifera*, and are on that account placed in the present phylum. The body is spindle-shaped with flattened ventral surface. The ventral surface bears two longitudinal bands of cilia ; the dorsal is non-ciliated, but bears a number of longitudinal rows of slender pointed cuticular processes. The aboral end is narrow and bifurcated. The mouth, situated at the anterior end, is provided with a circlet of hooked setæ ; it leads into a muscular pharynx ; the intestine is straight, and terminates in an anal aperture situated near the aboral end. The nephridia are a pair of unbranched coiled tubes. There is a cerebral ganglion at the anterior end, giving off a pair of ventral longitudinal nerves ; a number of sensory cilia occur at the anterior extremity.

SECTION VIII

PHYLUM MOLLUSCOIDA

THE Phylum Molluscoida comprises the three classes of the *Polyzoa* (including, provisionally, the *Endoprocta*), the *Brachiopoda*, and the *Phoronida*. The members of these three classes are tolerably widely divergent, so that it is somewhat difficult to frame a general account of the entire phylum; but the following are the most important common features:—

There is, except in the Endoprocta, a true body-cavity, lined in most cases with a cœlomic epithelium, within which the alimentary canal is suspended by means of mesenteries or by means of funicular strands taking their place. The dorsal region of the body is abbreviated, being represented only by a short space between the mouth and anus, which are closely approximated. There is a *lophophore* or tentacle-bearing ridge, usually of a horseshoe shape, containing a special compartment of the cœlome, and overhanging the mouth on its anal side there is in most cases a sensitive process—the *epistome*—also containing a special compartment of the body-cavity. The central part of the nervous system consists of a single ganglion (supra-œsophageal), or of two ganglia (supra-œsophageal and infra-œsophageal), or of a nerve-ring. The nephridia when present are in nearly all cases a single pair of ciliated tubes, which act also as gonoducts.

CLASS I.—POLYZOA.

The Polyzoa form colonies known as "Sea-mats," or "Corallines," which in many cases bear a close general resemblance to Hydroid Zoophytes, and are only on a more minute inspection found to differ totally from the latter, and to exhibit a very much higher type of structure.

1. Example of the Class.—Bugula avicularia.

Bugula avicularia, the common Bird's-Head Coralline (Fig. 255), occurs in brown or purple bushy tufts, two or three inches long, on rocks, piles of jetties, and similar situations on the sea-shore in all parts of the world. On a naked-eye examination it presents a considerable resemblance to a Hydroid Zoophyte, and might readily be taken for a member of that group. It consists of dichotomously branching narrow stems, which are rooted by a number of slender root-filaments. Each stem is found, when examined with a lens, to be made up of a number of elements, the *zoœcia* of the colony, which are closely united together and arranged in four longitudinal rows. The zoœcia are approximately cylindrical in shape, but broader distally than proximally, four or five times as long as broad, with, near the distal end, a wide crescentic aperture—the "*mouth*" of the zoœcium—on either side of which is a short blunt spine. A rounded structure—the *oœcium*—in many parts of the colony lies in front of each zoœcium. (Fig. 255, *oœc.*) On each zoœcium, except a few at the extremities of the branches, is a remarkable appendage, the *avicularium* (*avic*), having very much the appearance of a bird's head supported on a very short stalk; if the Bugula is examined under the microscope in the living condition, the avicularia will be found to be in almost constant movement, turning from side to side, and a movable part, representing the lower jaw of the bird's head, will often be seen to be moved in such a way that the mouth of the avicularium becomes opened very widely and then becomes closed up with a quick "snap." All the parts hitherto mentioned can be shown by using appropriate tests, to be composed of some material akin to chitin in composition. The chitinous wall of the zoœcia is the hardened and thickened cuticle of the zooids, having beneath it the soft body wall.[1] The anterior region of the body of the zooid forms an *introvert*, *i.e.* is capable of being involuted like the finger of a glove within the more posterior part: the cuticle covering this, continuous behind with the thick ectocyst, is quite thin and flexible. When the introvert is everted it is seen to bear at its anterior end a circlet of usually fourteen long, slender filiform tentacles (*tent*) on a circular ridge or *lophophore* surrounding the mouth of the zooid. The tentacles are densely ciliated except along their outer surfaces: the cilia vibrate actively in such a way as to drive currents of water, and with them food-particles, towards the mouth (*mo*). They are also capable of being bent in various directions. In the interior of each is a narrow prolongation of the cœlome. In all probability, besides bringing minute particles of food to the mouth of the zooid by the action of their cilia, the tentacles are prehensile as well as tactile, and also act as organs of respiration. When retracted they become enclosed by the walls of the introvert as by a sheath—the *tentacle-sheath.* A pair of bands of muscular fibres—the *parieto-vaginal* muscles (*ret.*)—passing to the introvert from the body-wall, serve to retract the introvert and tentacles.

---

[1] The terms *ectocyst* and *endocyst* are commonly applied respectively to the hardened cuticle of the zooid and its soft body wall.

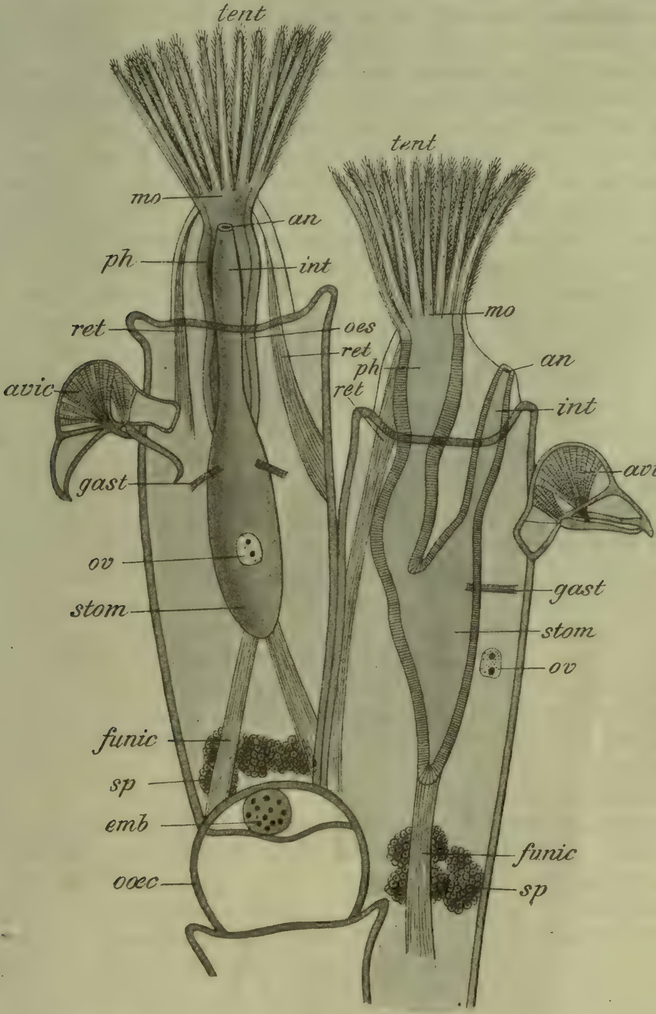

tent
mo
an
ph
int
ret
oes
ret
avic
gast
ov
stom
funic
sp
emb
oœc
tent
mo
an
ph
ret
int
avic
gast
stom
ov
funic
sp

FIG. 255.—**Bugula avicularia.** Two zooids, magnified. *an.* anus; *avic.* avicularia; *emb.* embryo enclosed in the oœcium; *funic.* funiculus; *gast*, muscular bands passing from the stomach to the body wall; *int.* intestine; *mo.* mouth; *oœ.* oœcium; *œs.* œsophagus; *ov.* ovary; *ph.* pharynx; *ret.* parieto-vaginal muscles; *sp.* spermatidia; *stom.* stomach.

The **body-wall** consists, in addition to the cuticle, of an epidermis composed of a single layer of large flattened cells, two muscular layers, the outer circular and the inner longitudinal, and a layer of an irregular cellular tissue, or parenchyma.

The **cœlome** is extensive; it is lined externally by the parietal layer of parenchyma forming the innermost layer of the body-wall, and internally by a visceral layer of the same tissue ensheathing the alimentary canal. Across the cavity between the parietal and visceral layers of the parenchyma pass numerous strands of spindle-shaped cells. A large double strand (*funic*) passes from the proximal or aboral end of the alimentary canal to the aboral wall of the zoœcium; this is the *funiculus*. The cœlomic fluid contains a number of colourless corpuscles or leucocytes.

Alimentary Canal.—The mouth (*mo*) leads into a wide chamber—the *pharynx* (*ph*)—just behind the bases of the tentacles; from this a somewhat narrower short tube, separated by a constriction from the pharynx, leads to the *stomach* (*stom*) from which it is also separated by a constriction. The stomach gives off a long conical prolongation or *cœcum* passing towards the aboral end of the zoœcium, to which it is attached by the funiculus. The *intestine* (*int*) comes off from the oral aspect of the stomach, not far from the œsophagus, with which it lies nearly parallel: it terminates in a rounded anal aperture (*an*) capable of being distended to a considerable size, situated not far from the mouth, but outside the lophophore. The entire alimentary canal is lined by an epithelium, which is ciliated throughout except in a portion of the stomach: the cells of the epithelium, which are arranged in a single layer, vary in length in different regions, being longest in the pharynx, which is comparatively thick-walled. A pair of slender muscles (*gast*) passing from the body-wall to the stomach act as *retractors* of the alimentary canal when the introvert is drawn back.

There are no blood-vessels.

A **nervous system** has not been traced in Bugula avicularia: but in many other Polyzoa a small rounded ganglion is distinguishable between the mouth and the anus, giving off nerves to the various parts; organs of special sense are absent. Definite **excretory organs** do not occur in Bugula, the function of excretion (i.e. the collection of the nitrogenous waste-matters) being apparently carried on by the leucocytes and the cells of the funicular tissue.

Reproductive Organs.—Ovary and testis are found to occur together in the same zooid. They are both formed from specially modified cells of the parenchyma, either of the funiculus or of the body-wall. The testis, developed from the cells of the funicular tissue, gives origin to spherical masses of cells—the *spermatidia* (*sp*)—which develop into sperms with very long motile tails. These become free from one another and move about in the body-cavity or in its prolongations into the tentacles. There is no spermiduct, and it is doubtful if the sperms pass to the exterior. The ovary (*ov*) is a small rounded body formed from the parietal layer of the parenchyma about the middle of the zoœcium; it consists of only a small number of cells of which only one at a time becomes a mature ovum, certain smaller cells forming an enclosing follicle. The mature ovum is perhaps fertilised in the cœlome; it passes into the interior of a rounded outgrowth of the zoœcium—the *oœcium* (*oœc*)—lined with parenchyma, and forming a sort of brood-pouch in which it undergoes its development.

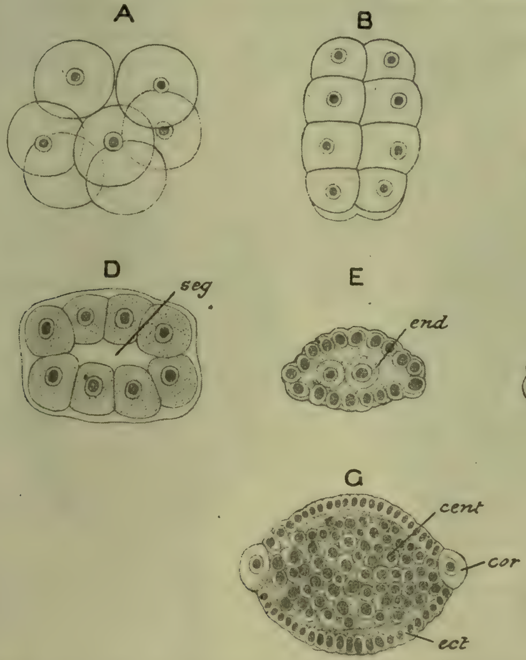


Fig. 256.—Early stages in the development of **Bugula.** *cent*, central mass of cells ; *cor*. corona ; *ect*, ectoderm ; *end*, endoderm ; *seg*, segmentation cavity. (After Vigelius.)

Development.—Segmentation (Fig. 256) is complete and nearly regular. A blastula is formed having the shape of a bi-convex lens. In the interior of the blastocœle or cavity of the blastula, four cells—the primitive endoderm cells—become distinguishable: these increase in number by division and form a mass of free cells which almost completely fill the blastocœle; this mass apparently represents both endoderm and mesoderm. Small cavities which appear in it subsequently unite together to form the primitive cœlome. A very broad ring-shaped thickening—the *corona* (*G*, *cor.*)—is formed round the equator of the embryo and becomes provided with cilia. A sac-like, afterwards beaker-shaped, invagination of the ectoderm on what is destined to become the oral side of the ciliated ridge, forms a larval structure, termed the *sucker*, (Fig. 257 *suck*) which afterwards serves to fix the larva. A second invagination of the ectoderm in the region of the corona forms the *ectodermal groove*. At the aboral pole is developed, also from the ectoderm, a second larval structure—the *calotte* or *retractile disc* (*disc*) on which motionless sensory cilia appear. A glandular organ is developed by ingrowth of the cells lining the ectodermal groove.

An alimentary canal is wanting in the embryo when it escapes from the oœcium, but develops at a later stage. The sucker becomes everted by a strong contraction of the body, and fixes the larva to some foreign body. The aboral side of the larva becomes greatly extended, so that almost the entire integument of the primary zooid is developed from this part. The retractile disc, ectodermal groove, and glandular organ are now withdrawn into the interior. The corona and glandular organ disappear; the retractile disc takes part in the development of the organs of the primary zooid. A sac, the wall of which is composed of two layers, now becomes formed, and gives rise to the organs of the adult zooid: the inner layer of this sac is formed by invagination from the retractile disc, while the outer layer appears to be formed from the central mass of tissue, the remainder of which partly goes to form the parenchyma of the adult, but partly contributes to the formation of a rounded granular mass—the *brown body*—in

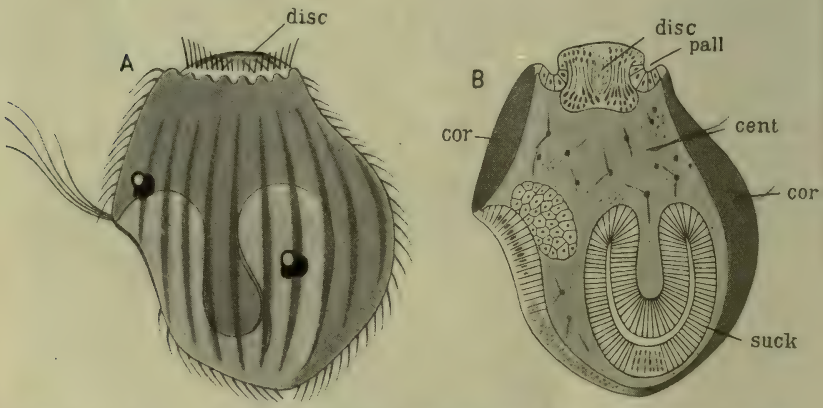


Fig. 257.—A Larva of **Bugula plumosa**; B. Sagittal section of larva of **Bugula** (diagrammatic). *cent*, parenchyma; *cor*, corona; *disc*, retractile disc; *pall*, ectodermal groove; *suck*, sucker. (From Korschelt and Heider.)

which the organs of the larva become merged. The outer layer of the sac is in continuity with the mesoderm layer of the body-wall and gives rise to the mesodermal parts of the zooid. The inner layer, derived from the ectoderm, forms the deric epithelium, the nervous system, and the entire enteric epithelium. A diverticulum of the sac constitutes the first rudiment of the stomach and intestine; a second diverticulum forms the rudiment of the œsophagus; these become applied to one another and fuse to form the continuous alimentary canal. The ganglion arises as an invagination of the ectoderm in the space between the mouth and the anus. The upper part of the cavity of the primitive sac, after the rudiment of the alimentary canal has become separated off, forms a space termed the *atrium*; the walls of this become converted into the tentacle sheath, while on its base appear the rudiments of the tentacles and lophophore. During the development of the organs of the adult zooid the brown body becomes closely applied to the stomach and gradually absorbed.

The primary zooid thus formed gives rise asexually by a process of repeated budding to the branching structure which has been described. In many of the zoœcia of a fully-developed colony no zooid is found to be present, but instead there is a dark brown body similar to that which occurs in the primary zoœcium. These are zooids that have undergone degeneration — the lophophore, tentacles, and alimentary canal having become absorbed. Such degenerated zooids are capable of regeneration, the organs becoming re-developed and the brown body re-absorbed.

2. Distinctive Characters and Classification.

The Polyzoa are Molluscoida which, with one exception, form colonies of zooids connected together by a common organic substance. There is a lophophore bearing a series of slender, ciliated, post-oral tentacles. The anterior part of the body forms, in the majority, a short introvert, within which the lophophore and the tentacles are capable of being withdrawn. In some the prostomium is represented by a small lobe—the epistome. The alimentary canal is U-shaped, and the anus is anterior, within, or just outside of, the tentacular circlet. In most the nervous system is represented only by a small ganglion between the mouth and the anus. A cuticle, sometimes gelatinous, sometimes horny, sometimes calcified, forms a firm exoskeletal layer for the support of the colony. Nephridia (corresponding to the head-nephridia of the Trochosphere) occur only in the *Endoprocta.* There is no vascular system. The sexes are usually united. The majority of Polyzoa occur in the sea; a limited number are inhabitants of fresh water.

Sub-Class I.—Ectoprocta.

Colonial Polyzoa with the anus outside the lophophore, with a well-developed introvert and a spacious cœlome.

ORDER 1.—GYMNOLÆMATA.

Almost exclusively marine Ectoprocta, with a circular lophophore, and without an epistome.

Sub-order a.—Cyclostomata.

Gymnolæmata with tubular calcareous zoœcia having circular apertures devoid of closing apparatus.

Including *Crisia*, *Idmonea*, *&c.*

Sub-order b.—Cheilostomata.

Gymnolæmata with calcareous or chitinous zoœcia usually provided with opercula.

Including *Bugula*, *Flustra* (" Sea-mat ") *Membranipora*, *Cellepora*, *Selenaria*.

Sub-order c.—Ctenostomata.

Gymnolæmata with chitinous or gelatinous zoœcia provided with a series of tooth-like processes closing the aperture when the tentacles are retracted.

Including *Alcyonidium*, *Serialaria*, *Paludicella*.

ORDER 2.—PHYLACTOLÆMATA.

Fresh-water Ectoprocta with horse-shoe-shaped lophophore and with an epistome.

Including *Cristatella*, *Plumatella*, *Fredericella*.

Sub-Class II.—Endoprocta.

Colonial or solitary Polyzoa multiplying by the formation of buds which in *Loxosoma* soon become separated off, while in *Pedicellina* they remain connected together by a creeping stolon. The anus, as well as the mouth, is internal to the lophophore. The introvert is slightly or not at all developed. A pair of ciliated nephridial tubes are present.

Systematic position of the Example.

Bugula avicularia is an example of the sub-order Cheilostomata of the Gymnolæmata. It is a member of the family Bicellariidæ which is characterised by the erect plant-like colony, with narrow compressed branches, and attached by root-like fibres; by the avicularia, when present, being stalked and birds-head shaped ; and by the wide oblique apertures of the zoœcia all facing in the same direction. Bugula differs from the other genera of the family in the arrangement of the zoœcia in double or multiple rows, in their close union, and in the avicularia, when present, being on the side on which the mouth is situated. The various species differ in the exact shape of the zoœcia and of the avicularia.

3. General Organisation.

Sub-Class I.—Ectoprocta.

The Ectoprocta and the Endoprocta differ so considerably from one another that it is advantageous to deal with them separately. The Ectoprocta are all colonial—the colonies being capable, in most cases, like the colonies of hydroid zoophytes, of increasing in size to an apparently indefinite extent by continuous budding. The thickened cuticle which forms the support of the colony is sometimes gelatinous, sometimes chitinous, sometimes chitinous with sand-grains affixed, sometimes calcareous. The form of the colony varies in different families and genera in accordance with differences in the shape of the constituent zoœcia, and differences in their mode of budding and consequent arrangement. The zoœcia are sometimes tubular, sometimes ovoid, sometimes polyhedral. In some cases the buds are so developed that the colony assumes the form of a thin flat expansion, which may be encrusting, and consist of a single layer of zoœcia in close contact with one another or connected together by tubular processes; or may be erect, and with the zoœcia either in one or two layers: sometimes the lamellar colony thus formed may be fenestrated or divided into lobes ; sometimes it is twisted into a spiral. In other cases the colony, instead of being lamellar, has the form of an erect, shrub-like structure, consisting of numerous cylindrical, many-sided, or strap-shaped branches arising from a common root. Sometimes there is a creeping cylindrical stolon, simple or branched, having the zooids arranged along it in a single or double row. The colony is free only in *Cristatella* (Fig. 258, *bis*) in which it performs creeping movements, and in one family of the Cheilostomata—the *Selenariidæ*—in which it moves along with the aid of certain peculiar appendages—the *vibracula*—to be described subsequently.

The zoœcia open on the exterior by means of circular, or semicircular, or crescentic, apertures, which in the Phylactolæmata and the Cyclostomata among the Gymnolæmata are devoid of any special closing apparatus, while in the Cheilostomata there is a movable lid or *operculum* closed by a pair of *occlusor* muscles when the introvert is retracted, and in the *Ctenostomata* there is a series of lobes or teeth which close in together over the opening. The cavities of the neighbouring zoœcia are in some forms completely cut off from one another by a continuation of the chitinous or calcareous exoskeleton; in others there is free communication, in others again there is communication through a number of minute perforations.

The oral (anterior) part of the body of each zooid is, as already described in the case of Bugula, covered only with a thin and flexible cuticle, and forms an *introvert* capable of being retracted into the interior of the zoœcium. At the free end of the introvert is the mouth surrounded by a lophophore bearing tentacles. The tentacles are always simple, filiform, and hollow, each containing a narrow diverticulum of the cœlome. They are beset with vibratile cilia by means of which currents are created subserving alimentation and respiration. They are also highly sensitive; and are capable of being bent about in various directions by the contraction of muscular fibres in their walls, so that they are capable of being used for prehension. In the Phylactolæmata (Fig. 258) the lophophore is horse-shoe-shaped, in the Gymnolæmata (Fig. 255) circular: in the former, but not in the latter, there is a ciliated lobe—the *epistome* (Fig. 259 *ep*)—which may have a sensory function—overhanging the mouth on the anal side. The retraction of the introvert is effected by a pair of bands of muscular fibres, the *parieto-vaginal* muscles, passing to it from the body-wall, and by a pair of retractor muscles passing from the latter to the alimentary canal.

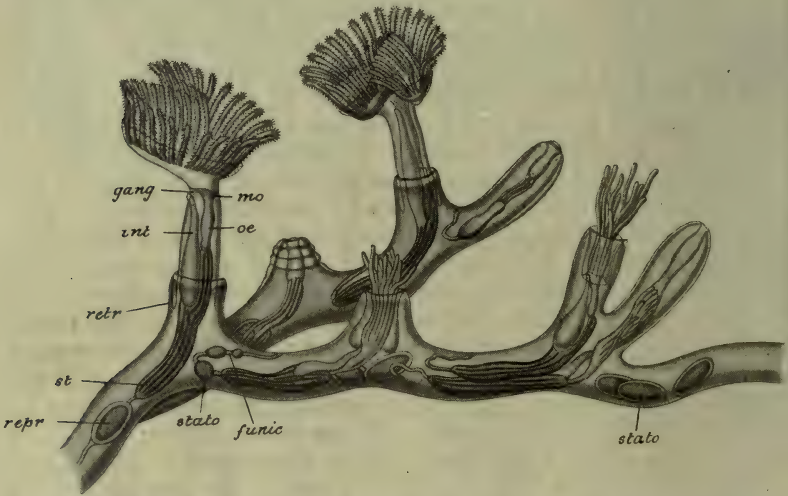


FIG. 258.—**Plumatella.** Portion of a colony magnified. *gang.* ganglion; *int.* intestine; *mo.* mouth; *œ.* œsophagus; *repr.* reproductive gland; *retr.* retractor muscle; *st.* stomach; *stato.* statoblasts. (After Allman.)

Structure of body-wall.—Beneath the cuticle is an epidermis, consisting of a single layer of flattened polygonal cells, firmly united together by their edges, so as to form a syncytium comparable to that of the ectoderm of the Porifera. Beneath this there is usually, but not always, a layer of muscle, which, when present, is arranged in two strata—an external composed of circular, and an internal of longitudinal fibres. There is an extensive cœlome lined in some forms by a definite cœlomic epithelium, in part ciliated, while in others there is no such definite epithelium, but its place is taken by thin parietal and visceral layers of an irregular cellular tissue—the *parenchyma*. The body-cavities of contiguous zooids are in some cases in free communication. Crossing the cœlome are strands, in some instances very numerous, of spindle-shaped cells. In some cases two mesenteric bands suspend the alimentary canal—an anterior attached near the mouth and a posterior passing from the cœcum to the aboral end of the zoœcium; in most cases the latter, to which the special name of *funiculus* is given, is alone present.

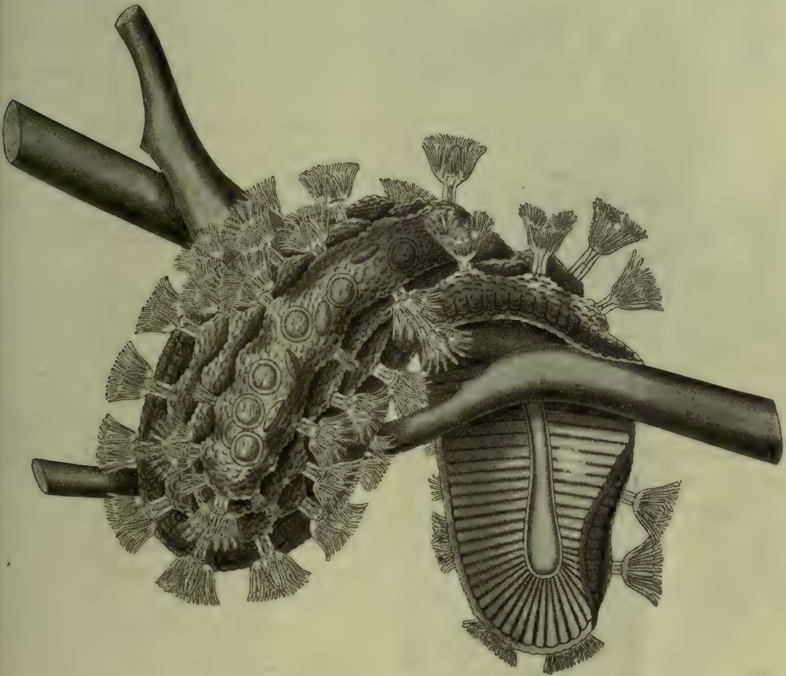


FIG. 258 *bis.*—**Cristatella mucedo.** Entire colony. (After Allman.)

The **alimentary canal** has in all species the parts that have been already described in the case of Bugula. In some Ctenostomata there is in addition a thick-walled chamber—the *gizzard*—with chitinous teeth, between the œsophagus and stomach.

The **nervous system** consists of a single, sometimes bilobed, ganglion (Fig. 258, *gang*, and Fig. 259, *ga*) placed between the mouth and the anal aperture, and nerves passing from it to the various parts. There are never any organs of special sense, unless the epistome of the Phylactolæmata be of that nature.

Nephridia are not known with certainty to exist in any of the Ectoprocta. In some there is a pore through which water enters the body-cavity; or a ciliated *intertentacular tube* opening at the base of the tentacles. In Cristatella there is a pair of ciliated canals with funnel-like internal apertures and opening on the exterior by a common bladder-like excretory duct, and similar ciliated tubes occur in other Phylactolæmata.

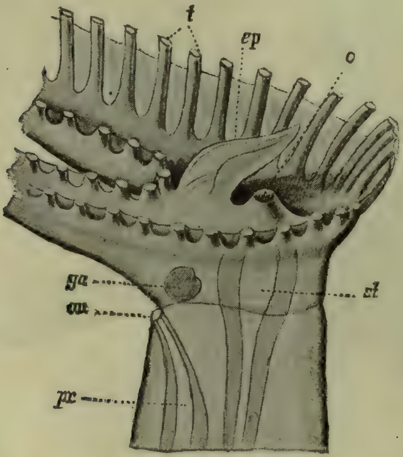


FIG. 259.—Anterior portion of the body of **Lophopus** from the right side. *an.* anus; *ep.* epistome; *ga.* ganglion; *o.* mouth; *pr.* intestine; *st.* œsophagus; *t.* tentacles cut off near the base. (From Lang's Text-Book.)

Excretion appears to be performed by certain cells of the funicular tissue and of the parenchyma or cœlomic epithelium. These become loaded with the products of excretion, and become free as leucocytes in the cœlome, whence they probably pass out through the intertentacular tubes or ciliated canals.

In many Ectoprocta the colony bears a series of remarkable appendages—the **avicularia**—which are of the nature of modified zooids. In typical cases the avicularium has the bird's-head-like form that has been already described in the case of Bugula; sometimes it is completely sessile. A second set of movable appendages found in some forms are the **vibracula**; these are long tapering whip-like appendages which execute to-and-fro movements. The avicularia are frequently found to have seized in their jaws minute Worms or Crustaceans, and it is probable that their function, as well as that of the vibracula, is defensive; in the case of the *Selenariidæ*, which form unattached colonies, the movements of the vibracula subserve locomotion.

The impregnated ova in many cases undergo the early stages of their development in certain dilatations of the colony (Fig. 255, *oœc.*), and in many of the Gymnolæmata (Cheilostomata) these *ovicells* or *oœcia*, as they are termed, take on a very definite shape.

Reproduction and Development.—As a general rule the Ectoprocta are hermaphrodite. Both ovary and testis are derived from the layer lining the cœlome (parenchyma or cœlomic epithelium as the case may be), or from the funicular tissue. The testis may be single or double. In some cases there is a spermiduct continuous with each; in most this is absent, and the spermatidia, as in Bugula, or the mature sperms, become free in the cœlome. The ovary is very generally situated towards the oral end or about the middle, the testis towards the base. The mature ova escape into the cœlome, and in some forms become impregnated there apparently by the spermatozoa of the same individual. The development of the larva may take place in the cœlome or a special diverticulum of it; in the Cheilostomata the fertilised ova pass into the ovicells; in some cases, both among the Phylactolæmata and the Gymnolæmata, they are received into a sheath formed by the tentacles of an imperfectly-developed zooid formed in a zoœcium in which the original zooid had undergone degeneration.

In those cases in which the early stages of the development are passed through in the body-cavity of the parent, the ciliated embryos may either escape through the zoœcial aperture after the zooid has undergone degeneration, or through a special opening at the base of the tentacles. In some the fertilised ova pass out through the intertentacular tube. In *Crisia* and other Cyclostomata each of the ripe oœcia is found to contain a large number of embryos, developed from one ovum. The ovum in this genus segments to form a mass of cells from which finger-like processes are given off, the end of each of these becoming constricted off to form an embryo.

Segmentation is total and approximately equal. The form of the free-swimming larva varies considerably, but in most there is a circular band with very long cilia, the *corona*, which may represent the tentacular crown of the adult; this divides the surface into two regions—oral and aboral—the mouth as a rule opening on the former, and the anus on the latter. The aboral portion of the body presents a ciliated *retractile disc* or *calotte*; on the oral side is the *sucker* by which the larva afterwards becomes fixed. In the Cyclostomata the larva is barrel-shaped, with the mouth at one end, and at the other a prominence corresponding to the retractile disc. In the Phylactolæmata the larva is in the form of a ciliated hollow cyst from which the colony is formed by gemmation. A special form of asexual multiplication by means of bodies termed *statoblasts* (Fig. 258, *stato*) is observable in the Phylactolæmata.

The statoblasts are internal buds formed from the funiculus and enclosed in a chitinous shell; they are set free eventually by the death and decay of the parent colony, and in spring each gives rise to a small zooid which fixes itself and develops into a colony.

Ethology and Distribution.—None of the Ectoprocta are parasites in the strict sense of the term, but very many of them live in intimate association with other organisms, often growing over and through them so as to form with them one complex structure. Certain genera are able by some means to excavate minute burrows in the shells of bivalves.

The majority of Ectoprocta are marine; but all the Phylactolæmata, together with Paludicella of the Ctenostomata, are inhabitants of fresh water. The fresh-water forms inhabit both running and stagnant waters; they occur at all elevations and are represented in all the great regions of the earth's surface. The marine forms are most abundant at moderate depths; but representatives of the group have been dredged from as great a depth as over 3,000 fathoms. In certain localities the larger kinds grow in great luxuriance, so as to form miniature forests.

Geologically the Ectoprocta are a very ancient group, being represented in the Cambrian and later Palæozoic formations by forms which appear to have belonged mainly, if not exclusively, to the Cyclostomata. In the later formations of the Mesozoic period the Cheilostomata are also abundantly represented, and in the Tertiary the latter sub-order greatly outnumbers the Cyclostomata. The Tertiary Polyzoa flourished in certain localities in such luxuriance that their remains form calcareous deposits of very great extent.

Sub-Class II.—Endoprocta.

While the sub-class of the Ectoprocta comprises a large number of genera, that of the Endoprocta includes only *Pedicellina* (Fig. 260), *Loxosoma*, and *Urnatella*, with one or two other less completely known forms. They are all marine except Urnatella—an American fresh-water genus. The feature indicated by the name of the sub-class—viz. the position of the anus within the circlet of the tentacles, is an important point of difference from the rest of the Class; but there are others of as great or greater importance.

In none of the Endoprocta is there a distinct introvert. The body is cup-shaped, with a rim which is capable of being inverted over a cavity—the *vestibule*—within which the tentacles can be withdrawn, and which contains both mouth and anus. An *epistome* overhangs the mouth. The cœlome is almost or quite obliterated, the space between the alimentary canal and the wall of the body being filled, more or less completely, with a gelatinous hyaline matrix. A pair of *nephridia* are present. In Loxosoma they lie one on each side of the œsophagus and open separately on the exterior; they are ciliated intra-cellular tubes, each of which probably begins in a flame cell. In Urnatella the two nephridial tubes unite to open into the *cloaca*—a diverticulum of the vestibule. The *ganglion* (*gang*), situated between mouth and anus as in the Ectoprocta, is bilobed in Loxosoma. *Testes* and *ovaries* occur in the same individual in some, but appear to mature at different times: they are provided with special ducts; in others the sexes are separate.

Pedicellina and Urnatella are colonial, Loxosoma solitary. In Pedicellina (Fig. 260) there is a creeping stolon with which a number of zooids are connected; a diaphragm separates the body of each zooid from the stalk. Urnatella has a disc of attachment with one to six, jointed, branching stems. In Loxosoma, which is found attached to various Annulata, two parts are distinguishable—the calyx or *body* and the *stalk*. In the base of the latter is the so-called *foot-gland*, consisting of a small number of granular cells arranged around a central space opening on the exterior. Buds are formed, but become detached before reaching maturity. Segmentation of the ovum is complete, and a gastrula is formed by invagination.

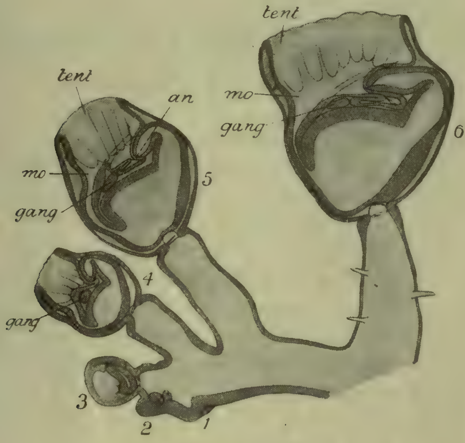


FIG. 260.—**Pedicellina.** Showing successive stages (numbered 1 to 6) in the development of zooids by budding. *an.* anus; *gang.* ganglion; *mo.* mouth; *tent.* tentacles (retracted). (After Hatschek.)

REES
OF
UNIVERSITY
CALIFORNIA

The Endoprocta are only doubtfully to be included in the same class with the Ectoprocta. The position of the anus, the absence of the introvert, and the presence of typical nephridia would not in themselves be sufficient to justify their removal from the Polyzoa, and perhaps not even the obliteration of the cœlome. But should certain statements, which have been published with regard to their development and metamorphosis, be confirmed, we should be driven to the conclusion that the Endoprocta are not directly related to the Ectoprocta at all. The gist of these statements is that the line joining mouth and anus in the Endoprocta is ventral and not dorsal, the ganglion infra-œsophageal, and the tentacular circlet præ-oral; and if this should be established the structures named cannot be homologous in the two groups.

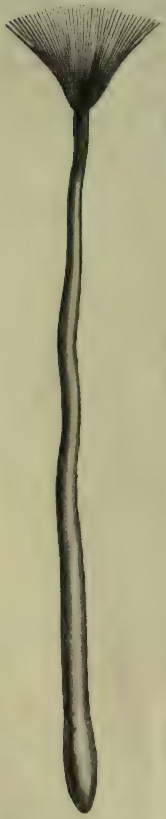


FIG. 261.—**Phoronis australis,** natural size.

CLASS II.—PHORONIDA.

The position of *Phoronis*—a worm-like marine animal—is a matter of uncertainty; but it exhibits some unmistakable points of resemblance to the Polyzoa, more particularly to the Phylactolœmata, and it may very fairly be dealt with as a third class of the Molluscoida.

Phoronis (Fig. 261) lives in associations consisting of a number of individuals, all of which are developed from ova, there being no process of asexual formation of buds. Each worm is enclosed in a membranaceous or leathery tube, within which it is capable of being completely retracted. The body is cylindrical, elongated, and unsegmented. At one end there is a crown of numerous slender ciliated tentacles borne on a horse-shoe-shaped lophophore, the lateral cornua of which are spirally coiled in the larger species; these are supported by a mesodermal skeleton and are non-retractile. Both mouth and anus (Fig. 262, *mo*, *an*) are situated at this tentacular extremity of the body, separated from one another by only a short space. A small lobe—the *epistome* (*ep*)—overhangs the mouth and lies between it and the anus. Near the anus open two ciliated *nephridial tubes* (*neph*) of mesodermal origin, which open internally into the posterior chamber of the body-cavity. The cœlome is lined with a peritoneum from which there proceed three mesenteries (Fig. 263)—a ventral longitudinal and two transverse, the latter dividing the cavity of the body into three chambers. The alimentary canal (Fig. 263) is divisible into œsophageal, gastric, and intestinal regions There is a closed system of blood-vessels with contractile walls containing red blood-corpuscles. The nervous system is not completely separated from the epidermis. Its central part consists of a horseshoe-shaped postoral nerve-ring at the base of the tentacles, in front of which lie two ciliated grooves, apparently organs of sense. Collections of nerve-fibres and ganglion cells lie in the integument and are connected with nervous processes of the epidermal cells.

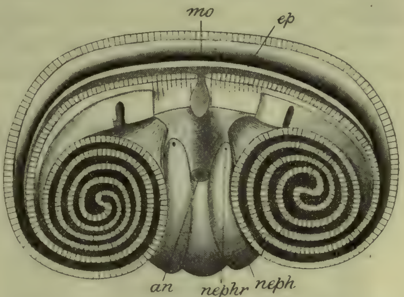


Fig. 262.—**Phoronis australis,** free end, magnified. *an.* anus; *ep.* epistome; *mo.* mouth; *nephr.* nephridial aperture; *neph.* nephridium. (After Benham.)

Phoronis is hermaphrodite. Ova and sperms are developed in the anterior left chamber of the cœlome from cells on the wall of one of the large blood vessels. When mature these pass out through the nephridia to the spaces enclosed by the tentacles, where the ova are impregnated (or, according to another account, fertilisation takes place in the cœlome) and go through the early stages of their development fixed to the tentacles. The segmentation is complete and slightly irregular; when four blastomeres are formed two larger, darker, endoderm, and two smaller, clearer, ectoderm cells are to be distinguished. A blastula is formed with clearer ectoderm cells on one side; invagination takes place; and, as the embryo elongates, the blastopore is drawn out into a slit which eventually becomes closed up behind, the anterior portion alone persisting and giving rise to the mouth. The cells bordering upon the posterior part of the blastopore take

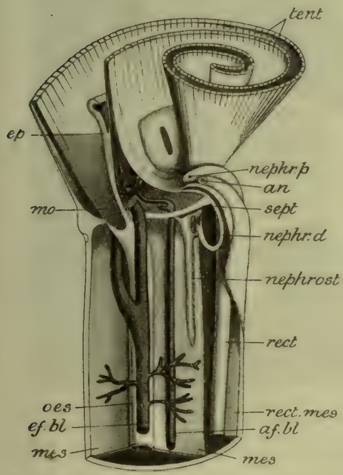


Fig. 263.—**Phoronis australis,** internal organisation. *af. bl.* afferent blood vessel; *an.* anus; *ef. bl.* efferent blood vessel; *ep.* epistome; *mes.* mesentery; *mo.* mouth; *nephr. p.* nephridiopore; *nephr. d.* duct of nephridium; *nephrost.* nephrostome (internal opening of nephridium; *œs.* œsophagus; *rect.* rectum; *rect. mes.* rectal mesentery; *sept.* septum; *tent.* tentacles (cut short). (After Benham.)

a share in the formation of the mesoderm. Two lateral pouch-like diverticula of the endoderm sac give rise to the mesoderm; in these a cavity appears—the rudiment of the cœlome. A second pair of sacs of the same character becomes developed further back. A large præ-oral lobe is formed, and the anus makes its appearance at a little distance behind the mouth as an invagination of the ectoderm; it becomes surrounded by a circlet of cilia (Fig. 264, A). The part of the body on which the anus is situated becomes elevated into a conspicuous process. Behind the mouth there is a circlet of cilia and from this region grow out a circlet of processes—the rudiments of the larval tentacles (B). The larva has now reached the stage to which the term *Actinotrocha* is applied. It has a large hoodlike lobe overhanging the

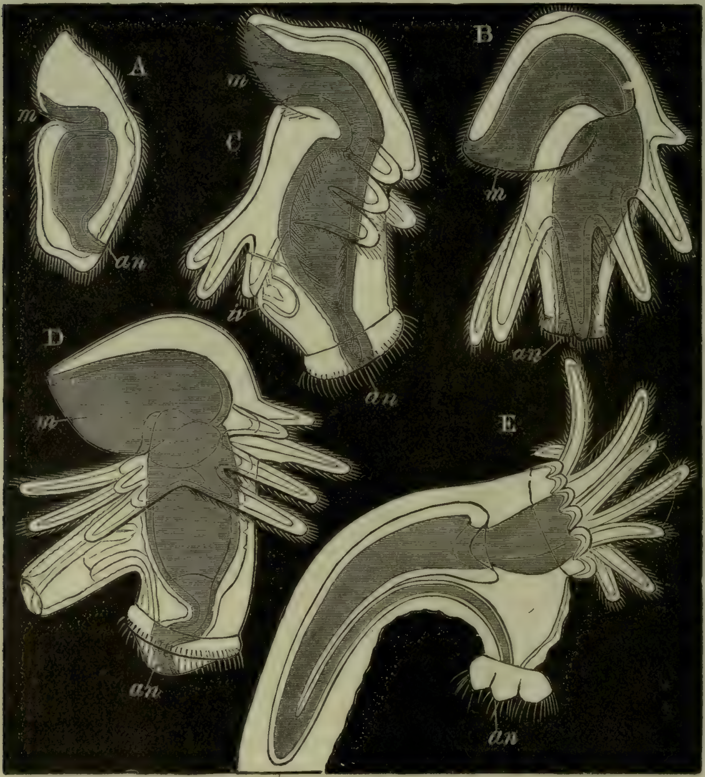


FIG. 264.—**Phoronis,** Development. A, young larva; B, larva after the formation of the post-oral circlet of tentacles; C, larva with commencing pit-like involution; D, larva with invagination partly everted; E, invagination completely everted. *m.* mouth; *an.* anus; *iv.* involution to form the body. (From Balfour's *Embryology.*)

mouth, and a circlet of ciliated larval tentacles; the anus is situated on a prominent process.

The ectoderm of the process on which the anus is situated subsequently becomes involuted to form a deep pit (*C*, *iv*). The metamorphosis from this point is completed with great rapidity. The pit at the side of the anal elevation becomes everted (*D*), and the alimentary canal of the larva is drawn into it (*E*), the projection thus formed, which grows out at right angles with the long axis of the larva, becoming the body of the future animal; the tentacles are drawn into the stomodæum and there become broken up to form the lophophore of the adult: the hood-like præ-oral lobe is taken into the stomodæum and there digested.

CLASS III.—BRACHIOPODA.

The Brachiopoda are the fabricators of the well-known "Lamp-shells" found in most parts of the world. They occur in the sea at various depths, and were formerly classed under Mollusca, their characteristic bivalved shell being compared with that of oysters, mussels, &c.

1. Example of the Class—*Magellania* (*Waldheimia*) *lenticularis* or *M. flavescens*.

Magellania lenticularis is found in great numbers, at moderate depths, off the coast of New Zealand. An allied species, *M. flavescens*, is equally common in the Australian seas, and several other species are known in various parts of the world.

The body is entirely covered by a **shell** (Fig. 265) of oval form, and pink colour, composed of two pieces or *valves*, one of which, distinguished as the *ventral valve* (*v. v*), projects beyond the other or *dorsal valve* (*d. v*), in the form of a short conical *beak* (*b*) perforated at the end by an aperture, the *foramen* (*b*), through which passes a dark brown stalk or *peduncle* (Fig. 266, *B*, *pd*) of horny consistency. In the natural state the peduncle is attached to a rock or other support, and the animal lies with the ventral valve uppermost and with the valves gaping slightly. The pointed or peduncular end of the shell is considered to be posterior in position, the opposite end or gape anterior.

It will be convenient to consider the shell first. Both valves are deeply concavo-convex, of a pinkish colour outside, white within. The ventral valve (Fig. 265), as already stated, is produced posteriorly into a beak (*b*), terminating in a foramen (*f*) for the peduncle. The distal margin of the foramen is left incomplete by the shell proper, but is closed by a small double plate, the *deltidium* (*d*). Immediately anterior to the beak is the curved *hinge-line* along which the valve articulates with its fellow, and just anterior to the hinge-line the inner surface of the shell is produced into a pair of massive, irregular *hinge-teeth* (*t*). On the inner surface of the valve, towards its posterior end, are certain shallow depressions marking the attachment of muscles (*ad. m*, *d. m*).

The dorsal valve (D) has no beak, but its posterior edge forms a hinge-line which is produced in the middle into a strong *cardinal process* (*c. p*) with a curiously folded surface: when the two valves are in position this process fits between the hinge-teeth of the ventral valve, the hinge-teeth in their turn being received into depressions (*s*) placed on each side of the cardinal process. The inner surface of the dorsal valve is produced into a median ridge or *septum* (*sp*), continuous posteriorly with the cardinal process, and attached on either side of the base of the latter are the two ends of a delicate calcareous ribbon, the *shelly loop* (*s. l*), which projects

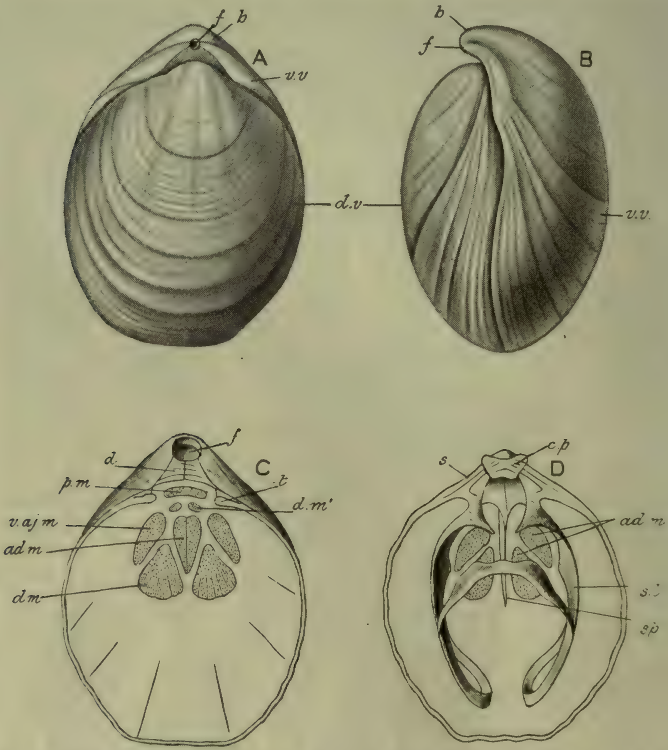


FIG. 265.—**Magellania flavescens.** A, the entire shell from the dorsal aspect ; B. from the left side ; C, interior of ventral valve ; D, of dorsal valve ; *ad. m.* adductor impressions ; *b.* beak ; *c. p.* cardinal process ; *d.* deltidium ; *d. m.* divaricator impressions ; *d. v.* dorsal valve ; *f.* foramen ; *p. m.* protractor impressions ; *s.* tooth-socket ; *s. l.* shelly loop ; *sp.* septum ; *t.* tooth ; *v. v.* ventral valve. (After Davidson.)

freely into the cavity enclosed between the two valves, and has the form of a simple loop bent upon itself. The inside of the dorsal valve also has muscular impressions.

Externally both valves present a series of concentric markings parallel with the edge or gape: these are lines of growth, the shell being built up by new layers being deposited within those previously formed, and projecting beyond them so as to form a series of outcrops.

Microscopically the shell consists of prismatic rods or spicules of carbonate of lime, placed obliquely to the surface, and separated from one another by a thin layer of membrane. It is also traversed, perpendicularly to the surface, by delicate tubules which begin on the inner surface in microscopic apertures, and extend to within a short distance of the outer surface.

The actual **body** of the animal (Fig. 266, B) lies at the posterior end of the shell, occupying not more than a third of the space enclosed between the two valves: it is consequently more or less wedge-shaped in form, and presents dorsal and ventral surfaces in contact with the two valves, and an anterior surface looking towards the gape. The dorsal is of greater extent than the ventral surface, so that the anterior surface is placed obliquely.

The dorsal and ventral regions are continued each into a flat reduplication of the body-wall, closely applied to the corresponding valve and containing a prolongation of the cœlome. The two flaps thus formed are the *dorsal* (*d. m*) and *ventral* (*v. m*) *mantle-lobes*. They are fringed with minute setæ (*s*) lodged in muscular sacs, like those of Chætopods (*vide infra*), and give off from their outer surfaces hollow processes which extend into the tubules of the shell mentioned above.

The large wedge-shaped space or *mantle-cavity*, bounded by the mantle-lobes above and below, and behind by the anterior surface of the body, is occupied by a huge and complex *lophophore* (Figs. 246 and 247, *lph*), which springs from the anterior surface of the body, and, like that of the fresh-water Polyzoa and of Phoronis, has the general form of a horse-shoe. It is, however, peculiarly modified: the two limbs of the horse-shoe curve towards one another so as to adapt themselves to the mantle-cavity, and the middle of the concave edge, which is dorsal in position, is produced into a spirally coiled offshoot (*lph′*) which lies between the two arms, and is coiled towards the dorsal side. The lophophore is hollow, containing a spacious cavity or sinus: its two main arms also receive prolongations of the cœlome into which the digestive glands project: it is fringed throughout its whole extent with long ciliated-tentacles which form the outer boundary of a ciliated *food-groove*, bounded on the inner side by a wavy ridge or *lip* (*lp*, *lp′*). By the action of the cilia microscopic particles are swept along the food-groove to the mouth.

Digestive Organs.—The *mouth* (*mth*) is a narrow crescentic aperture situated in the middle of the lophophore, towards its convex or ventral edge, and is bounded dorsally by the lip. It leads into a V-shaped enteric canal which consists of a *gullet*,

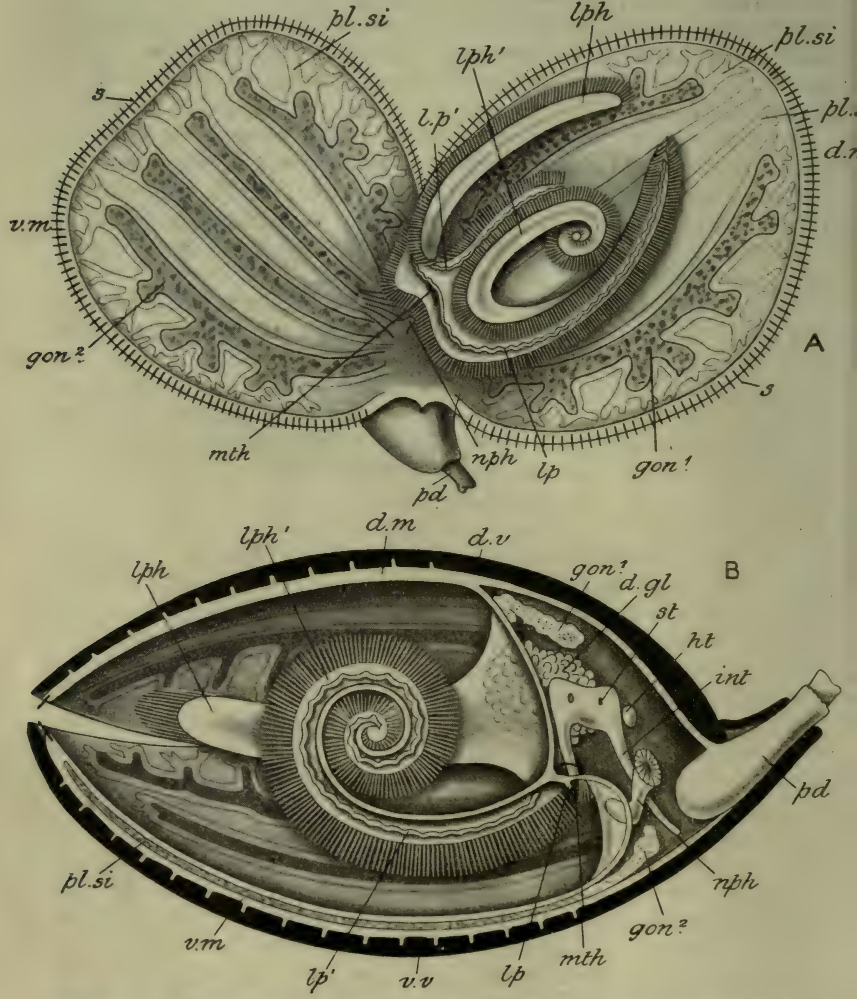

pl.si
lph
lph'
pl.si
pl.
d.
s
l.p'
v.m
gon²
A
s
mth
nph
lp
gon¹
pd
d.m
lph'
d.v
lph
gon¹
d.gl
B
st
ht
int
pd
pl.si
nph
gon²
v.m
mth
lp'
v.v
lp

Fig. 266.—A. Body of **Magellania lenticularis,** removed from shell; B, sagittal section of the entire animal. Both semi-diagrammatic, the lophophore being represented as of smaller proportional size than in the actual animal (*cf.* Fig. 267). *d. gl.* digestive gland; *d. m.* dorsal mantle-lobe; *d. v.* dorsal valve of shell; gon^1, gon^2, gonads; *ht.* heart; *int.* intestine; *lp*, lp^1. lip; *lph.* lophophore; lph^1, its coiled process; *mth.* mouth; *nph.* in B, nephridium, in A nephridial aperture; *pd.* peduncle; *pl. si.* pallial sinuses; *s.* setæ; *v. m.* ventral lobe of mantle; *v. v.* ventral valve of shell.

passing upwards from the mouth, an expanded *stomach*, (*st*) and a straight *intestine* (*int.*) which extends from the stomach downwards and backwards towards the ventral surface and ends blindly, there being no anus. On each side of the stomach and opening into it by a duct, is a large, branched *digestive gland* (*d. gl*). The whole canal is lined with ciliated epithelium.

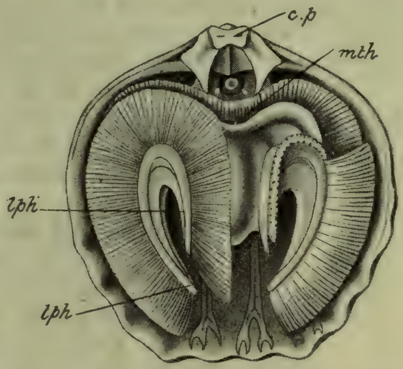


FIG. 267.—**Magellania flavescens,** the ventral valve removed; *c. p.* cardinal process; *lph.* arm of lophophore; *lph.*^{1} its coiled process having the tentacles removed on the right side; *mth.* mouth. (After Davidson.)

The **body-wall** consists externally of an epidermis formed of a single layer of cells, then of a layer of connective tissue, of a cartilaginous consistency in many parts, and finally of a ciliated cœlomic epithelium lining the body-cavity. On the outer surfaces of the mantle-lobes, where they are in contact with the shell, the epidermis is replaced by a thin membrane showing no cell structure.

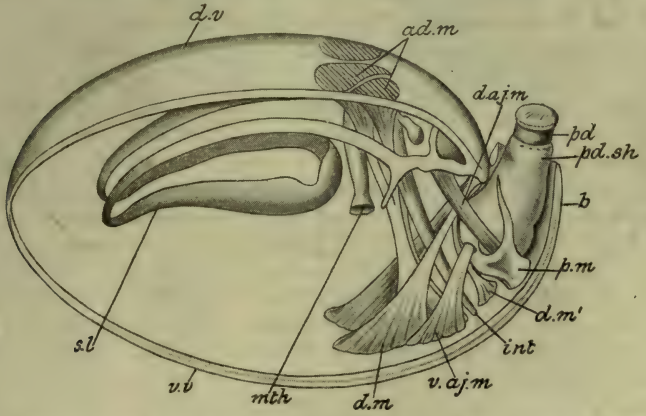


FIG. 268.—Muscular system of **Magellania.** *ad. m.* adductors; *b.* beak; *d. aj. m.* dorsa adjustors; *d. m*, *d. m'* divaricators; *d. v.* dorsal valve; *int.* intestine; *mth.* mouth; *pd.* peduncle; *pd. sh.* sheath of peduncle; *p. m.* protractor; *sl.* shelly loop; *v. a. j. m.* ventral adjustors; *v. v.* ventral valve. (After Hancock.)

The **muscular system** (Fig. 268) is well developed. Two large *adductor muscles* (*ad. m*) arise on each side from the dorsal valve and, passing downwards, unite with one another so as to have a single insertion on the ventral valve: their action is to approximate the valves and so to close the shell. A large and a small pair of *divaricators* (*d. m*, *d. m′*) arise from the ventral valves, and are inserted into the cardinal process, which they depress: as this process is situated posteriorly to the hinge-line, its depression raises the rest of the dorsal valve, and so opens the shell. Two pairs of muscles arising, one from the ventral, the other from the dorsal valve, and inserted into the peduncle, are called *adjustors* (*aj. m*): the peduncle being fixed, they serve to alter or adjust the position of the animal as a whole by turning it in various directions.

The **cœlome** is a spacious cavity more or less encroached upon by the muscles and other organs, and traversed by sheets and bands of membrane which connect the enteric canal with the body-wall, and thus act as mesenteries. The cœlome is continued into each of the mantle-lobes in the form of four canals or *pallial sinuses* (Fig. 266, *pl. s*), the two outer of which are extensively branched.

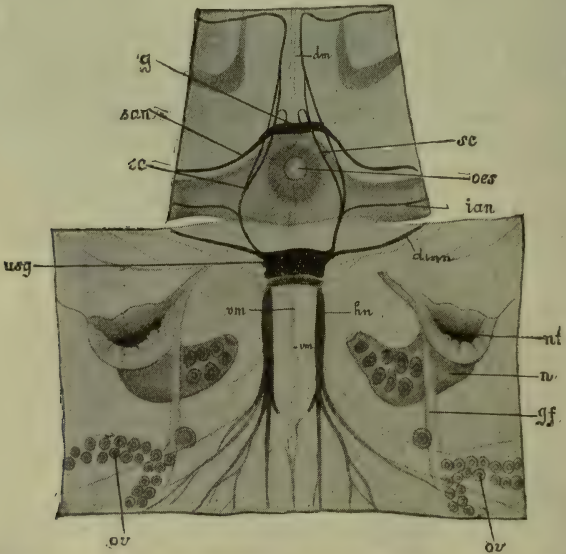


FIG. 269.—Anterior body-wall of **Terebratula,** to show nervous system, &c.: *dm.* dorsal mesentery; *g.* brain; *gt.* genital folds; *n.* nephridium; *nt.* nephrostome; *œs.* gullet; *ov.* ovary; *sc.* œsophageal connective; *usg.* infra-œsophageal ganglion; *vm.* ventral mesentery; *dmn*, *hn*, *ian*, *san.* nerves. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy.*)

Blood System.—Attached to the posterior region of the stomach is a small, almost globular sac (*h*), which has been proved to be contractile, and is to be considered as a *heart*. Vessels have been traced from it to various parts of the body, but the relations of the whole circulatory system and the course of the circulation are very imperfectly known.

The **excretory organs** consist of a pair of very large *nephridia* (*nph*) lying one on each side of the intestine. Each is funnel-shaped, having a wide inner opening or *nephrostome*, with plaited walls, opening into the cœlome, and a narrow curved outer portion which opens into the mantle-cavity not far from the mouth. As in many cases which have already come under our notice the nephridia act also as gonoducts.

The **nervous system** is a ring (Fig. 269) round the gullet presenting supra- (*g*) and infra- (*usg*) œsophageal swellings or ganglia of which the infra-œsophageal is the larger. Nerves are given off to the mantle, lophophore, etc. No special sense-organs are known.

Reproductive Organs.—The sexes are separate. There are two pairs of gonads (Fig. 266, *gon*), one dorsal, one ventral, in the form of irregular organs sending off branches into the pallial sinuses.

2. DISTINCTIVE CHARACTERS AND CLASSIFICATION.

The Brachiopoda are Molluscoida in which the body is enclosed is a shell formed of two parts or valves which are respectively dorsal and ventral in position. The body occupies only a small portion of the space enclosed by the shell, and is usually attached to foreign objects by a posteriorly placed stalk or peduncle: it gives off dorsal and ventral reduplications, the mantle-lobes, which line the valves of the shell and enclose a large mantle-cavity. From the anterior surface of the body is given off a lophophore which surrounds the mouth, and is beset with ciliated tentacles. There is a ridge-like præ-oral lip which is continued on to the lophophore. The enteric canal is usually V-shaped, and is divisible into gullet, stomach, and intestine: there is a pair of digestive glands. The cœlome is spacious, and is continued into the mantle-lobes. A heart is usually present, attached to the stomach. The excretory organs are one or two pairs of nephridia which act also as gonoducts. The nervous system is a ganglionated circum-œsophageal ring: sense-organs are usually absent in the adult. The sexes are separate or united. Development is accompanied by a metamorphosis.

The class is divided into two orders:—

ORDER 1.—INARTICULATA.

Brachiopoda in which the shell is not composed of oblique prisms: the valves are not united by a hinge, and there is no shelly loop for the support of the lophophore. An anus is present.

Including *Lingula*, *Crania*, *Discina*, etc.

ORDER 2.—ARTICULATA.

Brachiopoda in which the shell is formed of oblique prisms of calcium carbonate: the two valves unite by a definite hinge, and there is usually a shelly loop, for the support of the lophophore, developed in connection with the dorsal valve. The intestine ends blindly.

Including *Magellania*, *Terebratula*, *Rhynchonella*, *Cistella* (*Argiope*), etc.

Systematic position of the Example.

The genus Magellania, of which there are several species, belongs to the family Terebratulidæ, and to the order Articulata.

The dissimilar valves of the shell articulated by teeth and sockets, and the absence of an anus, place it among the Articulata. The Terebratulidæ are distinguished by an oval or rounded shell, the structure of which is punctate, the dots corresponding with blind tubes receiving processes of the mantle; the beak of the ventral valve is prominent, and has a foramen partly bounded by a deltidium of one or two pieces: there is a shelly loop springing from the hinge-line of the dorsal valve. The genus Magellania is characterised by having the shelly loop fully half as long as the shell itself, and by the presence of a median septum on the inner face of the dorsal valve.

The specific differences between M. lenticularis and M. flavescens are largely matters of detail, depending upon the precise form of the shell and loop. More obvious differences are the pink, evenly-rounded, short-beaked shell of M. lenticularis, that of M. flavescens being horn-coloured, almost pentagonal, and with a prominent beak.

3. GENERAL ORGANISATION.

The **shell** presents two distinct types; in the Articulata, the order to which Magellania belongs, the dorsal and ventral valves are dissimilar, the dorsal valve having a cardinal process and usually a shelly loop, the ventral a spout-like beak for the peduncle: while in the Inarticulata, of which Lingula is a good example (Fig. 270,A), the two valves are nearly alike, and there is no shelly loop, and no beak. These differences are accompanied by differences in microscopic structure; in the Articulata the shell is a dense stony structure formed of obliquely placed calcareous prisms, while in the Inarticulata it has no prismatic structure, but usually consists of a chitinoid material more or less strengthened by calcareous spicules. Among the Articulata the loop may be absent; when present, it varies greatly in form and size, being sometimes very small and simple (Fig. 270, C, D), sometimes bent upon itself, as in Magellania, sometimes attached to the septum or to the interior of the dorsal valve (E), sometimes, as in the extinct *Spirifera*, represented by a complex double spiral (F), sometimes reduced to short paired rods springing from the septum (G).

The majority of both orders are attached by a longer or shorter **peduncle** which passes between the proximal ends of the valves in Lingula (Fig. 270, A), through a perforation in the ventral valve in Discina (C), and through a foramen in the spout-like posterior end of the ventral valve in the Articulata. Crania (B) has the ventral valve fixed directly to foreign objects, the peduncle being absent.

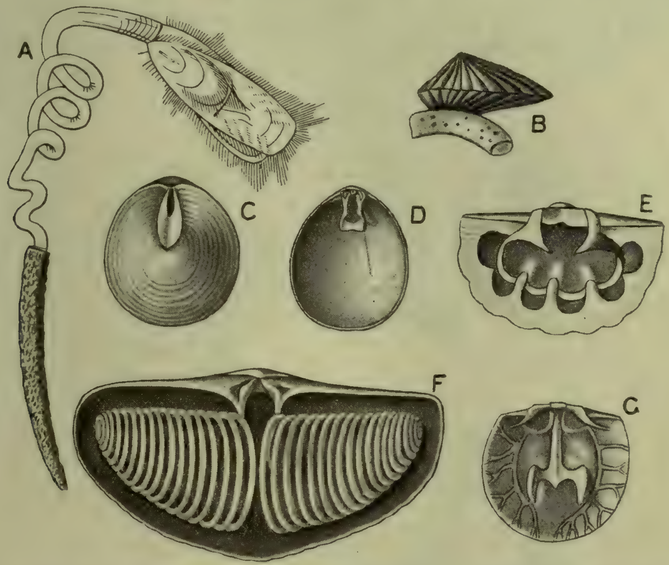


FIG. 270.—Typical Brachiopoda, A, **Lingula**; B, **Crania**; C, **Discina**; D, **Terebratula**; E, **Cistella**; F. **Spirifera**; G, **Kraussina**. (After Bronn.)

The **lophophore** is found in its simplest form in *Cistella* (Fig. 271, A) in which it is a horse-shoe-shaped disc, with very short arms, attached to the dorsal mantle-lobe, and surrounded with flexible tentacles which project between the valves. From this the lophophore of Magellania, which may be considered as typical for the Articulata, is easily derived by an increase in size, and by the prolongation of the middle region of the concave edge into a coiled offshoot. In the Inarticulata (C), and in Rhynchonella (B) among the Articulata each arm of the horse-shoe is coiled into a conical spiral, which in some cases can be protruded between the valves.

The most noteworthy point about the **muscular system** is the fact that the shell is both opened and closed by muscular action.

The dorsal valve may be taken to represent a lever of which the hinge-line is the fulcrum, the cardinal process the short arm, and the main portion of the valve the long arm. The muscles all arise from the ventral valve, the adductors being inserted into the inner face of the dorsal valve, which they depress, the divaricators into the cardinal process, their action depressing it and thus elevating the valve itself. In Lingula there is a very complex muscular system by means of which the valves can be rubbed upon one another, or moved laterally as well as opened and shut.

In the Articulata the **enteric canal** is V-shaped, as in Magellania, the intestine being straight or nearly so, and ending blindly.

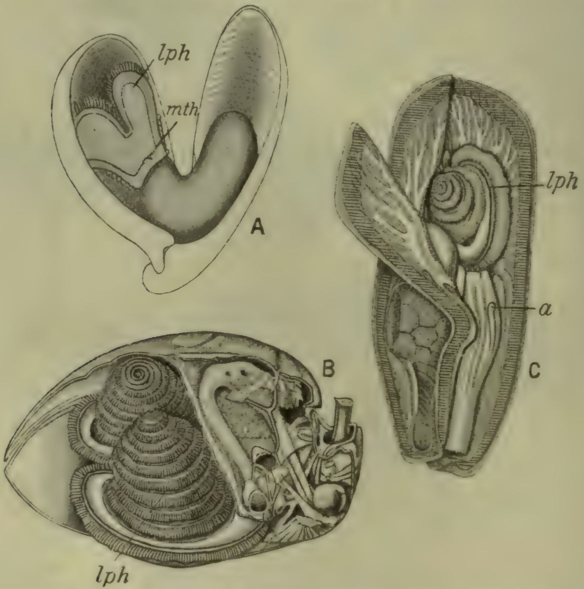


FIG. 271.—Dissections of A, **Cistella**; B, **Rhynchonella**; and C, **Lingula**. *a.* anus; *lph.* lophophore; *mth.* mouth. (After Schulgin and Hancock.)

In the Inarticulata, on the other hand, the intestine is usually coiled, and always ends in an anus (Fig. 271, C, *a*), which generally opens into the mantle-cavity, but in one genus (Crania) into a pouch or sinus at the posterior end of the body between the valves.

A **heart** is usually present, but the function of blood is performed mainly by the cœlomic fluid, which is propelled by the cilia lining that cavity and circulates both in the cœlome itself and in the pallial sinuses, each sinus presenting—in Lingula at least—both an outgoing and an ingoing current.

A single pair of **nephridia,** resembling those of Magellania, occurs in all known genera except Rhynchonella, in which there are two pairs, one dorsal and one ventral. Besides discharging an excretory function they act as gonoducts.

The **nervous system** always takes the form of a circum-œsophageal ring with ganglionic enlargements, the largest of which is ventral or sub-œsophageal in position. Otocysts have been described in Lingula, rudimentary eyes in Megerlia, and patches of sensory epithelium in Cistella: with these exceptions sensory organs are unknown.

There are usually four **gonads,** two dorsal and two ventral, sending prolongations into the pallial sinuses. Some genera are diœcious, others hermaphrodite, the epithelium of the gonads, producing, in the latter case, both ova and sperms.

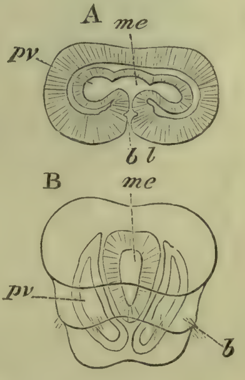


FIG. 272.—Two stages in the development of **Cistella** (*Argiope*), *b.* provisional setæ; *bl.* blastopore; *me.* mesenteron; *pv.* cœlomic pouches. (From Balfour's *Embryology*, after Kowalensky.)

The **development** of the Brachiopoda is best known in Cistella, in which the first stages of development are passed through in a pair of cavities, the *brood-pouches,* situated at the base of the lophophore. Segmentation is regular and complete, and results in the formation of a blastula which is converted into a gastrula by invagination (Fig. 272, A). Paired sacs, the *cœlomic pouches* (*p.v*), grow out from the archenteron, and the blastopore closes. The cœlomic sacs separate from the *mesenteron* (B, *me*) or middle portion of the archenteron, and extend between it and the ectoderm, forming the right and left divisions of the cœlome: their outer walls thus become the somatic, their inner walls the splanchnic layer of mesoderm. The mesenteron remains closed and surrounded by the cœlomic sacs during the whole of larval life.

The embryo now elongates and becomes divided by an annular groove into two divisions, an anterior and a posterior: a second groove soon appears in the anterior division, the embryo then consisting of three regions (B), which, from a superficial point of view, might be looked upon as metameres. But as the segmentation affects only the body-wall and not the internal parts, the process is not one of metamerism, and the three apparent segments are called respectively the *head-region* (Fig. 273, *vs*), the *body-region*, (*ms*) and the *peduncular region* (*hs*).

Next the head-region grows out into an umbrella-like disc surrounded with cilia and bearing four eye-spots (A), and on the body-region a backwardly-directed annular fold (*m*) appears, bearing four groups of provisional setæ. Soon this *mantle-fold* divides into dorsal and ventral lobes, which, being directed backwards, cover the peduncular region.

In this condition the larva swims freely like a trochosphere. After a time it comes to rest and fixes itself by its peduncular segment (B). The two lobes of the mantle-fold (*m*) become reflexed so as to point forwards instead of backwards, thus leaving the peduncular region exposed and covering the head-region: by this process the outer surface of the larval mantle becomes internal, and *vice versa.* A stomodæum is formed on the head-region, and, communicating with the mesenteron, establishes the enteric canal. The umbrella-like head-region decreases in size, and perhaps forms the lip, which is at first confined to the region immediately dorsal to the mouth. The lophophore appears at first on the inner surface of the dorsal mantle-lobe, but gradually extends and surrounds the mouth. In its early stages it is circular, but afterwards assumes the horseshoe form by sending out paired extensions. In genera, like Magellania, with a complex lophophore, this organ has at first a simple horseshoe form (Fig. 274, *lph.*). A shell is secreted by the mantle-lobes, and the peduncular region becomes the peduncle of the adult.

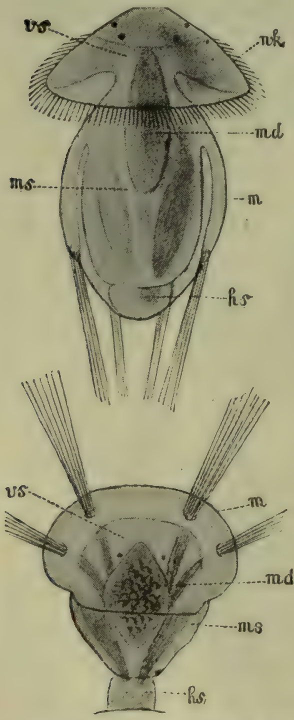


Fig. 273.—Two later stages in the development of **Cistella.** A, free-swimming; B, after fixation. *hs.* peduncular region; *m.* mantle; *ms.* body-region; *md.* mesenteron; *wk.* ciliated ring; *vs.* head-region. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*, after Kowalevsky.)

Distribution.—The Brachiopoda are all marine. They are widely distributed geographically, and live at various depths—from between tide-marks to 2,900 fathoms. At the present day the class includes only about twenty genera and 100 species, but in past times the case was very different. Brachiopods appear first in the lower Cambrian rocks, where the existing genera, Lingula and Discina, are found. No more striking examples can be adduced of persistent types—organisms which have existed almost unchanged for the vast period during which the whole of the fossiliferous rocks have been in process of formation. Altogether 106 genera are known from the palæozoic rocks, thirty-four from the mesozoic, and twenty-one in the cainozoic and recent periods. Obviously the group is tending, though slowly, towards extinction.

Recent researches on fossil and recent forms have shown the Brachiopoda to illustrate, in a remarkable manner, the Recapitulation theory already referred to: the theory, that is, that ontogeny or individual development is a more or less modified recapitulation of phylogeny or ancestral development. It has been shown that there is a striking and almost complete parallelism between the stages in the development of the shelly loop in such highly organised forms as Magellania, and the entire series of articulated Brachiopods, from those with the simplest to those with the most complex loop.

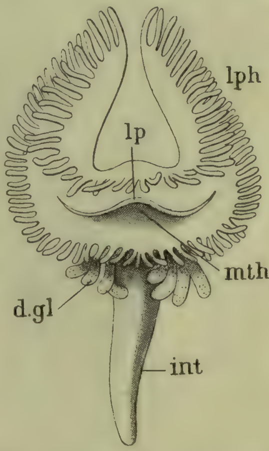


FIG. 274.—Lophophore of embryo of **Terebratulina.** *d. gl.* digestive gland; *int.* intestine; *lp.* lip; *lph.* lophophore; *mth.* mouth. (From Korschelt and Heider, after Morse.)

MUTUAL RELATIONSHIPS OF THE CLASSES OF THE MOLLUSCOIDA.

In adult structure Phoronis exhibits marked resemblances to the Ectoprocta, more especially to the Phylactolæmata—resemblances which will be rendered clear by a comparison of the diagrams A and B of Fig. 275. In both the ventral side of the body is greatly produced and elongated, and, by the approximation of the mouth and anus, the dorsal surface is reduced to a very short space between those two apertures. The form of the lophophore, the presence of an epistome having similar relationships in the two groups, and the fact that the cœlome is similarly developed in the two groups, point in the same direction. Some points which are supposed to indicate relationships with the Annulata and with the Chordata are referred to at a later stage.

The resemblances between the Brachiopoda and the other two classes of the phylum are somewhat disguised by the development of the shell, but are very obvious, more particularly when we take into account certain of the features of the development. One of the most striking points of resemblance between the three classes is the presence of the lophophore with its tentacles; in the earlier stages of its development in the Brachiopod, as we have seen, this structure (Fig. 274) has the horseshoe shape which it preserves in the adult Phoronida and Phylactolæmata, and a lobe—the armfold or lip (*lp*)—comparable to the epistome, is present, overhanging the mouth. The end of the body of the Brachiopod with which the peduncle is connected must correspond to the aboral extremity in the Polyzoa, since this represents the part by which the larval Polyzoan becomes fixed, the everted "sucker" of the latter being evidently homologous with the foot-segment of the larval Brachiopod. The end of the body of the Brachiopod from which the peduncle proceeds is thus the ventral portion. From the position of the epistome and lophophore, it follows that the dorsal valve of the Brachiopod, being on the same side of the mouth as the epistome, lies on the side of the body corresponding with the anal side of the Polyzoan, though the intestine is bent round in the opposite direction and directed towards the ventral valve. The supra-œsophageal ganglion of the Brachiopod represents the single ganglion of the Polyzoa, though it is subordinate in importance to

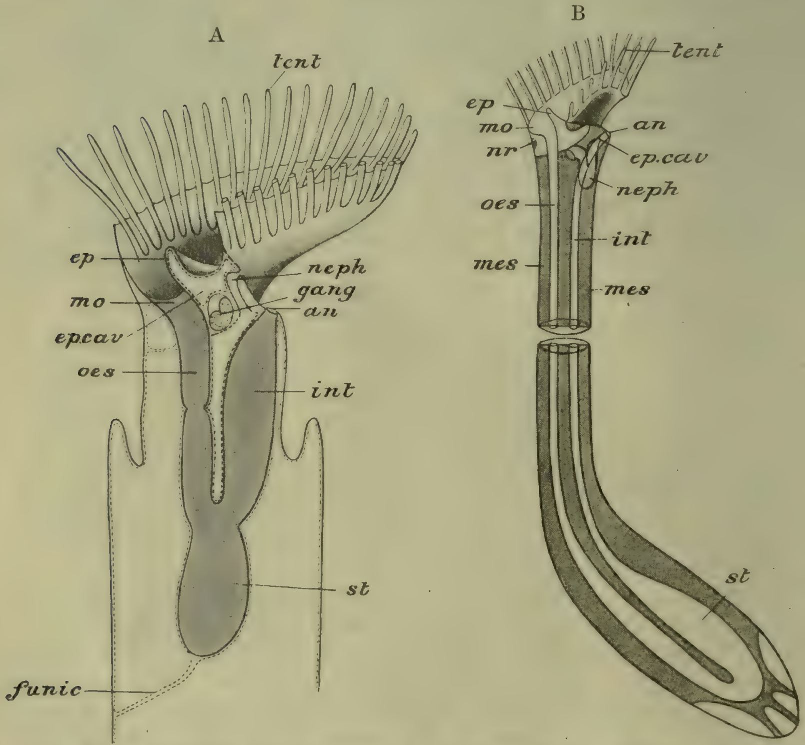


FIG. 275.—A, Diagrammatic median section of a phylactolæmatous **Polyzoan**. *an.* anus; *ep.* epistome; *ep. cav.* epistome cavity; *funic.* funiculus; *gang.* ganglion; *int.* intestine; *mo.* mouth; *neph.* nephridium; *œs.* œsophagus; *st.* stomach; *tent.* tentacles. B, Diagrammatic median section of **Phoronis.** *nr.* nerve-ring. Other letters as in A. (From Korschelt and Heider, after Cori.)

the infra-œsophageal ganglion not represented in the latter group. Other important points of resemblance between the Brachiopoda and the Phoronida are in the character of the nephridia, and the presence in both of larval forms which may very well be looked upon as modified Trochospheres.

The setæ of Brachiopods, sunk in muscular sacs, are marks of annulate affinities, since such organs are found elsewhere only among Chætopoda and Gephyrea (Sect. X.). The form of the larva tells in the same direction, the eye-bearing head region or prostomium and the provisional setæ being very striking characters But the segmentation of the Brachiopod is quite different from that of the annulate larva, in which new segments are always added behind those previously formed, and in which metamerism always affects the mesoderm.

SECTION IX

PHYLUM ECHINODERMATA

THE phylum *Echinodermata* comprises the Starfishes (*Asteroidea*), Sea-urchins (*Echinoidea*), Brittle-stars (*Ophiuroidea*), Feather-stars (*Crinoidea*), and Sea-cucumbers (*Holothuroidea*). All exhibit a radial arrangement of parts, which is recognisable as well in the globular Sea-urchins and elongated Sea-cucumbers, as in the star-shaped Starfishes, Brittle-stars and Feather-stars. Another universal feature is the presence of a calcareous exoskeleton, sometimes in the form of definitely shaped plates, which may fit together by their edges so as to form a continuous shell; sometimes merely in the form of scattered particles or spicules. In very many the surface is beset with tubercles or spines, from which feature the name of the phylum is derived. The various systems of organs attain a comparatively high degree of complexity. The Echinoderms are rarely capable of rapid locomotion, and are sometimes permanently fixed by means of a stalk: they never give rise to colonies by budding. Without a single exception, all the members of this phylum are inhabitants of the sea.

1. EXAMPLE OF THE ASTEROIDEA.

A Starfish (*Asterias rubens* or *Anthenea flavescens*).

General External Features of Asterias rubens.—The body of the Starfish is enclosed in a tough, hard integument, containing numerous plates, or *ossicles* as they are termed, of calcareous material. This exoskeleton is not completely rigid in the fresh condition, but presents a certain limited degree of flexibility. The body (Fig. 276) is star-shaped, consisting of a central part, the *central disc*, and five symmetrically arranged processes, the *arms* or *rays*, which, broad at the base, taper slightly towards their outer extremities. There are two surfaces—one, the *dorsal*, or *abactinal*, directed upwards in the natural position of the living animal; the other, the *ventral*, or *actinal*, directed downwards. The dorsal surface is convex, the ventral flat; the colour of the former is much darker than that of the latter.

In the centre of the ventral surface (Fig. 276) is a five-rayed aperture, the *actinostome*, and running out from this in a radiating manner are five narrow grooves, the *ambulacral grooves*, each running along the middle of the ventral surface of one of the arms to its extremity. Bordering each of the ambulacral grooves there are either two or three rows of movable calcareous spines, the *ambulacral spines*. At the central ends of the grooves the ambulacral spines of contiguous sides of adjacent grooves form five groups, the *mouth papillæ*, one at each angle of the mouth. External to the ambulacral spines are three rows of stout spines, which are not movable; and a third series runs along the border separating the ventral from the dorsal surface.

On the convex *dorsal* surface there are a number of short stout spines arranged in irregular rows parallel with the long axes of the rays. These are supported on irregularly-shaped ossicles buried in the integument. In the soft interspaces between the ossicles are a number of minute pores, the *dermal pores*, scarcely visible without the aid of a lens. Through each of these pores projects a very small, soft, filiform process, one of the *dermal branchiæ* or *papulæ* (Fig. 280, *Resp. cæ*), which is capable of being entirely retracted.

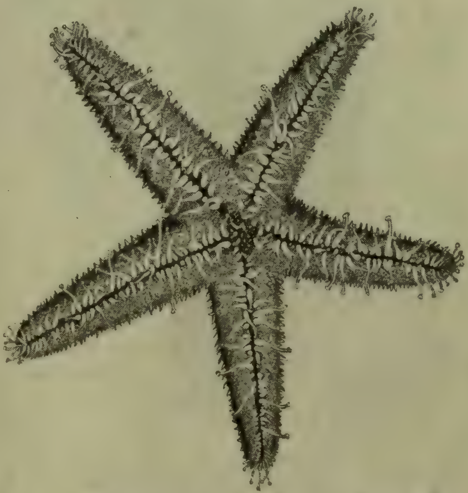


FIG. 276.—**Starfish.** General view of the ventral surface, showing the tube-feet. (From Leuckart and Nitsche's Diagrams.)

Very nearly, though not quite, in the centre of the dorsal surface is an aperture, the *anus* (Fig. 285), wide enough to admit of the passage of a moderately stout pin. On the same surface, midway between the bases of two of the rays, is a flat, nearly circular plate, the surface of which is marked by a number of radiating narrow, straight, or slightly wavy grooves: this is the *madreporite*. The presence of this structure interferes to some extent with the radial symmetry of the Starfish, two of the antimeres (p. 40), viz. those between which the madreporite is placed, being different from the rest. There thus arises a *bilateral* symmetry, there being one vertical plane, and only one—that passing through the middle of the madreporite and through the middle of the opposite arm—along which it is possible to divide the starfish into two equal—right and left—portions.[1] The two rays between which the madreporite lies are termed the *bivium*, the three remaining the *trivium*.

Attached to the spines of the ventral surface, in the intervals between them, and in the intervals between the spines of the dorsal surface, are a number of very small, almost microscopic bodies, which are termed the *pedicellariæ* (Fig. 285 and Fig. 280, *Ped*). Each of these is supported on a longer or shorter flexible stalk, and consists of three calcareous pieces—a *basilar* piece at the extremity of the stalk, and two *jaws*, which are movably articulated with the basilar piece, and are capable of being moved by certain sets of muscular fibres, so as to open and close on one another like the jaws of a bird. In some of the pedicellariæ the jaws, when closed, meet throughout their entire length, while in the case of others, mostly arranged in circles round the spines on the dorsal surface, one jaw crosses the other at the end like the mandibles of a Cross-bill.

In a well-preserved specimen there will be seen in each of the ambulacral grooves two double rows of soft tubular bodies ending in sucker-like extremities; these are the *tube-feet* (Fig. 276). In a living specimen they will be seen to act as the locomotive organs of the animal. They are capable of being greatly extended, and when the Starfish is moving along, it will be observed to do so by the tube-feet being extended outwards and forwards (*i.e.* in the direction in which the animal is moving), their extremities becoming fixed by the suckers, and then the whole tube-foot contracting so as to draw the body forwards; the hold of the sucker then becomes relaxed, the tube-foot is stretched forwards again, and so on. The action of all the tube-feet, extending and contracting in this way, results in the steady progress of the Starfish over the surface. With the aid of the tube-feet the Starfish is also able to right itself if it is turned over on its back.

At the extremity of each of the ambulacral grooves is to be distinguished a small bright red speck, the *eye* (Fig. 280, A, *oc*), with over it a median process, the *tentacle* (*t*), similar to the tube-feet, but smaller and without the terminal sucker. The tentacles have been ascertained by experiment to be olfactory organs, the Starfish being guided to its food much more by this means than by the sense of sight.

---

[1] The slightly eccentric position of the anal aperture introduces a correspondingly slight inequality between the right and left portions.

Transverse Section of an Arm.—If one of the arms be cut across transversely (Fig. 277 and Fig. 280, B) and the cut surface examined, the dorsal part of the thick, hard wall of the arm will present the appearance of an arch (with its convexity upwards), and the ventral part the form of an inverted V, the ends of the limbs of which are connected with the ventral ends of the dorsal arch by a very short, flat, horizontal portion. Enclosed by these parts is a space, a part of the *cœlome* or *body-cavity*, and below, between the two limbs of the V, is the ambulacral groove. The dorsal arch is supported by a number of irregular ossicles. It is perforated by the numerous small dermal pores, through which the dermal branchiæ project. The V-shaped ventral part of the body-wall—*i.e.* the walls of the ambulacral groove—is supported by two rows of elongate ossicles, the *ambulacral ossicles* (Fig. 280, *Amb. os*), which meet together at the apex or summit of the groove like the rafters supporting the roof of a house, but with a movable articulation allowing of separation or approximation of the two rows so as to open or close the groove. At the end of the ray the ambulacral ossicles end in a median *terminal* ossicle. At the edges of the groove a row of ossicles supports the ambulacral spines and prominent tubercles. Between the ambulacral ossicles of each row are a series of oval openings, the *ambulacral pores*, one between each contiguous pair of ossicles, and so arranged that they form two rows on each side, one row higher than the other, the pores of the higher row alternating with those of the lower. In the ventral groove lie the contracted tube-feet (*t. f.*): each tube-foot is found to correspond to one of the ambulacral pores, so that the former, like the latter, are arranged in a double alternating row on each side of the groove. When the tube-foot is drawn upon, it is seen to be continuous with one of a series of little bladder-like bodies, which lie on the other side of the ambulacral ossicles, *i.e.* in the cavity of the arm. These—the *ampullæ*

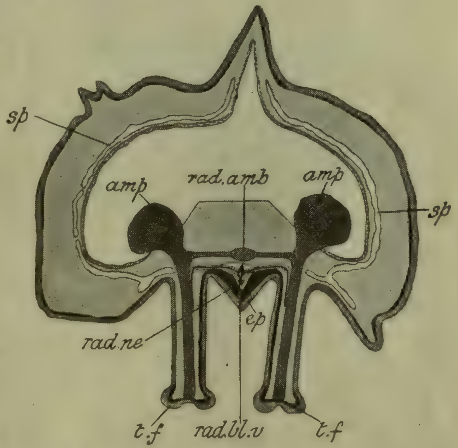


Fig. 277.—**Starfish.** Vertical section through an arm; *amp.* ampullæ; *ep.* epidermis. *rad. amb.* radial vessel of the ambulacral system. *rad. bl. v.* (erroneously so lettered) points to the septum dividing the blood-vessel into two parts. *rad. ne.* radial nerve of the epidermal system. *sp.* spaces in mesoderm of body wall. *t.f.*, tube-feet. (From Leuckart, after Hamann.)

(*amp.* Figs. 277 and 280; *ap*, Fig. 278)—are arranged like the tube-feet, in a double row on each side, a higher row and a lower, there being one opposite each ambulacral pore. (When one of them is squeezed the corresponding tube-foot is distended and protruded, the cavities of the tube-foot and ampulla being in communication by means of a narrow canal running through the ambulacral pore; and it is in this way that the foot is protruded in the living animal: the corresponding ampulla being contracted by the contraction of the muscular fibres in their walls, the contained fluid is injected into the tube-foot and causes its protrusion.)

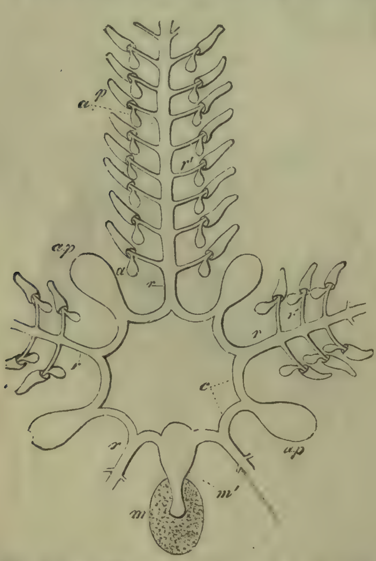


Fig. 278.—Ambulacral system of a Starfish. *a.* ampullæ; *ap.* Polian vesicles; *c.* circular canal; *m.* madreporite; *m'*, madreporic canal; *t.* tube-feet; *p*, radial vessels; *r'*, branches to ampullæ. (After Gegenbaur.)

Vascular and Nervous System.—Running along the ambulacral groove, immediately below where the ambulacral ossicles of opposite sides articulate, is a fine tube, the *radial ambulacral vessel* (Fig. 277, *rad. amb*, Fig. 278, *r*), which appears in the transverse section as a small rounded aperture. From this short side-branches (*r'*, Fig. 278) pass out on either side to open into the bases of the tube-feet. Below the radial ambulacral vessel is a median thickening of the integument covering the ambulacral groove; this marks the position of (the *radial nerve* (Fig. 277, *rad. ne.*) of the *epidermal nervous system*, and is traceable as a narrow thickened band running throughout the length of the groove, and terminating in the eye at its extremity, while internally it becomes continuous with one of the angles of a pentagonal thickening of a similar character, the *nerve-pentagon*, which surrounds the mouth.) In thin sections (Fig. 279) the ventral median thickening, or *radial nerve* (*rad. nerv.*), as well as the nerve-pentagon, are seen to be thickenings of the epidermis, consisting of numerous vertically-placed, fibre-like cells, with their nuclei at their outer (lower) ends, intermixed with longitudinal nerve-fibres and with nerve-cells. Above this, on each side of the epidermal nerve-thickening constituting the radial nerve, is a band of cells (*d. nerv.*) also of a nervous character. These more deeply placed nerve-bands are the radial parts of the *deep nervous system*: like the epidermal the deep nervous system has a central part in the form of a pentagon, which in this case is double, surrounding the mouth. A third set of nerve elements (the *cœlomic* nervous system) extend along the roof of the arm superficial to the muscles.

The two radial nerve-bands of the deep nervous system are thickenings of the lining membrane of a space overlying the radial nerve and underlying the radial ambulacral system. This space (*rad. bl. v.*), extending, like the other parts that have been mentioned, throughout the length of the arm, forms part of a system of channels which are usually regarded as constituting a *blood-vascular system.* This *radial blood-vessel,* as it is termed, is divided longitudinally by a vertical septum (*sept.*) into two lateral halves. Internally it communicates with an *oral ring-vessel* surrounding the mouth and likewise divided into two by a septum. The inner division of this ring-vessel communicates with the cœlome; the outer is connected with the axial sinus referred to below.

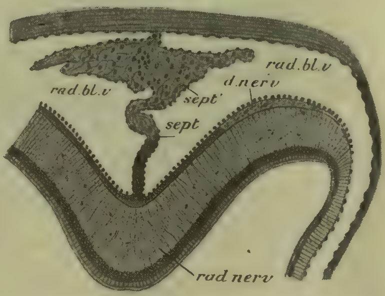


FIG. 279.—**Starfish.** Lower part of a vertical section through the arm, to show the structure of the radial nerve and the position of the deep nervous system and of the radial blood-vessels; *d. nerv.* strand of deep nervous system; *rad. bl. v.* radial blood-vessel; *rad. nerv.* radial nerve; *sept.* septum of radial blood-vessel; *sept'.* thickening of the septum sometimes taken for the radial blood-vessel. (After Cuénot.)

Structure of the Disc.—When the dorsal wall of the central disc is dissected away, the remainder of the organs come into view (see Fig. 283). The rows of ambulacral ossicles appear on this view as ridges, the *ambulacral ridges,* one running along the middle of the ventral surface of each arm to its extremity, and extending inwards to the corresponding angle of the mouth. At the sides of each of these ridges appear the rows of ampullæ. Within the pentagonal actinostome is a space, the *peristome,* covered with a soft integument, and in the centre of this is a circular opening, the true *mouth,* the size of which is capable of being greatly increased or diminished.

Body-wall and Cœlome.—The entire outer surface is covered with a layer of ciliated epithelium, the *epidermis* or *deric epithelium* (Fig. 280, *Der. Epithm.*), which is continued over the various appendages and processes—the tubercles and spines, the pedicellariæ, the dermal branchiæ, and the tube-feet. Beneath it is a network of nerve-fibrils with occasional nerve-cells. The *mesoderm* (*Derm*) of the wall of the body beneath this consists of two layers, between which [illegible]al wall. From [illegible] spaces: the ossicles (*os.*) are all, except the amb[illegible] two hollow appenda[illegible] the inter-radial partitions, developed in the outer of these two layers. Each *ossicle* consists of a close network of calcareous rods. Between contiguous ossicles extend bands of muscular fibres.

The interior of the *cœlome* (*cœl.*) or body-cavity is lined by a ciliated epithelium, the *cœlomic epithelium* (*Cœl. Epithm.*), which not only covers the inner surface of the body-wall as the *parietal layer*, but forms an investment also for the contained organs—the various parts of the alimentary canal and its appendages, the genital glands, the madreporic canal, ampullæ, Polian vesicles, etc.

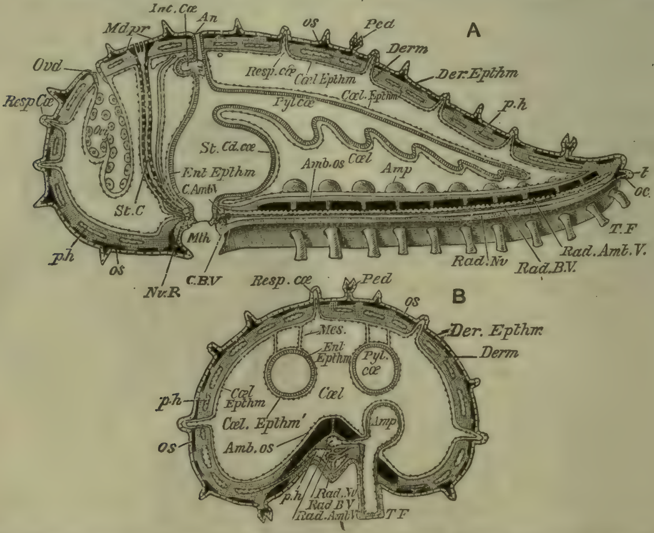

A
Int.Cæ
An
Mdpr
os
Ped
Derm
Der.Epthm
Ovd
Resp.cæ
Cœl Epthm
Cœl.Epthm
Pyl.cæ
RespCæ
p.h
Ov
St.Cd.cæ
Ent Epthm
C.Amb.V
Amb.os
Cœl
Amp
t
oc
St.C
T.F
Mth
Rad.Amb.V.
ph
os
Rad.Nv
Rad.B.V.
Nv.R
C.B.V
B
Resp.cæ
Ped
os
Mes.
Der. Epthm
Ent Epthm
Pyl. cæ
Derm
p.h
Cœl Epthm
Cœl
Cœl. Epthm'
Amp
os
Amb.os
p.h
Rad.Nv
Rad B.V
Rad.Amb.V
T F

FIG. 280.—Diagrammatic sections of a **Starfish.** A, vertical section passing on the right through a radius, on the left through an inter-radius. The off-side of the ambulacral groove with the tube-feet (*T. F.*) and ampullæ (*Amp.*) are shown in perspective. B, transverse section through an arm. The ectoderm is coarsely dotted, the nervous system finely dotted, the endoderm radially striated, the mesoderm evenly shaded, the ossicles of the skeleton black, and the cœlomic epithelium represented by a beaded line. *amb. os.* ambulacral ossicles; *amp.* ampullae; *an.* anus; *C. Amb. V.* circular ambulacral vessel; *C. B. V.* septum of ring blood-vessel; *Cd. cæ.* cardiac cæca; *Cœl.* cœlome; *Cœl. Epithm.* cœlomic epithelium; *Der. Epithm.* deric epithelium; *Derm.* mesoderm; *Ent. Epthm.* enteric epithelium; *Int. cæ.* intestinal cæca; *Mdpr.* madreporite; *Mes.* mesentery; *Mth.* mouth; *Nv. R.* nerve ring; *oc.* eye; *os.* ossicles of body wall; *ovd.* oviduct; *Ped.* pedicellariæ; *ph.* perihæmal spaces; *pyl. cæc.* pyloric cæca; *Rad. amb. v.* radial ambulacral vessel; *Rad. B. V.* points to septum in the radial blood-vessel; *Rad. Nv.* radial nerve; *Resp. cæ.* dermal branchiæ; *St.* stomach; *St. c.* stone-canal; *t.* tentacle; *T. F.* tube-feet. (From Parker's *Biology.*)

In addition to this *visceral layer* of the peritoneum, the wall of the alimentary canal and its cæca consists of a *muscular layer* and an internal lining, the *enteric epithelium* or *endoderm* (*Ent. Epthm.*). The cœlome is filled with a fluid, the *cœlomic fluid*, consisting mainly of sea-water, but containing a number of amœboid corpuscles (*amœbocytes*) containing a brown pigment. The dermal branchiæ consist of a *muscular* [illegible] an *external epidermal layer*, and an *internal peritone* [illegible] rnal cavities of the hollow branchiæ being in fre [illegible] th the cœlome.

Digestive System.—The mouth is found to open through a short passage, the *œsophagus,* into a wide sac, the *cardiac division of the stomach* (Fig. 280, *St*, Figs. 282, 284, *card. st*). This is a five-lobed sac, each of the lobes of which is opposite one of the five arms. The walls of the sac are greatly folded, and the whole is capable of being everted through the opening of the mouth, wrapped over some object desired as food, and then retracted into the interior, the retraction being effected by means of special *retractor* muscles (Fig. 283, *retr*) which arise from the sides of the ambulacral ridges. This cardiac division of the stomach communicates dorsally with a much smaller chamber, the *pyloric division of the stomach,* and this in turn opens into a very short conical *intestine,* which leads directly upwards to open at the anal aperture. The pyloric division of the stomach is pentagonal, each angle being drawn out to form a pair of large appendages, the *pyloric cœca* (Figs. 280, 281, 283, and 284, *pyl. cœc*). Each pair of pyloric cæca commences as a cylindrical canal or *duct,* the lumen of which is continuous with the cavity of the pyloric chamber. This soon bifurcates to form two hollow stems, extending to near the extremity of the cavity of the arm, and giving off laterally two series of short branches, each having connected with it a number of small bladder-like pouches. The walls of the pyloric cæca are glandular: they secrete a digestive fluid, and are therefore to be looked upon as *digestive glands.* It is found by experimenting with this digestive fluid that it has an action on food-matters similar to that exerted by the secretion of the pancreas in the Vertebrata, converting starch into sugar, proteids into peptones, and bringing about the emulsification of fats. While the pouches of the cardiac division of the stomach are attached to the ventral wall of the body, the pyloric cæca are connected with the dorsal wall. From the short intestine are given off inter-radially two hollow appendages, the *intestinal cœca*

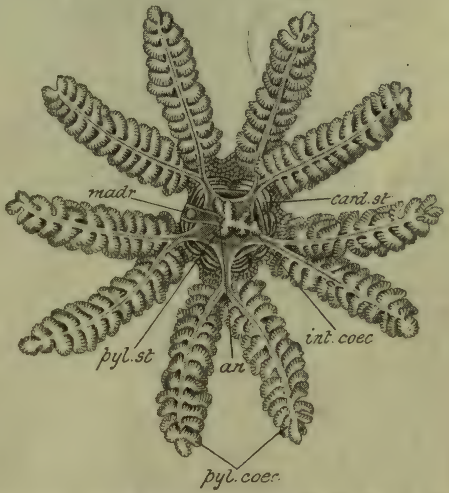


FIG. 281.—**Asterias rubens.** Digestive system; *an.* anus; *card. st.* cardiac division of the stomach; *int. cæc.* intestinal cæca; *madr.* madreporite; *pyl. cæc.* pyloric cæca; *pyl. st.* pyloric division of the stomach. (From Leuckart.)

(Fig. 281, *int. cæc*), each with several short branches of irregular shape.

Ambulacral System.—Running downwards from the madreporite to near the border of the mouth is an S-shaped cylinder, the *madreporic* or *stone-canal* (Figs. 278, *m*, 284, *mad. can*), enclosed in a membranous sac.[1] The walls of this canal are supported by a series of calcareous rings, projecting from which inwards is a ridge which bifurcates to form two spirally rolled lamellæ occupying a considerable part of the lumen of the canal. In some Starfishes, such as Astropecten (Fig. 282) the internal structure is more complicated owing to the branching of the lamellæ. The interior of the madreporic canal communicates above with the exterior through the grooves of the madreporite. At the bottom of each of the grooves is a row of pores leading into a sac, the ampulla, which in turn leads to the madreporic canal. Below, the latter opens into a wide, five-sided, ring-like canal, the *ring-vessel of the ambulacral system.* From this are given off the five radial ambulacral vessels, passing to the extremities of the arms. From the pentagonal canal are given off also a series of five pairs of appendages, the *Polian vesicles* (Fig. 278, *ap*; Fig. 283, *pol. ves*)—pear-shaped, thin-walled bladders with long narrow necks—which are placed inter-radially. On the sides of the neck of each Polian vesicle (except in the inter-radius containing the madreporic canal, where there is one on one side only) project inwards a pair of little rounded glandular bodies, the *racemose vesicles*, or *Tiedemann's vesicles*, the interior of each of which is divided into a number of chambers.

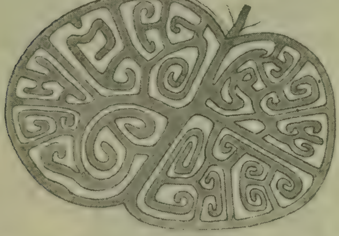


FIG. 282.—Transverse section through the madreporic-canal of a **Starfish** (*Astropecten*). (From Gegenbaur, after Teuscher.)

The various parts of the ambulacral system of vessels have a muscular wall and an internal lining epithelium, in addition to the coverings which they may derive, according to their situation, either from the external epidermis or the internal cœlomic epithelium. The muscular layer is most strongly developed on the tube-feet, where it consists of two strata, and is also well developed on the ampullæ and Polian vesicles.

Accompanying the madreporic canal there is an organ—the **ovoid gland**—the relationships and function of which have given rise to a considerable amount of difference of opinion. It is a fusiform body, the interior of which is divided up into a number of freely-communicating spaces. In the interior of these spaces lie numerous large cells, some of which are pigmented, and the walls of the spaces are lined with an epithelium of flattened cells. At its dorsal extremity the organ terminates in a narrow prolongation with a single central canal, which ends in a ring-like canal surrounding the anus; this gives off five radial branches which pass to the reproductive organs. Surrounding the body of the gland is a blood-sinus—the *axial sinus*—connected orally with the oral ring blood-vessel; and connected with this at its aboral end is a ring-like vessel enclosing the ring-like canal in continuity with the ovoid gland, and giving off prolongations to the reproductive organs. The cavity of the ovoid gland communicates by a minute aperture with the madreporic canal, and thus, indirectly, with the exterior.

---

[1] The so-called "*pericardium.*"

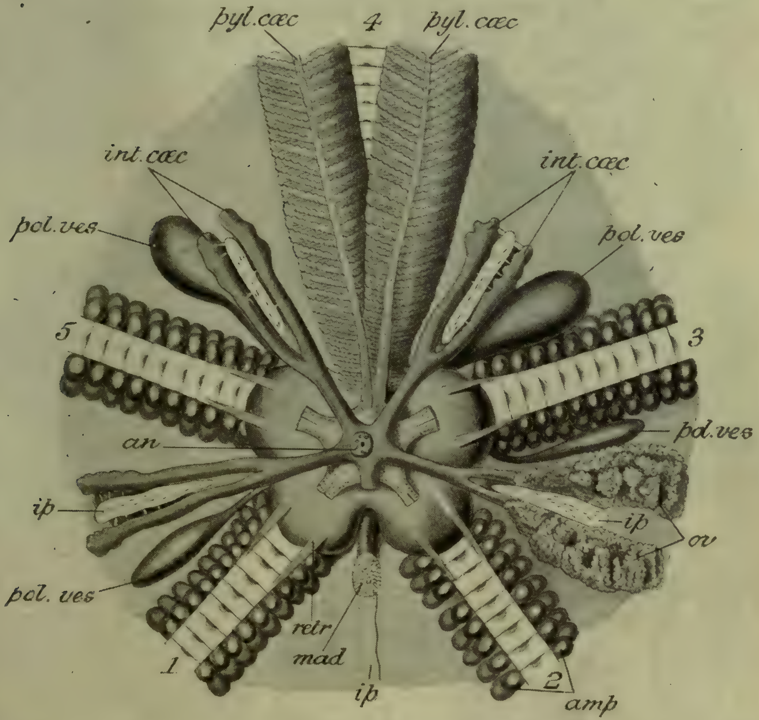


Fig. 283.—**Anthenea flavescens.** Dorsal view of a dissection of the internal organs. The dorsal wall of the body, with the exception of a small portion round the anus and the madreporite, has been completely removed. One of the five intestinal cæca has been removed with the exception of its proximal part. All the ovaries have been removed except one pair, and four of the pairs of pyloric cæca have been cut away close to their bases. 1—5, the five rays with their ambulacral ridges; *amp.* ampullæ; *an.* anus; *int. cæc.* intestinal cæca; *i. p.* cut ends of the inter-radial partitions; *mad.* madreporite with the madreporic canal; *ov.* ovaries; *pol. ves.* Polian vesicles; *pyl. cæc.* pyloric cæca; *retr.* retractor muscles inserted into the cardiac division of the stomach.

Functionally the ovoid gland, with its dependencies, appears to be an organ for the production of the amœboid corpuscles which abound in the cœlome and the ambulacral system. This function it shares with the Polian vesicles and Tiedemann's vesicles. Morphologically it is a *genital stolon;* the narrow prolongations which pass to the genital organs being so many genital rachides, the expanded extremities of which form the ovaries or testes.

Reproductive System.—The Starfish is *unisexual*, each individual possessing either *ovaries* (Figs. 283 and 284, *ov*) or *testes*, which appear very similar until they are examined microscopically. They consist of masses of rounded follicles, like bunches of minute grapes—a pair in each inter-radial interval.

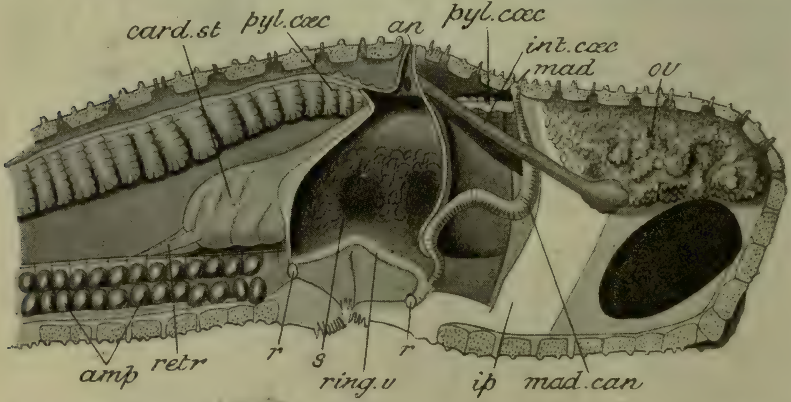


FIG. 284.—**Anthenea flavescens.** Lateral view of a dissection in which one of the rays and a portion of a second have been removed, and in which the alimentary canal has been laid open; *amp.* ampullæ; *an.* anus; *card. st.* cardiac pouch of the stomach; *int. cæc.* intestinal cæcum; *ip.* inter-radial partition; *mad.* madreporite; *mad. can.* madreporic canal; *ov.* ovary; *pyl. cæc,* pyloric cæca; *r.* cut ends of the ring-vessel of the ambulacral system; *ring v.* position of the ring-vessel; *retr.* retractor muscle of cardiac pouch of stomach; *s.* cavity of the stomach.

Ova and sperms are alike developed from cells of the same character as those which become the amœbocytes of the cœlomic and other cavities of the body. The ducts, by means of which the ova or sperms reach the exterior, open on the dorsal surface through a number of perforations on a pair of sieve-like plates, situated inter-radially close to the bases of the arms.

Anthenea flavescens (Figs. 283–286), a common Australian starfish, which may be taken as an example instead of *Asterias rubens*, differs from the latter in the following main points.

The animal consists of a relatively large central disc and five relatively short arms, which taper rapidly towards their extremities. On the ventral surface the comparatively broad flat surfaces between the ambulacral grooves are roughish, owing to the plate-like ossicles being beset with a number of minute rounded *tubercles*, which, in the immediate neighbourhood of the ambulacral grooves, assume the character of short blunt spines. Here and there among the tubercles, usually one in the middle of each ossicle, are *pedicellariæ*, which differ widely from those of Asterias. Each pedicellaria in Anthenea is a small, narrow-oblong, calcareous body, consisting of two parallel narrow valves or jaws: these, instead of being supported on a flexible stalk, are articulated with the edges of a slit-like depression on the surface of the flat ossicle, and are thus on a level with the general surface. The term *valvulate* is applied to pedicellariæ of this description. In a living *Anthenea* many of the pedicellariæ will be found to have their valves widely open; when they are touched the valves close together, gradually opening again after a little time. The *ambulacral spines* bounding the ambulacral groove are flattened and blunt, and arranged in fan-like fasciculi. Round the border separating the dorsal and ventral surfaces the plates are arranged in two somewhat irregular rows.

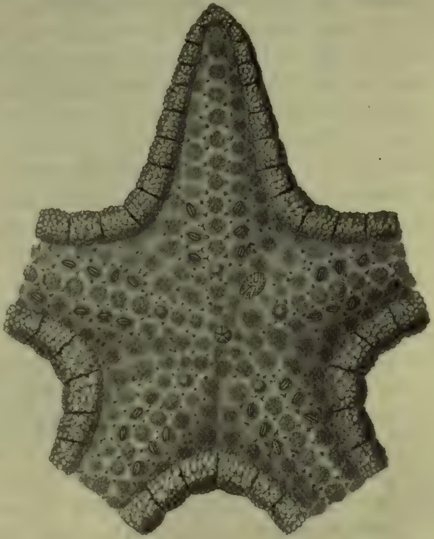


FIG. 285.—**Anthenea,** view of dorsal surface. (After Sladen.)

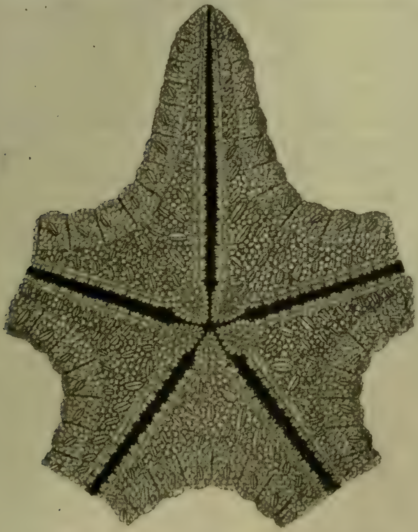


FIG. 286.—**Anthenea,** view of ventral surface. (After Sladen.)

The dorsal surface is strongly convex, but not uniformly so, there being a more or less distinct depression in the form of a shallow open groove, the *inter-radial depression*, opposite each of the intervals between the arms. The surface is dotted over with numerous small rounded *tubercles*, arranged in somewhat irregular radiating lines. These dorsal tubercles, though fewer than those on the ventral surface, are for the most part more prominent, so that they assume the character of short spines. The ossicles on which they are borne are star-shaped with six rays, a spine being borne in the centre of each ossicle, and one on each of the rays. Between the ossicles the surface is covered with a soft slimy skin, perforated by a large number of minute dermal pores, each of which is enclosed by a minute irregular ring of calcareous matter; each pore serves for the lodgment of one of the dermal branchiæ. Numerous pedicellariæ, similar to those on the ventral surface, but smaller, are borne on the ossicles, usually taking the place normally occupied by the central spine. The *tube-feet* are arranged in a single row on each side of each ambulacral groove; but the *ampullæ* are in two rows, an upper and a lower, and each tube-foot has two ampullæ, one of the upper row and one of the lower row, connected with it.

There are vertical calcarious *inter-radial partitions* not developed in Asterias. There are five pairs of *intestinal cæca*, which are narrow tubes slightly enlarged and lobed at the extremities.

Development of a Starfish (Asterina gibbosa or A. exigua[1]**).**—In these Starfishes the reproductive apertures are placed on the ventral surface. When the ova have been discharged and impregnated, they adhere by means of a viscid matter to the surface (rock or stone) on which they are laid, and go through all the stages of their development in this position, never passing through a free pelagic stage. The eggs are about half a millimetre in diameter, and of a spherical shape. Each consists of a perfectly opaque central mass of yellow or orange yolk, and of a glassy layer enclosing this. After fertilisation the process of segmentation begins by the division of the ovum into two blastomeres almost equal in size, but one, which may be termed cell I., slightly smaller than the other, cell II. Both I. and II. soon afterwards divide, I. somewhat earlier than II. The resulting four cells again divide, the result being the formation of an eight-celled stage (Fig. 287, *A*), in which the four cells derived from I. form an incomplete ring not closed below, and the four derived from II. form an incomplete ring open above.

The eight cells then divide by meridional fissures into sixteen, and a further division results in the formation of thirty-two. The thirty-two cells become arranged in such a way as to enclose a central cavity which had been present in the four-celled stage: this stage (*B*) is the blastula; the cavity is the *segmentation-cavity* or *blastocœle*. The number of cells in the wall of this cavity increases by further divisions, and the whole surface becomes covered with vibratile cilia. A process of *invagination* then follows; one side of the blastula becomes pushed inwards to form a doubled-walled cup or *gastrula* (*C*) opening on the exterior by an opening, the *blastopore*, which, at first very wide, gradually becomes narrowed. At the same time the shape of the larva alters, becoming somewhat elongated, the blastopore, lying at first midway between the two poles, afterwards gradually drawing nearer to what becomes the lower or ventral pole.

---

[1] The development of these has been described in preference to that of the examples, as it is better known and more readily studied.

Of the two layers of the gastrula (*D* and *E*) the outer is the *ectoderm*, the inner the *endoderm*; between them is a space, at first filled with gelatinous matter, in which cells soon appear, giving rise subsequently to a third or middle layer, the *mesoderm*.

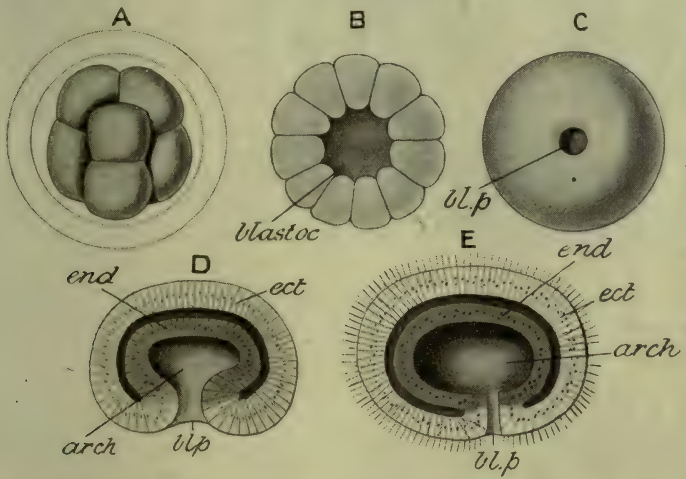


Fig. 287.—Early stages in the development of a Starfish (**Asterina gibbosa**). *A*, eight-celled stage; *B*, stage of about thirty-two cells seen in section; *C*, gastrula stage; *D*, section of early gastrula; *E*, section of later gastrula. *arch.* archenteron; *blastoc.* blastocœle; *blp.* blastopore; *ect.* ectoderm; *end.* endoderm. (Modified after Ludwig.)

The cavity in the gastrula early becomes distinguishable into two parts (Fig. 288, *B*)—that part into which the blastopore leads (*arch*), and a wider terminal part (*ent*); the former becomes the posterior part of the alimentary canal of the larva, the blastopore becoming the anus; the latter is termed the *enterocœle*. The wall of the enterocœle becomes thinner, and it gives off two lateral swellings, the right and left *enterocœlic pouches* (*C*, *ent*), which become closely applied to the sides of the larval alimentary canal: the left pouch soon becomes larger than the right. The enterocœle then becomes completely closed off from the enteric canal. Towards the anterior end of the larva there is now formed a new invagination from the surface, the *stomodæum*, which meets the rudimentary alimentary canal, and forms the mouth and œsophagus of the larva.

The enterocœlic pouches grow round the alimentary canal: in front they unite to form a common cavity, behind they remain separated by a thin partition or septum. The left enterocœlic pouch gives rise now to the rudiment of the ambulacral system in the form of an outgrowth, the *hydrocœle.* The lower border of this becomes five-lobed (Fig. 289, *A*), each of the lobes (*r*) developing later into one of the radial ambulacral vessels; the central part of the hydrocœle subsequently forms a ring—the *ring-*

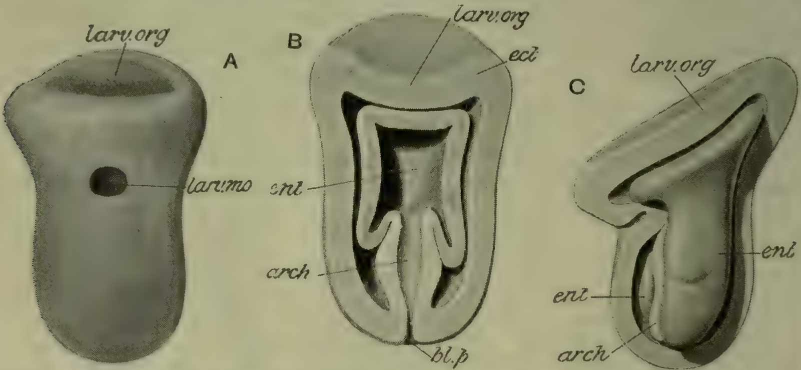


FIG. 288.—Later stages in the development of the Bipinnaria of **Asterina gibbosa** *A*, newly hatched larva, ventral surface with the beginning of the larval organ at the anterior end and with the larval mouth. *B*, dorsal half of an embryo of the same age as A. *C*, somewhat older larva with larger larval organ, the ectoderm of the left side removed to expose the alimentary canal and the walls of the body-cavity. *arch.* archenteron; *bl. p.* blastopore; *ect.* ectoderm; *ent.* enterocœle; *larv. mo.* larval mouth; *larv. org.* larval organ. (From Ziegler's models.)

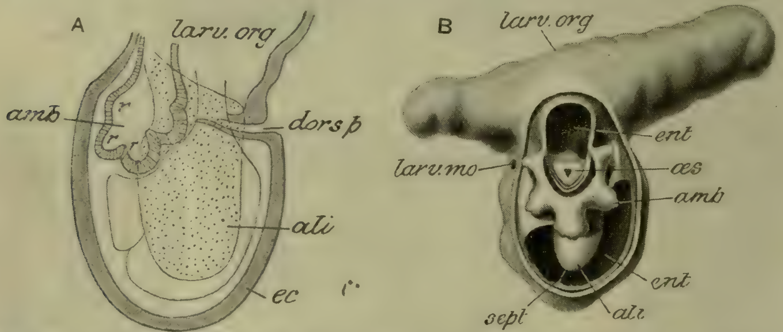


FIG. 289.—Bipinnaria of **Asterina gibbosa**. *A.* Diagrammatic lateral view; the alimentar canal dotted, the ambulacral system striated, the ectoderm shaded. *B.* Bipinnaria seen from the left as an opaque object, the body-wall of the left side removed. Hydrocœle separated off from left enteric sac and partly surrounding œsophagus. *ali.* alimentary canal; *amb.* ambulacral system or hydrocœle; *dors. p*, dorsal pore; *ent.* enteric sacs and cœlome; *larv. mo.* larval mouth; *larv. org.* larval organ; *œs.* œsophagus of adult; *r. r.* lobes of hydrocœle; *sept.* septum between the enterocœlic sacs. (*A*, after Ludwig; *B*, from Ziegler's models.)

vessel of the ambulacral system. A pore, the *dorsal pore* (*dors. p*), makes its appearance as an invagination of the ectoderm nearly opposite the larval mouth; this opens internally into the left enterocœlic pouch. A groove is formed on the inner surface of the hydrocœle, and becomes closed to form a canal, the rudiment of the madreporic canal; this subsequently enters into communication with the dorsal pore, the external opening of which corresponds to the future madreporite.

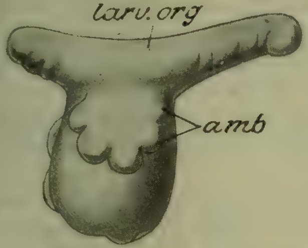


Fig. 290.—Bipinnaria of **Asterina**, view of the left-hand side, showing the five-lobed prominence, *amb*, formed by the developing ambulacral system on what is destined to become the ventral surface of the body of the Starfish.

A change has meanwhile taken place in the general form of the body of the larva. At the upper end has been formed an anterior short lobe (*anterior head-lobe*) and a posterior longer lobe (*posterior head-lobe*). These two lobes together form what is termed the *larval organ* (*larv. org*), which later on becomes absorbed in the transition to the starfish form. As the hydrocœle develops, its form influences the external shape of the larva; on the left-hand side there grows out a five-lobed elevation (Fig. 290, *amb*), each of the lobes corresponding to one of the five lobes of the hydrocœle. Each of the latter then becomes divided, first into three rounded processes (Fig. 289, *B*, *amb*), and then into five, and these project freely on the surface; the middle one is the rudiment of the tentacle, the lateral processes are the first two pairs of tube-feet. At the same time five elevations of the opposite wall, which have become evident, give rise to the beginnings of the dorsal regions of the arms.

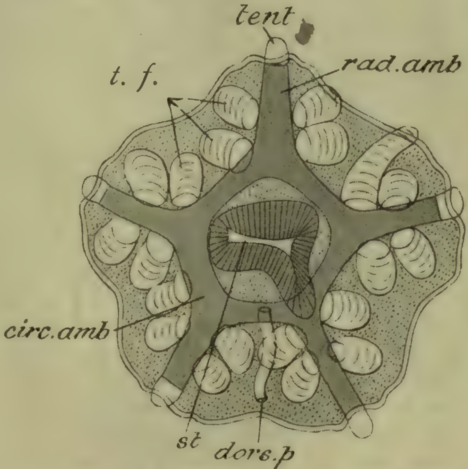


Fig. 291.—**Asterina exigua.** Young Starfish shortly after the metamorphosis has been completed, viewed from the ventral side. *circ. amb.* circular ambulacral vessel; *dors. p.* dorsal pore and madreporic canal; *rad. amb.* radial ambulacral vessel; *st.* stomach; *tent.* tentacle; *t. f.* tube-feet.

The transition from the larval *Bipinnaria* stage, as it is termed, to the condition of the five-rayed starfish (Fig. 291) is effected by the abortion of the larval organ, the further development of the arms and tube-feet, and certain changes which take place in the internal organs. Of these, one of the most important is the formation of a new mouth and œsophagus (Fig. 289, *B*, *œs*), the larval mouth and œsophagus becoming abolished during the metamorphosis. Round this new mouth grows the ring-vessel of the ambulacral system. From the stomach, diverticula grow out radially into the developing arms to give rise to the cæca; and later the permanent anal opening is formed on the dorsal surface.

When the first ossicles are definitely formed they present the following arrangement (Fig. 292). In the middle of the abactinal surface is a single *dorso-central plate* (*dors*). Around this are five *basals* (*bas*), one of which becomes converted into the madreporite. External to these, five *radials* (*rad.*) appear somewhat later. At the end of each developing arm is a single *terminal* or ocular plate (*term*), which is carried outwards as the ambulacral and adambulacral ossicles of the arm are developed, supporting the corresponding eye and tentacle. A ring of *secondary radials* (*sec. rad*) is developed between the radials and the dorso-central. In the adult, by the intercalary development of numerous additional ossicles, these primary plates of the *apical system*, as it is termed, lose their original arrangement, and become, with the exception of the madreporite and the terminal plates, no

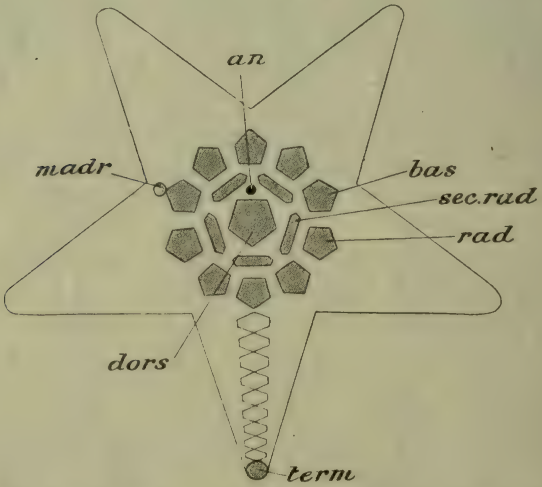


FIG. 292.—Diagram showing the relations of the chief plates of the apical system in the young **Starfish**. *an.* anus; *bas.* basals; *dors.* dorso-central; *madr* madreporite; *rad.* radials; *sec. rad.* secondary radials.

longer recognisable. Five *oral* plates, which when they first appear are on the abactinal surface, pass round to the actinal as development proceeds.

2. EXAMPLE OF THE ECHINOIDEA.

A Sea-Urchin.—(*Strongylocentrotus* or *Echinus.*)

General External Features.—The Sea-urchin (Figs. 293 and 294) is globular in shape, but somewhat compressed in one direction, so that two *poles* are distinctly recognisable. At one of these the degree of flattening is greater than at the other; this is the *oral pole,* the opposite pole being termed the *anal* or *aboral.* At the oral pole is a rounded aperture, the *mouth,* through which may be seen projecting five hard white points, the extremities of the *teeth.* Surrounding the mouth is a thin soft membrane known as the *peristome* or *peristomial membrane.* At the anal pole is a much smaller aperture, the *anus,* the space immediately surrounding which is termed the *periproct.*

The entire surface, with the exception of the peristome and periproct, is bristling with spines—cylindrical, pointed, solid appendages, the surface of which is longitudinally fluted. These are movably articulated with the body so that they may be turned about in all directions. When one of them is removed (see Fig. 309, p. 389), it is found that the joint is of the character of a ball and socket, a concavity on the base of the spine fitting over a hemispherical elevation of the surface of the Sea-urchin, and the spine being retained in place and caused to move by means of a capsule of muscular fibres enclosing the joint. Around the bases of the large spines are a number of very small spinules. Here and there among the spines are to be observed minute *pedicellariæ* (see Fig. 310, p. 389), which are comparable to the stalked pedicellariæ of Asterias, but have each three jaws instead of two, and have a relatively long stalk, which is supported by a slender calcareous rod. Here and there are to be found also small rounded bodies termed the *sphæridia,* which are perhaps, like the pedicellariæ, to be looked upon as modified spines: they contain ganglion-cells and are apparently organs of special sense, having perhaps the function of detecting changes in the composition of the water.

Projecting from the surface among the spines all the way from the peristome to the periproct will be observed five double rows of *tube-feet* (Fig. 293), which in a living specimen will be found to be capable of great extension. These are similar to the tube-feet of the Starfish, and have similar functions; the sucker-like extremity of each is supported by a perforated sieve-like plate of calcareous matter. Each double row of tube-feet occupies a meridional zone of the surface, termed the *ambulacral area,* corresponding to the ambulacral groove of the Starfish: the intermediate zones are termed the *inter-ambulacral areas.* At the oral end of each ambulacral area on the peristome is a pair of appendages similar to tube-feet, but without suckers and termed *tentacles.* Ten shrub-like appendages, the *dermal branchiæ,* are situated in the peripheral part of the peristome, a pair opposite each inter-ambulacral area.

When the spines are removed, the body is found to be enclosed in a rigid globular shell, or **corona** (Fig. 294) as it is termed, formed of a system of plate-like ossicles, the edges of which fit accurately and firmly together, and the surfaces of which are ornamented with the rounded elevations or tubercles for the articulation of the spines. These plates are arranged in ten zones, each consisting of two rows, running in a meridional direction from the edge of the peristome to the neighbourhood of the periproct. Of the zones of plates there are two sets, each consisting of five. the members of which alternate with one another. In

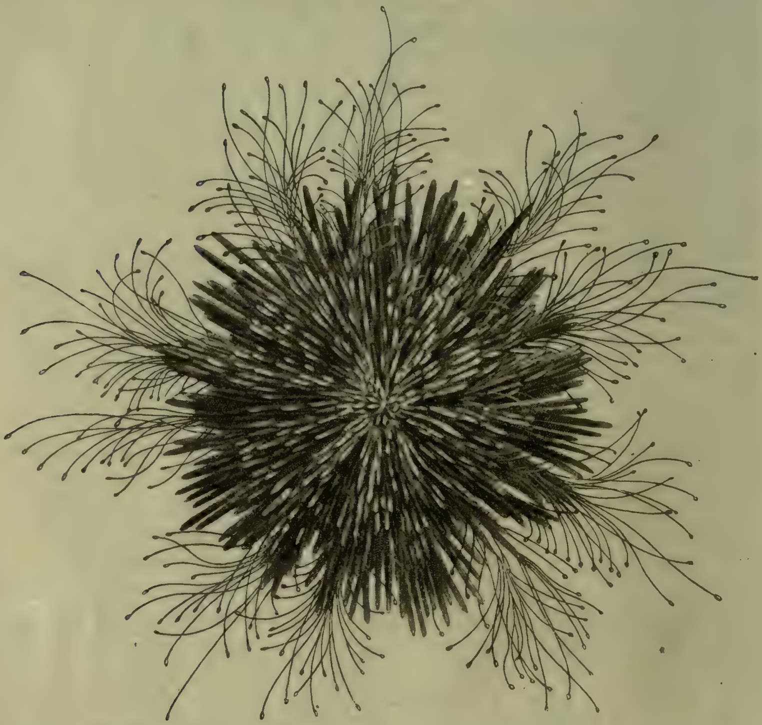


FIG. 293,—**Strongylocentrotus**, entire animal with the tube-feet extended. (From Brehm's *Thierleben.*)

the case of one of these sets of zones—the *ambulacral zones* or *ambulacral areas* already referred to (*amb*)—each of the plates is perforated towards its outer end by two minute pores, the *ambulacral*

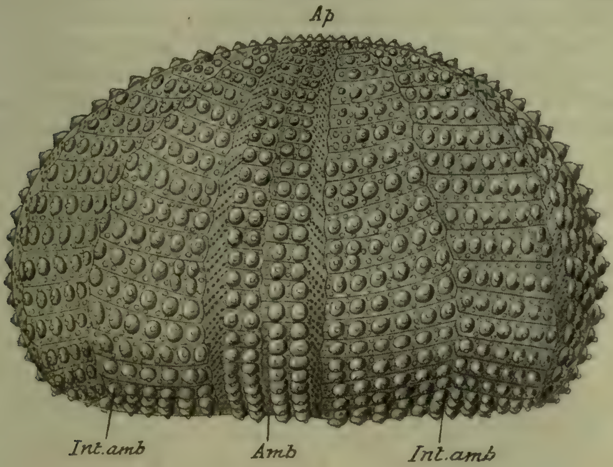


FIG. 294.—Corona of **Sea-urchin** with the spines removed to show the arrangement of the plates, lateral view. *Amb.* ambulacral zone with its perforated plates; *Ap.* apical (aboral) pole; *Int. amb.* inter-ambulacral zones. (From Bronn's *Thierreich.*)

pores, for the protrusion of the tube-feet. The other five zones, the *inter-ambulacral zones* or *areas* (*int. amb*), have the plates not perforated. At its anal end each area, ambulacral or inter-ambulacral, ends in a single *apical* plate, so that the periproct is surrounded by a ring of ten plates, the *apical system* of plates (Fig. 295). Of these, the five that are situated at the ends of the ambulacral areas are termed the *ocular plates* (*oc*), owing to the fact that each of them bears a rudimentary eye; while the five opposite the inter-ambulacral areas, are termed the *genital plates* (*gen*), each of them being perforated by an opening which is the aperture of one of the five *genital ducts*,—the ducts of the ovaries or testes as the case may be. One of these genital plates (*madr*) has a swollen and spongy appearance, which distinguishes it from the others: this is the *madreporite*, through which, as in the case of the structure of the same name in the Starfishes, the madreporic

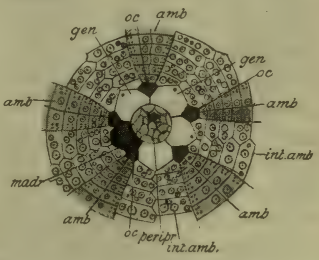


FIG. 295.—Apical system of plates and aboral extremities of zones of the shell of a **Sea-urchin**: *amb.* ambulacral zones; *gen.* genital plates; *int. amb.* inter-ambulacral zones; *madr.* madreporite; *oc.* ocular plates; *peripr.* periproct. (After Leuckart.)

canal communicates with the exterior. The two ambulacral areas between which the madreporite lies constitute the *bivium*, the remaining three the *trivium*.

On the inner surface of the shell, close to the edge of the peristome, there project inwards five processes, the *auricles* (Fig. 297, *aur*), one opposite each ambulacral area. Within the ring of auricles lies a complex structure termed **Aristotle's lantern** (Fig. 296). This consists of the five teeth (*e*) the apices of which are to be seen projecting through the mouth, together with a system of ossicles. The teeth are long, curved, and pointed: proximally each is supported by and partly embedded in a pyramidal ossicle, the *alveolus* (*a*), consisting of two halves united by a longitudinal suture. Firmly united to the base of the alveolus is a stout bar, the *epiphysis* (*b*). Adjacent epiphyses are in close contact with one another, and running inwards from their points of union are five radially-directed, stout bars, the *rotulæ* (*c*), the inner ends of which unite to bound a circular aperture through which the œsophagus passes. With the inner end of each rotula is movably articulated a more slender bar, the *radius* (*d*), which runs outwards, parallel with, and closely applied to, the rotula, to end in a free, bifurcated extremity. Aristotle's lantern as a whole is in the shape of a five-sided pyramid, at the apex of which project the five teeth; the pyramid is hollow, containing a passage which is the beginning of the œsophagus. The base has the appearance of a wheel, the tyre of which is represented by the five epiphyses, the spokes by the five rotulæ, with the five radii in close contact with them, and the hub by the rounded central aperture. Passing between the various ossicles of the lantern, and from them to the auricles, are systems of muscles by means of the contractions of some of which the lantern as a whole can be protruded or retracted, while the action

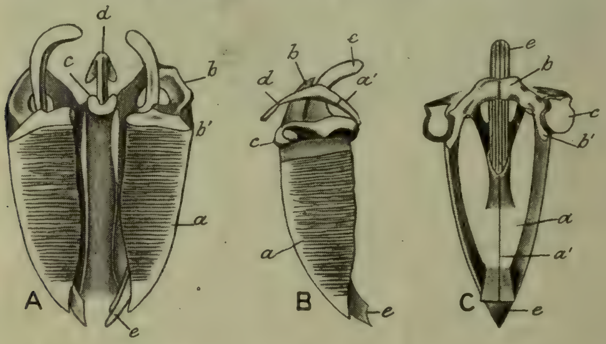


FIG. 296.—Lantern of Aristotle of **Echinus.** *A*, Two of the five chief component parts apposed and viewed laterally. *B*, Lateral and *C* internal view of a single part. *a*, alveolus; *a'*, suture with its fellow; *b*, epiphysis; *b'*, suture with alveolus; *c*, rotula; *d*, radius; *e*, tooth. (From Huxley's *Invertebrates*, after Müller.)

of others is to cause the movements of the alveoli by which the teeth are brought to bear on the food.

Nervous System.—Passing outwards through each auricle, and running along the inner surface of the corona opposite the middle of each ambulacral area, is a *radial nerve* (Fig. 297, *rad. ne*). Within the ring of auricles the five radial nerves are connected with a *nerve-ring* (*nerv.r*) surrounding the mouth. At its distal end each radial nerve is connected with the *eye* (*oc*), borne by the corresponding ocular plate. ~~These parts~~ correspond ~~to the epi~~*dermal* nervous system ~~of the~~ Starfish; the deep and cœlomic systems are only feebly developed.

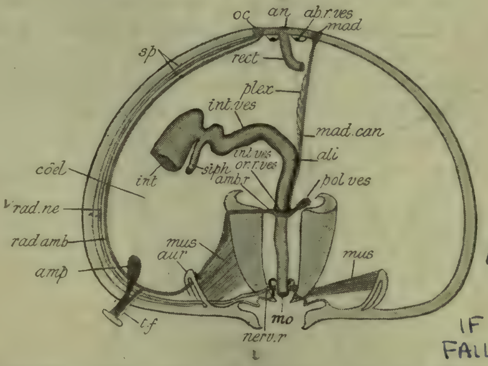


Fig. 297.—Lateral view of the internal organs of a **Sea-urchin** as seen on the removal of a half of the shell. *ab. r. ves.* aboral ring blood-vessel; *amp.* ampullæ; *an.* anus; *aur.* auricle; *int.* intestine; *int. ves.* intestinal blood-vessels; *mad.* madreporite; *mad. can.* madreporic canal; *mo.* mouth; *mus.* muscles passing from the auricles to Aristotle's lantern; *nerv. r.* nerve ring; *oc.* ocular plate; *or. r. v.* oral ring blood-vessel; *plex.* ovoid gland; *pol. ves.* Polian vesicle; *rad. amb.* radial ambulacral vessel; *rad. ne.* radial nerve; *siph.* siphon; *sp.* radial extension of the cœlome surrounding the nerve; *t. f.* tube-feet. (From Leuckart, after Hamann.)

HIGHLY
RECOMM
BY

IF POISON
FAILS TAK
ZOOLOG

Ambulacral System.—Internal to each radial nerve, and pursuing a corresponding course, runs a *radial ambulacral vessel* (*rad. amb*). From this are given off on each side a series of short branches to the tube-feet, with each of which is connected one of a series of compressed sacs, the *ampullæ* (*amp*), by two canals, one passing through each of the two pores. At their oral extremities the five radial ambulacral vessels unite with a *ring-vessel* surrounding the œsophagus. Appended to the ring-vessel are five *Polian vesicles* (*pol. ves*) in the form of small mammillated bodies. A *madreporic canal* (*mad. can*), corresponding to that of the Starfish, but with soft membranous walls devoid of ossicles, runs from the madreporite at the side of the periproct to the ring-canal surrounding the mouth.

Accompanying the madreporic canal is an **ovoid gland** (*plex*) similar in essential character to that of the Starfish and having similar relations, except that the connection with the reproductive organs has disappeared in the adult.

The **enteric canal** (Fig. 298, *ali*) is devoid of the radial cæca which it presents in the Starfish: it is a wide, soft-walled tube, which winds round the interior of the corona in its passage from the mouth to the anus held in place by a band of threads the *mesentery*, passing out from it to the inner surface of the shell. It gives off a short blind diverticulum, the *siphon* (*siph*); this, together with the intestine itself, probably acts as an organ for the respiration of the cœlomic fluid.

The **cœlome** contains a fluid in which, as in the Starfish, there are numerous corpuscles. Of these there are two kinds, (1) *amœboid corpuscles* (*amœbocytes*) with long pseudopodia, (2) the *vibratile corpuscles*, which closely resemble sperms, having a rounded head and a slender vibratile tail: the latter aid in bringing about a constant circulation of the cœlomic fluid.

The part of the cœlome in front of Aristotle's lantern is completely cut off from the rest by the arrangement of the membrane enclosing the lantern, and the function of the branchiæ on the peristome is evidently the oxygenation of the cœlomic fluid enclosed in this compartment.

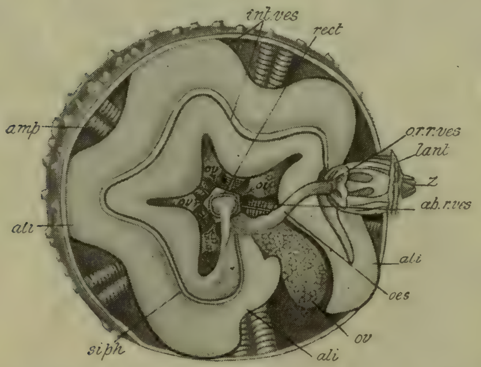


FIG. 298.—Alimentary canal and other organs of **Sea-urchin** as seen when the oral half of the corona has been removed: *ab. r. ves.* aboral ring-vessel of the blood-vascular system; *ali.* alimentary canal; *amp.* ampullæ; *int. ves.* intestinal blood-vessels; *lant.* lantern of Aristotle; *œs.* œsophagus; *or. r. v.* oral ring-vessel of the blood-vascular system; *ov.* ovary; *rect.* rectum; *siph.* siphon. (From Leuckart, partly after Cuvier.)

A **blood-vascular** system is also present, and has an arrangement corresponding to that already described in the ~~case of the Star~~fish, with the addition of two large intestinal vessels (Figs. 297 and 298, *int. ves*).

The **reproductive organs** consist of five masses of minute rounded follicles (Fig. 298, *ov*) situated in the anal portion of the shell, and each communicating with the exterior by its duct, which perforates the corresponding genital plate. The sexes are distinct; as in the Starfish, there is little difference to be observed between the ovaries of the female and the testes of the male until we come to examine their microscopic structure. The genital rachides which in the Starfish connect the gonads with the genital stolon (ovoid gland) are, as already noticed, aborted in the adult Sea-Urchin.

The early stages in the **development** of the Sea-Urchin are very similar to the corresponding stages in the development of the Starfish described on page 359. The bilateral larva of the Sea-Urchin, which is termed a *Pluteus*, is provided with a number of elongated arms or processes supported by delicate calcareous rods. A metamorphosis, in which the bilateral larva becomes converted into the radial adult, takes place as in the Starfish.

3. EXAMPLE OF THE HOLOTHUROIDEA.

A Sea-Cucumber.—*Cucumaria* or *Colochirus.*

General External Features.—The body (Fig. 299) is elongated, in shape not unlike a miniature cucumber, somewhat irregularly five-sided, with an opening at each end. One end is somewhat thicker than the other, and the opening at this thicker (oral or anterior) end is the *mouth*, that at the opposite (aboral or posterior) end is the *anus*. The body is five-sided, and along each side there extends a double row of *tube-feet*. In Colochirus there is a very distinct *ventral* surface, into which three of the five sides enter, distinguished by the absence of the rows of tubercles that occur on the dorsal portion of the surface, and by the presence of three distinct bands of tube-feet. This ventral part of the body with its three ambulacral areas is the equivalent of the *trivium* of the starfish, the rest representing the *bivium*. On the dorsal surface instead of typical tube-feet there are papillæ devoid of sucking extremities, and similar appendages take the place of tube-feet at the ends of the three ventral bands. In Cucumaria the ventral surface is less distinctly defined, but its position is always to be determined by reference to the tentacles (*vide infra*); there are no papillæ. The ventral surface is, it is to be noticed, *parallel* with the axis joining mouth and anus, not at right angles with it as in the Starfish and Sea-urchin, and the body is, when compared with theirs, greatly drawn out in the direction of the line joining mouth and anus.

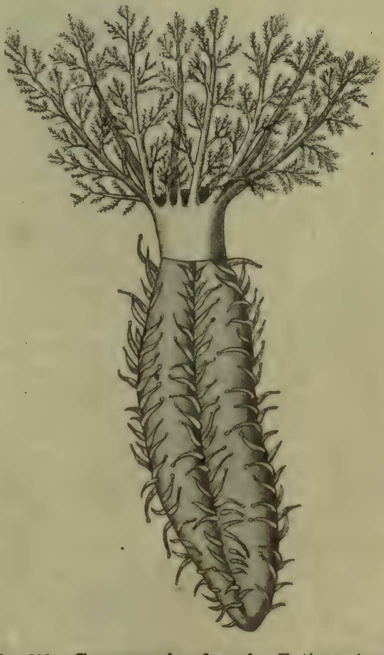


FIG. 299.—**Cucumaria planci.** Entire animal seen from the ventral surface. (From Hertwig's *Lehrbuch*, after Ludwig.)

There are no definite calcareous plates; but the integument is tolerably hard, owing to the presence in its substance of innumerable microscopic calcareous *spicules,* very variable in shape in different species of Cucumaria, and in Colochirus having the form of sieve-like or lattice-like plates, some of which are to be found even in the walls of the tube-feet. The tube-feet are, like those of the Starfish, used in locomotion, progression being effected by creeping with the ventral surface applied to the ground. In a Sea-cucumber living undisturbed under natural conditions there will be found protruded through the mouth a circlet of ten *tentacles,* which are to be looked upon as greatly developed and specially modified tube-feet. These are tree-like in shape—a central stem giving off a number of short branches, which may in turn be branched—and they are highly sensitive and contractile. Two of these tentacles will be observed to correspond to each of the ambulacral areas. The pair situated opposite the middle ambulacral area of the ventral surface are very much smaller than the others, and will be observed to perform the special function of pushing the food-particles into the mouth. All the tentacles are drawn completely back within the mouth when the animal is disturbed.

Structure of Body-wall.—When the wall of the body is divided, it is found to consist, in addition to the hardened *integumentary* layer, of two layers of *muscle* in addition to a thin layer of cells, the *peritoneum* or *cœlomic epithelium,* lining the cœlome. The outer layer of muscle is a complete, continuous layer of muscular fibres which have a circular arrangement, *i.e.* are arranged in a ring-like manner around the long axis of the body; while the inner layer is not continuous, consisting, in fact, merely of five flattened bands which run longitudinally from the oral to the anal extremities, each underlying one of the ambulacral areas. In close contact with each of these bands, on its inner surface, runs a *radial ambulacral vessel* (Fig 300, *rad. amb.*) together with a *radial nerve.*

Ambulacral System.—Just behind the bases of the tentacles, and surrounding the beginning of the œsophagus is a *circular ambulacral vessel* (*ring. ves.*) which gives off the five *radial* vessels; these first run forwards and give off branches to the tentacles, and then run backwards, passing along the ambulacral areas and giving off branches to the tube-feet, each of which is provided with its *ampulla.* From the ring-vessel is also given off a large pear-shaped *Polian vesicle* (*pol. ves.*), and a short sinuous canal, the *madreporic canal* (*mad. can.*), which ends in a perforated extremity, not situated, like the madreporite of the Starfish or the Sea-urchin, on the outer surface of the body, but in the interior of the cœlome.

A **nerve-ring** surrounds the mouth and gives off the five *radial nerves.* A **vascular ring** (*ri. bl. ves.*) lies close to the nerve-ring and sends off five radial vessels, as well as dorsal and ventral vessels (*int. ves.*) accompanying the enteric canal, and a plexus surrounding the left *respiratory tree.*

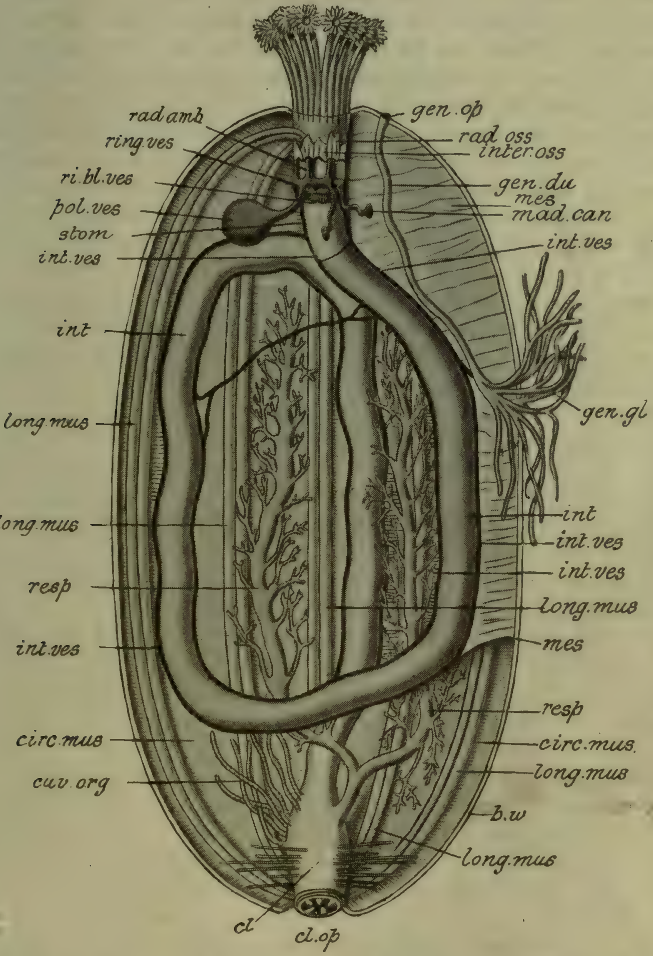

rad.amb
ring.ves
ri.bl.ves
pol.ves
stom
int.ves
int
long.mus
long.mus
resp
int.ves
circ.mus
cuv.org
cl
cl.op
gen.op
rad.oss
inter.oss
gen.du
mes
mad.can
int.ves
gen.gl
int
int.ves
int.ves
long.mus
mes
resp
circ.mus.
long.mus
b.w
long.mus

FIG. 300.—Internal organs of a **Holothurian** as seen when the body-wall is divided along the middle of the dorsal surface: *b. w.* body-wall; *circ. mus.* circular layer of muscle; *cl.* cloaca; *cl. op.* cloacal opening with five teeth; *Cuv. org.* Cuvieran organs; *gen. ap.* genital aperture; *gen. du.* genital duct; *gen. gl.* genital gland; *int.* intestine; *inter. oss.* inter-ambulacral ossicles; *int. ves.* intestinal vessels; *long. mus.* longitudinal band of muscle; *mad. can.* madreporic canals; *mes.* mesentry; *pol. ves.* Polian vesicles; *rad. amb.* radial ambulacral vessel; *ri. bl. ves.* ring blood-vessel; *resp.* respiratory trees; *ring-ves.* ring-vessel of the ambulacral system; *stom.* stomach. (After Leuckart.)

The **cœlome** contains a fluid in which float numerous amœbocytes similar to those of the Starfish, and also a number of flattened nucleated corpuscles containing a red colouring matter

—haemoglobin—almost identical with that which gives the red colour to the blood of the higher animals.

The **enteric canal** is, as already mentioned, surrounded at its oral extremity by the circlet of *tentacles*, and within these, when they are fully exserted, is a narrow *peristome* with the mouth in the centre. When the tentacles are retracted the peristome becomes inverted, so that peristome and tentacles become enclosed within a chamber, the *buccal chamber*, into which the mouth leads. Surrounding the *œsophagus*, which lies immediately behind the buccal chamber, is a circlet of ten *circum-œsophageal ossicles*, five ambulacral (*rad. oss.*) in position, and five inter-ambulacral (*inter. oss.*). Through each of the former pass the corresponding radial ambulacral vessel, blood-vessel, and nerve. The alimentary canal itself is a simple cylindrical tube, only indistinctly marked out into œsophagus, stomach (*stom.*), and intestine. It forms several coils within the cœlome, to the wall of which it is attached by a thin membranous dorsal mesentery, and terminates behind in a comparatively wide chamber, the *cloaca* (*cl.*).

Opening into the cloaca is a pair of remarkable organs of doubtful function, the so-called *respiratory trees* (*resp.*). Each of these, beginning behind in a single tubular stem, becomes elaborately branched in front, some of the branches reaching nearly to the anterior end of the body-cavity. Each of the terminal branches ends in a ciliated funnel opening into the cœlome. Besides having to do, most probably, with the respiration of the cœlomic fluid and with the excretion of waste-matters, these organs also have a hydrostatic function; it is through them that, when the tentacles are withdrawn, the overplus of fluid which would impede the process is got rid of, and through them, in like manner, that the quantity is again increased when the tentacles are protruded again.

Reproductive Organs.—The Sea-cucumber, like the Starfish and Sea-urchin, has the sexes separate. *Ovaries* and *testes* (*gen. gl.*) are very like one another, and consist of bunches of tubular follicles, which communicate with the exterior by means of a duct opening on the dorsal surface some little distance behind the oral end.

The early stages of **development** are very similar to those of the Starfish (p. 358). The bilateral larva, however, assumes a shape somewhat different from the Bipinnaria of the Starfish, and is termed the *Auricularia* (Fig. 315): it has a number of short processes developed in the course of the ciliated bands. The larval mouth and œsophagus, instead of being abolished as in the Bipinnaria, persist to the adult condition.

4. Type of the Crinoidea.

A Feather-Star.—*Antedon rosacea.*

General External Features.—In the Feather-star (Fig. 301), as in the Starfish, there are to be recognised a central disc and a series of five radiating arms. In the natural position of the animal the side of the disc which corresponds to the ventral or actinal surface of the Starfish is directed *upwards,* and the dorsal or abactinal surface *downwards.* The five arms are bifurcated at their bases; they are feather-like, and highly flexible; they act as the locomotive organs of the animal, their alternate flexions and extensions resulting in a slow movement through the water. On the dorsal side of the disc are whorls of slender curved cylindrical appendages, the *dorsal cirri,* by means of which the feather-star is enabled to anchor itself temporarily to a rock or a sea-weed.

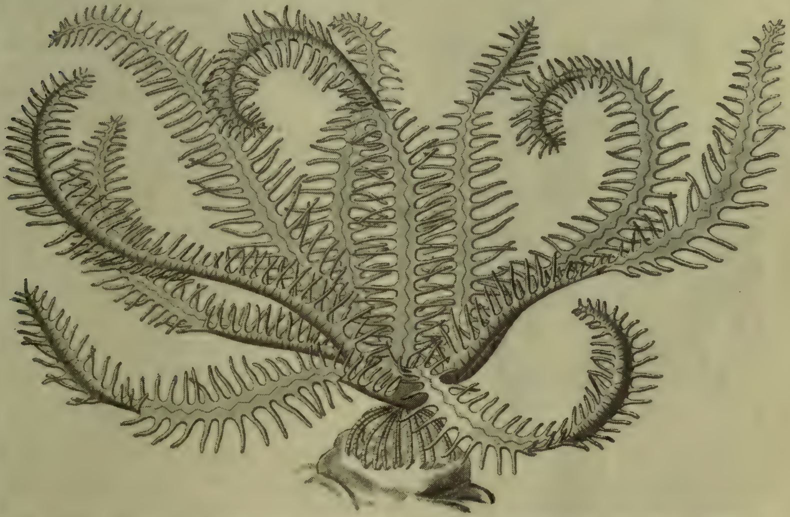


Fig. 301.—**Antedon.** Side view of entire animal. (From Leuckart and Nitsche's Diagrams.)

On the ventral side of the disc the body-wall is soft and flexible; containing only scattered irregular spicules of calcareous matter, and in the centre of this surface is an opening, the *mouth* (Fig. 302, *mo.*). From the mouth five very narrow grooves, the *ambulacral grooves,* radiate outwards towards the bases of the arms, near which they bifurcate, so that ten grooves are formed, one passing along the ventral surface of each of the ten arm-branches to its extremity. The *anal opening* (*an.*) is likewise ventral, and is situated on a papilliform elevation in the interspace between two of the radiating canals.

The dorsal side of the disc is occupied by a large flat pentagonal ossicle, the *centro-dorsal ossicle*,[1] (Fig. 304, *C*, *D*) bearing on its outer surface a number of little cup-like depressions, with which the bases of the cirri are connected. The cirri (*cirr.*) consist each of a row of slender ossicles, covered, like all the rest of the animal, with epidermis, and connected together by means of muscular fibres. Concealed from view by the centro-dorsal ossicle is a thin plate termed the "*rosette*" (*ros.*), formed by the coalescence of the *basals* of the larva. At the sides are five *first radial* (*R.*^{1}) ossicles, also concealed by the centro-dorsal ossicles: with each of these articulates a *second radial* (*R.*^{2}), which is visible beyond the centro-dorsal. With each of the second radials articulate two *third radials* (*R.*^{3}), each forming the base of the corresponding arm-branch.

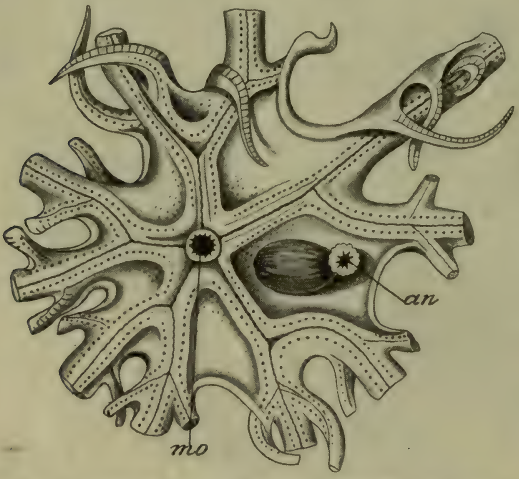


FIG. 302.—**Antedon,** ventral (upper) surface of the central disc; *an.* anus; *mo.* mouth. (From Vogt and Jung.)

The ossicles of the arms—*brachials* (*Br.*^{1}, *Br.*^{2})—are arranged in a single row in each arm. They are somewhat elongated in the direction of the long axis of the arm, strongly convex on their dorsal surfaces, longitudinally grooved ventrally, connected together by the investing epidermis, and by bundles of muscular fibres, by the contractions of which the movements of the arms are brought about. Fringing the sides of each arm are two rows of side-branches, or *pinnules*, each supported by its row of connected ossicles, and each grooved along its ventral surface.

The **cœlome** contains numerous strands of connective tissue which serve to suspend the various organs.

Extending through the arms and pinnules between the supporting ossicles and the ambulacral grooves are three canals which are prolongations of the cœlome (Fig. 303, *cœl. can.*). Two of these —the *sub-tentacular canals*—form a pair separated from one another by a median septum underlying the ambulacral groove. The other—the *cœliac canal*—runs between these and the supporting ossicles (*oss.*). The sub-tentacular canals and the cœliac canal communicate with one another at the extremity of the arms.

---

[1] This has nothing to do with the *dorso-central* ossicle referred to above (p. 362) as one of the primary apical plates of the Starfish: the dorso-central is not represented in the Feather-star.

The **enteric canal** begins with a wide funnel-shaped œsophagus leading to a spacious *stomach* having a small *cæcum* connected with it. Distally it becomes contracted and opens into a wide *intestine*, which winds round the cœlome, giving off at its gastric end a number of small cæcal diverticula, and becoming narrower where it passes upwards to open on the exterior, the terminal part, or *rectum*, projecting as a tubular papilla on the surface. In the living animal the rectal tube is observed to undergo frequent movements of contraction and dilatation by means of which water is drawn into and expelled from the intestine, so that here, as in the Sea-urchin, there would appear to be a process of intestinal respiration.

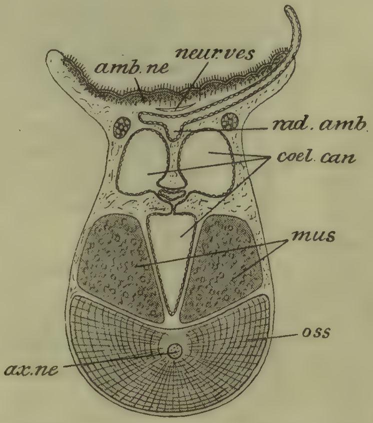


Fig. 303.—**Antedon,** transverse section of a pinnule. *amb. ne*, ambulacral nerve; *ax. n e.* axial nerve; *cœl. can*, sub-tentacular and cœliac canals; *mus.* muscles; *neur. ves.* blood vessel; *rad. amb.* radial ambulacral vessel. (After Teuscher.)

The **ambulacral system** consists of a *ring-vessel* surrounding the mouth, and a series of *radial vessels* (Fig. 303, *rad. amb.*) which run in the ambulacral grooves, giving off branches to the pinnules. Connected with the radial vessels and their branches are a series of minute tubular appendages, the so-called *tentacles* (Fig. 304, *tent.*), which are homologous with the tube-feet of the Star-fishes and Sea-urchins, but are devoid of terminal suckers. These are not organs of locomotion, they bear numerous sensory papillae, and are therefore to be looked upon as tactile organs; but they probably also have a respiratory function. Connected with the ring-vessel are a number of ciliated, branched, tubular diverticula, the *water-tubes*, which are suspended within the cœlome, and may open freely into it at their extremities. A large number of vessels with minute ciliated openings—the *water-pores* (*wat. p.*)—lead through the ventral wall of the disc: these and the ciliated tubes are to be looked upon as together representing the madreporic canal and its openings in the Star-fish and Sea-urchin.

The **nervous system** consists of two perfectly distinct parts. A nerve-ring (*ect. ne.*) surrounds the mouth, and from it are given off a series of *ambulacral nerves*—thickenings of the epidermis of the ambulacral grooves and their offsets—which extend throughout the length of the arms and pinnules. In the axis of the supporting ossicles of the arm is an *axial nerve* (*ax. co.*), which gives off branches (Fig. 303, *ax. ne.*) running through the axes of the ossicles of the pinnules. The *axial nerves* are connected internally, not with the circum-oral nerve-ring, but with a central body situated below the rosette, in the interior of the centro-dorsal ossicle. This, the *central capsule* (Fig. 304, *cent. caps.*), forms the investment of a body termed the *five-chambered organ* (*chamb. org.*), divided into five parts by radial septa, and continuous with the dorsal end of the genital stolon. Processes from the five angles of the central capsule combine to form a pentagonal ring from which pass outwards the axial nerves of the arms. The ambulacral nerves and their central ring represent the epidermal nerves of the Starfish; the axial nerves are represented in the latter only by the comparatively feebly-developed cœlomic system.

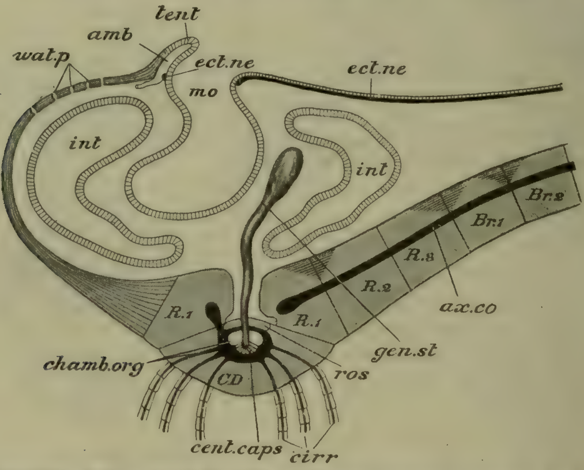


FIG. 304.—**Antedon,** Diagrammatic view of a median vertical section through the disc, passing through one radius and one inter-radius. *amb.* ambulacral vessels; *ax. co.* axial nerve cord passing through the ossicles of the arm; *Br*,^{1} *Br*,^{2} brachial ossicles; *CD.* centro-dorsal ossicle; *cent. caps.* central capsule; *chamb. org.* chambered organ; *cirr.* cirri; *ect. ne.* ambulacral (epidermal) nerve-ring and radial nerve; *gen. st.* genital stolon; *int.* intestine; *mo.* mouth; *R*,^{1} *R*,^{2} *R*,^{3} radials; *ros.* rosette; *tent.* tentacles; *wat. p.* water-pores. (After Milnes Marshall.)

A **blood-vascular system** is present, with a circum-oral ring-vessel giving off radial vessels to the arms, and a plexus of vessels surrounding the œsophagus, and enclosing the genital stolon.

Numerous bodies termed the **sacculi**, the character of which has given rise to much discussion, occur regularly arranged along the ambulacral grooves, and also in other parts. They are small spherical bodies which become vividly coloured by means of staining agents. They are sometimes supposed to be parasitic

Algae; but the regularity of their arrangement is opposed to such a view. It has been suggested with more appearance of probability that they may be masses of *reserve materials*, stored up for the nutrition of the animal.

The **reproductive organs**—*ovaries* or *testes*, as the case may be—are lodged in the dilated bases of the pinnules, which become considerably enlarged as the ova or sperms mature, those next to the bases of the arms alone remaining sterile. When mature, the sexual elements escape by means of short ducts. Each gonad is one of the terminal parts of a system of tubes lined by an epithelium, and extending from a central part or *genital stolon* (*gen. st*) lodged in the vascular plexus that surrounds the œsophagus and connected dorsally with the chambered organ, outwards through the arms, the terminal portions, lying in the pinnules, becoming dilated to form the reproductive organs, and the cells of their epithelium becoming developed into ova or sperms, while the rest constitute a non-fertile connecting rachis. This system is enclosed throughout by a plexus of blood-vessels.

Like the rest of the Echinoderms, the Feather-star undergoes a **metamorphosis** (Fig. 316). The larva is at first oval and covered uniformly with cilia. Afterwards the cilia become restricted to four transverse bands with a bunch of longer cilia at one end; the body becomes bent towards the ventral side, ossicles begin to be formed, and the posterior extremity becomes drawn out into a narrow process in which supporting ossicles soon appear. At the end of this posterior, or more correctly dorsal, process, a terminal disc is formed, and by means of this the larva fixes itself, the process forming a supporting stalk. The larva now assumes the form to which the term "*pentacrinoid*" has been applied, owing to the fact that, in its most essential features, it resembles the adult form of *Pentacrinus*, one of the stalked Crinoids (See Fig. 314), with a central disc, giving off five bifurcated arms with their pinnules, and supported on a narrow stalk springing from the middle of the dorsal surface. This fixed pentacrinoid larva passes into the adult, free-swimming Feather-star by the development of the dorsal cirri, the greater elongation of the arms, and the absorption of the stalk, the uppermost ossicle of which is represented in the adult by the centro-dorsal ossicle.

5. Distinctive Characters and Classification.

The Echinodermata are radially symmetrical animals, the radial arrangement of whose parts imperfectly conceals a more obscure and more primitive bilateral symmetry. The surface is covered with an exoskeleton of calcareous plates or ossicles, which usually support a system of movable or immovable calcareous spines. There is a large body-cavity or cœlome, and well-developed alimentary, nervous, and vascular systems. A characteristic system of vessels, the ambulacral system, is connected with the locomotion of the animal, as well as with other functions: the organs of locomotion are elastic and contractile tubular bodies, the tube-feet, which are appendages of the ambulacral system. Nearly all the systems of organs of the animal partake to a greater or less extent of the general radial form of the body. Reproduction is entirely sexual. In the course of its development from the egg the Echinoderm passes through a peculiar larval stage, in which the symmetry of parts is bilateral instead of radial as in the adult animal. All the Echinodermata are marine.

The Echinodermata are classified as follows:—

CLASS I.—ASTEROIDEA.

Free Echinoderms with star-shaped or pentagonal body, in which a central disc and usually five arms are more or less readily distinguishable, the arms being hollow, and each containing a prolongation of the cœlome and of the contained organs. There are distinct dorsal and ventral surfaces, on the former of which the anus and the madreporite are situated, and on the latter the mouth and five narrow ambulacral grooves lodging the tube-feet. The larva has the form either of a *Bipinnaria* or of a *Brachiolaria* (see p. 397). This class includes the Starfishes.

ORDER 1.—PHANEROZONIA.

Asteroidea with large marginal ossicles. The dermal branchiæ are present only on the dorsal surface. The ambulacral ossicles not closely crowded. Pedicellariæ sessile.

ORDER 2.—CRYPTOZONIA.

Asteroidea with the marginal ossicles inconspicuous. Dermal branchiæ not restricted to the dorsal, but often present on the oral surface. Ambulacral ossicles crowded together. Pedicellariæ stalked or sessile.

CLASS II.—OPHIUROIDEA.

Star-shaped free Echinoderms, with a central disc and five arms, which are more sharply marked off from the disc than in the Asteroidea, and which contain no spacious prolongations of the cœlome. There are distinct dorsal and ventral surfaces. The anus is absent; the mouth, as well as the madreporite, ventral. There are no ambulacral grooves. The larva is a *Pluteus*. This class includes the Sand-stars and Brittle-stars.

ORDER 1.—OPHIURIDA.

Ophiuroidea in which the arms are simple.

ORDER 2.—EURYALIDA.

Ophiuroidea in which the arms are branched.

CLASS III.—ECHINOIDEA.

Free Echinoderms with globular, heart-shaped, or disc-shaped body enclosed in a shell or corona of close-fitting, firmly united calcareous plates. The mouth is nearly always polar; the anus usually at the opposite (aboral) pole; the madreporite is close to the latter. There are no ambulacral grooves; but the surface is divided into alternating ambulacral and inter-ambulacral zones or areas, which usually run from pole to pole. The larva is a *Pluteus*. This class includes the Sea-urchins, with the Heart-urchins and Cake-urchins.

ORDER 1.—PALÆO-ECHINOIDEA.

Fossil Echinoidea in which the number of rows of plates in the corona is variable, and in which the plates overlap one another.

ORDER 2.—REGULARIA.

Echinoidea with globular corona containing twenty meridional rows of plates. Mouth and anus polar. A lantern of Aristotle is present. This order includes the Sea-urchins.

ORDER 3.—CLYPEASTRIDEA.

Echinoidea with more or less flattened corona, with the mouth central, the anus excentric. A lantern of Aristotle is present. This order includes the Cake-urchins.

ORDER 4.—SPATANGOIDEA.

Heart-shaped Echinoidea with the mouth and anus excentric. No lantern of Aristotle. This order includes the Heart-urchins.

CLASS IV.—HOLOTHUROIDEA.

Free Echinoderms with elongated, cylindrical or five-sided body, having the mouth and anus at opposite extremities. The body-wall is usually only supported by scattered ossicles or spicules. There is no external opening to the madreporic canal (except in some *Elasipoda*). The surface usually exhibits five ambulacral areas; but these may be absent. There is a circlet of large oral tentacles. The larva is an *Auricularia*. This class includes the Sea-cucumbers and Bêche-de-mer.

ORDER 1.—ELASIPODA.

Holothuroidea with well-marked bilateral symmetry, with tube-feet on the ventral surface (which is flattened) and papillæ on the dorsal. Confined to the deep sea.

ORDER 2.—PEDATA.

Holothuroidea with tube-feet either in longitudinal rows or scattered irregularly over the surface.

ORDER 3.—APODA.

Holothuroidea devoid of tube-feet and of radial ambulacral vessels.

CLASS V.—CRINOIDEA.

Temporarily or permanently stalked Echinoderms with star-shaped body, consisting of a central disc and a series of five bifurcate or more complexly branched arms, bordered with pinnules. There are distinct dorsal and ventral surfaces; the latter bearing the mouth and anus, and the inner ends of a series of narrow ambulacral grooves. This class comprises the Feather-stars and Sea-lilies.

ORDER 1.—PALÆOCRINOIDEA.

Stalked Crinoidea in which the disc is large as compared with the arms, a number of inter-radial plates being present and often united with the disc. The ventral surface usually concealed by a "vault" of calcareous plates.

Extinct, palæozoic.

ORDER 2.—NEO-CRINOIDEA.

Stalked or free Crinoidea in which the disc is small as compared with the arms, and in which inter-radials, when present, do not combine with the plates of the disc. There is no "vault" covering the ventral surface.

Comprising all the living forms, together with several extinct mesozoic families.

CLASS VI.—CYSTOIDEA.

Fossil Echinoderms with globular body, sometimes sessile, sometimes stalked, enclosed in usually irregular, polygonal plates. Mouth central; five radiating ambulacral grooves. Palæozoic.

CLASS VII.—BLASTOIDEA.

Fossil Echinoderms with ovate stalked body, central mouth, and five ambulacral areas. Palæozoic.

Systematic Position of the Examples.

Asterias rubens is a species of the genus *Asterias*, which, with several others, constitutes the family *Asteriidæ* of the order *Cryptozonia*. The family *Asteriidæ* is characterised among the families of the *Cryptozonia* by the following distinctive features:—The ossicles of the dorsal surface are small, unequal, reticulate plates, bearing isolated or grouped spinelets (paxillæ). The margin of the actinostome is defined by the ambulacral plates. The pedicellariæ are of two forms, forceps-like and scissors-like. The tube-feet are in four rows. *Asterias* differs from the other genera of the family in having well-developed reticulate dorsal ossicles bearing definite spines.

The Sea-urchins of which a short description has been given are the genera *Strongylocentrotus* and *Echinus*, but the description is sufficiently general to apply to any member of the family *Echinidæ*, to which these genera, with a number of others, belong. The family *Echinidæ* is one of about five families of the sub-order *Ectobranchiata*, the members of which all differ from the other sub-order—Entobranchiata—of the *Regularia*, or regular Sea-urchins, in the possession of dermal branchiæ, and in having the auricles in the form of complete arches.

The Sea-cucumber (*Cucumaria* or *Colochirus*) is a member of the *Stichopoda*—one of the families of the sub-order *Dendrochirotæ* of the *Pedata*, or foot-bearing Holothurians. The *Dendrochirotæ* differ from the *Aspidochirotæ*—the other sub-order—mainly in having arborescent instead of shield-shaped tentacles, and the *Stichopoda* differ from the rest of the *Dendrochirotæ* in having the tube-feet arranged in five regular zones. The genus *Cucumaria* is distinguished from the rest by the ten tentacles with the two ventral smaller than the others. *Colochirus* is closely allied to *Cucumaria*, the principal distinction being the presence in the former of papillae taking the place of tube-feet in certain situations as already noted.

The Feather Star (*Antedon rosacea*) is a member of the family *Comatulidæ*, which is distinguished from the four other living families comprised in the order *Neocrinoidea*, by the absence of a stalk in the adult condition.

6. GENERAL ORGANISATION.

General Form and Symmetry.—Like the Cœlenterata, the Echinodermata are radially symmetrical, the body being capable of division into a series of sub-equal *antimeres* along a series of radiating planes at right angles to the principal axis. In the majority of existing forms (Asteroidea, Ophiuroidea, and Crinoidea) the radial symmetry is expressed in the external form of the body, which is produced into a number of radially disposed parts, the *arms* or *rays*, arranged around a smaller or larger *central disc*. But in the Echinoidea the body is sub-spherical, and in the Holothuroidea sub-cylindrical, the radiate arrangement being in these classes indicated externally only by the distribution of the tube-feet, and internally by that of certain of the systems of organs.

Although, however, the general external form and the arrangement of some of the internal organs in the Echinodermata indicates a radial symmetry, it is invariably found that this radial arrangement serves to hide a more primitive and more fundamental *bilateral* symmetry. This is best marked in the larva, which has pronounced bilateral, instead of radial, symmetry, but is quite recognisable in the adult. In all Echinoderms there is, passing through the primary axis, a plane—the *median* plane—along which, and along which alone, the body is capable of being divided into two equal, or, to speak more correctly, approximately equal, right and left, halves. The existence of such a single median plane is, as already explained (p. 348), indicative of the bilateral form of symmetry.

The body is most usually five-rayed (Ophiuroidea, most Asteroidea, Crinoidea), cylindrical (most Holothuroidea) or globular (most Echinoidea), the surface in the two last cases being marked by five bands or zones of tube-feet, which divide it into five *ambulacral* and five *inter-ambulacral* areas. In the Ophiuroidea and Asteroidea two of the rays—constituting the *bivium*—have between them the *madreporite*, marking the position of the madreporic canal of the ambulacral system; the remaining three rays form the *trivium.* The median plane passes through the madreporite, and thus midway between the two rays of the bivium, and bisects longitudinally the middle ray of the trivium. A corresponding disposition of the parts is traceable also, as will be subsequently shown, in the cylindrical and globular Echinoderms.

In all the Echinodermata dorsal or abactinal and ventral or actinal surfaces are more or less distinctly recognisable. In the Asteroidea, Ophiuroidea, and Echinoidea, the ventral surface is that in the middle of which the mouth is situated, and which is, in the natural position of the animal, directed downwards or towards the surface to which it is clinging. The opposite dorsal or abactinal surface is, in the majority of the Asteroidea and Echinoidea, marked by the presence of the anal aperture: in the Ophiuroidea and some Asteroidea the anus is absent, in some Echinoidea it is situated on the border between the two surfaces, or even on the oral surface. In the Crinoidea the ventral surface, which is habitually directed upwards in the natural position of the animal, bears both mouth and anus, the former central, the latter eccentric and inter-radial. In the fixed Crinoids the dorsal surface has attached to its centre the distal end of the stalk; in the free forms it has connected with it whorls of slender curved appendages, the *dorsal cirri,* by means of which temporary attachment is effected. In the Holothurians owing to the elongation of the body in the direction of the line joining mouth and anus, dorsal and ventral surfaces corresponding to those of the other classes are not recognisable; but in many, as for example in Colochirus, there is a marked difference between one surface which is habitually directed upwards, and another which is habitually directed downwards: these dorsal and ventral surfaces in the Holothurian, it is to be specially noticed, extend in the direction of the axis joining mouth and anus, and not at right angles to it as in the Starfishes and Sea-urchins.

In considering the general external form in the various classes of Echinoderms, we have to take into account the arrangement of the *tube-feet*—the organs of locomotion—as these have important relations to the other parts, and to the whole plan of organisation of the animal. These organs, as previously explained, are tubular appendages with highly elastic and contractile muscular walls, capable of being stretched out so as to extend a long way from the surface of the body. In the majority of cases the tube-foot has at its extremity a *sucking-disc*, by means of which it can be attached; in a few, however, this sucking-disc is absent.

The entire surface is covered with a *ciliated epidermis.* In the subjacent dermal layers there are always present calcareous bodies or *ossicles*, varying very greatly in form and arrangement in the different groups. Movable or immovable calcareous *spines* or *tubercles* projecting on the surface are very general. Peculiarly modified spines, termed *pedicellariæ*, are commonly, though not universally, present in certain parts in the Echinoidea and Asteroidea. A pedicellaria consists in essence of two or three calcareous jaw-like pieces or *valves*, movably articulated together, and capable of being separated or approximated by the contraction of bundles of muscular fibres. Sometimes there is a long stalk; sometimes (as in the case of Anthenea, p. 357) a stalk is absent. During life the jaws or valves keep opening and closing. That such specialised structures have some important function to perform there can be no doubt, but there is some uncertainty as to what their special purpose is. According to some observers, the pedicellariæ of the Sea-urchin have been seen passing from one to another the particles of fœcal matter discharged from the anus, and their function would thus appear to be a cleansing one. On the other hand, it is stated that when a Sea-urchin is attacked the spines may be bent aside from the assailed portion of the surface, so as to allow of the pedicellariæ being brought to bear as defensive weapons on the assailant, and from these and other observations that have been recorded, both on Asteroids and on Echinoids, it is concluded that the main function of these appendages is to act as defensive organs. Pedicellariæ are absent in the Ophiuroids, but in the Euryalida there are peculiar hook-like organs of adhesion, most abundant on the ventral surface and towards the extremities of the arms. The *sphæridia*, which have already been referred to as occuring in the Sea-urchin, are only doubtfully to be regarded as modified spines; they are confined to the Echinoidea. Also confined to that class are the *clavulæ*—slender spines covered with strong cilia, which occur in bands on the surface of the Spatangoids. Larger spines resembling the clavulæ in being covered with strong cilia, occur also in the Clypeastroids and some Asteroids. The currents produced by the action of their cilia serve to keep constantly renewed the water in the neighbourhood of the anus and of the branchiæ.

There are two principal **systems of plates** to be recognised, an *oral* and an *apical;* the former corresponding with the oral or actinal, and the latter with the aboral or abactinal surface. The former vary considerably in the different classes: the constant elements are five *orals,* which may or may not be recognisable in the adult. The apical system consists (1) of a *dorso-central* plate; (2) of five *basals* which are inter-radial in position; (3) of five *radials,* which are radial in position. In the Asteroidea (Fig. 292) the radials are late in making their appearance; before they are developed five *terminal* plates have become distinct, one at the end of each rudimentary arm; these become carried outwards by the extension of the arm, and each supports the corresponding tentacle. As a rule these plates of the apical system are only distinct in the young condition. In the Ophiuroidea the arrangement resembles that observable in the Asteroidea. In the Echinoidea (Fig. 295) the basals (genitals) are perforated by the ducts of the reproductive glands; the radials (oculars) are perforated for the eye and tentacle: the dorso-central (*anal*) rarely persists as a single plate in the adult, usually becoming broken up into a series of irregular plates. In the stalked Crinoidea the term dorso-central has been applied to a plate which is transformed into the disc of attachment at the base of the stalk, but the correspondence between this and the similarly named plate in the other classes is very doubtful; the ossicles of the stalk intervene between it and the basals. In the free forms the uppermost segment of the larval stalk is transformed into a *centro-dorsal plate,* and the basals nearly always unite into a *rosette plate,* which is concealed from view by the centro-dorsal and the radials. The apical system of plates is apparently not represented in the Holothuroidea.

Modifications of Form in the Five Classes.—The general shape in the Asteroidea is, as already pointed out, that of a star. There is a central part, or *central disc,* from which proceed a series of radially disposed *arms* or *rays.* The central disc and the rays are usually compressed dorso-ventrally, as in Anthenea and Asterina, but in some Starfishes the rays are approximately cylindrical; they nearly always taper distally. In the majority of Starfishes, as in the examples described, the arms are five in number, except in malformed individuals; but in some they are six, in others seven, eight, or more. The proportions borne by the arms to the central disc are subject to considerable variation. In some, as in Asterias, the arms are long and the central disc appears as little more than their point of union; in others, again, the whole Starfish has the form of a five-sided disc, in which the arms are represented only by the five angles; while between these two extremes there are numerous intermediate gradations. The *Brisingidæ* differ from all the rest of the class in having the arms almost as sharply separated off from the central disc as in the Ophiuroids.

The *dorsal* or *aboral*, and the *ventral* or *oral* surfaces are always distinctly marked off from one another. In the middle of the latter is the *mouth*, running out from which are five or more narrow *ambulacral grooves*, one of which is continued along the ventral surface of each arm to its extremity. Near to, but not quite in, the middle point of the dorsal surface is the *anal aperture*, absent in a few instances; and on the same surface, nearer the margin, between the two rays of the *bivium* in the five-rayed Starfishes, is the *madreporite*, a finely grooved calcareous plate perforated by a number of minute apertures. In some fossil Starfishes it is situated on the ventral surface. Sometimes instead of one madreporite there are several.

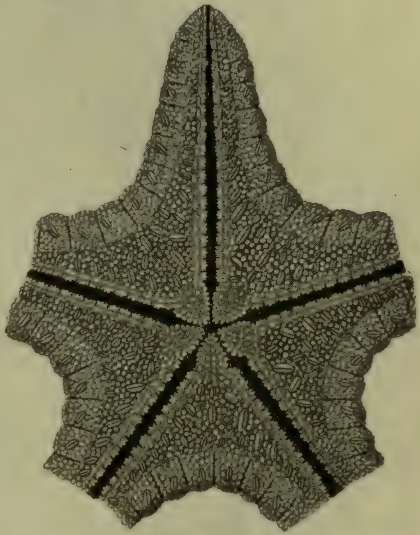


Fig. 305.—**Anthenea**. View of ventral surface. (After Sladen.)

The wall of the body in the Starfishes contains a number of calcareous *ossicles*, movably articulated together and connected by bands of muscle, so that, though the body is firm, and in the dried condition often quite rigid, the arms are capable during life of slow movements of flexion and extension, enabling the animal to creep through comparatively small fissures and crannies. A special system of ossicles—the *ambulacral ossicles*—are arranged in a double row along each ambulacral groove, the ossicles of the two rows articulating movably with one another at the apex of the groove. At the end of the arm the two rows of ambulacral ossicles end in a *terminal* ossicle which supports the unpaired tentacle. *Spines* are invariably present, but are sometimes confined to the margins of the ambulacral grooves, in which position they are movably articulated with the underlying ossicles. *Tubercles* take the place of spines over most of the surface in many forms. In *Astropecten* the ossicles of the dorsal surface take the special form to which the term *paxillæ* is applied. Each paxilla is a plate which is produced into a short rod, divided at its extremity into a number of radiating processes.

The *tube-feet* are arranged in a double row along each of the ambulacral grooves, each connected through an aperture between the ambulacral ossicles with an ampulla, or, exceptionally, with two, situated in the cœlome. Each double row of tube-feet terminates at the extremity of the arm in an unpaired appendage, the *tentacle*, which is tactile and olfactory, and not locomotive, in function. The tube-feet are provided (except in Astropecten) with terminal suckers.

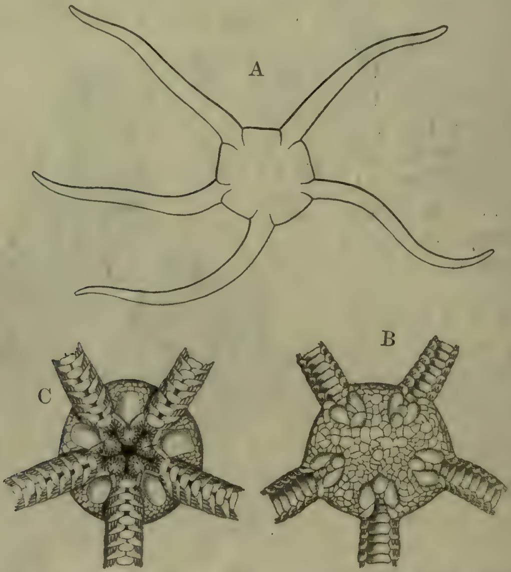


Fig. 306.—**Ophioglypha lacertosa**. *A*, outline, of the natural size. *B*, central disc, dorsal view. *C*, the disc, ventral view showing the mouth and genital fissures. (From Nicholson and Lydekker's *Palæontology*.)

In the Ophiuroidea (Fig. 306) the *central disc* is much more sharply marked off from the arms than in the Asteroidea. The arms, which are five in number, are comparatively slender, cylindrical, tapering towards the free extremities; in one group, the *Euryalida* (Fig. 307), they are branched. The mouth is in the middle of the ventral surface of the disc, as in the Asteroidea, but there are no ambulacral grooves and there is no anal aperture. Five pairs of slits on the oral surface (Fig. 306, C) lead into the genital sacs, which receive the sperms and ova from the gonads, and which appear also to act as organs of respiration and perhaps also of excretion. The surface is covered with thin plate like ossicles, usually beset along their edges with longer or shorter spines; sometimes irregular calcareous granules take the place of plates. Hook-like organs of adhesion are present only in the *Euryalida.* Each of the arms is supported by a row of internally situated *ambulacral ossicles.* Tube-feet are present and are protruded at the sides of the arms between the lateral plate-like ossicles; but they have no sucking-discs and no ampullæ, and locomotion is effected in the majority of the Ophiuroids by active flexions and extensions of the arms. In one genus there is a pair of fin-like appendages, supported by slender spines, on each joint of the arms. The madreporite is situated inter-radially on the *ventral* surface, and not on the dorsal as in the Asteroidea. In the Euryalida there are five madreporites and five madreporic canals.

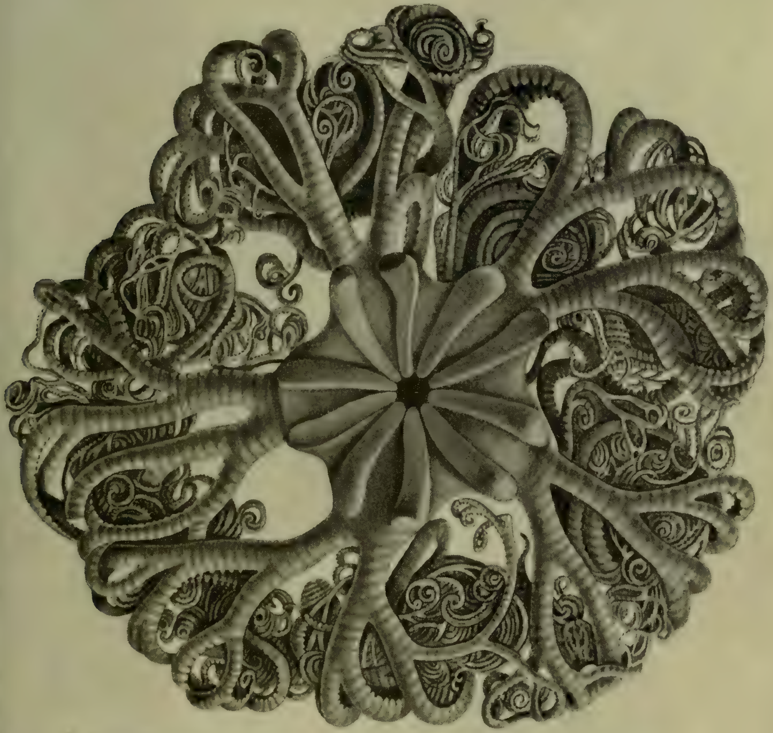


FIG. 307.—**Astrophyton arborescens,** dorsal view. (After Ludwig.)

In the Echinoidea the body is either globular or heart-shaped, or flattened and disc-like; dorsal and ventral surfaces are always distinctly recognisable. The *exoskeleton* is in the form of a rigidly articulated system of calcareous plates, fitting in closely together by sutures so as to form a continuous shell or *corona*. *Asthenosoma*, a deep-sea genus, differs from all the rest in having a corona possessing a certain degree of flexibility, and performing movements which are brought about by the contractions of five longitudinal bands of muscle running along the ambulacral areas on the inner surface.

In the globular forms, or regular Sea-urchins, the mouth is situated at the ventral pole of the globe, the anus at the dorsal, and the plates of the corona are in twenty regular meridional rows, arranged in ten zones, five ambulacral and five inter-ambulacral, as described in the account of Echinus, with peristome, periproct, ocular and genital plates, and madreporite. *Spines* (Fig. 309), *pedicellariæ* (Fig. 310), and *sphæridia* are present, as already described (p. 363), the last-named appendages, however, being absent in one group. The spines are usually defensive organs simply, but in some Sea-urchins they act also as the locomotive organs, the animal moving by their agency along the sea-bottom.

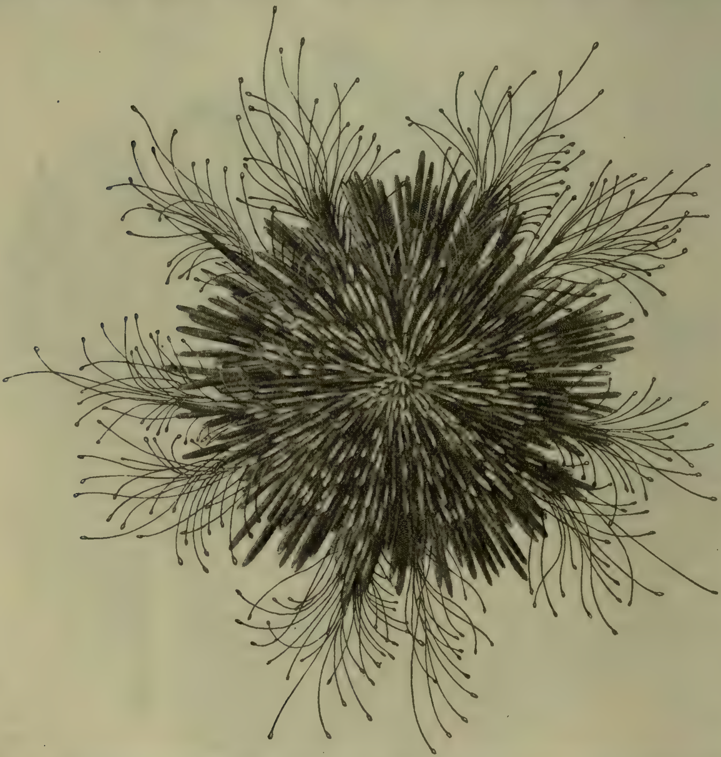


FIG. 308.—**Strongylocentrotus**, entire animal with the tube-feet extended. (From Brehm's *Thierleben.*)

The tube-feet, which are arranged in a double row in each ambulacral zone, are extremely extensible, and terminate in *sucking-membranes* strengthened by a calcareous *rosette*. An unpaired *tentacle*, corresponding to those of the Asteroidea, is supported on each of the ocular plates at the ends of the ambulacral zones. Two tube-feet in each double row, situated on the peristome, are likewise of the nature of tentacles, being devoid of sucking-membranes. Corresponding to the *dermal branchiæ* of the Asteroidea are, in the majority, five pairs of branched hollow appendages surrounding the peristome.

Surrounding the mouth are five teeth, supported by an elaborate system of ossicles (*Aristotle's lantern*, see p. 366), and a ring of processes, the *auricles*, from the interior of the corona surrounds this and gives attachment to some of the muscles by which the ossicles are moved.

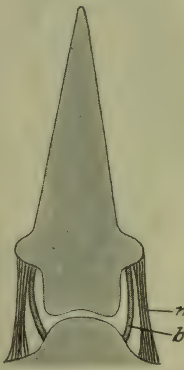


FIG. 309.—Diagram of spine of Sea-Urchin showing mode of articulation. *m.* muscle ; *b.* ligament. (From Leuckart.)

In the heart-shaped forms or Heart-urchins (Fig. 311) the corona is heart-shaped, the mouth is usually more or less eccentrically placed on the oral surface, and the peristome is usually transversely elongated; the anus is on or near the border between the two surfaces. The ambulacral areas do not run continuously, but stop short at the margin (*petaloid ambulacra*); one of them, the anterior, is usually unlike the others and frequently devoid of pores. The genital and ocular plates are in the middle of the aboral surface, where the ambulacra converge, and are thus widely separated from the anus; there are usually only four genital plates, and the genital apertures may be reduced to two. Slender spines beset the entire surface and are the chief organs of locomotion. Modified spines, the *clavulæ*, surround the anus in a ring and are distributed elsewhere. A few pedicellariæ are present in the neighbourhood of the mouth, and sphæridia also occur. A series of tree-like dermal branchiæ surround the peristome. The "lantern of Aristotle," with its teeth, is not represented.

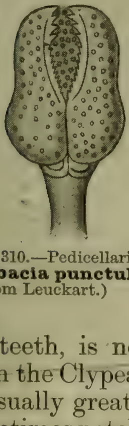


FIG. 310.—Pedicellaria of **Arbacia punctulata**. (From Leuckart.)

In the Clypeastridea or Cake-urchins the whole corona (Fig. 312) is usually greatly compressed so as to assume the form of a disc, sometimes notched at the edges or pierced by fenestræ. The mouth is in the middle of the flat or concave ventral surface, the anus eccentrically situated near the margin. The ambulacra are petaloid. The genital and ocular plates are usually more or less fused together at their edges, and the genital apertures are often not in the genital plates, but in the corresponding ambulacral zones. The spines are exceedingly fine and hair-like. Sphæridia are present, but pedicellariæ and clavulæ are absent. An "Aristotle's lantern" with teeth is present, as in the globular forms.

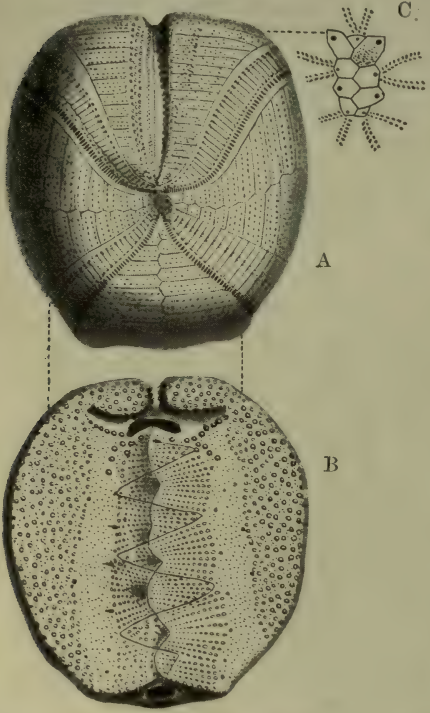


FIG. 311.—**Hemipneustes radiatus**. *A*, from above. *B*, from below. *C*, apical plates. (From Bronn's *Thierreich*.)

In the Holothuroidea the body is more or less elongated in the direction of the axis joining mouth with anus, which are placed at opposite extremities (*anterior* or *oral*, and *posterior* or *anal*) of the body. The shape is sometimes completely cylindrical, sometimes five-sided; in many there is more or less dorso-ventral compression, and the dorsal and ventral surfaces may differ greatly from one another. A flattened sole-like ventral surface bearing the three rows of tube-feet of the trivium is, as already stated, often distinguishable: it is most distinctly developed in *Psolus* and allied genera. In some Holothuroids the surface is enclosed in an armour of close-fitting plates; but in the vast majority the body-wall is comparatively soft, being strengthened merely by a great number of minute ossicles of a variety of shapes. In *Synapta* (Apoda) numerous minute anchor-like spicules, each connected with a latticed plate, project from the surface, and cause the animal to adhere to soft bodies with which it comes in contact.

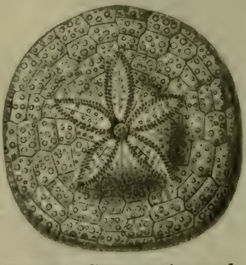


FIG. 312.—**Clypeaster subdepressus**, view of aboral surface showing the petaloid ambulacra. (From Hertwig's *Lehrbuch*.)

Around the mouth is a whorl of *tentacles*—pinnate, shield-shaped, or arborescent. The tube-feet are sometimes entirely absent. When present they are usually uniform in character throughout, and may be arranged in five regular longitudinal rows, or scattered over the entire surface. Sometimes, as has already been stated in the account of Colochirus, the tube-feet of the dorsal surface and even some of those of the ventral may assume the form of papillæ. In the Elasipoda the tube-feet of the dorsal surface are remarkably modified, taking the form of greatly elongated processes.

In the Crinoidea the general shape is that which has been described in the case of the feather-star—star-like, with a *central disc* and a series of radiating *arms*, which usually branch dichotomously. In the stalked forms (Fig. 314) a *stalk*, consisting of a row of elongated ossicles connected together by bundles of ligamentous fibres, attaches the animal to the sea-bottom. Along some of the joints of the stalk are usually arranged a number of slender, many-jointed appendages—the *cirri*. At its base the stalk usually breaks up into a number of root-like processes; distally it becomes continuous with the central disc. The ossicles forming the skeleton of the central disc are the *basals* and the *radials*: with the latter articulate externally the *brachials*, a single row of which gives support to each of the arms and its branches, while similar rows of smaller ossicles support the pinnules—the lateral appendages which fringe the arms in a double row. In the free forms (Feather-stars) the stalk is absent in the adult condition, though present

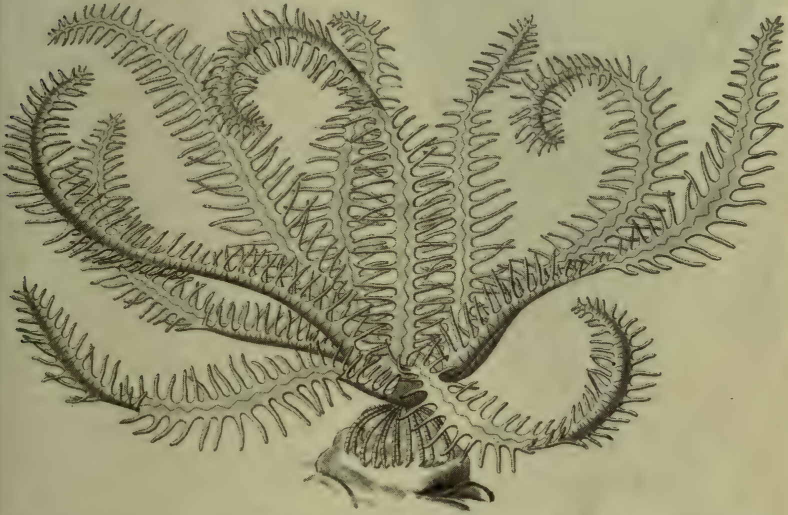


FIG. 313.—**Antedon.** Side view of entire animal. (From Leuckart and Nitsche's wall-diagrams.)

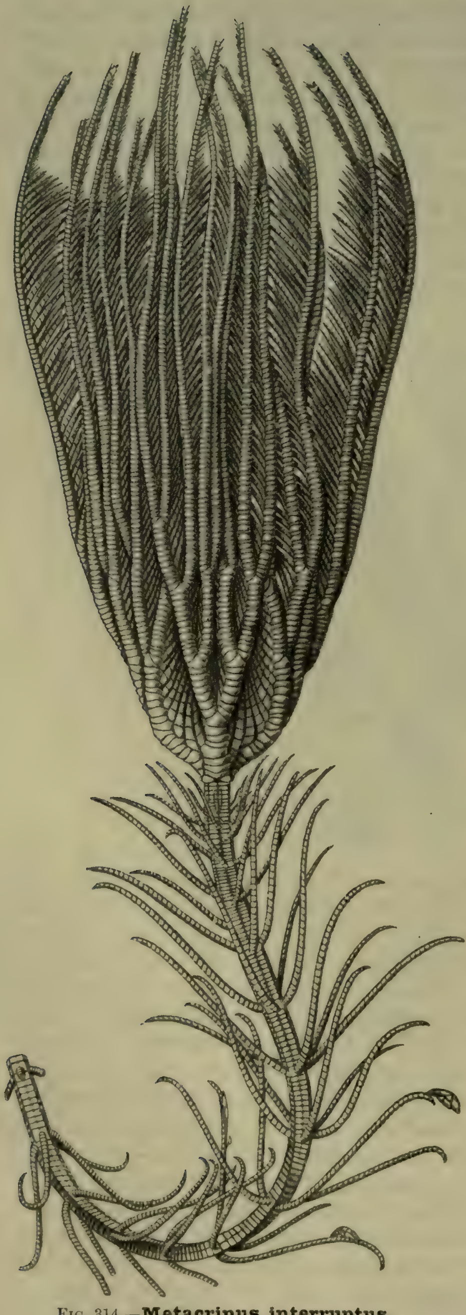


FIG. 314.—**Metacrinus interruptus.** (After P. H. Carpenter.)

in the larva, and the place of its terminal ossicle is taken by a plate—the *centro-dorsal ossicle* of the disc. To the centro-dorsal ossicle are attached whorls of many-jointed, slender, curved *dorsal cirri.*

The mouth in all the Crinoidea, with one exception (*Actinometra*), is situated in the centre of the ventral (upper) surface, and the anus in all, with the same exception, is excentric and interradial. Running outwards from the mouth are a series of very narrow *ambulacral grooves,* one of which runs outwards on the ventral surface of each arm, giving off branches to the arm-branches and to the pinnules. Bordering the ambulacral grooves and their branches are a pair of rows of short tubular *tentacles,* which correspond morphologically with the tube-feet of the other classes, but are devoid of the terminal suckers, and are not locomotor, but probably sensory and respiratory in function.

The **cœlome** in the Echinoderms is a wide cavity lined by a ciliated cœlomic epithelium and containing a corpusculated fluid. Prolongations of it pass out into the rays, and, in the Ophiuroidea and Asteroidea, between the layers of the body-wall. In the Crinoidea it contains numerous strands of connective tissue. Special organs providing for the respiration of this fluid are the *dermal branchiæ* or *papulæ*, the *Stewart's organs* and the *respiratory trees.* The first of these, which are confined to the Asteroidea and Echinoidea, have been described in the accounts of the Starfish and Sea-urchin. In most Asteroidea they occur only on the dorsal surface, but in some forms they are present on the ventral surface as well. In some of the Echinoids the place of dermal branchiæ in providing for the respiration of the compartment of the cœlome between the peristome and Aristotle's lantern is taken by *Stewart's organs,* arborescent bodies which project inwards from the peristome. The respiratory trees are referred to below in connection with the enteric canal.

Some reference has already been made, in describing the general form of the body, to the **ambulacral system of vessels.** A ring-like *circum-oral* vessel (*ring-vessel*) in nearly all cases sends off a series of *radial* branches, one passing along each of the rays or ambulacral areas and giving off branches to the ampullæ of the tube-feet or to the tentacles. In most of the Holothuroidea branches pass forwards to the circlet of shield-shaped or branched oral tentacles, and in some cases there are vesicles or *ampullæ* at the bases. In the Apoda, in which tube-feet are wanting, radial vessels are also absent, and the vessels to the tentacles come off directly from the ring-vessel. In all the classes, except Crinoidea, one or more bladder-like appendages—the *Polian vesicles*—are connected with the ring-vessel. The *racemose vesicles,* or *Tiedemann's vesicles* (p. 354), are characteristic of the Asteroidea. In all, except the Crinoidea and the majority of the Holothuroidea, there is a communication between the ring-canal and the surrounding water through the *madreporic canal.* In the Asteroidea, and in Cidaris among the Echinoidea, the wall of this tube is strengthened by numerous calcareous ossicles. In the Asteroidea, Ophiuroidea, and Echinoidea, the communication with the exterior is through the madreporite; in the few Holothuroids in which such a communication exists (*Elasipoda*) there is usually a simple opening, but sometimes a number of pores crowded together. In the remainder of the Holothuroidea the distal end of the madreporic canal, or canals, lies free in the interior of the body-cavity, with which it is placed in communication by a number of perforations. In the Crinoidea there is no madreporic canal; but the ring-vessel is placed in communication with the cœlome by means of a system of ciliated *water-tubes,* while the cœlome communicates with the exterior through a number of minute *water-pores,* which perforate the ventral body-wall. The fluid contained in the ambulacral system is similar to that in the cœlome and contains similar corpuscles. In one Ophiuroid, however, the ambulacral system contains corpuscles coloured red with hæmoglobin.

The system of vessels and sinuses to which the designation **blood-vascular system** is applied are specialised extensions of the cœlome, from the main cavity of which they are not completely separated off. Their walls are for the most part lined by a ciliated epithelium by means of which the movement of the contained fluid, which does not differ from that in the cœlome, is brought about. There is never any contractile part acting as a heart. The general disposition of the parts of this system in the various classes has already been referred to in the descriptions of the examples. The arrangement in the Ophiuroidea resembles that described in the Starfish. In the Holothuroidea and Crinoidea the axial sinus and aboral ring-vessel, present in the other three classes, are absent, and there are large intestinal vessels accompanying the enteric canal.

The **enteric canal** varies in the five classes more than any of the other systems of organs. It is a simple tube in the Holothurians and Echinoids, passing spirally through the body from the mouth at the oral to the anus at the opposite pole. In most of the latter group a complex masticatory apparatus with five teeth—the so-called "lantern of Aristotle"—is situated at its anterior extremity; the corresponding region in the Holothurians is surrounded by a circlet of ossicles, which protect the nervous and vascular rings, and into which the longitudinal muscles of the body-wall are inserted.

In the Echinoidea there is a tubular cæcum, the *siphon*, connected with the intestine. In the Holothurians the so-called "respiratory trees" (absent in the Elasipoda and the Apoda) are branched appendages—usually two in number, sometimes single—of the cloaca or posterior wider portion of the intestine, and the "Cuvierian organs" are simple filiform glandular tubes, also connected with the cloaca.

The functions of the siphon and of the respiratory trees have already been referred to in the accounts of Echinus and Cucumaria. The Cuvierian organs, which occur only in a limited number of Holothurians, correspond to undivided basal branches of the respiratory trees: they are defensive organs, the animal when attacked throwing out numbers of these long filaments, which are very viscid and have the effect of entangling and hampering the assailant.

In the Crinoidea the alimentary canal is simply a coiled tube with both mouth and anal opening on the same (ventral) surface of the body. In the Ophiuroids the central mouth leads into a simple sac, giving off short diverticula, and there is no anal aperture. In the Asteroidea the alimentary canal is more complex than in the other classes. The stomach is divided, as already described in the account of the examples, into two portions, the cardiac and the pyloric, the former giving off five large rounded radial diverticula, the cardiac pouches or cardiac cæca, and the latter giving off five pairs of very long branched diverticula, the pyloric or hepatic cæca. The intestine is short and conical, and opens, in all but a few, by an anal aperture. In some Asteroidea (as in Anthenea, Figs. 283 and 284) the intestine has connected with it a system of five elongated bifurcated inter-radial intestinal cæca; in others (as in Asterias, Fig. 281) these are represented only by two or three lobed diverticula. In one member of the class there are also ten cæca connected with the œsophagus.

In the **nervous system** of the Echinodermata three distinct parts, the relative development of which differs in the different classes, are to be recognised. These are the *epidermal* or *superficial*, the *deep*, and the *cœlomic*. The epidermal system is well developed in all the classes: its principal parts are a circum-oral nerve-ring and radial branches, but a plexus of nerve-fibres with occasional nerve-cells extends from it through the epidermis. In the Ophiuroids the radial nerves and the ring nerve are similar in their arrangement to what is to be observed in the Asteroids, but are more deeply placed, being covered over by the investing calcareous plates. The deep-lying nervous system is absent in the Crinoidea, very feebly developed in the Echinoidea, but well developed in the Asteroidea, Ophiuroidea, and Holothuroidea. Its general arrangement has already been described in the account of the Starfish. The cœlomic system is best developed in the Crinoidea and is absent altogether in the Holothurians.

The **sexes** are distinct in all the Echinoderms, with one or two exceptions; but there is very rarely any trace of sexual dimorphism. Asterina gibbosa, the Starfish the development of which has been described (p. 358), is one of the exceptional hermaphrodite forms; the young animals of this species are male, producing sperms, but at a later stage they become female and produce only ova. In the family Synaptidae of the Apoda there are also numerous examples of hermaphroditism, the animal at first producing ova, later only sperms. In *Amphiura squamata*, an Ophiuroid, both ovaries and testes are present at once. The gonads, ovaries or testes as the case may be, are branching bodies inter-radial in position, and usually in pairs. In the Asteroidea there are five pairs, the ducts from which open usually on a special plate on the dorsal surface, but in one or two species open on the ventral surface. In the Echinoidea there are five ovaries or testes, the five ducts of which open on the genital plates of the apical system. In the Ophiuroidea there are five pairs of genital glands, a pair in the wall of each of five *genital bursæ*, which open on the exterior by slits on the ventral surface close to the mouth. In the Holothuroidea there is only a single branched gland, sometimes imperfectly divided into two, with a duct opening on the dorsal surface not far from the mouth. In the Crinoidea the ovaries and testes occupy a remarkable position, being situated in the dilated bases of the pinnules; but as in the other classes they are connected by means of a *genital rachis* running through the arm with a centrally situated *genital stolon.*

Development and Metamorphosis.—A few of the members of each class of Echinoderms are viviparous, in the sense that the development of the young takes place in some sheltering cavity, or *brood-pouch*, on the surface of the body of the parent. But in most development takes place externally, and the larvæ are free-swimming. The ovum in all undergoes regular and nearly equal segmentation, resulting in the formation of a ciliated blastula, which becomes invaginated so as to form a typical gastrula, like that of some Cœlenterata (p. 161). The invaginated cells form the lining membrane (the endoderm layer) of an internal cavity—the primitive alimentary cavity or archenteron; the enclosing cells form the ectoderm; between the endoderm and ectoderm, and derived from the former, appear the cells of the mesoderm or middle layer. From the archenteron is given off a single or double hollow out-growth, the *vaso-peritoneal vesicle* or *vesicles*, from which are derived the body-cavity with its enclosing peritoneal membrane, and the vessels of the ambulacral system with their various appendages. In the Crinoidea the vesicle destined to form the ambulacral system is developed independently of the peritoneal vesicles destined to form the body-cavity. A canal opening on the exterior by a dorsally situated opening, the *dorsal pore* (sometimes double), is formed by invagination from the surface ectoderm, and comes into relation with a canal formed by out-growth from the rudimentary ambulacral system to form the foundation of the madreporic canal of the adult. In the Crinoidea there are formed five dorsal pores and five canals, but the two sets of structures do not enter into direct communication (see p. 375).

The part of the vaso-peritoneal vesicle (*hydrocœle*) destined to give rise to the ambulacral system, at first rounded, becomes compressed, and subsequently divided round the border into five lobes. Each of these lobes grows outwards to become developed subsequently into one of the five *radial ambulacral vessels* of the Echinoderm; the central part of the hydrocœle gives rise to the *ring-vessel* surrounding the œsophagus.

The cilia, which at first (in the gastrula stage) covered the surface of the larva uniformly, become restricted to two definite bands, one in front of the mouth or præ-oral, the other in front of the anus or præ-anal. These bands undergo characteristic changes in the different classes, and the form of the larva at the same time undergoes modification by the formation, except in the Crinoidea, of variously arranged processes along the course of the ciliated bands. The resulting larva, or *Echinopædium*, exhibits always marked bilateral symmetry.

In the Asteroidea the larva is either a *Bipinnaria* (Fig. 315, 4 to 6) or a *Brachiolaria.* The former has a series of bilaterally

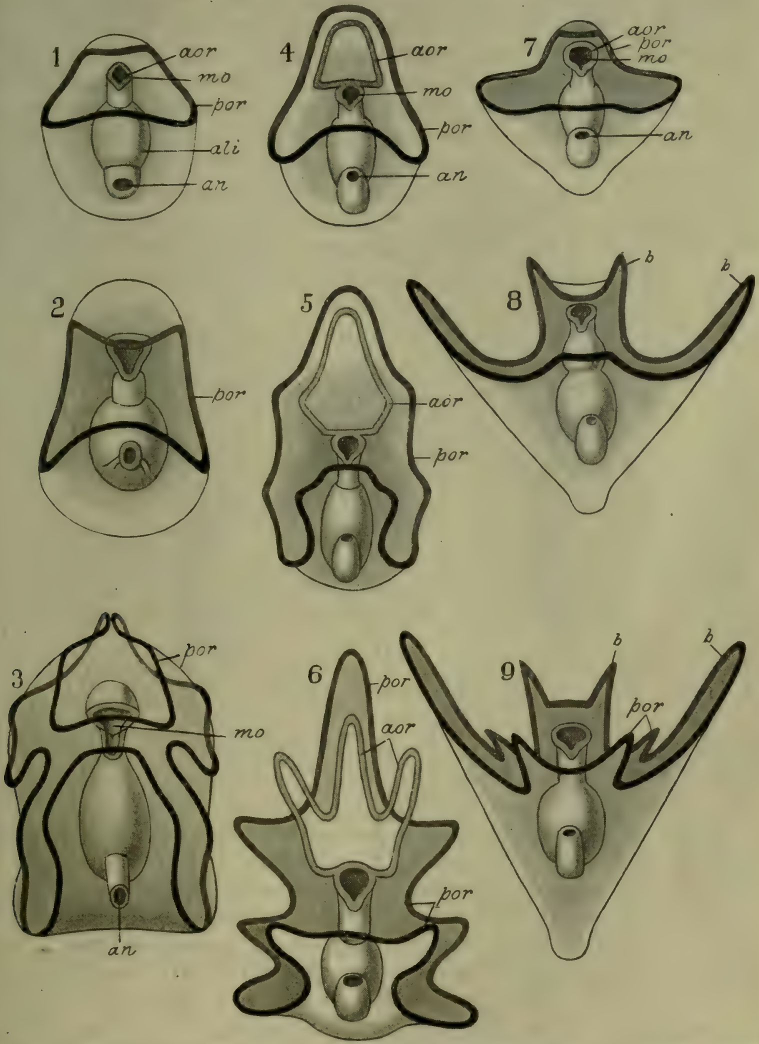

1
aor
mo
por
ali
an
4
aor
mo
por
an
7
aor
por
mo
an
2
por
5
aor
por
8
b
b
3
por
mo
an
6
por
aor
por
9
b
b
por

Fig. 315.—Diagrams of the development of the larvæ of **Echinoderms :** 1, Primitive form of Echinoderm larva ; 2 and 3, Development of an *Auricularia* (Holothuroidea) ; 4, 5, and 6, Development of a *Bipinnaria* (Asteroidea) ; 7, 8, and 9, Development of a *Pluteus* (Echinoidea and Ophiuroidea). (From Leuckart and Nitsche's Diagrams.)

arranged processes or arms ; the latter has, in addition, three processes not developed in the course of the ciliated ridges. The Bipinnaria is usually free-swimming, but sometimes, as in the case of Asterina (p. 361), creeps on the surface of a rock by means of the larval organ. In at least one form the Bipinnaria, developed in a brood-pouch, adheres to the parent by means of the larval organ which takes the form of a short stalk. In both the Ophiuroidea and the Echinoidea (Fig. 315, 7 to 9) the larva has the form which is known as the *Pluteus*. The *Pluteus* has a series of slender arms directed forwards and supported by a skeleton of delicate calcareous rods. A remarkable feature of the Pluteus in one case at least (*Echinocyamus pusillus*) is that the ciliated bands consist of rows of flagellate collared cells, similar to those of the endoderm of Sponges. The larva of the Holothuroidea, the *Auricularia* (2 and 3), has a number of short processes developed in the course of the ciliated bands; subsequently, in the *pupa* stage, the ciliated bands become broken up into a series of ciliated hoops encircling the body. Of the Crinoidea the development of Antedon alone is known, and has been already described (p. 377). The larva (Fig. 316) is barrel-like, with four transverse bands of cilia and a bunch of stronger cilia at the posterior end. The posterior end of the larva becomes drawn out to form a narrow process or stalk, by means of which it becomes attached to some foreign object. The attached condition of Antedon, termed the *pentacrinoid* stage, is only temporary; as the development approaches completion, the stalk is absorbed, and the Feather-Star becomes free.

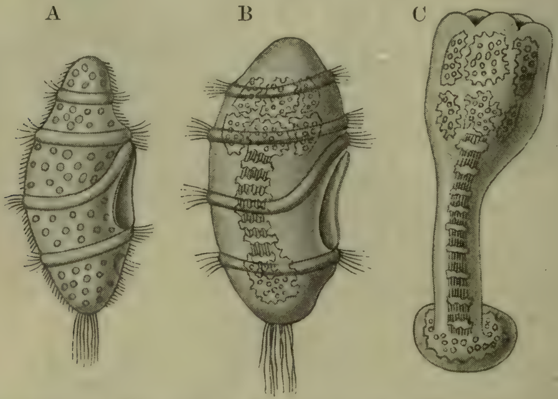


FIG. 316.—Development of **Antedon.** A, larva with ciliated band, posterior tuft of cilia, and mouth (to the right); B, larva with the developing plates of the pentacrinoid stage; C, pentacrinoid stage.

In the transition from the bilateral larva—Pluteus, Bipinnaria, Brachiolaria, or Auricularia—to the radial adult there is a marked *metamorphosis*. As the adult form becomes developed on one side of the larva, the larval arms or processes become absorbed. In the

Holothuroidea and Ophiuroidea all the organs of the larva are carried on into the adult; in the Asteroidea and Echinoidea the larval mouth and œsophagus are abolished, and a new permanent mouth and œsophagus formed as a fresh invagination from the surface. In the very limited number of Echinoderms that are viviparous there is no such marked metamorphosis; but even in these the larva is at first distinctly bilateral in its symmetry.

Ethology, etc.—The Echinodermata are, without exception, inhabitants of the sea. In the adult condition the majority creep on the sea-shore or on the sea-bottom, the stalked Crinoids being exceptional in their permanently attached condition; but the larvæ of the great majority are *pelagic—i.e.* live swimming in the upper strata of the ocean.

Echinoderms inhabit all depths of the sea, ranging from the shore between low- and high-water limits to the greatest depths. Members of all the classes are found at all depths; but the stalked Crinoids, and the Elasipoda among the Holothuroidea are virtually confined to the deepest waters of the ocean, only one genus of the former and one species of the latter occurring in comparatively shallow water. Echinoderms are found in the seas of all parts of the globe. Like the majority of marine invertebrate groups, the phylum is more abundantly represented, as regards the number of genera and species, as well as of individuals, in the warmer regions; the Crinoidea, the Holothuroidea and the Echinoidea are all much more abundant in tropical and warm temperate seas than in colder latitudes.

Echinoderms are of gregarious habits, large numbers of the same species frequently being found closely associated together in a comparatively narrow area. The movement of locomotion in the Starfishes is, as previously described (p. 348), a slow creeping one through the agency of the tube-feet: the same holds good of the Echinoidea and those of the Holothuroidea (*Pedata*) that possess tube-feet. The footless Holothurians (*Apoda*, such as Synapta) creep along with the help of the tentacles. Most of the Ophiuroids move by lateral flexions, sometimes sluggish, sometimes remarkably rapid, of the arms. The Comatulæ, on the other hand, swim along by the dorso-ventral flexion and extension of the pinnate arms propelling them through the water. Many Asteroids, Ophiuroids, and Echinoids bury themselves in sand or mud; others creep into narrow fissures in rock or coral. Movements of *manducation* are performed by the tentacles in the Holothurians: in the Starfishes the mouth papillæ are separated from one another and the cardiac part of the stomach everted in order to enfold the prey, often of relatively large size. In those Echinoidea that possess a lantern of Aristotle there are very powerful and efficient movements of mastication. On the whole, as might be expected from the comparatively highly developed muscular and nervous systems, the co-ordination of movement is very much more complete in the Echinodermata than in the groups already dealt with.

A remarkable characteristic of the Echinoderms is the faculty of *self-mutilation* which many of them possess, together with the capacity for replacing parts lost in this way or by accidental injury. This is most marked in many Ophiuroids, some Asteroids, and some Holothurians, and does not occur at all among the Echinoids. Many Brittle-stars and some Starfishes, when removed from the water, or when molested in any way, break off portions of their arms piece by piece until, it may be, the whole of them are thrown off to the very bases, leaving the central disc entirely bereft of arms. A central disc thus partly or completely deprived of its arms is capable in many cases of developing a new set; and a separated arm is capable, in some instances, of developing a new disc and a completed series of arms. In some Starfishes (Ophiuroids and Asteroids) a process of separation of the arms and their development into complete individuals frequently occurs altogether independently of injury, and seems to be a regular mode of reproduction in these exceptional cases. Many Crinoids, also, readily part with their arms when touched, and are capable of renewing them again; and some, at least, are capable of renewing the visceral sac of the central disc when it has become accidentally removed.

In the case of many Holothurians it is the internal organs, or rather portions of them, that are capable of being thrown off and replaced—the œsophagus, or the cloaca with the Cuvierian organs, or the entire alimentary canal, being ejected from the body by strong contractions of the muscular fibres of the body-wall, and in some instances, at least, afterwards becoming completely renewed.

Two out of the seven classes of the plylum Echinodermata—the Cystoidea and Blastoidea—are represented only by fossil forms; and these are found only in rocks of the older (Palæozoic) formations, no representatives having survived to more recent times. Of the five classes that have living members, one, the Crinoidea, was very much more abundantly represented in the older geological periods than it is at the present day, the remains of stalked Crinoids forming great beds of limestone of Silurian to Carboniferous age: the free Comatulæ only appeared at a much later period. The other classes, or at least the Echinoidea, Asteroidea, and Ophiuroidea, were represented at a very early period by forms not very widely different from those now living; but the earliest Echinoids were peculiar in having the number of rows of plates variable, and in the plates overlapping one another. The Holothuroidea, owing to their comparatively soft integument, were less fitted to leave any remains in the form of fossils, and it is not till we come to the Mesozoic Period that undoubted traces of their existence are found.

Affinities.—The presence of radial symmetry was formerly regarded as involving a near relationship with the Cœlenterata, which were grouped with the Echinoderms under the comprehensive class designation of *Radiata* (see section on the History of Zoology). But leaving out of account the presence of a bilateral symmetry underlying and partly concealed by the radial, we are led by a study of the anatomy of the various systems of organs to the conclusion that the Echinoderms are in no way closely or directly related to the Cœlenterates. One very great and very important difference between the two phyla consists in the presence in the 1. Echinodermata of an extensive cœlome or body-cavity between the alimentary canal and the body-wall. In addition to this the 2. Echinodermata are characterised by the possession of highly elaborated systems of organs—alimentary, vascular, and nervous—such as occur in none of the Cœlenterates, all of which exhibit extreme simplicity in their internal structure. A further point of difference, not perhaps of so much importance, is the absence in 3. the Echinoderms of any tendency to form colonies of zooids by asexual multiplication by means of buds: all Echinoderms are simple, *i.e.* non-colonial, animals, and each of them is developed, save in certain very exceptional cases, as a result of a sexual process from an impregnated ovum. In spite, then, of the radial symmetry, we are forced to the conclusion that the Echinodermata are not more nearly related to the Cœlenterata than to some of the groups of Worms They are, in fact, a singularly isolated group, and we look in vain among the known members, living and fossil, of other phyla, for any really close allies. The intermediate forms—whatever they may have been like—between the Echinoderms and other groups have become extinct, and have left no remains in the form of fossils, or such remains have not yet been discovered. So difficult has it been found to connect the Echinoderms with other animal types that it has even been proposed to regard an Echinoderm as a radially arranged colony of zooids connected together centrally, each ray being a zooid equivalent to an entire simple worm-like animal. But the history of the development is entirely at variance with such a view.

Whatever may have been the group of animals from which the Echinodermata were developed, there is every probability that it was a group with bilateral and not radial symmetry. The radial symmetry is evidently, as has already been pointed out, of a secondary character; it is only assumed at a comparatively late period of development, and even in the adult condition it does not completely disguise a more primitive bilateral arrangement of the parts. Accordingly, within the phylum itself, it is reasonable to regard those classes as the more ancient which have the radial symmetry less completely developed. Again, the free condition which characterises all existing Echinoderms, with the exception of a few Crinoids, is probably less primitive than the attached, since in other phyla the radial symmetry is co-ordinated with, and seems to be developed on account of, a fixed, usually stalked condition. Probably then stalked Echinoderms were the progenitors of the existing free forms. The fossil Cystoidea, some of which were stalked, and in which the radial symmetry is not always strongly marked, are to be looked upon as the most primitive of all the classes of Echinodermata, and a probable genealogy of the whole phylum is indicated in the diagram below.

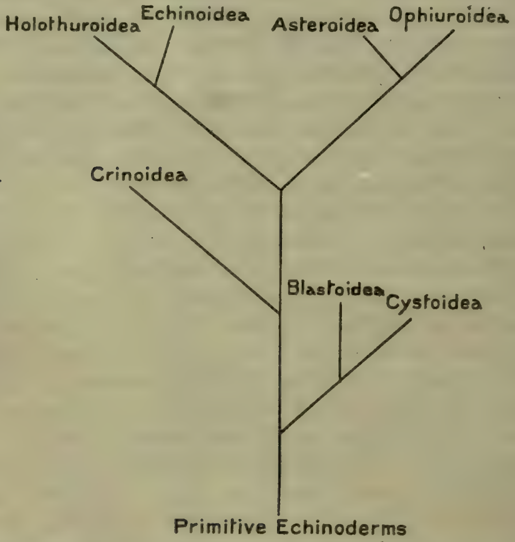


Fig. 317.—Diagram to illustrate the relationships of the classes of Echinodermata.

According to another view, however, the most primitive of existing Echinoderms are *Synapta* and its allies (Holothuroidea apoda). The other Holothuroids are supposed, according to this conception of the relationships of the various classes, to have been derived from a Synapta-like ancestor. From the primitive stock of the Holothuroids is supposed to have been derived a form which gave origin to all the stalked classes. From this ancestral stalked Echinoderm, again, the remainder of the free classes—the Echinoidea, Asteroidea and Ophiuroidea—are regarded as having been descended.

SECTION X

PHYLUM ANNULATA

THE phylum Annulata comprises four classes of Worms—the *Chætopoda* or Earthworms and marine Annelids, the *Archi-annelida*, the *Gephyrea*, and the *Hirudinea* or Leeches. All of these, except the Gephyrea, have the elongated body divided externally into a number of rings, which represent a division of the internal parts into a series of segments or metameres. There is usually an extensive cœlome, and there is in most a system of blood-vessels. The nervous system consists of a cerebral ganglion, œsophageal connectives, and a double ventral nerve-cord, which in all but the Gephyrea is segmented into a series of ganglia. The organs of excretion are in the form of metamerically arranged pairs of tubes, the *nephridia* or *segmental organs*, leading from the cœlome to the exterior, and all these, or certain specially modified pairs of them, may have the function of permitting of the passage outwards of the reproductive elements.

CLASS I.—CHÆTOPODA.

The Chætopoda, comprising the Earthworms, Fresh-water Worms, and Marine Annelids, are Worms the body of which, unlike that of a Flat-worm or a Round-worm, is made up of a series of more or less completely similar segments or *metameres*, each containing a chamber or compartment of the body-cavity and a section of the alimentary canal and other organs. At the sides of each are a pair of muscular processes, the *parapodia*, which do duty as limbs, bearing bundles of setæ or bristles, and bearing also, usually, certain tactile appendages, the *cirri*. There is an extensive cœlome, incompletely divided into a series of chambers corresponding to the segments, by a series of muscular partitions, which act also as mesenteries, being attached internally to the alimentary canal. The latter extends throughout the length of the body: the intestine is usually constricted between the segments. There is a well-developed blood-vascular system in the majority of the Chætopoda; and organs of respiration in the form of gills or branchiæ are usually developed. The excretory organs are in the form of segmentally arranged pairs of tubes, the *nephridia*. The nervous system consists of a bilateral principal ganglion or brain, situated in the prostomium, and a double chain of ganglia extending throughout the body. The sexes are in some distinct, in others united. When a definite larval form occurs it is a *Trochosphere.*

1. Examples of the Class.

a. Nereis dumerilii.[1]

General External Features.—Various species of *Nereis* occur abundantly between tide-marks on the sea-shore, under stones, and among sea-weed in all parts of the world. The worm varies considerably in colour even in the same species, the differences being partly due to differences in the stage of development of the sexual elements. In *N. dumerilii* the prevailing colour is some shade of violet, with a blush of red in the more vascular parts due to the bright red colour of the blood. In shape (Fig. 318) the body, which may be about 7 or 8 centimetres in length, is long and narrow, approximately cylindrical, somewhat narrower towards the posterior end. A very distinct *head*, bearing eyes and tentacles, is recognisable at the anterior end; the rest is divided by a series of ring-like narrow grooves into a corresponding series of *segments* or *metameres*, which are about eighty in number altogether; and each of these bears laterally a pair of movable muscular processes called the *parapodia*, provided with bundles of bristles or *setæ*. The head (Fig. 321) consists of two parts, the *prostomium* (*præst.*) and the *peristomium* (*perist.*).

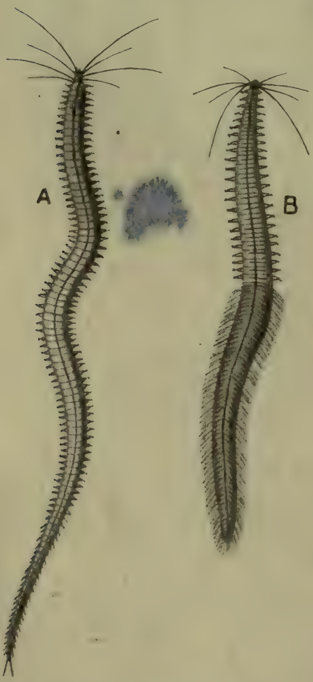


Fig. 318.—**Nereis dumerilii.** Natural size. A, *Nereis* phase; B, *Heteronereis* phase. (After Claparède.)

---

[1] Though *Nereis dumerilii* is here named as the example, and the majority of the figures refer specially to that species, the description given would apply almost equally well to a considerable number of species of the genus.

The former bears on its dorsal surface four large rounded eyes in front a pair of short cylindrical *tentacles* (*tent.*), and further back a pair of somewhat longer stout appendages or *palpi* (*palp.*). The *peristomium*, which bears some resemblance to the segments of the body, though wanting the parapodia, bears laterally four pairs of long slender cylindrical tentacles (*perist. tent.*): on its ventral aspect is a transversely elongated aperture, the aperture of the mouth. The segments of the body differ little in external characters from one another throughout the length of the worm. Each bears laterally a pair of parapodia, which in the living animal are usually in active movement, aiding in creeping, or acting as a series of oars for propelling it through the water. When one of the parapodia (Fig. 319) is examined more attentively it is found to be *biramous*, or to consist of two distinct divisions—a dorsal, which is termed the *notopodium* (*noto.*), and a ventral, which is termed the *neuropodium* (*neuro.*). Each of these is further subdivided into several lobes, and each bears a bundle of setæ. Each of the bundles of setæ is lodged in a sac formed by invagination of the epidermis, the *setigerous sac*, and is capable of being protruded or retracted and turned in various directions by bundles of muscular fibres in the interior of the parapodium. In each bundle there is, in addition to the ordinary setæ, a stouter, straight, dark-coloured seta (*ac.*), the pointed apex of which projects only a short distance on the surface; this is termed the *aciculum*. The ordinary setæ (Fig. 320) are exceedingly fine, but stiffish, chitinous rods, of which two principal kinds are recognisable; both have a terminal *blade* articulating with the main shaft of the seta by a distinct joint; but in the one variety the shaft of the seta is finer than in the other, and the terminal blade long, slender. and nearly straight, whereas in the other variety it is short and

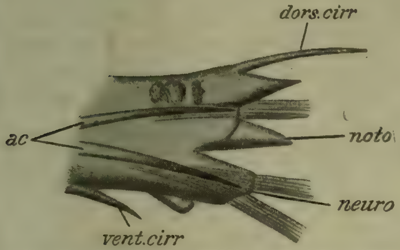


FIG. 319.—**Nereis dumerilii.** A single parapodium magnified: *ac.* aciculum; *dors. cirr.* dorsal cirrus; *neuro.* neuropodium; *noto.* notopodium; *vent. cirr.* ventral cirrus. (After Claparède.)

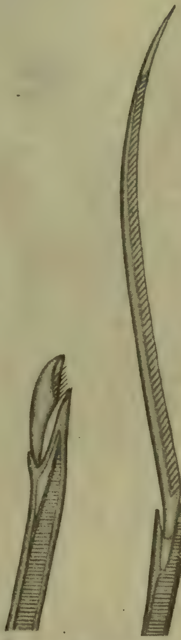


FIG. 320.—**Nereis dumerilii.** Setæ highly magnified. (After Claparède.)

slightly hooked. On the dorsal side of the parapodium is a short cylindrical, tentacle-like appendage, the *dorsal cirrus* (Fig. 319, *dors. cirr.*), and a similar, somewhat shorter, appendage, the *ventral cirrus* (*vent. cirr.*), is situated on its ventral side. The last segment of the body, the *anal segment*, bears posteriorly a small rounded aperture, the *anus;* this segment is devoid of parapodia, but bears a pair of appendages, the *anal cirri*, similar in character to the cirri of the ordinary segments, but considerably longer.

On the ventral surface, near the bases of the parapodia, there is in each segment a pair of very fine apertures, the openings of the nephridia.

The **enteric canal** is a straight tube running throughout the length of the body from the mouth to the anus. Between the outer surface of this tube and the inner surface of the wall of the body is a considerable space—the **cœlome,** *body cavity*, or *perivisceral cavity*—filled with a fluid, the *cœlomic fluid.* The walls of the cœlome (Fig. 322) are lined with a thin membrane, the *cœlomic epithelium* or *peritoneum*, of which the outer layer—that lining the body-wall—is the *parietal* layer (*par. peri.*), that covering the outer surface of the alimentary canal the *splanchnic* or *visceral* layer (*visc. peri.*). The space is divided by a series of transverse partitions or *septa* passing inwards from the body-wall to the wall of the alimentary canal opposite the grooves between the segments, and thus dividing the cœlome into a series of chambers, each of which corresponds to one of the segments. These partitions are not complete, spaces being left around the alimentary canal and elsewhere, through which neighbouring chambers communicate.

The mouth leads into a wide cavity, the *buccal cavity*, continued back into a *pharynx* (Fig. 321, *ph.*) These two chambers extend through the peristomium and the first to the fourth segments of the body. They are lined with a tolerably thick cuticle, continuous with a similar layer lining the outer surface of the body, and in the pharynx are a number of very small dark brown chitinous *denticles*, which are very regularly arranged. The posterior part of the pharynx (*dentary region*) has very thick walls composed of bundles of muscular fibres, which are concerned in the movements of a pair of laterally placed chitinous *jaws.* Each jaw is elongated in the direction of the long axis of the body, rounded at the posterior end or base, where it is embedded in muscle, pointed at the apex, which is strongly incurved; the inner edge is divided into a number of strong serrations or teeth: the whole jaw might be compared to a pruning-hook with its cutting edge deeply serrated.

Behind the pharynx the alimentary canal narrows considerably to form a tube, the *œsophagus* (*œs.*), which runs through about five segments to open into the intestine.

Running backwards and inwards from the wall of the peristomium to the wall of the buccal cavity and pharynx are a number of bands or sheets of muscle, the *protractor muscles*, by the contraction of which this anterior part of the alimentary canal is capable of being everted as a *proboscis* until the jaws are thrust forth and thus rendered capable of being brought to bear on some small living animal, or fragment of animal matter, to be seized and swallowed as food. The proboscis is withdrawn again by a *retractor* sheet of muscle, which passes inwards and forwards to be inserted into the wall of the alimentary canal at the junction of the pharynx and œsophagus.

Into the œsophagus open a pair of large unbranched glandular pouches, or *cœca* (*gl.*), which probably are of the nature of digestive glands. The *intestine* (*int.*) is a straight tube of nearly uniform character throughout, regularly constricted between the segments—the constrictions becoming much deeper towards the posterior end of the body. The part of the intestine which lies in the last segment is termed the *rectum*.

The wall of the alimentary canal (Fig. 322) consists (1) of the visceral layer of the peritoneum (*visc. peri.*); (2) of a layer of longitudinal muscular fibres (*long. mus.*); (3) of a layer of circular muscular fibres (*circ. mus.*); (4) of the enteric epithelium (*ent. ep.*),

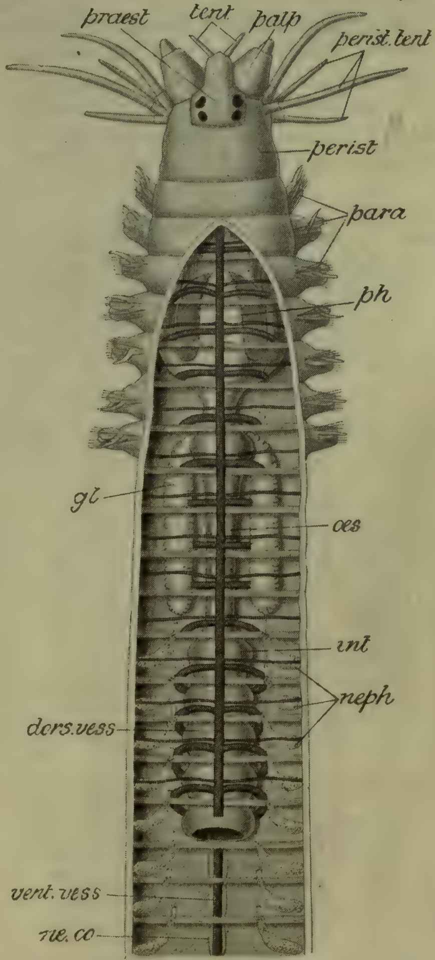


FIG. 321.—**Nereis dumerilii.** Semi-diagrammatic view of the anterior portion of the body, with the dorsal body-wall removed, so as to show the alimentary canal, the septa, the blood-vessels and the nephridia; a portion of the intestine removed so as to show the ventral blood-vessel and nerve-cord which lie below: *dors. ves.* dorsal vessel; *gl.* œsophageal glands; *int.* beginning of intestine; *ne. co.* nerve cord; *neph.* nephridia; *œs.* œsophagus; *palp.* palp; *para.* parapodia; *perist.* peristome; *perist. tent.* peristomial tentacles; *ph.* pharynx with its jaws; *præst.* prostomium; *vent. ves.* ventral vessel.

consisting of close-set, long, narrow cells. To these layers is superadded in the buccal cavity and the pharynx an internal chitinous cuticle, continuous with that of the general outer surface.

Developmentally the buccal cavity and the pharynx constitute the *stomodæum*, the rectum the *proctodæum*, the rest of the alimentary canal the *mesenteron.*

The **wall of the body** consists of a cuticle, an epidermis or deric epithelium, muscular layers, and the parietal layer of the peritoneum referred to above. The cuticle (*cut.*) is a thin chitinous layer which exhibits an iridescent lustre due to the presence of two intersecting systems of fine lines; it is perforated by numerous minute openings, the openings of the epidermal glands. The epidermis (*ep.*) is very thin, except on the ventral surface, where it becomes considerably thickened. It consists of a layer of cells containing numerous twisted unicellular glands, which are most abundant on the ventral surface, particularly near the bases of the parapodia; on the dorsal surface the epidermis contains plexuses of fine blood-vessels. The muscular layers are two in number—an external in which the fibres run circularly (*circ. mus.*), and an

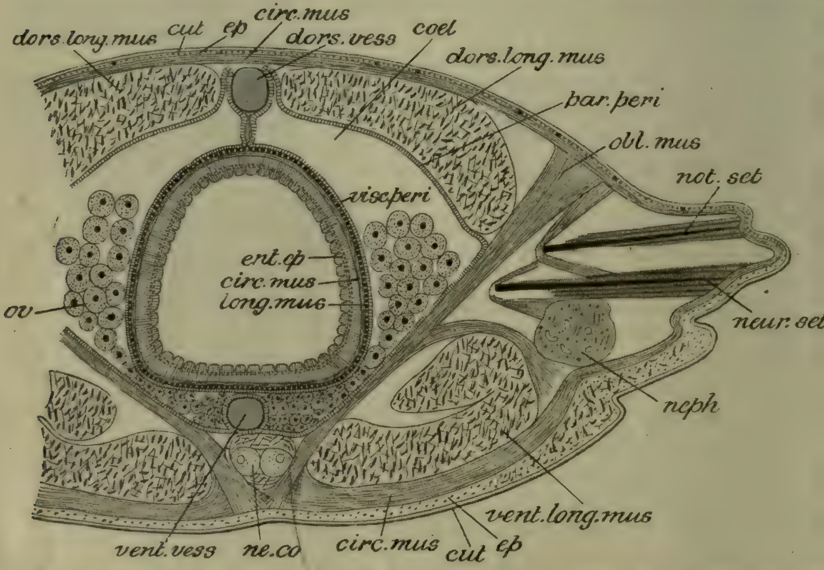


FIG. 322.—**Nereis dumerilii.** Semi-diagrammatic transverse section of the middle region of the body: *circ. mus.* (external), circular layer of muscle of body-wall; *circ. mus.* (internal), circular layer of muscle of wall of enteric canal; *cœl.* cœlom; *cut.* cuticle; *dors. long. mus.* dorsal longitudinal muscles of body-wall; *dors. ves.* dorsal vessel; *ent. ep.* enteric epithelium; *ep.* epidermis; *long. mus.* longitudinal muscle of wall of enteric canal; *ne. co.* nerve cord; *neph.* nephridium; *neur. set.* neuropodial setæ and aciculum with their muscles; *not. set.* notopodial setæ and aciculum; *obl. mus.* oblique muscle; *ov.* ovary; *par. peri.* parietal layer of cœlomic epithelium; *vent. long. mus.* ventral longitudinal muscle; *vent. ves.* ventral vessel; *visc. peri.* visceral layer of peritoneal epithelium.

internal in which they run longitudinally. The latter is not a continuous layer, but consists of four bundles of fibres, two dorso-lateral (*dors. long. mus.*) and two ventro-lateral (*vent. long. mus.*).

Nereis has a well-developed system of **vessels** filled with blood of a bright red colour. A main *dorsal vessel* (Figs. 321 and 322, *dors. ves.*) runs from one end of the body to the other above the alimentary canal, and is visible in places through the body-wall in the living animal. It, as well as the majority of the vessels, undergoes contractions which are of a *peristaltic* character—waves of contraction passing along the wall of the vessel so as to cause the movement of the contained blood. These peristaltic contractions are more powerful in the case of the dorsal vessel than in that of any of the others, and run with great regularity from behind forwards, so as to drive a current of blood in that direction. The contractions are brought about partly by a series of muscular fibres which are arranged in rings round the wall of the vessel at short intervals; but the wall of the vessel is itself contractile.

Along the middle of the ventral surface below the alimentary canal runs another large longitudinal vessel, the *ventral vessel* (*vent. ves.*), in which the current of blood takes a direction from before backwards. Connecting the dorsal and ventral vessels, there are in each segment two pairs of loop-like transverse vessels which give off branches to the parapodia, the alimentary canal, and neighbouring parts. Some of these branches communicate with plexuses of fine vessels in the interior of the lobes of the parapodia and in the integument of the dorsal surface, and with dilatations or sinuses situated in the bases of the parapodia. A delicate longitudinal *neural* vessel accompanies the nerve-cord.

Nereis is devoid of any *branchiæ;* but there can be little doubt that the lobes of the feet with their rich blood-supply, and the areas of integument occupied by plexuses of blood-vessels, subserve the function of respiration.

There is a well-developed **nervous system** (Fig. 323) which is bilateral and metameric in its arrangement, like the other systems of organs. Situated in the prostomium is a large bilobed mass of nerve-matter containing numerous nerve-cells, the *cerebral ganglion* or *brain* (*c*). This gives off *tentacular* nerves to the tentacles and palpi, and two pairs of short thick *optic* nerves to the eyes. Behind, two thick nerve-strands, the *œsophageal connectives* (*d*), curve round the mouth in the peristomium to meet on the ventral aspect behind the mouth and below the pharynx. The œsophageal connectives, with the cerebral ganglion, thus form a ring around the anterior part of the enteric canal. Running backwards from the point of union of the œsophageal connectives, along the entire length of the body of the worm, on the ventral aspect, is a thick cord of nerve-matter, the *ventral nerve-cord* (*h*) In each segment this cord presents a little dilatation from which nerves are given off to the various parts of the segment: and each of these enlargements is really double, consisting of a pair of closely-united ganglia. The intermediate parts of the cord, between successive pairs of ganglia, are also double, consisting of a pair of longitudinal *connectives* enclosed in a common sheath. Given off behind from the cerebral ganglion is a system of fine nerves with occasional small ganglia, the *stomatogastric* or *visceral system*, distributed to the anterior part of the alimentary canal.

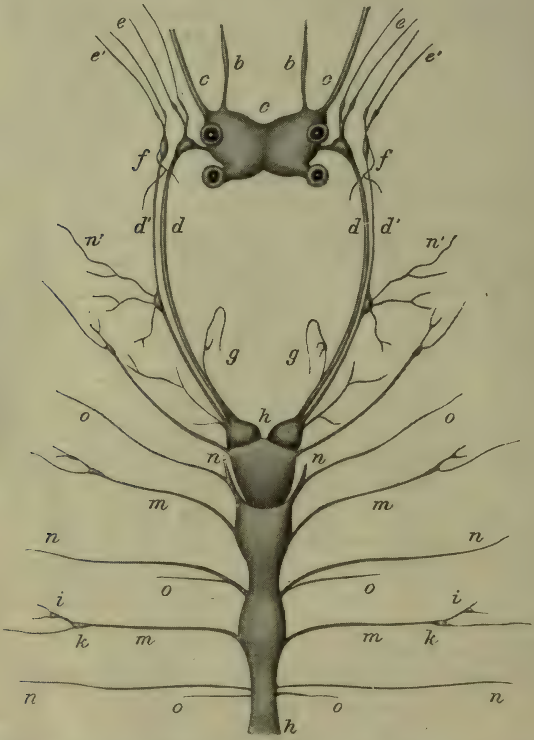


Fig. 323.—**Nereis.** Anterior portion of nervous system, comprising the brain, the œsophageal connectives, and the anterior part of the ventral nerve-cord. (After Quatrefages.)

The tentacles and palpi, as well as the cirri, are probably organs of the sense of touch. The only other **sense-organs** are the four eyes, situated on the prostomium. The eye (Fig. 324) consists of a darkly pigmented cup, the *retina* (*re.*), with a small rounded aperture, the *pupil*, and enclosing a mass of gelatinous matter, the *lens* (*l.*). The wall of the cup is composed of numerous long and narrow cells lying parallel with one another in a radial direction. The outer end of each cell narrows into a nerve-fibre forming part of the optic nerve; near this end is a nucleus; the main body of the cell is densely pigmented; the inner part projects towards the lens as a clear hyaline *rod* (*r.*). The cuticle of the general surface passes over the eye, and a continuation of the epidermis, with its cells somewhat flattened, constitutes the *cornea* (*co.*).

The organs which are supposed to perform the function of **excretion** are a series of metamerically arranged pairs of tubes, the *segmental organs* or *nephridia* (Figs. 321 and 322, *neph.*, Fig. 325 occurring in all the segments of the body. The nephridium consists of two parts—a body and a narrow anterior prolongation.

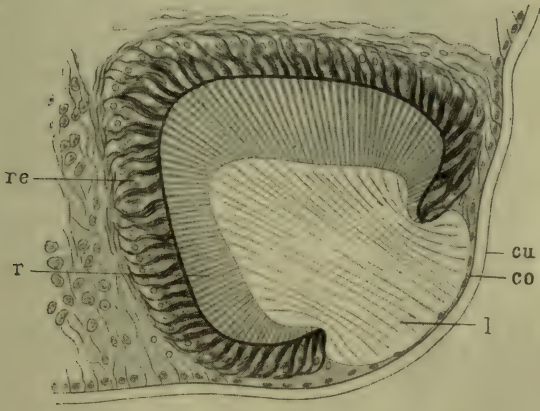


Fig. 324.—**Nereis.** Section through one of the eyes. *co.* cornea; *cu.* cuticle; *l.* lens; *r.* layer of rods; *re.* retina. (After Andrews.)

The body is of an irregular oval shape directed nearly transversely, but slanting somewhat. The outer end, situated in the base of the parapodium near its middle, is much the narrower. The inner end is continuous with a narrow prolongation about equal in length to the body, which runs forwards and inwards to become attached to the mesentery. The external opening or nephridiopore (*ext. op.*) is a fine circular pore capable of being widened or contracted, situated on the ventral surface not far from the base of the ventral cirrus. This leads into a canal which runs through the anterior prolongation to its extremity, where it bends sharply back again and runs to the body, through which it pursues an extremely tortuous course to the outer end, and then bends back again and runs in the anterior prolongation to the extremity of the latter, where it opens into the cœlome through a ciliated bell or funnel (*fun.*), the nephrostome, projecting through the mesentery into the cavity of the segment next in front of that in which the body of the organ lies. Throughout its course the canal is excavated in a mass of nucleated material of a granular character not distinguishable into cells.

Nereis is unisexual. The **sexual elements**, ova or sperms, are formed from temporary masses of cells, *ovaries* or *testes*, which are developed towards the breeding season by a proliferation of the cells of the membrane (*peritoneum*) lining the cœlome and the structures it contains. In *Nereis dumerilii* there is in the male only a single pair of these proliferating masses of cells (*testes*), situated in one of the segments between the nineteenth and the twenty-fifth. These, during the season of their active development, give off groups of cells which become disseminated throughout the cœlomic fluid. The original cells (mother-cells) undergo division into smaller cells, each of which develops into a sperm with a minute rod-shaped *head* and a long vibratile flagellum or *tail.* In the female the ovaries (Fig. 322, *ov.*), formed by a similar process of proliferation, take the form of rounded masses of cells, metamerically arranged, surrounding the principal vessels throughout the length of the body. The young ova become detached from the ovaries, and attain their full development while floating about in the cœlomic fluid. Both ovaries and testes dwindle after they have given off the sexual cells, and at the non-breeding season of the year are not to be detected.

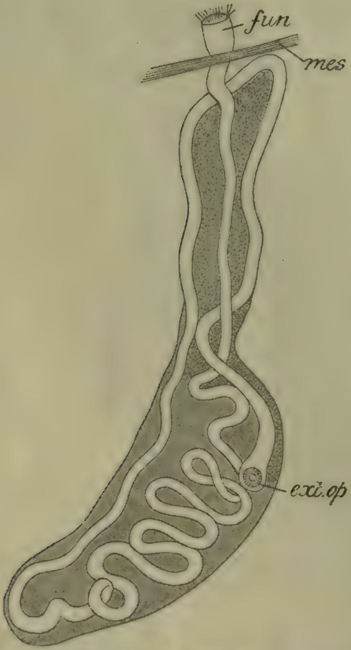


Fig. 325.—**Nereis dumerilii.** One of the nephridia. *ext. op.* external opening or nephridiopore; *fun.* internal funnel or nephrostome opening into the cœlome; *mes.* mesentery or septum.

Ova and sperms, when fully ripe, are discharged, reaching the exterior, in the case of the sperms probably through the nephridia, in the case of the ova, which are much too large to pass out in this way, probably through apertures temporarily formed by rupture of the body-wall; and impregnation takes place by contact between the two sets of elements while floating freely in the sea-water.

Nereis dumerilii is an extremely *variable* species. If we compare a number of specimens, we find numerous **individual differences** between them. The most striking of these are differences of colour and of the number of segments in the body; but a careful examination reveals many other points in which individuals differ. Thus the precise form of the lobes of the parapodia varies, together with the number of setæ in the two bundles; so also do the relative length of the tentacles, the number of teeth on the jaws, and the number and arrangement of the denticles in the pharynx. Not only are such individual differences common, but the species occurs in two distinct forms or *phases*, which differ from one another so widely that they have been referred to distinct genera. One of these is the *Nereis phase*, which is that described in the preceding paragraphs. A Nereis dumerilii may become sexually mature in this form, or may first undergo a series of changes by which it becomes converted into the second or *Heteronereis* phase (Fig. 318, *B*). The principal changes which take place during this metamorphosis are a great increase in the size of the eyes, and a great modification of the parapodia in the posterior portion of the body, the lobes becoming larger and more leaf-like, and the setæ of the Nereis becoming superseded by others which are considerably longer, more numerous, and somewhat oar-shaped. The Heteronereis, instead of creeping about on the bottom, swims about actively through the water by wriggling movements of the body combined with active paddling movements of the parapodia with their long setæ. After a time the Heteronereis, like the Nereis, becomes sexually mature, developing ova and sperms, the latter of which differ remarkably in shape from those of the Nereis phase.

Development.—The egg of Nereis when first discharged is enclosed in a transparent thick gelatinous envelope, within which are two membranes—an outer very thin and delicate, and an inner (*zona radiata*) thicker and very distinctly striated in a radial direction. The protoplasm of the ovum contains a number of oil-drops and yolk-spherules. When fertilisation takes place the yolk-spherules move away from what is destined to become the upper pole of the egg, leaving a polar area composed of granular protoplasm. The zona radiata disappears, and the contents of the ovum undergo for a time amœboid changes of form. Then the spherical form is reassumed, two small bodies—the *polar globules*—are thrown off at the upper pole, and the process of segmentation (Fig. 326) begins. Up to a fairly advanced stage this corresponds very closely with the segmentation of the Polyclad oosperm as described on page 256. The oosperm divides first into two parts, then into four. From these four cells—the *megameres*—there are separated off in succession three sets of *micromeres*, making twelve in all. One of these, belonging to the second set, somewhat larger than the others, and differing from them in its subsequent history, is termed the *first somatoblast* (*som.* 1); a *second somatoblast* (*som.* 2) is soon given off from the same megamere that gave origin to the first.

The germinal layers are now all established. The micromeres constitute the *ectoderm*, destined to give rise to the epidermis and all its derivatives, to the cerebral ganglion and nerve cord, to the œsophagus and rectum. The megameres eventually give origin to the cells of the *endoderm*, forming the internal epithelium of the alimentary canal. The second somatoblast gives rise to the entire *mesoderm* of the Annelid. The micromeres extend, as they multiply by division, at first as a cap of small cells over the upper pole of the embryo; eventually the cap extends itself so as completely to cover the four megameres and the descendants of the somatoblasts except at one point, the *blastopore*, at the lower pole, where the investment remains for a time incomplete. When the blastopore closes, the process of epibolic gastrulation is completed. A thickening of the layer of ectoderm cells, the *apical plate*, in the middle of what is destined to form the head-end of the embryo, is the rudiment of the cerebral ganglion; in close relation to it are formed a pair of pigment spots, the larval eyes. From the middle of the head-end projects a tuft of cilia (Fig. 327, A,

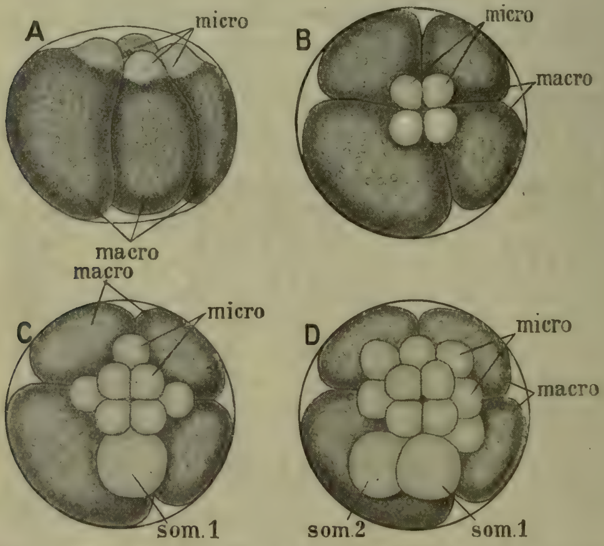


FIG. 326.—**Nereis.** Early stages in the development. *A*, lateral view of eight-celled stage; *B*, the same from above; *C*, stage of the formation of the first somatoblast; *D*, stage at which both somatoblasts are present; *macro.* megameres; *micro.* micromeres; *som.* 1, *som.* 2, first and second somatoblasts. (After Westinghausen.)

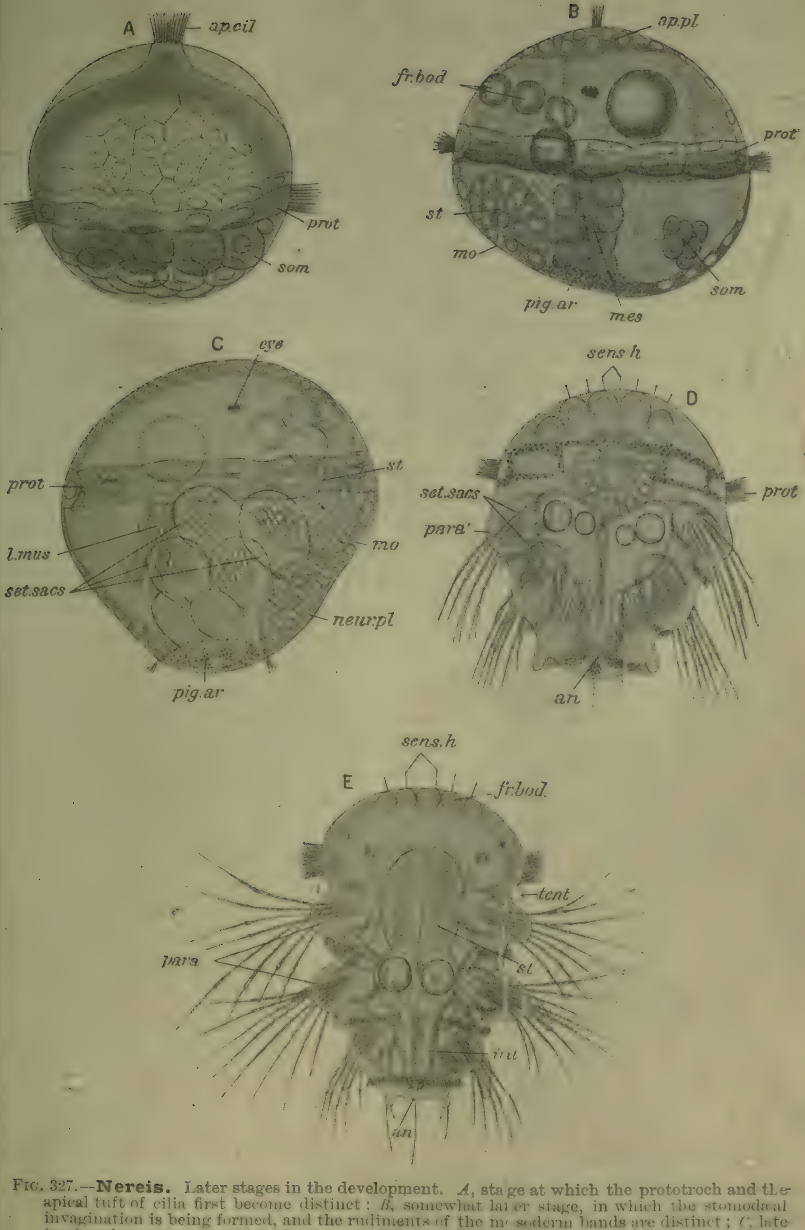

A
ap.cil
prot
som
B
ap.pl
fr.bod
prot
st
mo
som
pig.ar
mes
C
eye
st
prot
l.mus
mo
set.sacs
neur.pl
pig.ar
sens.h
D
set.sacs
prot
para'
an
sens.h
E
fr.bod.
tent
para
st
int
an

FIG. 327.—**Nereis.** Later stages in the development. *A*, stage at which the prototroch and the apical tuft of cilia first become distinct; *B*, somewhat later stage, in which the stomodæal invagination is being formed, and the rudiments of the mesoderm bands are distinct; *C*, late trochosphere stage in which there are rudiments of the setigerous sacs; *D*, somewhat later stage, in which the parapodia have begun to become prominent and the provisional setæ project freely; *E*, larva with three segments; *an.* anus; *ap. cil.* apical cilia; *ap. pl.* apical plate; *eye*, eye; *fr. bod.* frontal bodies; *int.* intestine; *l. mus.* longitudinal muscle; *mes.* mesoderm; *mo.* mouth; *neur. pl.* neural plate; *para.* parapodia; *pig. ar.* pigmented area; *prot.* prototroch; *sens. h.* sensory hairs; *set. sacs*, setigerous sacs; *som.* second somatoblast and group of cells formed from it; *st.* stomodæum; *tent.* tentacles. (After E. B. Wilson.)

ap. cil.). Encircling the body of the larva behind this is a thickened ridge, the *prototroch* (*prot.*), the cells of which develop strong cilia. Just behind the prototroch the cells of the ectoderm become pushed inwards, in the middle of what will eventually become the ventral surface, so as to line a sort of depression or pouch: this is the *stomodæum* (*st.*) or rudiment of the mouth and œsophagus. The anus (*an.*) does not appear until later; the position which it will subsequently occupy is indicated at this stage by a pigmented area (*pig. ar.*) marking the point at which the blastopore becomes closed. The first and second somatoblasts divide to form a mass of small cells which extend on the ventral surface behind the prototroch and mouth, constituting what is termed the *ventral plate;* of this plate the more superficial cells are descendants of the first somatoblast—one of the twelve original micromeres; and those situated more deeply are derived from the second somatoblast or mesomere. A superficial thickening along the middle of the ventral plate is the rudiment of the ventral nerve-cord (*neur. pl.*); the deeper cells divide and extend to form a pair of *mesoderm bands* or *muscle plates*, from which the muscles of the body-wall are developed; the muscular layers of the wall of the alimentary canal are derived from certain of the same set of cells which migrate inwards from the lower end.

A pair of micromeres separated from the rest at an early stage are destined to form the larval excretory organs, the *head kidneys:* at first situated at the upper end, they sink below the surface and migrate downwards till they come to lie below the prototroch; each then elongates, and a number of vacuoles which have become formed in the interior coalesce in such a way as to form a long narrow canal. The embryo has now reached the completed Trochosphere stage.

The endoderm cells become arranged so as to bound a canal-like space, the beginning of the lumen of the middle part of the alimentary canal (œsophagus and intestine) (*int.*), the cells subsequently giving rise to the enteric epithelium. This canal becomes continuous in front with the stomodæum, and behind with a second smaller ectodermal invagination, the *proctodæum*, which arises in the position of the former pigment area. The part of the larva behind the prototroch now elongates, and two pairs of invaginations, the *setigerous sacs* (*set. sacs*), appear at its sides: in the interior of these, to which a third pair is soon added, are developed setæ which grow out to a great relative length as the *larval* or *provisional setæ*. Constrictions soon appear marking off the first three segments, and at the same time the mesoderm bands undergo a corresponding division into three pairs of mesoderm segments. The mesoderm segments of each pair grow inwards towards one another and surround the alimentary canal; in the interior of each appears a cavity which is the beginning of a segment or chamber of the cœlome. As the two mesoderm segments become closely applied to one another and unite around the alimentary canal, their two cavities also come into close relation, and eventually are separated from one another only by thin vertical septa, which afterwards form the dorsal and ventral mesenteries. Successive mesoderm segments also come into close relationship with one another, their cavities eventually only remaining separated by thin transverse partitions, which form the intersegmental septa or mesenteries.

The region in front of the prototroch becomes modified to form the prostomium of the adult. The body increases in length, and additional segments with their setigerous sacs become distinguishable (*E*) until, on the development of the tentacles, the outgrowth of the parapodia (*para.*) with their cirri and the permanent setæ (which replace those first formed), the formation of the full number of segments, and the completion of the internal organs, the adult condition of the worm is attained.

b. THE EARTHWORM (*Lumbricus*).

General External Features.—The Earthworm (Fig. 328) has a long narrow body, which may be described as approximately cylindrical, but slightly depressed towards one end, the posterior. Dorsal and ventral surfaces are readily recognisable, the latter being much paler in colour than the former, and exhibiting a slight flattening; an anterior end is distinguishable in the living animal as that which is directed forwards in the ordinary creeping movements of the worm. The surface, as in the case of Nereis, is very distinctly marked out into segments or metameres by a series of ring-like constrictions; the segments, which are very numerous, amounting to about 150, are somewhat longer towards the anterior end than they are further back.

At the extreme anterior end is a rounded lobe, the *prostomium*, immediately behind which is the opening of the mouth. Next to the prostomium is the most anterior segment, the *peristomium*, which bounds the mouth behind. The eyes and tentacles present in Nereis are not represented. On the most posterior segment, the *anal segment*, is a small median opening, the *anal aperture*. A limited region of the body in front of the middle, comprising segments from the thirty-second to the thirty-seventh, has a swollen appearance; this is termed the *clitellum*. There are no parapodia like those of Nereis, but running along the lower surface of the worm are to be recognised with the aid of a lens four double rows of short bristles or setæ (Fig. 329), a pair of each row occurring in each segment, which thus possesses eight altogether. The extremities of all these setæ are directed backwards, and they act as fulcra for the forward movements of the worm on the surface of the ground or in the interior of its burrow. The setæ in the clitellum, and those in the neighbourhood of the genital apertures, are much slenderer than the rest. Along the middle line of the dorsal surface, from about the eleventh segment backwards, is a row of small apertures, one at the line of division between each contiguous pair of segments: these, which are termed the *dorsal pores,* perforate the body-wall and open internally into the cœlome. On the ventral surface are two rows of minute apertures—a pair on each segment—the *excretory apertures* or *nephridiopores.* On the ventral surface of the fifteenth segment (Fig. 328, *15*), is a pair of slit-like apertures with somewhat tumid lips, the *male reproductive apertures;* and on the segment immediately in front, the fourteenth, are two smaller rounded apertures, the *female reproductive apertures.* In the intervals between the ninth and tenth, and tenth and eleventh segments are two pairs of small pores, the openings of the *receptacula seminis.*

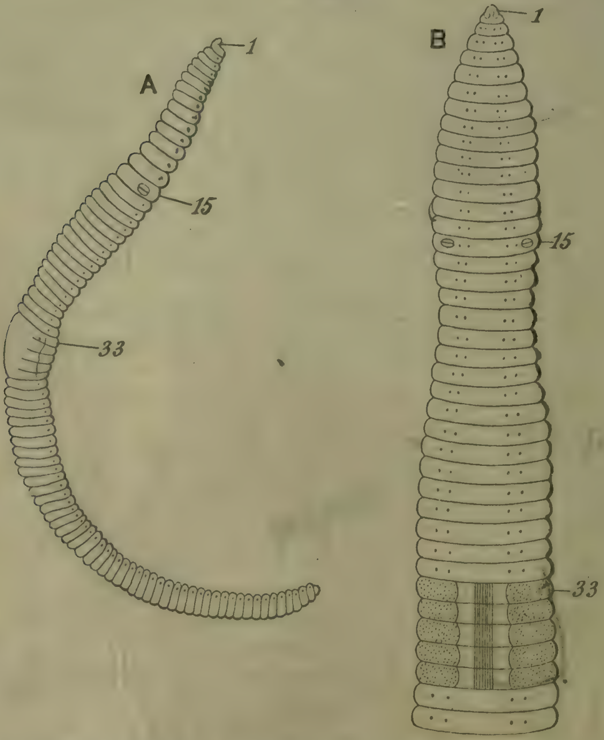


FIG. 328.—**Lumbricus agricola.** *A*, entire specimen, lateral view; *B*, ventral view of anterior portion of the body, magnified. 1, 15, 33, first, fifteenth, and thirty-third segments. The black dots represent the setæ. (After Vogt and Jung.)

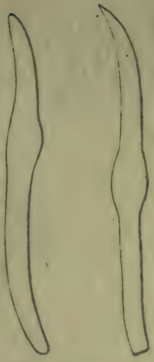


FIG. 329.—**Lumbricus,** setæ, highly magnified.

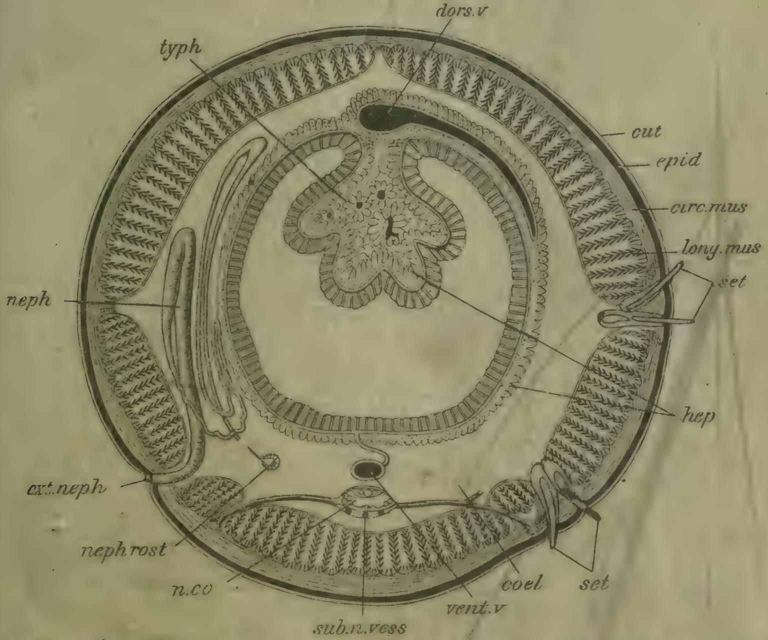


FIG. 330.—**Lumbricus,** transverse section of the middle region of the body; *circ. mus.* layer of circular muscular fibres; *cœl.* cœlome; *cut.* cuticle; *dors. v.* dorsal vessel; *epid.* epidermis; *ext. neph.* nephridiopore; *hep.* layer of chloragen cells; *long. mus.* longitudinal muscle; *neph.* nephridium; *nephrost.* nephrostome; *n. co.* nerve cord; *set.* setæ; *sub. n. vess.* subneural vessel; *typh.* typhlosole; *vent. v.* ventral vessel. (After Marshall and Hurst.)

The **body-wall** (Fig. 330) consists of a *cuticle*, an *epidermis* or *deric epithelium*, a *dermis*, *muscular layers* with associated connective-tissue, and, lining the inner surface, a thin cellular membrane, the *peritoneum* or *cœlomic epithelium.* The *cuticle* (*cut.*) is similar to that of Nereis, and has a similar iridescent lustre; it is perforated by numerous minute apertures. The epidermis consists, except on the clitellum, of a single layer of cells elongated in the vertical direction: many of these cells have the character of unicellular glands; many others are nerve-cells, and are connected by fine nerve-fibres with the nerve-cord. On the clitellum the epidermis is thickened, and blood-vessels extend between the cells. Below the epidermis is a layer of connective-tissue, the *dermis.* The muscular fibres which make up the greater part of the thickness of the body-wall are arranged in two principal sets—a layer of circularly arranged fibres (*circ. mus.*) situated externally, immediately below the dermis, and a layer of longitudinally arranged fibres (*long. mus.*) situated internally. The circular layer is interrupted at all the intervals between the segments; the longitudinal layer is interrupted along a series of longitudinal lines, so as to be divided into seven bundles.

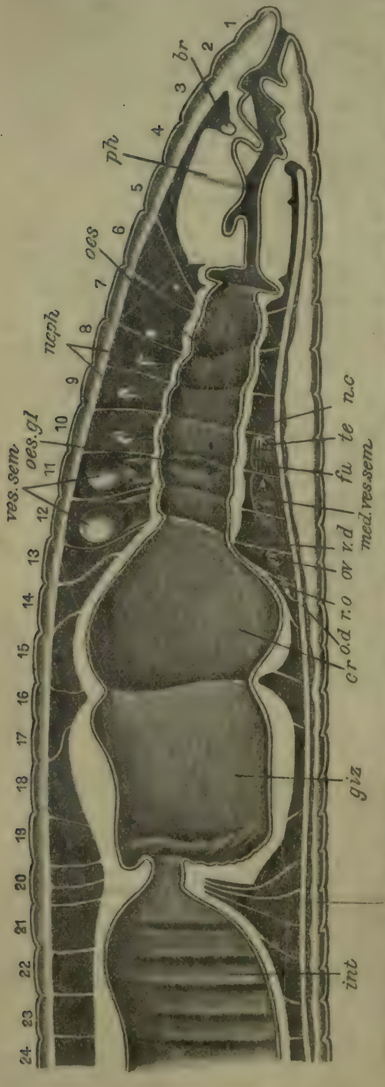


FIG. 331.—**Lumbricus herculeus.** Longitudinal vertical section through the anterior half of the animal; *br.* brain; *cr.* crop; *fu.* seminal funnel; *giz.* gizzard; *int.* intestine; *med. ves. sem.* middle seminal vesicle; *n.c.* nerve cord; *neph.* nephridia; *o.d.* oviduct; *oes.* œsophagus; *oes. gl.* œsophageal glands; *ov.* ovary; *ph.* pharynx; *r.o.* receptaculum ovorum; *te.* anterior testis; *ves. sem.* posterior lateral vesiculæ seminales. (After Marshall and Hurst.)

The setæ are lodged in sacs, the *setigerous sacs* (see Fig. 339), lined by a continuation of the epidermis. In the region of the body in which the reproductive organs are lodged some of these sacs are enlarged and glandular, and receive the special name of the *capsulogenous glands.*

The **enteric canal** (Fig. 331) is, as in Nereis, a tube which runs through the entire length of the body from the mouth at the anterior to the anus at the posterior end. As in the case of Nereis, it lies in a cavity, the *cœlome*, lined by a thin cellular membrane, the *peritoneum*, and filled with a fluid, the *cœlomic fluid*, containing colourless corpuscles. It is divided into a series of chambers corresponding to the segments by a series of delicate transverse partitions, the *septa* or *mesenteries*, consisting of folds of the peritoneal membrane enclosing muscular fibres.

The mouth leads into a small *buccal cavity*. This is followed by a much larger thick-walled, rounded chamber, the *pharynx* (*ph.*).

The Earthworm is devoid of organs of sight or hearing. It exhibits sensitiveness to bright light, which may be due to direct action on the central parts of the nervous system. The sense of hearing appears to be absent; but a faculty analogous to taste or smell, enabling the animal to distinguish between different kinds of food, is well developed. The *goblet-shaped bodies*, groups of narrow epidermal cells, most abundant on the prostomium and peristomium, have probably to do with this faculty.

The **organs of excretion**—the *segmental organs* or *nephridia*—(Fig. 333) are similar to those of Nereis, but somewhat more complicated. They are slender tubes which occur in pairs in all the segments of the body except the first three and the last. Externally each nephridium opens by one of the small excretory pores which have already been mentioned as occurring on the ventral surface; internally it ends in a funnel-shaped ciliated extremity with an aperture, the *nephrostome*, opening into the cavity of the corresponding segment. The tube is thrown into several loops attached to the posterior surface of the corresponding mesentery by a fold of membrane. Two parts are clearly recognisable—an inner narrow and an outer thick part: in the former the narrow central lumen is a perforation through the axis of a string of cells, and is thus *intracellular*; it is lined in parts with cilia arranged in two rows: in the latter the passage is lined by cells, and is thus *inter-cellular*, and there is a thick muscular investment. The nephridia are abundantly supplied with blood by means of nephridial branches of the ventral vessel.

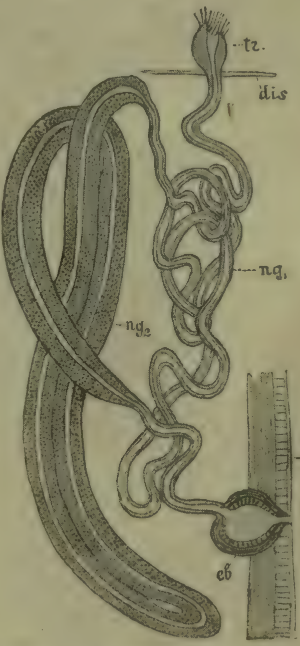


FIG. 333.—Nephridium of an Oligochæte. *dis.* mesentery; *cb.* terminal dilatation (absent in the Earthworm). *lv.* body wall; ng_2, thick; ng_1, narrow part of the tube; *tr.* funnel. (From Lang's *Text-Book.*)

Reproductive Organs.—The Earthworm is hermaphrodite. There are two pairs of very small flattened *testes* (Fig. 334, *te*, *te'*), partly divided into a number of digitate lobes, situated in the tenth and eleventh segments. A pair of comparatively large sacs, the anterior *vesiculæ seminales* (*ant. ves. sem.*), lie partly in the cavity of the ninth segment, but extend into the tenth, where they coalesce in the middle to form a large median sac of somewhat irregular form, the *anterior sperm reservoir* (*ant. sp. res.*). The anterior pair of testes project into this, and the cells destined to form the sperms, developed in the former, pass by dehiscence into the large median cavity. On either side is a large *ciliated funnel*, or *rosette* (*fun.*), leading outwards from the interior of the reservoir. A second pair of vesiculæ seminales (*mid. ves. sem.*), situated in the eleventh segment, also open into the anterior sperm reservoir. A third pair (*post. ves. sem.*), situated in the twelfth segment, unite in front to form the *posterior sperm reservoir* (*post. sp. res.*), which lies in the middle of the cavity of the eleventh segment. The posterior pairs of testes have the same relation to this as the anterior pair have to the anterior reservoir; and a posterior pair of ciliated funnels (*fun.*) leads outwards from its cavity. Each ciliated funnel leads to a narrow, somewhat convoluted duct, the *vas efferens*, and the two vasa efferentia of each side unite to form a *vas deferens* or *sperm iduct* (*v. def.*), right or left as the case may be, which passes almost straight backwards

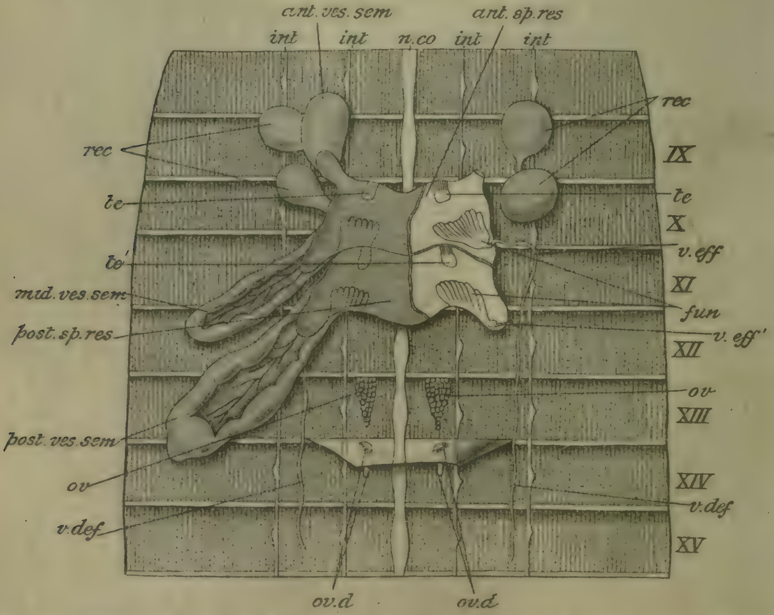


Fig. 334.—**Lumbricus agricola.** Reproductive organs. *ant. sp. res.* anterior sperm reservoir; *ant. ves. sem.* anterior left vesicula seminalis; *fun.* funnel-like openings of vasa efferentia; *int.* intermuscular partitions; *mid. ves. sem.* middle vesicula seminalis; *n. co.* nerve cord; *ov.* ovaries; *ov. d.* oviducts; *post. sp. res.* posterior sperm reservoir; *post. ves. sem.* posterior vesicula seminalis; *rec.* receptacula seminis; *te*, anterior; *t.'*, posterior testes; *v. def.* vasa deferentia. (After Vogt and Jung.)

to open by the corresponding male aperture on the fifteenth segment.

The female reproductive organs consist of a pair of *ovaries*, a pair of *oviducts* with a pair of *receptacula ovorum*, and two pairs of *receptacula seminis.* The *ovaries* (*ov.*) are minute pear-shaped bodies, which are situated in the thirteenth segment, attached to the septum between the twelfth and thirteenth. The oviducts (*ov. d.*) are a pair of short tubes, each with a comparatively wide funnel-shaped opening into the cavity of the thirteenth segment, and extending backwards and outwards in the fourteenth segment, to open at the female aperture on the ventral surface of the latter. The *receptacula ovorum* are a pair of reniform sacs which open into the funnel-shaped ends of the oviducts. The *receptacula seminis* (*rec.*) are two pairs of rounded sacs which open on the exterior in the intervals between the ninth and tenth, and tenth and eleventh segments.

Though hermaphrodite the Earthworm is not self-impregnating, but two individuals provide for mutual fertilisation by an act of copulation. The copulating individuals become applied together by their ventral surfaces, the heads pointing in opposite directions, and become attached in this position by the setæ of the genital region and by a viscid secretion from the clitellum and of certain glands, called the *capsulogenous glands*, situated in the neighbourhood of the reproduction organs. The sperms from the male apertures of each pass along temporarily formed grooves to the *receptacula seminis* of the other.

When the ova are mature they are discharged from the ovary into the cavity of the thirteenth segment, whence they pass out to the exterior through the oviduct, to be enclosed in the cocoon, after having been detained for a time in the receptaculum ovorum.

Development.—The oosperms or fertilised ova of the Earthworm are enclosed, together with a quantity of an albuminous fluid derived from the capsulogenous glands, in a *cocoon*, the wall of which is formed of a viscid secretion from the glands of the clitellum, hardened and toughened by exposure to the air. The cocoon is deposited in the earth and the embryos develop into complete, though minute, worms before they make their escape. The segmentation is somewhat unequal. A flattened *blastula* (Fig. 335*A*) is formed, with a large but flattened segmentation cavity. This becomes invaginated to form a cylindrical *gastrula* (*B*): the blastopore becomes narrowed and subsequently gives rise to the mouth of the adult. A pair of large *mesoderm* cells (*m*) early become marked off from the other cells of the gastrula; these become divided to form a pair of *mesoderm bands* composed of several rows of small cells, which grow forwards towards the mouth. By swallowing movements the embryo at this stage takes in the albuminous fluid in the interior of the cocoon, and increases rapidly in size, bursting the enclosing vitelline membrane. As the embryo elongates, the mesoderm bands become divided into segments, and the subsequent history of these is essentially similar to what has been already described in the case of Nereis. The

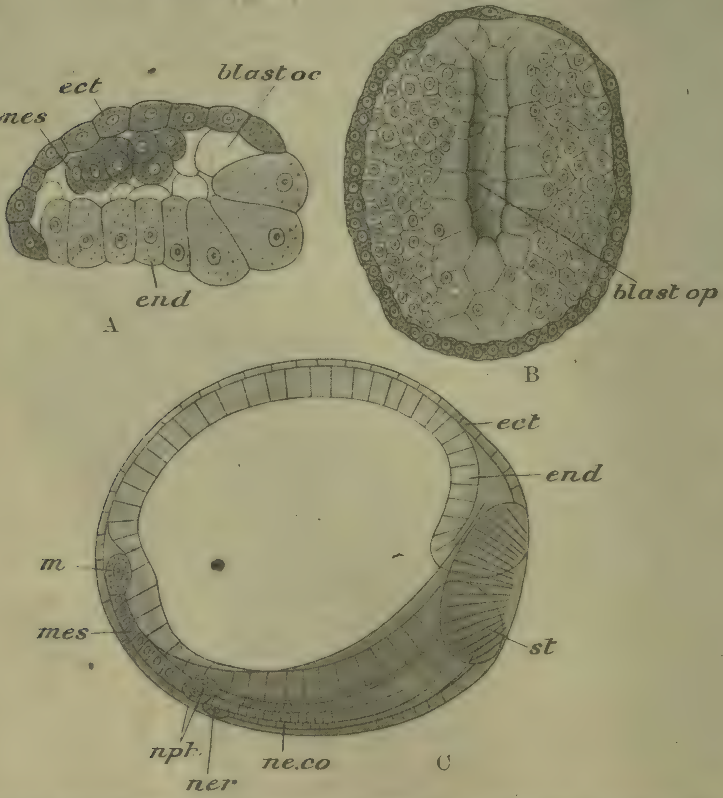


FIG. 335.—Early stages in the development of **Lumbricus.** *A*, lateral view of flattened blastula; *B*, ventral view of gastrula with slit-like blastopore; *C*, lateral view of later stage; *blastoc.* blastocœle; *blastop.* blastopore; *ect.* ectoderm; *end.* endoderm; *m*, primary mesoderm cell; *mes.* mesoderm bands; *ner.* cell from which the primitive nerve cord (*ne. co.*) takes origin; *nph.* cells taking part in the formation of the nephridia; *st.* stomodæum. (After Wilson.)

most essential difference between the two forms consists in the non-occurrence in the Earthworm of any free-swimming Trochosphere stage.

2. DISTINCTIVE CHARACTERS AND CLASSIFICATION.

The Chætopoda are Annulata with the body made up of distinct metameres, which are usually numerous and similar throughout

The metameres are provided with chitinous setæ developed in sacs (setigerous sacs) of the epidermis, and usually elevated on muscular appendages, the parapodia. There is a large cœlome divided internally into chambers by transverse septa or mesenteries, and not in communication with the blood-vascular system, which is nearly always highly developed. The ventral nerve-cord consists of a chain of ganglia. The reproductive cells are formed by a proliferation of certain parts of the peritoneum or membrane lining the cœlome, and usually reach the exterior through modified or unmodified nephridia.

Sub-Class I.—POLYCHÆTA.

Chætopoda with the sexes distinct and the ovaries and testes of simple character and metamerically repeated. Highly developed parapodia are present, in most instances, bearing numerous long setæ. There is usually a definite head with eyes and tentacles, and often cirri and branchiæ on the segments of the body. A metamorphosis takes place : the larva is a Trochosphere. All the Polychæta are marine.

ORDER 1.—ARCHI-CHÆTOPODA.

Aberrant or primitive Polychæta[1] in which the nervous system is not separated from the epidermis and the ventral cord is not segmented into ganglia. Only one genus (*Saccocirrus*).

ORDER 2.—ERRANTIA.

Carnivorous free Polychæta with protrusible pharynx usually armed with chitinous jaws. There is a well-developed head. The segments are completely or nearly similar throughout the length of the body, and the parapodia are equally developed throughout, and provided with cirri. The branchiæ, when present, are not confined to the anterior end.

ORDER 3.—SEDENTARIA.

Vegetable-feeding Polychæta which permanently inhabit tubes; devoid of protrusible pharynx and of jaws or teeth. The head is frequently very small, and sometimes devoid of eyes or of tentacles. The body is distinguishable, by differences in the form of the segments and of the parapodia, into two or even three regions. The parapodia are little prominent in the posterior parts, and usually without cirri. The branchiæ, when present, are usually confined to the anterior end, and are sometimes represented by modified cephalic tentacles.

---

[1] The *Archi-Chætopoda* are usually classed with the *Polychæta*, but their alliances are perhaps quite as close with the *Oligochæta*.

Sub-Class II.—OLIGOCHÆTA.

Chætopoda with the sexes united, the ovaries and testes compact and few in number. No definite parapodia are developed and no cirri, and only a small number of simple setæ on each segment. The head is not distinct. There is no metamorphosis. Mostly terrestrial or fresh-water forms.

ORDER 1.—NAIDOMORPHA.

Small Oligochæta with relatively few segments, with asexual as well as sexual reproduction. Male genital pores on, or in front of, the seventh segment. The anterior part of the body is often distinguished from the rest by a difference in the form or arrangement of the setæ. Eye-spots are frequently present.

ORDER 2.—LUMBRICOMORPHA.

Reproduction is only sexual. The anterior part of the body is never specialised, and the setæ are similar throughout (except in special parts, such as the clitellum). The male genital pores are behind the seventh segment. There are no eye-spots.

Systematic Position of the Examples.

Nereis dumerilii is one of many species of Nereis, differing from one another in certain minor details of their structure—such as the relative length of the palpi and tentacles, the size and form of the eyes, the shape of the parapodia, the form of the setæ, and the like. The genus Nereis differs from the other genera of the family *Nereidæ*, to which it belongs, in having the parapodia biramous, and the cirri simple, and in the presence of a series of denticles in the pharynx in addition to the pair of jaws. The family Nereidæ differs from all the other families of the *Errantia* in the union of the following characters:—The body is always elongated and made up of a considerable number of segments. The prostomium is well developed, and bears a pair of tentacles, a pair of palpi, and four eyes. The peristomium is devoid of parapodia, and has four pairs of tentacles. The parapodia are either uniramous or biramous; both dorsal and ventral cirri are present; the setæ are compound (articulated). There is a pair of anal cirri. In the pharynx there is always a pair of horny jaws, and usually a number of denticles as well.

There are several species of the genus *Lumbricus*, differing from one another in the general form of the body, the number of the segments, the shape of the prostomial lobe, and other minor points. All of them agree in the presence of the following features, which characterise the genus and distinguish it from the many other genera of the family *Lumbricidæ* :—

The prostomium is dovetailed completely into the peristomium. The setæ are always in couples. The clitellum begins between the twenty-sixth and the thirty-second segment, and extends over six or seven segments. The male apertures are always on the fifteenth segment. There are three pairs of vesiculæ seminales, in the ninth, eleventh, and twelfth segments, connected across the middle line in the tenth and eleventh by sacs enclosing the ciliated funnels.

The family Lumbricidæ is distinguished from the other families of the sub-order *Megadrili*, which comprises all the Earthworms, by the combination of the following features :—

The clitellum usually begins behind the twentieth segment and occupies from six to nine segments; it is incomplete ventrally. The male apertures are not situated further back than the fifteenth segment. There are three or four pairs of vesiculæ seminales, in the ninth to the twelfth segments. The testes and ciliated funnels are in the tenth and eleventh segments. The female apertures are on the fourteenth.

3. General Organisation.

The **general form of the body** in the Chætopoda is cylindrical, but in many, *e.g.* some members of the families *Polynoidæ* (Fig. 336) and *Amphinomidæ*, there is a very considerable degree of dorso-ventral compression. In most the body is very long in comparison with its breadth; but this is not a universal rule, the length being in some cases not more than five or six times the breadth. The surface is marked out by a number of more or less distinct annular constrictions or impressed lines into a corresponding series of *segments* or *metameres*, which are usually very numerous, often some hundreds in number, though in some cases there are not more than from twenty to thirty. These segments are usually very similar throughout the length of the body; but in the Tubicolous Polychæta (Fig. 337) there may be two or even more regions distinguishable from one another by the form of the segments and of their appendages. In the Oligochæta there is a thickened zone, the *clitellum*, comprising sometimes only one segment, sometimes a number

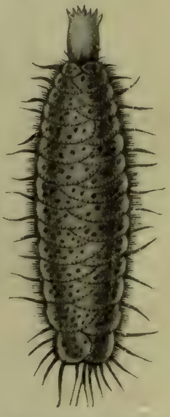


Fig. 336.—**Polynöe setosissima.** Dorsal view of entire animal, with the pharynx protruded. (After Quatrefages.)

Each segment, with certain exceptions to be noted presently, bears either a pair of *parapodia* or merely certain setæ representing the parapodia. Parapodia are lateral hollow processes of the body-wall bearing a number of bristles or setæ. Frequently the parapodium is divided horizontally into two distinct lobes or branches—a dorsal which is termed the *notopodium*, and a ventral which is termed the *neuropodium*. Even when this is not the case there may be two bundles of setæ representing the two parts. The setæ are nearly always chitinous; in *Euphrosyne* they are calcified. They are hollow or solid, entire or divided into a number of joints. In shape (Fig. 338) they vary greatly in different groups; often several very distinct forms of setæ are present in different parts of each parapodium of a single worm, or in parapodia of different regions of the body. Some are exceedingly delicate and hair-like, others needle-shaped, others compressed and sabre-like, others bayonet-like. Very often there is a long, straight, narrow part or handle with which is articulated a terminal blade, or bayonet, or hook.

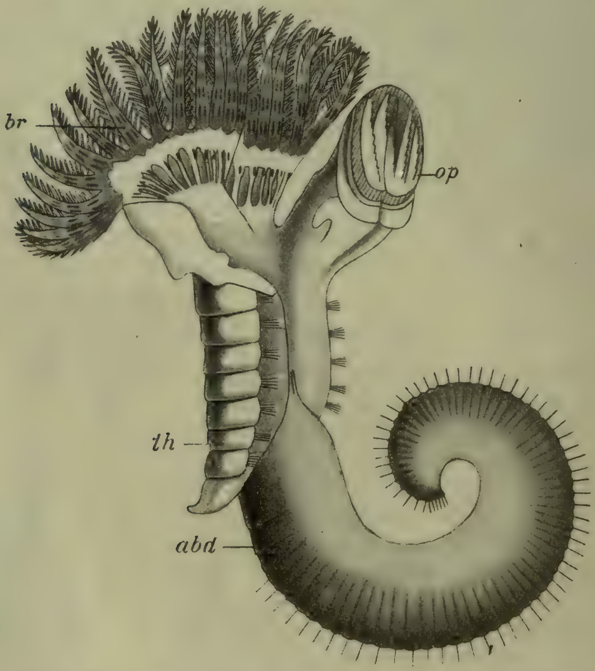


FIG. 337.—A **Serpulid** (Vermilia cœspitosa). Lateral view of animal removed from its tube *abd.* abdomen; *br.* branchiæ; *op.* operculum; *th.* thorax.

Sometimes the setæ are quite short, projecting little beyond the parapodia, and are hook-like or comb-like. Usually each bundle contains, in addition to the ordinary setæ, a stouter straight simple seta, which scarcely projects on the surface; this is termed the *aciculum*. Each seta or each bundle of setæ is lodged in a sac, the *setigerous sac* (Fig. 339), formed by an invagination of the integument, and lined by cells continuous with the epidermis. Each seta is derived from one of these cells, and is to be looked upon as a specially developed part of the cuticle of the general outer surface. The setigerous sacs are usually provided with protractor and retractor muscles, by the action of which the setæ may be thrust out or retracted.

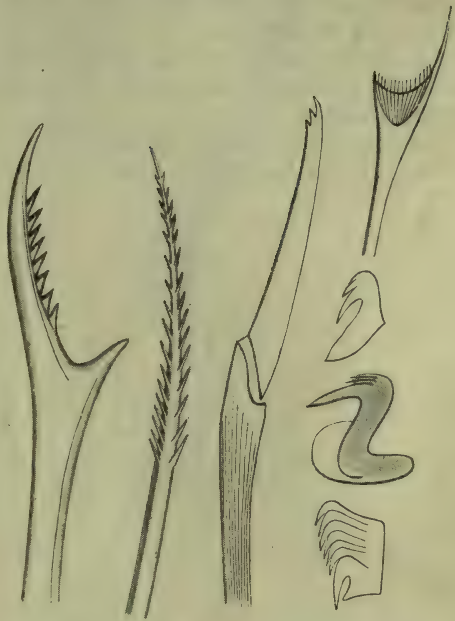


Fig. 338.—Setæ of various Polychæta. (From Claparède.)

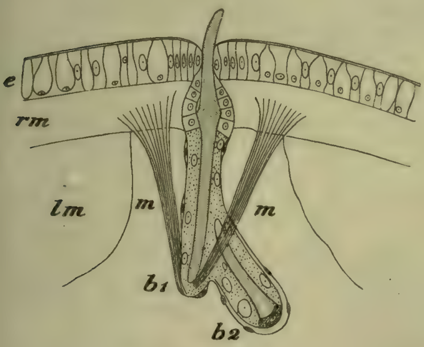


Fig. 339.—Section of the setigerous sac of an Oligochæte. b^1, setigerous sac; b_2, supplementary follicle with seta; *e*, deric epithelium; *lm*, longitudinal muscles of body wall; *m*, *m*, muscles of the setigerous sac; *rm*, circular muscular layer of body wall. (From Hatschek, after Vejdovsky).

In addition to the setæ the parapodium bears very commonly certain soft appendages of a sensory character, the *cirri* (Fig. 319, *dors. cirr.*, *vent. cirr.*) There are usually both dorsal and ventral cirri, the latter nearly always much smaller than the former. The cirri are usually filamentous; sometimes jointed; sometimes they are laterally compressed and leaf-like. In *Polynöe* (Figs. 336 and 340) and its allies certain of the parapodia bear, instead of dorsal cirri, flattened scales, the *elytra* (*el.*), richly supplied with nerves: these are sometimes looked upon as modified dorsal cirri; but in some members of the group cirri and elytra occur together on the same segment.

In *Sternaspis* a ventral shield formed by a thickening of the cuticle in the posterior region of the body bears a number of setæ round its edge.

In the Oligochæta (Fig. 341) the parapodia are absent as processes of the body-wall, and are merely represented by a small number of short setæ each lodged in its sac; and cirri are not developed.

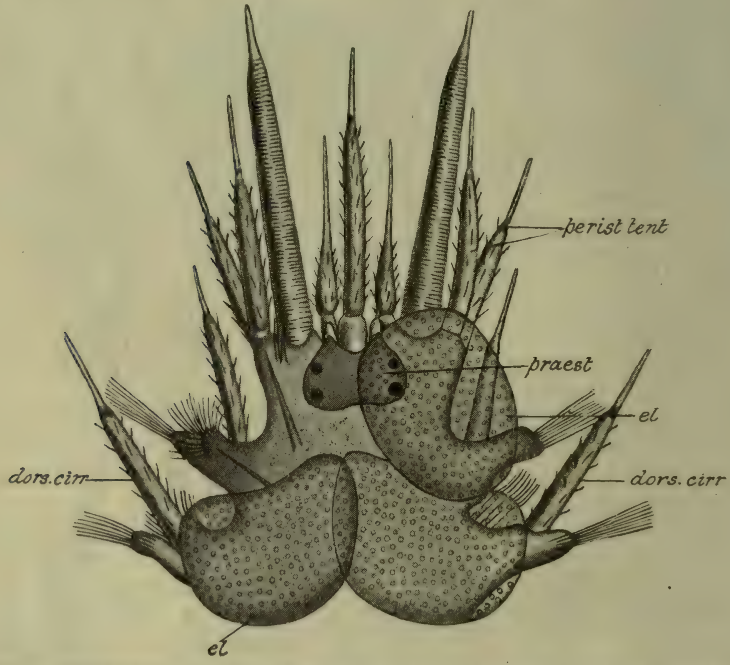


FIG. 340.—**Polynöe extenuata.** Dorsal view of anterior extremity: *dors. cirr.* dorsal cirri; *el,* elytra; *perist. tent.* peristomial tentacles; *prast.* prostomium. (After Claparède.)

The first segment or *prostomium*, together with the second or *peristomium*, forms in many Polychæta a very distinct head; the prostomium in such a case bears eyes and tentacles and contains the cerebral ganglion; on the peristomium is the opening of the mouth, and also certain tentacles, the *peristomial tentacles.* A ventral pair of prostomial tentacles, somewhat thicker than the rest, are sometimes to be distinguished, and are termed the *palpi.* Neither prostomium nor peristomium bears parapodia, though an aciculum is sometimes developed in the latter; the prostomium, in fact, is not quite correctly termed a segment, being different from the true segments both in structure and in mode of development. In the Oligochæta there is no definite head, tentacles are entirely absent, and in the terrestrial forms the prostomium does not lodge the cerebral ganglion. In *Sternaspis spinosa* the prostomium is elongated and bifurcated like the proboscis of the *Gephyrea armata* (*vide infra*).

The last segment is termed the *anal segment*, owing to its bearing the anal opening; it differs from the preceding segments also, usually, in wanting the parapodia and in having a pair of special cirri, the *anal cirri*.

Branchiæ are borne on the dorsal surfaces of more or fewer of the segments in many of the Polychæta. Sometimes they occur on all, or nearly all, the segments; sometimes they are confined to the middle region of the body; sometimes they are present only at the anterior end, as in the majority of the *Tubicola* (Figs. 337 and 342). In the *Terebellidæ* the branchiæ are situated on the dorsal surfaces of some of the anterior segments. In the *Serpulidæ* they form two incomplete lateral circlets of elongated appendages, situated at the anterior end of the body, and apparently appendages of the prostomial segment, supported sometimes by a cartilaginous skeleton; one of them is enlarged to form a stopper, or *operculum* (*op.*), often armed with calcareous plates and spines,

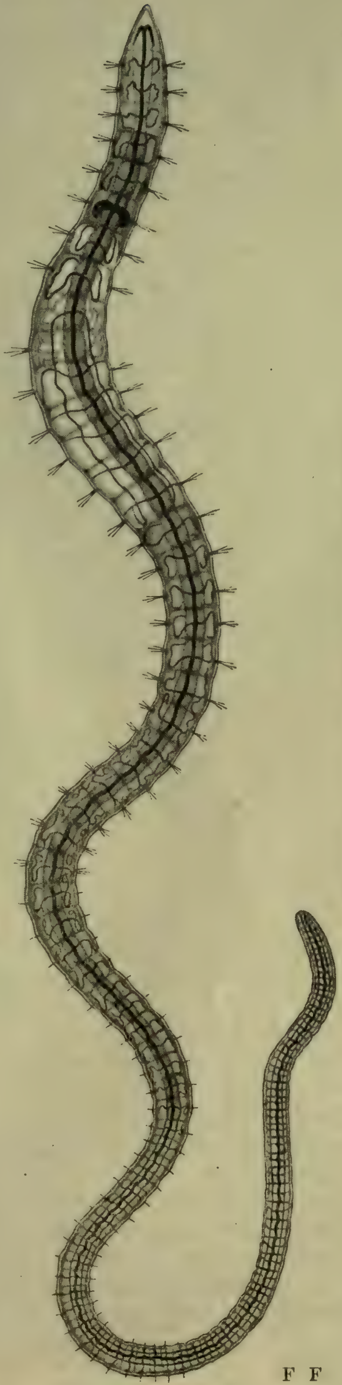


FIG. 341.—**Tubifex.** General view of entire animal. (After D'Udekem.)

for the closure of the mouth of the tube in which the annelid lives. In shape the branchiæ are sometimes filiform, sometimes compressed and leaf-like, sometimes branched in a tree-like manner, sometimes pinnate. In *Serpula* (Fig. 349) and its allies each branchia consists of an elongated stem, on which are borne two rows of short filaments. The surface of the branchiæ is usually ciliated. They are richly supplied with blood-vessels, when a blood-vascular system is developed ; in *Glycera*, in which there are no blood-vessels, each branchia contains a diverticulum of the cœlome.

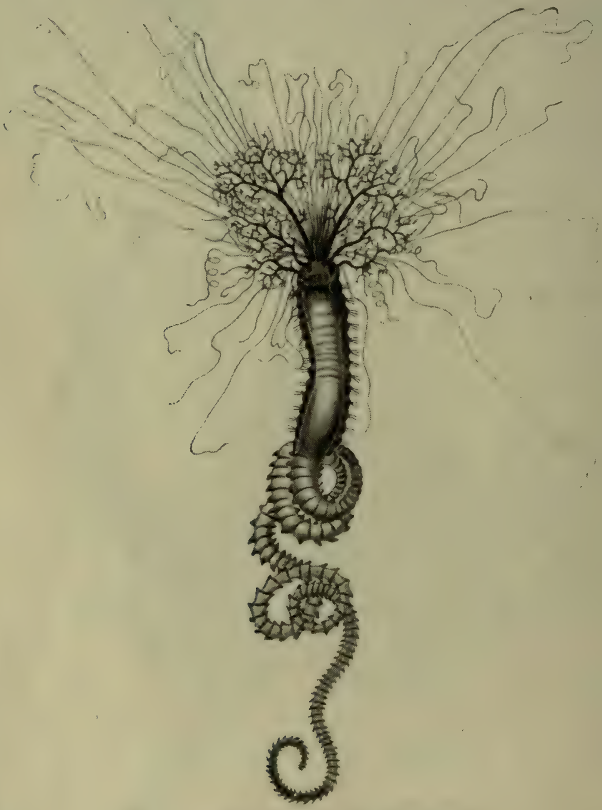


Fig. 342.—**Terebella.** (After Quatrefages.)

In the Oligochæta branchiæ are rarely present ; but in certain worms of the family *Tubificidæ* there are metamerically arranged simple branchiæ on the segments of the posterior region, which is the part ordinarily protruded from the tube.

The **body-wall** consists of a cuticle, an epidermis, muscular layers, and a layer of peritoneum. The *cuticle*, composed of a chitinoid material, usually presents two systems of fine lines intersecting one another at right angles: it is perforated in many places by the ducts of the unicellular glands of the epidermis. The epidermis consists of a single row of cells, with, in some cases, smaller cells of replacement intercalated between their inner ends. In shape the cells vary greatly in different families and often in different parts of the body of the same worm, being sometimes flattened, sometimes cubical or polyhedral, but more usually more or less vertically elongated. Cilia occur on the surface in certain parts in many Chætopoda. Among the ordinary cells of the epidermis there are usually numerous unicellular glands often containing rod-like bodies. In the tubicolous forms these unicellular glands are active in secreting the material for the construction of the tube. In addition the epidermis frequently contains sensory cells, which are in many cases contained in certain special elevations or sensory papillæ.

The *muscular* part of the body-wall consists of two layers, in the outer of which the fibres are disposed circularly, while in the inner their arrangement is longitudinal. The circular layer is continuous, or, more usually, interrupted opposite the intervals between the segments. The longitudinal layer is disposed in four bands in the Polychæta, two dorso-lateral and two ventro-lateral. In the Oligochæta it is divided by the setigerous sacs which pass through it.

The *peritoneum* or *cœlomic epithelium* consists of a single layer of cells. These are usually non-ciliated, but are ciliated in the *Aphroditea*, *Glycera*, and some others, the movement of the cilia bringing about an active circulation of the fluid in the cœlome, the *cœlomic* or *perivisceral fluid.*

The **body-cavity** or *cœlome*, a wide space intervening between the wall of the body on the one hand and that of the enteric canal on the other, is divided in many Chætopoda by a series of transverse septa or mesenteries into a series of chambers corresponding to the segments. The septa are not complete partitions, there being always apertures of greater or less extent by which the cavities of neighbouring segments communicate. The septa consist of double folds of the peritoneum enclosing muscular fibres.

The **enteric canal** is an elongated, and nearly always straight, tube, running through the entire length of the body from mouth to anus. A number of different parts are usually distinguishable; but their disposition varies to a very great extent in the different groups. The buccal cavity, into which the mouth leads, is followed by a muscular pharynx; these are both formed in the embryo by invagination of the ectoderm, and therefore correspond to a *stomodæum.* The muscular pharynx is absent in some of the tubicolous

Polychæta; when present it is frequently protrusible to a greater or less extent (see Fig. 336); around its extremity, when it is fully protruded, are to be seen a circlet of papillæ in some forms; and in many one or more horny teeth, situated in its interior, are brought into play. A *gizzard* with thick walls may follow upon this protrusible pharynx, sometimes preceded by an *œsophagus*, which may be dilated behind into a *crop*. The *intestine* is nearly always more or less deeply constricted between the segments, and in the *Aphroditea*, or Sea-mice (Fig. 343), there are in each of the segments (with the exception of one or two of the most anterior and one or two of the most posterior) a pair of *cæca* which are to a greater or less extent branched at their extremities. In the *Hesionida* and *Syllida* a pair of cæca which open into the anterior part of the intestine frequently contain gas, and probably have a hydrostatic function. In some of the terrestrial Oligochæta (Earthworms) a fold of the intestinal wall, the *typhlosole*, projects into its lumen. The intestine is straight in most, but is somewhat coiled in the *Chlorœmidæ*, *Sternaspis*, and others. The wall of the alimentary canal consists (1) of the visceral layer of peritoneum; (2) of longitudinally arranged muscular fibres; (3) of circularly arranged muscular fibres; (4) of enteric epithelium. The peritoneum on the surface of the intestine has in many Chætopoda its cells enlarged and granular to form the so-called chloragen cells, which probably have an excretory function. The epithelium is very generally ciliated; it contains numerous gland-cells. In addition the stomodæum and the proctodæum are lined internally by a cuticular layer, which is continuous with the cuticle of the general surface. The anus is usually terminal in position, sometimes directed towards the dorsal aspect. There is, in most instances, a longitudinal mesentery running to the alimentary canal from the dorsal body-wall; and sometimes a ventral mesentery is also present bearing a corresponding relation to the ventral surface.

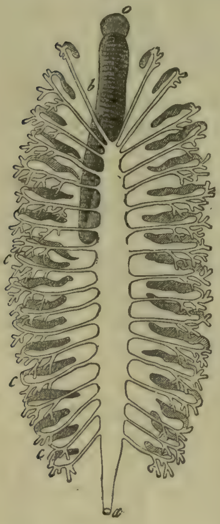


Fig. 343.—Enteric canal of **Aphrodita**. *a*, mouth; *b*, pharynx; *c*, branching cœca of intestine; *d*, anus. (From Gegenbaur's *Comparative Anatomy*.)

Some Chætopoda are entirely devoid of **blood-vessels.** In one family in which this occurs (the *Glyceridæ* among the errant Polychæta), the perivisceral fluid, which assumes some of the functions of the blood, contains numerous red corpuscles, the red colour of which is due to the presence of hæmoglobin (see p. 34). In the majority of the Chætopoda there is a highly developed vascular system. Sometimes the blood is colourless: very commonly it is bright red in colour, owing to the presence of hæmoglobin, which is not confined to the corpuscles, but is dissolved in the plasma. In Serpula and its allies the blood is bright green, owing to the presence of a green colouring matter, which has an affinity for oxygen similar to that possessed by hæmoglobin.

The chief blood-vessels are usually dorsal and ventral longitudinal trunks. These are connected together by metamerically arranged transverse branches. In some of the Tubicola the dorsal vessel is not present, its place being taken by a circum-intestinal sinus or a circum-intestinal plexus of vessels lying in the wall of the alimentary canal. The movement of the blood is effected in most instances by peristaltic contractions of the dorsal vessel or of a circum-intestinal sinus or plexus, or of a short and wide dorsal *cardiac sac* given off by the latter anteriorly, having the effect of driving the blood from behind forwards. In some instances, as in the Earthworms and some Tubicola, specially dilated lateral vessels are contractile, and by their pulsations bring about the circulation of the blood through the system of vessels. Plexuses of fine capillary vessels in the integument of various parts frequently aid in respiration, and are particularly well developed in certain forms in which definite organs of respiration are absent.

The **nervous system** consists of a cerebral ganglion or *brain* and a double *ventral chain* of ganglia. The cerebral ganglion is distinctly bilobed, and may be looked upon as composed of two intimately united ganglia. It is almost invariably situated in the prostomium, though placed a little further back in the Earthworms; it gives off branches to the eyes and tentacles. From it there run backwards and downwards the paired *œsophageal connectives*, which embrace the anterior part of the alimentary canal between them, and below join the anterior end of the ventral chain of ganglia. The latter always exhibits indications of being made up of two lateral halves, in the double character of the connecting commissures, and frequently of the ganglia themselves. One of these double ganglia occurs in each segment, and from it a number of nerves pass out to the various parts of the segment. In certain Tubicola (Serpula and others) the two halves of the chain are separated from one another by a wide space, across which transverse commissures pass between the ganglia. Connected with the cerebral ganglia, or with the œsophageal connectives, or with both, there is a system of delicate *stomatogastric nerves* passing to the walls of the anterior part of the alimentary canal. In the majority of the Chætopoda the cerebral ganglion and the ventral chain are separated from the epidermis by muscular layers; in some, however, the ventral chain is in contact with the epidermis; and in certain primitive or aberrant forms, the Archi-Chætopoda (Fig. 344) and Sternaspis, the cerebral ganglion is in close union with the epidermis; in these also the ventral cord is not segmented into ganglia. Running longitudinally through the ventral cord in many forms are certain *giant fibres* of very large size; though these may have rather a skeletal than a nervous function, they are simply greatly enlarged and modified nerve-fibres. Nerve-cells may be confined to the ganglia, or may be distributed over the entire surface of the ventral cord. *Giant nerve-cells* occur in some forms in certain regions. Small ganglia occur frequently in various peripheral parts, at the bases of cirri or of sensory papillæ more especially.

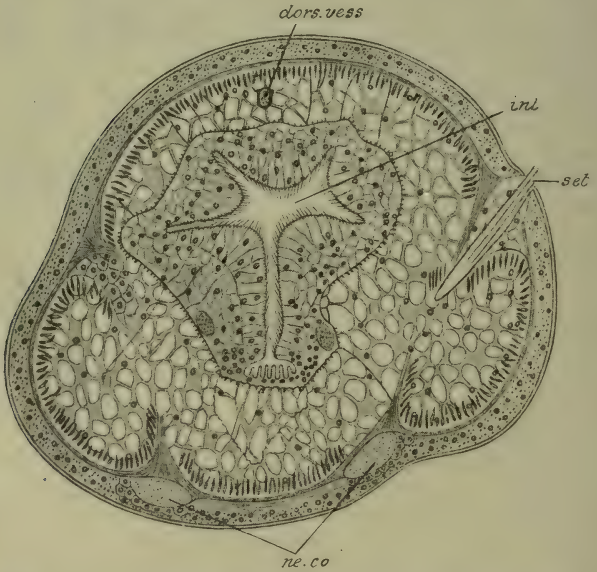


FIG. 344.—**Saccocirrus,** transverse section, to show the position of the nerve cords. *dors. vess.* dorsal vessel; *int.* intestine; *ne. co.* nerve cord; *set.* setæ. (After Fraipont.)

The **organs of special sense** are *eyes*, *tentacles* and *cirri*, and *otocysts*. *Eyes*, absent in all the Oligochæta with a few exceptions, and in some of the tube-forming Polychæta, as well as in a few free forms of that sub-class, are very general in their occurrence. Their structure is, as a rule, very simple, but in some reaches quite a high grade of development. Usually they are confined to the prostomium, but *Polyophthalmus*, in addition to the prostomial eyes, has pairs of eye-like organs on many of the segments of the body. *Leptochone* has a pair on each segment, and in *Fabricia* there is a pair on the anal segment, while in many species of *Sabella* and all the species of *Dasychone* there are eyes or eye-like organs on the branchial filaments.

Most usually the eye is (as in Nereis, p. 410, Fig. 324) a spherical capsule with a wall composed of a single layer of cells, which are elongated on the inner side, *i.e.* the side turned towards the brain, while on the outer side they are usually flattened. The outer thin part of the wall of the capsule or *cornea*, is sometimes united with the epidermis; when the two layers remain distinct, the outer one is the *outer cornea*, the inner the *inner cornea*. In many cases a thickening of the surface cuticle over the cornea forms a *cuticular lens.* The cells of the inner portion of the wall of the capsule form the elements of the *retina;* they are long narrow cells, sometimes composed of three distinct segments —(1) a clear *rod*, directed towards the central cavity; (2) a middle segment which is densely pigmented; and (3) a segment containing the nucleus of the cell and directed towards the brain or the optic ganglion, with which it is connected by a nerve-fibre. Frequently the second and third segments are not to be separately recognised, the whole of that part of the cell which contains the nucleus being densely pigmented.

A refractive mass fills the interior of the capsule, and is sometimes distinguishable into a firmer outer part, the *lens*, and a more fluid inner part, the *vitreous body.* This refractive mass is often continuous with the cuticle externally, and internally may be in continuity with the rods. In some cases the structure of the eye is very much simpler.

Otocysts are only exceptionally present. They consist of capsules of ciliated cells, in the fluid contained in which there is one or several calcareous otoliths.

Ciliated grooves occur on the prostomium of many forms; in *Aricia* they are present on all the segments; they have a special nerve-supply, but their function can only be conjectured. Tactile cells of the epidermis, with or without a projecting tactile hair or stiff cilium, are very common, especially on the prostomium in the Oligochæta and on the tentacles and cirri in the Polychæta. Groups of these are often aggregated together in *papillæ* or *goblet-bodies* with special nerve-supply, and often with a ganglion or a single nerve-cell at the base.

The **organs of excretion** of the Chætopoda are a series of segmentally arranged tubes, the *nephridia*, of which a pair, as a rule, occur in each of the segments of the body, with the exception usually of a few at the anterior and a few at the posterior end. In its simplest form the nephridium is a curved tube, ciliated internally, opening on the exterior by a laterally placed pore at the one extremity, and at the other ending in a ciliated funnel or *nephrostome*, which opens into the cavity of the corresponding segment. The nephridia thus effect a communication between the cœlome and the exterior, and serve to carry off waste products which have passed into the cœlomic fluid; but in many instances the cells lining the tube are active in separating out such waste matters, and are loaded with granules and concretions. The communication which they establish with the exterior also enables the nephridia to take on the additional function of reproductive ducts, as will be more particularly noticed in discussing the reproductive system. The outer part of the tube is usually more or less dilated; the inner narrower part in some cases consists of a row of perforated cells, the lumen being intra-cellular. The external apertures are nearly always ventral in position; in *Polynöe* and its allies they are situated on short tubercles or *papillæ.* Sometimes the nephridia are confined to a certain region of the body. In some families of Polychæta there is a single pair of large nephridia in the anterior region of the body, with or without smaller pairs in the posterior segments, the former alone appearing to have an excretory function. In *Sternaspis* only a single pair of nephridia is present. In the great majority of the Polychæta the nephridia have the function of reproductive ducts as well as of excretory organs. In the Oligochæta the ordinary nephridia do not possess this function: usually they are simple elongated and coiled tubes, a pair or sometimes more than one in each segment; but in some these are replaced or supplemented in certain of the segments, or in all, by a branching system of tubes with scattered ciliated funnels. In one genus, though paired nephridia are present, they do not open directly on the exterior, but communicate with a branching system of tubes consisting of four principal longitudinal vessels and segmentally repeated transverse branches. Sometimes the ordinary nephridia are not developed in the segments lodging the reproductive organs, their place being there taken by three pairs of tubes (mesonephridia) which become modified to give rise to the reproductive ducts; but ordinary nephridia may be present in these segments as well. In some Oligochæta the nephridia of the most anterior segments open into the mouth or pharynx, and have apparently taken on the function of digestive glands (*peptonephridia*).

The mode of development of these tubes varies in different instances. In some cases they are formed, like the excretory tubes of Platyhelminthes and Trochelminthes, from cells of ectodermal origin (*ecto-nephridia*). In others their source is mesodermal, each tube being formed as a funnel-like outgrowth of the peritoneum (peritoneal funnel) which subsequently comes to open on the exterior (*mesonephridia*). In other cases, again, both ectoderm and mesoderm take part in their formation, the peritoneal funnel becoming connected with an ingrowth of the ectoderm (*diplonephridia*). The ordinary nephridia of the Oligochæta are ectonephridia; those of the Polychæta for the most part diplonephridia.

The permanent nephridia of the adult Chætopod are preceded in the larva by a series of *provisional* or *embryonic nephridia* of a temporary character. These have been found to occur in the head (prostomium) of many larval Oligochæta and Polychæta. They are ciliated intra-cellular tubes, sometimes branched, which do not open into the cavity of the prostomium. Sometimes ciliary flames projecting into the lumen occur at the inner ends of the branches or of the undivided tube. Embryonic nephridia have also been shown to occur in the body in certain forms.

In the arrangement of the **reproductive organs** in the Chætopoda there is an essential difference between the two sub-classes, the Oligochæta being hermaphrodite, and the Polychæta, with only a very few exceptions, unisexual. In the latter the *gonads*, ovaries or testes as the case may be, are masses of cells which are developed as the result of a sort of proliferation of the cœlomic epithelium in certain positions (Fig. 345). Usually these organs, which are only conspicuous about the breeding season, occur in the great majority of the segments of the body; sometimes they are confined to a certain region. The exact place which they occupy in the interior of the segment varies in different cases. Sometimes they surround one of the principal blood-vessels; sometimes they are situated laterally, in the bases of the parapodia. The sperms frequently undergo the final stages in their development after they have become detached from the testes

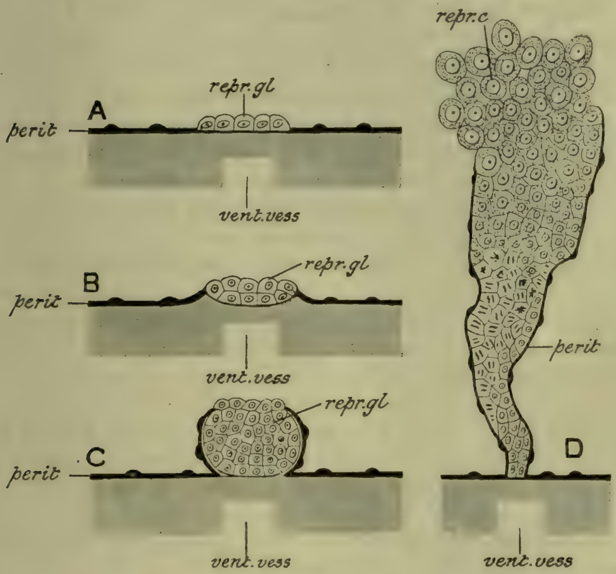


FIG. 345.—Diagram to illustrate the development of a gonad from the peritoneal (cœlomic) epithelium in one of the Polychæta. *perit.* peritoneal membrane; *repr. gl.* gonad (reproductive organ); *vent. vess.* ventral vessel. (After E. Meyer.)

while floating in the cœlomic fluid, and the same sometimes holds good of the ova. Both sperms and ova appear to reach the exterior, in the majority of cases, through the nephridia, which may become modified and enlarged at the breeding season, though in some forms it is stated that the reproductive cells escape through temporary or permanent openings in the body-wall. Impregnation takes place externally in nearly all.

In the Oligochæta the reproductive organs are confined to a certain limited region of the body. There are either, as in the Earthworms, two pairs of *testes*, or a single pair, as in the aquatic forms. The testes are small, and frequently become reduced to mere vestiges in the adult animal, having mainly become broken up into sperm-mother-cells, which in some way reach the vesiculæ seminales to undergo development into mature sperms. The *vesiculæ seminales* are comparatively large sacs, which vary in number and arrangement in the different genera. One or two median *sperm-sacs*, formed by the coalescence of pairs of vesiculæ, may be present or absent. In the same segments as the testes, and opening into the sperm-sacs when the latter are developed, are either two or four *ciliated funnels* (mesonephridia), according to the number of the testes, leading into efferent ducts. All the four ducts, when four are present, may remain distinct, or the two ducts of each side may open into a common atrium, or they may unite to form a common elongated *vas deferens*, opening at the male genital aperture.

There are never more than two *ovaries*, which, like the testes, are of very small size. The ova may become mature in the ovary, or groups of cells may become detached from the latter and one cell in each group ripen into an ovum. A *receptaculum ovorum* occasionally receives the ova after they leave the ovary. There are two *oviducts*, which open by funnel-shaped apertures into the cœlome.

Development.—The Oligochæta deposit the eggs in *cocoons*, either buried in the earth or attached to water-plants. The cocoon contains, in addition to a number of fertilised ova, a quantity of an albuminous fluid which serves as nourishment to the developing embryos. Segmentation is always unequal. In the forms in which food-yolk is scanty there is a process of embolic invagination (*Lumbricus rubellus*); in the others (*Tubifex*, &c.) the process is of the epibolic type. In the former case a blastula and an invaginate gastrula are formed in the way already described in the case of the Earthworm. In *Lumbricus trapezoides* the gastrula divides into two, each half subsequently giving rise to an embryo. In the latter the micromeres spread over the megameres very much as in the Polychæta. A pair of mesoderm cells early appear, and by their division form the mesoderm bands. No free larval stage similar to the Trochosphere occurs in any of the

Oligochæta, but the stage intervening between the completion of the gastrula and the commencement of the segmentation of the mesoderm bands corresponds to the Trochosphere in essential respects, and in some forms there is recognisable a feebly developed circlet of cilia comparable to the prototroch, and in some a pair of head nephridia.

Impregnation and the development of the embryo take place externally in all the Chætopoda, with a very few exceptions, in which development takes place in the cœlome or in the interior of a dilated segmental organ. In the Polychæta, in the great majority of cases, fertilisation takes place by the sperms coming in contact with the ova when both have become discharged, and the development of the embryos goes on while they are floating freely in the sea. There are a few cases in which the impregnated ova are received into a sort of brood-pouch and there pass through at least the earlier stages of their development. Such a brood-pouch is formed in certain Errantia by the raising up of the integument on the ventral surface. In some species of Polynöe and allied genera, the fertilised ova and the resulting embryos adhere in masses to the dorsal surface under the shelter of the elytra. In some other Errantia they are stuck by means of some viscid secretion all over the dorsal surface, or they may adhere singly to the ventral cirri. In certain Tubicola (Fig. 346) they develop in a cavity in the operculum; in others, in the interior of the tube, between the body of the worm and the inner surface of the latter, or on its outer surface. In some, again, though the ova do not remain in any way attached to the parent worm, they may be deposited in clumps or packets enclosed in gelatinous matter. Usually they have no other covering but the egg-membrane.

The segmentation of the ovum in the Polychæta is unequal. In the great majority the inequality between the megameres and micromeres is very marked. In some Serpulids, however, the difference is very slight, and the. two sets of cells are at first scarcely distinguishable. In such cases the cells arrange themselves in such a way as to form the wall of a hollow sphere, the *blastula*, with an internal closed cavity, the *segmentation cavity*. The megameres, which may or may not have been distinct from the first, lie on one side of the blastula; and soon this side becomes invaginated (Fig. 347, *A*), the result being the formation of an *embolic gastrula*. In the great majority of forms, however, an *epibolic gastrula* is formed after the manner already described in the case of Nereis; but forms of the process of gastrulation intermediate between these two extremes have been observed to occur. The blastopore of the gastrula, however formed, does not give rise directly either to the mouth or to the anus. It becomes elongated into a slit which becomes closed up, and the anus and proctodæm are formed by a fresh invagination in the original position of its posterior end, while another invagination of the ectoderm further forwards gives rise to the

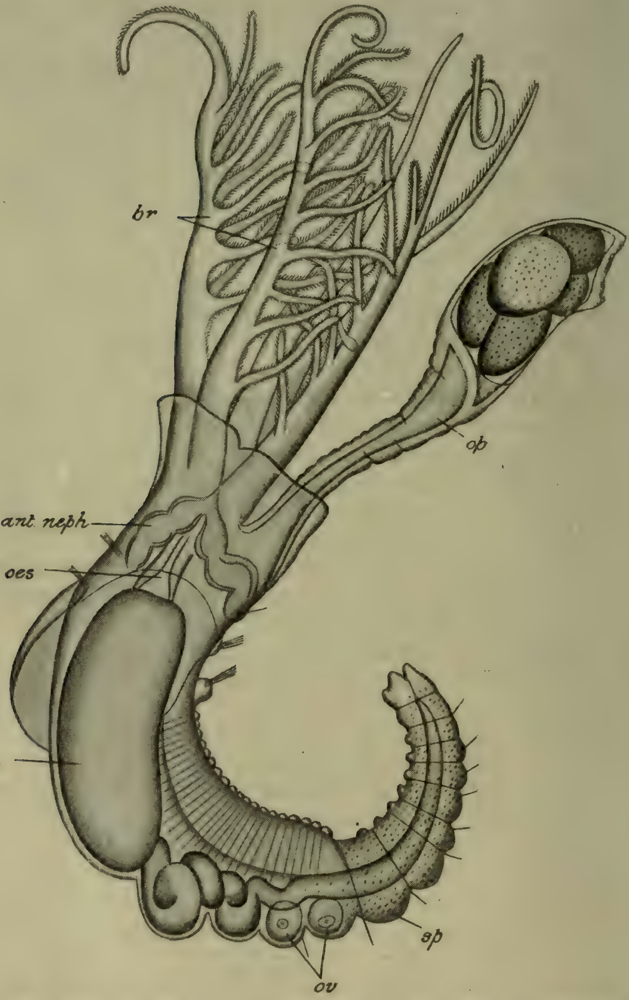


FIG. 346.—**Spirorbis lævis**, a hermaphrodite tubicolous Polychæt. Lateral view of entire animal. *ant. neph.* anterior nephridium; *br.* branchiæ; *œs.* œsophagus; *op.* operculum with developing embryos in its anterior; *ov.* ova; *sp.* sperms; *st.* stomach. (After Claparède.)

mouth and stomodæum. The embryo then passes into the *Trochosphere* stage.

The arrangement of the cilia on the surface of the Trochosphere varies in different Polychæta. Sometimes, though rarely, the præ-oral circlet is absent, and the surface is covered uniformly with cilia; such larvæ are said to be *atrochal.* Sometimes there are two circlets close together, the one immediately in front of, and the other immediately behind, the mouth. Sometimes, in addition to the præ-oral circlet, there is a *peri-anal circlet* round the anal end (*telotrochal* larvæ). In some cases, instead of a præ-oral circlet, there is one further back round the middle of the body (*mesotrochal*), or there may be several between the mouth and the anal end (*polytrochal*).

The post-oral portion of the larva elongates, and traces of segmentation become visible; sometimes a series of constrictions are developed before there is any trace of parapodia, sometimes rudiments of the latter with their setæ are developed first. The number of segments, at first very small, becomes added to from behind as the body gradually elongates. The establishment of external segmentation is accompanied by the division of the mesoderm bands into a series of segments, the history of which has been sketched in describing the development of Nereis. The ectoderm of the ventral plate develops a median thickening which gives rise to the ventral nerve-cord. Anteriorly this becomes connected by a pair of thickenings at the sides of the mouth, the rudiments of the œsophageal connectives, with the developing cerebral ganglion.

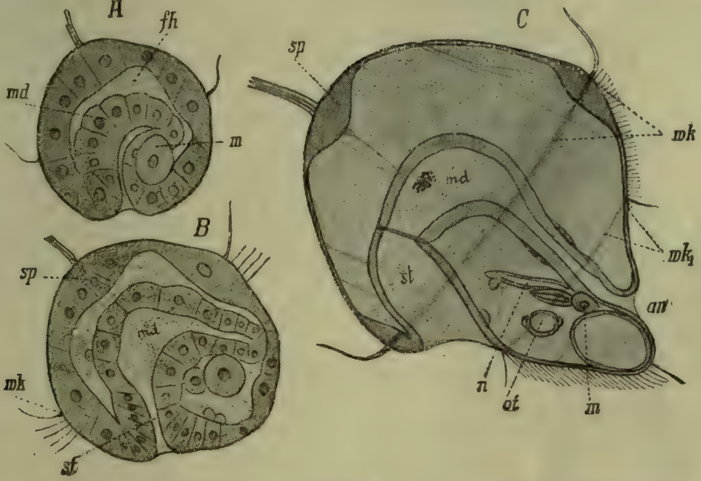


FIG. 347.—*A*, *B*, *C*, three stages in the development of the Trochosphere of **Eupomatus,** from the side. *an.* anus; *fh*, blastocœle; *m*, polar cells of the mesoderm; *md*, mid-gut; *n*, larval head-nephridium; *ot.* otolith; *sp*, neural plate; *st.* stomodæum; *wk*, preoral ciliated ring; wk_1 post oral ciliated ring. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy.*)

The completion of the metamorphosis is brought about by the increase in length of the body, and concomitant increase in the number of segments, by the full development of the various systems of internal organs, and by the formation of the tentacles and other appendages. The parapodia, when first formed, very usually bear relatively long *provisional setæ*, which are subsequently thrown off to make way for those of the adult.

Asexual reproduction by simple fission followed by regeneration of the lost segments, or by proliferation followed by fission, occurs in certain groups of Chætopoda both among the Oligochæta and the Polychæta. Simple fission occurs in *Salmacina*, one of the Serpulids: a constriction becomes formed at a certain point towards the posterior end; rudiments of a new set of cephalic branchiæ bud out on one side at this point, and this posterior part becomes a distinct zooid, which is eventually separated off and develops the full number of segments characteristic of the adult. This is not in any way a case of alternation of generations, as both parent and offspring are similar and sexual (hermaphrodite). In *Nais* and *Chætogaster* (Oligochæta) there is multiplication by proliferation of the segments at the posterior end; then the appearance of a constriction separating off five or six of the most posterior segments, followed by a fresh proliferation in front of the constriction, and this in turn by the appearance of a second constriction five or six segments further forwards—the result being the development of a chain of zooids which remain for a time connected together. The sexual cells become fully developed only after the zooids have become separated from one another. In some of the Syllidæ (Errantia) there is a distinct *alternation of generations*. The asexual worm developed from the ovum gives rise by a process of posterior proliferation and constriction (Fig. 348) to sexual zooids, a number of which may remain for a time connected together in a string before becoming separated. These sexual zooids become developed into mature males or females, which may be remarkably unlike the parent form in the shape of the parapodia, the character of the setæ, and similar points; and in some instances the two sexes not only differ from the asexual parent form but from one another, so that the three forms, before their relationship was known, have been set down as representing three distinct genera.

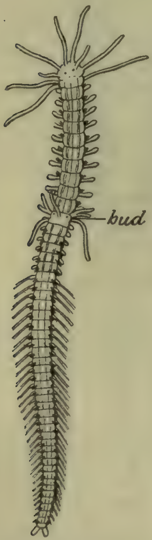


FIG. 348.—Budding in one of the Syllidæ (*Autolytus cornutus*), parent stock with a male zooid nearly ready to become detached. (After Agassiz.)

Syllis ramosa, which occurs in the interior of certain deep-sea sponges, is exceptional among the Chætopoda in giving rise by lateral branching to a colony, from which sexual zooids afterwards become separated off.

Mode of Life, etc.—Very few Chætopoda are true *parasites*; but a considerable number are to be set down as *commensals* habitually associating with another animal for the sake of food and shelter. The Earthworms burrow in soil containing decaying vegetable matter, passing the mould through their intestine and subsequently throwing it off in the shape of castings on the surface. They also feed on decaying leaves, and sometimes on animal substances. Some of the fresh-water Oligochæta (*Tubificidæ*) manufacture tubes of mud held together by a tenaceous secretion from the epidermal unicellular glands. Some of the Errant Polychæta form temporary tubes of a gelatinous character, or more permanent parchment-like tubes sometimes strengthened by means of agglutinated sand-grains. But the majority of the Errantia, which live for the most part on other small animals, are not confined to tubes, but move about freely. Some burrow in sand; others even in harder substances, such as the shells of Mollusca, or in limestone, shale, or sandstone. The Tubicola secrete tubes the substance of which is derived from the epidermal glands. These tubes are sometimes membranaceous or parchment-like, sometimes membranaceous but hardened by the deposition of grains of sand or particles of broken shells or bits of sea-weed; sometimes (Fig. 349) they are of a hard, shelly, calcareous character, sometimes composed entirely of foreign particles cemented together; very frequently they are permanently fixed to foreign objects. Some Tubicola, such as species of *Polydora* and *Stylarioides*, near relatives of which construct tubes, excavate galleries in rock or coral, or in the shells of various Mollusca. The Tubicola are vegetable-feeders.

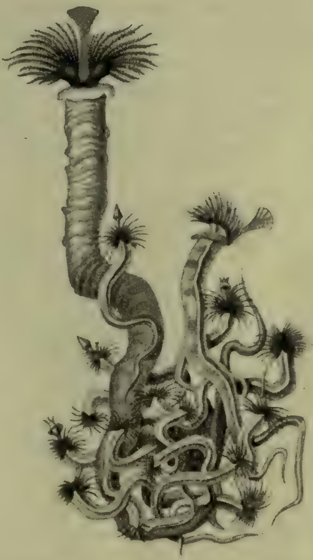


FIG. 349.—**Serpulæ** with their tubes. (After Quatrefages.)

A few Polychæta, such as the *Alciopidæ* and *Tomopteris*, as well as, in a certain phase, the *Nereidæ* and *Syllidæ*, are pelagic, but the majority live on the sea bottom. They occur in greatest abundance near the shore; but are also found at all depths in the ocean, the Tubicola being more abundant than the Errantia in the deeper zones.

Owing to the soft character of most of their parts, there are comparatively few actual remains of Chætopoda in the older geological formations, though there are many burrows and tracks which have been ascribed to members of that class. Tubes of tubicolous Polychæta have, however, been found in formations dating from the Cambrian period onwards. Some tubes not distinguishable from those of the existing genus, *Spirorbis*, are found as far back as the Silurian; and others, apparently closely related to the living Serpula, as far back as the Carboniferous. In addition there are a number of tubes of extinct forms ascribed to the tubicolous Polychæta. The horny jaws of various Errantia have been detected in strata from the Cambrian period onwards; and many tracks and burrows occurring in rocks of all ages are ascribed, some with more, some with less certainty, to this group of worms. No fossil remains of Oligochæta are known.

APPENDIX TO THE CHÆTOPODA.

CLASS MYZOSTOMIDA.

The *Myzostomida* are a group of worms which appear to have their nearest relatives in the Chætopoda, though with certain special features of their own. They are all external parasites of various Crinoids, both of the stalked and the free varieties or internal parasites of certain Starfishes. They are disc-shaped animals (Fig. 350) devoid of any trace of external segmentation. There are patches of cilia here and there on both dorsal and ventral surfaces. At the sides there are five pairs of parapodia (*p*), each with a chitinous hook and a supporting rod; in the intervals between these there are in *Myzostoma* four pairs of small suckers; and round the margin are a series of ten or more pairs of cirri provided terminally with motionless sensory cilia, and with a ventral groove lined by adhesive cells. The mouth, situated at the anterior extremity, leads into a muscular pharynx (Fig. 351, *ph*) capable of being protruded as a proboscis; from this a narrow œsophagus leads to the stomach, which gives off a number of branched lateral diverticula (*da*). A short cloaca (*Klo*) leading from the stomach opens on the exterior at the posterior end of the body. There is no distinct cœlome, the space between the alimentary canal and the body-wall being filled by connective tissue (parenchyma), leaving only the cavities in which the sexual elements are lodged. Bundles of dorso-ventral muscular fibres form imperfect transverse septa as in some Platyhelminthes.

There is no blood-vascular system, and specialised organs of respiration are likewise wanting. No nephridia have been detected. The nervous system comprises a large stellate ganglion situated ventrally, probably representing a number of fused ganglia, and giving off a number of nerves; and of two nerve-rings, one round the œsophagus, the other round the pharynx, the two rings being connected together by a series of longitudinal nerves: the œsophageal ring presents a very obscure dorsal thickening, which is the only representative of a cerebral ganglion.

Most of the Myzostomida are hermaphrodite. There is some doubt about the position of the ovary, but in the sexually mature animal branching spaces in the parenchyma between the cæca are found to be filled with ova (*o*). A large uterus (*u*) opens into the cloaca by three ducts. There are two elongated and usually branched testes (*h*), each of which has two vasa deferentia leading to a vesicula seminalis (*sb*) which opens near the lateral margins. A few species are diœcious. In one species, in addition to the ordinary hermaphrodite individuals, there are much smaller males —the "complemental males."

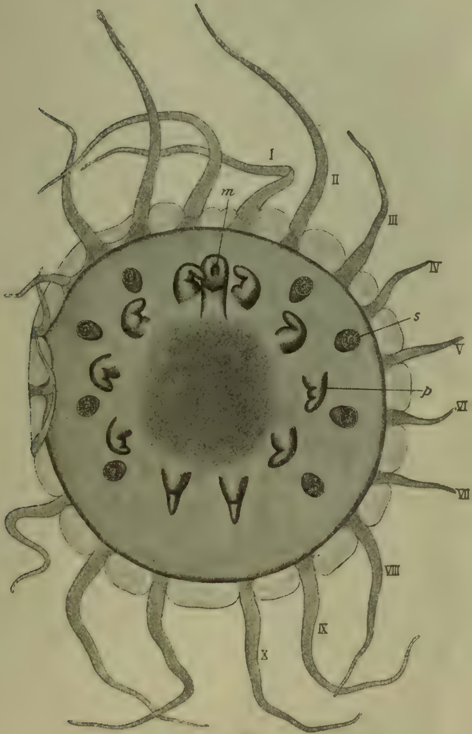


Fig. 350.—**Myzostoma.** (After von Graff.)

The development of the Myzostomida closely resembles that of the Polychæta. A trochosphere larva is first formed, and this becomes metamorphosed into a larva with provisional setæ, bearing a close resemblance to the larva of Nereis (p. 415).

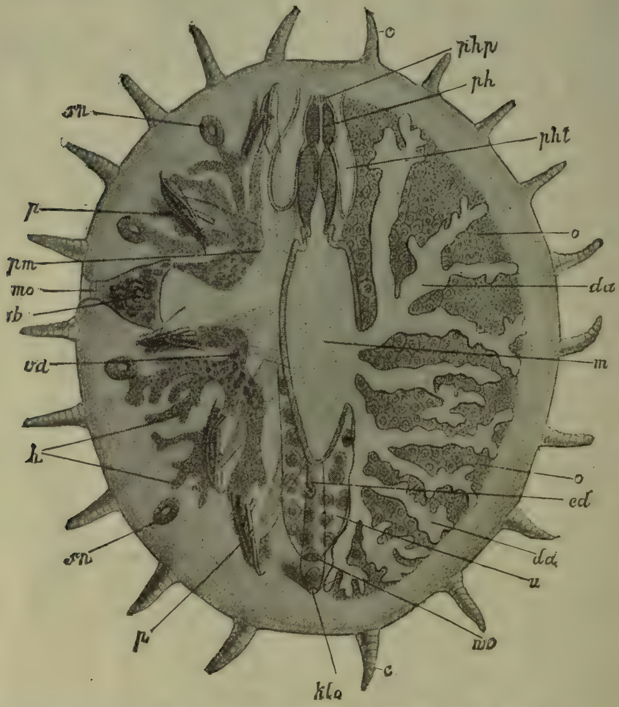


FIG. 351.—**Myzostoma.** Diagrammatic view of the internal organs. *c*, cirri; *da*, branches of the stomach; *ed*, hind-gut; *h*, testes; *klo*, aperture of cloaca; *m*, stomach; *mo*, male genital aperture; *o*, ovaries; *p*, parapodia, with hooks and supporting rod; *ph*, pharynx; *php*, pharyngeal tentacles; *pht*, pharyngeal pouch; *sb*, vesicula seminalis; *u*, uterus; *wo*, female genital aperture. (From Lang's *Text-book*.)

CLASS II.—GEPHYREA.

The *Gephyrea* are marine Annulata devoid of any trace of segmentation in the adult condition, without parapodia, and either without setæ or with only a limited number; with either an invaginable anterior body region or introvert, at the extremity of which is the mouth surrounded by tentacles, or with a long, highly retractile proboscis representing the præ-oral lobe of the larva, and having the mouth situated at the base. The anus is sometimes terminal and posterior, sometimes anterior and dorsal. There is an extensive cœlome filled with a corpusculated fluid, and not divided by septa. The ventral nerve-cord is not made up of a series of ganglia. There is, as a general rule, only a single pair of nephridia. The sexes are separate; the ovaries and testes simple masses of cells; the nephridia act as reproductive ducts. The larva is a trochosphere.

1. Example of the Class—*Sipunculus nudus.*

General External Features.—*Sipunculus* occurs on sand at moderate depths off the coast in most countries outside of the tropics. It is an elongated worm of a cylindrical shape, somewhat narrower towards one—the anterior—end. There is no trace of division into segments. The anterior portion of the body, to the extent of about a sixth of the total length, is capable of being involuted within the part behind. The surface of this anterior part, which is termed the *introvert* (Fig. 352), differs in appearance from that of the rest of the body in being covered more or less closely with chitinous papillæ. The papillæ of the posterior portion of the introvert are shaped like the bowl of a spoon, with the concavity turned towards the body-wall and the tip directed backwards; they are so closely arranged as to overlap one another like the shingles of the roof of a house: further back they become longer and narrower, mammilliform, and more scattered. When the introvert is fully evaginated, there appears at its extremity a horseshoe-shaped fold of the integument, the *tentacular fold* (*tent.*), which is lobed and plaited (Fig. 353) so that it assumes somewhat the appearance of a circlet of tentacles. For a little space immediately behind the tentacular fold the surface of the introvert is free from papillæ.

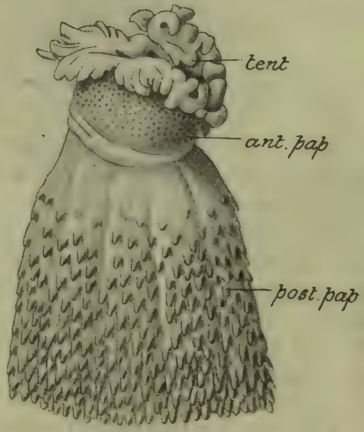


Fig. 352.—Anterior extremity of **Sipunculus nudus.** *ant. pap.* anterior papillary region; *post. pap.* posterior papillary region; *tent.* tentacular fold. (After Ward.)

The posterior portion of the body is devoid of papillæ, but is marked out by a number of narrow impressed lines into a number of elongated four-sided areas.

Body-wall.—The surface is covered by a chitinoid *cuticle* having an iridescent lustre similar to that presented by the cuticle of Nereis and Lumbricus, and due to the same cause—viz., the presence of two systems of intercrossing lines. The papillæ on the introvert are local thickenings of this cuticular layer. Beneath the cuticle is an *epidermis* consisting of a single layer of cells, usually sac-like, but capable of being altered as a result of contraction or compression into a spindle-like shape. Below the epidermis is a layer of connective-tissue, the *dermis*, in which, as well as to some extent in the epidermis itself, are a number of *dermal bodies.* Of these there are three kinds—*bicellular glands*, contained in papillæ; *multicellular glands*, scattered through the integument, and not contained in papillæ; and *sense-papillæ*, small rounded thickenings of the epidermis in the anterior region of the introvert, with their summits covered with cilia. There are also numerous pigment cells. Numerous canals branch through the dermis. Beneath this are three layers of muscle—(1) an outer *circular* layer, continuous in the introvert, but divided into annular bands in the rest of the body; (2) an *oblique* layer, well developed only between the origins of the two retractor muscles of the introvert; (3) a *longitudinal* layer, which is separated by spaces into a series of parallel bands. Between the bundles of the longitudinal layer of muscle runs a series of canals which communicate with the body-cavity by transverse branches.

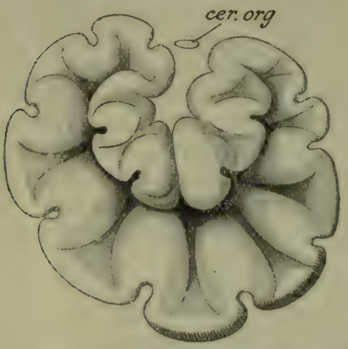


FIG. 353.—Tentacular fold of **Sipunculus nudus.** *cer. org.* cerebral organ. (After Ward.)

There is a spacious **cœlome,** but it is traversed in all directions by filaments and strands of connective-tissue, with which are mixed very fine muscular fibres; these mostly run from the wall of the body to the alimentary canal. Floating in the cœlomic fluid are (1) colourless corpuscles; (2) reproductive elements; (3) peculiar ciliated bodies, the *urns*, which may be parasitic ciliate Protozoa, but whose nature is obscure.

The **blood-vascular system** is very feebly developed. It consists of *dorsal* and *ventral longitudinal sinuses* (*i.e.* channels differing from true vessels in wanting an internal epithelium), communicating in front with a *circular sinus* at the base of the tentacular fold.

The **alimentary canal** (Fig. 354) is a cylindrical tube of uniform character throughout. It is twice the length of the body, running back from the mouth towards the posterior end, and then bending sharply round to run forwards to the anus, the two limbs being twisted spirally round one another. Running along the entire length of the alimentary canal, with the exception of the terminal part or rectum, is a narrow groove. Twisted round the posterior part is a long narrow *cæcum*, which opens into the beginning of the rectum. Two groups of *rectal glands* occur close to the anal opening.

The **nervous system** (Fig. 355) differs considerably from that of the rest of the Annulata. There is a relatively small bilobed *cerebral ganglion* situated on the dorsal aspect just behind the tentacular circlet, to which it gives off on each side several pairs of nerves.

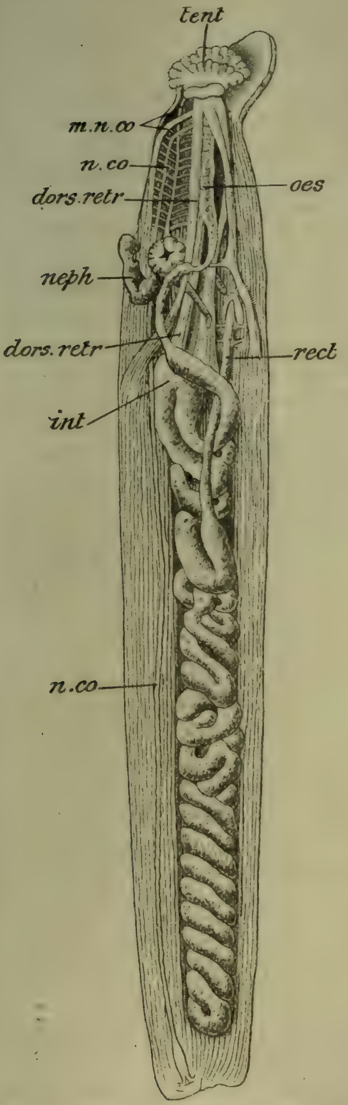


FIG. 354.—Dissection of the internal organs of **Sipunculus nudus.** *dors. retr.* dorsal retractor muscles of the introvert; *int.* intestine; *m. n. co.* muscles accompanying the nerve cord; *n. co.* nerve cord; *neph.* nephridium; *œs.* œsophagus; *rect.* rectum; *tent.* tentacular fold. (After Vogt and Jung.)

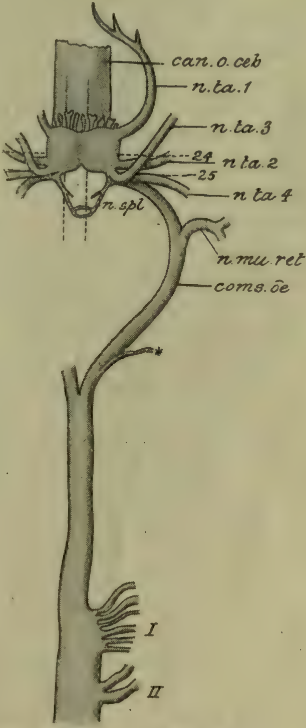


FIG. 355.—Anterior part of the nervous system of **Sipunculus nudus.** *can. o. ceb*, cerebral organ; *coms. œ*, œsophagal connective; *n.mu. ret*, nerves to retractor muscles; *n. spl.* splanchnic nerves; *n. ta, 1–4*, nerves to tentacular fold; *I, II*, nerves from ventral cord, (After Ward.)

Anteriorly and dorsally it gives off a number of digitate processes lying in the cœlome. The *œsophageal connectives* (*coms. œ*) which it gives off behind are greatly elongated; each gives off *muscular* nerves (*n. mu. ret*), and also a *visceral* nerve (*n. spl*) passing to the alimentary canal. The two commissures unite behind to form a *ventral cord*, which extends throughout the rest of the length of the body. The ventral cord presents no appearance of ganglia: it sends off laterally a large number of pairs of nerves (I., II.); on section it appears distinctly double. Two delicate muscular bands (Fig. 354 *m. n. co.*), which take orgin anteriorly from the body-wall, become attached to the nerve-cord, and follow it throughout its length, giving off small branch bands to accompany the lateral nerves. A canal with folded and pigmented walls, which opens in the middle line of the dorsal surface just behind the tentacular fold (Fig. 353 *cer. org.*), extends backwards to the anterior ventral surface of the cerebral ganglion, where it ends blindly. It is possible that this, the *cerebral organ*, may be a sensory organ of some kind. *Eyes* are entirely absent. The digitate processes of the cerebral ganglion, which bear a number of ciliated cups along their edges may be sensory in character.

Sipunculus has only a single pair of **nephridia** which like those of the majority of the Polychœta are of the character of diplonephridia. These (Fig. 354, *neph.*) are situated tolerably far forwards, the external openings being about 2 cm. in front of the anus. They are long, nearly straight tubes, of a brown or yellowish colour, and very mobile in the living condition. Near the external opening, which is situated at the anterior end, is the internal opening into the cœlome. The sexes are separate. There are no definite **gonads** except at a certain season of the year, when cellular elevations developed in the connective tissue covering the ventral retractor muscles of the introvert represent *ovaries* or *testes* as the case may be. These give origin to cells which become detached and develop into the fully-formed sexual elements while floating about in the cœlomic fluid. The segmental organs act as *gonoducts.*

2. Distinctive Characters and Classification.

The Gephyrea are Annulata with the body devoid of any appearance of segmentation in the adult condition. There is a large cœlome, which is not divided into chambers by mesenteries or septa. A blood-vascular system is sometimes present, sometimes absent. The ventral nerve-cord is not composed of a chain of ganglia. There is usually only one pair of nephridia. The sexes are separate, the gonads simple, and the nephridia act as gonoducts.

The larva is in most cases a typical trochosphere, and may develop a metameric segmentation which disappears as development proceeds.

ORDER 1.—INERMIA.

Gephyrea with an introvert, and usually tentacles or a tentacular fold. The anus is dorsal. Setæ are absent. Nephridia a single pair, or absent altogether.

ORDER 2.—ARMATA.

Gephyrea with an elongated prostomial proboscis. The anus is posterior. Two or more setæ. A single nephridium, or two or three pairs.

Systematic Position of the Example.

Sipunculus nudus is one of several species of the genus *Sipunculus*. *Sipunculus* differs from other genera of the family *Sipunculidæ*, of which it is a member, mainly in having a tentacular fold around the mouth, instead of a series of distinct tentacles. The family *Sipunculidæ* is one of two families of the order *Inermia* and differs from the other, the *Priapulidæ*, in the presence of either tentacles or a tentacular fold at the oral, and the absence of filiform appendages at the aboral end.

3. GENERAL ORGANISATION.

The Gephyrea are a class of worms whose position among the Annulata is determined more from a consideration of their development than of their structure in the adult condition, though the latter suggests a tolerably close affinity with the Chætopoda. The body of a Gephyrean is unsegmented, usually more or less completely cylindrical, broadest behind and narrowing towards the anterior end. The surface is covered with a chitinous *cuticle* developed often into papillæ, or tubercles, or hooks. In the Armata, *setæ* are present, but they are always very few in number and not implanted in parapodia; in *Bonellia* there is only a single pair, situated about the middle of the ventral surface; in most species of *Echiurus* (Fig. 357), in addition to this ventral pair, there are a number arranged in one or two circlets around the posterior end. In the Inermia the anterior part of the body is capable of being invaginated within the part behind; at the extreme anterior end of this invaginable part or *introvert*, when it is evaginated, is the mouth surrounded by a circlet of sometimes pinnate, sometimes simple, tentacles, or by a lobed and plaited *tentacular fold*. The prostomium is in such forms quite rudimentary. In the Armata there is no introvert, but an elongated, highly contractile, simple or bifurcated *proboscis,* which is the greatly produced prostomium; in Bonellia (Fig. 356) the proboscis, when fully extended, is five or six times the length of the body: in Echiurus (Fig. 357) it is much shorter: at the base of the proboscis on the ventral side is the opening of the mouth. In *Priapulus* (Fig 358) there is at the posterior end an elongated simple or bifurcated caudal appendage covered with hollow papillæ. The *anus* is situated at the posterior end of the body in the Armata; in the Inermia it lies far forwards on the dorsal surface, except in the case of Priapulus, in which it is terminal.

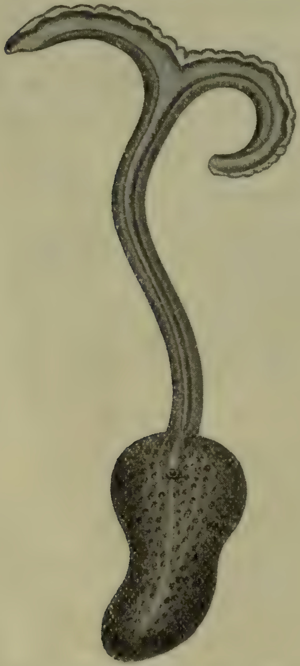


Fig. 356.—**Bonellia viridis.** Entire animal (female) with the proboscis moderately extended. (After Greef.)

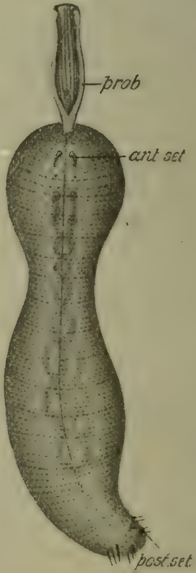


Fig. 357.—**Echiurus,** entire animal. *Ant. set.* anterior setæ; *post. set.* posterior setæ; *prob.* proboscis. (After Greef.)

Body-wall.—Beneath the cuticle is an *epidermis,* which is composed of a single layer of cells. Among the cells are unicellular, rarely multicellular, glands, and sensory cells. Various colouring matters, such as the bright green characteristic of *Bonellia,* are contained in the cells of the epidermis. The muscular wall of the body consists of external circular and internal longitudinal layers, sometimes with oblique and internal circular layers superadded. There is an extensive undivided **cœlome**, covered, as in the case of the Chætopoda, with a cœlomic epithelium, which is sometimes ciliated.

The **alimentary canal** in the *Inermia* consists of a muscular pharynx, intestine, and rectum; in the *Sipunculidæ* (Fig. 354) the intestine is bent on itself, and spirally twisted as it runs forwards to the anal opening, which, as already noted, is situated far forwards on the dorsal surface: at the junction of intestine and rectum is a single simple cæcum or a pair; and a number of small branching cæca are connected with the rectum close to the anal opening. Retractor muscles pass from the body-wall to the pharynx. In the *Armata* (Figs. 359 and 361) there is a thin-walled buccal cavity, an elongated and coiled intestine, opening at the posterior extremity of the body into a dilated rectum: in most there is an elongated *cæcum* or *siphon* applied to the ventral aspect of the intestine proper. Into the rectum there open a pair of remarkable cæca, the *posterior nephridia* (Figs. 359 and 361, *post. neph.*), supposed to be excretory in function; these open into the cœlome by means of a number of ciliated funnels (Fig. 360).

There are no specialised **organs of respiration** in the Gephyrea. A **blood-vascular system** is sometimes present, sometimes absent. When present, as it is in most Gephyrea, it usually comprises a contractile dorsal vessel closely applied to the intestine, and a peri-pharyngeal ring or plexus. Cilia are present in places in the interior of the vessels.

The **nervous system** (Figs. 355 and 362) consists of a nerve ring, sometimes greatly elongated, surrounding the anterior part of the alimentary canal, with sometimes a dorsal and anterior thickening representing a *cerebral ganglion;* and of a *nerve-cord*, devoid of ganglia, running backwards from this along the middle of the ventral surface, and giving off pairs of branches at regular intervals; the branches of the same pair sometimes form complete rings (Fig. 362, *ne. ri.*) by uniting dorsally. **Eyes** of a very simple character, consisting of mere spots of pigment, are present in some of the Inermia.

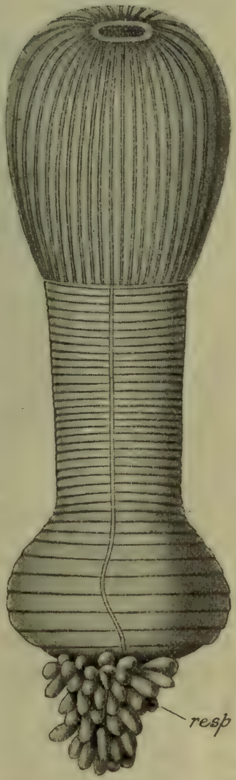


FIG. 358.—**Priapulus**, entire animal. *resp.* posterior papillæ. (After Ehlers.)

Priapulus is devoid of **nephridia**. In the Armata a pair of appendages of the rectum are, as already mentioned, to be regarded as *posterior nephridia*. In addition there are present *anterior nephridia*. In Bonellia (Fig. 359, *ant. neph.*), and in some Inermia, there is only one. In the majority of cases there is one pair, while in various species of *Thalassema* there are from one pair to four. They are tubes which open externally on the ventral surface, and internally communicate with the cœlome by means of ciliated apertures, the form and position of which varies in different cases. They act as efferent ducts for the reproductive elements (*gonoducts*); but their function as excretory organs has not been definitely established.

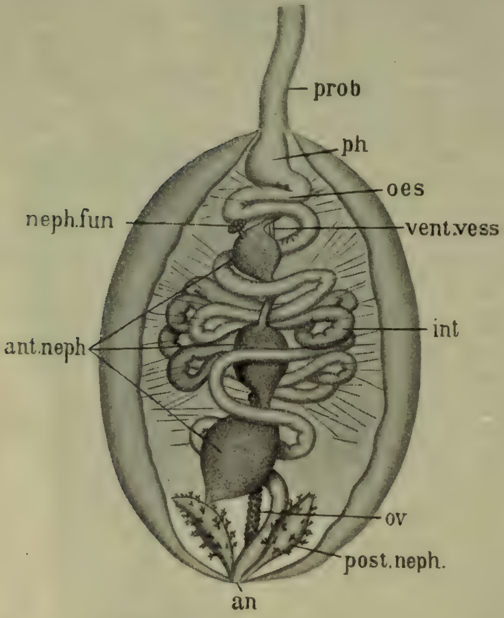


Fig. 359.—**Bonellia,** general view of the internal organs. *an.* anus; *ant. neph.* anterior nephridium; *int.* intestine; *neph. fun.* nephrostome; *œs.* œsophagus; *ov.* ovary; *ph.* pharynx; *post. neph.* posterior nephridium; *prob.* proboscis; *vent. vess.* ventral vessel. (After Greef.)

The sexes are usually distinct, and the **reproductive organs** are of very simple character, consisting merely of ridges or clumps of cells (*gonads*), sometimes enclosed in a membrane, developed at various points on the body-wall, or on the wall of one of the main blood-vessels. The cells of these ovaries or testes may develop *in situ* into perfect ova or sperms; more usually they become detached, and undergo the later stages of their development while floating in the cœlomic fluid.

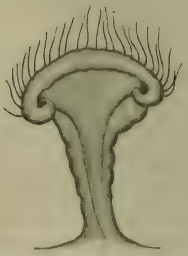


Fig. 360.—One of the ciliated funnels of the posterior nephridia of Echiurus. (After Greef.)

A remarkable instance of extreme **sexual dimorphism** occurs in *Bonellia*. The ordinary large individuals (Fig. 356), to various points in the structure of which reference has been already made, are females. The single, greatly enlarged nephridium contains a spacious cavity, which has been termed the uterus. In the interior of this is found the very small male (Fig. 363). This is not unlike a Planarian in appearance, compressed and covered with cilia, with a pair of ventral hook-like setæ. In the interior of the body bundles of dorso-ventral muscular fibres placed at regular intervals give an appearance of rudimentary segmentation. The alimentary canal is rudimentary and completely closed, both mouth and anus being absent. There is a pair of nephridia placed posteriorly. The sperms, developed from modified cœlomic cells, reach the exterior through a duct, dilated externally into a vesicula seminalis, and opening internally into the cœlome by a funnel-shaped aperture. In *Hamingia*, also, there are imperfectly developed males which are lodged in the nephridia of the female.

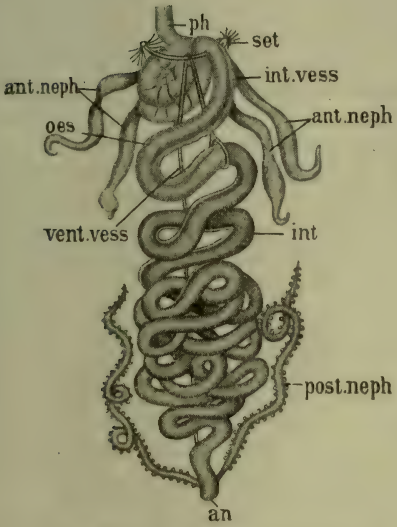


FIG. 361.—**Echiurus,** internal organisation. *an*, anus; *ant. neph*, anterior nephridia; *int*, intestine; *int. vess*, intestinal vessel; *œs*, œsophagus; *post. neph*, posterior nephridia; *vent. vess*, ventral vessel. (After Greef.)

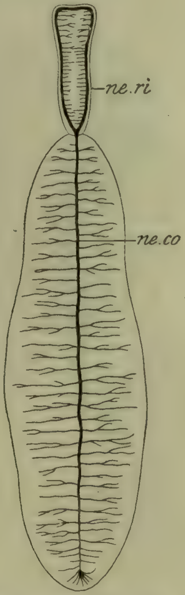


FIG. 362.—**Echiurus,** general outline of the animal with the nervous system (diagrammatic) *ne. co*, nerve cord; *ne. ri*, nerve ring. (After Greef.)

Development.—The larva of Echiurus (Fig. 364) has a well-developed præ-oral or prostomial lobe with a præ-oral and post-oral circlet of cilia, and in other respects closely resembles the trochosphere embryo of a Chætopod. The posterior part of the body elongates, and the mesoblast-bands, developed as in the Chætopoda, become divided into as many as fifteen segments. A circlet of setæ is developed at the anal end, and subsequently the two ventral setæ are formed in the same manner as in the Chætopoda. The præ-oral lobe becomes narrowed to form the cylindrical proboscis of the adult; and the rudimentary segmentation gradually disappears as development advances.

In Bonellia there is unequal segmentation, as in most Chætopoda, resulting in the formation of four large megameres and eight small micromeres: the latter multiply rapidly, and grow over the megameres so as eventually to enclose the latter in a complete layer of ectoderm, save at one point, where there is a gap, the *blastopore.* Here the ectoderm bends inwards to give rise to a continuous mesoderm layer superficial to the megameres. The blastopore soon closes up. The megameres divide to form the cells of the endoderm, among which a lumen only appears comparatively late; *mouth* and *stomodæum* are developed as an outgrowth, at first solid, from the endoderm. The *anus* becomes formed still later by invagination at the hinder end of the body; and a pair of epidermal vesicles which appear at its sides form the rudiments of the

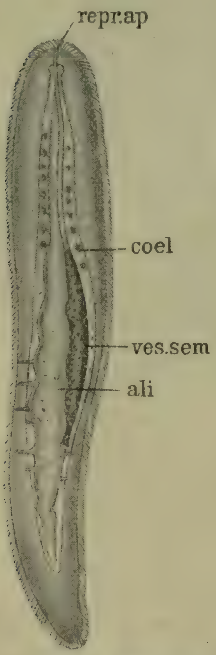


FIG. 363.—Male of **Bonellia.** *ali*, alimentary canal; *cœl*, groups of cœlomic cells destined to give rise to sperms; *repr. ap*, reproductive aperture; *ves. sem*, vesicula seminalis. (After Greef.)

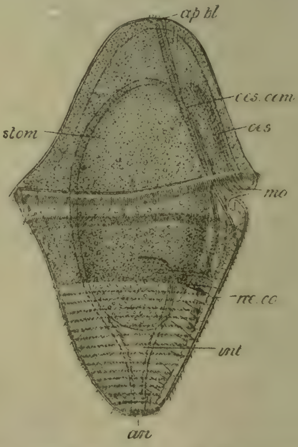


FIG. 364.—Trochosphere of **Echiurus.** *an.* anus; *ap. pl.* apial plate; *int.* intestine; *mo.* mouth; *ne. co.* rudiment of nerve cord; *œs.* œsophagus; *œs. conn.* œsophageal connective; *stom.* stomach. (After Hatschek.)

posterior nephridia. A rudimentary præ-oral lobe becomes established. The mesoderm remains unsegmented, but splits into somatic and splanchnic layers going to form the muscular system, blood-vessels, and other mesodermal organs. Before the alimentary canal is formed the larva, which had previously been spherical with two bands of cilia and a pair of eye-spots, becomes elongated and dorso-ventrally compressed; and becomes covered uniformly with cilia so as to present the general appearance of a Planarian. It becomes converted into the adult female by a metamorphosis, including the elongation of the præ-oral lobe to form the proboscis, and the development of the pair of setæ of the adult. The male never goes through this metamorphosis, but remains in the Planarian stage: it at first adheres to the proboscis of a female, then enters the œsophagus, and afterwards, when sexually mature, enters the cavity of the nephridium.

In the Inermia the early stages of the development closely resemble those of the embryo of one of the Polychæta, and a trochosphere is formed, closly resembling the corresponding stage in the latter class. But at no stage in the development has any trace been observed of the temporary segmentation which forms so marked a feature in the development of Echiurus.

Distribution, Affinities, etc.—The Gephyrea are all marine. They are only capable of very slow creeping locomotion, and live for the most part either in natural rock-fissures, or in burrows which they excavate for themselves either in sand or mud, coral or rock. Their distribution is general; and they occur at considerable depths as well as in shallow water.

The differences between the Inermia and the Armata are so considerable, that there is some doubt whether they ought to be united together in one class. The Inermia diverge most widely from the Chætopoda in the entire absence of setæ and in the absence of segmentation at any stage.

Affinities between Phoronis (p. 328) and the unarmed Gephyrea have often been supposed to exist, and it has by some zoologists been proposed to regard Phoronis as an outlying member of that class. It seems probable, however, that the very manifest resemblances which undoubtedly exist do not indicate a near relationship, but are the result of converging modifications of originally widely different stocks. The most striking of these points of resemblance are two—(1) the approximation of the anus towards the oral aperture, and (2) the presence of the tentacular circlet. But a study of the development shows that these common features are developed in totally different ways in the two cases. The forward position of the anus in the Sipunculida is brought about by a gradual displacement resulting from the growth of the aboral region of the body; and the invagination and evagination by which the corresponding result is attained in Phoronis do not occur. Again, while in Phoronis the tentacles of the adult may be looked upon as formed by the development of processes along the line occupied by the post-oral circlet of cilia, in the Sipunculida the tentacular lobes have nothing to do with the post-oral circlet, but are formed by the growth of a series of lobes from the margin of the mouth itself. The larva of the Sipunculida again is, as already pointed out, very nearly related to the larva of the Chætopoda, and is a typical trochosphere; while the Actinotrocha larva of Phoronis diverges somewhat widely from that type.

CLASS III.—ARCHI-ANNELIDA.

More primitive in some respects than the other Annulata are the Archi-Annelida, comprising only the two families of the *Polygordiidæ* and the *Histriodrilidæ.* They are all marine and all of small size. The prostomium (Fig. 365, *pr. st*) is small, the peristomium (*per. st*) large. The segments (*Mtmr*) are only faintly marked off externally for the most part, though the internal division of

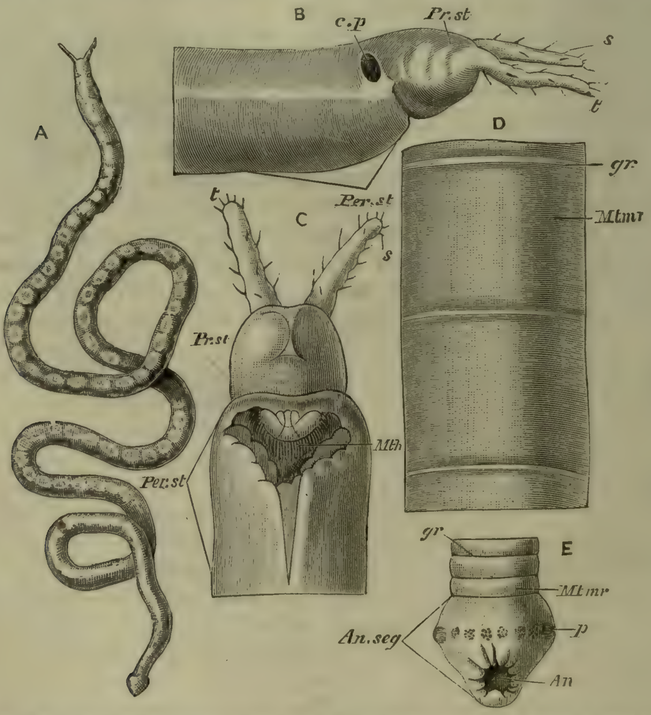


Fig. 365.—**Polygordius neapolitanus.** *A*, the living animal, dorsal aspect, about five times natural size; *B*, anterior end, lateral view; *C*, ventral view of the same; D, portion of the body showing the metameres; *E*, ventral view of the posterior extremity; *An.* anus; *An. seg.* anal segment; *c. p.* ciliated pit; *gr.* grooves between metameres; *Mth.* mouth; *Mtmr.* metameres; *p.* papillæ; *per.st.* peristomium; *pr.st.* prostomium; *s.* setæ on tentacles (*t*). (From Parker's *Biology*, after Fraipont.)

the cœlome by means of septa is complete. Parapodia and setæ are absent, but the prostomium bears a pair of tentacles (*t*). Several pairs of simple nephridia are present. The position of the nervous system (Fig. 367) is more primitive than in any of the rest of the Annulata, with the exception of the Archi-Chætopoda; it is continuous with the epidermis, and not separated from it by mesodermal elements as in the others. A pair of ciliated grooves (*c. p.*) are probably to be looked upon as organs of special sense.

The *Histriodrilidæ* are minute worms which live as parasites on the lobster (*Astacus*), feeding on its eggs. The body consists of only about eight narrow segments. The head has sensory tubercles and two short processes having the function of limbs: a similar but larger pair of limbs occurs on the last segment of the body. The alimentary canal consists of œsophagus, intestine, and rectum; the œsophagus contains three horny jaws. A pair of closely united cerebral ganglia are situated in the prostomium, and are connected behind by œsophageal connectives with a ventral cord, which is dilated into a ganglion in each segment. There are four pairs of simple segmental organs in the female, five in the male. The sexes are separate; the gonads, whether ovaries or testes, are formed by the germination of the visceral layer of the peritoneum. Genital ducts are present in both sexes.

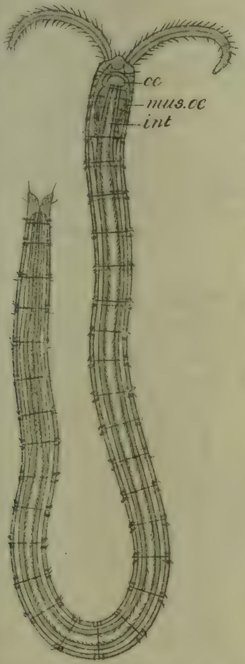


Fig. 366.—**Protodrilus,** entire animal. *int.* intestine; *mus. œ.* muscular appendage of œsophagus; *œs.* œsophagus. (After Hatschek.)

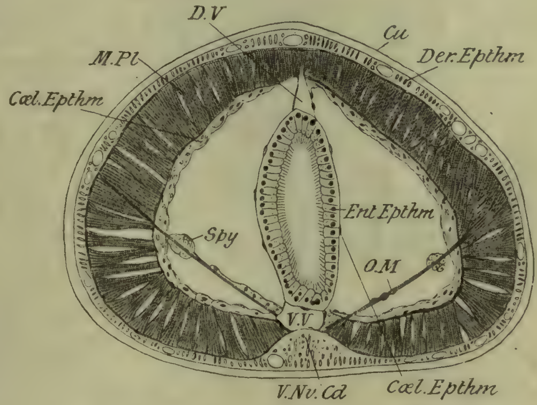


Fig. 367.—**Polygordius neapolitanus,** transverse section of a male specimen. *Cœl. Epthm.* parietal layer of cœlomic epithelium; *Cœl. Epithm.'* visceral or splanchnic layer of the same; *Cu.* cuticle; *Der. Epithm.* deric epithelium; *D. V.* dorsal vessel; *Ent. Epthm.* enteric epithelium; *M. Pl.* muscle plates; *O. M.* oblique muscles; *Spy,* immature gonads; *V. Nr. Cd.* ventral nerve cord continuous with deric epithelium; *V. V.* ventral vessel. (From Parker's *Biology*, after Fraipont.)

The family *Polygordiidæ* includes two genera—*Polygordius* and *Protodrilus.* There are a pair of prostomial tentacles, long in Protodrilus, short in Polygordius. The segmentation is only very indistinctly marked externally in Protodrilus; in Polygordius it is indistinct in front, but better marked behind. In *Polygordius lacteus* a series of tooth-like processes occur round the anus, and in front a circlet of adhesive papillæ. In Protodrilus there is a ventral ciliated groove. There is a vascular system with dorsal and ventral longitudinal vessels. In each segment is a pair of simple nephridia. In Protodrilus there are two ventral nerve-cords, connected together by transverse commissures: in Polygordius the cord (Fig. 367, *V. Nv. cd*) is single; in neither genus is there any trace

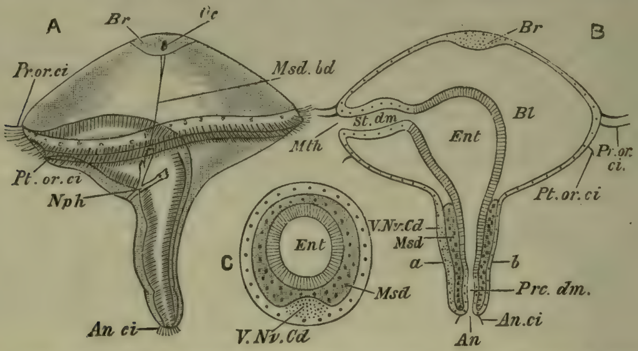

A
Br
Oc
Pr.or.ci
Msd. bd
Pt. or. ci
Nph
An ci
Br
B
Bl
St. dm
Mth
Ent
Pr. or. ci.
Pt. or. ci
C
Ent
V.Nv.Cd
Msd
a
b
Msd
Prc. dm.
An. ci
V. Nv. Cd
An

Fig. 368.—Trochosphere of **Polygordius neapolitanus**. *A*, lateral view of entire larva; *B*, diagrammatic vertical section; *C*, transverse section through the plane *ab* in *B*; *An.* anus; *An. ci.* anal cilia; *Bl.* blastocœle; *Br*, apical plate; *Ent.* enteron; *Msd.* mesoderm; *Msd. bd.* mesodermal bands; *Nph*, head-kidney; *Oc*, eye-spot; *Pr. or. ci.* cilia of prototroch; *Prc. dm.* proctodæum; *Pt. or. ci.* post-oral cilia; *St. dm.* stomodæum; *V. Nv. Cd.* ventral nerve cord. (From Parker's *Biology*, partly after Fraipont.)

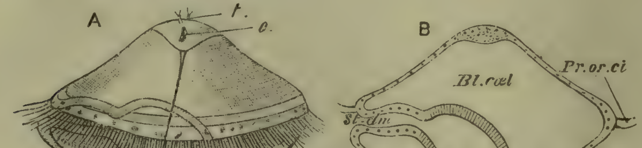

A
t.
e.
B
Pr.or.ci
Bl.cœl
St.dm
Pt.or.ci.
D¹
Der Epthm
Msd (Som)
D²
Der Epthm
C
Msd (Spl.)
Cœl
a
Cœl
b
Msd (som)
Msd.(spl)
D³
Der Epthm
Msd. (Som)
Sep.
M Pl
Prc. dm.
Pr. an. ci.
Msd (Som)
V. Nv Cd
Pr.an.ci
Cœl. Epthm
An ci.
An.ci

Fig. 369.—Later stage in the development of **Polygordius neapolitanus,** in which the posterior part of the trochosphere has become elongated and segmented; *A*, entire larva; *B*, vertical section; *C*, transverse section along the plane *ab* in *B*; *D*¹—*D*³. three stages in the development of the somatic mesoderm; *Cœl.* cœlome; *cœl. Epthm.* cœlomic epithelium; *Der. Epthm.* deric epithelium; *M.pl.* muscle plate; *Msd.* (*som.*), somatic mesoderm; *Msd.* (*spl*), splanchnic mesoderm; *O.* eye; *t.* tentacle. Other letters as in preceding figure. (From Parker's *Biology*, partly after Fraipont.)

of ganglia. The sexes are united in Protodrilus, ovaries occurring in all the first seven segments, and testes in some of those immediately following. In Polygordius the sexes are separate; the ovaries or testes (Fig. 367, *spy*) are developed in the posterior segments. There are no special reproductive ducts.

The larva of Polygordius is a typical trochosphere (Fig. 368), and its metamorphosis into the adult worm (Fig. 369) takes places as in the Polychæta in all essential respects.

CLASS IV.—HIRUDINEA.

1. Example of the Class—*The Medicinal Leech* (*Hirudo medicinalis* and *H. quinquestriata*).

The medicinal Leech is found in ponds, swamps, and slowly flowing streams in many parts of the world. *H. medicinalis* is the common British species: *H. quinquestriata* is an allied Australian form.

External Characters.—It is a vermiform animal, some 6–10 cm. (2–3 inches) in length, but is capable of contracting and elongating itself so as to produce great alterations in form and proportion. It moves by "looping" movements, and is also a good swimmer. The body (Fig. 370) is depressed or flattened dorso-ventrally, the dorsal surface convex, the ventral flattened. The anterior end presents a ventrally directed cup-like hollow, the *anterior sucker* (*a. s.*), in the middle of which is a small aperture, the *mouth* (*mth.*). The hinder end bears a disc-like *posterior sucker* (*p. s.*), also directed downwards, and at its junction with the trunk, on the dorsal surface, is the very small median *anus* (*a.*). The animal is brightly coloured, the dorsal surface in *H. medicinalis* being longitudinally banded with alternate stripes of greenish grey and rusty red, the ventral surface greenish yellow, spotted with black: in *H. quinquestriata* the whole under-surface is rust-coloured.

The whole body is encircled by close-set transverse grooves, dividing it into *annuli.* These, like the annuli of some Earthworms, are more numerous than the true segments or metameres, the study of the internal organs showing that, except at the two extremities, each segment contains five annuli. There are also external characters by which the actual segmentation is plainly indicated. The rust-coloured streaks on the back of *H. medicinalis* are spotted with black, and at every fifth annulus the spots are larger than on the intervening rings: the annuli thus marked are the fifth or last of their respective segments. Moreover, the same rings bear on the ventral surface minute paired apertures, the *nephridiopores* or excretory apertures (*n. p.* 1–17): of these there are altogether seventeen pairs, marking the fifth rings of the sixth to the twenty-second segments.

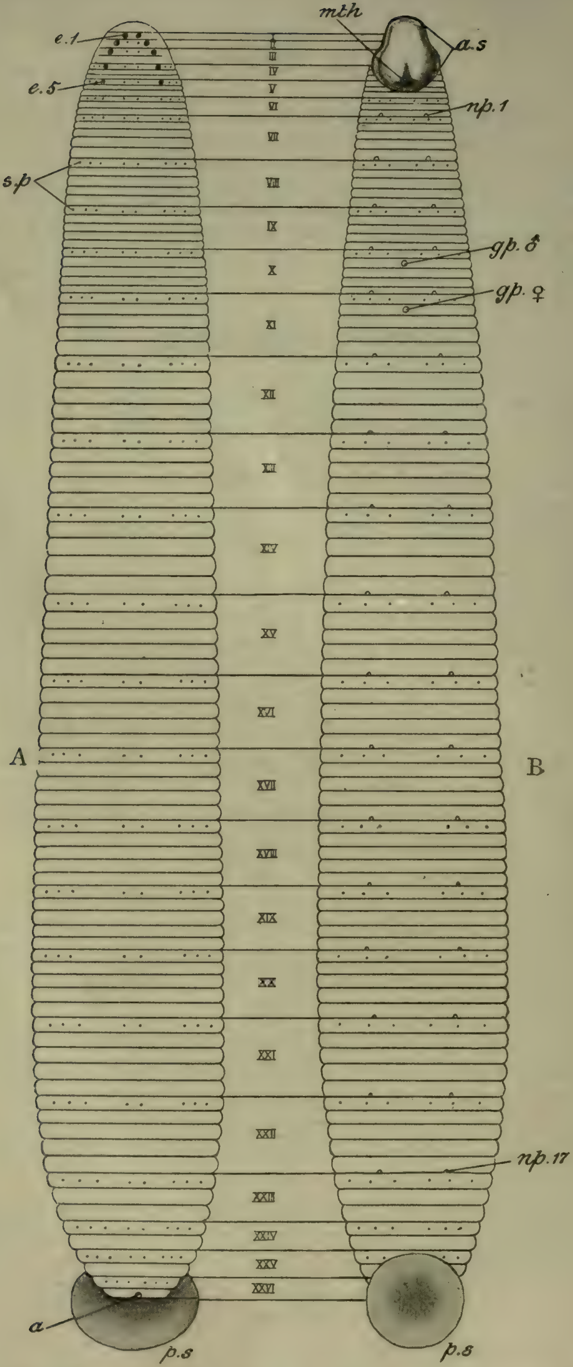

mth
a.s
e.1
e.5
np.1
s.p
gp.♂
gp.♀
I
II
III
IV
V
VI
VII
VIII
IX
X
XI
XII
XIII
XIV
XV
XVI
XVII
XVIII
XIX
XX
XXI
XXII
XXIII
XXIV
XXV
XXVI
A
B
np.17
a
p.s
p.s

FIG. 370.—**Hirudo medicinalis.** A, dorsal; B, ventral aspect; *a.* anus; *a. s.* anterior sucker; *e. 1.* first pair of eyes; *e. 5.* fifth pair; *g. p.* ♂. male gonopore; *g. p.* ♀. female gonopore; *mth.* mouth; *n. p. 1.* first pair of nephridiopores; *n. p. 17.* seventeenth pair; *p. s.* posterior sucker; *s. p.* sensory papillæ; I—XXVI. segments. (Partly after Whitman.)

In front of the first and behind the last pair of nephridiopores one important external mark of segmentation fails, but a further indication is furnished by the presence on the first ring of each undoubted metamere of a number of delicate transparent elevations, the *segmental papillæ* (*s. p.*), which have probably a sensory function. These structures are found along the whole length of the body, and as they mark the first ring of all those segments the extent of which can be checked by the nephridiopores, it is legitimate to assume their segmental value in the anterior and posterior regions, where the controlling excretory apertures are absent. By the clue thus furnished it is found that there are five segments in front of that bearing the first pair of nephridiopores, and four behind that bearing the last pair, making a total of twenty-six metameres: of these the first six and the last four have less than the normal number of rings.

The anterior sucker bears on its dorsal surface five pairs of small black spots, the *eyes* (*e.* 1, *e.* 5), the arrangement of which shows them to be special modifications of sensory papillæ, since they occupy in the first five segments the precise position occupied in the sixth and following segments by segmental papillæ.

The perfectly definite and comparatively small number of metameres in the leech offers a striking point of contrast with what we have met with in the Chætopoda, and is to be looked upon as a mark of higher differentiation.

Body-wall.—The body is covered externally by a thin cuticle (Fig. 371, *cu.*), which is constantly being cast off in patches and renewed. Beneath it is an epidermis (*d. ep.*) consisting of hammer-shaped cells, separated at their inner ends by spaces in which blood capillaries run. The blood is thus brought into close relation with the surrounding water, and the skin becomes a highly efficient respiratory organ. The space between the epidermis and the enteric canal is filled by a peculiar form of connective-tissue, consisting of a gelatinous matrix with interspersed cells and fibres. Many of the cells are large, branched, and abundantly pigmented, and have their branches directly connected with the smaller blood-vessels. Surrounding the enteric canal is the peculiar and characteristic *botryoidal tissue* (*b. t.*) consisting of branched blood-vessels, the walls of which are formed of large cells loaded with black pigment.

Numerous unicellular glands are produced from the epidermis: the gland-cells themselves lie in the connective-tissue, and are continued into long ducts which open on the surface. Special glands in the ninth, tenth, and eleventh segments secrete the substance from which the cocoon is formed (*vide infra*, p. 474): the segments in question therefore constitute the *clitellum*.

The **muscular system** is well developed, and consists of an outer layer of circular (*c. m.*) and an inner of longitudinal (*l. m.*)

fibres. There are also dorso-ventral fibres (*d. v. m.*) passing vertically between the pouches of the crop (*vide infra*), and radial fibres extending from the wall of the enteric canal to the integument: these take the place of the septa of Chætopods.

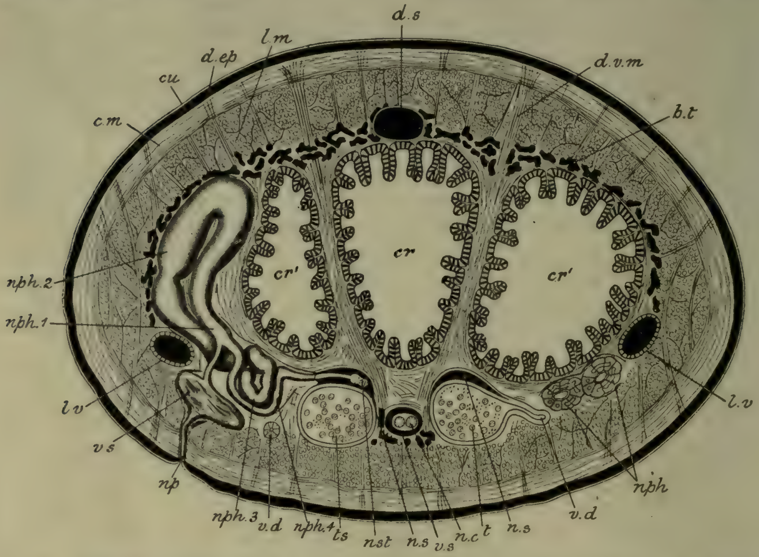


FIG. 371.—**Hirudo medicinalis**; Transverse section. *b. t.* botryoidal tissue; *c. m.* circular muscles; *cr.* crop; *cr'.* diverticula of crop; *cu.* cuticle; *d. ep.* epidermis; *d. s.* dorsal sinus; *d. v. m.* dorsal-ventral muscles; *l. m.* longitudinal muscles; *l. v.* lateral vessel; *n. c.* nerve-cord; *nph. 1—4*, nephridium; *n. s.* nephrostomial sinus; *nst.* nephrostome; *ts.* testis; *v. d.* vas deferens; *vs*, vesicle of nephridium; *v. s.* ventral sinus. (After Marshall and Hurst.)

The **alimentary organs** are greatly modified in accordance with the blood-sucking habits of the animal. Surrounding the mouth are three *jaws*, one median and dorsal (Fig. 374, *d. j.*), the other two ventro-lateral (*v. l. j.*). Each (Fig. 372) has the form of a compressed muscular cushion, with a sharp, evenly curved, free edge covered with chitin, which is produced into numerous serrations or *teeth*: by means of its muscles each jaw can be moved backwards and forwards through a certain arc, and the three, acting together, produce the characteristic triradiate bite in the skin of the animal upon which the Leech preys.

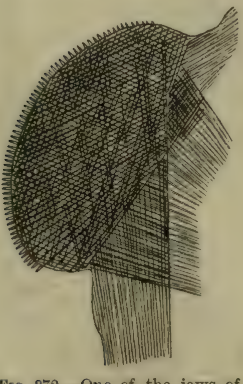


FIG. 372.—One of the jaws of **Hirudo medicinalis.** (After Leuchart.

The mouth leads into a muscular *pharynx* (Figs. 373 and 374, *ph.*) situated in the fourth to the seventh segments.

Radiating muscles pass from its walls to the integument, and by their contraction dilate its cavity and suck in blood from the wounds made by the jaws. Around the pharynx are numerous unicellular *salivary glands,* which open close to the mouth: their secretion has the effect of preventing the coagulation of the blood taken as food.

The pharynx communicates by a very small aperture with the second and largest division of the enteric canal, the huge *crop* (*cr.*), a thin-walled tube extending from the eighth to the eighteenth segment, and produced into eleven pairs of lateral pouches (*cr.* 1, *cr.* 11), the first ten of which are directed outwards and correspond each to a segment, while the eleventh (*cr.* 11) passes directly backwards as far as the twenty-fourth segment. The crop is capable of great dilatation, and its form varies greatly according to whether it is empty or gorged with blood. Posteriorly the crop communicates by a minute aperture with the *stomach* (*st.*), a

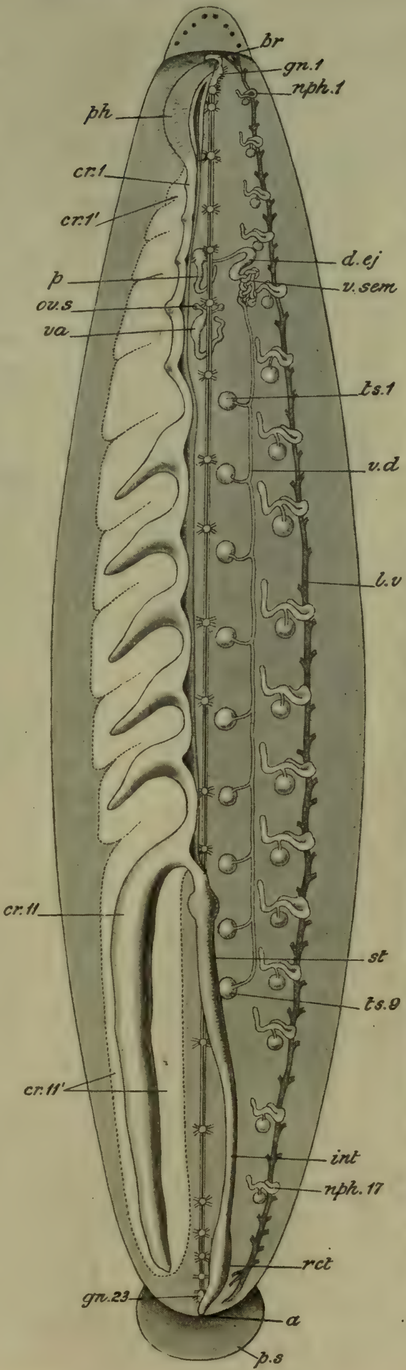


Fig. 373.—**Hirudo quinquestriata.** Dissection from the dorsal aspect; *a.* anus; *br.* brain; *cr.* 1, first diverticulum of crop, contracted; *cr.* 1', the same expanded; *cr.* 11, the last diverticulum of the crop, contracted; *cr.* 11', the same expanded; *d. ej.* ductus ejaculatorius; *gn.* 1—23, ganglia of ventral nerve-cord; *int.* intestine; *l. v.* lateral vessel; *nph.* 1—17, nephridia; *ov. s.* ovarian sac; *p.* penis; *ph.* pharynx; *p. s.* posterior sucker; *rct.* rectum; *st.* stomach; *ts.* 1—9, testes; *va.* vagina; *v. d.* vas deferens; *v. sem.* vesicula seminalis.

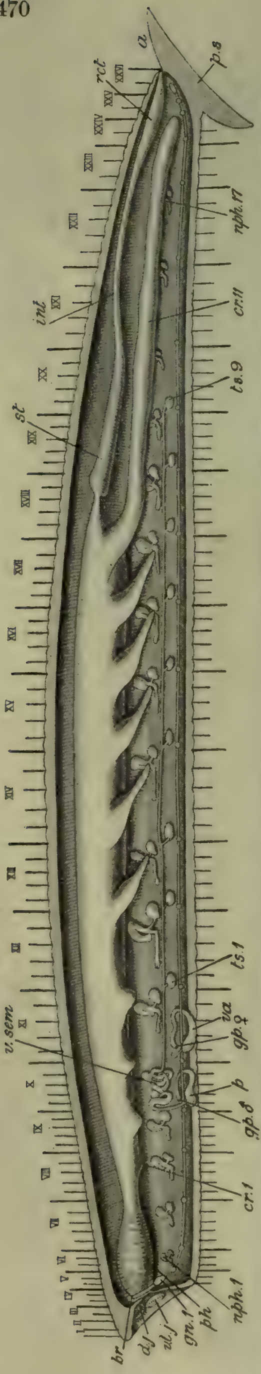


FIG. 374.—**Hirudo quinquestriata.** Dissection from the left side, semi-diagramatic; the longer vertical lines mark the metameres, the shorter lines the annuli. Lettering as in Fig. 373, except *d. j.* dorsal jaw; *g. p.* ♂, male gonopore; *g. p.* ♀, female gonopore; *v. l. j.* ventro-lateral jaw.

tubular chamber with a dilated anterior end, and having its wall produced internally into a spiral fold: this is the digestive portion of the canal; the blood is passed into it from the crop with extreme slowness, and undergoes an immediate change, its colour turning from red to green. The digestion of a whole cropful of blood takes many months. The stomach is continued into a narrow *intestine* (*int.*): this passes into a somewhat dilated rectum (*rct.*) which turns slightly upwards and opens by the anus (*an.*) in the last annulus.

The **excretory system** consists of seventeen pairs of *ectonephridia* (*nph.* 1–17), situated in segments 6–22. A typical nephridium (Fig. 375) has the general form of a loop passing upwards from the ventral body-wall, produced into an offshoot which extends inwards (mesially) to the corresponding testis, and connected posteriorly with a small bladder or *vesicle* (*vs.*). The principal loop is divisible into two chief parts, the *main lobe* (*m. l.*) and the *apical lobe* (*a. l.*), connected with one another by a short *recurrent lobe* (*r. l.*): the offshoot to the testis is known as the *testis-lobe* (*t. l.*); it is absent in *H. quinquestriata*.

All these parts are formed of a close-set mass of gland-cells, traversed by a complex system of minute intra-cellular passages or *ductules*, which finally unite into a comparatively wide inter-cellular tube or *duct:* this winds through the main and apical lobes, and finally enters the vesicle, which opens posteriorly in the last annulus of the segment. The free end of the testis-lobe is swollen into a lobed mass which lies in a blood sinus (Fig.

371, *nst*) in connection with the testis: comparison with other Hirudinea shows that this dilated end of the nephridium represents a nephrostome which has lost its open funnel-like end in correlation with the absence of a distinct cœlome. The cells of the botryoidal tissue appear to carry waste matter to the nephridia.

There is a complex **vascular system**, containing, like that of the Earthworm, red blood, the plasma coloured with hæmoglobin and containing sparsely distributed colourless corpuscles. But a striking difference from the preceding annulate types is found in the fact that the blood-containing spaces are of two kinds—*blood-vessels* proper, having muscular walls; and *blood-sinuses*, the walls of which are devoid of muscle.

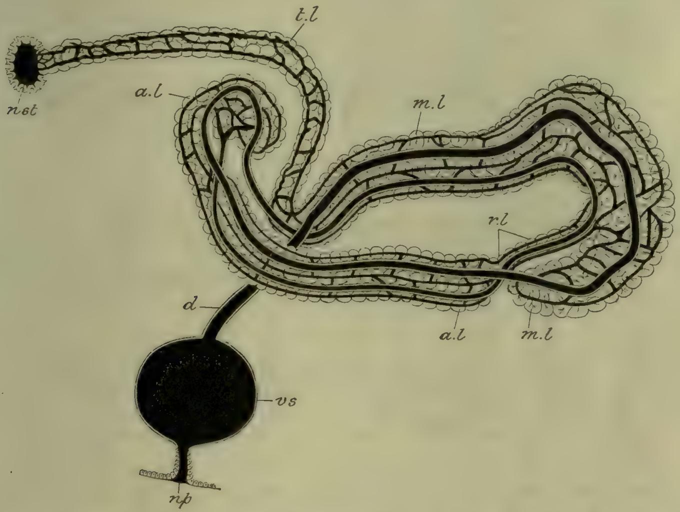


FIG. 375.—Nephridium of **Hirudo medicinalis.** *a. l.* apical lobe; *m. l.* middle lobe; *np.* nephridiopore; *nst.* nephrostome; *r. l.* recurrent lobe; *t. l.* testis lobe; *vs.* vesicle; *vs. d.* vesicle duct. (After Bourne.)

The two principal blood-vessels are lateral in position (Figs. 373 and 376, *l. v.*), running fore and aft at the level of the middle of the nephridia and uniting with one another at the anterior and posterior ends of the body. They send off branches both dorsally and ventrally, some of which anastomose with one another. The ultimate branches break up into capillaries in the integument, nephridia, &c.

The two principal sinuses are respectively dorsal (*d. s.*) and ventral (*v. s.*), the former lying just above the enteric canal in the middle dorsal line, the latter occupying a similar position on the ventral side, and enclosing the ventral nerve-cord. The two sinuses are in connection with one another posteriorly, and are also in communication, by means of their branches, with the capillaries of the skin. There is thus an indirect connection, by means of capillaries, between the blood-vessels and the sinuses, but no direct communication exists. The sinuses in which the nephrostomes are lodged open into the ventral sinus. As we shall see more particularly in the general account of the class, the sinuses represent a greatly reduced cœlome.

The **nervous system** is of the usual annulate type. There is a small *brain* (Figs. 373 and 374, *br.*) situated above the anterior end of the pharynx immediately behind the median dorsal jaw. It is connected by a very short pair of œsophageal connectives with the ventral nerve-cord, which consists of twenty-three well-marked rounded ganglia (*gn.* 1–23) united by delicate double connectives. The first, or sub-œsophageal ganglion is larger than the others, and is shown by development to be made up of five united pairs of embryonic ganglia: the last ganglion is also of unusual size, and results from the fusion of six pairs of ganglia distinct in the embryo. The whole ventral nerve-cord is contained in the ventral sinus. Nerves are given off from the ganglia, but not, as in the Earthworm, from the connectives, in which also, nerve-cells are wholly absent.

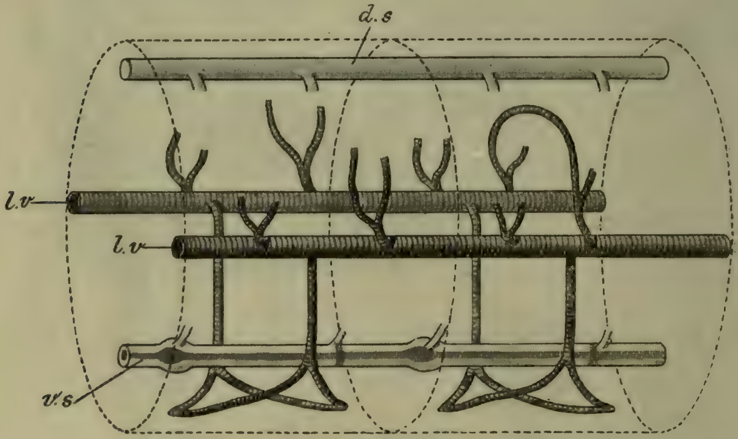


FIG. 376.—Diagram of principal blood-channels of **Leech**. *d. s.* dorsal sinus; *l. v.* lateral vessel; *v. s.* ventral sinus containing nerve-cord.

The principal **sense-organs** are the *eyes*, of which there are five pairs (Fig. 377) situated round the margin of the anterior sucker, on the dorsal side, one pair in each of the first five segments. They occupy positions taken in the succeeding segments by lateral sense-organs, with which they are obviously homologous. The structure of the eyes is peculiar: they are cylindrical in form (Fig. 377), the long axis of the cylinder being at right angles to the surface of the body. The outer layer is formed of black pigmented tissue (*pi.*), surrounding a layer of large, clear, refractive cells (*p.*), which occupy the greater part of the organ. A nerve (*n.*) enters at one side, and is continued up the axis of the cylinder by a row of sensory cells.

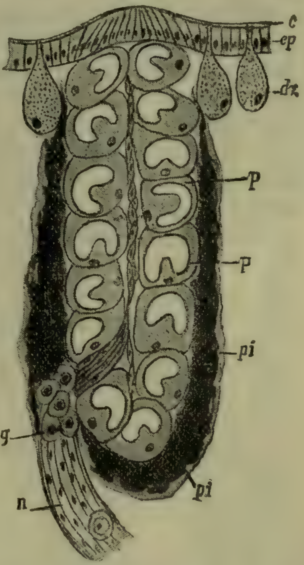


FIG. 377.—Section of eye of **Leech**. *c.* cuticle; *d 3*, gland-cells; *ep.* epidermis; *g*, nerve-cells; *n.* nerve; *p*, refractive cells; *pi.* pigment. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy.*)

The margin of the anterior sucker also bears a large number of *goblet-shaped organs*, which are very probably organs of taste. The minute structure both of these and of the segmental sense-organs is very similar to that of the eyes. The function of the segmental sense-organs is unknown.

Reproductive Organs. — The Leech is monœcious. There are nine pairs of *testes* (Figs. 373 and 374, *ts.*), in the form of small spherical sacs, situated in segments 12–20. Each gives off from its outer surface a narrow *efferent duct*, which opens into a common *vas deferens* (*v. d.*). In the tenth segment the vas deferens increases in width and forms a complex coil, the *vesicula seminalis* (*v. sem.*), from which is continued anteriorly a somewhat dilated muscular tube, the *ductus ejaculatorius* (*d. ej.*). From each ejaculatory duct a narrow tube passes to the base of the *penis* (*p.*), a curved eversible muscular organ which opens on the ventral surface of the second annulus of the tenth segment, in the middle line. The base of the penis is surrounded by a number of unicellular glands, which constitute the *prostate* and secrete a substance by which the sperms are aggregated into masses called *spermatophores.*

The *ovaries* are coiled filamentous bodies, each enclosed in a small globular *ovarian sac* (*ov. s.*), situated in the eleventh segment. From each ovarian sac a short *oviduct* passes inwards and backwards, and unites with its fellow into a median duct, the walls of which are supplied with albumen-secreting gland-cells. The common oviduct opens into a curved muscular tube, the *vagina* (*va.*), which opens in the middle line on the ventral surface of the second annulus of the eleventh segment, *i.e.* one segment behind the male aperture.

It will be noticed that the ovaries of the Leech form a single pair, while the testes are multiple and segmental: also that, while the gonads and efferent ducts of both sexes are paired, the penis and the vagina are median and unpaired. In the latter respect the contrast between the Leech and the Annulata previously discussed is very striking. Further important peculiarities are the enclosure of the ovary in a sac from which a duct leads directly to the exterior, and the fact that the testes are hollow sacs discharging the sperms into a cavity from which they pass directly to the efferent ducts. In Chætopods, it will be remembered, the gonods lie freely in the cœlome, their products—ova or sperms—are discharged from their external surfaces and carried off either by ordinary nephridia or by nephridia specially modified into gonoducts. It seems tolerably certain that the cavities both of the ovarian sacs and of the testes represent shut-off portions of an almost obsolete cœlome, and that their ducts are meso-nephridia.

Development.—When breeding two Leeches copulate, and one impregnates the other by passing spermatophores through its penis into the vagina. Simultaneous mutual impregnation has also been described. The clitellar segments (ninth to eleventh) secrete a cocoon (Fig. 378), into which spermatophores, ova, and a quantity of albumen, secreted by the albumen-glands, are passed. The animal then withdraws its head from the cocoon, the two ends of which close up by their own elasticity, producing a closed capsule in which embryonic development takes place. Segmentation is unequal, and results in the formation of a globular embryo, which, after hatching, swims about in the cocoon, actively devouring its albuminous contents, and finally escaping in a form closely resembling the adult.

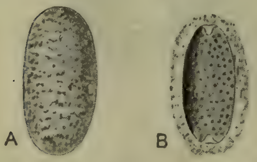


FIG. 378.—The cocoon of **Hirudo.** A, entire; B, in section. (After Leuchart.)

2. DISTINCTIVE CHARACTERS AND CLASSIFICATION.

The Hirudinea are Annulata in which the body consists of a limited and definite number of segments, and is marked externally by secondary rings or annuli, a variable number of which go to a segment. The anterior end of the body is suctorial, and several of the hindmost segments are fused to form a powerful sucking disc, which is directed downwards and backwards. The mouth lies in the anterior sucker, the anus is usually dorsal and immediately in front of the posterior sucker. The cœlome is always more or less obliterated by connective-tissue, and is represented by sinuses of varying dimensions which contain blood. True blood-vessels, with muscular walls, are also present. The nervous system consists of a brain united by short œsophageal connectives to a ganglionated ventral nerve-cord. The excretory organs are segmentally arranged nephridia. The sexes are united, the testes numerous and usually segmentally arranged, the ovaries a single pair. The testes have the form of sacs, and discharge their products internally; the ovaries either have a similar structure or are band-like and enclosed in ovarian sacs into which the ova are set free. The penis and the vagina are unpaired, and open by median apertures, the male anterior to the female, on the ventral surface of the body. Development is usually direct, *i.e.* unaccompanied by a metamorphosis. Leeches are either free-living or are permanently or intermittently parasitic: they inhabit either the land, fresh-water, or the sea.

The class is divided into the following two orders:—

ORDER 1.—RHYNCHOBDELLIDA.

Hirudinea in which the anterior part of the body can be protruded and retracted so as to form a proboscis or introvert.

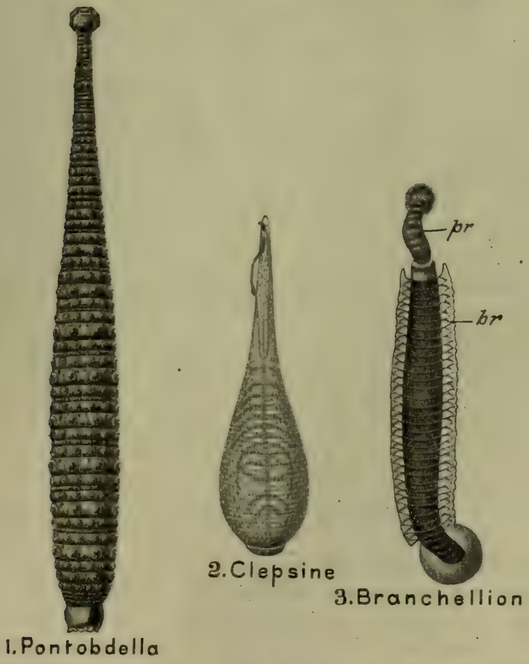


FIG. 379.—Three **Rhynchobdellida.** *br.* gills; *pr.* everted proboscis. (1, after Bourne, 2 and 3, after Cuvier.)

This order includes *Clepsine*, parasitic on Snails, Frogs, &c.: *Piscicola*, on fresh-water Fishes; *Pontobdella* and *Branchellion*, on marine Fishes (Fig. 379).

ORDER 2.—GNATHOBDELLIDA.

Hirudinea in which there is no proboscis: the mouth is usually provided with three toothed jaws.

This order includes *Hirudo*, the common Leech, parasitic on Vertebrata; *Aulostoma*, the Horse-leech, free-living and carnivorous; *Trocheta*, of subterranean habits; *Hœmadipsa*, the Land-Leech.

Systematic Position of the Example.

Hirudo belongs to the family *Hirudinidœ*, of the order *Gnathobdellida.*

The absence of a proboscis places it in the order *Gnathobdellida:* the possession of ten eyes, and the presence of five rings to all the segments except a few at the anterior and posterior ends, distinguishes it as a member of the family Hirudinidæ: the genus Hirudo is distinguished by the constant presence of twenty-six segments and of 102 annuli.

3. GENERAL ORGANISATION.

In the essential features of their organisation the Leeches are a very uniform group: there are, however, a few interesting modifications of structure which must be referred to.

Form and Size.—Most kinds do not exceed a few centimetres in length, but the American species *Macrobdella valdiviana* is said to attain a length of 76 cm. ($2\frac{1}{2}$ feet). The number of annuli to a segment varies from three to five, but the general form of the body is remarkably uniform, the external differences between various species depending largely on colour and on the development of papillæ, which in some cases are large and prominent.

The **proboscis** (Fig. 380), the possession of which is distinctive of the Rhynchobdellida, is simply the retractile anterior end of the body, which, by the action of special muscles, can be drawn back into a temporary sheath. The organ is thus an *introvert*, like that of Gephyrea Inermia.

The chief differences in the structure of the **enteric canal** depend upon the varying number, or, in some cases, the total absence, of lateral pouches to the crop; for instance, the horse-leech has only a single pair, corresponding to the eleventh pair in Hirudo, while Nephelis has none at all. In the Rhynchobdellida there is a distinct slender gullet (Fig. 380, *gul*) leading from the pharynx to the crop (*cr.*), and thrown into a coil when the proboscis is retracted. Among the Gnathobdellida the median jaw is absent in some land-leeches, and in other species all three jaws are rudimentary or absent.

The varying development of the **blood-vessels** and **sinuses** presents many points of interest tending to explain the condition of things described above in the medicinal leech. In the latter, as we have seen, there are lateral vessels with contractile muscular walls, and dorsal and ventral sinuses with non-contractile walls. In *Pontobdella*, one of the Rhynchobdellida, there are dorsal (Fig. 381, *2*, *d.v.*) and ventral (*v.v.*) as well as lateral vessels, and lateral (*l.s.*) as well as dorsal and ventral sinuses, and in each case the vessel is enclosed in the corresponding sinus. The ventral sinus (*v.s.*) also contains the nerve-cord (*n.c.*) and the ovaries (*ov.*), and offshoots of it surround the testes (*ts.*) and the nephrostomes (*nst.*). This arrangement clearly suggests the partial obliteration, by growths of connective tissue, of an originally continuous cœlome. Another interesting condition occurs in Nephelis (*3*), in which the middle region of the body contains a series of paired, metamerically arranged spaces (*c.*), surrounded by botryoidal tissue, and containing the nephrostomes. Development seems to show that these cavities are derived from true cœlomic spaces in the embryo, formed, as in Chætopoda, by a splitting of the mesoderm in each segment.

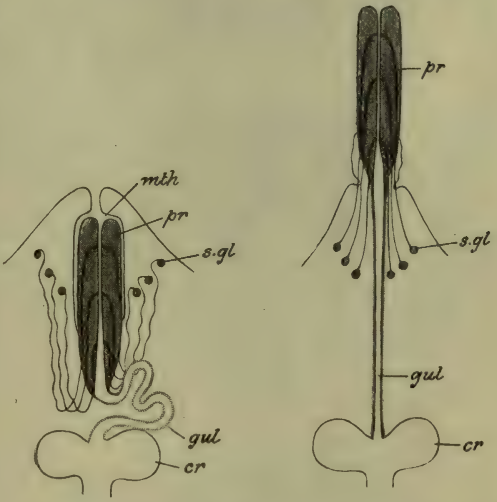


FIG. 380.—Proboscis of **Clepsine**. A, retracted; B, everted; *cr.* crop; *gul.* gullet; *mth.* mouth; *pr,* introvert; *s. gl.* salivary glands. (After Bourne.)

In most instances the skin, with its abundant supply of capillaries, constitutes the only **respiratory organ,** but in *Branchellion* (Fig. 379, *3*) a Rhynchobdellid parasitic on the Electric Rays (*Torpedo* and *Hypnos*) and on one of the Australasian Skates (*Raja nasuta*), differentiated respiratory organs or *gills* (*br.*) are present in the form of delicate lateral outgrowths of the segments.

In most members of the class the **nephridia** are formed on the same general type as those of Hirudo, but differ in the structure of the nephrostomes, which may be ordinary ciliated funnels, or may be more or less degenerate, as in Hirudo. In the Rhynchobdellid Pontobdella a very interesting modification of the nephridial system occurs. Instead of distinct nephridia, there is found on the ventral surface of the body a very complex network (Fig. 382, *nph.*), which sends off on each side of each segment a short branch terminating in a nephrostome (*nst.*), and a similar branch which opens externally (*np.*). This arrangement reminds us of the excretory system of certain Earthworms and of Turbellaria.

The **nervous system** always closely resembles that of Hirudo, as also do the **sense-organs**. The number of eyes is subject to considerable variation: they may be developed on the posterior sucker, or may be absent altogether.

Reproductive Organs.—The *testes* usually have the segmental arrangement found in Hirudo, their number varying from five to twelve pairs. But in Nephelis they are very numerous, and are not arranged segmentally. In the Rhynchobdellida the muscular penis is absent, its place being taken by an eversible sac or *bursa copulatrix.* The form of the ovary with its containing sac in Hirudo is exceptional. As a rule, there is an elongated hollow ovary, producing ova from its epithelial

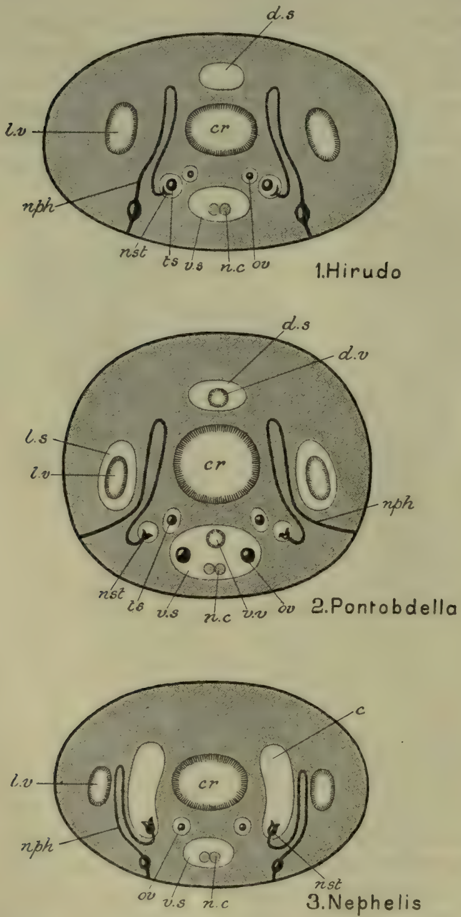


FIG. 381.—Transverse sections of three **Leeches**; diagrammatic. *c.* cœlomic spaces; *cr.* crop; *d. s.* dorsal sinus; *d. v.* dorsal vessel; *l. s.* lateral sinus; *l. v.* lateral vessel; *n. c.* nerve-cord; *neph.* nephridium; *nst.* nephrostome; *ov.* ovary; *ts.* testis; *v. s.* ventral sinus; *v. v.* ventral vessel. (After Bourne.)

Y OF CALIFORNIA

lining, and thus agreeing very closely in structure with the testis.

In Clepsine, a fresh-water Rhynchobdellid, copulation in the ordinary sense of the word has never been observed, but one individual has been seen to deposit one or more spermatophores on any part of the body of another—often on the back. The spermatophore, which is nearly 3½ mm. long, apparently exerts a solvent action on the skin, since, after a short interval, the spermatic fluid streams through the skin into the cœlomic spaces, probably making its way at last to the ovaries. This extraordinary process of *hypodermic impregnation* probably takes place in other genera, but has been most closely followed in Clepsine.

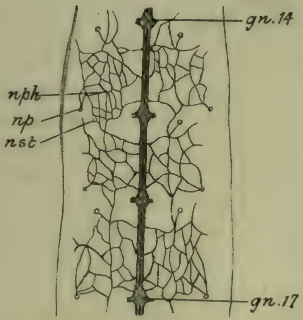


FIG. 382.—Nephridial system of **Pontobdella.** *gn. 14*, *gn. 17*, ganglia of nerve-cord; *np.* nephridiopore; *nph.* nephridial network; *nst.* nephrostome. (After Bourne.)

It is in Clepsine that the early stages of **development** are best known. Segmentation is unequal, the embryo consisting, in the eight-celled stage (Fig. 383, A), of four large ventrally placed megameres (*mg.*) and four dorsal micromeres (*mi.*). One of the megameres, posterior in position, divides into two cells (B); one of these divides again, and its products of division give rise to paired *germinal bands* (C, *g.b.*), like those of the Earthworm. The micromeres increase in number, forming a cap of cells, the commencement of the ectoderm, on the dorsal pole of the embryo,

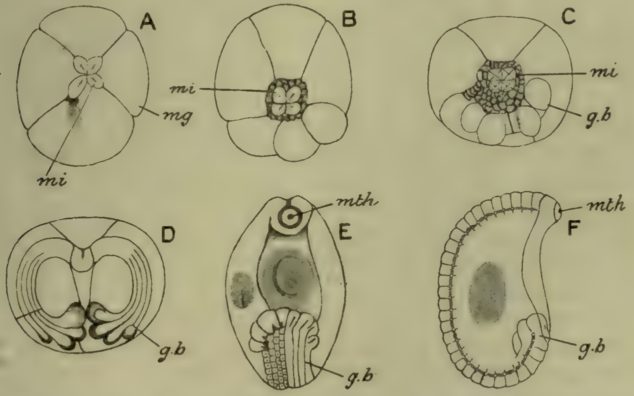


FIG. 383.—Six stages in the development of **Clepsine.** *g. b.* germinal bands; *mg.* megameres; *mi.* micromeres; *mth.* mouth. (After Whitman.)

and at the same time the germinal bands grow forwards (D), diverging as they go, and take up a position beneath the margin of the ectoderm-cap: as the latter extends its area they converge anteriorly, and thus furnish it with a thickened margin, the bands themselves being in contact in front and behind, and divergent in the intervening region, so as to enclose a nearly circular space. The ectoderm-cap, accompanied by the germinal bands, now grows over the megameres, finally enclosing them completely by uniting on the ventral surface. This process is obviously one of epibolic gastrulation.

The ectoderm of the embryo gives rise, as usual, to the epidermis of the adult as well as to the stomodæum (E, F, *mth.*) and proctodæum. From the germinal bands are formed the ventral nerve-cord and the nephridia. The endoderm arises from small cells budded off from the megameres, which gradually grow round what is left of the latter. The remains of the megameres thus become enclosed in the enteron of the embryo and undergo gradual absorption, serving simply as food, and not giving rise to any part of the tissues. The cocoon contains no albumen, and the yolk of the megameres supplies the whole of the nutriment required by the embryo up to the time it leaves the cocoon. The young is hatched at a comparatively advanced state of development, and, after escaping from the cocoon, adheres by its suckers to the body of the parent.

In the Gnathobdellida the young are hatched at an early stage of development, and their megameres contain but little yolk: they are nourished up to the time of leaving the cocoon on the albumen with which the latter is filled. One member of this order, Nephelis, is remarkable for undergoing a metamorphosis: the anterior end of the embryo is ciliated, and it possesses a provisional pharynx and several pairs of provisional nephridia. Paired masses of cells, the *head-germs*, are developed in the head, and from these and the germinal bands the whole body of the adult is produced, the greater part of the larval body being cast off. This process closely resembles the development of the Pilidium larva of certain Nemerteans (p. 273).

Habits, Distribution, &c.—The majority of the Hirudinea are inhabitants of fresh-water and live, like the Medicinal Leech, by sucking the blood of higher animals—Vertebrates or Molluscs. It is doubtless in correlation with this intermittent parasitism—the chance of finding a vertebrate host being an infrequent one—that the crop has attained such vast dimensions, holding, in the case of the medicinal leech, as much blood as takes it a year to digest. The allied species *Hirudo sanguisuga* has been found in the nasal passages of man, producing serious results, and being, to all intents and purposes, an internal parasite. The same is the case with the horse-leech, *Hæmopsis vorax*, taken in, when young, by horses and cattle while drinking. It attaches itself to the pharynx, and may even descend the trachea. Others are permanent ectoparasites: for instance, Branchellion is found on the outer surface of the Skate, Electric Ray, and other Fishes, entire families of the leech, including individuals of all sizes, being sometimes found crowded together on a small area of skin, which is distinctly marked by their powerful posterior suckers. Other fish-parasites are Pontobdella, on Rays, and Piscicola, on fresh-water Fish. *Aulostoma*, to which, as well as to Hæmopsis, the name Horse-leech is applied, is carnivorous, feeding on snails and other Mollusca; so also are Clepsine, Nephelis, and the gigantic Macrobdella. The last-named genus and some others are of subterranean habits, living in moist earth. The Land-leeches (*Hæmadipsa*) live in the forests of many parts of the world, and in spite of their small size, which does not exceed 30 mm. in length and 5 mm. in diameter, are much dreaded for the persistent attacks they make on men and cattle.

Many genera are very widely distributed: for instance, the Land-leeches (Hæmadipsa) occur in India, Ceylon, the East Indies, Japan, Australia, and South America, a distribution which seems to indicate that the group is one of great antiquity. Hitherto no member of the class has been found in New Zealand, with the exception of the marine Branchellion.

GENERAL REMARKS ON THE ANNULATA.

A special feature of the Annulata, as distinguished from the phyla previously dealt with, is *metameric segmentation*. In some of the Platyhelminthes, as we have seen, there obtains a condition to which the term pseudo-metamerism is applied. In such cases there is a serial repetition of certain of the organs—gonads, diverticula of the intestine, nerve-commissures, &c.—in such a way as to produce a jointed appearance, though the body is not divided into definite segments. An appearance resembling segmentation is produced also in certain Rhabdocœles that multiply by budding, chains of zooids remaining connected together for a time. In the strobila of the Cestodes we recognise a condition which might be described as combining pseudo-metamerism with the formation of a chain of zooids. The condition of true metamerism, as we observe it in the Annulata, is capable of being deduced from a condition of pseudo-metamerism as it occurs in *Gunda* (p. 241), the pseudo-metameres becoming converted into true metameres by the development of inter-segmental constrictions and the completion of internal partitions. On the other hand, it is deducible from the condition of a linear colony of zooids proliferating at the posterior end, the zooids, though becoming each complete in itself, not, under ordinary circumstances, becoming detached. The establishment of a closer connection between the various organs of such a colony with the special differentiation of the anterior end would result in a condition closely resembling the metamerism of the Annulata. It is conceivable that a condition of pseudo-metamerism was followed by that of a linear series, not of zooids, but of comparatively independent parts capable of readily reproducing the animal when detached by accidental injury, and that a secondary closer connection established between the organs of all the series of parts resulted in the metameric condition.

Metamerism is not universal in the phylum. In some (Archi-Annelida) it may be said to be incipient or rudimentary; in others (Gephyrea) vanishing or vestigial. The Archi-Annelida are in this, as in some other respects, the most primitive of the Annulata, and through them it seems possible to connect the higher members of the phylum with such lower forms as Dinophilus (p. 310). The general occurrence of the trochosphere larva may be taken as pointing to descent from an unsegmented ancestor having resemblances to the trochosphere, and a form like Dinophilus would afford us an intermediate link between such a hypothetical ancestor and Polygordius or Protodrilus.

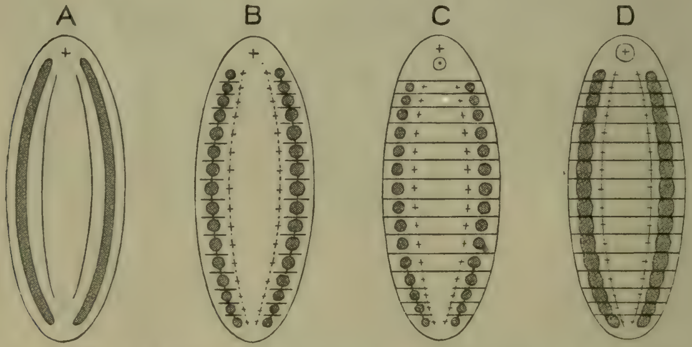


Fig. 384.—Diagram to illustrate possible relations of the unsegmented to the metamerically segmented worm. *A*, unsegmented worm with differentiated head end; *B*, pseudo-metamerism; *C*, linear series of zooids in which the first zooid differs in character from the others, and in which the formation of new zooids takes place at the posterior end; *D*, metamerically segmented worm.

The position of the unarmed Gephyrea in the Annulata is, as already noticed, a matter of doubt; if we dissociate them from the Armata there is little to connect them positively with the other members of the phylum. But, on the whole, perhaps the evidence in favour of regarding them as allied to the Armata, and through them with the Chætopoda, is sufficiently strong.

In adult structure, particularly in the absence of parapodia and setæ and of a cœlome, the Hirudinea diverge somewhat widely from the Chætopoda; but a study of their earlier developmental stages shows unmistakably their close connection with the latter group, more particularly with the Oligochæta.

The following diagram will serve to illustrate this view of the relationships of the various groups referred to:—

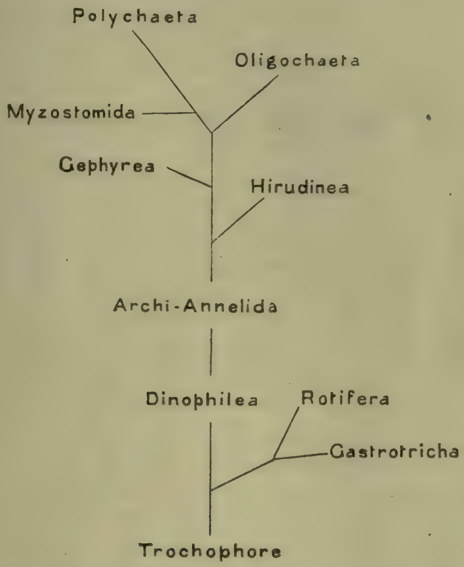

Polychaeta
Oligochaeta
Myzostomida
Gephyrea
Hirudinea
Archi-Annelida
Dinophilea
Rotifera
Gastrotricha
Trochophore

Fig. 385.—Diagram illustrating the relationships of the Annulata and the Trochelminthes.

SECTION XI

PHYLUM ARTHROPODA

In this large and important group of animals we meet with a characteristic feature of the Chætopoda, viz. metameric segmentation, as also with more or less perfect bilateral symmetry, mouth and anus at opposite ends of the elongated body, and a nervous system formed of a dorsal brain, and a double ventral chain of ganglia. There is, however, an important advance on the segmented Worms in the circumstance that each typical segment bears a pair of appendages, distinguished from the simple foot-stumps or parapodia of the Polychæta in being divisible into distinct limb-segments or *podomeres*, separated from one another by movable joints and acted upon by special muscles. Arthropods are also characterised by the almost universal absence of cilia, by their muscles being nearly always of the striped kind, by their sperms being usually non-motile, and by the body-cavity being largely represented by spaces, the *blood-sinuses*, in free communication with the circulatory system.

The following are the most important subdivisions of the phylum.

Class 1. Crustacea, including Crayfishes, Crabs, Shrimps, Wood-lice, Barnacles, Water-fleas, &c.

Class 2. Onychophora, including only a single genus, the curious caterpillar-like *Peripatus*.

Class 3. Myriapoda, including the Centipedes and Millipedes.

Class 4. Insecta, including the true or six-legged Insects, such as Cockroaches, Locusts, Flies, Beetles, Butterflies, and Bees.

Class 5. Arachnida, including Spiders, Scorpions, Mites, &c.

CLASS I.—CRUSTACEA.

1. Examples of the Class.

a. Apus or Lepidurus.

Apus and Lepidurus are two closely allied Crustaceans found in the fresh-waters of most parts of the world, but curiously local in distribution and by no means common. They are so much alike that, save in minor details, the same description will apply to any species of either genus.

External Characters.—The animal (Fig. 386) is from 20 to 30 mm. in length, and has the anterior two-thirds of the dorsal surface covered by a thin chitinous shell or *carapace*, beyond the posterior edge of which the hinder part of the body (*abd.*) projects a[illegible] nearly cylindrical structure distinctly divided into segments. T[illegible] last or *anal segment* bears a pair of long processes, the *caudal styles* (*a. f.*) between which, in Lepidurus, is a flat scale-like *post-anal plate* (Fig. 387). On the dorsal surface of the carapace, near its anterior border, are the *paired eyes* (*E*), closely approximated in front, diverging posteriorly. Immediately in front of them is a small black *median eye* (*e.*), and between their diverging posterior ends is a semi-transparent oval area, the *dorsal organ* (*d. o.*). Passing transversely across the carapace, a short distance behind the dorsal organ, is a shallow furrow, the *cervical fold*, immediately posterior to which a pair of coiled tubes (*sh. gl.*) are seen, one on each side of the carapace: these are the *shell-glands* or excretory organs.

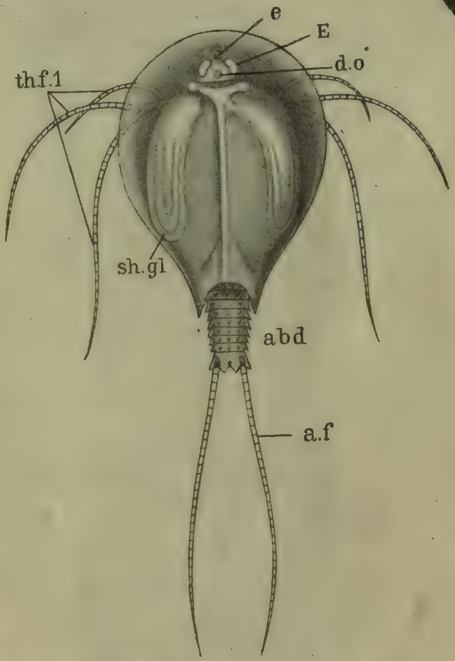


FIG. 386.—**Apus cancriformis,** dorsal aspect. *abd.* abdomen; *a. f.* caudal styles; *d. o.* dorsal organ; E. paired eye; *e.* median eye; *sh. gl.* shell-gland; *th. f. 1*, endites of first thoracic foot. (From Broun's *Thier-reich.*)

The carapace is attached only as far back as the cervical fold: behind that level it is free, and, when lifted up or cut away (Fig. 387), shows the greater part of the body of the animal, divided into segments like the posterior portion. From the cervical groove backwards about twenty-eight or thirty segments can be counted: the region in front of the cervical groove shows no sign of segmentation, and is distinguished as the *head*. The segments have the form of chitinous rings, often produced into small spines: each

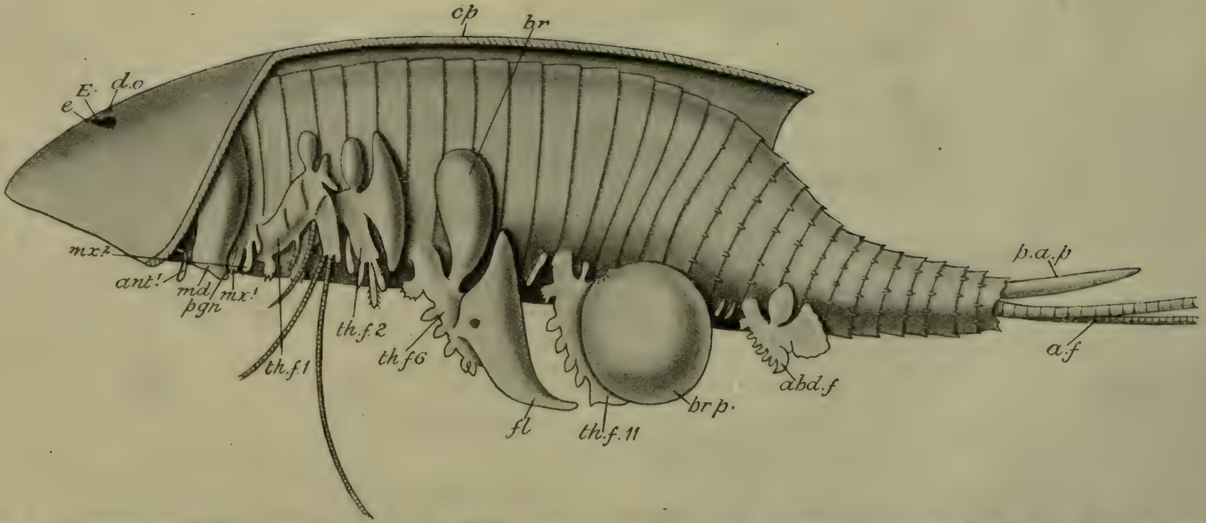

cp
br
E.
d.o
e
mx.²
ant.¹
md
mx.¹
pgn
th.f.1
th.f.2
th.f.6
fl
th.f.11
br.p.
abd.f
p.a.p
a.f

Fig. 387.—**Lepidurus kirkii,** side view with half of carapace and most of the appendages removed. *a. f.* caudal styles; *abd. f.* abdominal foot; *ant. 1*, antennule; *br.* bract; *br. p.* brood-pouch; *cp.* carapace; *d. o.* dorsal organ; E. paired eye; *e.* median eye; *fl.* flabellum; *md.* mandible; *mx. 1*, *mx. 2*, maxillæ; *p.a.p.* post-anal plate; *pgn.* paragnatha; *th. 1—th. 11*, thoracic feet.

ring slightly overlaps its successor, and is connected with it by a narrow area, the *articular membrane*, the chitinisation of which is less pronounced than that of the rings themselves. By this arrangement the segments are freely movable upon one another in all directions, the articular membranes acting as joints. The last or anal segment is pierced by the terminal *anus* (Fig. 390, *an.*).

The ventral surface of the head is formed by a flattened *sub-frontal plate* (Fig. 388, *s.f.pl.*), continuous marginally with the carapace. The posterior edge of this plate is convex backwards, and is produced in the middle line into a shield-shaped process, the *labrum* or upper lip (*lbr.*), which overhangs the *mouth*. From the sub-frontal plate also arise, on each side, two delicate processes, the innermost called the *antennule* (*ant. 1*), the outermost the *antenna* (*ant. 2*): these are the first two pairs of *appendages*. The third pair consists of two strong toothed bodies of a deep brown colour, placed one on each side of the mouth, and called the *mandibles* (*md.*). The remaining appendages form two rows of delicate leaf-like processes, attached to the segmented portion of the body, and overlapping one another from before backwards: their number varies from forty to nearly seventy (*th. f.*, *abd. f.*).

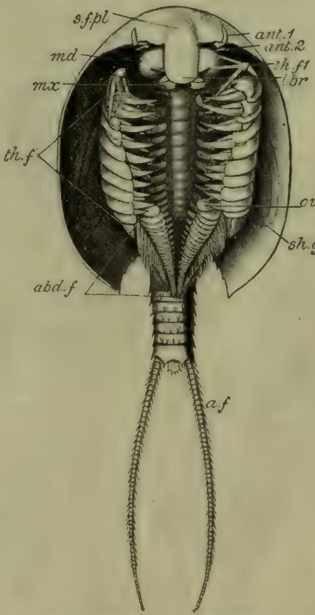


FIG. 388.—**Apus glacialis,** ventral aspect. *abd. f.* abdominal feet; *ant*^{1}. antennule; *ant*^{2}. antenna; *lbr.* labrum; *md.* mandible; *mx.* first maxilla; *ov.* aperture of oviduct; *s. f. pl.* sub-frontal plate; *sh. gl.* shell-gland; *th. f.* thoracic feet; *th. f. 1*, first thoracic foot. (After Bernard.)

Appendages.—The *antennule* (Fig. 389, *1*) consists of a bent rod bearing delicate chitinous bristles or *setæ* at its tip, and presenting, at the bend, a joint, due to the presence of an articular membrane. The appendage is thus made up of two *podomeres* or limb-segments, movably articulated together. Its function is probably tactile.

The *antenna* (*2*) is absent in some species both of Apus and Lepidurus: in *A. cancriformis* it is a very delicate hook-shaped unjointed structure, probably functionless. As we shall see from the study of development, it is a vestigial organ.

The *mandible* (*3*) is also an unjointed appendage. It has the form of a deeply concavo-convex plate, strongly chitinised, and produced along its inner edge into strong teeth. The mandibles lie one on each side of the mouth, and are so articulated that, by means of muscles, their toothed edges can be brought together in the middle line, so as to rend the food.

The fourth and fifth appendages are very small, and are probably functionless or nearly so : they follow one another just behind the mandible, and are called the *first* and *second maxillæ.* The first maxilla (*4*) consists of two curved chitinous plates, the second of a basal portion produced into two branches (*5*). Between the first maxilla and the mandibles are a pair of delicate unjointed processes, the *paragnatha* (Fig. 387, *pgn.*): they form together a sort of lower lip, and are not usually reckoned as appendages.

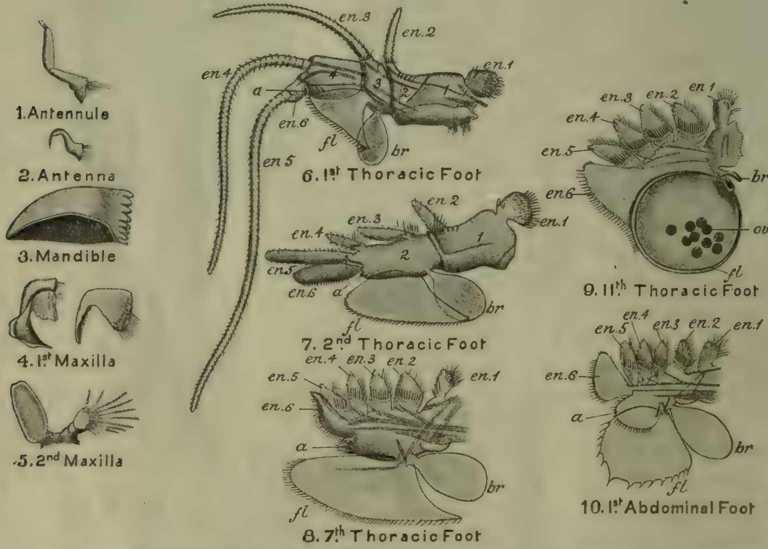

1. Antennule
2. Antenna
3. Mandible
4. 1st Maxilla
5. 2nd Maxilla
en.3
en.2
en.1
en.4
a
4
3
2
1
en.6
en 5
fl
br
6. 1st Thoracic Foot
en 2
en.3
en.4
1
2
en.1
en5
en6
a
br
fl
7. 2nd Thoracic Foot
en.4
en.3
en.2
en.5
en.1
en.6
a
br
fl
8. 7th Thoracic Foot
en.3
en.2
en 1
en.4
en.5
br
en6
ov
fl
9. 11th Thoracic Foot
en.4
en.5
en3
en.2
en.1
en.6
a
br
fl
10. 1st Abdominal Foot

FIG. 389.—Typical appendages of **Apus.** *1—4*, podomeres of axis ; *br.* bract ; *en. 1, en. 7*, endites *fl.* flabellum ; *ov.* ova. (After Lankester.)

The foregoing appendages all spring from the unsegmented anterior portion of the body or head. As we shall see, however, the succeeding limbs spring each pair from its own segment, so that the presence of five pairs of appendages on the head may be taken provisionally as an indication that this region of the body is composed of five fused segments.

The sixth appendage (*6*) springs from the ventro-lateral region of the first clearly marked segment, and is the first of the long row of appendages plainly visible in a ventral view. It consists of an *axis* formed of four podomeres (*1–4*), and bearing a number of offshoots: six of these, called *endites* (*en. 1—en. 6*), spring from its inner or mesial border; two, called *exites* (*br.*, *fl.*), from its outer or lateral border. The proximal endite (*en. 1*) is small, and bears strong spines: in conjunction with its fellow of the opposite side it is used to seize food-particles and pass them on to the mouth: it is therefore conveniently distinguished as the *gnathobase.* The distal endite is rudimentary (*en. 6*): the remaining four (*en. 2–5*) are long jointed filaments. The proximal exite is nearly triangular, and is called the *flabellum* (*fl.*); the distal exite is oval, and is known as the *bract* (*br.*); both probably serve a respiratory function.

The seventh appendage (*7*) has only two podomeres in the axis, and the endites are comparatively short and flat. The next eight, *i.e.* those borne on the third to the sixteenth free segments, closely resemble one another: each (*8*) has an unjointed axis and short leaf-like endites, the whole appendage having a distinctly foliaceous character. The sixteenth appendage—that of the eleventh free segment—resembles its predecessors in the male, but in the female (*9*) is peculiarly modified. The distal portion of the axis forms a hemispherical cup, over which the flabellum (*fl.*) fits like a lid: in this way a capsule or *brood-pouch* is produced, which serves for the reception of the eggs, and the appendage is distinguished as the *oostegopod* or brood-foot. The brood-feet and the adjacent genital apertures allow of a very convenient division of the body: all that region from the first free or post-cephalic segment to that bearing the oostegopods, both inclusive, is called the *thorax*, and its appendages the *thoracic feet:* it consists of eleven metameres. The remaining segments, from the twelfth to the last inclusive, constitute the *abdomen*, and their appendages are called the *abdominal feet.*

The abdominal resemble the thoracic feet in general characters, having the same foliaceous form (*10*), with unjointed axis, small leaf-like endites, and large flabellum and bract. They gradually diminish in size from before backwards, and, from the third abdominal segment onwards, two or more pairs of appendages spring from each segment, so that while the total number of abdominal segments, in *A. cancriformis*, is twenty-two, and the five hindermost of these are without appendages, there are altogether fifty-two pairs of abdominal feet. It seems probable that segments bearing more than one pair of appendages represent two or more fused, or, perhaps one should rather say, imperfectly differentiated, metameres.

Body-wall.—The whole body is, as already mentioned, covered by a layer of chitin of varying thickness, which constitutes an *exoskeleton* or external supporting structure. Immediately underlying it is the deric epithelium or epidermis, from which the chitin is secreted layer by layer. Thus the exoskeleton of Apus is a continuous cuticular structure, exhibiting segmentation in virtue of the fact that, while comparatively thick and strong in places where no movement is required, it is thin and flexible in the intervening spaces, and thus allows of the movement of the harder parts upon one another.

The setæ, which occur on many parts of the body, and in particular fringe the appendages, are hollow offshoots of the chitinous cuticle, containing a protoplasmic core continuous with the epidermis (Fig. 399). They thus differ fundamentally from the setæ of Chætopods, which are solid rods sunk in muscular sacs.

The **muscular system** is well developed (Fig. 390). Underlying the epidermis is a layer of connective tissue, and beneath this is found, in the posterior or limbless part of the abdomen, a layer of longitudinal muscles (Fig. 390) encircling the body, and attached by connective-tissue to each segment. In this way the muscular layer is itself segmented, being divided by the connective-tissue insertions into muscle-segments or *myomeres.* The action of these muscles is to approximate adjacent segments: according as the fibres on the dorsal, ventral, or lateral regions contract, the abdomen will be raised, lowered, or turned sideways. In the limb-bearing portion of the abdomen and in the thorax there is no

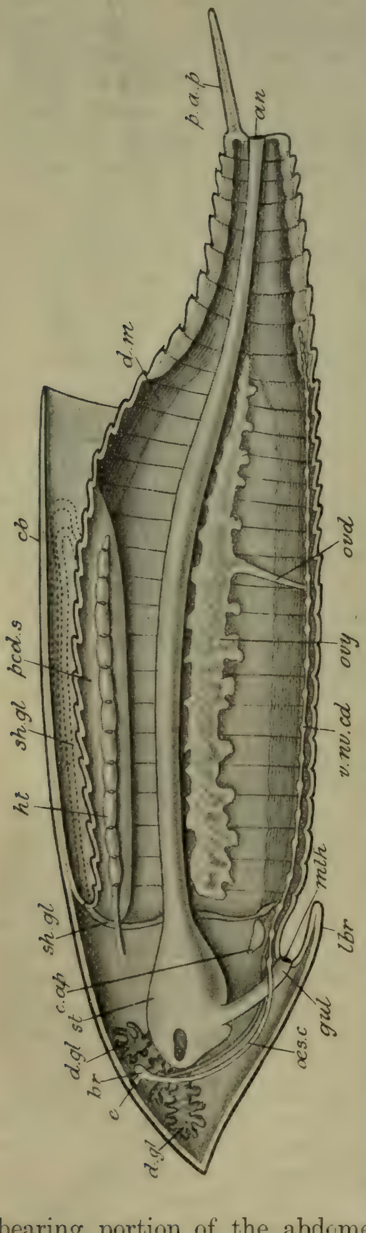


FIG. 390.—**Lepidurus kirkii,** sagittal section (semi-diagrammatic). *an.* anus; *br.* brain; *c. ap.* cephalic apodeme; *cb,* carapace; *d. gl.* digestive gland; *d. m.* dorsal muscles; *e.* median eye; *gul.* gullet; *ht.* heart; *lbr.* labrum; *mth.* mouth; *œs. c.* œsophageal connective; *ovd.* oviduct; *ovy.* ovary; *p. a. p.* post-anal plate; *pcd. s.* pericardial sinus; *sh. gl.* shell-gland; *st.* stomach; *v. nv. cd.* ventral nerve cord.

longer a continuous muscular tube, but paired dorsal (*d.m.*) and ventral bands, which pass respectively above and below the origins of the limbs: the dorsal bands arise in front from the head-region, the ventral from a strong fibrous plate, the *cephalic apodeme* (*c.ap.*), lying just behind the gullet.

Each appendage is moved as a whole by muscles passing into it from the trunk: its various parts are acted upon by delicate muscular slips running to the various podomeres of the axis and to the endites, thus rendering them separately movable. The only example we have yet met with of appendages moved by definite muscular bands is that of the curious rotifer Pedalion (p. 307). The muscles are all striped, a character which applies to the Arthropoda generally, with the exception of the Onychophora.

Digestive Organs.—The *mouth* (Fig. 390, *mth.*) is situated on the ventral surface of the head, and is bounded in front by the labrum (*lbr.*), on each side by the mandibles, and behind by the paragnatha. The food appears to be pushed forwards towards the mouth by the toothed bases of the thoracic feet, and is subdivided by the mandibles, which work laterally. The maxillæ are probably functionless, or nearly so.

The mouth leads into a narrow *gullet* (*gul.*), which passes upwards and forwards into the head and enters a wide *stomach* (*st.*), from which a straight *intestine* (*int.*) is continued back to the terminal anus (*an.*). From each side of the stomach is given off a wide tube (*d.gl.*) which branches extensively, its ramifications finally ending in delicate cæca. The larger branches of these *digestive glands* contain food in process of digestion: their ultimate cæca secrete a digestive juice: the walls of the stomach itself are non-glandular. The walls of the enteric canal consist of an inner layer of epithelium and an outer layer of connective-tissue and muscle. In the gullet and in the posterior end of the intestine the epithelium secretes a thin cuticle, which thus comes to form the actual lining of the cavity. It is shown by development that the portion of the canal devoid of a chitinous lining is formed from the archenteron of the embryo: the gullet is developed from the stomodæum, the posterior end of the intestine from the proctodæum.

The **body-cavity** is divided into several parts by membranous partitions (Fig. 391): there is a large median cavity in which the enteric canal (*i*) lies, called the *intestinal sinus:* on each side of this are *lateral sinuses* containing the muscles: and in the dorsal region is a median cavity, the *pericardial sinus.* All these spaces are devoid of an epithelial lining, and contain blood: there is reason for thinking that they do not correspond with the cœlome of the higher worms but this subject will be more conveniently discussed hereafter (p. 547).

The central organ of the **circulatory system** is the *heart* (Fig.

390 *ht*, and Fig. 391, *h*), a narrow tube contained in the pericardial sinus. It is pierced laterally by several pairs of apertures or *ostia*, provided with valves opening inwards, and is continued in front into a narrow tube, the *cephalic artery* (*c. art.*), which extends into the head and gives off near its origin a pair of arteries to the shell-glands. When the heart contracts, the blood is driven through these arteries to the head and carapace: it then travels backwards in the intestinal sinus, passes to the limbs, and is returned to the pericardial sinus, finally re-entering the heart, during its diastole, through the ostia. The plasma of the blood is coloured red by hæmoglobin, and contains amœboid corpuscles.

As already mentioned, the function of **respiration** is discharged by the flabella and bracts of the feet, which are abundantly sup-

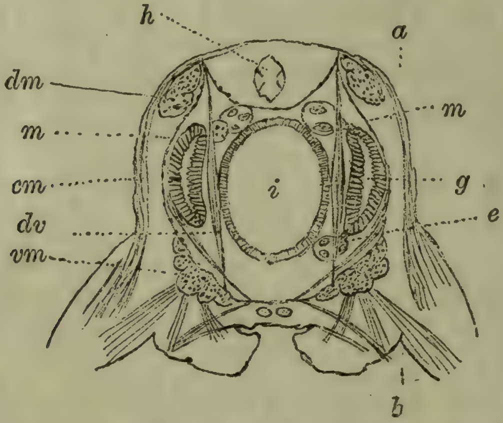


Fig. 391.—Transverse section of **Apus.** *cm.* muscles to feet; *dv.* dorso-ventral muscles; *e.* eggs; *dm.* dorsal muscles; *g.* ovary; *dv.* dorso-ventral muscles; *h.* heart; *i.* intestine; *m.* partition between intestinal and lateral sinus; *vm.* ventral muscles. (From Bernard.)

plied with blood, and the movements of which ensure a constant renewal of the water in their neighbourhood. The **renal organ** or *shell-gland* (Fig. 392) consists of a coiled *urinary tube* (*uc.*) lying between the two layers of the carapace and lined by gland-cells. At one end the tube is connected with an *end-sac* (*ts.*), also lined with glandular epithelium; at the other it dilates into a small *bladder* (*b.*) which opens on the second maxilla (*m.*).

The **nervous system** (Fig. 393) is constructed on the annulate type. There is a squarish *brain* (*br.*) situated in the dorsal region of the head, beneath the eyes. From it a pair of *œsophageal connectives* pass backwards and downwards to join the *ventral nerve-cord*, which consists of a double chain of ganglia (*gn.* 1–4) united by longitudinal connectives and transverse commissures so as to have a ladder-like appearance. The first pair of ganglia lies immediately behind the mouth, and sends off *visceral nerves* which join to form a ring round the gullet, swollen in front into a small *visceral ganglion* (*v. gn.*). Passing backwards, the nerve-chain diminishes in size, and comes to an end at about the level of the last pair of abdominal feet (Fig. 390).

The origin of the nerves given off from the central nervous system presents many points of interest. From the fourth ganglion of the ventral cord backwards each pair of appendages has its own pair of ganglia, the metameric correspondence between the limbs and the nervous system being complete. The mandibles and the first maxillæ also receive nerves, each from their own pair of ganglia, their serial homology with the more typical appendages being thus confirmed. But the second maxillæ receive their nerves (*mn. 2*) from the connectives between the third and fourth ganglia: the ganglion belonging to their segment may be assumed to have atrophied. The antenna is supplied by a nerve (*ant. 2*) which springs from the œsophageal connective, but which can be traced backwards to the first ganglion of the ventral chain: this fact may be taken as an indication that the antennæ are serially homologous with the jaws and feet, that they are in fact metameric or post-oral appendages which have shifted forwards, one on each side of the mouth, thus becoming præ-oral. The nerve of the antennule (*ant. 1*) also springs from the œsophageal connective, but is traceable forwards to the brain, where it is connected

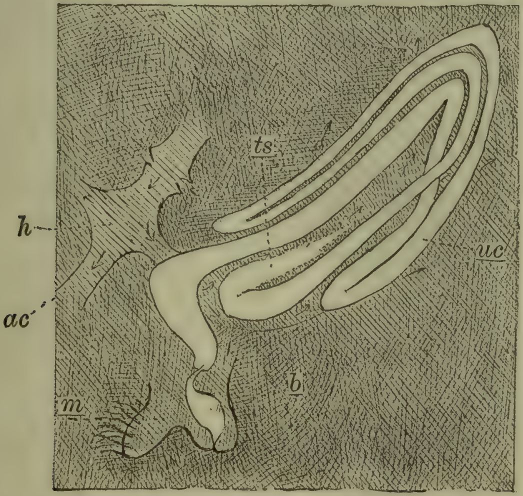


FIG. 392.—Shell-gland of **Apus**, diagrammatic. *ac.* cephalic artery; *b.* bladder; *h.* heart; *m.* second maxilla; *ts.* end-sac; *uc.* urinary tube. (From Bernard.)

with a special group of nerve-cells. This has been explained by supposing that the antennule is a post-oral appendage the ganglion of which has moved forwards, along the œsophageal connective, and fused with the brain—a process which actually takes place with the ganglia of the antennæ in the higher Crustacea. But it is also possible to consider the antennules as præ-oral appendages, belonging, like the prostomial tentacles of Chætopods, to the prostomial region, and therefore receiving their nerves from the brain or prostomial ganglion. The median and paired eyes are also supplied by nerves from the brain.

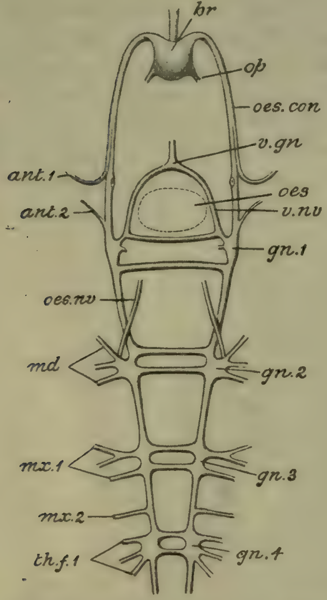


FIG. 393.—Nervous system of **Apus cancriformis.** *ant.′* nerve to antennule; *ant.″* to antenna; *br.* brain; *gn. 1—4*, first four ganglia of ventral nerve-cord; *md.* mandibular nerve; *mx. 1*, nerve of first maxilla; *mx. 2*, of second maxilla; *th. f. 1*, of first thoracic foot; *v. gn.* visceral ganglion. (After Lankester and Pelseneer.)

Organs of Sense.—The setæ which occur on so many parts of the body, and especially as fringes to the limbs, are to be considered as *organs of touch*: the only other organs of special sense are the eyes. The *paired eyes* are, as we have seen, situated on the dorsal surface of the head, just over the brain: they are covered by transparent cuticle forming the *cornea*, beneath which is a narrow space or *water-sac*, communicating with the exterior by a pore, and therefore filled with water. The eye itself is made up of a large number of radially arranged elements called *ommatidia* (Fig. 394), each of which consists of an outer and an inner portion. The outer portion is a group of clear glassy cells (*ce.*) enclosing a transparent homogeneous *vitreous body* (*cr.*): the whole of this portion of the eye serves to refract the rays of light; it is the dioptric apparatus, like our own lens and vitreous humour. The inner portion is a group of sensory cells, constituting a *retinula* (*re.*), and enclosing a refractive rod, the *rhabdome* (*rh.*): the retinula is the actual percipient part of the ommatidium, its cells being comparable to our own rods and cones. The retinulæ of adjacent ommatidia are separated from one another by cells full of black pigment (*p.*), so that each ommatidium is in a state of optical isolation from its fellows, and the whole eye is what is called a *compound eye.* The optic nerve springing from the brain dilates into an *optic ganglion*, from which fibres pass to the retinulæ.

The *median eye* is an ovoid body, and consists of four groups of large sensory cells enclosing a mass of pigmented tissue: it is in immediate contact with the brain, and receives a narrow canal from the water-sac beneath the cuticle of the paired eyes.

Reproductive Organs.—The large majority of individuals both of Apus and Lepidurus are females; males are of comparatively rare occurrence. The *ovary* (Fig. 390, *ovy.*) is a branched tube occupying a considerable portion of the body-cavity in sexually mature individuals. The walls of the tube are lined with epithelium, and give rise to ova, which pass into the lumen of the tube and thence to a duct (*ovd.*) opening on the eleventh or last thoracic segment. As in Leeches (p. 474), there is reason for thinking that the cavity of the ovarian tube represents a shut-off portion of the cœlome, and the oviduct a nephridium. One species has been shown to be hermaphrodite: in others males are occasionally found, but reproduction appears to be, as a rule, parthenogenetic.

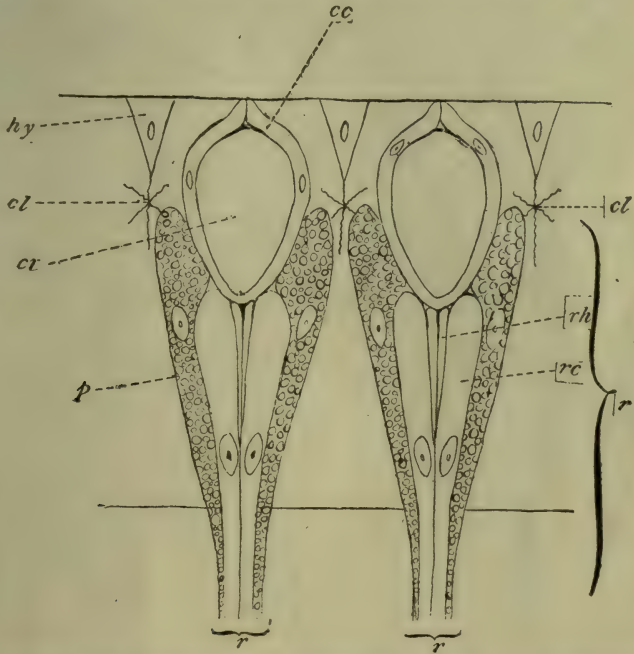


FIG. 394.—Diagram of two ommatidia from the paired eyes of **Apus**. *ce.* vitreous cells; *cr*, vitreous body; *cl*, connective-tissue fibre; *hy*, epiderm cells; *p*. pigment cells; *re*. retinulæ; *rh*. rhabdome. (From Bernard.)

Development.—The eggs are centrolecithal, *i.e.*, have an accumulation of yolk in the centre surrounded by a superficial layer of protoplasm. The process of segmentation and the formation of the germ-layers, has not been observed.

The embryo is hatched in the form shown in Fig. 395, A. The body is oval, and is divisible into three regions—a large anterior or *head-region;* an intermediate *trunk-region*, the hinder part of which already shows signs of segmentation (*I–V*) and a posterior bilobed *anal region*. The head-region bears a single median eye, and a pair of small unjointed appendages (*1*), each with two large setæ at its extremity, which become the antennules of the adult. The trunk-region bears two pairs of appendages, the first of which (*2*) is very large and fringed with setæ, but is chiefly remarkable for being *biramous* or two-branched—being formed of a proximal portion or stem, the *protopodite;* a small inner branch, the *endopodite;* and a large outer branch, the *exopodite*. This second

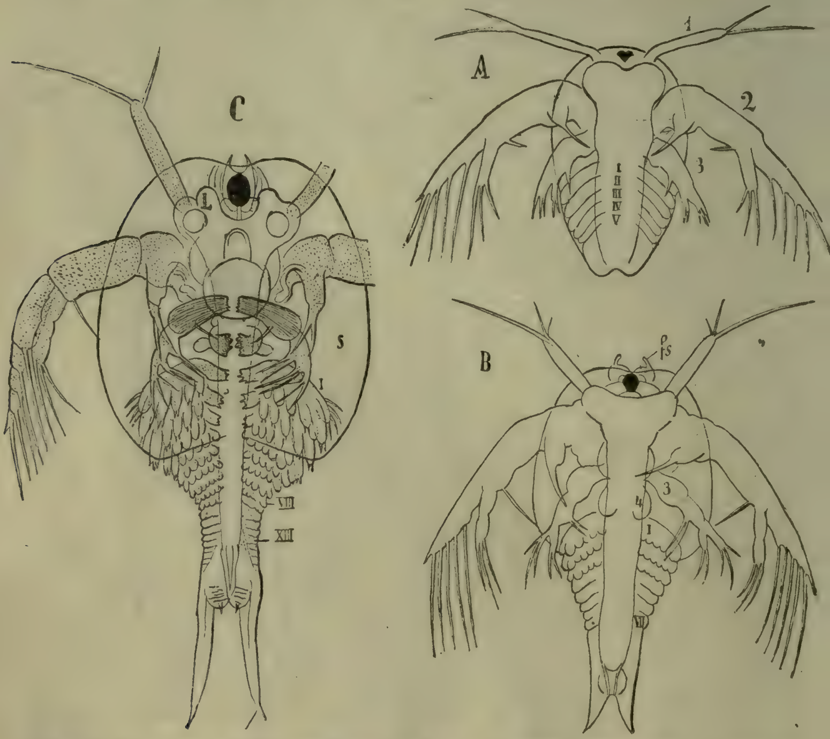


FIG. 395.—Three stages in the development of **Apus.** *fs.* frontal sensory organ; L, digestive gland; *s.* carapace; *1—4*, cephalic appendages; I—XIII, body segments and appendages. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy.*)

appendage becomes the antenna of the adult, and may be called the *antennary foot:* it is the chief organ of locomotion of the larva. The second trunk-appendage is the *mandibular foot* (*3*), so called because it becomes converted into the mandible of the adult: it is also biramous. The only internal structure to be noted is the straight enteric canal with its dilated anterior end or stomach: the mouth opens between the bases of the antennary and mandibular feet, and is bounded in front by a large labrum: the anus lies at the extremity of the anal region. This very peculiar and characteristic larval form is called a *Nauplius.*[1]

The Nauplius swims freely, chiefly by vigorous strokes of the great antennary feet, and after a time undergoes a series of moults or *ecdyses*, the cuticle being cast off and the animal emerging in the form shown in Fig. 395, B. The trunk-region has elongated, new segments having been added, as in Chætopods, between those previously present and the anal region. The antennules have become shifted backwards, and rudiments of a fourth pair of appendages, the first maxillæ (*4*), have appeared. The carapace has grown out from the dorsal region of the head, and a peculiar paired sense-organ (*fs.*) has appeared on the head.

After two more ecdyses the larva has assumed the form shown in Fig. 395, C. Several new segments have been added, and the anterior of these all bear leaf-like thoracic feet. The antennary feet are still very large, and the bases of the mandibular feet have become enlarged and toothed so as to form biting jaws. The carapace (*s*) has increased greatly, and the caudal styles have attained a considerable size. Further moults occur, new segments are added with their appendages, the antennules and antennæ degenerate,—the latter sometimes disappearing altogether—the mandibles become reduced to the enlarged basal segment, and the larva passes by almost insensible gradations into the adult form.

It will be seen that the development of Apus proves clearly that the antennæ and mandibles are ordinary trunk-appendages, homologous with the thoracic and abdominal feet: a comparison of the antennary and thoracic feet of the larva supports the view that the endopodite of the former corresponds with the fifth endite of the latter, and the exopodite with the sixth endite. The antennules are from the first unbranched or uniramous, and are originally situated quite at the anterior region of the body: they do not, therefore, show a complete correspondence with the remaining appendages, and, as was inferred from their nerve supply, may perhaps be considered as prostomial and not metameric appendages.

---

[1] More strictly *Metanauplius:* the typical Nauplius exhibits no segmentation of the trunk region.

b. The Fresh-water Crayfish (*Astacus fluviatilis*).

Astacus fluviatilis is common in streams and rivers in England and the continent of Europe; allied species occur in Asia and North America; and fresh-water Crayfishes belonging to other genera, but agreeing with Astacus in all essential features, are found in America, Australia, and New Zealand.

External Characters.—The body of the Crayfish (Fig. 396) is divided into two regions—an anterior, the *cephalothorax* (*cth.*), which is unjointed, and is covered by a *carapace* resembling that of Apus, but of smaller proportional size; and a posterior, the *abdomen* (*ab*), which is divided into distinct segments, movable upon one another in a vertical plane. The cephalothorax is again divided into two regions—an anterior, the *head*; and a posterior, the *thorax*—by a transverse depression, the *cervical groove.* The divisions of the body are thus the same as in Apus, but the abdomen alone is movably segmented, owing to the fact that the carapace, instead of being a purely cephalic structure continued backwards as a loose fold over the thorax, is developed from the dorsal and lateral regions of both head and thorax, and is free only at the sides of the thorax, where it forms a flap or *gill-cover* (*kd*) on each side, separated from the actual body-wall by a narrow space in which the gills are contained (Fig. 404). The carapace is made of chitin, strongly impregnated with carbonate of lime so as to be hard and but slightly elastic.

The **abdomen** is made up of seven segments: the first six (XIV–XIX) of these are metameres in the strict sense of the word, and have a ring-like form presenting a broad dorsal region or *tergum*, a narrow ventral region or *sternum*, and downwardly directed lateral processes, the *pleura*—the latter quite unrepresented in Apus. The seventh division of the abdomen is the *telson*: it is flattened horizontally, and divided by a transverse groove into anterior and posterior portions. All seven segments are calcified, and are united to one another by chitinous articular membranes: the first segment is similarly joined to the thorax. Thus the exoskeleton of Astacus resembles that of Apus in being a continuous cuticular structure, but differs from it in being discontinuously calcified, so as to have the character of a hard jointed armour.

It has been stated that the abdominal segments are movable upon one another in a vertical plane—*i.e.*, the whole abdomen can be *extended* or straightened, and *flexed* or bent under the cephalothorax: the segments are incapable of movement from side to side. This is due to the fact that, while adjacent segments are connected dorsally and ventrally by flexible articular membranes, they present at each side a *hinge* (Fig. 400, *h*), placed at the junction of the tergum and pleuron, and formed by a little peg-like process of one segment fitting into a depression or socket in the other. A line drawn between the right and left hinges constitutes the *axis of articulation*, and the only possible movement is in a plane at right angles to this axis.

Owing to the presence of the carapace, the **thoracic region** is immovable, and shows no distinction into segments either on its dorsal (tergal) or lateral (pleural) aspect. But on the ventral surface the sterna of the thoracic segments are clearly marked off by transverse grooves, and the hindmost of them is slightly movable. Altogether eight thoracic segments can be counted.

The ventral and lateral regions of the thoracic exoskeleton are produced into the interior of the body in the form of a segmental series of calcified plates, so arranged as to form a row of lateral chambers in which the muscles of the limbs lie, and a median tunnel-like passage or *sternal canal*, containing the thoracic portion of the nervous system. The entire *endophragmal system*, as it is called, constitutes a kind of internal skeleton: its anterior end is formed by a plate, the *cephalic apodeme*, having the same anatomical relations as the similarly named structure in Apus.

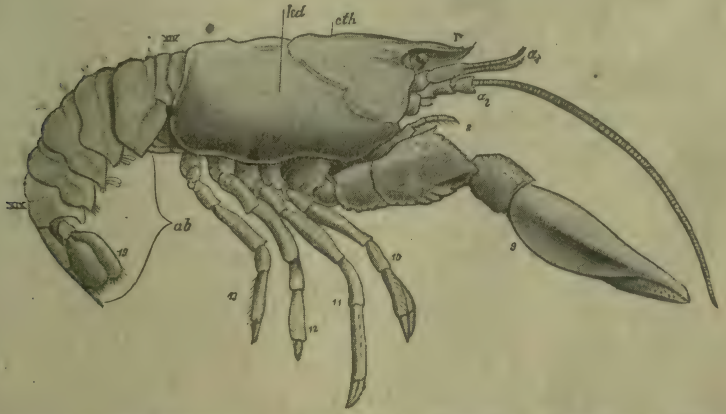


FIG. 396.—**Astacus fluviatilus,** side view of male. a^1, antennule; a^2, antenna; *ab*, abdomen *cth*. cephalothorax; *kd*, gill-cover; *r*. rostrum; *8*, third maxillipede; *9*, first leg; 10—13, remaining legs; 19, uropod; XIV, first abdominal segment; XIX, sixth abdominal segment. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*.)

The **head** exhibits no segmentation: its sternal region is formed largely by a shield-shaped plate, the *epistoma*, nearly vertical in position. The ventral surface of the head is, in fact, bent so as to face forwards instead of downwards. The epistoma is bounded laterally by the free edge of the carapace instead of passing insensibly into it like the sub-frontal area of Apus, with which however it agrees in having the *labrum* attached to the middle of its posterior border. The cephalic region of the carapace is produced in front into a large median spine, the *rostrum* (Fig. 396, *r*): immediately below it is a plate from which spring two movably articulated cylindrical bodies, the *eye-stalks*, bearing the eyes at their ends.

The **appendages** are seen at a glance to differ from those of Apus in their vastly greater degree of differentiation: obvious at a glance are the long feelers (Fig. 396, *a. 1*, *a. 2*) attached to the head, the five pairs of legs (*9–13*) springing from the thorax, and the little fin-like bodies arising from the sterna of the abdomen. It will be convenient to begin with the last-named region.

The third, fourth, and fifth segments of the abdomen bear each a pair of small appendages, the swimming feet or *pleopods* (Fig. 397, *10*), the resemblance of which to the biramous limbs of the larval Apus is obvious. There is an axis or *protopodite* consisting of a very short proximal (*pr. 1*) and a long distal (*pr. 2*) podomere, and bearing at its free end two jointed plates, fringed with setæ, the *endopodite* (*en*) and *exopodite* (*ex*). These appendages act as fins, moving backwards and forwards with a regular swing, and probably aiding in the animal's forward movements.

In the female a similar appendage is borne on the second segment, while that of the first is more or less rudimentary. In the male the first and second pleopods (*9*) are modified into incomplete tubes which act as copulatory organs, serving to transfer the spermatophores to the body of the female. The sixth pair of abdominal limbs (*11*) are alike in the two sexes: they are very large, both endo- and exopodite having the form of broad flat plates: in the natural position of the parts they lie one on each side of the telson, forming with it a large five-lobed tail fin: they are therefore conveniently called *uropods* or tail-feet. The telson itself bears no appendages.

The thoracic appendages are very different. The four posterior segments bear long slender, jointed *legs* (*8*), upon which the animal walks: in front of these is a pair of very large legs terminating in huge claws or *chelæ*, and hence called *chelipeds* (Fig. 396, *9*). The three anterior segments bear much smaller appendages, more or less leg-like in form, but having their bases toothed to serve as jaws: they are distinguished as *maxillipeds* or foot-jaws (Fig. 397, *5–7*).

The structure of these appendages is best understood by a consideration of the *third maxilliped* (*7*). The main portion of the limb is formed of seven podomeres arranged in a single series, strongly calcified, and, with the exception of the second and third, which are fused, movably articulated with one another. The second podomere, counting from the proximal end, bears a many-jointed feeler-like organ (*ex*), and from the first springs a thin folded plate (*ep*) having a plume-like gill (*g*) attached to it. Obviously such an appendage is biramous, but with one of its branches greatly in excess of the other: the first two segments of the axis (*pr. 1, pr. 2*) form the protopodite, its remaining five segments (*en. 1–5*) the endopodite, and the feeler, which is directed outwards, or away from the median plane, the exopodite (*ex*). The folded plate (*ep*) is called the *epipodite:* in the natural position

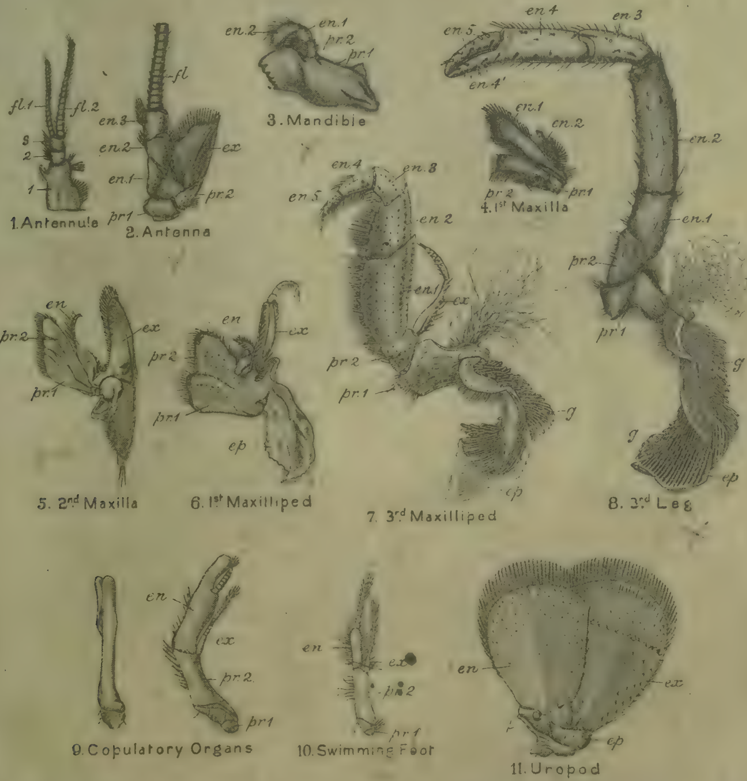

fl.1
fl.2
3
2
1
1.Antennule
fl
en.3
en.2
en.1
ex
pr.2
pr1
2.Antenna
en.2
en.1
pr.2
pr.1
3.Mandible
en.5
en 4
en 3
en 4'
en.1
en.2
pr.2
pr.1
4.1st Maxilla
en.2
en.1
pr.2
pr1
g
g
ep
8. 3rd Leg
en.4
en.3
en 5
en 2
en.1
ex
pr 2
pr.1
g
ep
7. 3rd Maxilliped
en
pr.2
ex
pr.1
5. 2nd Maxilla
en
ex
pr 2
pr1
ep
6. 1st Maxilliped
en
ex
pr.2
pr1
9.Copulatory Organs
en
ex
pr2
pr1
10.Swimming Foot
en
ex
ep
11.Uropod

FIG. 397.—Typical appendages of **Astacus.** *en. 1–5*, podomeres of endopodite; *ep.* epipodite; *ex.* exopodite; *fl.* flagella; *g.* gill; *pr. 1, pr. 2*, podomeres of protopodite; *1–3*, podomeres of axis of antennule. (After Huxley.)

of the parts it is directed upwards, and lies in the gill-cavity between the proper wall of the thorax and the gill-cover (Fig. 404). Its position is thus very similar to that of the flabellum of Apus, while the gill attached to it is comparable to the bract.

The five *legs* (*8*) differ from the third maxilliped in their greater size, and in having no exopodite: in the fifth or last the epipodite also is absent. The first three of them have undergone a curious modification, by which their ends are converted into pincers or *chelæ*: the fourth segment (*en. 4*) of the endopodite (sixth of the entire limb) is produced distally so as to form a claw-like projection (*en.* 4^1), against which the terminal segment (*en. 5*) bites. The first leg is much stouter than any of the others, and its chela is of immense size and forms an important weapon of offence and defence. The *second maxilliped* resembles the third, but is considerably smaller: the *first* (*6*) has its endopodite greatly reduced, the two segments of its protopodite large and leaf-like, and no gill is connected with the epipodite.

As in Apus, the head bears a pair of mandibles and two pairs of maxillæ in relation with the mouth, and in front of that aperture a pair of antennules and one of antennæ. The hindmost appendage of the head is the *second maxilla* (*5*), a markedly foliaceous appendage: its protopodite (*pr. 1, pr. 2*) is cut up into lobes comparable with the four proximal endites in the thoracic feet of Apus: its endopodite (*en*) corresponds with the fifth endite, while the sixth endite is represented by the exopodite (*ex*), modified into a boomerang-shaped plate, which, as we shall see, is an important accessory organ of respiration. The *first maxilla* (*4*) is a very small organ, having neither exo- nor epipodite. The *mandible* (*3*) is a large strongly calcified body, toothed along its inner edge, and bearing on its anterior border a little three-jointed feeler-like body, the *palp*, the two distal segments (*en. 1, en. 2*) of which represent the endopodite, its proximal segment (*pr. 2*), together with the mandible proper (*pr. 1*), the protopodite.

The *antenna* (*2*) is of great size, being nearly as long as the whole body. It consists of an axis of five podomeres, the fifth or last of which bears a long flexible, many-jointed structure, or *flagellum* (*fl*), while from the second segment springs a scale-like body or *squame* (*ex*). It is fairly obvious that the two proximal segments represent the protopodite, the remaining three, with the flagellum, the endopodite, and the squame the exopodite.

The *antennule* (*1*) has an axis of three podomeres (*1–3*) ending in two many-jointed flagella (*fl. 1.* and *2*), which are sometimes considered as endo- and exopodite. But in all the other limbs, as we have seen, the exopodite springs from the second segment of the axis, and the probabilities are that there is no exact correspondence between the parts of the antennule and those of the remaining appendages.

The *eye-stalks*, already noticed, arise just above the antennules, and are formed each of a small proximal and a large distal segment. They are sometimes counted as appendages serially homologous with the antennæ, legs, &c. But, as we have seen in the case of Apus, the appendages of Crustacea are always formed in regular order from before backwards; the eye-stalks, on the other hand, always appear later, both in individual development and in the

Crustacean series, than the normal anterior appendages. They are therefore more properly to be looked upon as articulated processes of the prostomium, developed in connection with the need for an increased range of vision. The probability of the antennules being also prostomial structures has already been referred to: assuming this to be the case, it will be seen that the body of the Crayfish consists of a prostomium, eighteen metameres, and a telson which is probably composed of an anal segment, *plus* a post-anal plate. The prostomium bears eye-stalks and antennules: the first four metameres are fused with the prostomium to form the head, and bear the antennæ, mandibles, first maxillæ, and second maxillæ: the next eight metameres (5th–12th) constitute the thorax, and bear the three pairs of maxillipeds and the five pairs of legs: the remaining six metameres (13th–18th), together with the telson, constitute the abdomen, and bear five pairs of pleopods and one of uropods.

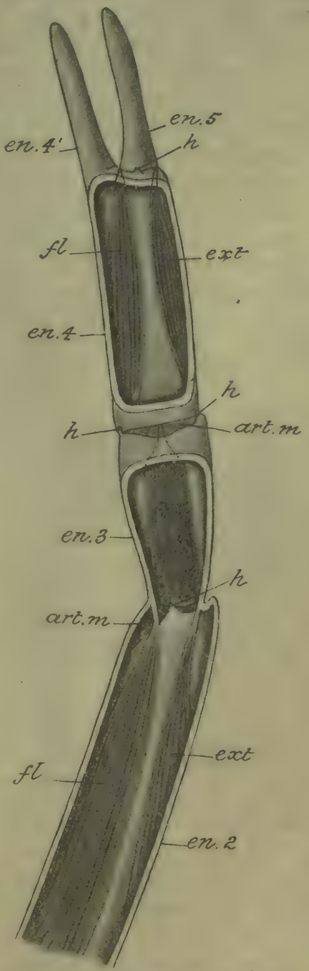


FIG. 398.—Portion of leg of **Astacus,** with the exoskeleton partly removed, showing articulations and muscles. *art. m.* articular membrane; *en.* 2—5, podomeres of endopodite; *ext.* extensor muscles; *fl.* flexors; *h.* hinge.

The **articulation** of the various podomeres of the appendages is on the same plan as that of the abdominal segments (p. 498). The podomeres are, it must be remembered, rigid tubes: they are connected with one another by flexible *articular membranes* (Fig. 398, *art. m.*), but at two points the adjacent ends of the tubes come into contact with one another and are articulated by peg-and-socket joints (*h.*), the two joints being at opposite ends of a diameter which forms the *axis of articulation.* The two podomeres can, therefore, be moved upon one another in a plane at right angles to the axis of articulation and in no other direction, the joints being pure hinge-joints. As a rule, the range of movement is from the perpendicular to a tolerably extensive flexion on one side—the articulations are single-jointed, like our own elbows and knees. The whole limb is, however, capable of universal movement, owing to the fact that the axes of articulation vary in direction in successive joints: the first joint of a limb bending, for instance, up and down, the next backwards and forwards, the next obliquely, and so on. In some cases, *e.g.* the pleopods, peg-and-socket joints are absent, the articulation being formed merely by an annular articular membrane and movement being therefore possible in any plane.

Body-wall.—The exoskeleton is produced into spines of varying form and size, and many parts of it bear tufts or fringes of setæ, which also exhibit a wide variation in size and form. It is composed of a thick laminated chitinous membrane (Fig. 399, *cu.*), more or less impregnated with lime-salts, and is shed periodically—once a year during adult life. Beneath it is the epidermis (*ep.*), composed of a single layer of cells, from which the chitin is secreted, and underlaid by a layer of connective-tissue (*c. t.*) to which the muscles are attached.

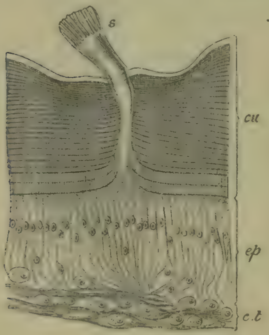


Fig. 399.—Vertical section of skin and exoskeleton of **Lobster.** *c.t.* connective tissue ; *cu.* cuticle ; *ep.* epidermis ; *s.* seta. (After Gerstaecker.)

The **muscular system,** like the exoskeleton, shows a great advance in complexity over that of Apus. In the abdomen (Fig. 400) the muscles are of great size, and are divisible into a smaller dorsal and a larger ventral set. The *dorsal muscles* (*d. m.*) are paired longitudinal bands, divided into myomeres, and inserted by connective tissue into the anterior border of each segment: anteriorly they are traceable into the thorax, where they arise from the side-walls of that region. When these muscles contract, they draw the anterior edge of each tergum under the posterior edge of its predecessor, and thus extend or straighten the abdomen.

The *ventral muscles* are extraordinarily complex. Omitting details, there is on each side a wavy longitudinal band of muscle (*c. m.*), nearly circular in section, which sends off a slip (*ex.*) to be inserted into each segment above the hinge (*h.*): the contraction of this muscle must obviously tend to approximate the terga, and so aid the dorsal muscles in extending the abdomen. Around this *central muscle* is wrapped, in each segment, a band of muscle (*env. m.*) in the form of a loop, the outer limb of which turns forwards and is inserted into a sternum, while the inner limb turns backwards and is inserted into another and more posterior sternum. The contraction of this *enveloping muscle* produces an approximation of the sterna, and thus flexes the abdomen, the central muscle always keeping the middle of the loop in place. The ventral muscles are, like the dorsal, traceable into the thorax, where they arise from the endophragmal system: their various parts are connected by a complex system of fibres extending between the central and enveloping muscles, and connecting both with their fellows of the opposite side. The flexor muscles are immensely powerful, and produce, when acting together, a sudden and violent bending of the abdomen upon the cephalothorax, causing the Crayfish to dart backwards with great rapidity.

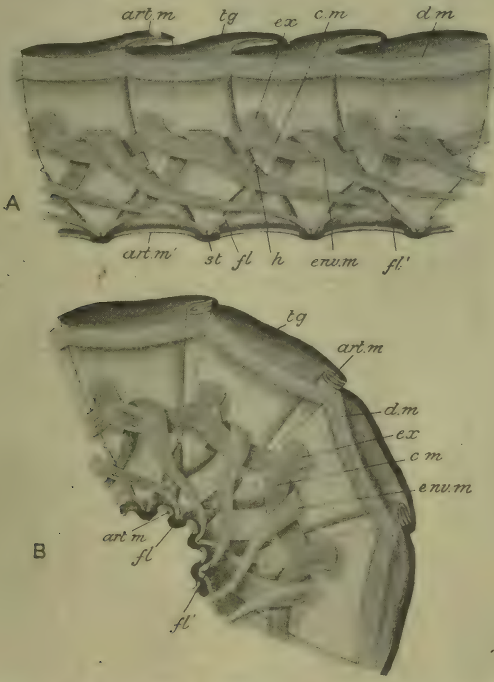


FIG. 400.—Four segments of abdomen of **Crayfish** in sagittal section, with muscles (diagrammatic). A, extension; B, flexion; *art. m.*, *art. m'.*, articular membranes; *c. m.* central muscles; *d. m.* dorsal muscle; *ex.* extensor slip of central muscle; *env. m.* enveloping muscle; *fl.*, *fl.*^{1}, flexor slips; *h.* hinge; *st.* sternum; *tg.* tergum.

It will be seen that the body-muscles of the Crayfish cannot be said to form a layer of the body-wall, as in Chætopods, the abdomen of Apus, &c., but constitute an immense fleshy mass, filling up the greater part of the body-cavity, and leaving a very small space around the enteric canal.

In the limbs (Fig. 398), each podomere is acted upon by two muscles situated in the next proximal podomere. These muscles are inserted, by chitinous and often calcified tendons, into the

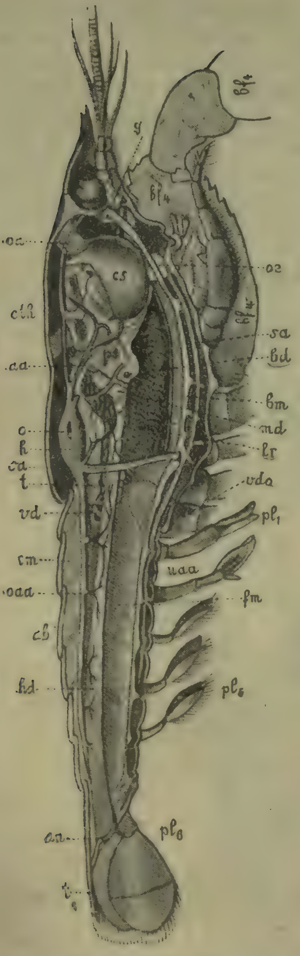


Fig. 401.—**Astacus fluviatilis,** dissection from the right side. *aa.* antennary artery; *ab.* abdomen; *an.* anus; *b. d.* bile duct; *bf. 4*, cheliped; *bm*, ventral nerve cord; *cs.* cardiac division of stomach; *cth.* cephalo-thorax; *cm*, dorsal muscles; *fm*, ventral muscles; *g*, brain; *h.* heart; *hd*, large intestine; *lr.* liver; *md*, small intestine; *o.* ostium; *oa.* ophthalmic artery; *oaa*, superior abdominal artery; *oe*, gullet; *pl. 1–5*, pleopods; *pl. 6*, uropod; *ps*, pyloric division of stomach *sa.* sternal artery; *t.* testis and telson; *uaa*, inferior abdominal artery; *vd.* vas deferens; *vdo*, male genital aperture. (From Lang, after Huxley.)

proximal edge of the segment to be moved, the smaller on the extensor (*ext.*), the larger on the flexor (*fl.*) side, in each case half-way between the two hinges, so that a line joining the two muscular insertions is at right angles to the axis of articulation.

The **digestive organs** are constructed on the same general plan as those of Apus, but present many striking differences (Fig. 401). The *mouth* lies in the middle ventral line of the head, and is bounded in front by the labrum, at the sides by the mandibles, and behind by a pair of delicate lobes, the *paragnatha.* It leads by a short wide *gullet* (*oe*) into a capacious *stomach*, which occupies a great part of the interior of the head, and is divided into a large anterior or *cardiac division* (*c. s*), and a small posterior or *pyloric division* (*ps*): the latter passes into a narrow and very short *small intestine* (*md*), from which a somewhat wider *large intestine* (*hd*) extends to the *anus* (*an.*), situated on the ventral surface of the telson.

The outer layer of the enteric canal consists of connective tissue containing striped muscular fibres: within this is a single layer of columnar epithelial cells. In the gullet and stomach, and in the large intestine, the epithelium secretes a layer of chitin, which thus constitutes the innermost lining of those cavities. It is proved by development that the small intestine, which has no chitinous lining, is the only part of the enteric canal developed from the mesenteron: the gullet and stomach arise from the stomodæum, the large intestine from the proctodæum. Thus a very small portion of the enteric epithelium is endodermal.

In the cardiac division of the stomach the chitinous lining is thickened and calcified in certain parts, so as to form a complex articulated framework, the *gastric mill*, on which are borne a median and two lateral *teeth*, strongly calcified and projecting into the cavity of the stomach. Two pairs of strong muscles arise from the carapace, and are inserted into the stomach: when they contract they move the mill in such a way that the three teeth meet in the middle and complete the comminution of the food begun by the jaws. The separation of the teeth is effected partly by the elasticity of the mill, partly by delicate muscles in the walls of the stomach. The pyloric division of the stomach forms a strainer: its walls are thickened and produced into numerous setæ, which extend quite across the narrow lumen and prevent the passage of any but finely divided particles into the intestine. Thus the stomach has no digestive function, but is merely a masticating and straining apparatus. On each side of the cardiac division is found at certain seasons of the year a plano-convex mass of calcareous matter, the *gastrolith*.

The digestion of the food and to some extent the absorption of the digested products are performed by a pair of large glands (*lr.*), lying one on each side of the stomach and anterior end of the intestine. They are formed of finger-like sacs or *cœca*, which discharge into wide ducts opening into the small intestine, and are lined with glandular epithelium derived from the endoderm of the embryo. The glands are often called livers, but as the yellow fluid they secrete digests proteids as well as fat, the name *hepato-pancreas* is often applied to them, or they may be called simply *digestive glands*. The Crayfish is carnivorous, its food consisting largely of decaying animal matter. Microscopic glands occur in the wall of the gullet.

The digestive organs and other viscera are surrounded by a *body-cavity*, which is in free communication with the blood-vessels and itself contains blood. As will be pointed out more particularly hereafter, this cavity is to be looked upon as an immense blood-sinus, and not as a true cœlome.

There are well-developed **respiratory organs,** in the form of *gills*, contained in a narrow branchial chamber, bounded internally by the proper wall of the thorax (Fig. 404, *ep*), externally by the gill-cover or pleural region of the carapace (*kd*). Each gill consists of a stem giving off numerous branchial filaments, so that the whole organ is plume-like. The filaments are hollow, and communicate with two parallel canals in the stem—an external, the *afferent branchial vein*, and an internal, the *efferent branchial vein*. The gill is to be considered as an out-pushing of the body-wall, and contains the same layers—a thin layer of chitin externally, then a single layer of epithelial cells, and beneath this connective tissue, hollowed out for the blood channels and containing gland-cells, which will be referred to presently.

According to their point of origin, the gills are divisible into three sets—first, *podobranchiæ* or foot-gills, springing from the epipodites of the thoracic appendages, from which they are only partially separable; secondly, *arthrobranchiæ* or joint-gills, springing from the articular membranes connecting the thoracic appendages with the trunk: and thirdly, *pleurobranchiæ*, or wall-gills, springing from the lateral walls of the thorax, above the attachment of the appendages. It is inferred from the study of other Crayfishes, that a typical thoracic segment bears four gills, one podo-, two arthro-, and one pleurobranchia. But in Potamobia

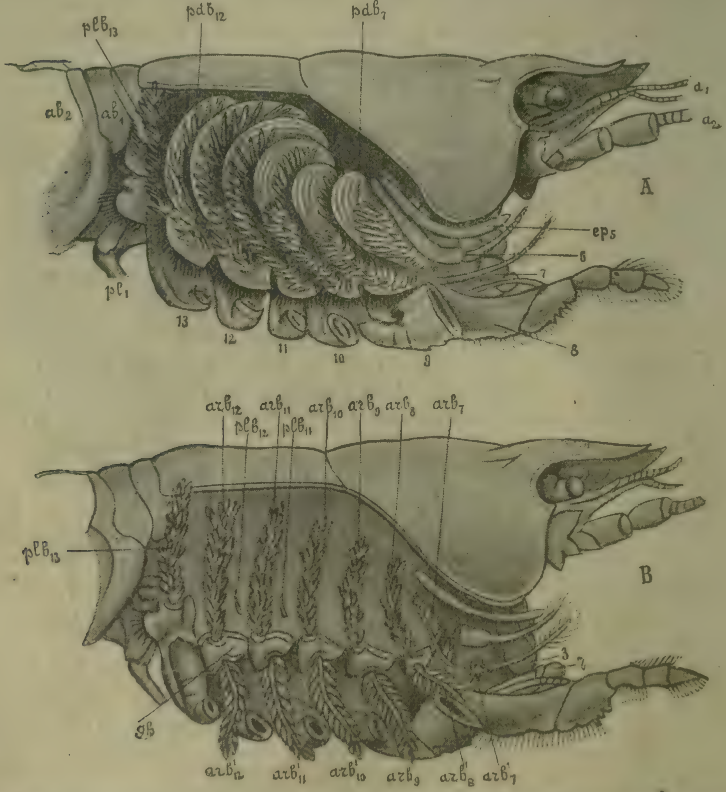

pdb12
pdb7
plb13
ab2
ab1
a1
a2
A
ep5
6
7
pl1
13
12
11
10
9
8
arb12
arb11
arb10
arb9
arb8
arb7
plb12
plb11
plb13
B
3
7
gb
arb'12
arb'11
arb'10
arb9
arb'8
arb'7

FIG. 402.—Respiratory organs of **Astacus fluviatilis.** In A the gill-cover is removed and the gills undisturbed; in B the podobranchiæ are removed and the outer arthrobranchiæ turned down. *a*1., antennule; *a*2., antenna; *ab*1., first; *ab*2., second abdominal segment; *arb. 7—12*, inner arthrobranchiæ; *arb'. 7—12*, outer arthrobranchiæ; *ep. 5*, scaphognathite; *plb. 11—13*, pleurobranchiæ; *pdb. 7—13*, podobranchs; *pl. 1*, first pleopod; *6—13*, thoracic appendages. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*, after Huxley.)

one or more of the gills in every segment are absent or vestigial, and the following table, or "branchial formula," shows the actual number and arrangement of these organs, *ep* standing for epipodite, and *r* for the vestige of a gill.

THORACIC SEGMENTS.	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.	VI.	VII.	VIII.	TOTAL.
odobranchiæ ...	0 + *ep*	1 + *ep*	1 + *ep*	1 + *ep*	1 + *ep*	1 + *ep*	1 + *ep*	0	6 + 7*ep*
rthrobranchiæ	0	1	2	2	2	2	2	0	11
leurobranchiæ	0	0	0	0	0	*r*	*r*	1	1 + 2*r*
TOTAL	0 + *ep*	2 + *ep*	3 + *ep*	3 + *ep*	3 + *ep*	3 + *r* + *ep*	3 + *r* + *ep*	1	18 + 2*r* + 7*ep*

By adding up the columns vertically we get the number of gills in each segment; by adding them horizontally, the number of each kind of gill; and by adding together the results obtained by either method, the total number of gills, viz., eighteen complete gills with two vestiges and seven epipodites.

The **excretory organs** differ both in position and in form from those of Apus. There are no shell-glands, but at the base of each antenna is an organ of a greenish colour, the *antennary* or *green gland*, by which the function of renal excretion is performed. The gland (Fig. 403) is cushion-shaped, and consists of three parts—(1) a central *saccule* (*s.*) of a yellowish colour, occupying the mid-dorsal region, and consisting of a sac divided into numerous compartments by partitions, and communicating with (2) the outer or *cortical portion* (*c. p.*), of a green colour, consisting of a glandular network formed of anastomosing canals, and communicating in its turn with (3) a *white portion* (*w. p.*), formed of a single tube partly converted into a sponge-work by ingrowths of its walls. The whole organ is lined by glandular epithelium, and the white portion discharges into a thin-walled sac or *urinary bladder* (*bl.*) which opens by a *duct* (*d.*) on the proximal segment of the antenna. The glands already referred to as occurring in the gills are also supposed to have an excretory function.

The **circulatory organs** are in a high state of development. The *heart* (Figs. 401, 404, *h.*) is situated in the dorsal region of the thorax, and is a roughly polygonal muscular organ pierced by three pairs of apertures or *ostia* (*o.*), guarded by valves which open inwards. It is enclosed in a spacious *pericardial sinus* (Fig. 404, *pc.*), which contains blood. From the heart spring a number of narrow tubes, called *arteries*, which serve to convey the blood to various parts of the body. At the origin of each artery from the heart are valves which allow of the flow of blood in one direction only, viz. from the heart to the artery. From the anterior end of the heart arise five vessels—the median *ophthalmic artery* (Fig. 401, *oa.*), which passes forwards to the eyes; paired *antennary arteries* (*aa.*), going to the antennules, antennæ, green glands, &c., and sending off branches to the stomach; and paired

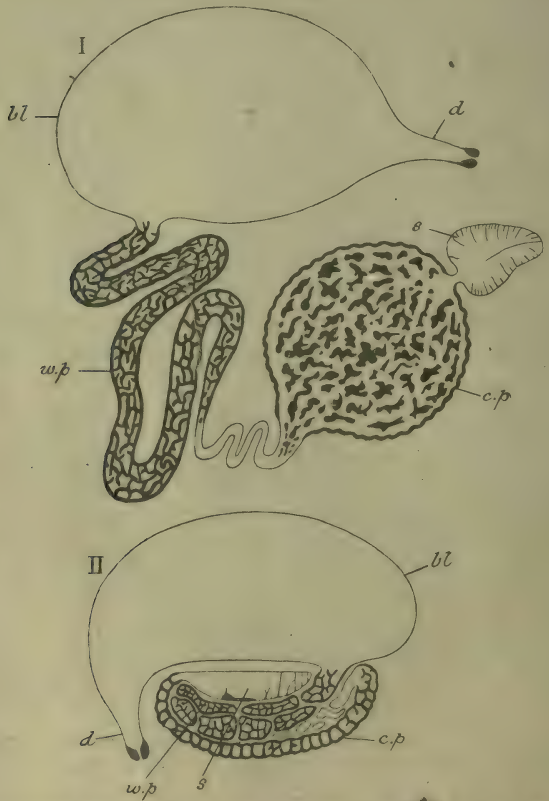


FIG. 403.—Diagram of kidney of **Astacus fluviatilis.** I, unravelled; II, the parts in their natural relations. *bl.* bladder; *c. p.* cortical portion; *d.* duct; *s.* sacculi; *w. p.* white portion. (After Marchal.)

hepatic arteries, going to the digestive glands. The posterior end of the heart gives off two unpaired arteries practically united at their origin, the *dorsal abdominal artery* (*oaa.*), which passes backwards above the intestine, sending branches to it and to the dorsal muscles; and the large *sternal artery* (*sa.*), which passes directly downwards, indifferently to right or left of the intestine, passing between the connectives uniting the third and fourth thoracic ganglia, and then turns forwards and runs in the sternal canal, immediately beneath the nerve-cord, and sends off branches to the legs, jaws, &c. At the point where the sternal artery turns forwards it gives off the median *ventral abdominal artery* (*uaa.*), which passes backwards beneath the nerve-cord, and supplies the ventral muscles, pleopods, &c.

All these arteries branch extensively in the various organs they supply, becoming divided into smaller and smaller offshoots, which finally end in microscopic vessels called *capillaries*. These latter end by open mouths which communicate with the *blood-sinuses* (Fig. 405, *s.*), spacious cavities lying among the muscles and viscera, and all communicating, mediately or immediately, with the *sternal sinus* (*st.s.*), a great median canal running longitudinally along the thorax and abdomen, and containing the ventral nerve-cord and the sternal and ventral abdominal arteries. In the thorax the sternal sinus sends an offshoot to each gill in the form of a well-defined vessel, which passes up the outer side of the gill and is called the *afferent branchial vein* (*af.br.v.*; see also Fig. 404). Spaces in the gill-filaments place the afferent in communication with the *efferent branchial vein* (*ef.br.v.*), which occupies the inner side of the gill-stem. The eighteen efferent branchial veins open into six *branchio-cardiac veins* (*br.c.v.*), which pass dorsally in close contact with the lateral wall of the thorax and open into the pericardial sinus (*pcd.s.*).

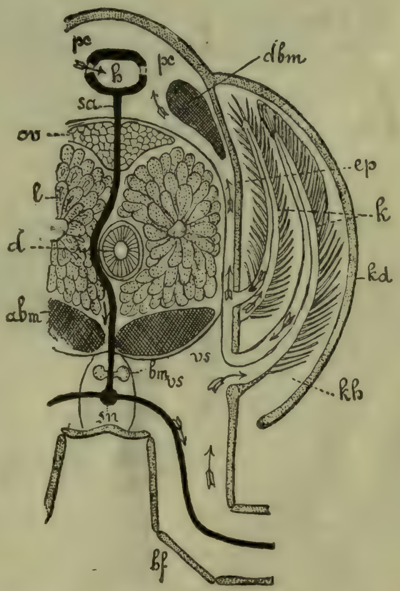


FIG. 404.—Transverse section of thorax of **Crayfish,** diagrammatic. *abm.* ventral abdominal muscles; *bf*, leg; *bm*, ventral nerve cord; *d*, intestine; *dbm.* dorsal muscles of abdomen; *ep*, wall of thorax; *h.* heart; *k*, gills; *kd*, gill-cover; *l.* liver; *ov.* ovary; *pc.* pericardial sinus; *sa. sn*, sternal artery; *vs.* ventral sinus. The arrow shows the direction of the blood-current. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy.*)

The whole of this system of cavities is full of blood, and the heart is rhythmically contractile. When it contracts, the blood contained in it is prevented from entering the pericardial sinus by the closure of the valves of the ostia, and therefore takes the only other course open to it, viz., into the arteries. When the heart relaxes, the blood in the arteries is prevented from regurgitating by the valves at their origins, and the pressure of blood in the pericardial sinus forces open the valves of the ostia and so fills the heart. Thus in virtue of the successive contractions of the heart, and of the disposition of the valves, the blood is kept constantly moving in one direction—viz., from the heart by the arteries to the various organs of the body, where it receives carbonic acid and other waste matters; thence by sinuses into the great sternal sinus; from the sternal sinus by afferent branchial veins to the gills, where it exchanges carbonic acid for oxygen; from the gills by efferent branchial veins to the branchiocardiac veins, thence into the pericardial sinus, and so to the heart once more.

It will be seen that the circulatory system of the Crayfish consists of three sections—(1) the *heart* or organ of propulsion; (2) a system of out-going channels, the *arteries*, which carry the blood from the heart to the body generally; and (3) a system of returning channels, some of them, the *sinuses*, mere irregular cavities; others, the *veins*, with definite walls, which return it from the various organs back to the heart. The respiratory organs, it should be observed, are interposed in the returning current, so that blood is taken both to and from the gills by veins.

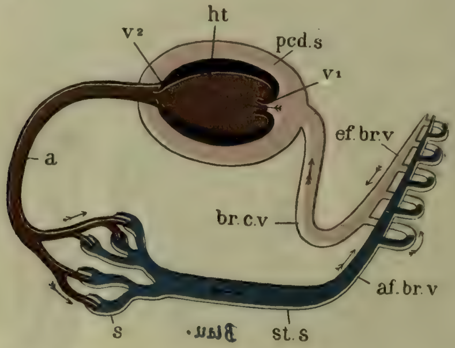


FIG. 405.—Diagram of the circulation in the **Crayfish**; heart and arteries scarlet, veins and sinuses containing non-aërated blood, blue; those containing aërated blood, pink. *a.* artery; *af.br.v.* afferent branchial vein; *br.c.v.* branchio-cardiac vein; *ef.br.v.* efferent branchial vein; *ht.* heart; *pcd.s.* pericardial sinus; *s.* sinus; *st.s.* sternal sinus; v^1, ostium with valves; v^2. arterial valves. The arrows show the direction of the current.

Comparing the blood-vessels of Astacus with those of a Chætopod, it would seem that the ophthalmic artery, heart, and dorsal abdominal artery together answer to a dorsal vessel, part of which has become enlarged and muscular, and discharges the whole function of propelling the blood. The horizontal portion of the sternal artery, together with the ventral abdominal, represent a ventral vessel, while the vertical portion of the sternal artery is a commissure, developed sometimes on the right, sometimes on the left side, its fellow being suppressed.

The blood when first drawn is colourless, but after exposure to the air takes on a bluish-gray tint. This is owing to the presence of a colouring matter called *hæmocyanin*, which becomes blue when combined with oxygen; it is a respiratory pigment, and serves, like hæmoglobin, as a carrier of oxygen from the external medium to the tissues. The hæmocyanin is contained in the plasma of the blood: the corpuscles are all colourless leucocytes.

The **nervous system** (Fig. 406) consists, like that of Apus, of a brain (*g*) and a ventral nerve-cord, united by œsophageal connectives (*sc*). But the right and left halves of the ventral cord have undergone partial fusion, so that the ganglia, and in the abdomen the connectives also, appear single instead of double. Moreover, the brain supplies not only the eyes and antennules, but the antennæ as well, and it is found by development that the two pairs of ganglia belonging to the antennulary and antennary segments have fused with the brain proper. Hence we have to distinguish between a primary brain or *archi-cerebrum*, the ganglion of the prostomium, and a secondary brain or *syn-cerebrum* formed by the union of one or more pairs of ganglia of the ventral cord with the archi-cerebrum. A further case of concrescence of ganglia is seen in the ventral nerve-cord, where the ganglia of the last three cephalic and first three thoracic segments have united to form a large compound *sub-œsophageal ganglion* (*bg*). All the remaining segments have their own ganglia, with the exception of the telson, which is supplied from the ganglion of the preceding segment. There is a *visceral system* of nerves (*s*) supplying the stomach, originating in part from the brain and in part from the œsophageal connectives.

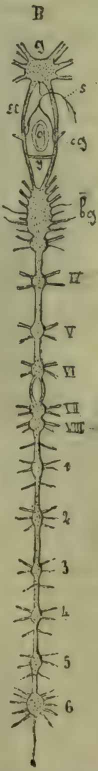


FIG. 406.—Nervous system of **Astacus fluviatilis.** *bg.* sub-œsophageal ganglion; *cg.* commissural ganglion; *g*, brain; *s*, visceral nerve; *sc*, œsophageal connective; *y*, post-œsophageal commissure; IV—VIII, thoracic ganglia; *1—6*, abdominal ganglia. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*, after Vogt and Yung.)

Sensory Organs.—The *eyes* have the same essential structure as the compound eye of Apus. The chitinous cuticle covering the distal end of the eye-stalk is transparent, divided by delicate lines into square areas or *facets*, and constitutes the *cornea*. Beneath each facet of the cornea is an ommatideum, optically separated from its neighbours by black pigment, and consisting of an outer segment or *vitreous body*, and an inner segment or *retinula* formed of sensory cells enclosing a rhabdome.

The antennules contain two sensory organs, to which are assigned the functions of smell and hearing respectively. The *olfactory organ* is constituted by a number of extremely delicate *olfactory setæ*, borne on the external flagellum, and supplied by branches of the antennulary nerve. The *auditory organ* is a sac formed by invagination of the dorsal surface of the proximal segment, and is in free communication with the surrounding water by a small aperture. The chitinous lining of the sac is produced into delicate feathered *auditory setæ*, supplied by branches of the antennulary nerve, and in the water which fills the sac are minute sand-grains, which take the place of otoliths, but, instead of being formed by the animal itself, are taken in after each ecdysis, when the lining of the sac is shed. Many of the setæ on the body generally have a definite nerve-supply, and are probably *tactile organs*.

Reproduction.—The Crayfish is diœcious, and presents a very obvious sexual dimorphism. The abdomen of the female is much broader than that of the male: the first and second pleopods of the male are modified into tubular or rather spout-like copulatory organs (Fig. 297, *9*); and the reproductive aperture is situated in the male on the proximal podomere of the fifth leg, in the female on that of the third.

The *testis* (Fig. 407, B, *t*, *u*) lies in the thorax, just beneath the floor of the pericardial sinus, and consists of paired anterior lobes (*t*) and an unpaired posterior lobe (*u*). From each side goes off a convoluted *vas deferens* (*vd*), which opens on the proximal segment of the last leg. The *sperms* are curious non-motile bodies produced into a number of stiff processes (Fig. 20, *f*): they are aggregated into vermicelli-like *spermatophores* by a secretion of the vas deferens.

The *ovary* (A, *ov. u*) is also a three-lobed body, and is similarly situated to the testis: from each side proceeds a thin-walled *oviduct* (*od*), which passes downwards, without convolutions, to open on the proximal segment of the third or antepenultimate leg. The eggs are of considerable size and are centrolecithal.

As in Apus, both ovary and testis are hollow organs, discharging their products internally. The ova, when laid, are fastened to the setæ on the pleopods of the female by the sticky secretion of glands occurring both on those appendages and on the segments themselves: they are fertilised immediately after laying, the male depositing spermatophores on the ventral surface of the female's body just before oviposition.

Development.—The process of *segmentation of the oosperm* presents certain striking peculiarities. The nucleus (Fig. 408, A, *nu*) divides repeatedly, but no corresponding division of the protoplasm takes place, with the result that the morula-stage, instead of being a heap of cells, is multinucleate but non-cellular. Soon the nuclei thus formed retreat from the centre of the embryo, and arrange themselves in a single layer close to the surface (B): around each of these protoplasm accumulates, the central part of the embryo consisting entirely of yolk-material. We thus get a *superficial segmentation*, characterised by a central mass of yolk and a superficial layer of cells collectively known as the *blastoderm* (C). Subsequently the yolk itself undergoes a process of segmentation, becoming divided into radiating *yolk-pyramids* (*y. p.*), each with its base in contact with one of the cells of the blastoderm and its

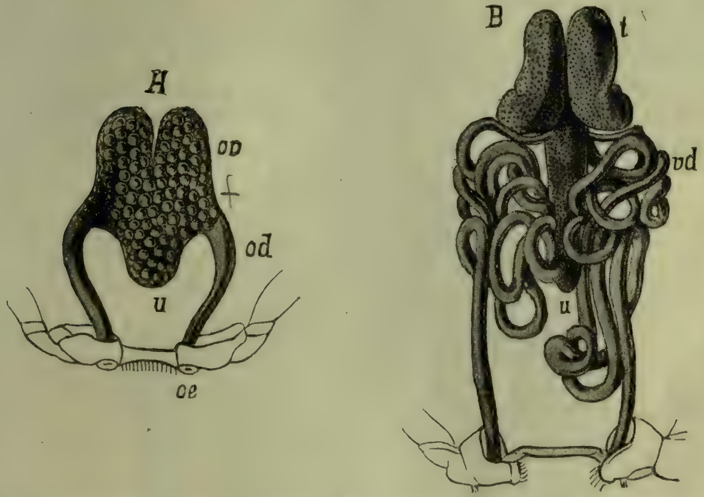


FIG. 407.—Reproductive organs of **Astacus fluviatilis**. A, female; B, male; *od.* oviduct; *ve,* ts external opening; *ov.* ovary; *t.* testis; *u.* unpaired posterior portion of gonad; *vd.* vas deferens. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*, after Huxley.)

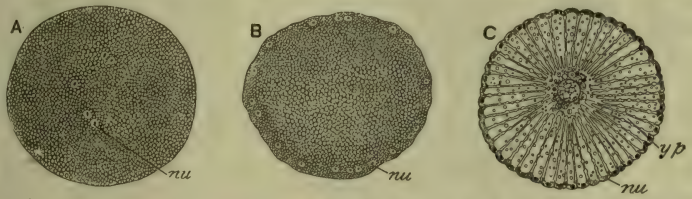


FIG. 408.—Three stages in the formation of the blastoderm of **Astacus fluviatilis.** *nu,* nuclei; *y. p.* yolk-pyramids. (From Korschelt and Heider, after Morin and Reichenbach.)

apex pointing to the centre of the egg: before long, however, these pyramids fuse into an undivided mass of yolk.

The first indications of the future Crayfish take the form of thickenings on what will become the ventral surface. There are at first five of these thickenings—two anterior, the *head-lobes* (Fig. 409, *K*), on which the eyes subsequently appear; two somewhat further back, the *thoracico-abdominal rudiments* (*TA*); and one, posterior and unpaired, the *endoderm-disc* (*ES*). On the latter an invagination of the blastoderm takes place, giving rise to a small sac, the *archenteron*, which communicates with the exterior by an aperture, the *blastopore*. By this process the embryo passes into the *gastrula-stage*, which, however, differs from the corresponding stage in the types previously studied in the immense quantity of food-yolk filling up the space (blastocœle) between ectoderm and endoderm. Very soon the embryo becomes triploblastic, or three-layered, by the budding off of cells from the endoderm in the neighbourhood of the blastopore: these accumulate between the ectoderm and endoderm, and constitute the mesoderm.

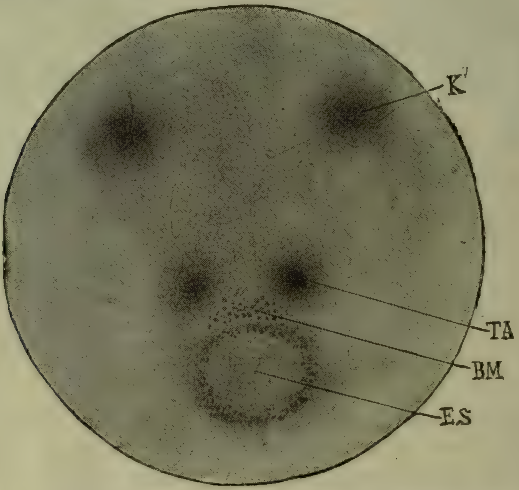


Fig. 409.—Early embryo of **Astacus.** *BM* mesoderm; *ES*, endoderm disc; *K'*, head-lobes; *TA*, thoracico-abdominal rudiments. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*, after Reichenbach.)

Before long the blastopore closes, converting the archenteron into a shut sac (Fig. 411, *A*): the thoracico-abdominal rudiments unite with one another, forming a well-marked oval elevation (Fig. 410, *TA*), and three pairs of elevations appear between it and the head-lobes. These are the rudiments of the first three pairs of appendages, the antennules (a_1.), antennæ (a_2.), and mandibles (*m.*): by their appearance the embryo passes into the *nauplius-stage*, which in this case is passed through in the egg, instead of being active and free-swimming as in Apus.

Between the bases of the antennules and antennæ a pit appears, which soon deepens and widens: it is the *stomodæum* (Fig. 411, *stdm.*), and its aperture the mouth. A similar but narrower and more cylindrical pit appears on the thoracico-abdominal rudiment: it is the *proctodæum* (*pcdm.*), and its aperture the anus. For a considerable time both stomodæum and proctodæum remain in the condition of blind sacs, but after a time they open into the archenteron, a complete enteric canal being thus constituted. In the meantime the endoderm cells lining the archenteron grow outwards in a radial direction, ingesting the yolk as they do so, until they take the form of long columns, in contact by their outer ends with the ectoderm (Fig. 411, B).

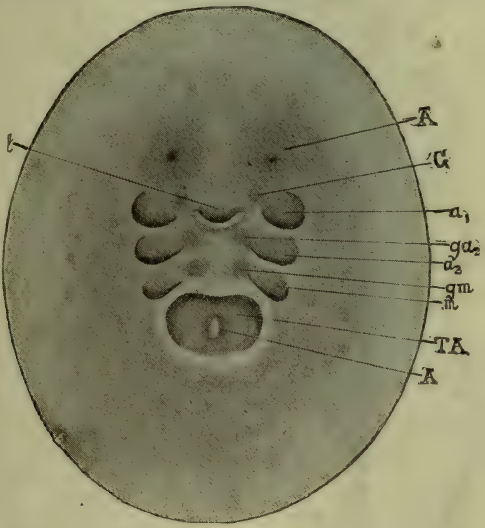


FIG. 410.—Nauplius-stage of **Astacus**. *A*, (above) eye; *A*, (below) anus; a_1. antennule; a_2. antenna; *G*, cerebral ganglion; ga_2. antennary ganglion; *gm*, mandibular ganglion; *l*. labrum; *m*. mandible; *TA*, thoracico-abdominal rudiment. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*, after Reichenbach.)

The thoracico-abdominal rudiment soon begins to increase rapidly in length, but, being enclosed in the egg-membranes, it grows not backwards but forwards, being in fact folded upon the anterior part of the body in much the same way as the abdomen of the adult during extreme flexion. Thus in Fig. 412 the ventral surface of the head and anterior thoracic region faces the observer, but the dorsal surface of the posterior thoracic and abdominal regions: in order to bring the parts into their adult position, the abdomen must be supposed to be lifted up and turned backwards.

In the meantime the post-mandibular appendages are formed in regular order from before backwards: the eye-stalks appear (Fig. 412, *A*), as well as the labrum (*l.*) and a fold on each side of the thorax, which is the rudiment of the carapace (*ts*), and gradually extends dorsally until it meets with its fellow of the opposite side and covers in the cephalothorax. The embryo now consists of a nearly globular cephalothorax with a small abdomen and a nearly complete set of appendages, all tucked in under the cephalothorax and closely packed together within the egg-membranes. In this condition the embryo is hatched, and for some

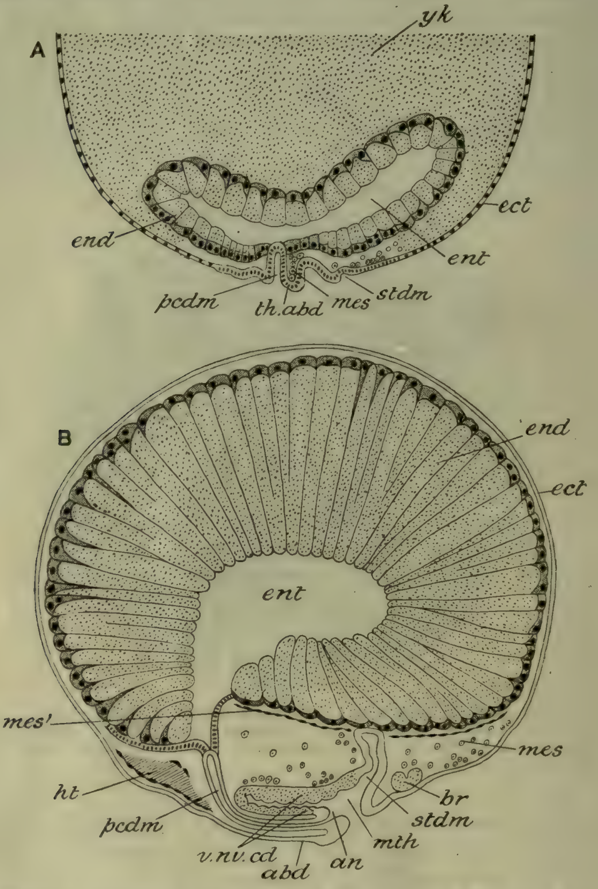


Fig. 411.—Sections of embryos of **Astacus.** A, Nauplius-stage (*cf.* Fig. 410); B, after development of thoracic appendages (*cf.* Fig. 412). *abd.* abdomen; *an.* anus; *br.* brain; *ect.* ectoderm; *end.* endoderm; *ent.* enteron; *ht.* heart; *mes.* mesoderm; *mes.'* splanchnic layer of mesoderm; *mth.* mouth; *pcdm.* proctodæum; *stdm.* stomodæum; *th. abd.* thoracico-abdominal rudiment; *v. nr. cd.* ventral nerve cord. (From Korschelt and Heider, after Reichenbach.)

time clings to the pleopods of the mother by means of the peculiarly hooked chelæ of its first pair of legs.

The development of the principal internal organs must be referred to very briefly. From the ectoderm arise, not only the epidermis of the adult, but the epithelium of the gullet and stomach and of the large intestine, the epithelium of the gills, the nervous system, the vitreous cells and retinulæ of the eyes, and the epithelium of the auditory sac. From the endoderm arises the epithelium of the small intestine and of the digestive glands, the latter being formed as tubular branching outgrowths of the archenteron. The connective-tissues, the muscles, the vascular system, the gonads, and perhaps the kidneys, are all of mesodermal origin.

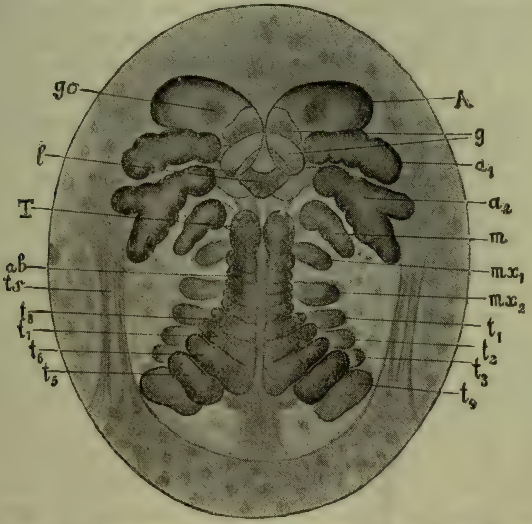


FIG. 412.—Embryo of **Astacus** after development of thoracic appendages. *A*, eyes; a_1. antennule; a_2. antenna; *ab*. abdomen; *g*, archicerebrum and ganglion of antennule; *go*, optic ganglion; *l*. labrum; *m*. mandible; mx_1. mx_2. maxillæ; *t. 1—8*, thoracic appendages; *t*. telson; *ts*, carapace. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*.)

2. DISTINCTIVE CHARACTERS AND CLASSIFICATION.

The Crustacea are Arthropods in which the five[1] anterior segments are fused with the prostomium to form the head, while the rest are usually divisible into two regions, the thorax and the abdomen. More or fewer of the thoracic segments may be fused with the head to form a cephalothorax. The head may bear a median eye, which frequently disappears in the adult, and a pair of compound eyes, both belonging to the prostomial region: the latter frequently become elevated on jointed eye-stalks. The appendages of the head are (1) the antennules, which are usually considered as belonging to the first metamere, but are perhaps more correctly to be looked upon as prostomial; (2) the antennæ, which are certainly post-oral or metameric appendages shifted forwards to a præ-oral position; (3) the mandibles or crushing jaws; (4) the first maxillæ; and (5) the second maxillæ. The thoracic and abdominal appendages are variously modified as jaws, legs, fins, or accessory reproductive organs. With the exception of the antennules, the appendages are typically biramous, consisting of a stem or protopodite bearing two branches, the endopodite and exopodite.

---

[1] Or four if the antennulary region is counted as part of the prostomium.

The body is covered externally by a chitinous cuticle, which becomes thickened and sometimes calcified in regions where no movement is required, forming a series of hard parts or *sclerites*, separated by flexible chitin: the whole chitinous cuticle thus constitutes an exoskeleton. Typically there is one sclerite to each metamere behind the head, and to each podomore in the appendages, but concrescence of sclerites frequently takes place. The exoskeleton is produced into setæ, which are hollow processes of the cuticle, containing prolongations of the underlying epidermis.

Respiration takes place either by the general surface of the body or by gills, which are hollow offshoots of the thoracic wall or of the thoracic or abdominal limbs. The stomodæum and proctodæum form a considerable portion of the enteric canal, and are lined with chitin: the mesenteron gives rise to digestive glands. The body-cavity is divided into compartments, most of which contain blood and are portions of the vascular system: the true cœlome may be represented by compartments of the body-cavity not containing blood and by the cavities of the reproductive organs. There is a vascular system consisting of a contractile heart, formed as a muscular dilatation of a dorsal vessel, and communicating by valvular ostia with an enclosing pericardial sinus. The blood is taken from the heart to the various organs by arteries, and is returned to the pericardial sinus by sinuses and veins: the respiratory organs are interposed in the returning current. The renal organs are peculiarly modified nephridia, which may take the form either of shell-glands opening on the second maxilla, or of antennary (green) glands opening on the antenna.

The nervous system consists of a brain united by œsophageal connectives with a ventral nerve-cord, formed of a double chain of ganglia joined together by commissures and connectives. The first three pairs of embryonic ganglia commonly unite to form the brain, which is therefore a syn-cerebrum. The sexes are separate or united: sexual dimorphism is common: parthenogenesis frequently occurs. The sperms are usually non-motile:

the eggs are usually centrolecithal but may be telolecithal, or almost alecithal. The muscles are striped, and there are no cilia.

Segmentation of the oosperm is usually superficial, but may be complete or discoid. The embryo passes though a nauplius stage, which may be a free-swimming larva or may be passed through before hatching, and is characterised by the presence of three pairs of appendages which become the antennules, antennæ, and mandibles of the adult.

The Crustacea are classified as follows:—

Sub-Class I.—Entomostraca.

Crustacea of comparatively simple organisation, and usually of small, often almost microscopic size. The number of post-cephalic segments is variable, and the appendages show comparatively little differentiation. A large cephalic carapace is often present. A considerable portion of the enteric canal is derived from the mesenteron, and there is no gastric mill. The excretory organs are shell-glands. There is a metamorphosis, and the larva usually leaves the egg as a free-swimming nauplius.

ORDER 1.—PHYLLOPODA.

Entomostraca in which the body is distinctly segmented and is covered by a cephalic carapace. The post-cephalic appendages are leaf-like.

Sub-Order a.—Euphyllopoda.

Phyllopoda of considerable size, with 10–60 pairs of leaf-like swimming-feet.

This group includes *Apus* and allied genera, such as *Branchipus*, *Artemia*, and *Estheria* (Fig. 413).

Sub-Order b.—Cladocera.

Small Phyllopoda with compressed body inclosed in a bivalved carapace, and with four or five pairs of swimming-feet. The chief organs of locomotion are the large biramous antennæ.

Including *Daphnia*, *Leptodora*, &c. (Fig. 414).

ORDER 2.—OSTRACODA.

Small Entomostraca having the body inclosed in a carapace or shell formed of articulated right and left valves. The body is unsegmented and the abdomen rudimentary. There are only seven pairs of appendages. The sperms exhibit motility after reaching the female ducts.

Including *Cypris*, *Cythere*, &c. (Fig. 415).

ORDER 3.—COPEPODA.

Entomostraca, mostly of small size, having an elongated body distinctly segmented except in certain parasitic forms. The carapace may extend over the first thoracic segment. The thorax bears, in the free forms, four or five pairs of biramous appendages: the abdomen is limbless. Many species are parasitic, and show various stages of degeneration of structure.

Sub-Order a.—Eucopepoda.

Free or ectoparasitic Copepoda having biramous swimming-feet and biting jaws, or, in the case of parasitic forms, a more or less degenerate structure, and jaws often adapted for sucking. The eggs undergo development in paired brood-pouches attached at the base of the abdomen.

In this group are included (*a*) free-swimming forms, such as *Cyclops* (Water-flea), and (*β*) parasitic forms, or Fish-lice—*e.g. Ergasilus, Chondracanthus, Lernæa* (Figs. 416 and 417).

Sub-order b.—Branchiura.

Ectoparasitic Copepoda having compound eyes and a suctorial mouth. The second maxillæ form sucking-discs for attachment to the host. The whole body is strongly depressed, and there are no brood-sacs.

Including the carp-lice, *Argulus* (Fig. 418).

ORDER 4.—CIRRIPEDIA.

Imperfectly segmented marine Entomostraca, often of considerable size, and either fixed during adult life or parasitic. The sexes are united, and the sperms are motile.

Sub-order a.—Eucirripedia.

Fixed or parasitic Cirripedia in which the body is usually enclosed in a fold of skin, strengthened by calcareous plates. The abdomen is rudimentary. There are usually six pairs of biramous appendages.

This group includes (*a*) fixed forms, such as *Lepas* (Barnacle) and *Balanus* (Acorn-shell), and (*β*) parasites—*e.g. Petrarca, Alcippe, Proteolepas* (Figs. 419 and 420).

Sub-order b.—Rhizocephala.

Parasitic Cirripedia in which the body has undergone extreme degeneration, having no trace of segmentation or of appendages in the adult condition. The juices of the host are absorbed through long root-like processes.

Including *Sacculina* and *Peltogaster* (Fig. 421).

Sub-Class II.—Malacostraca.

Highly-organised Crustacea, usually of considerable size, and having, except in one order, a thorax of eight, and an abdomen of seven segments. The appendages are usually highly differentiated. As a rule the mesenteron forms only a small portion of the adult enteric canal, and there is a gastric mill. The renal organs are antennary glands. The nauplius stage is usually passed through in the egg, but there is a more or less complex metamorphosis.

ORDER 1.—PHYLLOCARIDA.

Small Malacostraca approaching the Entomostraca in structure. The body is enclosed in a large bivalved cephalic carapace. The thoracic feet are leaf-like, the abdominal feet biramous. The abdomen has eight segments and a pair of caudal styles.

The principal genus is *Nebalia* (Fig. 422).

ORDER 2.—SCHIZOPODA.

Small shrimp-like Malacostraca having the thorax more or less completely covered by a soft carapace. The thoracic appendages are all biramous. The eyes are stalked.

Including *Mysis* (Opossum-shrimp), *Euphausia*, &c. (Fig. 423).

ORDER 3.—DECAPODA.

Malacostraca in which all the thoracic segments are united with the head to form a cephalothorax usually covered by a carapace. The three anterior pairs of thoracic limbs are biramous foot-jaws, the posterior five pairs are walking legs devoid of exopodites. The third maxillipedes are leg-like. The eyes are stalked, the gills thoracic.

Sub-order a.—Macrura.

The abdomen is usually larger than the cephalothorax, and is commonly held in an extended position. There is usually a distinct rostrum. The eyes are not enclosed in orbits. The antennules and antennæ are large, the antennules are not sunk in pits, and the antennæ have an exopodite or squame.

Including (α) swimming forms—*Penæus* and *Palæmon* (Prawns), *Crangon* (Shrimp), *Lucifer*, &c.; (β) creeping forms—*Homarus* (Lobster), *Astacus*, *Astacoides*, *Paranephrops* (Fresh-water Cray-fishes), *Palinurus* (Rock-lobster), *Scyllarus*, &c.; (γ) anomalous forms, approaching the Brachyura—*Pagurus* (Hermit-crab), *Birgus* (Cocoa-nut crab) *Hippa*, &c. (Figs. 424—426).

Sub-order b.—Brachyura.

The abdomen is shorter than the cephalothorax and is permanently flexed under it. The eyes are enclosed in orbits or tubular cavities of the carapace. The antennules and antennæ are small: the bases of the antennules are sunk in pits of the carapace, and the antenna has no exopodite. The third maxillipedes are flattened and valve-like.

Including the true crabs, such as *Cancer*, *Maia*, *Dromia*, &c. (Figs. 427 and 428).

ORDER 4.—STOMATOPODA.

Thoracostraca of considerable size in which the three posterior thoracic segments are not covered by the carapace. The abdomen is very large. The five anterior thoracic limbs are maxillipedes, and the second of them is very large and forms a defensive weapon: the last three are small biramous legs. The gills are borne on the abdominal segments. The eyes are stalked.

Including *Squilla* and *Gonodactylus* (Fig. 429).

ORDER 5.—CUMACEA.

Small shrimp-like Malacostraca having the first three or four thoracic segments fused with the head, the rest free. The two first pairs of thoracic appendages are maxillipedes, the remaining six legs; some of the latter are biramous. The eyes are sessile.

Including *Cuma*, *Diastylis*, &c. (Fig. 430).

ORDER 6.—ARTHROSTRACA.

Malacostraca in which the first, sometimes also the second, thoracic segment is fused with the head and bears maxillipedes: the remaining seven are free and bear legs. The eyes are usually sessile.

Sub-order a.—Amphipoda.

Arthrostraca in which the body is usually compressed or flattened from side to side. The gills are borne on the thoracic appendages.

Including *Gammarus* (Fresh-water shrimp), *Orchestia* (Sand-hopper), *Phronima*, *Caprella*, *Cyamus* (Whale-louse), &c. (Figs. 431 and 433).

Sub-order b.—Isopoda.

Arthrostraca in which the body is usually depressed or flattened from above downwards. The gills are borne on the abdominal appendages.

Including (*a*) free forms—*Asellus*, *Oniscus* (Wood-louse), *Armadillo* (Pill-bug); (*β*) parasitic forms—*Cymothöe*, *Bopyrus*, &c. (Figs. 432 and 434).

Systematic Position of the Examples.

The genera *Apus* and *Lepidurus* belong to the family *Apodidæ*, sub-order *Euphyllopoda*, order *Phyllopoda*, and sub-class *Entomostraca*.

The indefinite number of segments, varying considerably in the species of both genera, and the presence of a shell-gland place them among the Entomostraca.

The leaf-like character of the swimming-feet is alone sufficient to assign them to the Phyllopoda, and the large number (considerably more than ten) of segments and swimming-feet decides their position among the Euphyllopoda.

They are placed in the family Apodidæ in virtue of the elongated body with 40–60 pairs of swimming-feet, diminishing in size from before backwards, and showing considerable differentiation; and of the elongated heart reaching to the twelfth post-cephalic segment.

Apus is distinguished by the absence of a post-anal plate, and by elongated flagella (endites) to the first pair of thoracic feet: in Lepidurus the post-anal plate is present, and the flagella of the first thoracic feet are short.

Astacus fluviatilis is one of several species of the genus *Astacus*, belonging to the family *Potamobiidæ*, tribe *Astacoidea*, sub-order *Macrura*, order *Decapoda*, and sub-class *Malacostraca*.

The possession of twenty-one segments—*i.e.* a prostomium, nineteen metameres, and a telson—places it among the Malacostraca: the presence of five pairs of thoracic legs without exopodites, and of thoracic gills, among the Decapoda.

The possession of a squame to the antenna, and of legs having all seven podomeres distinct—the first three pairs chelate, and the first pair greatly enlarged—determine its position in the tribe Astacoidea, which includes all the fresh-water Crayfishes and the true Lobsters. The family Potamobiidæ is distinguished by having the podobranchiæ partly united to the epipodites, and by having appendages on the first abdominal segment of the male, and usually on that of the female.

3. General Organisation.

There is no class in the animal kingdom which presents so wide a range of organisation as the Crustacea, or in which the deviations in structure from the "type-form" are so striking and so interesting from their obvious adaptation to the mode of life.

The most interesting modifications are those connected with the **external characters** and the **structure of the appendages.** As we have seen, the body consists of a prostomium, a variable number of metameres, and an anal segment. The first five metameres—or four if the antennulary region is not reckoned as a metamere—fuse with the prostomium to form a head, which, as well as the anal segment, is homologous throughout the class. On the other hand, there is no strict homology between the various post-cephalic metameres in different forms until we come to the Malacostraca, in which their number is constant.

There is considerable diversity of form among the *Euphyllopoda.* Apus has already been described. Branchipus (Fig. 413, 1) and Artemia (the Brine-shrimp), are small shrimp-like forms, the former living in fresh-water lakes, the latter in brine-pools; they have no carapace, and the eyes are raised on unjointed stalks. In Limnetis (2), on the other hand, the carapace is large enough to cover the whole body, and in Estheria (3) it takes the form of a *shell*, formed of two parts or *valves*, united by a hinge, and resembling the shell of a cockle or other bivalved mollusc. The limbs have the same general structure as those of Apus, but the antennæ are often of considerable size, and are sometimes modified into prehensile organs.

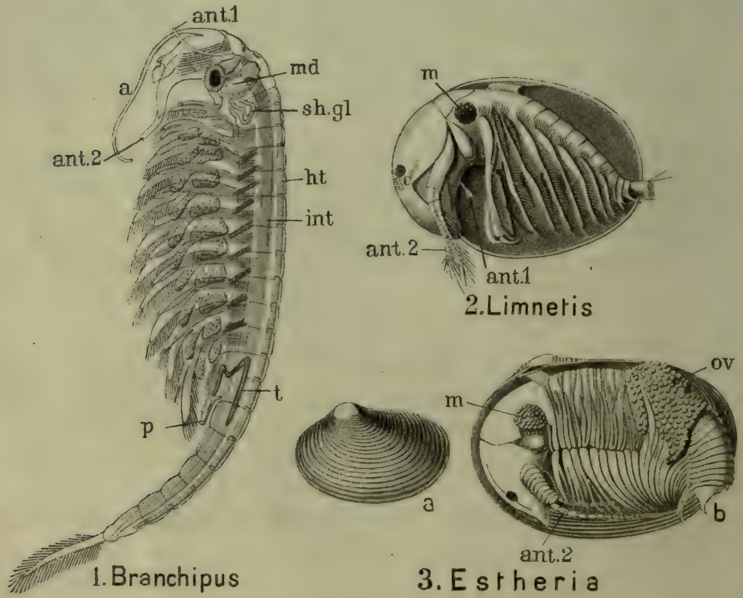
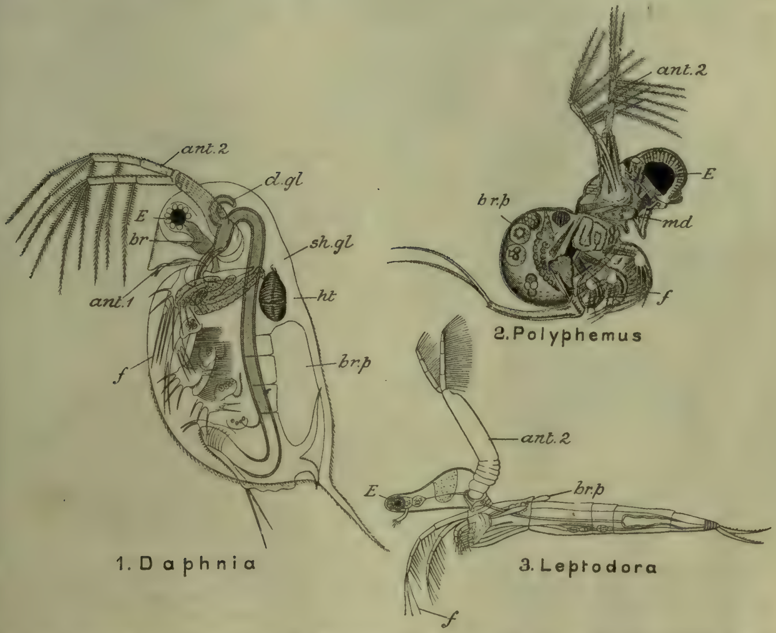


Fig. 413.—Three **Euphyllopoda.** In 3, *a* is the shell, *b* the animal with one valve of the shell removed; *ant*^{1}. antennule; *ant*^{2}. antenna; *ht.* heart; *m.* adductor muscle; *md.* mandible; *ov.* ovary, *a.* unpaired process from head; *p*, copulatory appendages; *sh.gl.* shell-gland; *t.* testis. (After Gerstaecker.)

In the *Cladocera*, of which the common fresh-water Daphnia (Fig. 414, 1) is a good example, there is a great reduction in size (1-2 mm.), and a corresponding shortening of the body, by a reduction in the number of metameres. Segmentation is very imperfect, and the whole body is covered by a large folded carapace. The abdomen is turned downwards and is in constant movement, sweeping out any foreign particles which may have made their way among the feet. Between the abdomen of the female and the posterior part of the carapace is a large *brood-pouch* (*br.p*), in which the eggs are stored. The paired eyes (*E*) have fused into a single organ, which exhibits a constant trembling movement. The antennules (*ant.1*) are small, the antennæ (*ant.2*) very large, biramous, and constitute the chief organs of locomotion. The mandibles are large, the second maxillæ absent in the adult, and there are five pairs of leaf-like swimming-feet (*f*) on the thorax. The abdomen is devoid of appendages. Many of the Cladocera have an extraordinarily grotesque form (2, 3), owing to the peculiar shape of the head, the immense antennæ, and the great hump-like brood-pouch.



1. Daphnia 2. Polyphemus 3. Leptodora

FIG. 414.—Three **Cladocera**. *ant.1*, antennule; *ant.2*, antenna; *br.* brain; *br.p.* brood-pouch; *E.* eye; *d.gl.* digestive gland; *f.* swimming-feet; *ht.* heart; *md.* mandible; *sh.gl.* shell-gland. (1 after Claus, 2 and 3 after Gerstaecker.)

The *Ostracoda* are usually not more than 1–2 mm. in length, and are found both in fresh and sea-water. One of the commonest genera is *Cypris*, which occurs in immense numbers in stagnant pools. *Cythere* is a common marine form.

The body (Fig. 415) is unsegmented, and is completely enclosed in a carapace (A), the right and left halves of which are articulated together along the dorsal edge so as to form a bivalved shell (C), which may be variously ornamented or sculptured. The valves are opened by the elasticity of a ligament, which passes from one to another at the hinge, and are closed by a large *adductor muscle* (*m.*), which passes transversely from valve to valve, its insertions giving rise to markings on the shell (A, *m.*), often of systematic value.

At the anterior end is a median eye (*e*), and in some forms compound eyes are present as well. There are only seven pairs of appendages. The antennules (*ant.1*) and antennæ (*ant.2*) are large and uniramous. The mandible (*md.*) has a large leg-like palp and a flabellum-like offshoot. The first maxilla (*mx.1*) also bears a large plate resembling a flabellum of Apus. The last cephalic appendage (second maxilla, *mx.2*) is jaw-like in some forms (*Cypris*) leg-like in others (*Cythere*). The only thoracic appendages are two pairs of slender legs (*f.1*, *f.2*). The abdomen (*abd.*) is devoid of appendages, and is terminated by strong setæ.

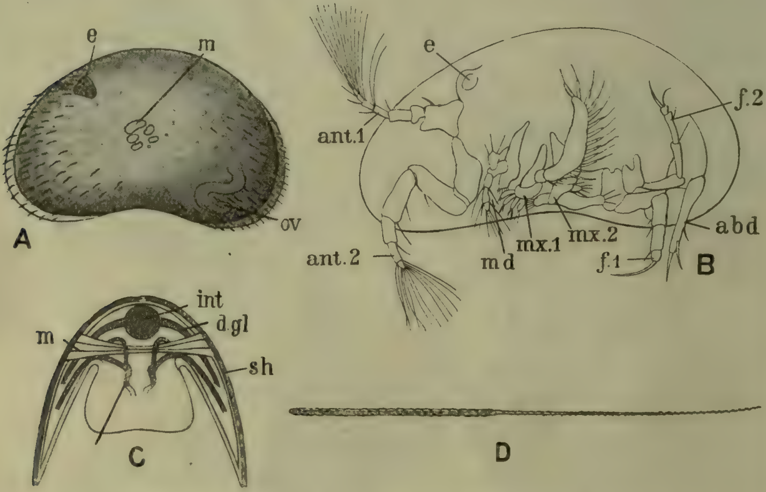
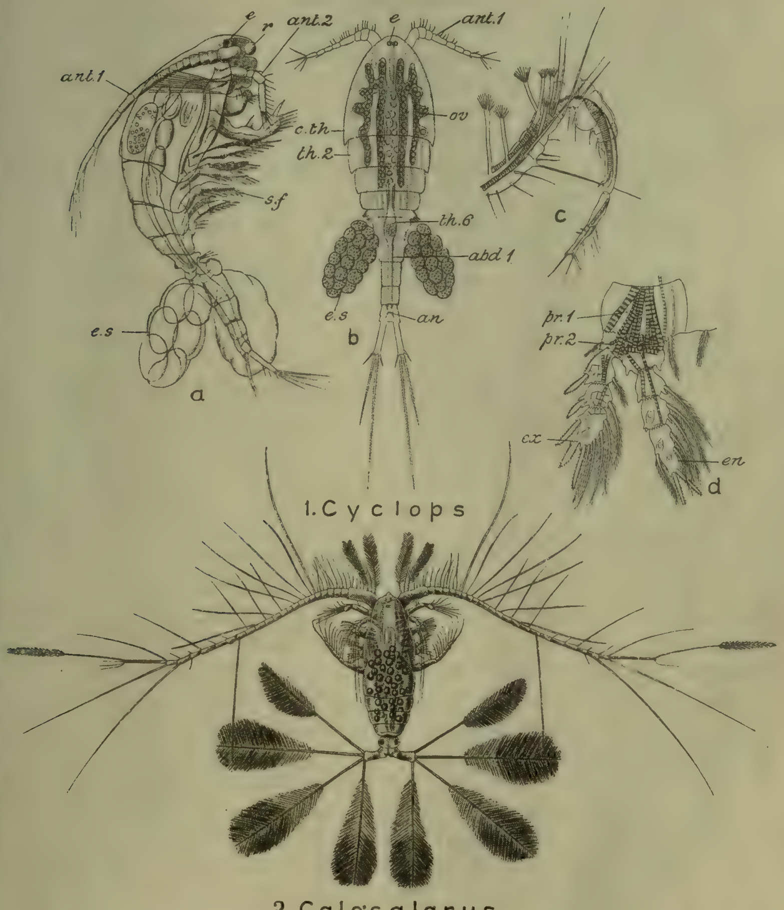


Fig. 415.—A, external view of **Cypris**; B, the same with the appendages exposed by the removal of the left valve of the shell; C, transverse section; D, a single sperm. *abd.* abdomen; *ant.1*, antennule; *ant.2*, antenna; *d.gl.* digestive gland; *e.* median eye; *f.1*, *f.2*, thoracic feet; *int.* intestine; *m.* adductor muscle; *md.* mandible; *mx.1*, *mx.2*, maxillæ; *ov.* ovary; *sh.* shell; *t.* testis. (After Gerstaecker.)

The diversity of form among the *Copepoda* is so great that it will be advisable to consider separately the free-swimming Eucopepoda, the parasitic Eucopepoda, and the Branchiura.

The *free-swimming Eucopepoda* are well represented by the common water-flea (*Cyclops*), found everywhere in fresh and brackish water, and easily recognisable, in spite of its minute size, by its elongated form, its rapid, jerky movements, and by the egg-sacs of the female.

Cyclops (Fig. 416, *1*) has been compared in form to a split pear, the broad end being anterior, and the convex surface dorsal. The first thoracic segment is fused with the head, and the cephalo-thorax (*c.th.*) thus formed is covered with a carapace produced in front into a short spine or *rostrum* (*r*), near the base of which, on the dorsal surface, is the median eye (*e*). There are five free thoracic segments: the last (*th. 6*) bears the genital



1. Cyclops

2. Calocalanus

Fig. 416.—*1a*, female **Cyclops,** from the right side; *b*, dorsal view; C, antenna of male; D, swimming-foot. *abd.1*, first abdominal segment; *ant.1*, antennule; *ant.2*, antenna; *c. th.* cephalo-thorax; *e.* median eye; *en.* endopodite; *e.s.* egg-sac; *ex.* exopodite; *ov.* ovary; *pr.1*, *pr.2*, protopodite; *r.* rostrum; *s.f.* swimming-feet; *th.2*, *th.6*, thoracic segments. (After Huxley, Gerstaecker, Hartog, and Giesbrecht.)

aperture, and is fused in the female with the first abdominal (*abd.* 1). There are four abdominal segments: the last bears the dorsal anus (*an*), and a pair of caudal styles produced into plumed setæ.

The antennules (*ant.* 1) are very large, and are the principal organs of locomotion. In the male they are modified (C.), by a peculiar form of joint and long setæ, as clasping organs, used for holding the female during copulation. The antennæ (*ant.* 2) are comparatively short and uniramous. Mandibles and maxillæ are present, and the first four thoracic appendages bear biramous swimming-feet (*s.f*, *a*), those of the right and left sides being connected by transverse plates or *couplers.* The fifth thoracic segment bears a pair of vestigial limbs: the abdominal segments are limbless.

Some of the pelagic marine Eucopepoda (Fig. 416, 2) are remarkable for their brilliant colours, and for the extraordinary development of their setæ, especially those of the caudal styles.

The *parasitic Eucopepoda*, or Fish-lice, present a very interesting series of modifications, illustrating the degeneration of structure which so often accompanies parasitism. *Ergasilus* (Fig. 417, *1*) is found on the gills of the Bass (*Morone labrax*); it is readily recognisable as a Copepod, but the appendages are greatly reduced, the antennæ modified into hooks for holding on to the host, and the eyes absent. *Anthosoma* (*2*), found in the mouth of the Porbeagle Shark (*Lamna cornubica*), has recognisable appendages, but the form of the body is much modified by the development of curious overlapping lobes. *Nicothöe* (*3*), found on the gills of the Lobster, has antennæ and mouth-parts modified for suction: the abdomen is normal, but the thorax is produced into huge lobes, which give it a curiously deformed appearance. In *Chondracanthus* (*4*), the various species of which are parasites on the gills of Bony Fishes, there is, at the first glance, nothing to suggest that the animal is a Crustacean, except the characteristic copepod egg-sacs: the body is depressed, unsegmented, and produced into crinkled lobes, and it requires careful examination to discover that antennules, hooked antennæ (*ant.2*)—used for attachment—mandibles, maxillæ, and two pairs of legs (*f.1*, *f.2*) are present. The male (*b*) is of higher organisation than the female, but of minute size—about $\frac{1}{12}$ the length of its mate—and is permanently attached to her body, close to the genital aperture (*a*, *M*). In *Lernæa* (*7*) and its allies the body is vermiform with a curiously lobed anterior end: the maxillæ are adapted for piercing the skin of the host and sucking its juices, and there are minute vestiges of feet. In *Lesteira* (*5*) the degradation is even more marked: the female reaches a large size—70 mm. in length, excluding the egg-sacs—and is found with the swollen head between the skin and flesh of a fish

(*Genypterus blacodes*), and the rest of the body hanging freely into the water. Lastly, in *Tracheliastes* (*6*) the second maxillæ (*mx.2*) are greatly enlarged, and form a characteristic organ of attachment.

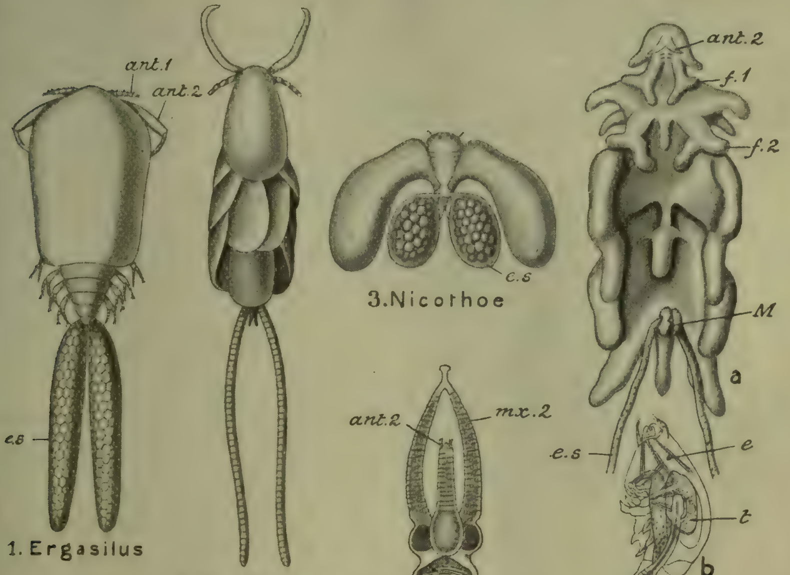

ant.1
ant.2
e.s
1. Ergasilus
2. Anthosoma
e.s
3. Nicothoe
ant.2
f.1
f.2
M
a
e.s
e
t
b
4. Chondracanthus
ant.2
mx.2
e.s
6. Tracheliastes
h
n
e.s
5. Lesteira
e.s
7. Lernaea

FIG. 417.—Various forms of parasitic **Eucopepoda.** 4a, female; 4b, male. *ant. 1*, antennule; *ant.2*, antenna; *e.* median eye; *e.s.* egg-sac; *f.1*, *f.2*, thoracic feet; *M.* male; *mx.2*, second maxillæ. (After Gerstaecker, Claus, Cuvier, and G. M. Thompson.)

Argulus (Fig. 418) is the most familiar example of the *Branchiura*, or Carp-lice. It is an external parasite on fresh-water Fishes (Carp, Stickleback, &c.), not permanently attached like the degenerate forms just described, but crawling freely over the surface of the host. The body consists of an oval flattened cephalo-thorax, and a small bilobed abdomen (*ab.*). The mandibles and maxillæ are piercing organs enclosed in a sucking-tube or proboscis (*r.*), in front of which is a median tube ending in a spine (*st*). The second maxillæ are divided into two portions, the anterior of which (*kf.1*) are modified into sucking-discs, by which the parasite clings to the surface of its host, and there are four pairs of swimming-feet (*b1—b4*). Alone among the Copepoda the Branchiura have no egg-sacs.

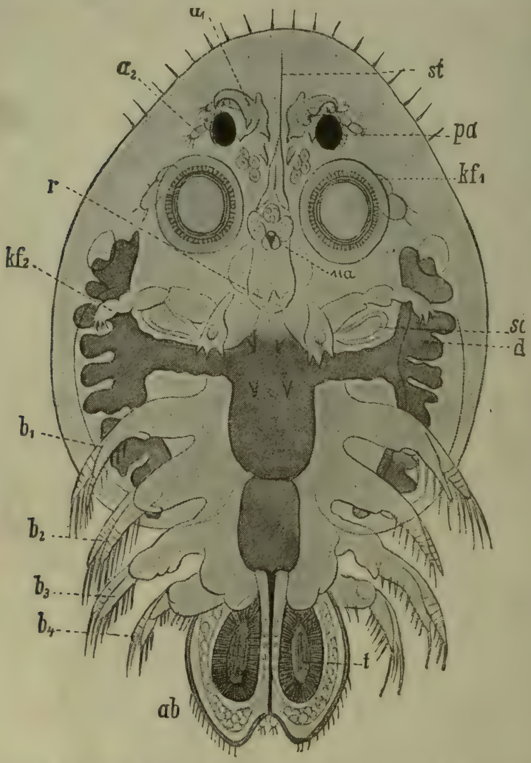


FIG. 418.—**Argulus foliaceus,** young male. a_1, antennule; a_2, antenna; *ab.* abdomen; b_1—b_4, thoracic feet; *d.* digestive glands connected with intestine; *kf1*, anterior or suctorial feet; *kf2*, posterior or leg-like portion of second maxillæ; *pa.* paired eye; *r.* rostrum; *sd*, shell-gland; *st.* stylet; *ts.* testis; *ua*, median eye. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy.*)

The most familiar examples of the *Eucirripedia* are the Barnacles found on ships' bottoms, piles, &c., and the Acorn-shells or Sessile Barnacles which occur in immense numbers on rocks between tide-marks in all parts of the world.

The common Barnacle (*Lepas anatifera*) is attached by a long stalk or peduncle (Fig. 419, A, *p*), covered with a wrinkled skin, and bearing at its distal end the body proper enclosed in a sort of bivalved carapace, formed by a fold of the skin, and strengthened by five calcareous plates. Of these one is median and dorsal, and is called the *carina* (*c*); two are lateral and proximal, the *scuta* (*s*); and two lateral and distal, the *terga* (*t*). During life the carapace is partly open, and from the ventrally placed aperture delicate setose filaments are protruded and keep up a constant grasping movement: these are the endo- and exopodites of the biramous thoracic feet, of which there are six pairs. Removal of the carapace shows the feet to be attached to a vermiform unsegmented body

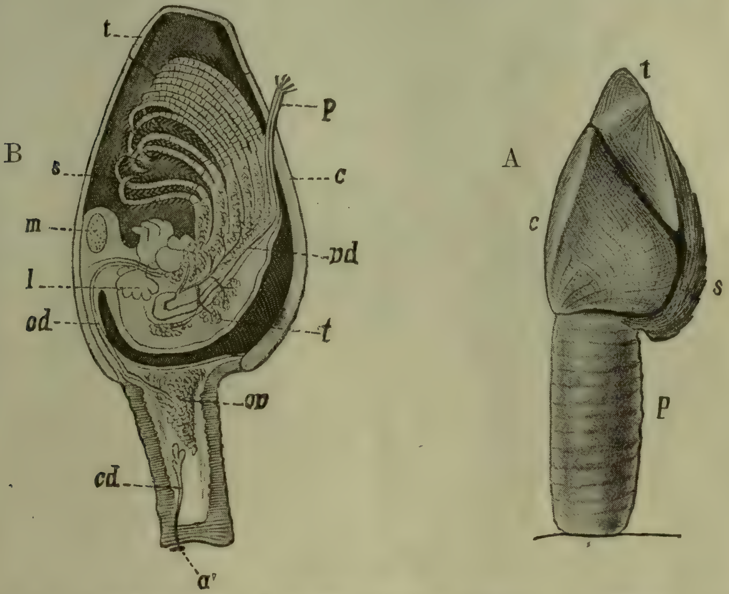


FIG. 419.—**Lepas anatifera.** A, the entire animal; B, anatomy. a_1, antennule; *c.* carina; *cd*, cement gland; *l*, digestive gland; *m.* adductor muscle; *od*, oviduct; *ov.* ovary; *p.* (in B) penis and (in A) peduncle; *s.* scutum; *t.* tergum and testis; *vd.* vas deferens. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*, after Darwin and Claus.)

(B), attached on the ventral aspect to the stalk and carapace by its anterior end, while its posterior end is free and terminates in a long filament, the penis (*p*), immediately dorsal to which is the anus. The mouth is ventral and anterior, and is provided with a pair of mandibles and two pairs of maxillæ. There are no antennæ: at first sight the antennules appear to be absent, but a careful examination shows the presence of a pair of minute structures (a') on the proximal or attached surface of the stalk, and embedded in the cement by which the animal is fixed to its support; these are the antennules, and their position relatively to the mandibles shows that the stalk is formed by an elongation of the anterior region of the head.

The Sessile Barnacles or Acorn-shells (*Balanus*) have no stalk (Fig. 420), the head-region being short and broad. The scuta (*s*) and terga (*t*) support a valvular carapace, through the opening of which the feet are protruded, and the whole animal is surrounded by a sort of parapet (*sk*) formed of six calcareous pieces. One of these, dorsal in position, is the carina, the others appear to be represented by small ossicles developed on the peduncle of certain stalked forms such as *Pollicipes*.

Many of the Eucirripedia are parasitic. Some of these (*Petrarca*, &c.), parasitic in Actinozoa, resemble the attached forms in essential respects; others (*Alcippe*), parasitic in the shells of Molluscs and Cirripedes, have abdominal but no thoracic feet.

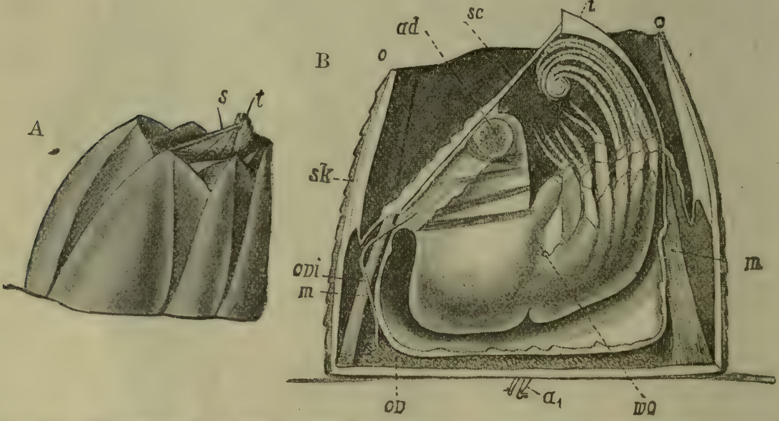


FIG. 420.—**Balanus.** A, external view; B, anatomy. a_1, antennules; *ad.* adductor muscle; *m.* muscles of scuta and terga; *o*, edge of parapet; *ov.* ovary; *ovi.* oviduct; *s.* scutum; *sk*, parapet; *t.* tergum; *wo*, female aperture. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*, after Darwin.)

Protcolepas, also parasitic on other Cirripedes, has a maggot-like, segmented, limbless body, and a suctorial mouth.

The *Rhizocephala* are represented by *Sacculina* (Fig. 421), parasitic on Crabs, and *Peltogaster* on Hermit-Crabs. Both genera have the appearance of an immense tumour (*ks*) on the abdomen of the host, showing no sign of segmentation, no appendages, no mouth or anus. From the attached end go off a number of delicate root-like filaments, which extend through the body of the host and absorb nutriment. Obviously degeneration is here as complete as it can well be, and nothing but the developmental history of the parasite (p. 553) would justify its inclusion among the Crustacea.

The most striking general character in the external features of the *Malacostraca* is the limitation in the number of segments. The head has the same composition as in the Entomostraca, but the thorax is invariably formed of eight segments, and, except in the Phyllocarida, the abdomen of six ordinary segments and a telson. The limbs are strikingly modified for the performance of various functions.

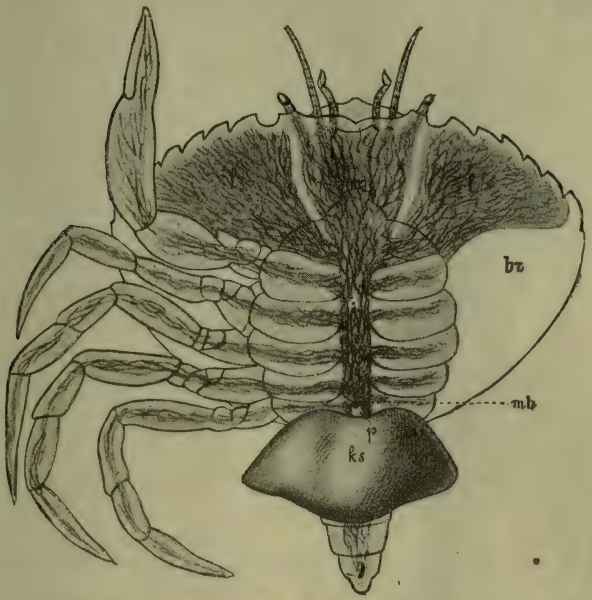


FIG. 421.—**Sacculini carcini,** on abdomen of crab. *br*. branchial region of crab; *l*, hepatic region; *d*, intestinal region; *ks*, body of Peltogaster; *p*. peduncle; *mb*, basilar membrane, giving off root-like processes which are seen extending through the body of the host. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*, after Delage.)

The *Phyllocarida* are interesting from the fact that they are annectent or linking forms between the Phyllopoda and the Copepoda on the one hand, and the higher Crustacea, particularly the Schizopoda and Decapoda, on the other. The order contains only three genera, the commonest of which, *Nebalia* (Fig. 422), is a little shrimp-like marine Crustacean about 6–8 mm. in length. The body is divisible into head, thorax, and abdomen, all having the normal malacostracan number of segments, except the abdomen, which is formed of eight segments, the last bearing caudal styles—structures not found elsewhere in the sub-class. There is a bivalved cephalic carapace (*s*), closed by an adductor muscle (*sm*), and extending backwards to the fourth abdominal segment: it is terminated in front by a movable rostrum (*r*).

The eyes (a) are large, compound, and raised on movably articulated stalks. The antennules (a_1) and antennæ (a_2) are large, the mandibles (*md.*) have palps (*mt*), and the exopodite of the second maxilla (*mxt*) has the form of a slender filament which acts as a "cleaning-foot" to keep the cavity of the carapace free from foreign bodies. There are eight thoracic appendages (*brf*), all of them leaf-like, and recalling those of Apus. The first four abdominal appendages (*p1—p4*) are large biramous swimming-feet, like those of Copepods; the fifth and sixth (*p5*, *p6*) are small and uniramous.

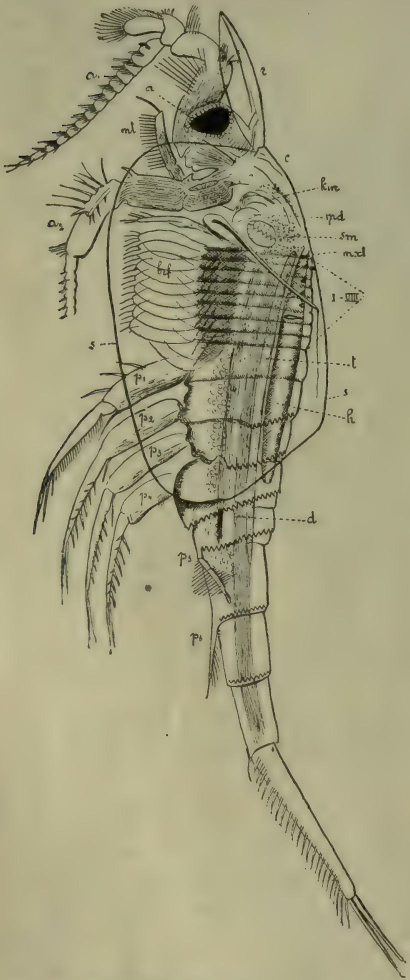


FIG. 422.—**Nebalia geoffroyi,** male. a, eye; a_1, antennule; a_2, antenna; c, head; brf, thoracic feet; d, intestine; h. heart; km, gizzard; md. mandible; mt, mandibular palp; mnt. exopodite of second maxilla; p_1—p_4, pleopods; r. rostrum; s, carapace; sm, adductor muscle; t. testis; *I—VIII*, thoracic segments. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*, after Claus.)

The *Schizopoda* (Fig. 423) are small transparent, shrimp-like forms, mostly from 2–6 mm. in length. They agree with the Crayfish in the general form of the body, in the union of the head and thorax, in the presence (except in *Anaspides*) of a carapace—which may, however, leave some of the posterior thoracic segments uncovered—and in the number both of segments and appendages, but present several interesting characters indicating a lower grade of organisation. One of the most notable of these is the absence of differentiation in the thoracic appendages, which have a leg-like and not a leaf-like form, but which are all alike, none of them being modified into maxillipedes, except to a very slight degree in some forms. Moreover the legs all possess exopodites (*ex*), thus retaining the primitive biramous or "split-footed" form which is lost in the Decapoda. The first five pleopods are large in the male, small in the female: the sixth is a uropod,

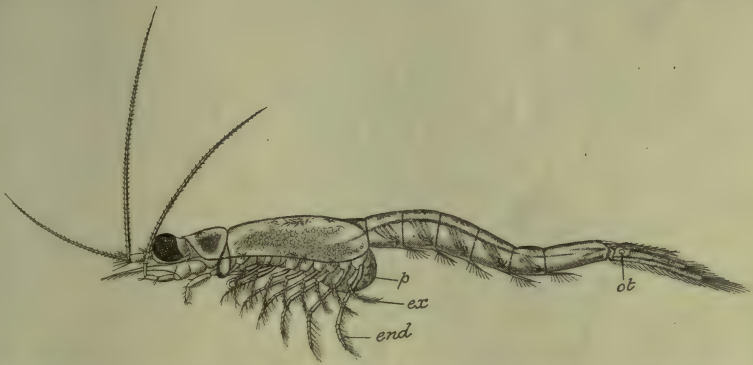


FIG. 423.—**Mysis oculata.** *end.* endopodite; *en.* enopodite; *ot.* otocyst. (After Gerstaecker.)

i.e., assists the telson in the formation of the characteristic malacostracan tail-fin: there is no trace of the entomostracan caudal styles.

Amongst the *Decapoda* are included nearly all the largest and most familiar Crustacea—the Prawns and Shrimps, Lobsters, Crayfishes, and Crabs. The cephalo-thorax is always completely covered by the carapace. The three anterior pairs of thoracic appendages are modified into maxillipedes, which retain the original biramous character, but the five posterior pairs are enlarged, and form legs, which are always—except as an individual variation—devoid of exopodites in the adult.

In the Prawns (Fig. 424, *1*) the body is compressed, and the exoskeleton is not calcified. The abdomen is very large in proportion to the cephalo-thorax, and has a peculiar bend close to its junction with the thorax. The legs are very slender, used for swimming, not walking; and sometimes one pair, sometimes another, is enlarged to form the chelipeds. The rostrum is large—sometimes longer than the rest of the carapace—and both eye-stalks, antennæ, and legs may attain extraordinary dimensions.

The Lobsters and fresh-water Crayfishes agree with Astacus in all essential details, but the sea Crayfishes (*Palinurus*) present some striking modifications. There are no chelæ, the legs all ending in simple claws: the antennæ are of immense size, and their proximal segments are fused with one another and with the carapace, quite crowding out the epistoma: the rostrum is reduced, or even vestigial, and the pleopods are very broad and fin-like. In *Scyllarus*

(Fig. 425) and its allies the body is broad and depressed, the bases of the legs widely separated from one another by the broad sterna, the antennæ (*ant. 2*) short and plate-like, and the eye-stalks

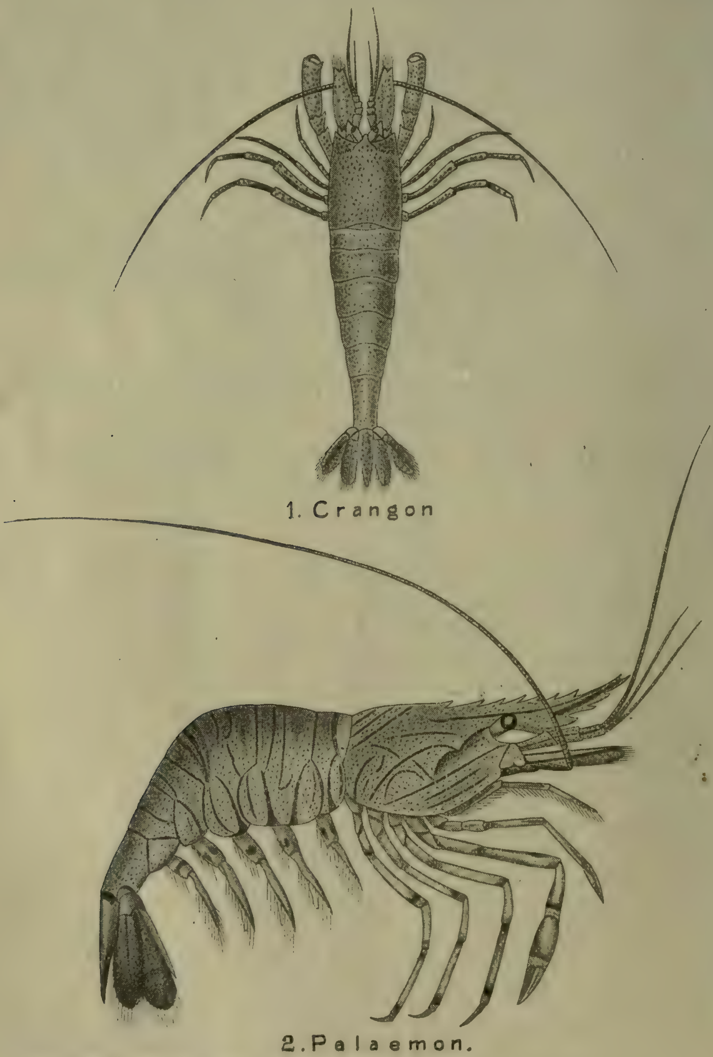


FIG. 424.—**Shrimp** (dorsal view), and **Prawn** (side view). (After Cuvier.)

(*E*) enclosed in socket-like grooves of the carapace. Most of these characters show an approximation to what is found in the Crabs.

The Hermit-crabs (*Pagurus*, &c., Fig. 426) are very strangely modified in relation with their peculiar mode of life. They are always found inhabiting the empty shells of Gastropods (Whelks, Periwinkles, &c.), the abdomen completely enclosed within the shell and only the cephalothorax protruding. In correspondence with this mode of protection, the abdomen is soft, having only vestiges of terga (*t*) on the dorsal side, and its appendages are more or less atrophied, except the sixth pair (*up*), which take the form of pincers, and are used to hold on to the columella of the shell. The fifth pair of legs (*l.5*) are much reduced, and in some species one of the chelipeds is greatly enlarged and its chela (*ch*) acts as an operculum, completely closing the mouth of the shell when the animal is retracted. As the Hermit-Crab grows it takes up its abode in larger and larger shells, sometimes killing and removing piecemeal the original inhabitant.

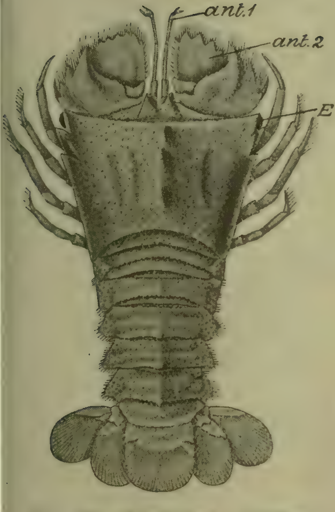


FIG. 425.—**Scyllarus arctus.** *ant.1*, antennule ; *ant.2*, antenna ; *E*, eye. (After Cuvier.)

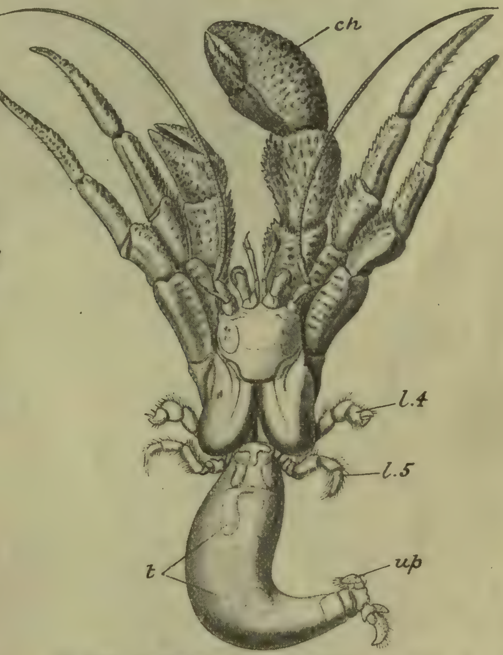


FIG. 426.—**Pagurus bernhardus.** *ch.* chela of first right leg ; *l.4*, *l.5*, fourth and fifth legs ; *t*, abdominal terga ; *up.* uropods. (After Bell.)

Other Macrura, such as the Cocoa-nut Crab (*Birgus*), *Hippa*, &c., approach the Brachyura in the short, more or less permanently flexed abdomen, but are clearly separated from them by the structure of the head and its appendages.

In the *Brachyura*, or true Crabs, we reach the highest degree of specialisation known among the Crustacea. The cephalothorax (Fig. 427) is always of great proportional breadth, and is frequently much broader than long. The abdomen, on the other hand is greatly reduced, its sternal region is uncalcified, and it lies permanently flexed in a groove on the very broad thoracic sterna, so as to be often quite hidden in a view from above. In correspondence with this the pleopods are much reduced, the male retaining only two pairs as copulatory organs, the female four pairs for the attachment

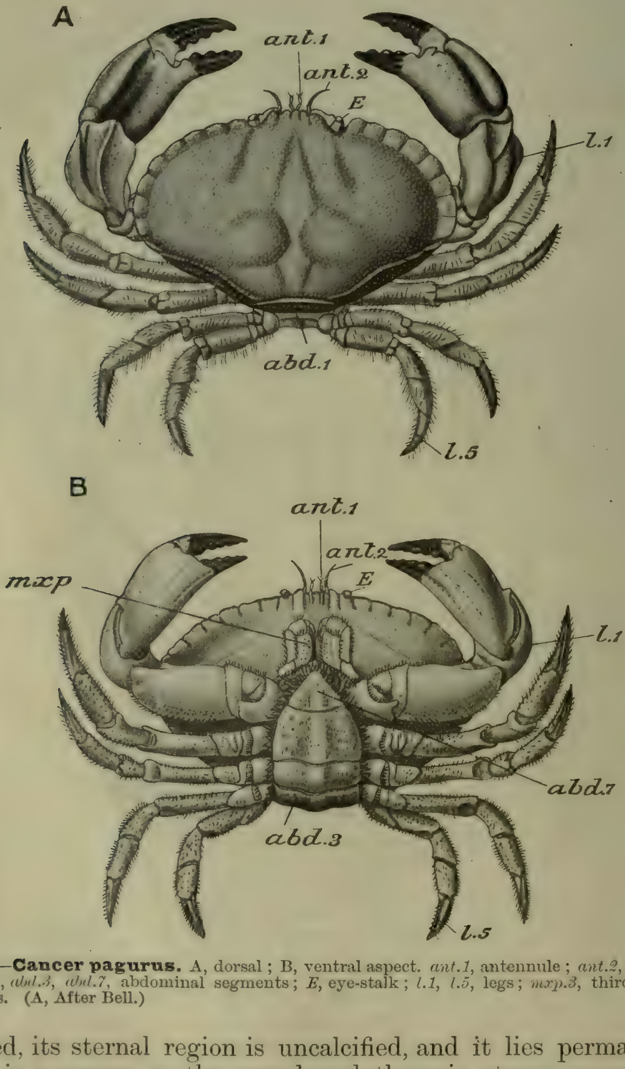


FIG. 427.—**Cancer pagurus.** A, dorsal; B, ventral aspect. *ant.1*, antennule; *ant.2*, antenna; *abd.1*, *abd.3*, *abd.7*, abdominal segments; *E*, eye-stalk; *l.1*, *l.5*, legs; *mxp.3*, third maxillipedes. (A, After Bell.)

of the eggs. The uropods are absent, so that there is no tail-fin. The eye-stalks (E) are contained in *orbits* or sockets of the carapace, which are so prolonged that the eyes appear to arise behind the antennules and antennæ. Both pairs of feelers are small, and the bases of the antennules are contained in sockets or *fossettes*. The third maxillipedes (*mxp.*) are broad, flat, and valve-like, not leg-

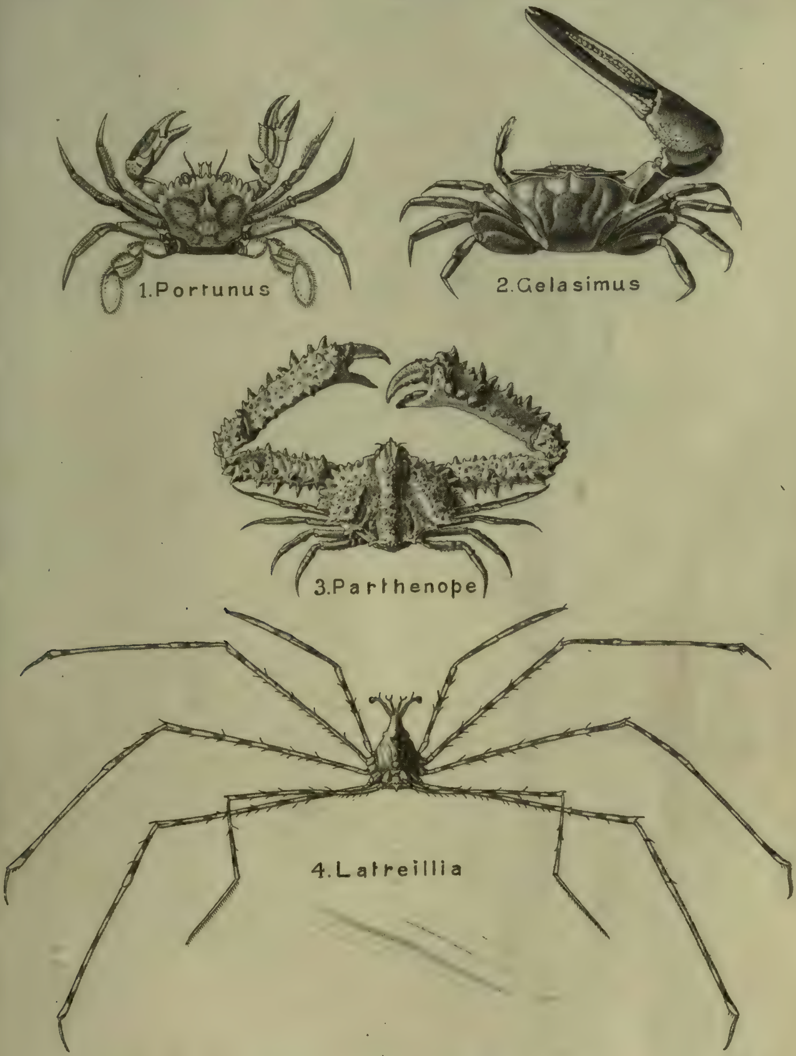


FIG. 428.—Typical Brachyura. (After Bell and de Haan.)

like as in the Macrura. The first legs (*l.1*) form chelipeds often of great size: the remaining legs generally end in simple claws, but in the Swimming-crabs the distal segment (Fig. 428, *1*) in the fifth pair is flattened and forms a fin. The range of variation in form, proportions, colour, markings, &c., among crabs is very great (Fig. 428).

Unlike the Decapoda, the *Stomatopoda* form a very small order, comprising a few genera varying from the size of a Shrimp to that of a Lobster. *Squilla* (Fig. 429) is the best known genus.

The abdomen (*a1*—*a7*) is very large in proportion to the cephalothorax, and the carapace (*cth*), which is thin and uncalcified, leaves the last three thoracic segments (*VI*—*VIII*) uncovered. The rostrum is movably articulated, and covers the prostomial region, which is divided into two distinct segments, the first bearing the large stalked eyes, the second the antennules. This arrangement appears to support the view that the antennulary region is a metamere distinct from the prostomium, but the division in question is absent in the larva, and does not appear till the proper segmentation of the body is established: probably it has a physiological meaning, and is connected with the necessity of extreme mobility of the eyes and olfactory organs in an animal which lives in a burrow with only the anterior end of the head exposed.

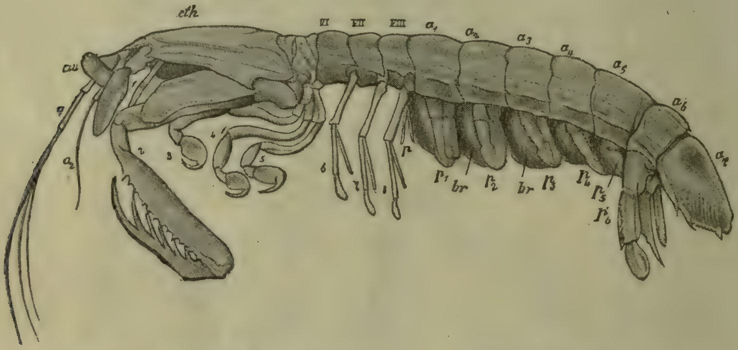


FIG. 429.—**Squilla.** *a1*, antennule; *a2*, antenna; *a1*—*a7*, abdominal segments; *br*, gills; *cth*. cephalothorax; *p*, copulatory organ; *p1*—*p5*, pleopods; *p6*, uropods; *VI*—*VIII*, free thoracic segments; 1—8, thoracic appendages. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*.)

The antennule (*a1*) has three flagella; the antenna (*a2*) a single flagellum and a very large exopodite. The first five pairs of thoracic limbs (*1*—*5*) are turned forwards towards the mouth, and act as maxillipedes; the second of these—corresponding with the second maxillipede of Astacus—is very large (*2*), and its distal segment is turned back and articulated to the penultimate segment like the blade of a pocket-knife to the handle. In this way a very efficient weapon called a *sub-chela* is produced, both of the segments of which are produced into strong spines. The remaining three thoracic appendages (*6*—*8*) are slender legs provided with exopodites: the last of them has a styliform copulatory organ (*p*) developed from its proximal segment. The pleopods are large and biramous: the first five (*p1*, *p5*) have gill-filaments (*br*) attached to their plate-like exopodites: the sixth (*p6*) form large uropods or lateral tail-lobes, as in Astacus.

The *Cumacea* are also a very small group: *Diastylis* (Fig. 430) is a good example. They are little shrimp-like animals, differing from all the Malacostraca previously considered in having poorly developed, sessile eyes, sometimes fused together, and in some genera altogether absent. The carapace (*cth*) is so small as to leave the five posterior segments (*th IV—VIII*) uncovered. The first two pairs of thoracic limbs are maxillipedes, the last six legs: of these two or three pairs have exopodites (*ex*).

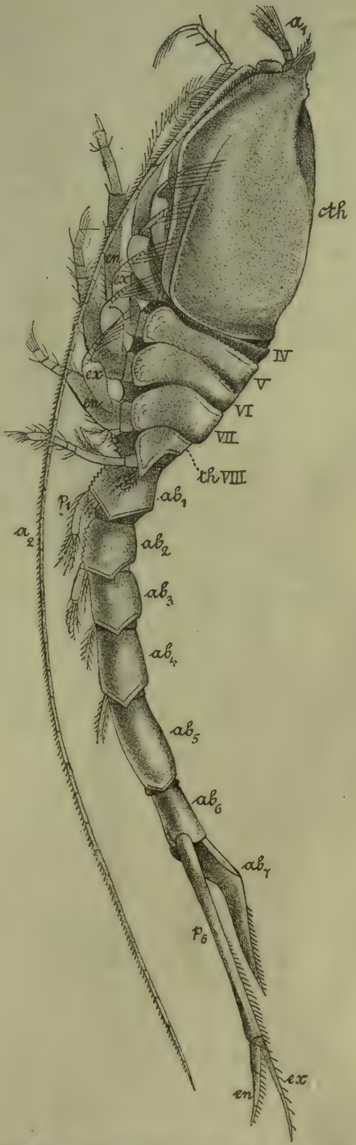


Fig. 430.—**Diastylis stygia.** *a1*, antennule; *a2*, antenna; *ab.1—ab.7*, abdominal segments; *cth.* cephalothorax; *en.* endopodite; *ex*, exopodite; *p.1*, *p.6*, pleopods. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*, after Sars.)

In the *Arthrostraca* we come once more to a very large and important order, containing a great number of genera and species, many of them strangely modified in correspondence with special habits of life. The best known examples of the *Amphipoda* are the little Fresh-water Shrimp (*Gammarus*, Fig. 431) and the Sandhoppers (*Talitrus*, *Orchestia*) so common on the sea-shore. Of the *Isopoda* very convenient examples are *Asellus* (Fig. 432), common in fresh-water, and the well-known Wood-lice or Slaters (*Oniscus*, Fig. 434, *1*), found under any piece of wood, stone, &c., which has lain undisturbed on the ground for a few weeks.

The body is usually compressed or flattened from side to side in Amphipods (Fig. 431), depressed or flattened from above downwards in Isopods (Fig. 432). The normal malacostracan number of segments is present, but the first thoracic segment is always united with the head, so that the apparent head is really an incomplete or partial cephalothorax (*c.th*). In some genera (*Tanais*, &c.) the second segment of the thorax also unites with the head, and such forms—sometimes included under a distinct sub-order, *Anisopoda*—form a transition to the other Malacostraca, and especially the Cumacea. The posterior seven thoracic segments (*th.2—th.8*) are free, and those of the short abdomen are usually free in Amphipods (Fig. 431, *abd. 1–6*), often more or less fused in Isopods (Fig. 432, *abd*). In some Isopoda the thoracic segments are produced laterally into large and prominent pleura.

The eyes (*E*) are compound and usually sessile: they are, however, stalked in some of the less specialised members of the order, a circumstance which lends support to the view that the sessile eyes have, in this particular group, arisen by the atrophy of eye-stalks. The antennæ (*ant.2*) as well as the antennules (*ant.1*) are uniramous. The first pair of thoracic appendages (*mxp*) are modified to form maxillipedes, which are sometimes united together in the middle line so as to form a sort of lower lip. The remaining seven thoracic appendages take the form of legs (*l.1–l.7*) which are usually arranged in two groups, four of them directed forwards and three backwards, or *vice versâ*. The legs end either in simple claws or in large sub-chelæ: vestigial exopodites are present in some of the Anisopoda. In the female, certain of the legs bear flat plates, the *oostegites* (Fig. 431, *os*), probably modified epipodites, which enclose a brood-pouch for the reception of the eggs. In Amphipods the gills are also borne on the legs.

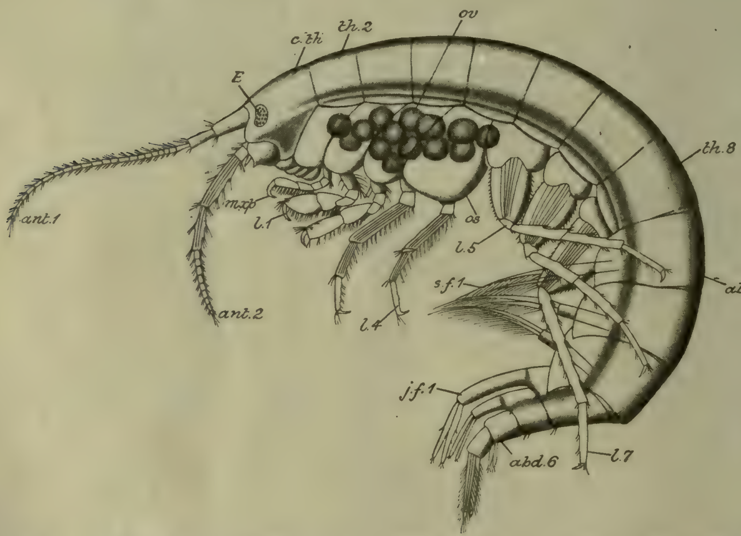


FIG. 431.—**Gammarus neglectus.** *abd.1—abd.6*, abdominal segments; *ant.1*, antennule; *ant. 2*, antenna; *cth.* cephalothorax; *E.* eye; *j. f. 1*, first jumping foot; *l. 1—l. 7*, legs; *mxp.* maxillipede; *os.* oostegite; *ov.* ova; *s.f.1*, first swimming foot; *th.3—th.2*, free thoracic segments. (After Gerstaecker.)

The abdominal appendages are very different in the two orders. In Amphipoda the first three are biramous swimming-feet (Fig. 431, *s.f*), the last three peculiar stiff processes used for jumping (*j.f*). In Isopods more or fewer of the pleopods have broad plate-like endo- and exopodites (Fig. 432, *pl.3*), the former thin and vascular and acting as gills: the sixth pair (*pl.6*) are either leg-like or aid in the formation of a tail-fin.

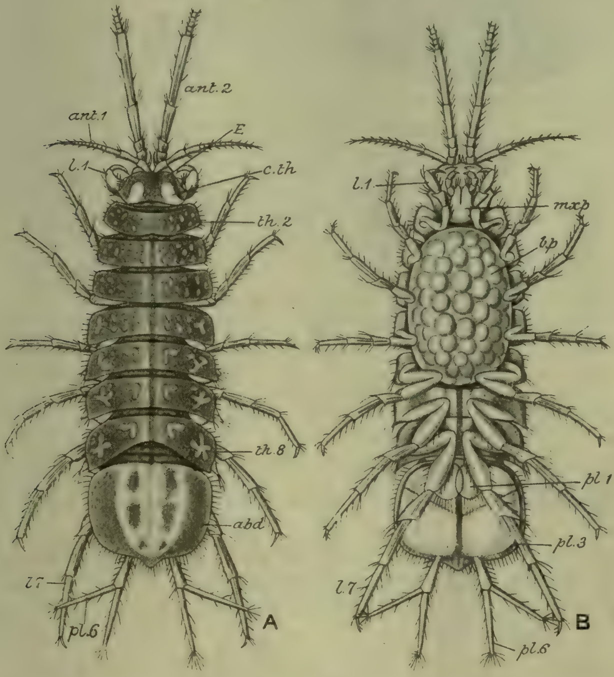


FIG. 432.—**Asellus aquaticus.** A, dorsal; B, ventral view; *ant.1*, antennule; *ant.2*, antenna; *bp*, brood-pouch; *c.th*, cephalothorax; *E*, eye; [*l.1—l.7*, legs; *pl.1—pl.7*, pleopods; *th.2—th.8*; free thoracic segments. (After Gerstaecker.)

Interesting modifications occur in both sub-orders. Among the Amphipoda, *Phronima* (Fig. 433, *1*) is a marine form of glassy transparency, the female of which inhabits a transparent barrel-like structure—the test of a pelagic Tunicate—in which she brings up her young. *Caprella* (*3*) is a singular creature in which the abdomen is quite vestigial, and the rest of the body, as well as the appendages, extremely slender. It creeps about on colonies of Hydrozoa and Polyzoa, to the branches of which its own form and colour are so closely assimilated as to render it difficult of detection. The allied *Cyamus* (Whale-louse, *2*) is parasitic on the skin of whales: it also has a vestigial abdomen, but the body

—exceptionally among Amphipods—is broad and depressed and the legs curiously swollen.

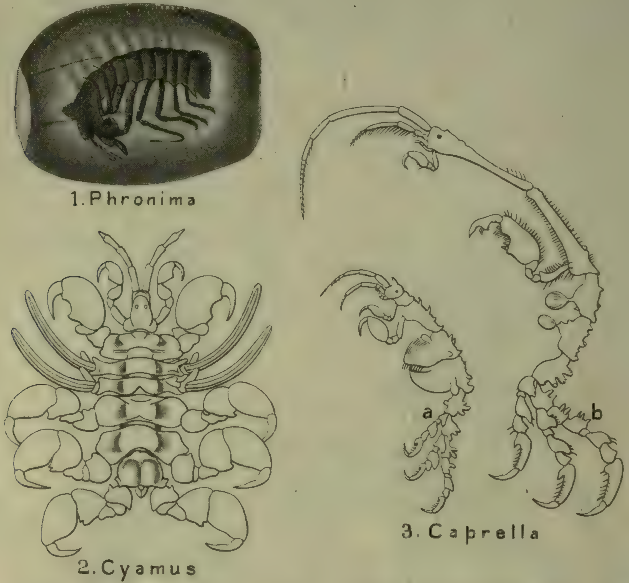

1. Phronima
2. Cyamus
a
b
3. Caprella

Fig. 433.—**Amphipoda.** 3, *a*, male; *b*, female. (After Gerstaecker, and Bate and Westwood.)

Among the Isopoda, one of the most interesting forms is the common Wood-louse (Fig. 434, *1*), which is almost unique among Crustacea for its perfect adaptation to terrestrial life. The allied

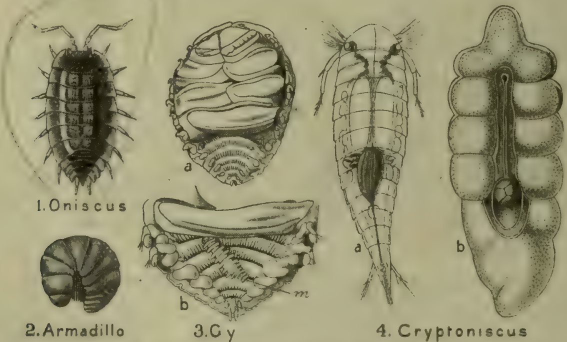

1. Oniscus
a
2. Armadillo
b
m
3. Cy
a
b
4. Cryptoniscus

Fig. 434.—**Isopoda.** *3*,*a*, entire animal; *b*, posterior end with attached male (*m*); *3*,*a*, larva *b*, adult female. (After Cuvier, Claus, and Gerstaecker.)

"Pill-bugs" (*Armadillidium*, *2*) have the habit of rolling themselves up into a ball when disturbed. *Cymothoa* and its allies are large species (6–8 cm. in length) parasitic in the mouths of Fishes, where they hold on to the mucous membrane with their short clawed legs: their mouth-parts are often modified for sucking. In the *Bopyrini*, found in the gill-cavities of various Crustacea, parasitism is accompanied by great degeneration and asymmetry (*3*), as well as by a notable degree of sexual dimorphism, the males (*3, b, m*) being very small and permanently attached to the bodies of the females. Lastly, in *Cryptoniscus*, parasitic on Crabs, the adult female (*4, b*) has no trace of crustacean organisation, and it is only by the study of development that its true systematic position can be guessed.

With regard to the **texture of the exoskeleton,** there is every gradation from the delicate polished cuticle of most Entomostraca, Schizopods, &c., through the calcified but still flexible cuticle of Astacus, to the thick, tuberculated, stony armour of many Crabs (Fig. 428, *3*) or the shelly pieces of Cirripedes. The exoskeleton is secreted from a single-layered ectoderm, and undergoes periodical moults or ecdyses. There is no transverse layer of **muscle,** and the longitudinal layer is broken up into paired dorsal and ventral bands. As a rule, each limb-segment is acted upon by two muscles: the joints are nearly always hinge-joints.

The **body-cavity** consists of several chambers separated from one another by partitions. In *Palæmonetes*, one of the Prawns, there is a median dorsal chamber enclosing the ophthalmic artery, and not containing blood: it is probably a portion of the cœlome in the strict sense of the word. The cavities of the gonads are also cœlomic, and the ducts by which they communicate with the exterior are probably modified nephridia. In addition to these cavities, there is a large central space, in which the enteric canal, digestive glands, gonads, &c., lie; paired lateral spaces containing portions of the shell-gland; spaces in the limbs; and the pericardial sinus, in which the heart lies. All these cavities contain blood, and constitute a kind of secondary body-cavity, formed by the enlargement of blood-vessels, which have largely replaced the true cœlome. Such a secondary or blood-containing body-cavity is called a *hæmocœle*.

The **enteric canal** consists of a vertical gullet, an expanded stomach, and a nearly straight horizontal intestine. In some of the Cladocera the intestine is coiled, but this is quite exceptional. In the Entomostraca, part or the whole of the stomach is formed from the mesenteron, but in Malacostraca both gullet and stomach are developed from the stomodæum. A gastric mill is present in Malacostraca, and a rudiment of such an apparatus occurs in Ostracoda. The digestive glands are usually branched cæca formed as offshoots of the mesenteron: in Arthrostraca (Fig. 435, *l*) they are unbranched cæca extending into the abdomen: in Stomatopoda they consist of ten metamerically arranged organs opening into the intestine. In Amphipods there are intestinal cæca (*ud*) which may have an excretory function. So-called salivary glands, opening on the labrum, have been found in several genera.

In most of the Entomostraca respiration takes place by the general surface of the body, and the only **respiratory organs** are

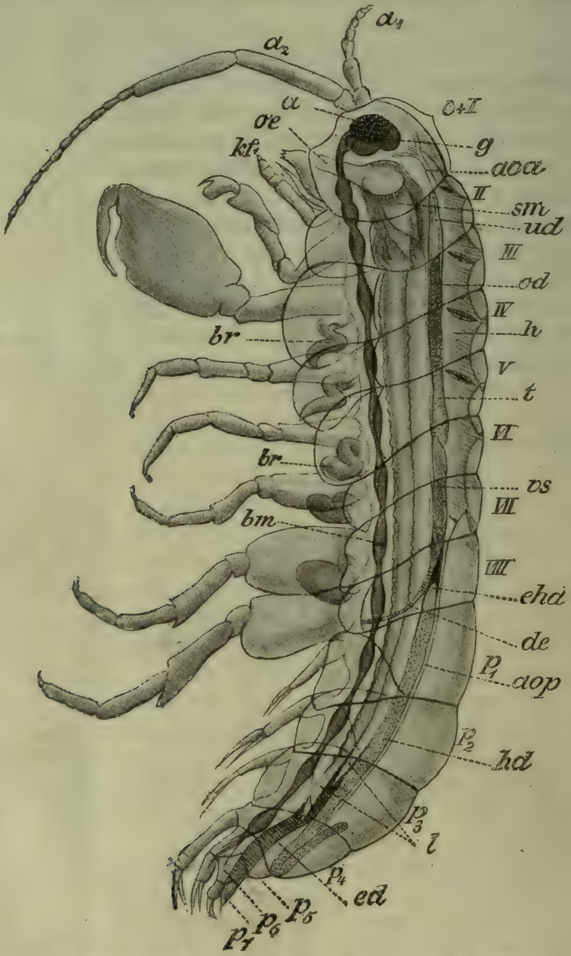


FIG. 435.—**Orchestia cavimana,** male. *a*, eye; a_1, antennule; a_2, antenna; *aoa*, anterior aorta; *aop*, posterior aorta; *bm*, ventral nerve cord; *br*, gills; *C+I*, cephalothorax; *de*, vas deferens; *ed*, rectum; *g*, brain; *h*, heart; *hd*, intestine; *kf*, maxillipede; *l*, digestive glands; *œ*, gullet; *p 1—p 7*, abdominal segments; *sm*, stomach; *ud*, intestinal cœcum; *vs*. vesicula seminalis; *II—VIII*, free thoracic segments. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*, after Nebesky.)

the bracts and flabella of the appendages. In the stalked Barnacles, however, there are delicate processes attached to the feet, which are supposed to be rudimentary gills. Amongst the Malacostraca, also, the Phyllocarida and many Schizopoda have no specialised respiratory organs, but other Schizopods possess tufted podobranchiæ (Fig. 436) quite uncovered by the carapace. In the Decapoda the gills may be either plume-like, as in Astacus and its allies, or the delicate cylindrical gill-filaments may be replaced by flat plates, as in Crabs and many Prawns. It is in this order only that we find the three types of gill described in Astacus and the examination of numerous forms leads to the conclusion that the typical or theoretical branchial formula for the group is as follows:—

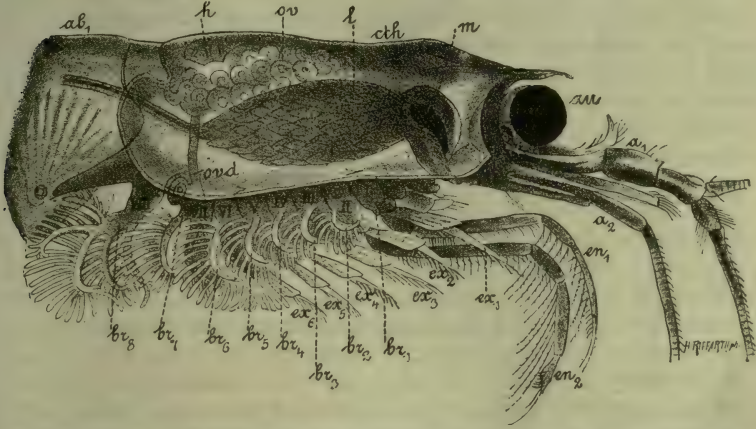


FIG. 436.—Anterior portion of **Euphausia pellucida,** a Schizopod. a_1, antennule; *ant.*^{2}, antenna; *ab.1*, first abdominal segment; *au*, eye; *br.1—8*, podobranchia; *cth.* cephalothorax; *en.1*, *en.2*, endopodites of first two thoracic limbs; *en.1—en.6*, exopodites of first six thoracic limbs; *h.* heart; *l*, digestive gland; *m*, stomach; *ov.* ovary; *ovd.* oviduct; *I—VIII*, protopodites of thoracic limbs. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy.*)

THORACIC SEGMENTS.	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.	VI.	VII.	VIII.	TOTAL.
Podobranchiæ...	1 + *ep*	1 + *ep*	1 + *ep*	1 + *ep*	1 + *ep*	1 + *ep*	1 + *ep*	1 + *ep*	8 + 8*ep*
Arthrobranchiæ	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	16
Pleurobranchiæ	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	8
Total	4 + *ep*	4 + *ep*	4 + *ep*	4 + *ep*	4 + *ep*	4 + *ep*	4 + *ep*	4 + *ep*	32 + 8*ep*

Actually, however, this formula never occurs, as there is always more or less reduction in the number of gills. Palinurus has the highest number known, viz., twenty-one, and in the Common Crab the total number is nine.

Many Crabs live on land, and their gills are enabled to discharge their function in virtue of the moisture retained in the nearly closed gill-chamber. In the Cocoa-nut Crab (*Birgus*) the upper part of the gill-chamber is separated from the rest, and forms an almost closed cavity into which vascular tufts project: it thus functions as a true lung. Probably the inner surface of the gill-cover or branchiostegite performs a respiratory function in the Crayfishes.

In Amphipoda, also, the gills (Fig. 435, *br*) ~~are out~~growths of the thoracic limbs: in Isopods they are the modified endopodites of the second to the fifth pleopods: in Stomatopoda, gill-filaments (Fig. 429, *br*) spring from the exopodites of the first to the fifth pleopods. Moreover many Crustacea perform rythmical contractions of the intestine, taking in and expelling water: such *anal respiration* is common among Entomostraca, and is especially noticeable in Cyclops.

The **heart** is absent in many Copepods (including Cyclops), in some Ostracoda (including Cypris), and in Cirripedia: it is an elongated tube with several pairs of ostia in Euphyllopoda, Leptostraca, Stomatopoda, and Arthrostraca (Fig. 435, *h*); in Cladocera and Decapoda it is shortened to an ovoid sac with one or more pairs of ostia.

Excretory Organs.—In many larval Crustacea two pairs of modified meso-nephridia are present, the *antennary glands* opening on the bases of the antennæ, and the *shell-glands* opening on the bases of the second maxillæ. But as development proceeds one pair always atrophies, the shell-gland alone being usually retained in the Entomostraca, the antennary gland in the Malacostraca. In the Stomatopoda, however, there is no antennary gland, and the function of renal excretion may be discharged by a pair of glandular tubes opening into the rectum; and in Amphipoda a similar function is assigned to cæca opening into the posterior end of the mesenteron. In some of the Cirripedia the shell-gland is described as opening into one of the compartments of the body-cavity like a typical nephridium.

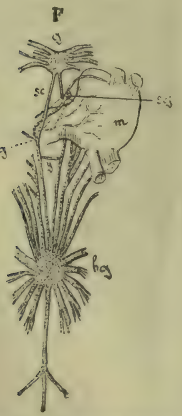


FIG. 437.—Nervous system of a Crab (**Maja squinado**). *bg*, thoracic ganglion; *cg*. commissural ganglion; *g*, brain; *m*, stomach; *sc*, œsophageal connective; *sg*, visceral nerves; *y*, post-œsophageal connective. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*, after Milne-Edwards.)

The **nervous system** is always formed on the ordinary arthropod type, as described in Apus and Astacus, and the chief variations it presents are connected with the greater or less amount of concrescence of ganglia. In the sessile Barnacles and in the Crabs (Fig. 437) this process reaches its limit, the whole ventral nerve-cord being represented by a single immense thoracic ganglion (*bg*).

The **sense-organs** are mostly of the same character as those of the two examples. The median or nauplius-eye always occurs in the larva, and can frequently be shown to exist in the adult of even the higher groups (Decapoda). The Cirripedia and many parasitic Copepods are eyeless in the adult, as also are certain subterranean Malacostraca. Olfactory setæ occur, as a rule, on the antennules, and the auditory organs of Decapoda are open sacs in the basal segment of the same appendages, but in Schizopoda occur as closed otocysts (Fig. 423, *ot*) in the endopodites of the uropods.

Reproduction.—In most Crustacea the sexes are separate, but hermaphroditism occurs in some Phyllopods, in nearly all Cirripedes, and in certain parasitic Isopods (*Cymothoa*). In the latter case the animals are protandrous, male organs being developed at first, and female organs at a later stage. In many Cirripedia minute *complemental males* are found attached, like parasites, to the body of the ordinary or hermaphrodite individual, the male organs of which appear to be inadequate for the full discharge of the fertilising function. Sexual dimorphism is almost universal, and reaches its maximum in the parasitic Copepods and Isopods already referred to.

The *gonads* are always a single pair of hollow organs discharging their products into a central cavity or lumen, whence they pass directly into the gonoducts, and so to the exterior. The gonads may be single or branched, and frequently there is more or less concrescence between the glands of the right and left sides, as in Astacus and Cyclops. The sperms vary greatly in form, and are usually motionless: in Cirripedia, however, they are motile, and in Ostracoda perform movements after reaching the female ducts. In some Ostracoda they are about three times as long as the animal itself (Fig. 415, D). In many Entomostraca reproduction is parthenogenetic. In Daphnia, for instance, the animal reproduces throughout the summer by parthenogenetic *summer eggs*, which develop rapidly in the brood-pouch (Fig. 314, 1, *br.p*). In the autumn *winter eggs* are produced, which are fertilised by the males: they pass into the brood-pouch, a portion of which becomes specially modified and forms the *ephippium* or saddle. At the next moult the ephippium is detached and forms a sort of bivalved capsule, in which the eggs remain in an inactive state during the winter, developing in the following spring.

Development.—In some Crustacea segmentation is complete, and a hollow blastula is formed: in others complete segmentation is followed by an accumulation of yolk in the interior, resulting in the formation of a superficial blastoderm as in Astacus: in others, again, the egg is telolecithal, and the protoplasm, accumulated at one pole, divides so as to form a disc of cells which afterwards spreads over the whole yolk. But in most cases the egg is centrolecithal and segmentation superficial as in Astacus.

Development is always accompanied by more or less metamorphosis. In Euphyllopoda the young is hatched in the form of a nauplius (Fig. 395, A), and further changes are of the same character as in Apus. In Cladocera development is direct, the nauplius-stage being passed through in the egg, and the young hatched in a form closely resembling the adult. In one of the Cladocera, however, *Leptodora* (Fig. 414, *3*), while development of the summer eggs is indirect, the winter eggs give rise to free nauplii. In the Ostracoda the nauplius is peculiar in having a bivalved shell, and all three pairs of appendages uniramous. In all the Copepoda there is a free nauplius, which, in the parasitic forms, leads a free existence for a time, and then attaches itself to its particular host and undergoes retrograde metamorphosis.

In the Cirripedia, also, there is a free nauplius, the body of which is often produced into long spines. After several moults, the nauplius passes into a form called the *Cypris-stage* (Fig. 438), characterised by the presence of a bivalved shell, like that of an Ostracode: the antennules (*1*) also have become modified into organs of adhesion by the development of the penultimate segment into a disc, the antennæ have disappeared, and six pairs of swimming-feet like those of a Copepod have made their appearance: there are paired compound eyes, and the shell is closed by an adductor muscle. After leading a free existence for a time, the Cypris-larva attaches itself by its antennules, aided by the secretion of cement-glands, and becomes a *pupa:* the carina, terga, and scuta appear beneath the shell, and within the skin of the mouth-parts and legs of the pupa appear the corresponding appendages of the adult. In Lepas the anterior region of the head grows out

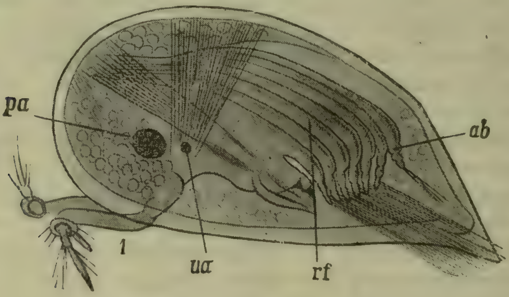


FIG. 438.—Cypris-stage of **Lepas fascicularis.** *ab.* abdomen ; *pa.* paired eye ; *rf*, thoracic feet ; *ua*, unpaired eye ; *1*, antennule. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*, after Claus.)

into a peduncle. The pupal integument is then thrown off, the paired eyes disappear, and the adult form is assumed.

In Sacculina a still more extraordinary metamorphosis takes place. The young is hatched as a nauplius, and passes into a Cypris-stage. In this condition, after a brief free existence, it attaches itself to the body of a young Crab, near the base of a seta. The thorax with its appendages is thrown off, and the rest of the body is converted into a rounded mass, from the anterior end of which an arrow-like process is developed. This perforates the cuticle of the host, and, through the communication thus formed, the whole body of the parasite passes into the interior of the crab and becomes surrounded by a new cuticle, the old cuticle being left empty on the outside of the Crab's body. The Sacculina now sends out root-like processes, grows immensely, and, pressing upon the body-wall of the crab, causes atrophy of the tissues: this allows the now greatly-swollen parasite to project on the exterior as the tumour-like adult described above (p. 535).

Amongst the Schizopoda the embryo of Euphausia leaves the egg as a typical free-swimming nauplius: this passes into what is called the *protozoæa-stage*, distinguished by the possession of an elongated, unsegmented abdomen without appendages. After successive moults, the rest of the appendages appear, and the adult form is assumed. In Mysis (Fig. 423) the nauplius is maggot-like, and undergoes development in the brood-pouch, emerging in a condition closely resembling the adult.

The development of the Decapoda presents a very interesting series of modifications. In two genera of prawns (*Penæus* and *Lucifer*) the embryo leaves the egg as a nauplius, and passes by successive moults through a protozoæa stage, a *zoæa-stage*, with segmented but limbless abdomen, and a *Mysis* or *Schizopod-stage*, in which it resembles an adult Schizopod, having exopodites to all the thoracic limbs.

In the Crabs the nauplius stage is passed through in the egg, and the young is hatched in the form of a peculiarly modified zoæa (Fig. 439, A), with an immense cephalothorax produced into spines, large stalked eyes, and a slender abdomen. This passes by successive moults into the *megalopa-stage* (B), which resembles an adult Macruran, having an extended abdomen with well-developed pleopods. The megalopa passes by successive moults into the adult form.

In the Lobster (*Homarus*) both nauplius- and zoæa-stages are passed through in the egg, and the embryo is hatched in the mysis-stage with exopodites to all the thoracic limbs. In the Rock-lobster (*Palinurus*) and its allies, the newly hatched young is a strangely modified Mysis-form called a Glass-Crab or *Phyllosoma*: it has broad, depressed cephalic and thoracic shields of glassy transparency: the abdomen is very small and the legs extremely long and biramous. Lastly, in the Fresh-water Crayfish the young resemble the adult in all but proportions and certain unimportant details of structure. Thus in the series of Decapoda we get a gradual abbreviation in development, stages which are free larval forms in the lower types being hurried through before hatching in the higher.

The larvæ of Stomatopoda are grotesque little creatures with a very large spiny carapace. In Amphipoda there is no free larval form, but in Isopoda the young leave the egg in the form of a curious maggot-like modification of the nauplius, which remains in the brood-pouch until it has attained the adult form.

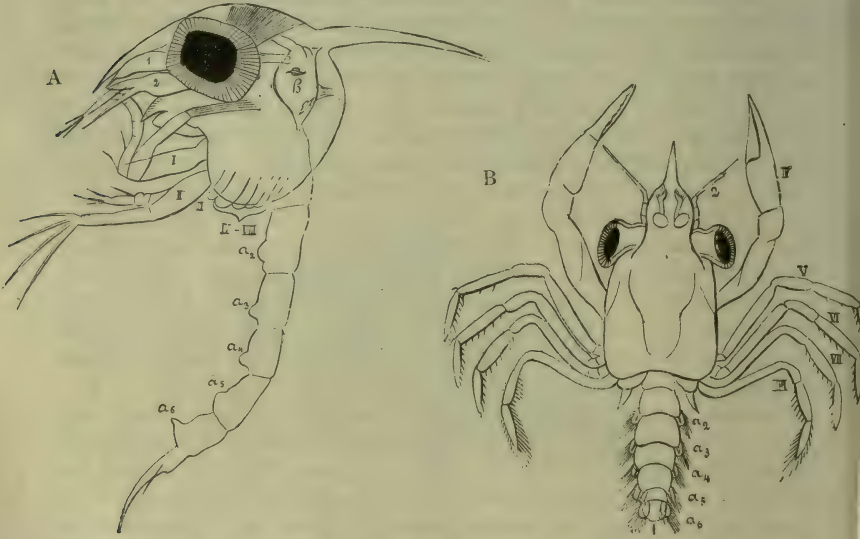


FIG. 439.—Larvæ of Crabs. A, Zoæa-stage of **Maja**; B, Megalopa-stage of **Portunus.** *h.* heart; a_2—a_6, abdominal segments; *1*, antennule; *2*, antenna; *I—VIII*, thoracic appendages. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*, after Claus.)

Ethology.—The Crustacea are remarkable for their very perfect adaptation to the most various conditions of life: they occur in fresh-water, in the sea, in brine-pools, in subterranean caves, and on land: of the marine forms some are littoral, some pelagic, some abyssal, descending to over 3,000 fathoms. One species of Copepod, *Pontellina mediterranea*, may almost be considered as aërial: it is described as taking long flying leaps out of the water, after the manner of a Flying-fish. Some, like Lobsters, Crayfishes, &c., are solitary; others, like Shrimps, are gregarious, occurring in immense shoals. Most of them either prey on living animals or devour carrion, but, as we have seen, the barnacles are fixed, and feed on minute particles after the fashion of many of the lower animals, and the members of more than one order are parasites remarkable for their deviation from the typical structure of the class and their adaptation to their peculiar mode of life. In size they present almost every gradation from microscopic Water-fleas to Crabs two feet across the carapace, or four feet from tip to tip of legs.

As to geographical distribution, all the chief groups are cosmopolitan, and it is only among the families, genera, and species that matters of interest from this point of view are met with. Fossil remains are known from very ancient periods. The oldest forms are usually referred to the Phyllocarida, and occur from the Cambrian to the Trias. The shells of Ostracoda are also known from the Cambrian upwards, and those of Cirripedia from the Silurian. Arthrostraca are known from palœozoic times, but are rare as fossils: the earliest Macruran is a shrimp-like form from the Devonian, while the highly differentiated Brachyura are not known with absolute certainty until the Cretaceous period.

It was in the Crustacea that the recapitulation theory so often alluded to was first worked out in detail. Embryology shows that all Crustacea may be traced back in individual development to the nauplius, upon which follows some kind of zoæa-stage, many of the Entomostraca progressing no further. But in Malacostraca the zoæa is followed by the mysis-stage, which is permanent in Schizopods, transient in Decapods. It was certainly a tempting hypothesis that this series of forms represented as many ancestral stages in the evolution of the class. But we have to remember that all such free larvæ are subject to the action of the struggle for existence, and have no doubt been modified in accordance with their own special needs and without reference either to their ancestors or to the adult species into which they finally change.

Many Crustacea present instances of *protective* and *aggressive characters, i.e.*, modifications in form, colour, &c., which serve to conceal them from their enemies or from their prey. Probably the most striking example is that of certain crabs (*Paramithrax*), which deliberately plant Sea-weeds, Sponges, Alcyonarians, Zoophytes, &c., all over the carapace, and are thus perfectly concealed except when in motion. Another Crab, a species of *Dromia*, carries a relatively immense Ascidian or Sea-squirt on its back, and in another species of the same genus the hinder legs are used to hold umbrella-wise over the back a single valve of a bivalve shell.

Several instances of *commensalism* occur in the class. The association of Hermit-crabs with sea-anemones has already been referred to (p. 196): another interesting example is the occurrence of the little Pea-crab (*Pinnotheres*) in the mantle-cavity of Mussels. Other Decapods are found in the intestines of Sea-urchins and Holothurians, and one genus of Crab lives in a cavity in a Coral, the aperture being only just sufficient to allow of a due supply of food and water.

It is in Crustacea that we find the first indication of characters the purpose of which appears to be their attractiveness to the opposite sex. The immensely enlarged and highly coloured chelæ of some male crabs (*Gelasimus*, Fig. 428, *2*) are said to be used for attracting the female as well as for fighting. The sound-producing organs of some Decapoda have probably also a sexual significance. The Rock-lobster (*Palinurus vulgaris*) has a soft chitinous pad on the antenna, which it rubs against a projecting keel on the sternal region of the head, producing a peculiar creaking sound, and *Alpheus*, another Macruran, makes noises by clapping together the fixed and movable fingers of its large chelæ. The fact that these sounds can be produced at the will of the animals seems to show that they undoubtedly possess a sense of hearing, and that the auditory sac is not merely an organ of the sense of direction.

Affinities and Mutual Relationships.—That the Crustacea belong to the same general type of organisation as the articulated worms is clear enough. The advance in structure is shown in the reduction in number and in the differentiation of the segments, and in the concrescence of those at the anterior end to form a head; in the hardening of the cuticle into sclerites so as to form a jointed armour; in the jointing and mobility of the limbs; and in the differentiation of the dorsal vessel into a heart by which the propulsion of the blood is alone performed. The resemblance of the foliaceous limbs of Phyllopods to the parapodia of the higher worms is so striking that one can hardly believe it to be without significance. On the other hand, the absence of transverse muscles and of cilia, the non-motile sperms, and the replacement of the cœlome by blood-spaces are fundamental points of difference from any known Chætopod.

As to the mutual relations of the various orders, the Phyllopoda, with their very generalised structure and parapod-like limbs, may be taken as the base of the series. By a differentiation of the post-cephalic limbs, and a reduction in the number of segments, the phyllopod-type easily passes into that of the Phyllocarida. These again lead to the Schizopoda, in which the segments are fixed at the number occurring in all the higher Malacostraca, the caudal styles are no longer present, and the first thoracic legs show an indication of being modified into foot-jaws. From the Schizopods the Macrura are derivable by the differentiation of three pairs of foot-jaws and the disappearance of the exopodites of the legs. In the series of the Macrura we find, on passing from the Prawns through such forms as Astacus, Palinurus, and Scyllarus, a gradual shortening of the abdomen, accompanied by a broadening and flattening of the whole body. In Birgus, Hippa, &c., this process goes a step further, and the abdomen becomes permanently flexed under the cephalothorax, thus leading to the high degree of specialisation found in the Crabs.

The Arthrostraca, Cumacea, and Stomatopoda may perhaps be looked upon as derivatives of the Schizopod-type along distinct lines of descent, the Arthrostraca showing the greatest amount of specialisation, in virtue of the absence of carapace and of exopodites (both present as vestiges in Anisopoda), and in the eyes being sessile. The Ostracoda, Copepoda, and Cirripedia are best conceived as derivatives, along separate lines, of an ancestral form common to them and the Phyllopoda.

These relationships are expressed in the following diagram :—

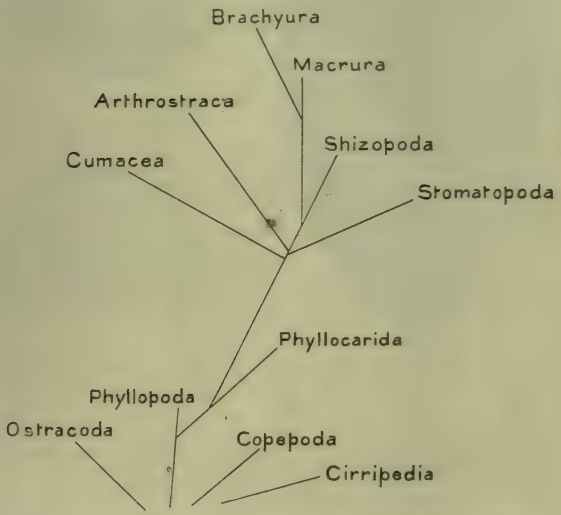


FIG. 440.—Diagram illustrating the mutual relationships of the orders of Crustacea

APPENDIX TO CRUSTACEA

Class Trilobita.

The Trilobita are extinct Arthropods peculiar to and characteristic of the Palæozoic rocks: they are specially abundant from the Upper Cambrian to the Carboniferous. They are often found in a wonderfully good state of preservation, owing to the hard exoskeleton covering the dorsal surface: the greater part of the ventral region and the appendages were, however, very delicate, and are preserved only in exceptionally favourable cases.

The body is depressed, more or less oval in outline, and divided into three regions, the *head* (*c.sh*), the *thorax* (*th*), and the *abdomen* (*p*), all of which usually present an elevated median ridge and depressed lateral portions, whence the trilobation generally characteristic of the group. The head is covered by a carapace or *cephalic shield* (*c.sh*), the elevated median region of which, known as the *glabella* (*gl*), usually presents three or four transverse grooves, probably indicating the presence of four or five segments. The lateral regions of the carapace are divided by an oblique line of separation, the *facial suture* (*f.s*), into an inner or mesial portion, the *fixed cheek* (*f.c*), continuous with the glabella, and an outer free portion, the *movable cheek* (*m.c*): the latter bears the large paired compound eye (*e*). In some cases there is an indication of a dorsal organ, like

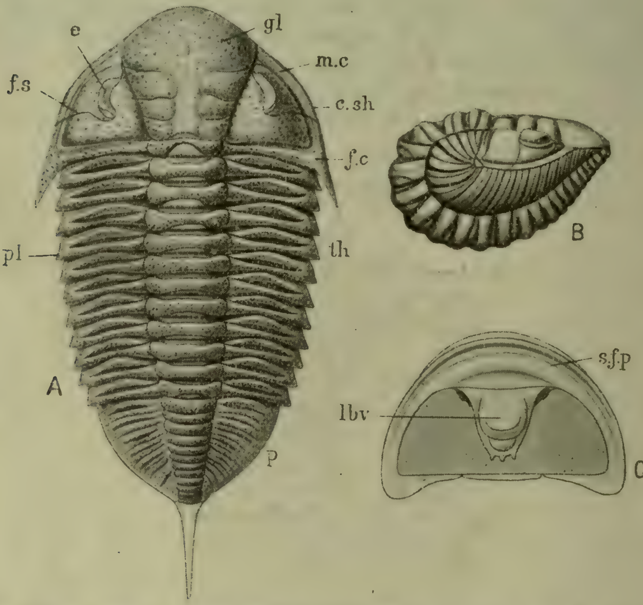


Fig. 441.—**Dalmanites socialis,** dorsal aspect; B, the same rolled up; C, under-side of head of **Phacops fecundus.** *c.sh.* cephalic shield; *e.* eye; *f.c.* fixed cheek; *f.s.* frontal suture; *gl.* glabella; *lbr.* labrum; *m.c.* movable cheek; *p.* pygidium; *pl.* pleura; *s.f.p.* sub-frontal plate; *th.* thorax. (After Gerstaecker.)

that of Apus, on the last cephalic segment. Ventrally the carapace is continued, as in Apus, into a sub-frontal plate (B, *s.f.p*), to the posterior edge of which is attached a large labrum (*lbr*). The posterior angles of the carapace are often produced into spines.

The thorax (*th*) is composed of a variable number (2–29) of movably articulated segments, which are commonly trilobed, consisting of a median region or *axis*, and of lateral *pleura* (*pl*) often produced backwards and downwards into spines. The abdomen is covered by a *caudal shield* or *pygidium* (*p*), formed of a variable number of fused segments. Owing to the mobility of the thorax, the Trilobites were able to roll themselves up like Wood-lice (B).

The appendages are very imperfectly known. Quite recently a single pair of antennæ (Fig. 442) has been shown to exist in one species, probably attached to the sub-frontal plate. Four pairs of leg-like cephalic appendages have been demonstrated, and the thorax bears slender biramous legs consisting of endo- and expodite, and bearing spiral gills. Similar limbs are present on the abdomen.

The larvæ of several species of Trilobites have been found in the fossil state. In some of these the body consists only of carapace and pygidium in the youngest stages, and the thoracic segments are subsequently intercalated in regular order. In other species the earliest stage has the form of a rounded plate, the posterior portion of which elongates and segments to form the thorax and abdomen. Nothing is known of the larval appendages, and none of the stages hitherto discovered can be considered as nauplii.

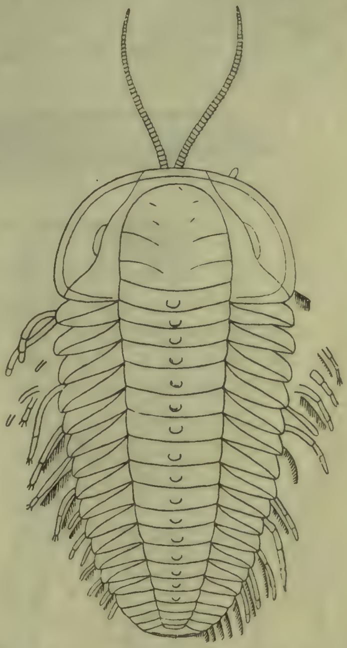


Fig. 441, *bis*.—**Triarthrus beckii,** dorsal aspect, showing antennæ and thoracic and abdominal appendages. (From Bernard, after Beecher.)

The precise systematic position of the Trilobites is uncertain, but their nearest affinities seem to be, on the whole, with the Phyllopoda.

for Friday

CLASS II.—ONYCHOPHORA.

The class Onychophora comprises only the aberrant arthropod genus *Peripatus*, which differs very widely in certain important features of its organisation from all the rest of the Arthropoda, and in some respects enables us to bridge over the interval between the latter and some of the lower phyla, more particularly the Annulata.

General external features.—Peripatus (Fig. 442) is a caterpillar-like animal of approximately cylindrical form, and not divided into segments: it has a fairly well-marked head, and a series (14-42 according to the species) of pairs of short stumpy appendages. The integument is thrown into a number of fine transverse wrinkles, and is beset with numerous conical papillæ, each capped with a little chitinous spine. The head (Fig. 443) bears a pair of antennæ, a pair of eyes, a pair of jaws, and a pair of short processes known as the *oral papillæ*. The antennæ are made up of a number of short rings. The eyes are constructed somewhat after the model of the Chætopod eye as described on p. 439. On the surface of the oral papillæ are situated the apertures of a pair of glands—the *slime glands*. Each *jaw* is composed of two curved, falciform, chitinous plates; they lie at the sides of the mouth enclosed by a circular lip. The jaws, as well as the oral papillæ, are developed as modified limbs.

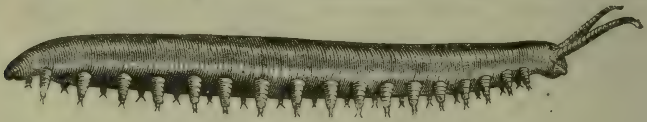


FIG. 442.—**Peripatus capensis,** lateral view. (From Balfour.)

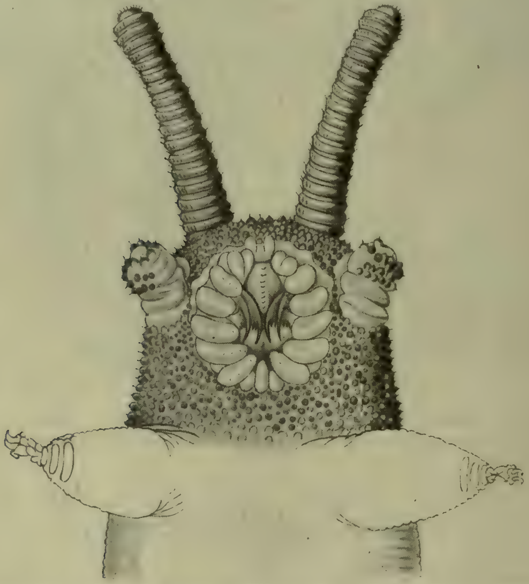


FIG. 443.—Ventral view of head of **Peripatus capensis,** with antennæ, jaws, oral papillæ, and first pair of legs. (After Balfour.)

The *legs* are not jointed, but rows of papillæ give them a ringed appearance; each consists of a proximal part and a small distal part or foot, the latter terminating in a pair of horny claws.

The surface presents an elaborate pattern, which varies greatly in different individuals, produced by minute mottlings of various colours and tints, green, red, brown, and the arrangement of these in stripes and bands.

Body wall and **body cavity.**—The wall of the body consists of a cuticle, a layer of deric epithelium with an underlying layer of fine fibres, a layer of circularly arranged muscular fibres, a double layer of diagonal fibres, and a layer of longitudinal fibres divided into a series of bundles. A layer of cœlomic epithelium lines the wall of the cœlome and invests the contained organs. Incomplete muscular partitions divide the cavity into a median and two lateral compartments. As in the Arthropoda in general, the body-cavity is a hæmocœle, and is filled with blood.

The **enteric canal** (Fig. 444) begins with a small *buccal cavity* enclosed by the circular lip, and having on its floor a slight prominence, the *tongue.* This is followed by a thick-walled *pharynx* (*phar.*) leading to a narrow *œsophagus.* The part which follows, the *mesenteron* or stomach-intestine, a wide, somewhat thin-walled tube, extends nearly to the posterior end of the body. The narrower *rectum* leads to an anal aperture situated on the last segment of the body. A diverticulum leading backwards from the buccal cavity, receives the secretion of two long narrow tubular *salivary glands* (*sal. gld.*).

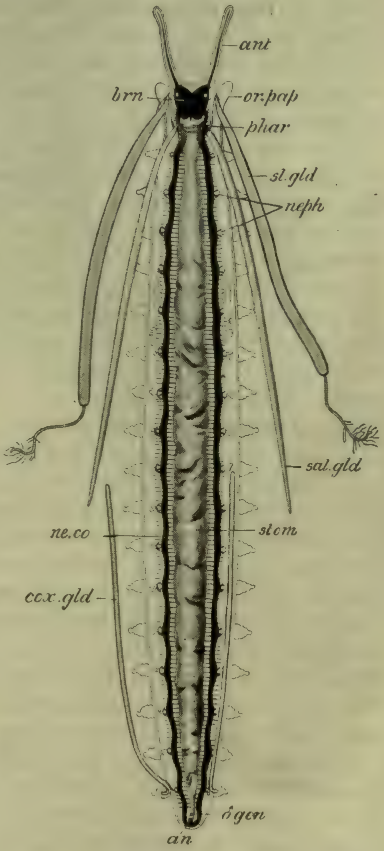


FIG. 444.—Dorsal view of the internal organs of **Peripatus**, *an.* anus; *ant.* antennæ; *brn.* brain; *cox. gld.* coxal gland of the seventeenth leg; ♂ *gen.* male genital aperture; *ne. co.* nerve cord; *neph.* nephridia; *phar.* pharynx; *sal. gld.* salivary gland; *sl. gld.* slime gland; *stom.* stomach. (Combined from Balfour.)

Circulatory system.—The *heart* is an elongated tube running through nearly the entire length of the body. It presents a number of pairs of ostia arranged segmentally—*i.e.* one opposite each pair of legs. It is enclosed in a pericardial sinus imperfectly cut off from the general body cavity by a longitudinal partition. There are no other vessels with the exception of a median ventral vessel.

The **organs of respiration** are delicate, unbranched or rarely branched, *tracheal tubes* lined with a thin chitinous layer exhibiting fine transverse striations. Groups of these open in little depressions of the integument, the external openings of which are known as the *stigmata.* The stigmata in some of the species are distributed irregularly over the surface; in others are arranged in longitudinal rows. By means of these tubes air is conveyed to all parts of the body.

A series of pairs of glands, the **coxal glands** (Fig. 444, *cox. gld.*), lie in the lateral compartments of the body cavity, and their ducts open on the lower surfaces of the legs. Their distribution varies in the two sexes and in the different species: in one species—*P. edwardsii*—they are only developed in the male. A pair of larger glands—the **slime glands** (*sl. gld.*)—opening at the extremities of the oral papillæ, may be modified coxal glands: the secretion of these is discharged in the form of a number of fine viscid threads when the animal is irritated, and appears to serve a defensive purpose.

The **nervous system** consists of a *brain* (*brn.*) situated in the head, and of two *longitudinal nerve cords* (*ne. co.*) which run parallel with one another throughout the body to the posterior end, where they join together behind the anal aperture. A number of very fine transverse commissures, more numerous than the segments, (*i.e.* than the pairs of limbs) connect the two cords together to form a ladder-like nervous system comparable to that of some of the Flat Worms. The cords are very slightly swollen opposite each pair of limbs: nerve cells cover them uniformly throughout their entire length. The brain gives off nerves to the antennæ. The nerves to the jaws are given off just where the brain passes into the longitudinal nerve cords.

The excretory organs are **nephridia** (Fig. 445) of the type of those of the Annulata, situated in pairs in the lateral compartments of the body cavity, and opening on the lower surfaces of the legs at their bases. Each nephridium consists of a wide funnel (*tr.*) with fringed margins opening into the cœlome or into a closed sac; a looped tube (*sg.*); and a dilated *terminal vesicle* (*eb.*), situated close to the external opening. The salivary glands and the reproductive ducts are, as shown by the study of their development, specially modified nephridia, as appear also to be a pair of glands—the *anal glands*—opening close to the anus.

Reproductive organs.—Peripatus has the sexes distinct. In the female there are two *ovaries* and two *uteri*, the latter in the form of long curved tubes which unite behind in a median vagina opening on the exterior between the second last pair of legs. Connected with each uterus where it leaves the ovary are two diverticula—the *receptaculum seminis* and *receptaculum ovorum.* In some species one or other of these may be absent.

In the male there are two tubular *testes*, each with a narrow *vas efferens* opening by a funnel-like aperture into a *vesicula seminalis;* this is followed by a long, narrow, coiled *vas deferens.* The two vasa deferentia unite together to form a median tube—the *ductus ejaculatorius*—opening on the exterior, like the vagina of the female, between the second last pair of legs. The wall of the proximal part of the ejaculatory duct is glandular and secretes a substance forming complicated cases which enclose masses of sperms to form spermatophores.

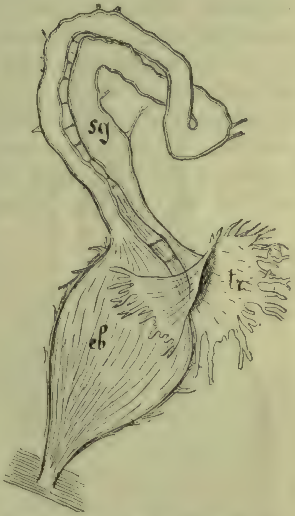


FIG. 445.—A nephridium of **P. Edwardsii.** *tr*, funnel; *sg*, looped canal; *eb*, terminal vesicle. (From Lang's *Text Book.*)

Development. — The differences between the different species of Peripatus as regards the segmentation and the formation of the germinal layers, as described by various observers, are very considerable. All the species are viviparous, but in some the egg, before the completion of embryonic development, is enclosed in a well-formed shell, and in certain cases the eggs may pass out to the exterior before the emergence of the embryo. In some species the egg encloses a considerable amount of food-yolk, in others the quantity of food-yolk is small, and nutriment is obtained from the parent.

In *P. novæ-zealandiæ* there is a superficial segmentation. The first segmentation-nucleus is itself superficial, and segmentation results in the development of a number of nuclei, each with its island of protoplasm, which arrange themselves on what is destined to become the dorsal side (Fig. 446 *A*), opposite the site of the future blastopore, while some pass inwards to the central part of the ovum. The peripheral nuclei multiply rapidly and grow round the yolk so as to completely enclose it except on a small space (blastopore) in the middle of the ventral side (*B*). There a thickening takes place, and an involution of the lips of the blastopore results in a sort of invagination, the floor of the invagination cavity being formed of yolk with scattered nuclei.

In another species—*P. capensis*—the segmentation has the appearance of being total; but the cells, though separated by fissures externally, are fused internally.

In accordance with the smaller size of the ova and the relationship of the embryo with the wall of the uterus the American species show a totally different mode of development. The eggs, which are almost entirely devoid of yolk, undergo a total and tolerably equal process of segmentation. Even at this stage the embryo, which increases considerably in size, appears to receive nutrient lymph from the uterine wall. When it has reached the 32-cell stage the embryo, according to one observer, consists of a solid mass closely invested by the epithelium of the wall of the uterus. It then becomes reduced in size and owing to exosmosis, assumes the form of a disk placed in close apposition to one side of the wall of the uterus. The embryo subsequently loses its flattened form and becomes somewhat vesicular, the cavity of the vesicle opening into the cavity of the uterus. From its surface are given off isolated cells which become applied in part to the wall of the uterus, and finally unite to form a complete envelope (*amnion*) enclosing the embryo. The vesicle then becomes closed, the embryo becomes raised from the surface of the uterine wall, the part applied to the latter becoming narrowed so as to form a sort of stalk, at the base of which is a growth of cells termed the *placenta*. Into close relation with this placenta comes a ring-shaped thickening of the uterine wall, the *uterine placenta*.

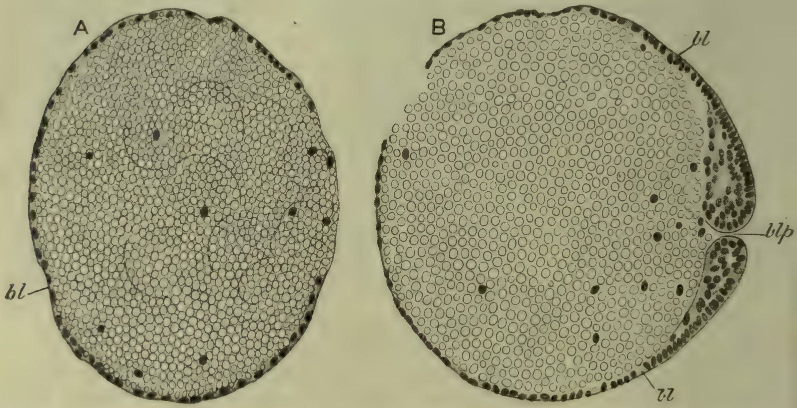


FIG. 446.—Two early stages in the development of **Peripatus novœ-zealandiæ**. A, transverse section of an ovum in which the yolk is nearly covered by the blastoderm (*bl.*); B, transverse section of an ovum in which the blastopore (*blp.*) is formed. (After Sheldon.)

In *P. capensis* behind the elongated blastopore proliferation of cells gives rise to an oval thickening. The mesoderm takes its origin at this point and extends forwards in the form of two *germinal bands*, one on the right of the blastopore and the other on the left. These bands undergo a division into rudiments of segments—the division beginning in front. The lips of the blastopore meanwhile become approximated, and fuse throughout the greater part of their length, leaving only an anterior and a posterior opening; these go to form the mouth and the anus respectively. The division into segments soon becomes well marked. At the anterior end the head lobes become distinguishable. The body elongates, and the head and trunk become differentiated. The limbs now arise as ventro-lateral outgrowths which are developed from before backwards.

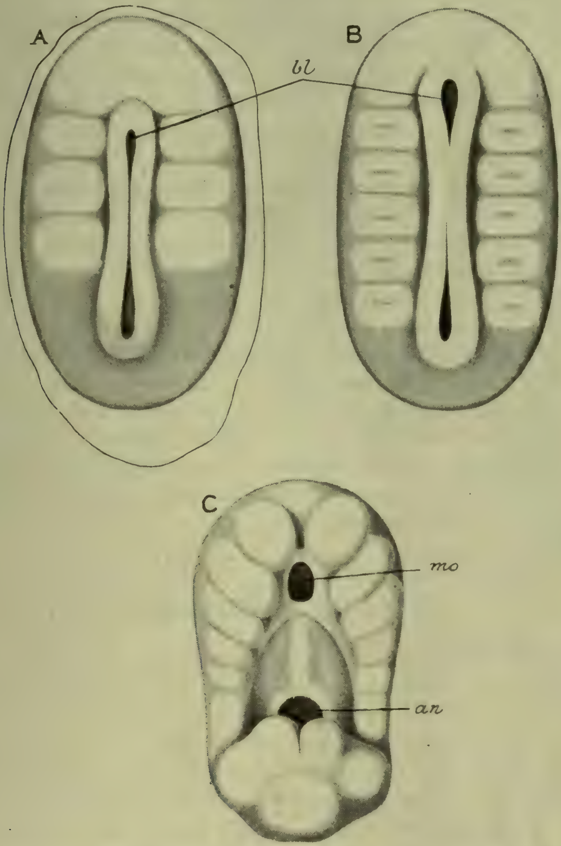


FIG 447.—Three somewhat later stages in the development of **Peripatus capensis,** showing the mode of closure of the blastopore and the appearance of the primitive segments. A, stage in which the blastopore (*bl.*) has the form of an elongated slit; B, stage in which the blastopore is closing up in its middle part; C, stage in which the blastopore has become closed up except the anterior part which has gone to form the mouth (*mo.*), and the anus (*an.*); the whole embryo has now become strongly curved towards the dorsal side. (After Balfour.)

Distribution.—The various species of Peripatus are all terrestrial, and are found in damp localities, under bark, or dead timber, or stones. Four species occur in South Africa, one in South America and one of the West Indies, one in New Zealand, and two in Australia.

Relationships.—Peripatus is the most primitive of existing Arthropods, and presents some striking points of resemblance to the Chætopoda. The development is in the main arthropodan, especially as regards the mode of segmentation (at least in the forms with much food-yolk, which are probably the more primitive), the mode of closure of the blastopore, and the mode of development of the mesodermal strands. Arthropodan also are the relatively large size of the brain and the presence of tracheæ, the character of the heart with its pairs of ostia, together with the clawed appendages, and the jaws in the form of modified limbs. The nephridia on the other hand, and their modification in certain segments to form the gonoducts, which are ciliated internally, are annulate in character, and in all probability the slime glands and coxal glands correspond to the setigerous glands of the Chætopoda. The nervous system is peculiar, and is most nearly paralleled among the Platyhelminthes and the Mollusca. Also peculiar, and serving to distinguish Peripatus from the rest of the Arthropoda, are the large number of stigmata with their irregular arrangement, the presence of only a single pair of jaws, and the nature of the cuticle.

CLASS III.—MYRIAPODA

The class Myriapoda, including the Centipedes and the Millipedes, consists of tracheate Arthropoda, which bear many features of resemblance to the Insects. There is a distinct head, bearing many-jointed antennæ, a pair of eyes, and two or three pairs of jaws; and a body, not distinguishable into regions, but consisting of a number of similar segments, each bearing either one pair of legs or two. A system of air-tubes or tracheæ, similar to those of Peripatus and the Insects, open by a series of stigmata, usually in considerable numbers, on the sides or lower surfaces of the segments.

A.—Distinctive Characters and Classification.

The Myriapoda are tracheate Arthropoda in which there is a head, bearing antennæ and jaws, and a trunk made up of a number of similar segments, provided, except the last, with leg-like appendages. Groups of ocelli take the place of the compound eyes of Insects.

ORDER 1.—SYMPHYLA.

Myriapoda in which there are not more than twelve leg-bearing trunk segments; a single pair of branching tracheæ, the external apertures of which are situated in the head; and an unpaired genital aperture on the fourth segment.

This order includes only a single genus, *Scolopendrella* (Fig. 448.)

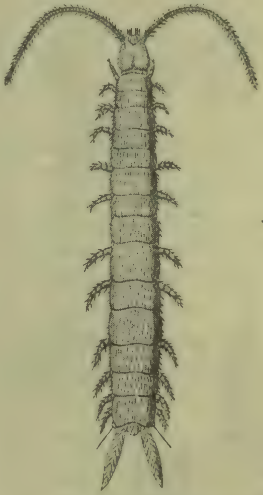


FIG. 448. — **Scolopendrella immaculata** (From Leuckart, after Latzel.)

ORDER 2.—CHILOPODA.

Myriapoda with a dorso-ventrally compressed body, consisting of a considerable number (15 to 173) of trunk segments, each with a single pair of legs, the first pair of legs forming poison jaws (maxillipedes). The unpaired genital aperture is on the second last segment.

This order includes the Centipedes (Fig. 449) and *Scutigera*.

ORDER 3.—DIPLOPODA.

Myriapoda with a dorsally convex body composed of a considerable number of segments, all of which, with the exception of the first four, bear each two pairs of legs. There are no maxillipedes. The paired genital apertures are situated between the third and fourth segments.

This order includes the Millipedes.

ORDER 4.—PAUROPODA.

Myriapoda with ten trunk segments and nine pairs of legs. Antennæ with several flagella. Tracheæ not known. Paired genital apertures situated at the bases of the second pair of legs.

The order includes only a single genus, *Pauropus* (Fig. 451).

GENERAL ORGANISATION.

External features.—The *head* in the Myriapoda is as well marked off as in an Insect; it appears to be composed of about four fused segments. The *antennæ* consist sometimes of many, sometimes of comparatively few segments. A pair of *eyes*, situated on the dorsal surface of the head, consist of aggregations of ocelli except in *Scutigera*, in which there are compound eyes, differing, however, in their structure from those of Insects.[1] There is a movable *labrum*, a pair of *mandibles*, and two pairs of *maxillæ.* The mandibles have no palps; one or both pairs of maxillæ usually possess palps; the second pair of maxillæ are in some groups more or less united together.

---

[1] See p. 596.

The number of segments in the body varies from 12 to 173. In the Millipedes the dorsal walls of the segments are very strongly arched; in the Centipedes the segments are all dorso-ventrally compressed, with distinct tergal and sternal shields separated laterally by intervals of comparatively soft skin on which the stigmata open. In the Chilopoda each segment bears a pair of jointed legs; of these the most anterior pair is extended forwards

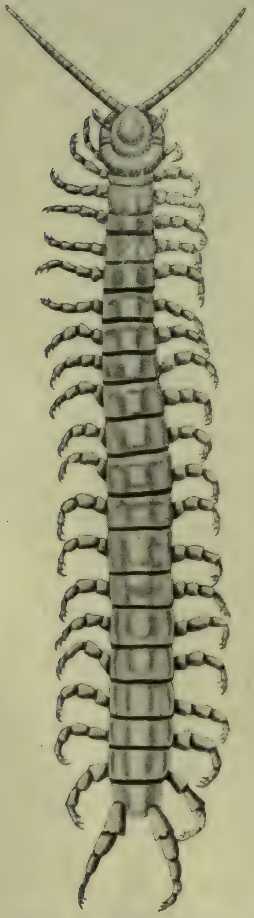


FIG. 449.—**Scolopendra**. (From Cuvier's *Animal Kingdom*.)

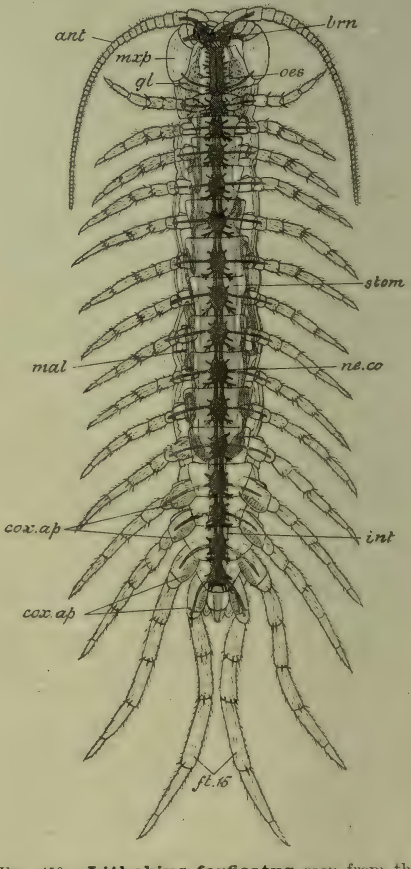


FIG. 450.—**Lithobius forficatus** seen from the ventral side. *ant.* antennæ; *brn.* brain; *cox. ap.* coxæ of appendages; *ft.* 15, fifteenth pair of legs; *int.* intestine; *mal.* Malpighian tubes; *mxp.* maxillipedes; *ne. co.* nerve cord; *œs.* œsophagus; *stom.* stomach. (From Leuckart.)

to form a pair of poison jaws (*maxillipedes*), at the extremity of the pointed terminal joint of which opens the duct of a poison gland. In the Diplopoda each segment behind the fourth or fifth bears two pairs of legs, the four or five most anterior having only one pair each. In most of the Diplopoda the appendages of the seventh segment are modified in the male to form copulatory organs.

The **integument** and **body wall** do not differ widely from those of Insects. Odoriferous glands are present on some of the body segments in the Diplopoda, and open on the dorsal surface. *Scolopendrella* possesses spinning glands.

The **alimentary canal** is straight, and is much simpler in character than that of the Insecta. Connected with the mesenteron are a number of short *hepatic cœca*, and one or two pairs of *Malpighian tubes*, having a renal function, open into the beginning of the hind gut.

The **heart** is greatly elongated, and consists of as many chambers as there are segments in the body.

The **respiratory system** resembles that of Insects to be fully dealt with later (p. 578, Fig. 459), consisting of air-tubes or *tracheæ*. There is one pair of stigmata in each segment in the Diplopoda, and the tracheæ are unbranched. In the Chilopoda the tracheæ are branched, and the number of stigmata is in most cases less than the number of segments. In *Scutigera*, one of the stigmata is unpaired and dorsal. In the Symphyla there are only two stigmata, and these are situated on the head.

The **nervous system** is, in accordance with the form of the body, much less concentrated than in the Insecta (see below, p. 594). In the Chilopoda there is a double ganglion in each segment of the trunk; in the Diplopoda there are two. The longitudinal commissures between the ganglia are usually distinct. The ganglia of the first two segments unite to form an infra-œsophageal ganglion from which the nerves to the jaws are given off. A sympathetic or visceral nervous system is present as in Insects.

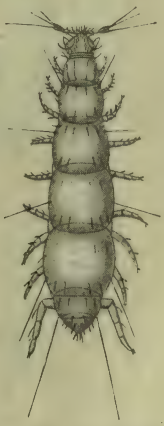


FIG. 451.—**Pauropus huxleyi.** (From Leuckart, after Latzel.)

The **sexes** are always separate. The reproductive organs—ovaries or testes—are usually paired, with paired ducts, having a common terminal portion; but in the Diplopoda there is an unpaired ovary or testis with paired ducts, which remain distinct throughout, and open by separate apertures. In the Chilopoda the external aperture is situated on the penultimate segment; in the Diplopoda and Pauropoda the two apertures are usually between the second and third segments of the body; in the Symphyla the single aperture is situated between the legs of the fourth segment.

The **ovum**, as in most Arthropods, contains a large quantity of food-yolk. The centrally-placed segmentation-nucleus divides so as to give rise to a number of nuclei, this division being accompanied by a division of the yolk into a number of masses, which, however, are more numerous than the nuclei. The nuclei then, for the most part, migrate to the surface, some being left behind in the yolk. Those that reach the surface, surrounded each by its little clump of protoplasm, become arranged into a continuous superficial layer of cells—the *blastoderm*. On the surface of this appears a thickening, and along the thickening is formed a groove which may perhaps represent the blastopore, though the endoderm is formed by direct modification of the cells in the interior of the yolk. Stomodæum and proctodæum are developed as invaginations of the surface layer. The thickening of the blastoderm gives rise to a germinal band in which rudiments of the segments soon become recognisable. Larval membranes do not occur.

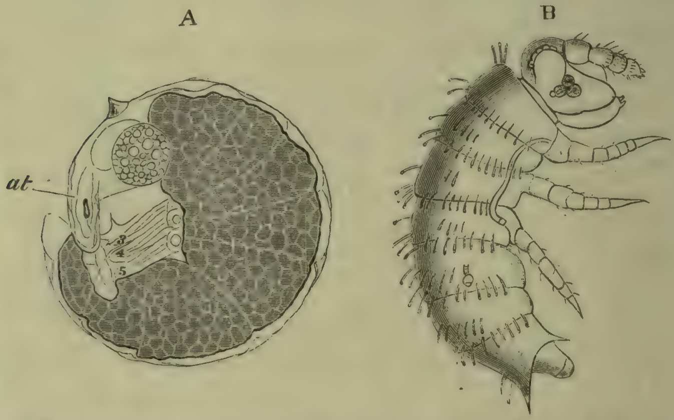


Fig. 452.—Two stages in the development of **Strongylostoma,** one of the Diplopoda. A, early stage in the formation of the larva, which, however, exhibits distinct segments B, larva immediately after hatching. (From Balfour, after Metschnikoff.)

In some of the Diplopoda there is a metamorphosis, such as has shortly to be described in the embryo Insect, and the larva (Fig. 452, B) has a singular superficial resemblance to an Insect, owing to the presence at first of only three pairs of appendages on the anterior trunk region.

Fossil remains of Myriapoda have been found in strata as far back as the Devonian. The more ancient fossil forms are not capable of being grouped in the same orders as the living representatives of the class, and are looked upon as constituting at least two orders, the members of which are all extinct.

CLASS IV.—INSECTA.

The class of Insects, comprising the Cockroaches, Grass-hoppers, Dragon-flies, House-flies, Butterflies, Beetles, and Bees, with their many allies, though it is a very extensive one, including as it does a larger number of species than any of the other classes of the Arthropoda, is yet characterised by a remarkable degree of uniformity, no such extremes of modification occurring as are observable within the class Crustacea.

Characteristic of all the members of the class is the presence of three clearly-defined regions—the head, thorax, and abdomen. There are present on the head, antennæ, mandibles, and two pairs of maxillæ, the jaws being variously modified in the different orders. All Insects have three pairs of thoracic legs, and most have either one or two pairs of wings likewise borne on the thorax; the abdomen is not provided with paired appendages.

The organs of respiration are tracheæ similar to those of the Myriapoda.

The various systems of internal organs attain in all the higher groups of Insects a very high grade of development. In most the development is complicated by the occurrence of a strongly-marked metamorphosis. Insects are terrestrial or aerial, only a few groups living on the surface of fresh or salt water; but many are aquatic throughout their larval condition.

Many groups of Insects are remarkable for the high grade of their intelligence as compared with the members of most classes of the animal kingdom. This manifests itself mainly in a number of instincts, often of a remarkable character, having to do with the protection and rearing of the young—in some cases leading to the formation of communities consisting of individuals of various different kinds (workers, soldiers, sexual individuals) for mutual support and protection.

1. EXAMPLE OF THE CLASS—THE COCKROACH (*Periplaneta americana*).

The Cockroach, familiarly known by the misleading title of "Black Beetle," is a common pest of kitchens, bakeries, and store-rooms. It is nocturnal in its habits, rarely coming out of its lurking-places in the day-time, and is almost omnivorous in its diet. It is a good example of the Insecta, not only on account of its large size rendering it convenient for dissection, but also because of its generalised structure, which makes it a fairly central member of the class, devoid of any extreme modifications.

Three regions are very distinctly recognisable in the body of the Cockroach. In front is the *head*, elongated vertically, bearing the very long slender *feelers* and the large *eyes*, and contracted behind to form a narrow *neck*. In the middle is the *thorax*, consisting of three segments bearing the three pairs of *legs* and the two pairs of *wings*. Behind is the *abdomen*, consisting of ten segments covered over above by the wings. The entire surface is covered by a chitinous cuticle, which is specially thickened on the head, on certain parts of the thorax, and in the anterior pair of wings.

The **head** consists of four parts—the *epicranium* behind, comprising the region between and behind the eyes, and the *clypeus*, or portion extending vertically downwards, with two lateral parts, the *genæ*, in front. The eyes are a pair of reniform black patches on the sides of the head; each is seen when examined with a lens to be divided into a number of minute hexagonal areas or *facets*, like those in the eye of the Crayfish. Borne in sockets just below the eyes are the long, slender, highly mobile feelers or *antennæ*, each made up of a large number of short segments, the first three being larger than the others. Internal to the base of each antenna is a rounded white space—the *fenestra*—the nature of which is not known, but which may be an abortive representative of the simple eyes or *ocelli* found in most Insects.

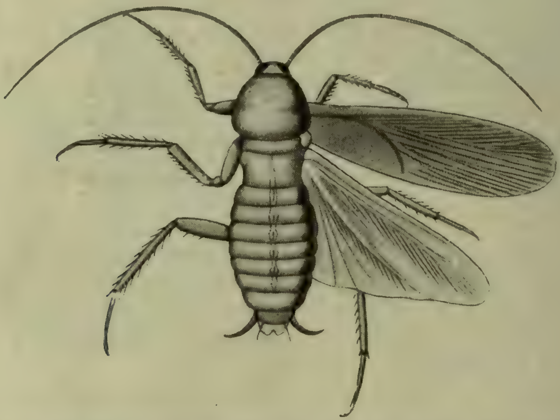


FIG. 453.—**Periplaneta americana.** Male, dorsal view. Natural size.

Movably articulated with the lower or ventral end of the clypeus is a broad plate, the *labrum* or upper lip (Fig. 454, *lbr.*), overhanging the aperture of the mouth. Below the genæ and articulating with the sides both of the epicranium and clypeus

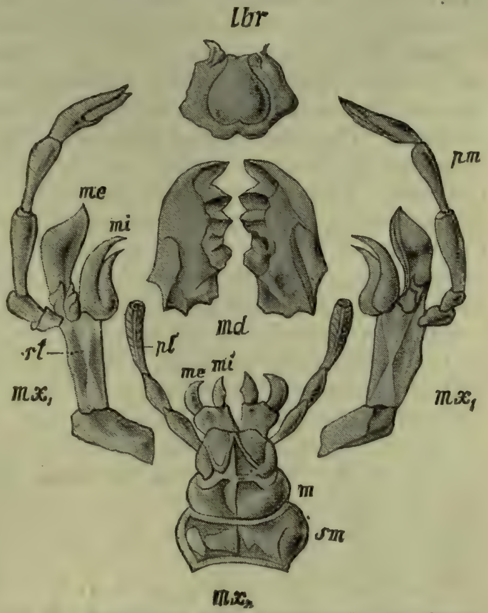


FIG. 454.—Mouth parts of the **Cockroach**; *lbr.* labrum; *md.* mandible; *mx*^{1}. anterior pair of maxillæ; *m.* mentum; *me.* and *mi.* outer and inner divisions of the second pair of maxillæ; *pl.* labial palp.; *pm.* maxillary palp; *st.* stipes; *sm.* submentum. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy.*)

are a pair of stout *mandibles* (Fig. 454, *md.*, and 455, *man.*), which work horizontally like those of the Crayfish; their inner edges are divided into a number of teeth. Behind the mandibles are a more flexible pair of jaws—the first pair of *maxillæ* (*mx.*^{1}, *max.*^{1}). Each maxilla exhibits a structure comparable to the fundamental type of the appendages of the Crayfish; a basal part or *protopodite*, consisting of two segments (podomeres), supporting an internal ramus or *endopodite*, and an external ramus or *exopodite*. The former consists of two parts: an inner, pointed, hard blade — the *lacinia* (*mi.*), and an outer, softer, more elongated—the *galea* (*me.*). The exopodite forms a palp, the *maxillary palp* (*pm.*), consisting of five podomeres. Behind these are the second maxillæ, which are reducible to the same type, but which have their two basal segments (those of the protopodites) united together in the middle line, to form two median sclerites, known respectively as *mentum* (*m.*) and *submentum* (*sm.*), so that the two appendages form a sort of lower lip called the *labium*. The endopodites taken together constitute what is termed the *ligula*; each is divided into two parts like the endopodite of the first maxillæ. The exopodites form three-jointed palps, the *labial palps* (*pl.*).

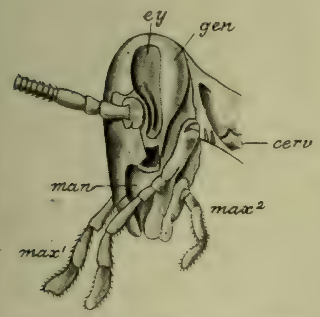


FIG. 455.—**Periplaneta americana.** Lateral view of the head and its appendages. *cerv.* one of the cervical sclerites; *ey.* eye; *gen.* gena; *man.* mandible; *max*^{1}., first pair of maxillæ; *max*^{2}. second pair of maxillæ (labium).

The **neck,** or narrow region

between the head proper and the thorax, is covered for the most part by a thin flexible cuticle, but there are supporting it eight thickened and hardened patches—the *cervical sclerites* (*cerv.*).

Each of the three segments of the **thorax**—known respectively as *prothorax*, *mesothorax*, and *metathorax*—is covered over dorsally by a chitinous plate—the *tergum*, and ventrally by another—the *sternum*. The tergum and sternum of each segment are distinct from one another, not united into a continuous sclerite as in the Crayfish. The tergum of the prothorax is larger than that of the other two segments, and overlaps the neck above. Attached to the anterior border of the tergum of the mesothorax are the anterior wings or *elytra*—a pair of thick opaque plates, which, in their ordinary position, extend backwards over the abdomen to some little distance beyond its extremity. Attached to the tergum of the metathorax are the *posterior wings*—a pair of extremely delicate membranous expansions, which, when at rest, are folded up longitudinally, like a fan, under the elytra. Attached to the sternum of each segment of the thorax is a pair of legs. Each leg consists of a stout flattened proximal podomere or *coxa;* a small second, or *trochanter;* a third, the *femur*, similar to the coxa but narrower; a fourth slender and spinose, the *tibia;* and finally the *tarsus* or *foot*, composed of six very short segments provided ventrally with patches of setæ to give adhesive power; the last segment (*pulvillus*) is armed in addition with a pair of claws.

Of the segments of the **abdomen** the most posterior are overlapped by those just in front. Each is enclosed in a dorsal *tergum* and a ventral *sternum*, both of which are thinnish and flexible—the terga and sterna of successive segments overlapping one another from before backwards. The eighth and ninth terga are hidden from view by being overlapped by the seventh. The tenth is produced backwards into a thin flexible plate, the posterior border of which presents a deep notch; below this is the opening of the anus, at the sides of which are a pair of small hard plates—the *podical plates*; at the sides of the tergum are a pair of many-jointed palp-like bodies—the *cerci*. The sternum of the first abdominal segment is rudimentary. In the male that of the ninth bears a pair of short styles. In the female the sternum of the seventh is very much more prominent than in the male. The genital aperture is placed on the ventral aspect of the posterior extremity of the abdomen beneath the anal opening.

When compared with the Crayfish, as regards the external anatomy, the Cockroach is found to differ (1) in the arrangement of the segments into regions; (2) in the form and position of the appendages. The head and thorax together correspond to the cephalothorax of the Crayfish, but comprise fewer segments; the abdomen contains a larger number of segments. The single pair of antennæ probably correspond to the antennules of the Crayfish

—the antennæ of the latter not being represented. On this view the homologies of the anterior appendages in the two animals may be expressed in the following table:—

Crayfish.	Cockroach.
Antennules.	Antennæ.
Antennæ.	Absent.
Mandibles.	Mandibles.
First maxillæ.	First maxillæ.
Second maxillæ.	Second maxillæ (labium).
First maxillipedes.	First legs.
Second maxillipedes.	Second legs.
Third maxillipedes.	Third legs.

Representatives of the five pairs of thoracic legs of the Crayfish would thus appear to be absent in the Cockroach, and evanescent rudiments, no traces of which remain in the adult, alone represent in the latter the well-developed abdominal appendages of the former.

In the living Cockroach **respiratory movements** are to be observed, in which the abdomen becomes alternately expanded and contracted; these movements bring about the alternate inhalation and exhalation of air through certain apertures — the *stigmata* — at the sides of the body. Two of these are situated on each side of the thorax, one between the prothorax and mesothorax, and the other between the mesothorax and the metathorax. Eight occur on each side in the abdomen between the terga and sterna of the segments. Just internal to each spiracle the main trachea into which it leads presents an elastic ring or spiral, acting as a valve for closing the passage.

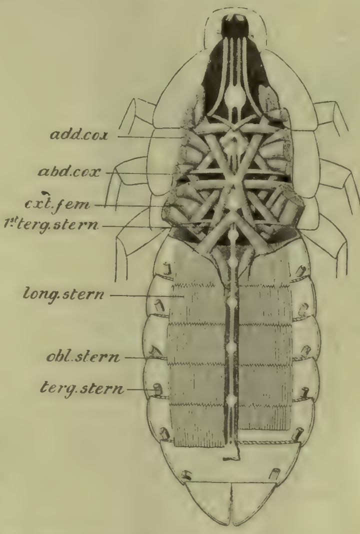


FIG. 456.—Ventral portion of the muscular system of the **Cockroach.** *add. cox.* adductor of coxa; *abd. cox.* abductor of coxa; *ext. fem.* extensor of femur; *1st terg. stern.* first tergo-sternal; *long. stern.* longitudinal sternal; *obl. stern.* oblique sternal. (After Miall and Denny.)

The principal sets of **muscles** of the trunk of the cockroach are (1) the *longitudinal sternal muscles* (Fig. 456, *long. stern.*), which form a transversely segmented sheet, extending between adjoining sterna of the thorax and abdomen; (2) *oblique sternal* *muscles* (*obl. stern.*), confined to the abdomen; (3) and *longitudinal tergal muscles*, best developed in the abdomen. The various segments of the limbs are capable of being flexed or extended on one another, as in the Crayfish, by the contractions of special muscles. The wings are little used, the female cockroach being incapable of flight, and the male not a strong flier, and accordingly the wing muscles are not very strongly developed.

Between the body wall and the alimentary canal is a cavity taking the place of the **cœlome,** but in reality forming a specially developed part of the blood-vascular system (hæmocœle). This is bounded externally by an irregular wall, formed of a mass of polygonal cells constituting the *fat body*.

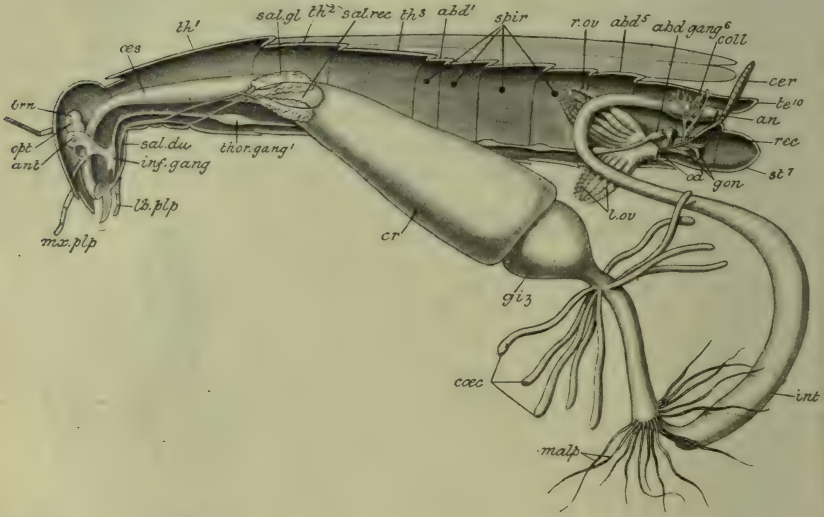


FIG. 457.—Semi-diagrammatic view of the internal organs of a female **Cockroach,** dissected from the left side. The heart is not represented. *abd.*^{1}, *abd.*^{5} first and fifth abdominal segments; *an* anus; *ant.* antennary nerve; *brn.* brain; *cer.* anal cercus; *cæc.* cæca; *coll.* colleterial glands; *cr.* crop; *gizz.* gizzard; *gon.* gonapophyses; *infr. gang.* sub-œsophageal ganglion; *int.* intestine; *lb. plp.* labial palp; *l.ov.* left ovary; *malp.* malpighian tubes; *mx.plp.* maxillary palp.; *od*, points to the external opening of the median oviduct (vagina); *œs.* œsophagus; *r.ov.* right ovary; *sal. gld.* salivary glands; *sal. rec.* salivary receptacle (left); *sal. du.* salivary ducts, indicating the point at which the median duct of the salivary glands unites with the median duct of the salivary receptacles; *spir.* spiracles; *st. 7*, sternum of the seventh segment; *te. 10*, tergum of the tenth segment; *th*^{1}, *th*^{2}, *th*^{3}, first, second, and third segments of the thorax.

Digestive system.—The *mouth* opens into a *buccal cavity*, which receives the ducts of the *salivary glands* (Fig. 457, *sal. gld.*). Each gland is divided into two lobes, each made up of numerous ramifications. In close relation to each gland is an elongated thin-walled sac—the *salivary receptacle* (*sal. rec.*). The duct given off from the salivary receptacle joins that of the opposite side, and the median duct thus formed is joined by a single duct (*sal.*

du.), formed by the union of the two ducts of the salivary glands; the common duct thus formed opens into the buccal cavity (Fig. 458). A chitinous fold of the floor of the mouth forms the *lingua* or tongue.

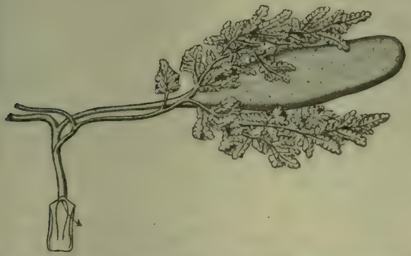


FIG. 458.—Right salivary glands and salivary receptacle of **Cockroach.** (After Miall and Denny.)

From the buccal cavity there proceeds backwards a narrow *œsophagus* (*œs.*), which leads to an elongated saccular dilatable sac—the *crop* (*cr.*). On this there follows the *proventriculus* or *gizzard* (*gizz.*)—a pear-shaped chamber with the broad end directed forwards, its chitinous internal lining raised up into a number of horny teeth. A narrow passage leads from this to the *chylific ventricle*—a wide tube with glandular walls; from its anterior end are given off eight tubular *hepatic cœca* (*hep. cœ.*)—blind tubes somewhat narrower than the chylific ventricle. The point of junction of the chylific ventricle with the intestine is marked by the presence of very numerous thread-like yellow appendages—the *Malpighian tubes* (*malp.*)—which are the **renal organs** of the animal. The *intestine* (*int.*) terminates in a dilated portion—the *rectum* (*rct.*)—the walls of which are longitudinally folded. Of the entire alimentary canal only a small part—the chylific ventricle—with the appended hepatic cæca, is of the nature of a mesenteron, the region in front being a stomodæum, and that behind a proctodæum.

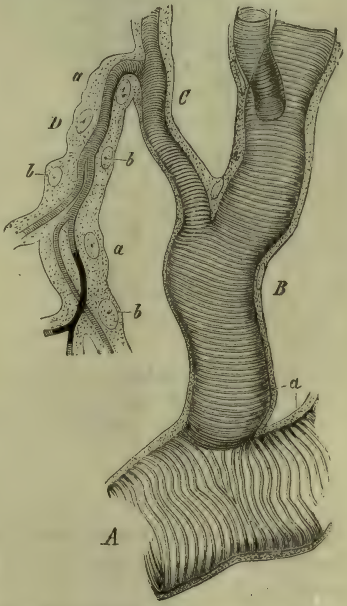


FIG. 459.—Portion of a trachea of a **Caterpillar.** *B*, *C*, *D*, branches; *a*, cellular layer; *b*, nuclei. (From Gegenbaur.)

The **heart** is an elongated tube, closed behind, open in front, running along the middle line of the abdomen and thorax, immediately beneath the terga. Internally the tube is divided into a number of chambers; its walls are perforated by a series of pairs of valvular apertures or *ostia*. Running from the wall of the heart to the terga are a series of segmentally-arranged fan-shaped bundles of muscles—the *alary muscles* (Fig. 484, *m.*).

Respiration takes place through the instrumentality of a system of air-tubes or *tracheæ* (Figs. 459 and 460), opening on the surface at the *stigmata*, to which reference has already been made. These tracheæ form a richly ramifying system extending to all parts of the body. They possess a chitinous internal lining, supported by means of a spirally-wound, fibre-like thickening. By means of this system of air-tubes air is conveyed throughout the body to all parts, and there is thus ensured the rapid and complete oxygenation which the functional activity of the Insect requires.

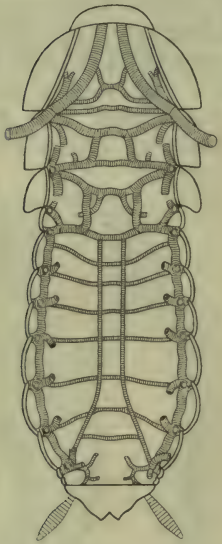


FIG. 460.—**Periplaneta.** View of the arrangement of the principal trunks of the tracheal system. (After Miall and Denny.)

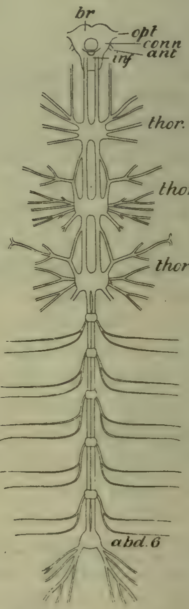


FIG. 461.—**Periplaneta.** General view of the nervous system. *abd*, sixth abdominal ganglion; *ant.* antennary nerve; *br.* brain; *conn.* œsophageal connective; *inf.* sub-œsophageal ganglion; *opt.* optic nerve; *thor*,^{1} *thor*,^{2} *thor*,^{3} first, second, and third thoracic ganglia. (After Miall and Denny.)

The **nervous system** consists of a *brain* (Fig. 457, *brn.*, and 461, *br.*), a *sub-œsophageal* pair of ganglia (*infr. gang.*), three *thoracic* (Fig. 461, *thor.* 1, 2, and 3), and six *abdominal* pairs of a ganglia, a system of *connectives* uniting the ganglia together, and a series of *nerves* given off to the various parts of the body. The brain consists of a bilobed mass of nerve-matter situated in the head, and divisible into two parts, anterior and posterior. From the anterior part is given off on each side the optic nerve passing to the eye to become expanded into an optic ganglion, and from the posterior part the nerve to the antennæ. It is supported by a chitinous framework—the *tentorium.* From the brain there run backwards a pair of *œsophageal connectives* (*conn.*), passing, one on each side of the œsophagus, downwards and backwards to the sub-œsophageal ganglia. The latter, which are situated between the submentum and œsophagus, give off a pair of connectives, passing backwards to the first thoracic ganglia. From the sub-œsophageal ganglia are given off the nerves to the labrum, the mandibles, and both pairs of maxillæ. The three paired thoracic and six abdominal ganglia are connected together into a chain by a series of double connectives; the last pair of abdominal ganglia, situated in the sixth segment of the abdomen, are larger than the others, and supply the segments behind. A *visceral nervous system*, ramifying on the anterior part of the alimentary canal, is connected with the two œsophageal connectives by two nerves, which join above the œsophagus to form a median *frontal ganglion.*

The **organs of special sense** are the eyes, the antennæ, and the palpi. The *eyes* are compound—each being made up of a large number of simple elements similar to those that go to make up the eye of the Crayfish (see p. 513). The antennæ and palpi, together with the anal cerci, act as organs of touch. In addition, certain setæ on the antennæ appear to have an *olfactory* function.

Reproductive organs.—In the male the *testes* (Fig. 462, *tst.*), are a pair of small bodies which lie in the fourth and fifth segments of the abdomen immediately below the terga. From these

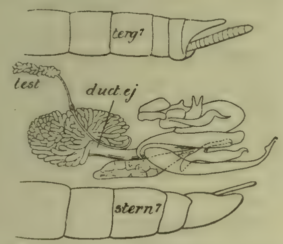


FIG. 462.—**Periplaneta.** Male reproductive organs, lateral view. *duct. ej.* ductus ejaculatorius with mushroom-shaped gland; *stern.* 7, sternum of seventh segment of abdomen; *terg.* 7, tergum of the same segment; *test.* testis. (After Miall and Denny.)

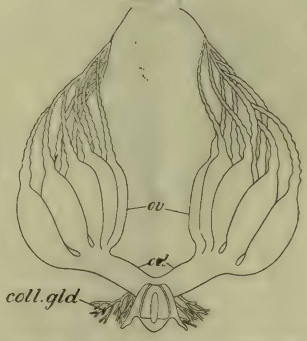


FIG. 463.—**Periplaneta.** Female reproductive organs. *coll. gld.* colleterial glands; *od.* oviducts; *ov.* ovaries. (After Miall and Denny.)

a pair of delicate tubes, the *vasa deferentia*, lead to the *vesiculæ seminales*, two tufts of whitish cæca, which together constitute what is known as the "mushroom-shaped gland"; these open into the anterior end of the *ejaculatory duct* (*duct. ej.*), an unpaired tube with muscular walls opening on the exterior immediately below the anus. Around the genital aperture are a series of chitinous processes, the *gonapophyses*, which subserve copulation.

In the female there are two groups of *ovarian tubes* or *ovarioles*, each group or *ovary* (Fig. 463, *ov.*) consisting of eight. The tubules of each group are united together anteriorly, where they are connected by a ligament to the dorsal body-wall. Posteriorly each group is connected with a lateral *oviduct* (*od.*). Each ovarian tube has a beaded appearance, owing to its containing a row of ova, which increase in size posteriorly. The two oviducts unite to open by a median aperture on the sternal surface of the eighth segment of the abdomen. A pair of unsymmetrical sacs opening together in the middle of the sternum of the ninth segment constitute the *spermatheca* or *receptaculum seminis*. A pair of ramifying glandular tubules, the *colleterial glands* (*coll. gld.*), open behind the spermatheca. A series of chitinous *gonapophyses*, which aid in depositing the eggs, are situated between the female genital aperture and the anus.

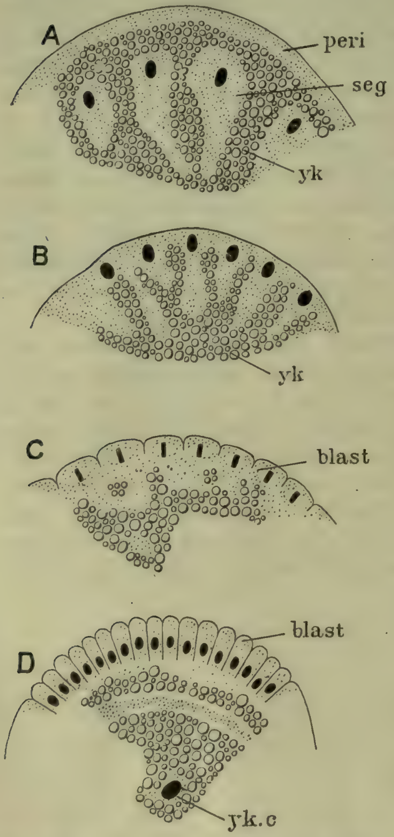


FIG. 464.—A—D, successive stages in the segmentation of the ovum of an **Insect**; *blast.* blastoderm; *peri.* peripheral protoplasm; *seg.* segmentation cells; *yk.* yolk; *yk. c.* yolk-cells. (From Korschelt and Heider, after Blochmann.)

Development.—The eggs are enclosed sixteen together in horny capsules, the substance of which is secreted by the colleterial glands. They are laterally compressed, concave on one side (the future ventral side), convex on the other (the future dorsal side). Each egg is enclosed in a thin egg-shell, or *chorion*, with several small openings. The nucleus, originally plainly distinguishable in the ovarian ovum, is no longer visible in the egg when laid, owing to the accumulation of food-yolk. It is to be inferred from what is known of other Insects that the nucleus with a small quantity of protoplasm lies enclosed within the food-yolk. It undergoes division (Fig. 464), and some of the resulting cells travel to the surface, where they form an investing layer—the *blastoderm* (*blast.*),—while others—the *yolk cells* (*yk. c.*),—remain scattered in the interior of the yolk.

On the ventral side there is soon formed a thickening of the blastoderm, owing to the cells in this situation becoming columnar; this forms what is termed the *ventral plate* (Fig. 465). In front this is wider (in the position of the future head) than it is behind. It becomes divided by a number of narrow transverse lines which indicate the boundaries of the future segments.

Rudiments of appendages appear on the head and thorax, and a series also appear on the abdomen, which, however, subsequently disappear. The segment on which the rudiments of the antennæ appear is at first post-oral in position, but subsequently becomes fused with a præ-oral segment (*prostomium*), so that the antennæ acquire their permanent præ-oral position only secondarily. The prostomial segment, the antennary segment, a segment devoid of appendages, the segment bearing the rudimentary mandibles, and those bearing the two pairs of maxillæ, all unite to form the *head* of the adult. The ventral plate, which was superficially situated when first developed, becomes gradually sunk within the substance of the yolk, and thus becomes separated from the chorion by a layer of yolk. On this follows the appearance of the *larval membranes*. On either side arises a fold of the blastoderm (Fig. 466, *amn. f.*); and the two folds grow inwards, and eventually unite over the body of the embryo, forming a complete two-layered covering for it. The outer layer is termed *serosa* (*ser.*), the inner *amnion*[1] (*amn.*)

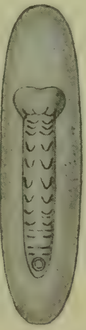


FIG. 465.—Ventral plate of embryo **Cockroach** with developing appendages. (After Miall and Denny.)

Along the middle of the ventral plate there soon appears a groove—the *germinal groove*. This grows downwards, and forms a tube, which becomes completely detached from the ectoderm. The lumen of the tube becomes filled up with cells, and the solid strand thus formed divides longitudinally into two parts—the *mesoderm bands*. There is some doubt as to whether the endoderm is also formed in the course of this invagination, or by modification of the yolk-cells. Infoldings of the ectoderm at the anterior and posterior ends of the embryo give rise to the stomodæum and proctodæum.

---

[1] This term is derived from the Vertebrata, in which there is an analogous membrane, occupying, however, a dorsal instead of a ventral position as regards the body of the embryo.

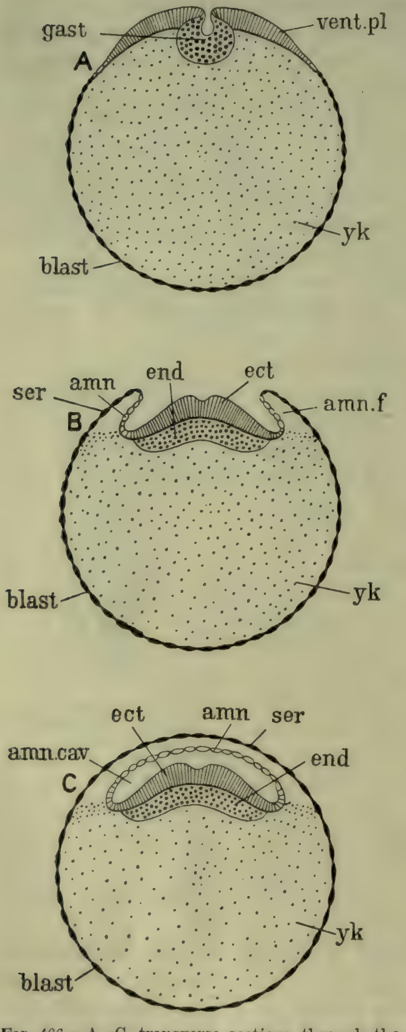


Fig. 466.—A—C, transverse sections through the developing ovum of an **Insect** at successive stages to show the mode of development of the germinal layers and of the amnion. *amn.* amnion; *amn. f.* fold of the amnion; *amn. cav.* cavity of the amnion; *blast.* blastoderm covering the yolk; *ect.* ectoderm; *end.* endoderm; *gast,* invagination of ventral plate; *ser.* serosa; *vent. pl.* ventral plate; *yk.* yolk. (After Korschelt and Heider.)

Each of the two mesoderm bands becomes divided transversely into a series of segments, which become hollow, and then become closely applied to one another, eventually coalescing, so that the cavities of all of them unite to form the body cavity of the adult, the outer walls becoming applied to the ectoderm to form a *somatopleure,* or lamina consisting of somatic layer of mesoderm and of ectoderm; the inner becoming applied to the endoderm to form a *splanchnopleure,* or lamina consisting of splanchnic layer of mesoderm and of endoderm.

The ventral plate gradually grows upwards at the sides, and eventually its borders meet and unite along the dorsal middle line, the entire yolk thus becoming enclosed by it.

The ventral nerve-chain is developed from a groove of the ectoderm, bounded by thickenings which become detached from the surface ectoderm, and form the chain of ganglia. The brain is developed from a pair of ectodermal thickenings. That part which is developed in the prostomial region — the *archi-cerebrum*—becomes united with that developed in the following two segments to form the completed brain or *syn-cerebrum.*

It can hardly be said that the Cockroach undergoes a metamorphosis, the young Insect when it escapes from the egg differing from the adult only in its smaller size, and in the absence of wings, which grow out subsequently from the terga of the meso- and meta-thorax. Between its hatching and its complete development the young Cockroach undergoes no fewer than seven "moults" or changes of skin, in which all the chitinous parts become thrown off and renewed.

2. DISTINCTIVE CHARACTERS AND CLASSIFICATION.

The Insecta are air-breathing Arthropoda, in which the body consists of three well-marked regions—head, thorax, and abdomen; the head devoid of external segmentation, bearing compound eyes, a pair of antennæ situated on the prostomium, but post-oral in origin, mandibles, and two pairs of maxillæ; the thorax of three segments each bearing a pair of legs, and the second and third usually wings; the abdomen composed of a varying number of segments (7——11), which are devoid of appendages in the adult condition. A liver is absent, but salivary glands are always present. There is an elongated tubular heart, divided into eight chambers, situated in the abdomen; the vessels themselves are not highly developed. The Insecta are, almost without exception, air-breathers, and the organs of respiration take the form of branching tubes, the tracheæ, by means of which air is conveyed to all parts of the body. The nervous system and sense-organs are highly developed. The excretory organs are a number of blind tubes, the Malpighian tubes, appended to the intestine. The sexes are separate; development is sometimes direct, more usually complicated by a metamorphosis.

ORDER 1.—APTERA (*Collembola and Thysanura*).

Insecta in which the wings are absent, and the surface is covered either with scales or hairs. Eyes are sometimes absent; sometimes there are groups of ocelli; sometimes compound eyes. The segments of the thorax are not fused together. Some progress by running

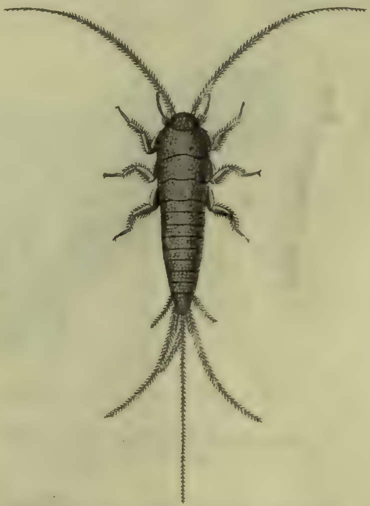


FIG. 467.—**Lepisma.** (After Guèrin Percheron.)

others by springing movements effected by a special springing apparatus on the abdomen. Some have elongated, many-jointed filaments or cerci at the extremity of the abdomen. Development is direct.

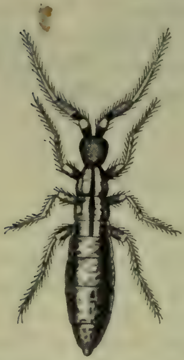


Fig. 468.—**Podura.** (After Guèrin and Percheron.)

This order includes the Spring-tails (*Podura*, Fig. 468), and Silver-fish (*Lepisma*, Fig. 467).

ORDER 2.—ORTHOPTERA.

Insects in which there are two pairs of wings, of which, in most cases, the anterior pair are hard and tough, and the posterior pair delicate and transparent. The parts of the mouth are masticatory. The prothorax is not united with the other segments of the thorax. Development is direct, or there is a gradual and incomplete metamorphosis.

This order includes Earwigs, Cockroaches, Stick- and Leaf-insects, Grasshoppers and Locusts (Fig. 469).

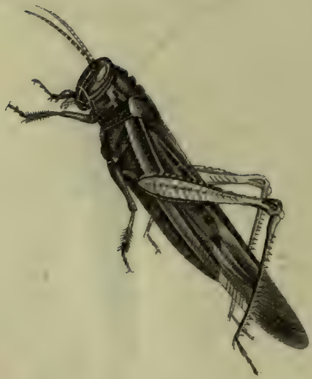


Fig. 469.—**Locusta.** (From Cuvier's *Animal Kingdom.*)

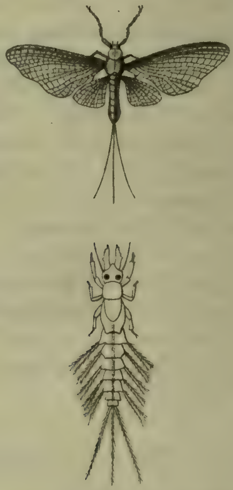


Fig. 470.—**Ephemera** (May-fly) and larva. (After Guèrin and Percheron.)

ORDER 3.—NEUROPTERA.

Insects with two pairs of netted membranous wings. The parts of the mouth are adapted for biting. The prothorax is free from the other segments of the thorax. The metamorphosis is sometimes complete, sometimes incomplete.

This order includes Termites ("White Ants"), May-flies (Fig. 470), Dragon-flies, Ant-lions, Caddis-flies.

ORDER 4.—HEMIPTERA.

Insects in which wings are usually present, sometimes similar, sometimes dissimilar, and in which there is a jointed suctorial rostrum formed from the labium, enclosing the jaws in the form of piercing organs. The prothorax is free from the other segments of the thorax. The metamorphosis is incomplete.

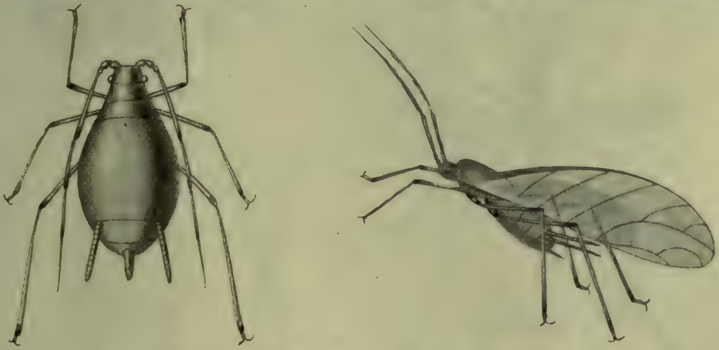


FIG. 471.—**Aphis rosæ** and larva. (From Cuvier's *Animal Kingdom*.)

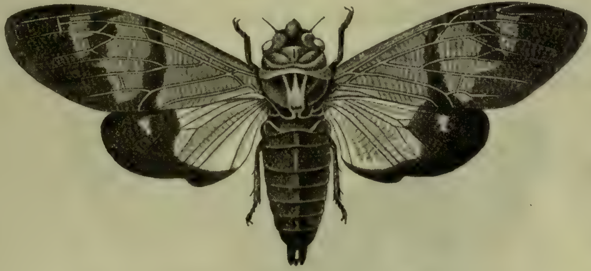


FIG. 472.—**Cicada.** (After Guérin and Percheron.)

This order includes Bugs, Water-bugs, Lice, Scale-insects, Plant-lice (Fig. 471), Cicadas (Fig. 472).

ORDER 5.—DIPTERA.

Insects provided (except in the Fleas) with a single pair of transparent membranous wings, representing the anterior pair of other orders. The mouth parts are adapted for piercing and sucking. The prothorax is fused with the other segments of the thorax. There is a complete metamorphosis.

This order includes Fleas, Gnats and Mosquitoes (Fig. 473), House-flies and Blow-flies, Bot-flies (Fig. 474), Crane-flies, and "Daddy-long-legs."

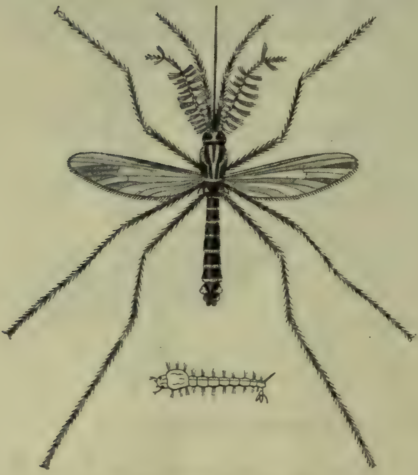


Fig. 473.—**Pulex** (mosquito) and larva. (After Guèrin and Percheron.)

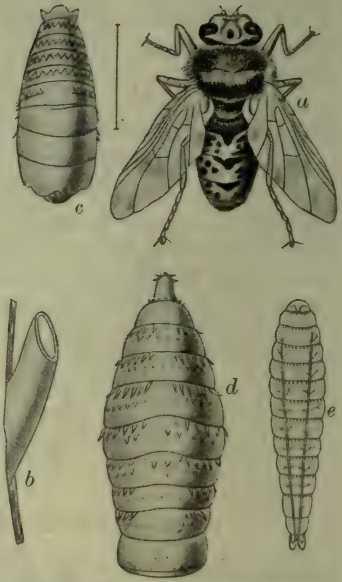


Fig. 474.—Bot-fly of the horse (**Gastrophilus equi**). *a*, mature insect; *b*, egg attached to a hair; *c*, *d*, and *e*, stages in the larval development. (After Brehm.)

ORDER 6.—LEPIDOPTERA.

Insects with both pairs of wings well developed and covered with scales (modified hairs). The maxillæ are modified to form

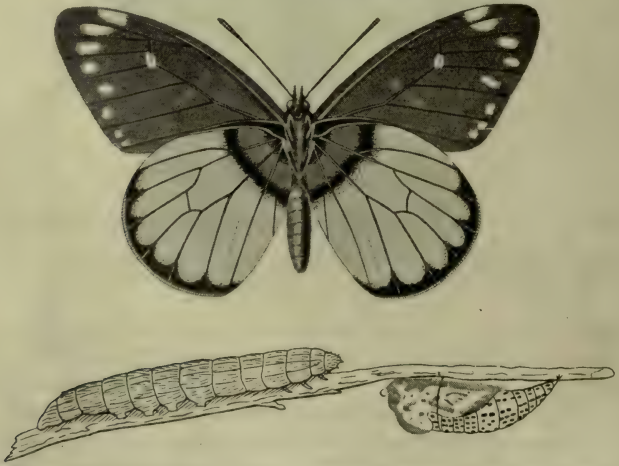


Fig. 475.—Butterfly (**Pieris**), with caterpillar and chrysalis stages. (After Guèrin and Percheron.)

an elongated sucking tube, which is rolled up spirally; the other parts of the mouth are rudimentary, with the exception of the labial palpi. The prothorax is fused with the mesothorax. The metamorphosis is complete.

This order includes Butterflies (Fig. 475) and Moths.

ORDER 7.—COLEOPTERA.

Insects in which the anterior pair of wings take the form of hard horny wing-cases, or *elytra*, which, when at rest, are folded up along the back and cover over the folded-up membranous posterior wings. The prothorax is movable on the other segments. The jaws are fully developed, and adapted for biting and chewing. The metamorphosis is complete.

This order includes the true Beetles (Fig. 476).

ORDER 8.—HYMENOPTERA.

Insects in which both pairs of wings are present and membranous. The mouth parts are adapted both for biting and licking. The prothorax is united with the other segments of the thorax. There is a complete metamorphosis.

Included in this order are Bees (Fig. 493) and Wasps, Ants (Fig. 494), Gall-flies, Ichneumons.

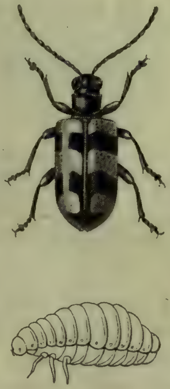


FIG. 476.—Beetle (**Crioceris**) with larva. (After Guèrin and Percheron.

Systematic Position of the Example.

The Cockroach is a member of the order *Orthoptera* and of the sub-order *Orthoptera genuina*, which comprises all the members of the order with the exception of the aberrant group of the Ear-wigs (sub-order *Dermaptera*). Of the *Orthoptera genuina* there are three divisions, the *Cursoria*, to which the Cockroaches belong; the *Gressoria*, comprising the *Mantidæ* and *Phasmidæ*, or Stick- and Leaf-insects and their allies; and the *Saltatoria*, including the Grasshoppers, Locusts, and Crickets. The division *Cursoria* comprises the single family of the Cockroaches (*Blattidæ*), characterised by the deflexed head, the flat oval body, the large prothoracic tergum, the long antennæ, the three pairs of legs similar, with large coxæ entirely covering the sternal surface of the thorax, the five-jointed tarsi, and the presence of anal cerci. Periplaneta belongs to a section of the family distinguished from the rest by the femora being spiny underneath, and by the valvular character of the last sternum in the female.

3. General Organisation.

The **exoskeleton** of the Insecta (Fig. 477) consists of a chitinous cuticle (*cut.*), which varies in hardness and thickness in different Insects, and in different parts of the body of the same Insect, but is very rarely calcified. Frequently it presents hexagonal markings; sometimes it is perforated by numerous pores; sometimes it is covered with thin scales; in many cases it is developed into *tactile hairs* or *setæ*, which may be scattered over the body, or may be located only on certain of the appendages—the antennæ, the maxillary and labial palpi, and the tarsi of the legs. In some *glands* are present in the integument—odoriferous, honey-secreting, or wax-forming glands; poison glands are present in connection with an abdominal sting in certain insects; spinning glands, forming a silky material, are confined to the larvæ.

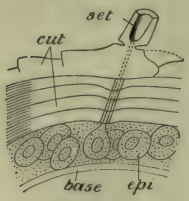


Fig. 477.—Section through the integument of an **Insect**. *base.* basement membrane; *cut.* layers of the cuticle; *epi.* epidermis; *set.* seta. (After Miall and Denny.)

The **head** presents no trace of segmentation, but the history of its development indicates that it may be looked upon as composed of a prostomium and about five segments, intimately united together. It varies a good deal in shape, but always presents the regions that have already been described in the case of the Cockroach. Sometimes the head is sunk within the anterior part of the thorax; sometimes it is free from the latter; and there may be, as in the Cockroach, a short narrow region or *neck*, covered with soft skin, supported only by isolated *cervical sclerites*, intervening between the two on the ventral aspect.

The three segments of the **thorax**—*pro-*, *meso-*, and *meta-thorax*—are usually firmly united together; but in some Insects the prothorax is movable upon the other segments: it is usually the smallest of the three segments. In each the exoskeleton consists of *dorsal* or *tergal* and *ventral* or *sternal* elements, sometimes separate from one another laterally, sometimes united together in such a way as to form complete rings round the segments. Laterally projecting processes or *pleura* are sometimes developed.

The **abdomen** contains from seven to eleven segments, enclosed in tergal and sternal shields. In some Insects the first abdominal segment is united with the thorax so as to appear to belong to the latter region.

The **appendages of the head** are four pairs, as in the Cockroach; but a considerable variation is observable in the different orders, especially as regards the jaws. In a few eyes are absent. Most have large compound or faceted eyes, and many have simple eyes or ocelli as well; in a few groups the latter are alone present.

The antennæ vary in shape in different groups, and sometimes even in the sexes of the same species. They are sometimes tapering, sometimes moniliform, sometimes club-shaped, sometimes pectinate, sometimes plume-like. In addition to functioning as tactile appendages they bear the olfactory setæ. The mandibles are always one-jointed, and differ from those of the Crustacea in never being provided with a palp. An arrangement of the mouth-parts adapted for biting or chewing has already been described in the case of the Cockroach. This type is characteristic of the order Orthoptera, to which the Cockroach belongs, and a very similar type characterises the Coleoptera. In the Hymenoptera (Fig. 478) the mouth parts are adapted both for biting and for licking and sucking; the mandibles (*md.*) and maxillæ (*mx*¹.) are sharp and lancet-like, the middle part of the labium is produced into a long median tongue (*ligula*, *li.*) at the sides of which are a pair of accessory tongues or *paraglossæ* (*prg.*). In the Hemiptera there is a proboscis formed from the labium enclosing the stylet-like mandibles and maxillæ. In the Diptera (Fig. 479) the mandibles (*md.*), usually not developed in the males, are biting or piercing organs, while the basal parts of the labium form a proboscis (*mx*².) enclosing a spine or seta (*hp.*), which is a process from the *hypo-pharynx*—a chitinous process on the roof of the mouth, and sometimes stylet-like maxillæ (*mx*¹.). In the Lepidoptera (Fig. 480) the mandibles are aborted in the adult, and the maxillæ are developed into elongated half-tubes, which when applied together form a greatly elongated tube (*sr.*) capable of being coiled up in a spiral manner under the head, the extremity

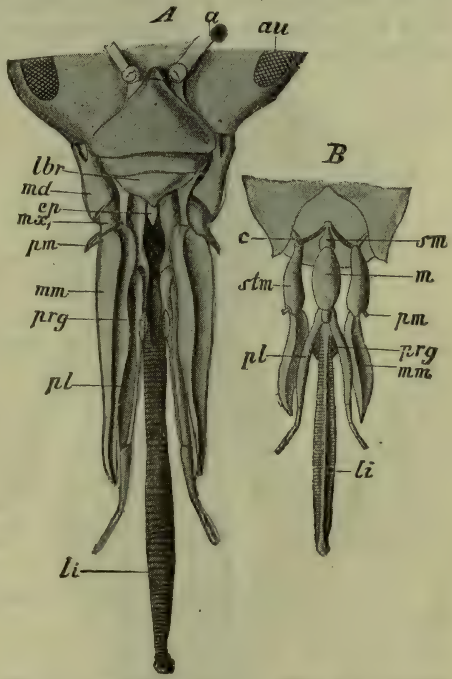


FIG. 478.—A, mouth parts of the **Honey-bee (Apis mellifica)**; B, the two pairs of maxillæ; *au*, eye; *a*, antenna; *c*. cardo; *ep*. epipharynx; *lbr*. labrum; *li*. ligula; *m*. mentum; *mm.mx*¹, first pair of maxillæ; *md*. mandible; *pm*, palp of the first pair of maxillæ; *prg*. paraglossa; *sm*. submentum; *stm*. stipes of the first maxillæ. (From Lang.)

provided with hooks or spines for rupturing the nectaries of flowers.

Appendages of the thorax.—Each of the segments of the thorax bears a pair of five-jointed legs; the terminal section or tarsus being made up of a number of short segments and ending in a pair of claws, often with an adhesive pad or sucking disc between them. In accordance with differences in the uses to which they are put, considerable differences are observable in the form of the legs in different groups of Insects. In most they are adapted for walking, and are long and slender; in some they are expanded to enable them to act as swimming paddles; in some the first pair are prehensile, and develop a sub-chelate extremity; in others again the legs, or the first pair of them, are stout and adapted for burrowing. In addition to the legs the meso- and meta-thorax may each bear a pair of *wings*. The wings are thin transparent expansions of the integument of the body, supported by a system of branching ribs or *nervures* consisting of chitinous material with branches of the tracheæ, nerves, and tubular diverticula of the body cavity. In most Lepidoptera the wings are opaque, owing to their being covered with numerous overlapping microscopic scales, to which the various colours of the wing are

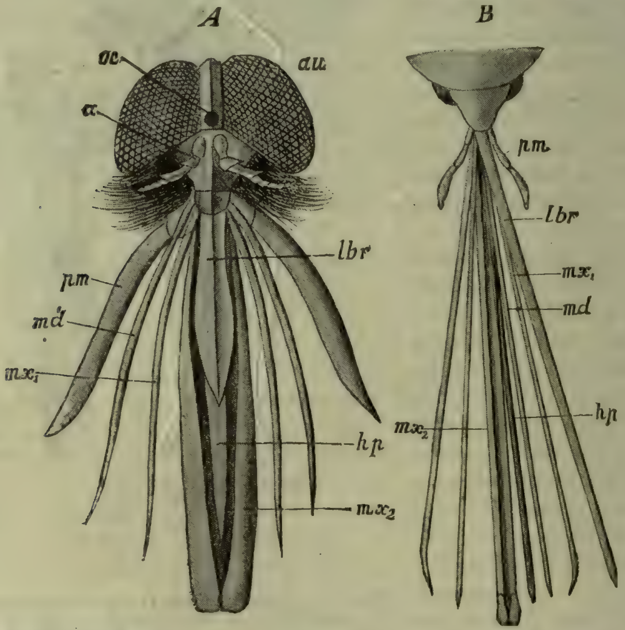


FIG. 479.—Mouth parts of the Diptera. A, of **Tabanus**; B, of **Culex**. Lettering as in preceding figure; *oc.* ocellus. (From Lang.)

due. In some Insects—*e.g.* Beetles and Orthoptera—the posterior wings alone are delicate and membranous, the anterior pair being converted into hard or tough cases—the *elytra*—which, when folded up cover over and protect the delicate posterior wings. In some Beetles the elytra are permanently united together along the back of the Insect. In some Insects (Bugs) the anterior wings are chitinous at the bases only. In the Diptera the anterior wings alone are developed, the posterior being represented by vestiges—the *halteres* or balancers. In the Strepsiptera, or Bee-parasites, an aberrant group of Neuroptera, on the other hand, it is the anterior pair that are rudimentary. In some Insects (Spring-tails, Lice, Fleas) wings are entirely absent in all stages. In others again they are present in one sex—usually the male—and absent in the other. In the Aptera there is no vestige whatever of wings at any stage, and this, taken in connection with the simplicity of the structure in other respects, seems to indicate that in these Insects we have to do with the descendants of a primitive group in which wings had not yet become developed.

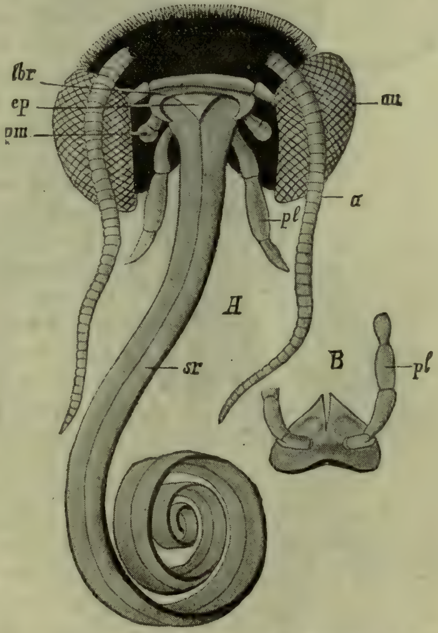


FIG. 480.—Mouth parts of the **Lepidoptera**. B, the second maxillæ. Lettering as in preceding figures. *pl.* labial palp; *pm.* palp of the anterior maxillæ; *sr*, sucking tube. (From Lang.)

The segments of the **abdomen** are entirely devoid of paired appendages in the adult condition (except in the Thysanura), though vestiges of them may be present in the young at an early stage. Each segment is enclosed in dorsal *tergal* and ventral *sternal* plates, which usually remain separate laterally, but may be united. At the extremity of the abdomen there are frequently appendages which are perhaps of the nature of limbs, having the function of stings, ovipositors, and genital processes.

Hæmocœle.—The cavity intervening in an Insect between the body wall and the various internal organs does not correspond as already explained (p. 576) to the cœlome of other groups; but is

REESE LIBRARY OF THE

found when we study its mode of development, to be a *hæmocœle*—an extended part of the blood-vascular system. The cœlome is apparently represented only by the lumen of the reproductive organs.

A **fat body** is always present, either in the larval condition or throughout life. It consists of a mass of polygonal cells bounding the hæmocœle externally. When young the cells are nucleated and possess a protoplasmic body. At a later stage a fluid loaded with minute granules takes the place of the protoplasm, and crystals containing uric acid are formed; these crystals afterwards become absorbed; their appearance and subsequent absorption would seem to point to the probability that the fat body is concerned in the separating out of nitrogenous waste matters, subsequently to reach the exterior through the Malpighian tubes.

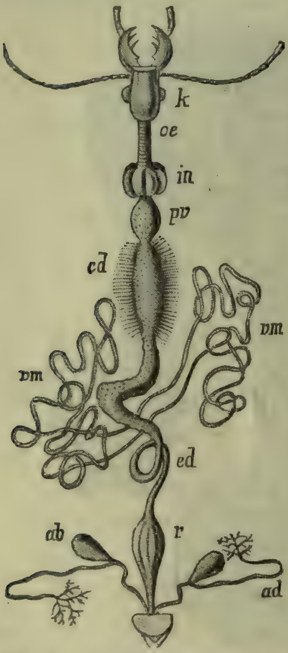


FIG. 481.—Digestive apparatus of a a Beetle (**Carabus auratus**). *ad*, anal glands; *ab*, their muscular appendages; *cd*, chylific ventricle; *ed*, hind gut; *in*, crop; *k*, head with mouth parts; *œ.* œsophagus; *pv.* proventriculus; *vm.* Malpighian tubes. (From Lang, after Dufour.)

Digestive system.—Some Insects do not feed in the adult condition, and when this is the case the mouth may be absent, as for example is the case in the Day-flies (*Ephemeridæ*). When a mouth is developed, as it is in the vast majority of Insects, it is situated on the lower aspect of the head, bounded in front by the labrum, and behind by the labium. It leads into the buccal cavity, into which open the ducts of a pair of *salivary glands*, each of which often has associated with it a thin-walled sac or *salivary receptacle*. Also in the neighbourhood of the mouth open, in such larval Insects as spin a cocoon, the ducts of a pair of *spinning glands*. A projection of the roof of the mouth cavity (*epipharynx*) is present in some Insects; in others it is replaced by a projection from the floor, the *hypopharynx* or *lingua*.

The alimentary canal is nearly always considerably longer than the body: it is longer in vegetable-feeding than in carnivorous forms. The mouth leads into a long, narrow passage—the *œsophagus* (*œ.*) (Figs. 481 and 482)—which dilates behind into a *crop* (*in.*) for the storage of food. The place of this in sucking Insects is taken by a stalked sac, usually termed the *sucking stomach*. The essential processes of digestion are carried on in an elongated chamber with glandular walls—the *chyle stomach* or *chylific ventricle* (*cd*)—which may be divided into several parts. Sometimes between the crop and chyle stomach is intercalated a muscular-walled chamber, frequently containing chitinous teeth, the *proventriculus* or *gizzard* (*pr.*). Appended to the chylific ventricle at its anterior end are, in many Insects, a number of tubular blind pouches, the *hepatic cœca.* At its junction with the small intestine, or further back, there open a number (from 2 to over 100) of narrow tubular appendages, the *Malpighian tubes* (*vm.*), which are the organs of renal excretion. In the cases in which the development of the alimentary canal has been traced, it has been found that the Malpighian tubes mark the point where the mesenteron passes into the proctodæum, and it is assumed that this holds good generally. The lumen of the tubes is sometimes filled up with cells. In some insects, the Malpighian tubes open into a paired or unpaired sac—the *urinary bladder.* The intestine is usually elongated, its posterior portion (*ed.*) is dilated to form a wide *rectum* (*r.*), which opens on the exterior by an anal aperture situated on the ventral side of the last segment of the abdomen. *Anal glands* (*ad.*), producing an odoriferous secretion, often open into the rectum.

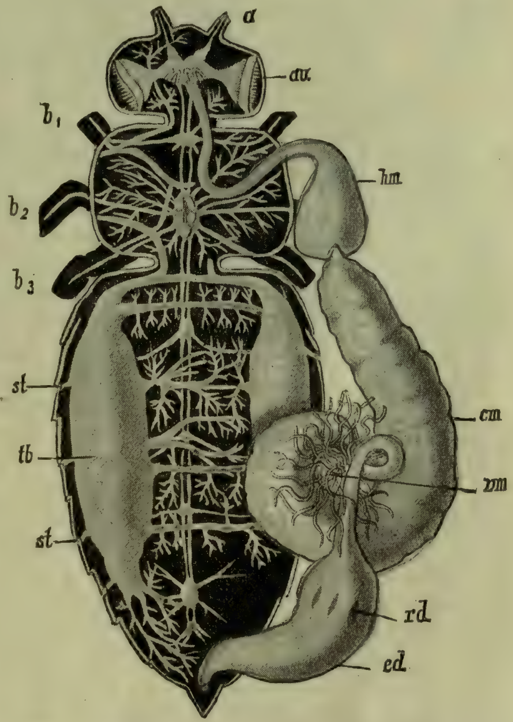


FIG. 482.—Nervous, tracheal and digestive systems of the **Honey-bee.** *a.* antenna; *au*, compound eye; b_1, b_2, b_3, the three pairs of legs; *cm*, chylific ventricle; *ed*, hind-gut; *hm*, honey stomach (crop); *rd*, rectal glands; *st.* stigmata; *tb*, vesicle of tracheal system; *vm*, malpighian vessels. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy.*)

The **tracheal system** (Fig. 482) communicates with the exterior through a number of apertures—the *stigmata* (*st.*)—which vary in the details of their arrangement in the different orders.

They are always protected against the entry of foreign particles by some means—either by being surrounded by special bundles of hairs, or by being closed in by a special sieve-like membrane. In all cases they are capable of being closed by muscular action. In some Insects, mainly those adapted for active flight, such as the Hymenoptera, the tracheal system is dilated in certain parts of the body to form comparatively large *air sacs* or *air reservoirs* (*tb.*). In the aquatic larvæ of some Insects there is a series of soft external, simple or divided, processes—the *tracheal gills* (Figs. 483)—attached to the abdominal segments, and richly supplied with tracheæ, which have no communication with the exterior.

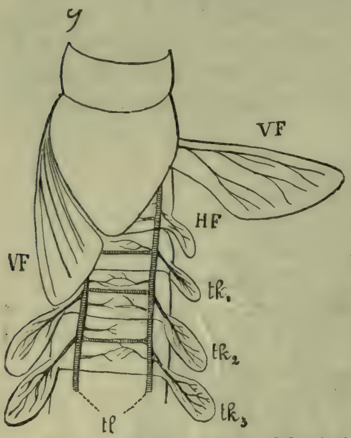


FIG. 483.—Thorax and anterior abdominal segments of a larval **Ephemerid** with tracheal gills. *HF*, hind wings; tr^1, tr^2, tr^3, tracheal gills; *tl*, tracheal longitudinal trunks; *VF*, fore wings. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*.)

The **blood-vascular** system is, in comparison with the other systems of organs, not very highly developed, the need of an elaborate system of vessels being greatly diminished by the way in which all the tissues and organs are supplied with oxygen through the system of tracheæ. The blood is colourless or faintly yellowish or greenish, and contains colourless corpuscles. A contractile *dorsal vessel* or *heart* (Fig. 484) extends through the abdomen, immediately below the terga. Its cavity is divided internally into a series usually of eight chambers by a system of valves. In its walls are a series of slits or *ostia*, by which a communication is effected between the internal cavity and a surrounding *pericardial sinus*. In front the heart gives origin to a main vessel, or *aorta* (*a*), by means of which the blood is conveyed throughout the body to enter a system of sinuses in free communication with the general body cavity, from the various parts of which it finds its way back to the pericardial sinus.

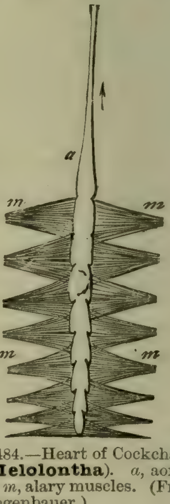


FIG. 484.—Heart of Cockchafer (**Melolontha**). *a*, aorta; *m*, *m*, alary muscles. (From Gegenbauer.)

The **nervous system** (Figs. 482 and 485) is on the same general plan as in the Crustacea. There is a double *supra-œsophageal* *ganglion* or *brain*, a *sub-œsophageal ganglion*, also double, and a series of *thoracic* and *abdominal pairs of ganglia*, which are closely united together in the middle line. The brain is relatively large in the higher Insects, and is divided into several lobes. It gives off nerves to the antennæ and ocelli and the labrum, and on each side it gives off a large lobe—the *optic ganglion*—on which the compound eye rests. A pair of *œsophageal connectives* pass backwards on either side of the mouth from the brain to the sub-œsophageal ganglia. These connectives are very short, and, as a consequence, the brain and sub-œsophageal ganglia are closely approximated. From the latter there originate nerves to the appendages of the mouth—the mandibles and two pairs of maxillæ. There are sometimes three pairs of thoracic, and as many as eight of abdominal ganglia in the adult insect; but in many cases there is a greater or less degree of concentration of the ventral ganglionic chain (Fig. 485), and in some of the Diptera this reaches such an extreme that all the ventral ganglia, with the exception of the sub-œsophageal, are united into one continuous elongate mass. The Insects, like the higher Crustacea, possess a *visceral* or *sympathetic* nervous system, connected with the œsophageal connectives and passing backwards on the œsophagus and crop.

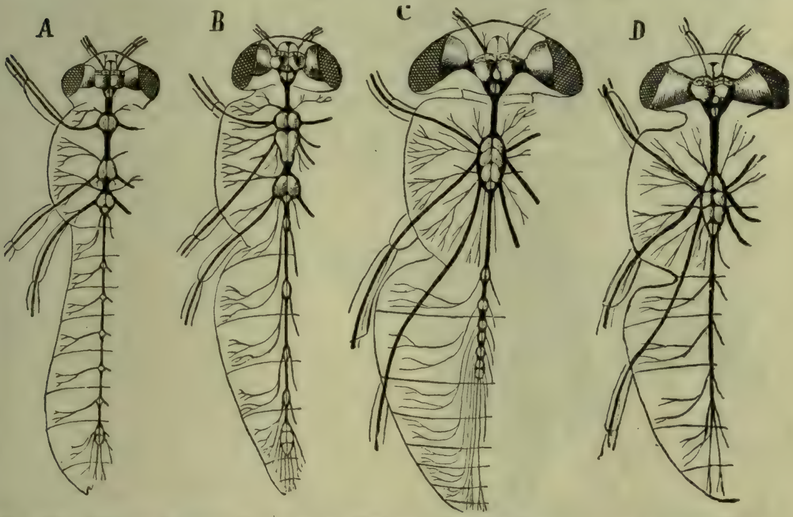


FIG. 485.—Nervous systems of four species of Diptera to illustrate various degrees of concentration. A, non-concentrated nervous system of **Chironomus plumosus** with three thoracic, and six abdominal ganglia; B, nervous system of **Empis stercorea** with two thoracic and five abdominal; C, nervous system of **Tabanus bovinus**, with one thoracic ganglion and with the abdominal ganglia closely approximated; D, nervous system of **Sarcophaga carnaria,** with all the ganglia of the ventral chain united together with the exception of the sub-œsophageal. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*.)

The most highly-developed **organs of special sense** are the large compound *eyes*. The surface of the compound eye is marked out, as in the case of the Crayfish, into a great number of minute hexagonal facets, each of which represents one of the elements (*ommatidia*) of the eye. Of these there may be as many as 28,000 (dragon-fly). When the eye is examined in section, each *ommatidium* is found to consist of a *cornea-lens*, the outer surface of which forms the facet, a *crystalline cone*, and a *rhabdome*. The crystalline cone is not always developed, its place being taken in the eyes of some Insects by four *crystal cells*. The rhabdome is an elongated rod. Beneath the rhabdomes is a *fenestrate membrane*, beneath which again is a dense plexus of nerve-fibres. Nerve-fibres pass through the fenestrate membrane and terminate in a delicate sheath which incloses each rhabdome, the sheath, together with the nerves that end in it, constituting the *retinula*. Pigment surrounds the crystalline cones and retinulæ.

The *ocelli*, or simple eyes (Fig. 486), consist of a bi-convex transparent thickening of the cuticle—the *lens*—and beneath it of a group of specially modified epidermal cells. Of these, some, situated beneath the lens, form a transparent mass, the *vitreous body*; another set of elongated cells being arranged to form the *retina*.

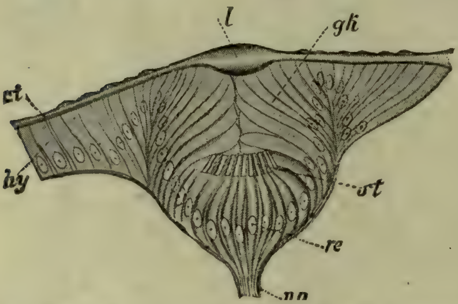


FIG. 486.—Section through the ocellus of a young **Dytiscus** larva; *ct.* cuticle; *gk*, cells of the vitreous body; *hy*, epidermis; *l*, cuticular lens; *no*, optic nerve; *re*, retinal cells; *st*, rods. (From Lang, after Grenacher.)

The antennæ and palpi are the *organs of touch*, and these appendages seem to be also the seat of the *olfactory sense*. A number of minute processes sometimes sunk in pits, and each having a special nerve-plate connected with it, are regarded as being specially concerned with this sense, and similar processes or pits on the maxillæ and the epipharynx, are perhaps connected with the *sense of taste*.

Peculiar nerve-endings, supposed to be *auditory*, have been found in the most various parts of the body. Each consists of a ganglion-cell (Fig. 487, *gz.*) giving off a process which is inclosed in an elongated tube, and which ends externally in a slender rod (*sc.*). Groups of these are associated together to form the auditory organ.

In certain Insects—the Fireflies and Glowworms—belonging to the order Coleoptera, there occur organs—the **luminous organs**—for the production of light.

Sounds are emitted by many Insects, and are produced by a variety of different means. Often the sound is the result of the rubbing together of opposed rough surfaces of the integument. The chirp of the Grasshopper, for example, is produced by the rubbing of the femur of the last pair of legs over a series of ridges in the anterior wing, and that of the Locust by the rubbing against one another of the roughened basal parts of the first pair of wings. In other cases the sound results from the rapid vibratory movement of the wings; this is the case with the buzzing of many Diptera and Hymenoptera. Again, the humming sounds characteristic of many of the last-named order are produced partly by the vibrations of the wings in flight, partly by the vibration of leaf-like appendages in the tracheæ, set in motion by strong expiratory currents of air. The loud shrill note of the Cicada is produced by the rapidly recurring contractions of the fibres of a muscle inserted into a stiff chitinous membrane, the result being a series of crackling sounds, which follow one another so rapidly as to give rise to a continuous note.

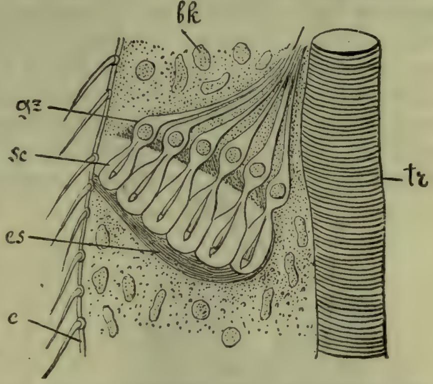


FIG. 487.—Chordotonal (auditory) organ in the tibia of **Isopteryx apicalis.** *bk*, blood corpuscles ; *c*, integument ; *es*, terminal fibrous strands attached to the integument ; *gz*, nerve cells ; *sc*. terminal rods ; *tr*. trachea. (From Lang, after v. Graber.)

Reproductive organs.—The sexes are always separate in Insects, as in Arthropoda in general; and the males and females are very commonly distinguishable from one another by various modifications of form and of coloration. There are two ovaries each of which consists of a greater or smaller number of narrow tubes or *ovarioles ;* in each of these the ova are arranged in a single row: the early stages in their formation being situated at the anterior end, the more mature ova towards the posterior extremity. Each group of ovarian tubes opens into a lateral oviduct, and the two lateral oviducts, right and left (Fig. 488. *A*, *od.*), unite behind to form a median oviduct or vagina (*vg.*), which opens on the second last segment of the abdomen. Connected with this median oviduct, or opening close to it, are *receptacula seminis* (*rs.*) and *colleterial* or *cement glands* (*sd.*). Usually there is a copulatory sac, or *bursa copulatrix* (*nva.*). In the male the paired testes (*B*, *t.*) consists each of one or more long narrow tubes, which, when more than one are present, unite into a *vas deferens* (*B*, *vd.*), the two vasa deferentia uniting to form a median ejaculatory duct. A vesicula seminalis is appended to each vas deferens or to the ejaculatory duct. Accessory glands, opening into the vas deferens or the ejaculatory duct, secrete cementing material for uniting the sperms into masses, the *spermatophores.* In most instances the eggs are laid shortly after their fertilisation, only a few forms, such as the *Aphides* or Plant-lice, many Diptera, and some Coleoptera, being viviparous. Some Insects, such as the Aphides and Bees and Wasps, as well as some Lepidoptera and Neuroptera, present us with the unusual phenomenon of parthenogenesis; *i.e.* ova are formed, as in ordinary female insects, in organs corresponding to the ovary of the latter, and these are developed without fertilisation. In the case of the Aphides, an autumn generation of completely developed males and females is followed by a spring generation consisting entirely of females; these are both parthenogenetic and viviparous. In the Bees, the workers (imperfectly developed females) occasionally produce ova which, without fertilisation, develop into drones (males). In one or two groups, including the Scale-Insects (*Coccidæ*) and Gall-Insects (*Cynipidæ*), males are never developed, so that reproduction is exclusively parthenogenetic. *Pædogenesis* accompanies parthenogenesis in certain Diptera; *i.e.* the *larvæ* produce ova and embryos without impregnation.

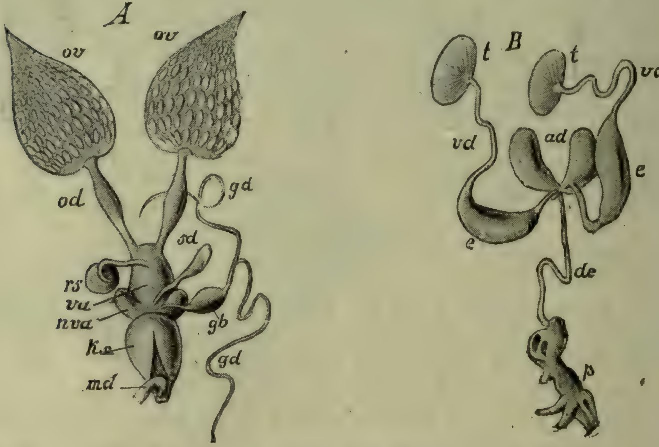


FIG. 488.—*A*, female; *B*, male sexual apparatus of the **Honey-bee**; *ad*, accessory glands; *de*, common ejaculatory duct; *gd*, poison glands; *gb*, poison vesicle; *ks*, bulb of the stinging apparatus; *md*, rectum, twisted back and cut off; *nva*, accessory sac of the vagina (bursa copulatrix); *od*, oviduct; *p*. penis; *rs*. receptaculum seminis; *sd*, colleterial gland; *t*. testes; *vg*. vagina; *vd*, sperm ducts. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy.*)

The **eggs** when laid are protected from injury by a number of methods; they may be firmly fixed to the substratum, buried in the earth, or laid in the interior of certain plants or even of animals. The deposition of the eggs, by means of ovipositors, in the leaves or other parts of plants gives rise to swellings—the so-called *galls*, in the interior of which the young Insects live. In the case of many Insects the eggs are enclosed in a cocoon; in others they are enclosed in gelatinous or waxy material. The eggs are, for the most part, of relatively considerable size. In form they vary, but the long oval prevails in most instances. The ripe egg is enclosed in two egg-membranes—an inner, the *vitelline membrane*, produced by the egg itself, and an outer, the *chorion*, formed from the follicle cells. The chorion, which usually exhibits a more or less elaborate pattern, has one or more apertures or micropyles for the entry of the sperm. The contents are distinguishable into two layers—a superficial, consisting of protoplasm, and a central, of nutrient yolk.

Development.—The segmentation is usually of a type already referred to (p. 551) as very common among the Crustacea, viz., the *superficial* segmentation. The actual segmentation (Fig. 489) has only been observed in the case of certain Insects with very little yolk; but there can be very little doubt that in ordinary forms with abundant yolk the process is in essence the same. The segmentation-nucleus, originally situated near the middle of the ovum, divides into a number of nuclei, and most of these migrate towards the surface, and arrange themselves in the form of a sphere almost parallel with the latter; eventually they reach the surface and coalesce with the peripheral protoplasm, which then becomes divided into cell-areas corresponding with the nuclei.

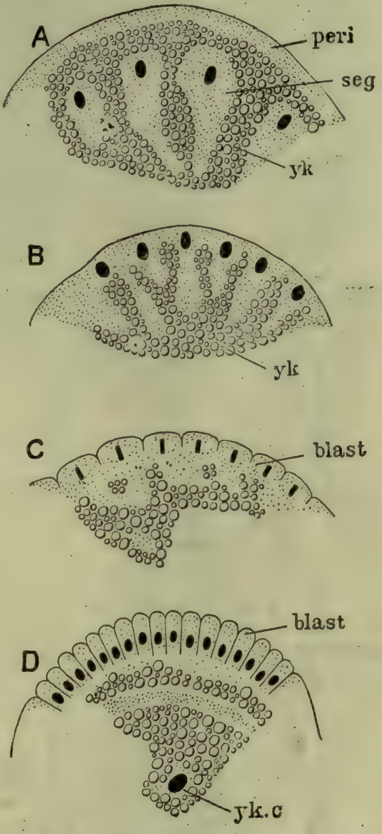


FIG. 489.—A—D, successive stages in the segmentation of the ovum of an **Insect**; *blast.* blastoderm; *peri.* peripheral protoplasm; *seg.* segmentation cells; *yk.* yolk; *ykc.* yolk-cells. (From Korschelt and Heider, after Blochmann.)

The layer of cells thus formed constitutes the blastoderm. This thickens along one side to form the *ventral plate*, as already described in the case of the Cockroach (p. 581), and the changes which this structure undergoes, together with the mode of formation of the appendages, are similar in most members of the class. The same holds good of the formation of the amnion and the development of the endoderm. In some cases there is developed between the serosa and the true amnion a space filled with yolk, and the ventral plate appears sunk within the yolk. The nervous system is developed from the ectoderm in the manner indicated in the account of the development of the Cockroach (p. 582). The tracheal system is derived from a series of pairs of segmentally arranged ectodermal involutions (Fig. 492, *st.*)

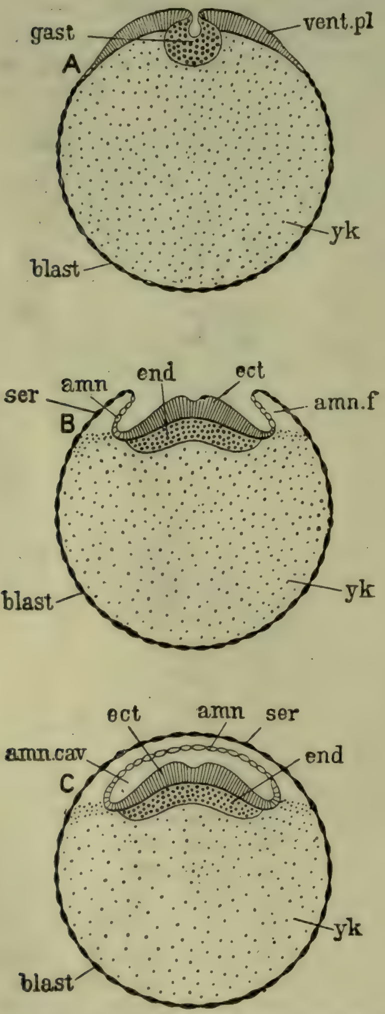


FIG. 490.—A—C, transverse sections through the developing ovum of an **Insect** at successive stages to show the mode of development of the germinal layers and of the amnion. *amn.* amnion; *amn. f.* fold of the amnion; *amn. cav.* cavity of the amnion; *blast.* blastoderm covering the yolk; *ect.* ectoderm; *end.* endoderm; *gast,* invagination of ventral plate; *ser.* serosa; *vent. pl.* ventral plate; *yk.* yolk. (After Korschelt and Heider.)

Metamorphosis.—In some instances the young Insect, when it escapes from the egg-membranes, has exactly the form of the parent, except that, as a rule, the wings have not yet grown. But in most cases there is a metamorphosis. In some this is comparatively slight and gradual, the adult Insect differing from the larva only in comparatively unimportant points, and the segments and appendages of the latter becoming directly converted into those of the former. Such a metamorphosis, in which there is no quiescent stage, is said to be *incomplete*. The term *complete* is applied to the metamorphosis of the majority of Insects, in which the larva differs so completely from the *imago*, or perfect Insect, in external form, the nature of the appendages, and the internal organisation, that there is need of a quiescent or *pupa*

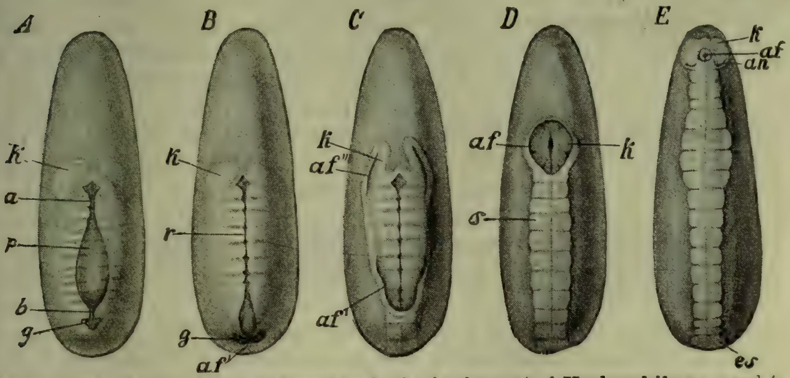


FIG. 491.—A—E, ventral view of five stages in the development of **Hydrophilus**; *a* and *b*, points at which the blastopore first closes; *af*. edge of the amnion fold; *af′*, caudal fold; *af″*, paired head fold; *an*. antenna; *es*, terminal segment; *g*, pit-like invagination to form the rudiment of the amnion cavity; *k*, procephalic lobes; *r*, groove-like medio-ventral invagination; *s*, germinal bands covered by the amnion. (From Lang, after Heider.)

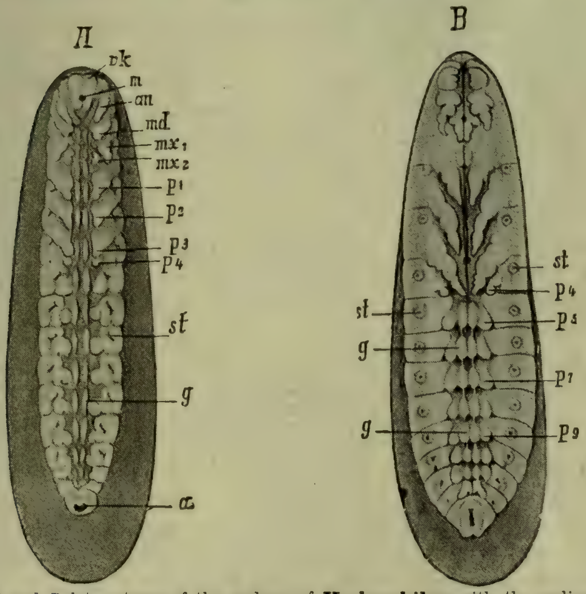


FIG. 492.—*A* and *B*, later stages of the embryo of **Hydrophilus** with the rudiments of the extremities; in *B* the abdominal appendages are visible; *a*. anus; *an*. antenna; *g*, rudiment of the ventral nerve chain; *m*. mouth; *md*. mandible; *mx*^{1}, first maxilla; *mx*^{2}, second maxilla; p_1, p_2, p_3, thoracic egs; p_4, p_5, p_7, p_9, rudiments of the appendages of the first, second, fourth, and sixth abdominal appendages; *st*. stigmata; *vk*, prostomium. (From Lang, after Heider.)

stage, during which the whole animal, or a considerable part of it, undergoes an entire transformation. The metamorphosis is complete in the Diptera, Lepidoptera, Coleoptera, and Hymenoptera, absent or incomplete in the other orders. In the most lowly organised larvæ (many Diptera) the body of the larva or "maggot" is completely worm-like, without any appendages, and without any distinct head. In other cases (Lepidoptera, &c.), there is a distinct head; the three thoracic segments have three pairs of jointed legs, and the abdominal segments short unjointed *prolegs* (Fig. 475). In most instances the larvæ differ widely from the adults in their food and mode of life; very generally the jaws are adapted for biting, even when the mouth of the adult is suctorial. After a longer or shorter period passed in this larval condition, in which it is usually active and very voracious, the young Insect passes into a quiescent or *pupa* condition, during which it remains passive, enclosed in a tough integument, while a more or less complete reconstruction of the organs goes on, resulting in the development of all the parts of the perfect Insect. The development of the new parts takes place from certain patches of cells, the *imaginal discs*, present in the larva.

In the Diptera the larva or maggot is sometimes completely devoid of jaws. In some Diptera, however, the jaws are well developed, and there is a distinct head. After frequent moultings the maggot passes either into a quiescent or pupa stage inclosed in a hard skin, or into the stage of an active *aquatic pupa*, which swims about actively in water and may possess tracheal gills.

In the Lepidoptera the larvæ ("caterpillars") are worm-like, but with well-developed jaws, three pairs of jointed thoracic legs, and a number of unjointed stumpy abdominal legs. Lepidopterous larvæ are often brilliantly coloured, and are very active, and feed with voracity, chiefly on leaves and other succulent parts of plants. Eventually they spin a cocoon of a silky substance, inclosed within which, and covered with a tough skin, they pass through a quiescent or pupa condition—the condition of the *chrysalis* (Fig. 475). From the interior of this the imago subsequently emerges with all the parts of the adult Insect fully formed.

In **mode of life** there is a very considerable difference between different orders and families of Insects. Some are parasites in the strict sense throughout life. This is the case, for instance, in the Strepsiptera (Bee-parasites), the females of which live permanently ensconced between the joints of the abdomen of their hosts. The Lice and Bird-lice are external parasites throughout life; Bugs and Fleas, though not adhering to their hosts, are parasites as regards their diet. Many Insects are parasites in the larval condition, though free in the adult state. This holds good, for example, of the larvæ of the Ichneumons, which develop in the interior of the bodies of other insect-larvæ; also of the larvæ of the Bot-flies

(Fig. 474), which inhabit the alimentary canal of mammalian hosts (Horses, Oxen, Sheep, Rhinoceroses, Tapirs).

In accordance with the high grade of the structure of their various systems of organs, Insects exhibit a correspondingly high degree of functional activity. The quantity of food consumed and assimilated is great in comparison with the bulk of the body, and the energy expended in muscular contractions is of very considerable amount. It is estimated that while the muscular force exerted by a Horse bears a ratio of about 0·7 to its own weight (reckoned as 1) the muscular force of an Insect bears a ratio to its weight of from about 14 to about 23. Insects are also distinguished among the Invertebrata by the keenness of their senses. The sense of sight is, as we should expect from the elaborate character of the optic organs, the most highly developed, many Insects having been shown by experiment to have a keen sense of colour; but a sense of smell, the seat of which is in the antennæ, can be shown to exist in a high degree, and the parts about the mouth bear nerve-endings concerned in a well-developed sense of taste. A sense of hearing does not appear to be universally present, but is well marked in such forms as produce sounds. At the same time Insects are remarkable for the instincts, often leading to results of an elaborate character, which guide them in the pursuit of food and the protection and rearing of their young. Among the insects which are the most highly endowed in this respect are some—the Ants, Bees, Wasps, and Termites—which live together in organised associations or communities, the various individuals composing which are distinguishable into *sexual individuals*, *neuter workers*, and *soldiers* (Figs. 493 and 494), each specially organised for the part which it has to play in the economy of the community.

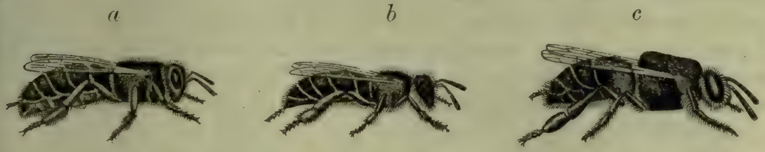


FIG. 493.—Honey-bee (**Apis mellifica**). *a*, queen (perfect female); *b*, worker (imperfect female), and *c*, drone (male). (After Brehm).

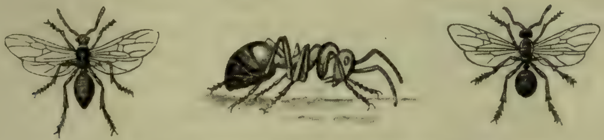


FIG. 494.—Red ant (**Formica rufa**); male, worker, and female.

Distribution in time.—The earliest known fossil remains of Insects have been found in rocks of Silurian age. A good many fossil Insects have been found in the Devonian; but they only become abundant in the Carboniferous. All the palæozoic Insects belong to a group which has been regarded as a distinct order, and has been named the *Palæodictyoptera.* The members of this group are characterised rather by the absence of the special characteristics of any of the existing orders than by any positive features of their own; but different families of the order approximate to a certain extent towards the groups of living Insects. Amongst them, for example, are forms representing the Cockroaches and the Phasmidæ among the Orthoptera; others representing the modern Day-flies among the Neuroptera; others the Coleoptera.

Of the existing orders the Neuroptera, Orthoptera, and Coleoptera are first found in the Trias; the Hemiptera, Diptera, Hymenoptera, and Lepidoptera in the Jurassic.

CLASS V.—ARACHNIDA.

The class *Arachnida*, comprising the Scorpions and Spiders, the Mites and Ticks, the King-crabs, and a number of other families, is a much less homogeneous group than the Insecta, approaching the Crustacea in the variety which it presents in the arrangement of the segments and their appendages. In most members of the class, however, there is an anterior region of the body—the *cephalothorax*—representing both head and thorax, and a posterior part, or *abdomen,* which is typically composed of a number of distinct segments; in some cases cephalothorax and abdomen are amalgamated. There are no antennæ in the adult Arachnid, though rudiments of them have been found in the larvæ of some species. The first pair of appendages of the cephalothorax (probably representing the antennæ of the Crayfish) are the *chelicerœ;* the second are the *pedipalpi*, the representatives of the Crayfish's and Cockroach's mandibles. Behind these are four pairs of legs. The organs of respiration are sometimes tracheæ, similar to those of the Insects, sometimes book-lungs or sacs containing numerous book-leaf-like plates: sometimes leaf-like external appendages or gills.

1. Example of the Class.—The Scorpion (*Euscorpio* or *Buthus*).

Scorpions are inhabitants of warm countries—the largest kinds being found in tropical Africa and America. They are nocturnal animals, remaining in holes and crevices during the day, and issuing forth at night to hunt for their prey, which consists of

Spiders and Insects. These they seize with their pincer-claws and sting to death with their caudal spine, afterwards sucking their juices.

There are a number of different species of Scorpions, divided into several genera, which differ from one another in comparatively unimportant points, so that the following general description will apply almost equally well to any of them.

External features.—A Scorpion (Fig. 495) has a long narrow body, in superficial appearance not unlike that of a Crayfish. There is a small cephalothoracic shield or *carapace*, covering over dorsally a short anterior region or *cephalothorax*. This is followed by a long posterior region or *abdomen*, the terminal part of which in the living animal is habitually carried over the back (Fig. 498), constituting the "tail," at the end of which the sting is placed. The carapace bears a pair of large eyes about its middle, and several pairs of smaller eyes on the antero-lateral margin. The anterior, broader part of the abdomen, which is termed the *præ-abdomen*, consists of seven segments, each of which is enclosed in firm, chitinous, dorsal and ventral plates, or *terga* and *sterna*. The tergum and sternum of each segment are separated from one another laterally by intervals of soft skin, except in the seventh,

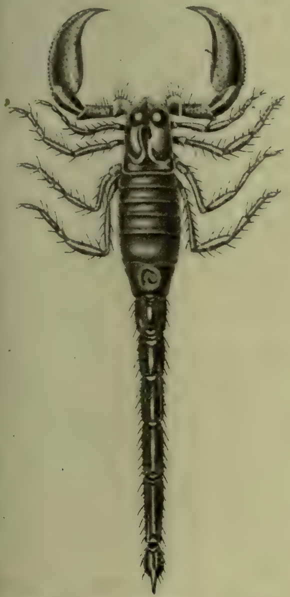


FIG. 495.—**Euscorpio.** (From Cuvier's *Animal Kingdom.*)

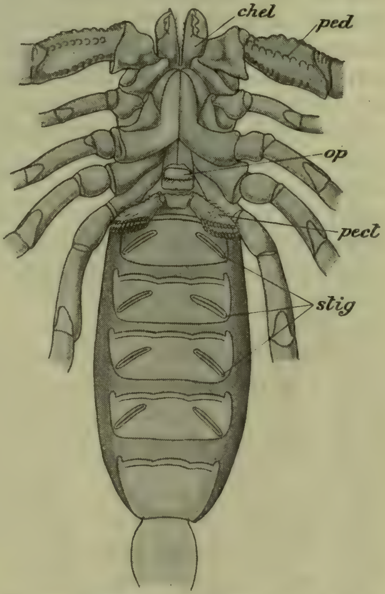


FIG. 496.—**Scorpion.** Ventral surface of the cephalothorax and præ-abdomen. *chel.* chelicerae; *op.* operculum; *pect.* pectines; *ped.* pedipalpi; *stig.* stigmata.

where they are united laterally for a longer or shorter distance. The posterior, narrower part of the abdomen, known as the *post-abdomen*, consists of five segments, each enclosed in a complete investing ring of hard chitinous matter. Articulating with the last segment of the post-abdomen is a terminal appendage, the caudal spine or *sting*, swollen at the base and acutely pointed at the apex, where open the ducts of two *poison-glands.* The *anal opening* is situated on the ventral surface of the last segment of the post-abdomen, immediately in front of the sting.

The aperture of the *mouth*, which is very small, is at the anterior end of the cephalothorax on its ventral aspect; a lobe which overhangs it in front is the *labrum.* On each side of the mouth is a three-jointed appendage—the *chelicera* (Fig. 496, *chel.*)—which is terminated by a chela. Behind these are the very large *pincer-claws* or *pedipalpi* (*ped.*), each composed of six podomeres and terminating in powerful chelæ. The basal joint of each pedipalp has a process which bites against the corresponding process of the other pedipalp, these processes thus performing the function of jaws. Following upon the pedipalpi are four pairs of walking legs, each composed of seven podomeres, the last of which is provided with curved and pointed horny claws. The basal segments of the first two pairs of walking legs are modified so as to perform to some extent the function of jaws.

All the six pairs of appendages hitherto described—the cheliceræ, the pedipalpi, and the four pairs of walking legs—belong to the cephalothorax. The first segment of the præ-abdomen (Fig. 496) has a narrow sternum, on which there is placed a soft rounded median lobe divided by a cleft; this is termed the *genital operculum* (*op.*); at its base is the opening of the genital duct. To the sternum of the second segment of the præ-abdomen are attached a pair of remarkable appendages of a comb-like shape—the *pectines* (*pect.*)—each consisting of a stem, along the posterior margin of which is a row of narrow processes, somewhat like the teeth of a comb; the function of these appendages is doubtful, but is probably sensory. The remainder of the segments of the præ-abdomen, and all those of the post-abdomen, are devoid of appendages. The sterna of the third, fourth, fifth, and sixth segments of the præ-abdomen, which are very broad, bear each a pair of oblique slits—the *stigmata* (*stig.*)—leading into the pulmonary sacs.

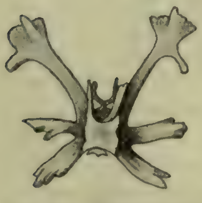


FIG. 497.—Endosternite of **Scorpion.** (After Lankester.)

In the interior of the cephalothorax, over the nervous system, is a cartilaginous plate—the *endosternite* (Fig. 497)—which serves to give attachment to muscles, and is comparable to the cephalic apodeme of Apus (p. 491).

All the appendages of the Scorpion are post-oral in position, and the most anterior—the cheliceræ—are probably best regarded as corresponding to the antennæ of the Crayfish, the equivalent of the Crayfish's antennules and of the antennæ of the Cockroach not being present. The pedipalpi would then be the homologues of the mandibles of the Insect and the Crustacean.

CRUSTACEA CRAYFISH.	INSECTA COCKROACH.	ARACHNIDA SCORPION.
Antennules.	Antennæ.	Absent.
Antennæ.	Absent.	Chelicerae.
Mandibles.	Mandibles.	Pedipalpi.
First maxillæ.	First maxillæ.	First legs.
Second maxillæ.	Second maxillæ.	Second legs.
First maxillipedes.	First legs.	Third legs.
Second maxillipedes.	Second legs.	Fourth legs.
Third maxillipedes.	Third legs.	

Digestive system.—The narrow mouth leads into a large chamber with elastic walls, the *pharynx;* this is capable of being greatly dilated by the action of a number of radiating bundles of muscular fibres, which run outwards from it to the walls of the cephalothorax, the result of this being to cause suction through the mouth, by which means the juices of the Scorpion's prey are drawn in. A second dilatation, to which a narrow œsophagus leads, receives the ducts of a pair of *salivary glands* (Fig. 499, *sal. gld.*). Upon this follows the *mesenteron* (*mesent.*), which is an elongated, wide, straight tube, with glandular walls, corresponding to the chylific ventricle of the Insect. Opening into the mesenteron are five pairs of narrow tubes (Figs. 498 and 499, *hep. du.*) leading into the substance of a large glandular body, usually termed the *liver* (*hep.*), though its hepatic functions are doubtful. The *proctodæum* (*proct.*) is a short, narrow passage; into it there open two delicate tubes—the *Malpighian tubes* (*mal.*)—which act as the organs of renal excretion.

Circulatory organs.—An elongated tubular *heart* (Fig. 498, *hrt.*) lies in the præ-abdomen enclosed in a pericardial sinus; it is divided internally into a series of eight chambers by transverse partitions; into each of these chambers the blood passes by a pair of valvular apertures or *ostia.* The heart ends both in front and behind in main arteries or *anterior* and *posterior aortæ* (*ant. art.*, *post. art.*); and a series of pairs of lateral arteries are given off from the various chambers. The anterior aorta (*truncus arteriosus*) soon bifurcates to form a pair of vessels which embrace between them the œsophagus, and meet below in a median ventral trunk which runs backwards above the nerve cord. The blood carried to the various parts of the body by the arteries is gathered up into a large ventral sinus from which it passes to the book-lungs. From these it is carried by a series of veins to the pericardial sinus to enter the heart through the ostia.

The **organs of respiration** in the Scorpions are in the form of *pulmonary sacs* or *book-lungs* (*pul.*), the stigmata or external openings of which have already been referred to. Each pulmonary sac is a compressed chamber lined with a thin cuticle. The lining membrane is raised up into numerous delicate laminæ lying parallel with one another like the leaves of a book. Into the

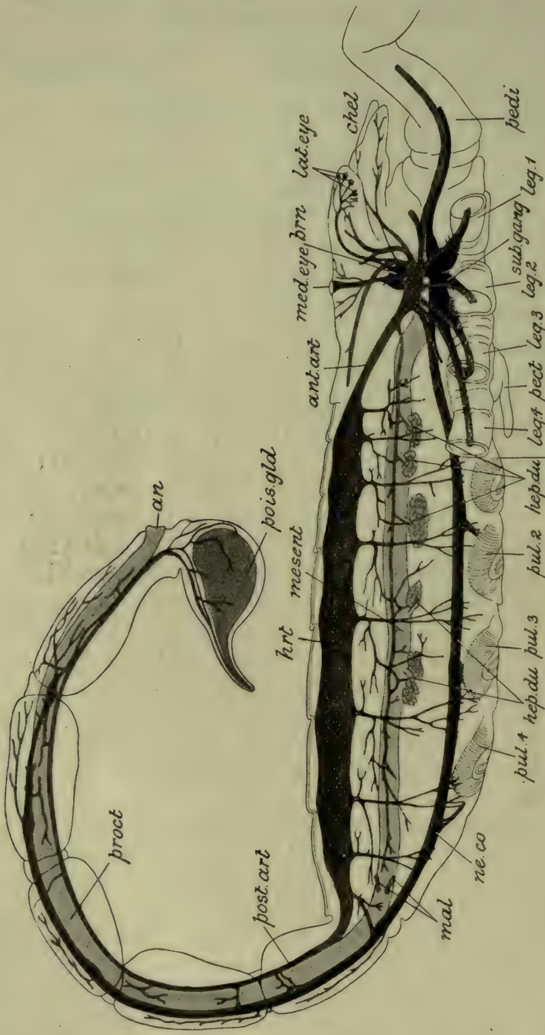

an
pois.gld
mesent
hrt
ant.art
med.eye
brn
lat.eye
chel
pedi
leg.1
sub.gang
leg.2
leg.3
pect
leg.4
pul.1
hep.du
pul.2
pul.3
hep.du
pul.4
ne.co
mal
proct
post.art

FIG. 498.—Diagrammatic side view of the internal organs of **Scorpion.** *an.* anus; *ant. art.* anterior aorta; *brn.* brain; *chel.* cheliceræ; *hep. du.* hepatic duct; *hrt.* heart; *lat. eye,* lateral eyes; *leg 1—4,* legs; *mal.* Malpighian tubes; *med. eye,* median eye *mesent.* mesenteron; *ne. co.* nerve cord; *pect.* pectines; *pedi.* pedipalp; *pois. gld.* poison gland; *post. art.* posterior aorta; *proct.* proctodæum; pul_1—pul_4, pulmonary sacs; *sub. gang.* sub-œsophageal ganglion. From Leuckart after Newport and Blanchard.)

numerous narrow spaces between the laminæ the air penetrates, and oxygenates the blood which enters the interior of the laminæ from the ventral sinus.

A pair of *coxal glands*, situated near the base of the fifth pair of appendages, are, in the embryo Scorpion, represented by tubes which, like nephridia, effect a communication between the body-cavity and the exterior; in the adult Scorpion the tube assumes the form of a closed gland, and its function is quite uncertain.

The **nervous system** is constructed on a plan which bears a considerable resemblance to that of the Crayfish and that of the Cockroach. There is a bilobed cerebral ganglion or *brain* (Fig. 498, *brn.*) from which nerves are given off to the eyes; a nerve collar formed of a pair of *œsophageal connectives* unites ventrally in a *sub-œsophageal ganglion*, forming the anterior part of a *ventral nerve cord* (*ne. co.*). The connectives and sub-œsophageal ganglion give rise to the nerves, to the first six pairs of appendages, and to the operculum, the pectines, and the two following segments. The first ganglion in the nerve cord appears in the eleventh segment (reckoning the cephalo-thorax as made up of six); behind which a ganglion appears regularly in each segment as far back as the fourth of the post-abdomen.

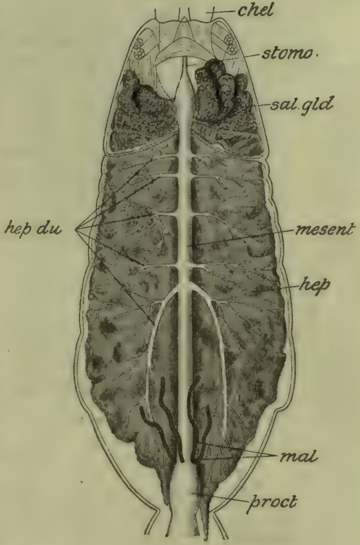


Fig. 499.—Dorsal view of the internal organs of **Scorpion.** *chel.* chelicerae; *hep.* liver; *hep. du.* hepatic ducts; *mal.* Malpighian tubes; *mesent.* mesenteron; *proct.* proctodæum; *sal.gld.* salivary glands; *stomo.* stomodæum. (From Leuckart after Blanchard.)

The **organs of special sense** are the *eyes* and *pectines.* The lateral eyes (Fig. 518) are similar in character to the simple eyes or ocelli of Insects. The two larger central eyes (Fig. 519) differ from them in having the retinal cells arranged in groups as in the compound eye, but resemble them in the presence of a single cuticular lens.

Reproductive organs.—In the male the *testes* consist of two pairs of longitudinal tubules united by cross branches. These are connected with a median *vas deferens*, the terminal portion of which, provided with *accessory glands*, is modified to form a double penis; its external opening is just behind the operculum as already noticed. There is an unpaired *ovary*, which is made up of three longitudinal tubules with transverse connecting branches; the oviducts open on the operculum.

Scorpions are viviparous. The *eggs*, which are spherical or oval, and in most species contain a large amount of food-yolk, lie in a follicle formed of a diverticulum of the oviduct. Fertilisation either takes place in the follicle or after the egg has escaped into the oviduct. The further development takes place in the oviducts; and, when born, the young Scorpion differs from the parent very little save in size.

Development.—The segmentation is of the type to which the term *discoidal* is applied. On one side are formed a number of cells in the form of a one-layered *disc* or cap, which gradually spreads over the yolk. On this appears a thickening—the *ventral plate* (Fig. 500), corresponding to that of the Insect. A longitudinal groove which appears on the surface of this may be regarded as representing an elongated blastopore (Fig. 500, A). The cells of the blastoderm of the ventral plate become divisible into three layers—*ectoderm*, *endoderm*, and *mesoderm*. The mesoderm becomes divided into a series of masses which become hollowed out to form the primitive segments (B) and their cavities. Embryonic membranes—*serosa* and *amnion*—are formed as in the Insects. When about ten segments have become distinguishable, the rudiments of appendages (Fig. 500 C, and Fig. 501) appear in the form of hollow processes of the segments on either side of the middle line. Behind the

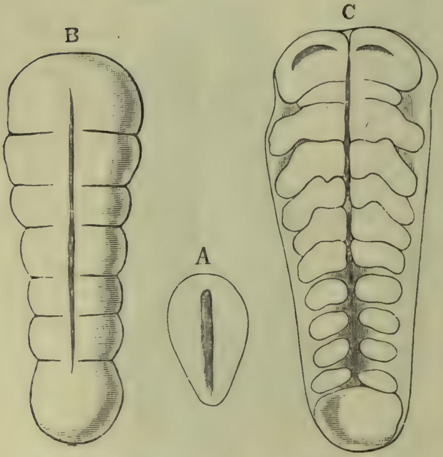


Fig. 500.—Three surface views of the ventral plate of a developing **Scorpion.** A, before the appearance of segments; B, after five segments have become formed; C, after the appendages have begun to be formed. (From Balfour, after Metschnikoff.)

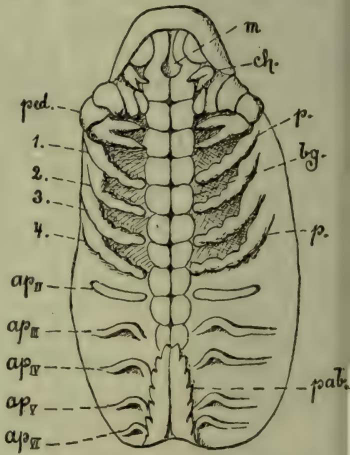


Fig. 501.—Embryo of Scorpion (**Euscorpius italicus**), later stage. *ap.* II.—VI., abdominal appendages; *ch.* cheliceræ; *p.* 1–4, legs; *m.* mouth; *ped.* pedipalpi; *p. ab.* post-abdomen, (From Korschelt and Heider after Metschnikoff.)

rudiments of the thoracic limbs appear a series of six pairs of abdominal appendages (*ap.* II.—VI.); the place of the first of these is afterwards taken by the operculum; the second develops into the pectines. The four posterior pairs become aborted, though they apparently have some relation to the development of the book-lungs.

2. Distinctive Characters and Classification.

The Arachnida are air-breathing Arthropoda, in which the body is usually distinguishable into two regions—cephalothorax and abdomen. The cephalothorax bears sessile, usually simple, eyes, two pairs of jointed appendages—the cheliceræ and pedipalpi—and four pairs of legs. There are no antennæ. The organs of respiration, when present, are usually either tracheæ or book-lungs, but in the Xiphosura take the form of book-gills. Heart and vascular system are usually present; the heart is tubular, like that of the Insects. The sexes are nearly always separate, and there is usually no metamorphosis.

The class is divided into the following orders:—

Order 1.—Scorpionida.

Arachnida in which the body consists of a continuous cephalothorax and an abdomen, the latter consisting of an anterior broader præ-abdomen of seven segments, and a posterior, narrower post-abdomen of five, with a caudal spine in the form of a sting. There are small chelate cheliceræ and large chelate pedipalpi. A pair of comb-like pectines occur on the second segment of the præ-abdomen. The organs of respiration are four pairs of book-lungs in the third, fourth, fifth and sixth segments of the præ-abdomen.

This order includes the Scorpions.

Order 2.—Pseudoscorpionida.

Arachnida in which there is a continuous cephalothorax, sometimes marked dorsally with two transverse grooves, and a broad abdomen, not divided into præ- and post-abdomen, and not provided with a sting. The cheliceræ are very small, the pedipalpi similar to those of the Scorpions. The organs of respiration are a system of tracheæ. A pair of spinning glands are present.

This order includes the Book-scorpions (Fig. 502).

Order 3.—Pedipalpida.

Arachnida in which the body consists of unsegmented cephalo thorax and flattened abdomen of eleven to twelve segments. The cheliceræ are simple, the pedipalpi simple or chelate, the first pair of legs terminate in a many-jointed flagellum. The organs of respiration are two pairs of book-lungs on the second and third segments of the abdomen.

This order includes the Scorpion-spiders (Fig. 503).

ORDER 4.—SOLPUGIDA.

Arachnida with three regions—head, thorax (of three segments), and abdomen (of ten segments). The cheliceræ are chelate; the pedipalpi elongated and leg-like. The organs of respiration are tracheæ.

This order includes *Galeodes* (Fig. 504).

ORDER 5.—PHALANGIDA.

Arachnida with an unsegmented cephalothorax, and an abdomen of six segments. The cheliceræ are chelate, the pedipalpi leg-like. The organs of respiration are tracheæ. No spinning glands are developed.

This order includes the Harvest-men.

ORDER 6.—ARANEIDA.

Arachnida in which the body is composed of an undivided cephalothorax and an unsegmented abdomen, which is usually soft and rounded, and attached to the cephalothorax by a narrow neck. The cheliceræ are sub-chelate, with poison glands; the pedipalpi simple. The organs of respiration are book-lungs alone, or book-lungs combined with tracheæ.

This order comprises all the true Spiders (Fig. 505).

ORDER 7.—ACARIDA.

Arachnida in which the body exhibits no division into regions. The mouth-parts are adapted either for biting or piercing and sucking. The organs of respiration, when present, are in the form of tracheæ.

This order includes the Mites and Ticks (Figs. 508 and 509).

ORDER 8.—XIPHOSURA.

Arachnida in which the body consists of a cephalothorax, covered over by a broad carapace, and an abdomen of seven firmly united segments, with a long narrow tail-piece or telson. The cephalothorax bears a pair of short chelate appendages and five pairs of legs. The abdomen bears in front a pair of united plate-like appendages, forming the *operculum*, followed by five pairs of flat appendages overlapped by the operculum. The organs of respiration are lamelliform gills attached to the abdominal appendages.

This order includes the King-crabs (*Limulus*) (Fig. 510).

ORDER 9.—EURYPTERIDA.

Arachnida with a relatively small cephalothorax, followed by twelve free segments and a terminal, elongated, narrow telson. There are a pair of præ-oral leg-like or chelate appendages and four more leg-like appendages on the cephalothorax, the last expanded to form swimming paddles. A broad operculum is situated immediately behind the cephalothorax. There are pairs of lamellate appendages on certain of the anterior free segments. The exoskeleton is characteristically sculptured.

This order includes only a number of extinct (Palæozoic) forms of large size (Fig. 512).

3. GENERAL ORGANISATION.

The **external form** in the *Scorpionida* has already been sufficiently described. Most nearly related to that order in this respect are the *Pseudoscorpionida* or Book-scorpions and their allies. In these (Fig. 502) there is an unsegmented cephalo-thorax, or the carapace is crossed by two transverse grooves which may indicate segmental divisions. There is a broad abdomen consisting of eleven, or more rarely ten, segments; the post-abdomen is not represented, nor the caudal sting. The chelicerae are small; the pedipalpi are large, and resemble those of the Scorpions in their chelate form. Spinning glands are present.

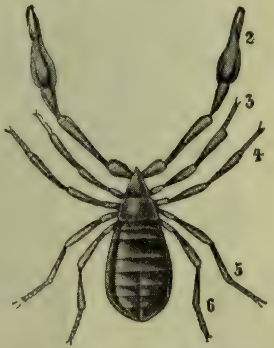


FIG. 502.—**Chelifer bravaisii.** 2—6, second to sixth pairs of appendages. (From Lang's *Comparative Anatomy*.)

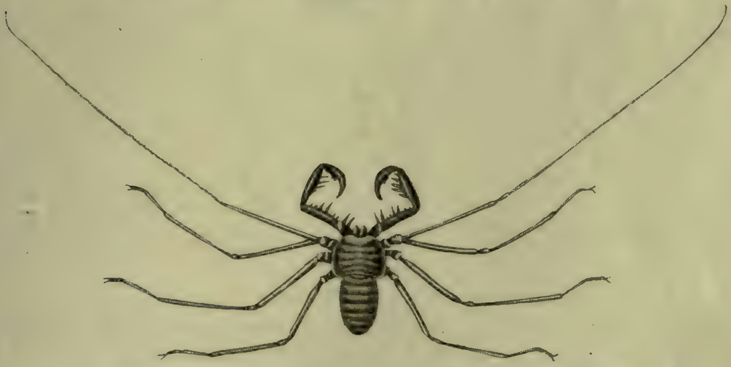


FIG. 503.—**Phrynus** (Pedipalpi). (From Cuvier's *Animal Kingdom*.)

The *Pedipalpi*, or Scorpion-spiders (Fig. 503), are intermediate in some of their external features between the Scorpions and the

Spiders. The abdomen is broad and marked out into a series of eleven or twelve distinct segments; in one of the genera of the order there is a short post-abdomen formed of the last three segments, with an elongated, many-jointed *anal filament*. The chelicerae end in simple claws; they are probably provided with poison glands; the pedipalps are very long, either claw-like or chelate; the first pair of legs are very long and slender, their terminal part made up of numerous short joints like antennæ. There are eight eyes on the carapace, two larger central, and six smaller marginal.

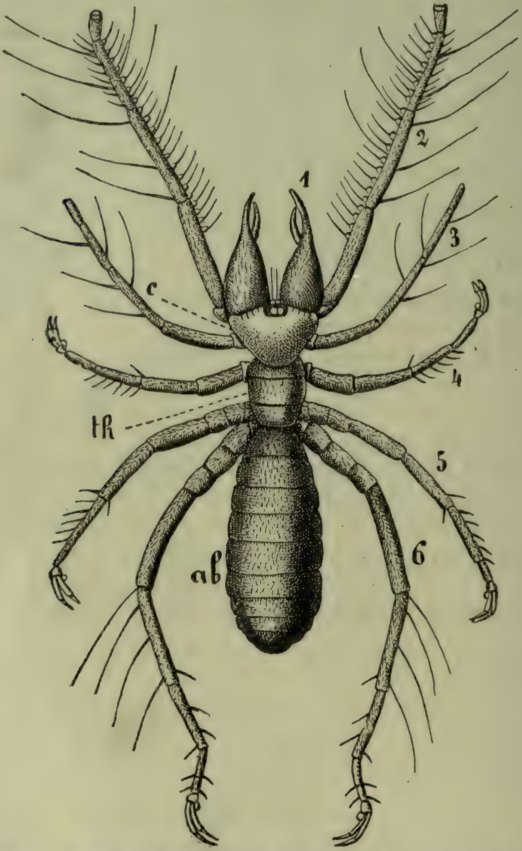


Fig. 504.—**Galeodes dastuguei** ♀, natural size. 1—6, the six pairs of appendages 1, chelicerae; 2, pedipalpi; *c*, head; *th.* thorax; *ab.* abdomen. (From Lang, after Dufour.)

The Solpugida (Fig. 504) have, at least superficially, the appearance of being intermediate between the Insecta and the other groups of Arachnida. The cephalothoracic region is divided by a constriction into two parts, *head* and *thorax*, the latter made up of three segments. The chelicerӕ are chelate; the pedipalpi resemble the legs, and are used in locomotion. The first pair of legs are attached to the head. The abdomen is distinctly segmented, and there is no caudal appendage. A pair of poison-glands open at the bases of the chelicerӕ. There are two simple eyes on the head.

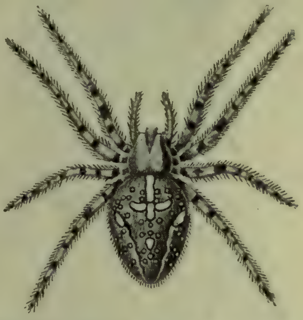


FIG. 505.—Spider **Epeira diadema**).

In the true Spiders (Fig. 505) the abdomen is rounded, unsegmented, and separated off from the cephalothorax by a constriction. The chelicerӕ (Fig. 506) are subchelate, and the duct of a large poison gland opens at the extremity. The pedipalpi (Fig. 506, *B*) are elongated, and end in simple extremities; in the male (Fig. 507) the terminal joint is modified to serve for the reception and transference of the sperms. At the extremity of the abdomen is the spinning apparatus or *arachnidium* (Fig. 513, *arach.*). This consists of four or six elevations, the *spinnerets*, sometimes jointed, probably derived from embryonic rudiments of abdominal appendages. On the surfaces of these open the numerous fine ducts of the spinning glands (*sp. glds.*), secreting the material of which the spider's web is composed. The fine threads of viscid secretion issuing from the ducts harden on exposure to the air, and are worked up into the web by means of the posterior legs. There are six or eight eyes on the carapace.

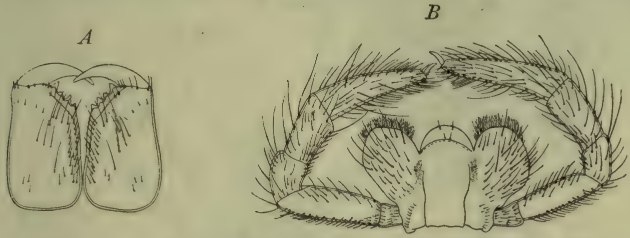


FIG. 506.—*A*, Chelicerӕ, and *B*, pedipalpi of female of **Epeira diadema.** (After Leuckart.)

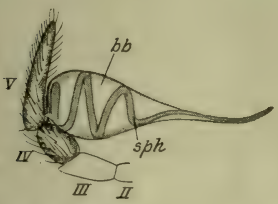


FIG. 507.—Pedipalpi of male of **Epeira diadema.** *II. III. IV. V.* podomeres; *bb*, sac; *sph.* spiral tube. (After Leuckart.)

In the spider-like *Phalangida*, or "Harvest-men," the cephalo-

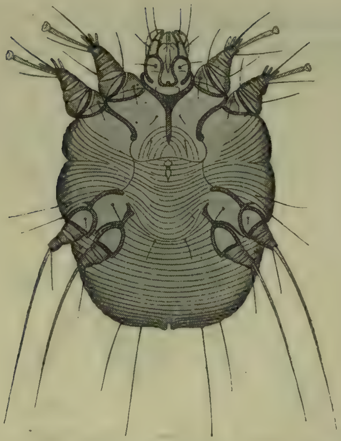


Fig. 508.—Itch mite (**Sarcoptes scabiæi**). (After Leuckart.)

thorax is not constricted off from the abdomen. The cheliceræ are chelate, the pedipalpi short and leg-like, the legs long and slender.

In the *Acarida* or Mites and Ticks (Figs. 508 and 509) the distinction into regions is no longer recognisable. The form of the mouth parts varies somewhat in the different families. Sometimes the basal portions of the pedipalpi form a sucking proboscis enclosing the stylet-like cheliceræ, modified to form piercing organs; sometimes these appendages are claw-like or chelate. The legs vary somewhat in shape in the different groups, according as they are used for prehension, for creeping, for running, or for swimming; they end usually in two claws, between which there may be discs or stalked suckers.

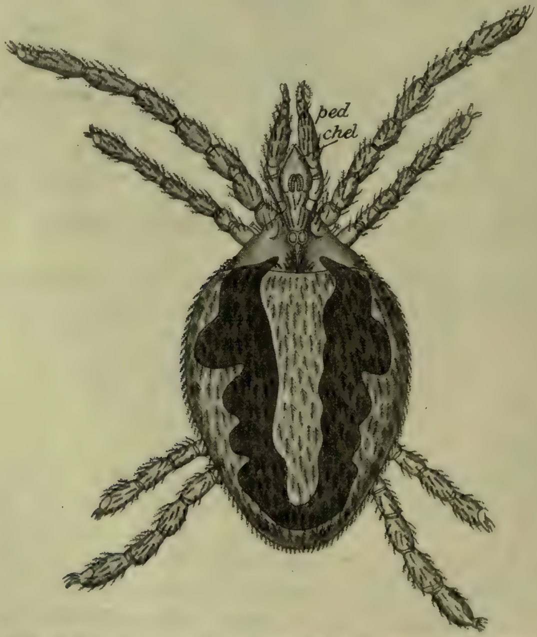


Fig. 509.—Water mite. **Trombidium fuliginosum**, female. *chel.* cheliceræ; *ped.* pedipalpi. (After Leuckart.)

In the *Xiphosura* or King-crabs (Fig. 510), the body consists of two well-marked regions—*cephalothorax* and *abdomen*. The former is covered over by a wide, dorsally convex, sub-crescentic shield or carapace, bearing two large compound, and two smaller simple, eyes. The segments of the abdomen (seven in number) are united together, being covered dorsally by a continuous abdominal carapace. At the posterior end is attached a very long, narrow, *caudal spine*. The anterior appendages (Fig. 511) resemble those of the Scorpion. In front of the mouth is a pair of short, three-jointed, chelate appendages, the *chelicerœ* (*1*), at the sides of a labrum or upper lip. Behind these follow a series of five pairs of legs, the bases of all of which, with the exception of the last, are covered with spines, and have the action of jaws, while the extremities are for the most part chelate. The first pair of appendages of the abdomen are flat plates, which are united together in the middle line and together form the broad *operculum* (*operc.*), overlapping all the posterior appendages; on its posterior face are the two genital apertures. The posterior appendages, of which there are five pairs, are thin flat plates to which the gills are attached; each of them is divided by sutures into a small inner ramus or endopodite, and a larger external ramus or exopodite. A labrum (*rostrum*) lies in front of the mouth, and between the sixth pair of appendages is a pair of processes, the *chilaria*.

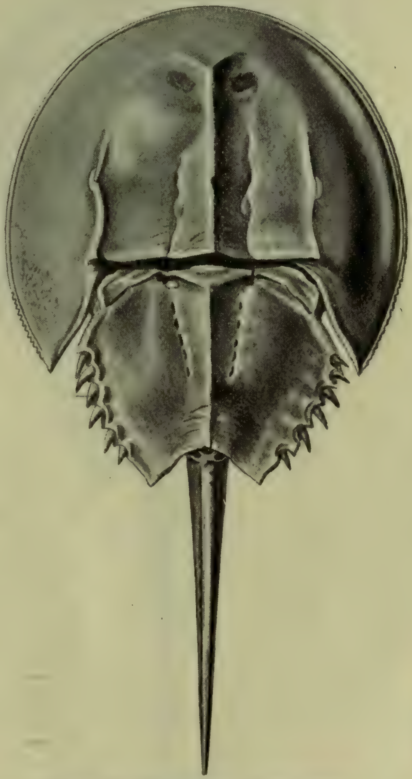


FIG. 510.—**Limulus.** Dorsal aspect. (After Leuckart.)

In the *Eurypterida* (Fig. 512) there is a small cephalothorax bearing a pair of large eyes and a pair of ocelli, and an elongated segmented region containing twelve segments, followed by a narrow pointed telson. There are usually five pairs of legs surrounding the mouth, and, with the exception of the first, toothed at the bases in order to perform the functions of jaws ; the last pair are stouter than the others and are expanded so as, apparently, to assume the character of swimming paddles. Certain of the more anterior of the free segments bear paired lamelliform appendages which probably carried the branchiæ as in the Xiphosura. The exoskeleton is in many cases elaborately sculptured.

A cartilaginous internal **endosternite** of the same nature as that which has been described as occurring in the Scorpions is found in Limulus and in certain Spiders, but not in the other groups.

Coxal glands, similar to those that have been described in the Scorpion, occur also in most Spiders, in the Solpugida and Phalangida, in some Acarida and the Xiphosura. In the Solpugida and Phalangida they occur on the bases of the last pair of legs; in the Araneida and Xiphosura, as in the Scorpion, they are found on the bases of the fifth pair of appendages.

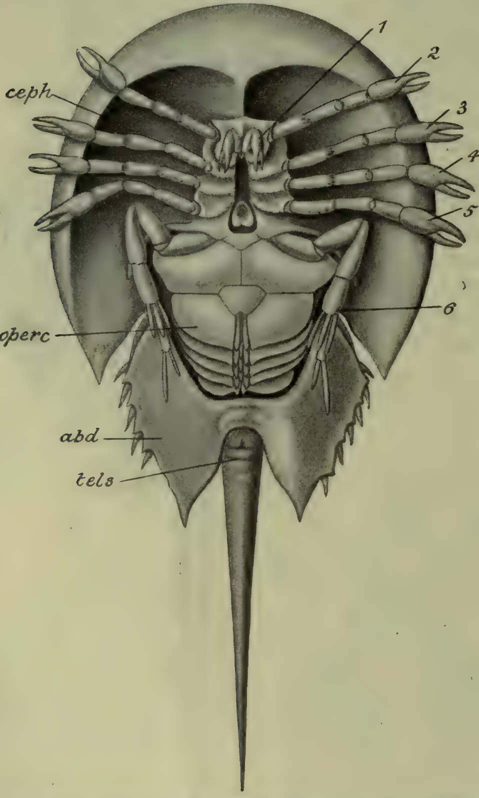


Fig. 511.—Ventral view of **Limulus**. 1—6, appendages of cephalothorax ; *abd.* abdomen ; *ceph.* cephalothorax ; *operc.* operculum, behind which are seen the series of abdominal appendages ; *tels.* caudal spine or telson. (After Leuckart.)

Alimentary system.—The œsophagus (Fig. 513, *œs.*) of the Spiders is expanded behind into a special *sucking stomach* (*suck. st.*). The *mesenteron* (*mesent.*) gives off in the cephalothorax five pairs of narrow diverticula (*cœc.*) which enter the bases of the pedipalps and legs ; in the abdomen it also gives off a number of cæca, which branch and come in close relation with a mass of cells commonly termed *liver* (*hep.*), though not known to have the function of that organ. The *rectum* or *proctodæum* (*rect.*) is dilated; the dilated portion (*rect. cæc.*) gives off two pairs of *Malpighian tubes* (*mal.*).

In the Pseudoscorpionida the mesenteron, which is bent into a loop, gives off three diverticula; the proctodæum has also a diverticulum. In the Solpugida the mesenteron also gives off diverticula; the occurrence of Malpighian tubes is doubtful. In the Acarida there are always diverticula, the number and arrangement of which vary, connected with the mesenteron. There are usually two long coiled Malpighian tubes.

In the Xiphosura, the mouth (Fig. 514, *mo.*), which is situated some distance behind the anterior extremity of the body, leads into a suctorial pharynx, followed by a stomach, which opens into the elongated mesenteron; the proctodæum, a short tube with folded walls, opens on the exterior at the posterior extremity of the abdomen. Into the mesenteron, as in the Scorpion, open the ducts of a large gland, usually termed the liver (*l. liv.*).

A **heart** is absent in all the Mites with the exception of one family. In the other Arachnida it is present, and has the same general form as in the Scorpions, though always more concentrated.

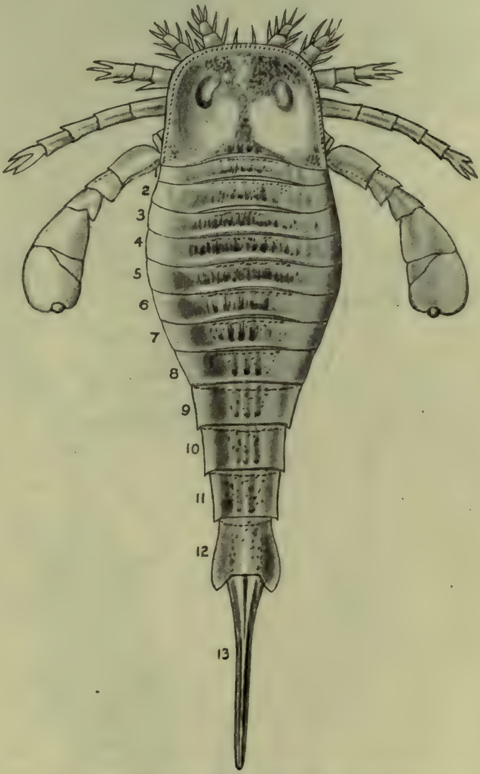


FIG. 512.—**Eurypterus fischeri** (Silurian). (From Nicholson and Lyddeker.)

In the various orders the **organs of respiration** differ a good deal in their character. In the Pseudoscorpionida they take the form of branching *tracheæ* similar to those of Insects. In the Pedipalpi there are two *pulmonary sacs* or *book-lungs* similar to those of the scorpions. In the Solpugida there is a system of tracheæ. In the Spiders there are either four pulmonary sacs (Fig. 515), or two pulmonary sacs and a system of tracheæ (Fig. 516).

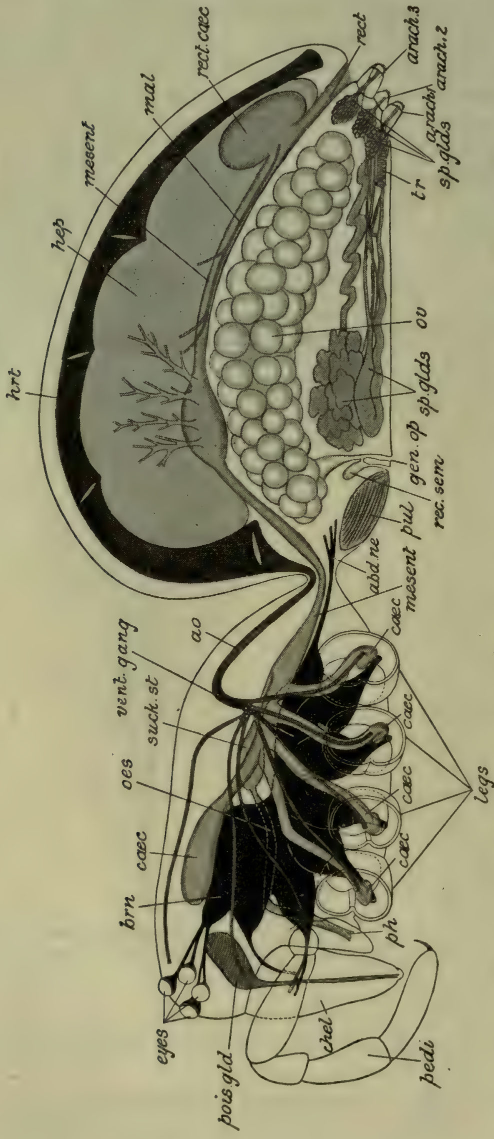

rect.cæc
rect
arach.3
arach.2
arach.1
sp.glds
tr
mal
mesent
hep
hrt
ov
sp.glds
gen.op
rec.sem
pul
abd.ne
mesent
ao
cæc
vent.gang
suck.st
cæc
oes
cæc
legs
cæc
cæc
brn
ph
eyes
chel
pedi
pois.gld

Fig. 513.—Diagrammatic lateral view of the internal organs of a dipneumonous **Spider.** *abd. ne.* abdominal nerves; *ao.* aorta; *arach*^{1}, ^{2}, ^{3}, arachnidium; *brn.* brain; *chel.* cheliceræ; *cæc.* cæca; *gen. op.* genital opening; *hep*, liver; *hrt.* heart; *legs*, legs; *mal.* Malpighian tubes; *mesent.* mesenteron; *œs.* œsophagus; *ov.* ovary; *pedi.* pedipalpi; *ph.* pharynx; *pois. gld.* poison gland; *pul*, lung; *rec. sem.* receptaculum seminis; *rect. cæc.* dilatation of the rectum; *rect.* rectum; *sp. glds.* spinning glands; *suck st.* sucking stomach; *tr*, trachea; *vent, gang*, ventral ganglia of cephalothorax. (After Leuckart.)

Tracheæ are present in the Phalangida and also in the majority of the Acarida. In the Xiphosura the organs of respiration are external appendages or *gills* (*book-gills*), in the shape of delicate laminæ attached to the abdominal appendages (Fig. 517).

The **nervous system** is, in most instances, more concentrated than in the Scorpions. There may be one or two separate abdominal ganglia behind the mass formed by the united cephalothoracic and anterior abdominal (Pseudoscorpionida, Pedipalpida, some Araneida, Solpugida, Phalangida). In most of the *Araneida* and in the Acarida all the abdominal are united with all the cephalothoracic ganglia to form a single mass perforated by the œsophagus, the part lying behind, which is much the larger, representing the ventral nerve cord.

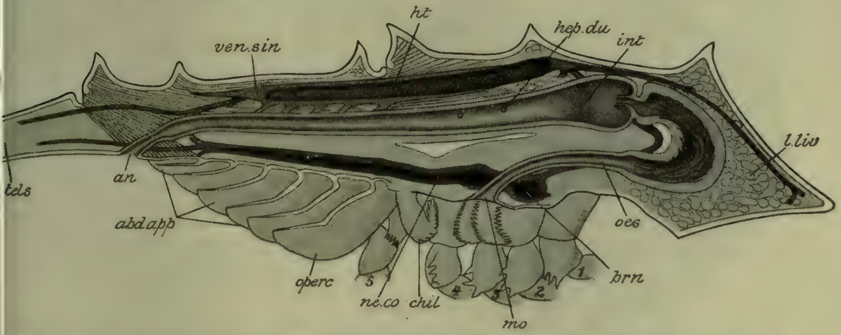


Fig. 514.—Diagrammatic view of a median longitudinal section of **Limulus**. *abd.app.* abdomina appendages; *an.* anus; *brn.* brain; *chil.* chilaria; *hep. du.* opening of one of the hepatic ducts; *ht.* heart; *int.* intestine; *l. liv.* liver; *mo.* mouth; *ne. co.* nerve cord; *œs.* œsophagus; *operc.* operculum; *tels.* telson; *ven. sinus*, venous sinus; *1–5*, legs. (From Leuckart, partly after Packard.)

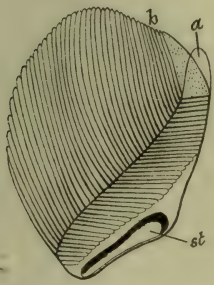


Fig. 515.—Book-lung of a Spider (**Zilla callopkylla**). *st.* stigma. (From Hertwig.)

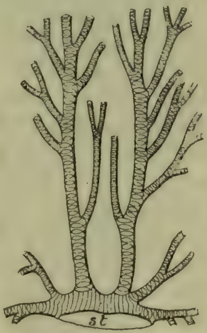


Fig. 516.—Main branches of the tracheal system of a **Spider.** *st.* stigma. (From Hertwig, after Bertkau.)

Sense organs.—Eyes are present in all except in some of the Acarida. Their number and arrangement have been given with the external characters of the groups. They are all (Fig. 518) of the type of the *ocelli* or simple eyes of Insects, except the central eyes of the Scorpions (Fig. 519) and the compound eyes of Limulus. The former are intermediate in character between ocelli and facetted eyes, possessing the single cuticular lens (*lens*) of the ocellus, and resembling the facetted eye in having the retinal cells arranged in groups corresponding to ommatidia. Each retinula, composed of five cells, contains a thick axial rod or rhabdome (*rhabd.*).

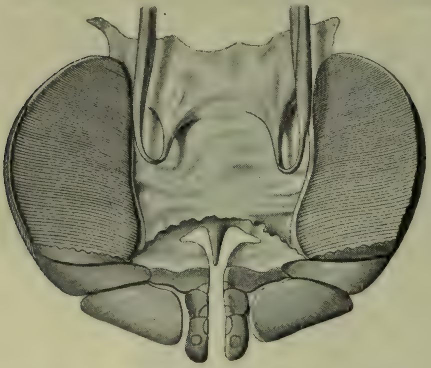


Fig. 517.—One of the book-gills of **Limulus,** with the appendage to which it is attached. (After Lankester.)

In Limulus the compound eye has a continuous chitinous cornea-lens of the nature of a thickening of the cuticle. This, though non-facetted, differs from the corresponding part in the compound eye of the Scorpion in being produced internally into a number of conical papillæ, each of which lies over one of the ommatidea and may be looked upon as its lens.

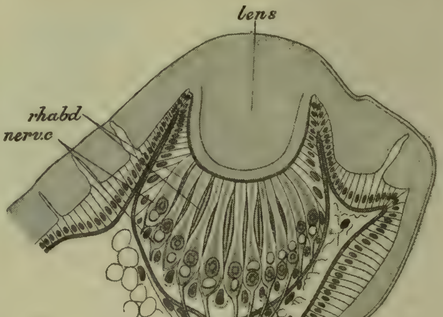


Fig. 518.—Section of the lateral eye of **Euscorpius italicus.** *int.* intermediate cells; *lens,* cuticular lens; *nerv. c.* terminal nerve cells; *nerv. f.* nerve fibres of optic nerve; *rhabd.* rhabdomes. (After Lankester and Bourne.)

A considerable variety is observable in the exact arrangement of the parts of the **reproductive apparatus** in different groups of the Arachnida. In general, *testes* or *ovaries* are either paired or (more rarely) unpaired tubes, with paired *vasa deferentia* or *oviducts,* which unite in a median duct opening on the exterior by an unpaired genital opening. Viviparity is exceptional. In the Spiders the ovaries (Fig. 113, *ov.*) are two wide tubes, on the surface of which follicles project prominently; sometimes they unite into a single circular ovary. Each ovary has a short oviduct, or, when the ovary is single it has two, right and left; these unite in a median *vagina,* which opens on the exterior by a median genital aperture at the base of the abdomen. One, two, or three *receptacula seminis* are present, and either open into the vagina or independently on the surface. In the male there are two elongated tubular *testes* with two narrow, and often greatly coiled, *efferent ducts,* which unite in a short median vas deferens, the aperture of which is on the base of the abdomen between the stigmata of the first pair. The pedipalpi of the male (Fig. 507) are modified to act as intromittent organs; the terminal segment is swollen, and contains a twisted tube (*sph.*) into which the sperms from the reproductive aperture are received in order to be transferred in the act of copulation to the reproductive aperture of the female. The eggs of spiders are laid in nests or cocoons, and are usually guarded by the mother, sometimes carried about by her.

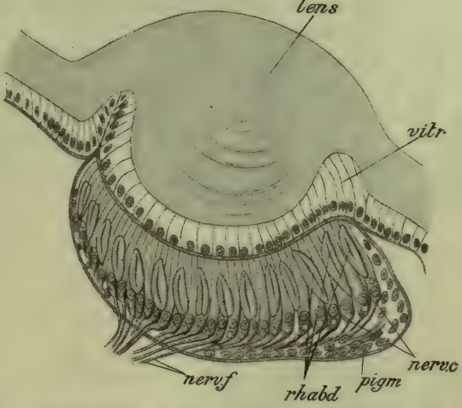


FIG. 519.—Section of the central eye of **Euscorpius.** Letters as in preceding figure. *pigm.* cells containing pigment; *vitr.* vitreous body (a specialised part of the ectoderm). (After Lankester and Bourne.)

In their **mode of life** the Arachnida present almost as great a diversity as the Insecta. Some Acarida are parasites throughout life. Most of the other groups of Arachnida are predaceous—preying for the most part on Insects or other Arachnids. To capture the Insects which constitute their food the majority of Spiders construct a web formed of the threads secreted by the arachnidium. The primary function of the threads formed from the secretion of the spinning organ is to constitute the material for the manufacture of a cocoon for enclosing the eggs, and in some Arachnids this is the sole purpose to which they are devoted. In others there is added a nest for the protection of the eggs and of the parent itself; this in many cases becomes a permanent lurking place which the Spider inhabits at all seasons, and from which it darts out to capture its prey; in the Trap-door Spider, the nest has a closely fitting hinged lid. In very many Spiders the secretion is used mainly to form the web by means of which the prey is snared, with the addition frequently of a nest in which the Spider lies in wait. A subsidiary function of the threads is to aid in locomotion, the Spider being enabled by means of them to let itself down safely from considerable heights, and even to float in the air.

Some of the Mites, as already mentioned, are parasitic; others feed on various kinds of fresh or decaying animal or vegetable substances. Most free Acarida are terrestrial; some are aquatic.

The Xiphosura are marine, living at a depth of a few fathoms in warm seas, burrowing in sand; their food consists of various kinds of marine Annelids.

Geological History.—The most ancient of the living groups of the Arachnida are the Scorpions, which are represented in Silurian rocks by various fossil forms not differing very widely from those existing at the present day. The earliest known fossil Spiders have been found in deposits of Carboniferous age; and remains of Pedipalpida occur in the same formation. In Tertiary deposits there have been found representatives of all the principal groups of living Arachnida.

The earliest fossil remains of Xiphosura that have been found, occur in strata of the Triassic period. Other fossil species occur in later formations. These are all nearly related to the living species of Limulus. The Eurypterida, as already noted, are entirely palæozoic, ranging from the Lower Silurian rocks to the Devonian.

APPENDIX TO THE ARACHNIDA.

THE PYCNOGONIDA, LINGUATULIDA, AND TARDIGRADA.

These three groups, though not in any way related to one another, and of doubtful relationships to the Arachnida, are, as a matter of convenience, mentioned together here.

The Pycnogonida.

These are marine Spider-like Arthropods (Fig. 520) in which the body consists of a cephalothorax composed of an anterior proboscis (*s*), three head segments, and one thoracic segment, followed by three free thoracic segments and a rudimentary abdomen (*ab.*). The cephalothorax bears usually four simple eyes and four pairs of appendages, one or both of the first two of which may be chelate. To these succeed a pair of usually ten-jointed ovigerous legs (3), and the first pair of thoracic legs (4). The free thoracic segments bear lateral processes for the articulation of the remaining three pairs of legs. The rudimentary abdomen (*ab.*) is devoid of appendages.

Diverticula from the mesenteron penetrate for a considerable distance into the limbs. Malpighian vessels are absent. There is a heart with two or three pairs of ostia. Organs of respiration are absent. The nervous system consists of brain, sub-œsophageal ganglia and three other ganglia. The testes in the male are partly, and the ovaries in the female either partly or completely, contained in the bases of the thoracic appendages on which they open. In the male 4–7 cement glands are situated in the fourth joints of certain of the appendages; their secretion cements the eggs together into masses which are carried on the ovigerous legs of the male, and in one species on those of the female also.

A metamorphosis occurs in most cases. The larva usually has three pairs of appendages, so that it bears a superficial resemblance to a nauplius; but the appendages are simple and in other respects the larva has no essential likeness to the nauplius form. Additional segments with their appendages are formed behind the original three until the form of the adult is completed. Different kinds of Pycnogonids occur at different depths from between tidal limits to considerable depths in the ocean. The larvæ of the species of one genus are internal parasites in certain hydroid Zoophytes.

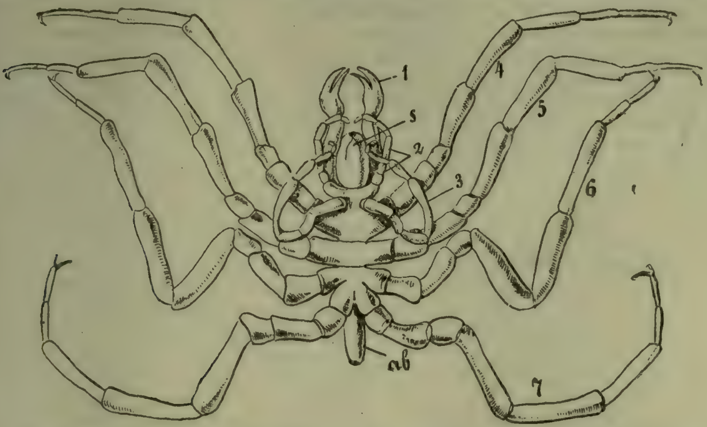


FIG. 520.—**Nymphon hispidum**. 1—7, appendages; *ab*. abdomen; *s*, proboscis. (From Lang, after Hoek.)

THE LINGUATULIDA OR PENTASTOMIDA.

The Linguatulida (Fig. 521) are parasitic animals which, when superficially examined, present little appearance of affinity with the Arthropoda. The body is completely worm-like, not divided into regions, and presenting only a superficial annulation, which in no way corresponds with division of the body into segments. The sole representatives of limbs are four hooks (hk.) at the sides of the mouth. The muscular fibres are striated. The alimentary canal is simple and straight, and Malpighian tubes are absent. Heart and organs of respiration are wanting. The nervous system is greatly reduced. A narrow nerve-collar surrounds the œsophagus, presenting no brain enlargement, and connected behind with a single ventral nerve mass. Organs of special sense are absent.

Some species of Pentastomum are in the adult condition parasites in the lungs of snakes. One species (*Pentastomum taenioides*) inhabits certain cavities—the frontal sinuses and maxillary antra—connected with the nasal chambers,

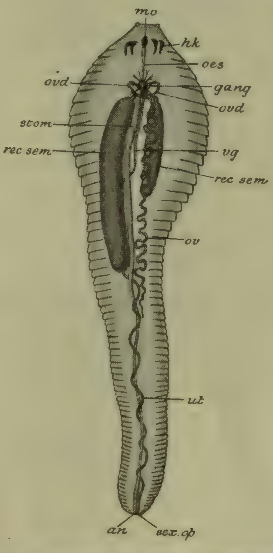


FIG. 521.—**Pentastomum tænioides,** young female. *an*. anus; *gang*. ganglion; *hk*. hooks; *mo*. mouth; *œs*. œsophagus; *ov*. ovary; *ovd*. oviduct; *rec. sem*. receptaculum seminis; *sex. ap*. sexual aperture; *stom*. stomach; *ut*. uterus. (After Leuckart.)

in the Dog and Wolf. Its embryos escaping and falling on grass and other herbage, which form the food of Hares and Rabbits, are taken up by the latter, and perforating the wall of the alimentary canal, by means of a boring apparatus composed of several chitinous pieces, lodge themselves in the liver, where they become encysted and undergo a metamorphosis. Afterwards they leave the cysts and move about. If it should be received into the mouth of a Dog (still contained probably in most cases in the tissues of the Hare or Rabbit) the young Pentastomum may find its way to the frontal sinuses or maxillary antra, there to undergo its final transformation into the adult form. The larva possesses two pairs of short legs.

THE TARDIGRADA.

The Tardigrada ("bear animalcules") are soft-skinned animals (Fig. 522) of minute size, not exceeding a millimetre in length. The body is unsegmented and not distinguishable into regions, except that in some a slight constriction separates off from the rest an anterior part or head. The mouth is provided with a sucking proboscis. There are four pairs of short unjointed legs (I.—IV.), the last of which is terminal, and each is provided with two or four claws. The mouth is surrounded by papillæ; the buccal cavity contains a pair of horny, sometimes partly calcified, teeth (*styl.*). The ducts of a pair of salivary (?) glands (*sali*) open into the cavity of the mouth; there is a muscular pharynx (*ph.*), a narrow œsophagus, and a wide mesenteron (*stom.*); the anus is sub-terminal, situated in front of the last pair of limbs. A pair of tubes (*mal.*) which open into the terminal part of the intestine are perhaps representatives of Malpighian tubes. The muscles are all non-striated. There are no organs of respiration, and heart and blood-vessels are likewise absent. There is a brain and a ventral nerve-cord with four ganglia. Two eyespots situated at the anterior end are the only representatives of organs of special sense. The gonads in both sexes are saccular, and open into the terminal part of the intestine. Segmentation is complete and regular. The young animal at one stage has only two pairs of rudimentary legs, but develops the full number before being hatched. In the larva there is a head and four distinct segments.

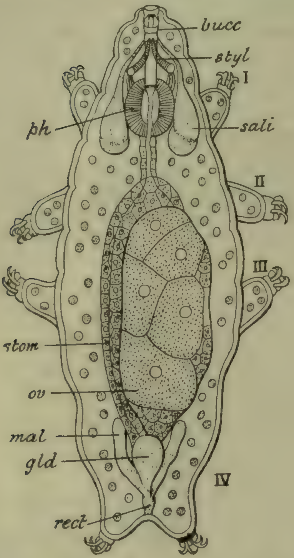


FIG. 522.—**Macrobiotus hufelandi.** I—IV, appendages; *bucc.* buccal cavity; *gld.* accessory gland; *mal.* Malpighian tube; *ov.* ovary; *rect.* rectum; *sali.* salivary glands; *stom.* stomach; *styl.* teeth. (From Hertwig's *Lehrbuch*, after Greef and Plate.)

Some of the Tardigrada live amongst damp moss, others in fresh or in salt water.

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY

RELATIONSHIPS OF THE AIR-BREATHING ARTHROPODA.[1]

Notwithstanding the existence of some striking superficial resemblances between the Arachnida and the Insecta, the evidence afforded by anatomy and embryology points to the conclusion that there is no direct genetic relationship between the two groups. The occurrence in both of a peculiar form of respiratory organs, the tracheæ, seems at first sight to indicate such a relationship; but the evidence of an independent origin is so strong that it must be supposed that the tracheæ have been independently developed in the two classes. The most important points of difference are the separation of head and thorax in the Insecta, the mode of development of the eyes, the presence in the Arachnida of an extensive "liver" and (perhaps) the endodermal origin of the Malpighian tubes in the latter class.

Resemblances between Limulus and the Scorpions are readily apparent. In both there is a cephalothorax bearing six pairs of appendages, together with two median and several lateral eyes. The appendages in both are all originally post-oral, the first pair becoming præ-oral in course of growth, and the ganglia belonging to it coalescing with the brain. The upper lip between the bases of these appendages is similarly developed in both. The pair of processes situated behind the sixth pair of appendages, which in Limulus form the chilaria, are represented in the Scorpions by a small pentagonal plate in front of the operculum. The abdomen of Limulus corresponds to the præ- and post-abdomen of the Scorpion; it contains only eight segments; but there is evidence, from a comparison with certain fossil forms, that the last segment represents several united metameres. A certain amount of correspondence is also traceable in the appendages of the abdomen. In both the first pair form the operculum; in the Scorpion the second pair form the pectines, while the rest disappear; in Limulus all persist as the lamelliform appendages to which the book-gills are attached. In structure there is considerable similarity between the book-gills of Limulus and the book-lungs of the Scorpion, but how far they are equivalent to one another remains doubtful in view of the difference in their position, the book-gills being attached to the dorsal surface of the abdominal appendages and the book-lungs sunk within the segments.

The presence in both of the large "liver," of a circum-œsophageal artery, of a cartilaginous endosternite, and of a pair of coxal glands on the basal joints of the appendages of the fifth pair, are some of the points of correspondence in the internal anatomy.

---

[1] The *Xiphosura* and also the *Pentastomida*, though not air-breathing, are discussed here.

While Limulus is thus closely related to the Scorpions on the one hand, it exhibits, on the other, indications of affinities with the Trilobites, a group of extinct Arthropods probably finding their nearest existing allies in the Phyllopod Crustacea (p. 559). This resemblance to the Trilobites is most marked in the stage—the trilobite stage—in which the young King-crab escapes from the egg. Certain fossil representatives of the Xiphosura come still nearer to the Trilobites than the adult Limulus, and thus increase the probability that there is a genetic connection between the two groups.

It seems probable that the air-breathing Arachnida were derived through Limulus-like ancestors from the Crustacea, and that the tracheæ were developed as modifications of the pulmonary sacs, the latter having been originally derived from gills like those of Limulus.

There is a very evident close relationship between the Myriapoda and the Insecta. The Insects are more highly specialised, and have their structure modified in adaptation to a special mode of locomotion, but the resemblances in many respects are very strong. One of the most striking points of difference is the indefiniteness in the number of the segments in the Myriapoda, and their constant and definite arrangement in the Insecta. The well-defined thorax of the Insects is wanting in the Myriapods in general, but certain of the segments following the head differ from the rest in various respects, and might be looked upon as constituting a thoracic region. The presence in both groups of a sharply marked-off head bearing antennæ and jaws is an important point of resemblance; so is the absence in both of the voluminous "liver" of the Crustacea and Arachnida. The gap between the two classes is narrowed by two converging groups—the Symphyla among the Myriapoda on the one hand, and the wingless and in other respects primitive Aptera among the Insecta on the other.

While the Insecta thus appear to be nearly related to the Myriapoda, there are indications of relationship between the latter class and the Onychophora, and, through these, the Chætopoda. The elongated, homonomously segmented body, the well-defined head with its antennæ, the occurrence of similar appendages on all the body segments, all point in this direction. Accordingly, instead of placing the branchiate Arthropoda in one group and all the air-breathing forms in another, and deriving the latter from the former, we should probably express more correctly the affinities of the various groups of Arthropods by some such scheme as that expressed in the diagram (Fig. 523).

Here an intermediate link between Annelida and the existing

Arthropoda is supposed to have been constituted by hypothetical primitive forms from which Peripatus, the Insecta, and the Myriapoda are supposed to have been evolved in the one direction, and the Crustacea, Eurypterida, Xiphosura, and air-breathing Arachnida in the other.

On account mainly of general resemblances to the Spiders, the Pycnogonida have frequently been grouped with the Arachnida, and attempts have been made to homologise their appendages with those of the Spiders and Scorpions. There is one pair more in the Pycnogonida; and either the last pair would have to be set down as corresponding to the vestigial first abdominal pair of the ordinary Arachnida, or the ovigerous legs would have to be reckoned, not as independent appendages, but as parts of the second pair, a view for which there is some ground. A close relationship with the Arachnida, however, cannot be traced, and their affinities are perhaps best expressed, as in the diagram, by connecting them with the Arachnid branch of the Arthropod tree at a point below that at which the air-breathing forms had become developed from forms allied to the Xiphosura.

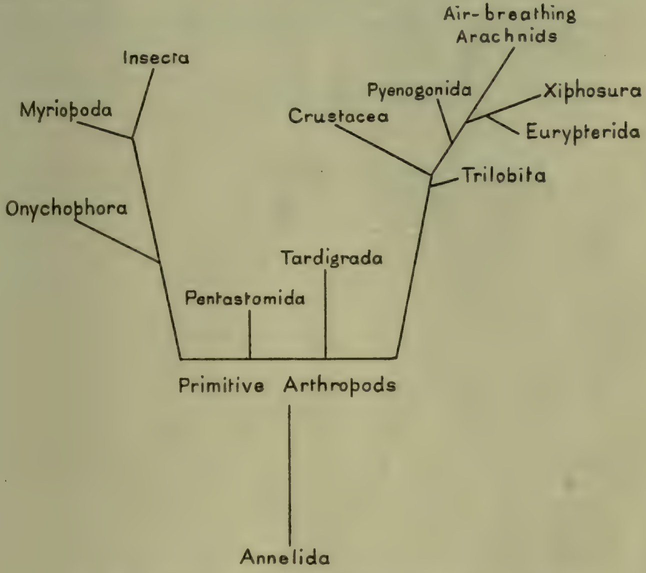

Air-breathing Arachnids
Insecta
Pyenogonida
Xiphosura
Myriopoda
Crustacea
Eurypterida
Trilobita
Onychophora
Tardigrada
Pentastomida
Primitive Arthropods
Annelida

Fig. 523.—Diagram to illustrate the affinities of the Arthropoda.

The position of the Pentastomida is a matter of uncertainty. In the absence of organs of respiration and excretion, the only feature in the adult which distinctly points to arthropod affinities is the striated character of the muscular tissue. The presence of two pairs of legs in the larva, however, is sufficient to confirm the position of the group as aberrant and probably degenerate Arthropods, while leaving it uncertain in what class they find their nearest allies. The Tardigrada are still more aberrant in some respects. They differ from Arthropods in general in the absence of external segmentation in the adult state, in the simple unjointed character of the appendages, in the absence of striation in the muscular fibres, and in the absence of organs of respiration and circulation. It is impossible to place them in any of the great classes, and they are perhaps best looked upon as a special offset of the Arthropod tree given off near the base.

SECTION XII

PHYLUM MOLLUSCA

THE Mollusca, like the Arthropoda, form one of the chief divisions of the animal kingdom, both for diversity of organization and for number of genera and species. They are sharply distinguished from Arthropods by the absence of segmentation, and by having, as a rule, an exoskeleton in the form of a *shell*, usually external, sometimes internal. An enumeration of the Classes of the Phylum will serve to give some notion of its extent.

Class 1.—PELECYPODA, including the bivalved Shell-fish, such as Mussels, Cockles, Oysters, &c.

Class 2.—AMPHINEURA, including the Chitons and their allies.

Class 3.—GASTROPODA, including the univalved Shell-fish, such as Periwinkles, Whelks, Snails, Slugs, &c.

Class 4.—SCAPHOPODA, including the Tooth-shells.

Class 5.—CEPHALOPODA, including the Cuttle-fishes, Squids, Octopi, and Nautili.

CLASS I.—PELECYPODA.

1. EXAMPLE OF THE CLASS—THE FRESH-WATER MUSSELS (*Anodonta* and *Unio*).

Fresh-water Mussels are found in rivers and lakes in most parts of the world. *Anodonta cygnea*, the Swan-mussel, is the commonest species in England; but the Pearl-mussel, *Unio margaritifer* is found in mountain streams, and other species of the same genus are universally distributed.

The Mussel (Fig. 524) is enclosed in a brown shell formed of two separate halves or *valves* hinged together along one edge. It lies on the bottom, partly buried in the mud or sand, with the valves slightly gaping. and in the narrow cleft thus formed a delicate, semi-transparent substance (*m.*) is seen, the edge of the *mantle* or *pallium.* The mantle really consists of separate halves or *lobes* corresponding with the valves of the shell, but in the position of rest the two lobes are so closely approximated as to appear simply like a membrane uniting the valves. At one end, however, the mantle projects between the valves in the form of two short tubes, one (*ex. sph.*) smooth-walled, the other (*in. sph.*) beset with delicate processes or *fimbriæ.* By diffusing particles of carmine or indigo in the water it can be seen that a current is always passing in at the fimbriated tube, hence called the *inhalant siphon,* and out at the smooth or *exhalant siphon.* Frequently a semi-transparent, tongue-like body (*ft.*) is protruded between the valves at the opposite side from the hinge and at the end furthest from the siphons: this is the *foot,* by its means the animal is able slowly to plough its way through the sand or mud. When the Mussel is irritated the foot and siphons are withdrawn and the valves tightly closed. In a dead animal, on the other hand, the shell always gapes, and it can then be seen that each valve is lined by the corresponding lobe of the mantle, that the exhalant siphon is formed by the union of the lobes above and below it, and is thus an actual tube, but that the boundary of the inhalant siphon facing the gape of the shell is simply formed by the approximation of the mantle-lobes, so that this tube is a temporary one.

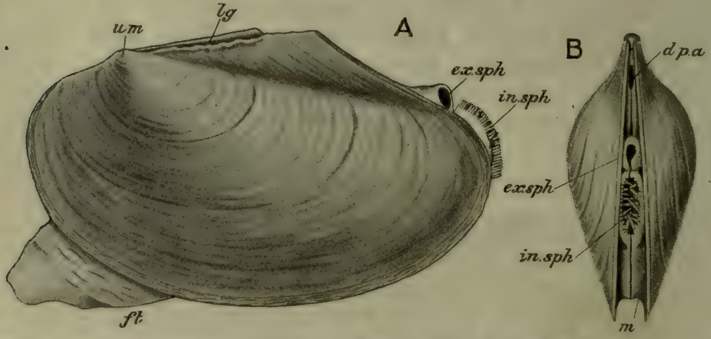


FIG. 524.—**Anodonta cygnea.** The entire animal; A, from the left side; B, from the posterior end; *d. p. a.* dorsal pallial aperture; *ex. sph.* exhalant siphon; *ft.* foot; *in. sph.* inhalant siphon; *lg.* ligament; *m.* mantle; *um.* umbo. (After Howes.)

The hinge of the shell is dorsal, the gape ventral, the end bearing the siphons posterior, the end from which the foot is protruded anterior: hence the valves and mantle-lobes are respectively right and left.

In a dead and gaping Mussel the general disposition of the parts of the animal is readily seen. The main part of the body lies between the dorsal ends of the valves: it is produced in the middle ventral line into the keel-like foot: and on each side, between the foot and the corresponding mantle-lobe, are two delicate, striated plates, the *gills* (Fig. 530). Thus the whole animal has been compared to a book, the back being represented by the hinge, the covers by the valves, the fly-leaves by the mantle-lobes, the two first and the two last pages by the gills, and the remainder of the leaves by the foot.

The Shell.—When the body of the mussel is removed from the shell the two valves are seen to be united, along a straight *hinge-line* (Fig. 525, A, *h. l.*), by a tough, elastic substance, the *hinge-ligament* (Figs. 524 and 530, *lg.*) passing transversely from valve to valve. It is by the elasticity of this ligament that the shell is opened: it is closed, as we shall see, by muscular action: hence the mere relaxation of the muscles opens the shell. In Anodonta the only junction between the two valves is afforded by the ligament, but in Unio each is produced into strong projections and

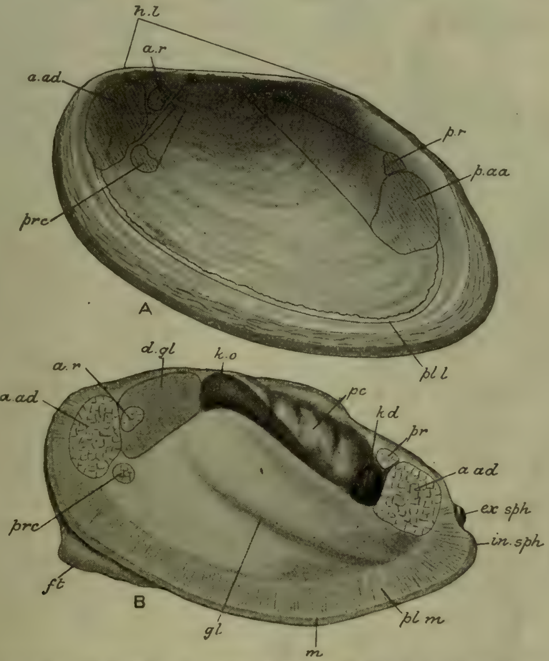


FIG. 525.—**Anodonta cygnea**. A, interior of right valve; B, the animal removed from the shell. *a. ad.* anterior adductor or its impression; *a. r.* anterior retractor or its impression; *d. g.* digestive gland, seen through mantle; *ex. sph.* exhalant siphon; *ft.* foot; *gl.* gills, seen through mantle; *h. l.* hinge-line; *in. sph.* inhalant siphon; *kd.* kidney, seen through mantle; *k. o.* Keber's organ, seen through mantle; *m.* mantle; *p. ad.* posterior adductor or its impression; *pc.* pericardium, seen through mantle; *pl. l.* pallial line; *pl. m.* pallial muscles; *p. r.* posterior retractor or its impression; *prc.* protractor or its impression.

ridges, the *hinge-teeth*, separated by grooves or sockets, and so arranged that the teeth of one valve fit into the sockets of the other.

The valves are marked externally by a series of concentric lines (Fig. 524) parallel with the free edge or gape, and starting from a swollen knob or elevation, the *umbo* (*um.*), situated towards the anterior edge of the hinge-line. These lines are *lines of growth.* The shell is thickest at the umbo, which represents the part first formed in the young animal, and new layers are deposited under this original portion, as secretions from the mantle. As the animal grows each layer projects beyond its predecessor, and in this way successive outcrops are produced giving rise to the markings in question. In the region of the umbo the shell is usually more or less eroded by the action of the carbonic acid in the water.

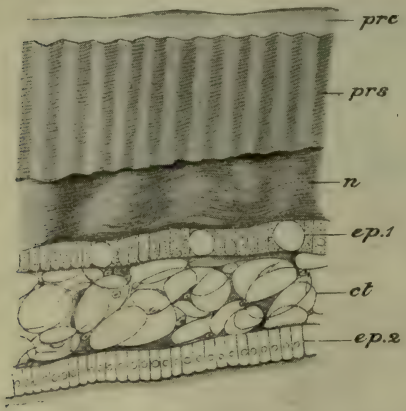


FIG. 526.—Vertical section of shell and mantle of **Anodonta.** *c. t.* connective-tissue layer of mantle: *ep. 1*, its outer epithelium; *ep. 2*, its inner epithelium; *n.* nacreous layer of shell; *prc.* periostracum; *prs.* prismatic layer. (After Claus.)

The inner surface of the shell also presents characteristic markings (Fig. 525, A). Parallel with the gape and at a short distance from it is a delicate streak (*pl. l.*) caused by the insertion into the shell of muscular fibres from the edge of the mantle: the streak is hence called the *pallial line.* Beneath the anterior end of the hinge the pallial line ends in an oval mark, the *anterior adductor impression* (*a. ad.*), into which is inserted one of the muscles which close the shell. A similar but larger *posterior adductor impression* (*p. ad.*) lies beneath the posterior end of the hinge. Two smaller markings in close relation with the anterior adductor impression mark the origin of the *anterior retractor* (*a. r.*) and of the *protractor* (*prc.*) of the foot: one connected with the posterior adductor impression is that of the *posterior retractor* (*p. r.*) of the foot. From all these impressions faint converging lines can be traced to the umbo: they mark the gradual shifting of the muscles during the growth of the animal.

The shell consists of three layers. Outside is a brown horn-like layer, the *periostracum* (Fig. 526, *prc.*), composed of *conchiolin*, a substance allied in composition to chitin. Beneath this is a *prismatic layer* (*prs.*) formed of minute prisms of calcium carbonate separated by thin layers of conchiolin; and, lastly, forming the internal part of the shell is the *nacre* (*n.*), or "mother-of-pearl," formed of alternate layers of carbonate of lime and conchiolin arranged parallel to the surface. The periostracum and the prismatic layer are secreted from the edge of the mantle only, the pearly layer from the whole of its outer surface. The hinge ligament is continuous with the periostracum, and is to be looked upon simply as a median uncalcified portion of the shell, which is therefore, in strictness, a single continuous structure.

By the removal of the shell the **body** of the animal (Fig. 525, B) is seen to be elongated from before backwards, narrow from side to side, produced on each side into a mantle-lobe (*m.*) and continued ventrally into a keel-like *visceral mass* (Fig. 527, *v.m.*), which passes below and in front into the foot (*ft.*). Thus each valve of the shell is in contact with the dorso-lateral region of the body of its own side together with the corresponding mantle-lobe, and it is from the epithelium (Fig. 526, *ep.*[1]) covering these parts that the shell is formed as a cuticular secretion. The whole space between the two mantle-lobes, containing the gills, visceral mass, and foot, is called the *mantle-cavity.*

A single layer of epithelial cells covers the whole external surface, *i.e.* the body proper, both surfaces of the mantle, the gills, and foot; that of the gills and of the inner surface of the mantle (Fig. 526, *ep.*[2]) is ciliated. Beneath the epidermis come connective and muscular tissue, which occupy nearly the whole of the interior of the body not taken up by the viscera, the cœlome being, as we shall see, much reduced. The **muscles** are all unstriped, and are arranged in distinct bands or sheets, many of them very large and conspicuous. The largest are the *anterior* and *posterior adductors* (Figs. 525 and 527, *a. ad.*, *p. ad.*), great cylindrical muscles, passing transversely across the body and inserted at either end into the valves of the shell, which are approximated by their contraction. Two muscles of much smaller size pass from the shell to the foot, which they serve to draw back; they are the *anterior* (*a. r.*) and *posterior* (*p. r.*) *retractors* of the foot. A third foot-muscle (*prc.*) arises from the shell, close to the anterior adductor, and has its fibres spread fan-wise over the visceral mass, which it serves to compress, thus forcing out the foot and acting as a *protractor* of that organ. The substance of the foot itself consists of a complex mass of fibres, the *intrinsic muscles* of the foot, many of which also act as protractors. Lastly, all along the border of the mantle is a row of delicate *pallial muscles* (Fig. 525, B, *pl. m.*), which, by their insertion into the shell, give rise to the pallial line already seen.

The **cœlome** is reduced to a single ovoidal chamber, the *pericardium* (Fig. 527, *pc.*), lying in the dorsal region of the body and containing the heart and part of the intestine; it is lined by cœlomic epithelium. In the remainder of the body the space between the ectoderm and the viscera is filled by the muscles and connective tissue.

Digestive organs.—The *mouth* (Fig. 527, *mth.*) lies in the middle line, just below the anterior adductor. On each side of it are two triangular flaps, the *internal* (*l.int. plp.*) and *external* (*l.ext. plp.*), *labial palps;* the external palps unite with one another in front of the mouth, forming an upper lip; the internal are similarly united behind the mouth, forming a lower lip; both are ciliated externally. The mouth leads by a short *gullet* (Fig. 528, *gul.*) into a large *stomach* (*st.*), which receives the ducts (*d.d.*) of a pair of irregular, dark-brown *digestive glands* (*d.gl.*). The *intestine* (*int.*) is given off from the posterior end of the stomach, descends into the visceral mass, where it is coiled upon itself, then ascends parallel to its first portion, turns sharply backwards, and proceeds, as the *rectum* (*rct.*), through the pericardium, where it traverses the ventricle of the heart, and above the posterior adductor, finally discharging by the *anus* (*a.*) into the exhalant siphon, or cloaca. The wall of the rectum is produced into a longitudinal ridge, or *typhlosole* (*ty.*), like that of the Earthworm, and two similar ridges begin in the stomach and are continued into the first portion of the intestine. The stomach contains, at certain seasons of the year, a gelatinous rod, the *crystalline style.*

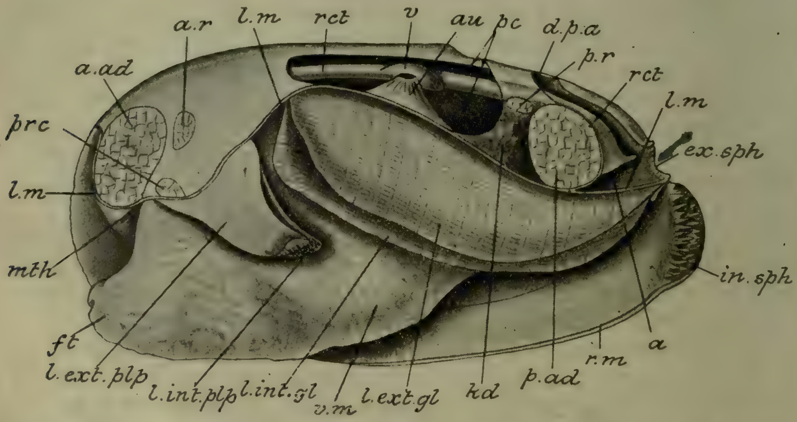


FIG. 527.—**Anodonta cygnea.** The animal with most of the left mantle-lobe removed; *a.* anus; *a. ad.* anterior adductor; *a. r.* anterior retractor; *au.* left auricle; *d. p. a.* dorsal pallial aperture; *ex. sph.* exhalant siphon; *ft.* foot; *in. sph.* inhalant siphon; *kd.* kidney; *l. ext. gl.* left external gill; *l. ext. plp.* left external labial palp; *l. int. gl.* left internal gill; *l. int. plp.* left internal labial palp; *l. m.* cut edge of left mantle-lobe; *mth.* mouth; *p. ad.* posterior adductor; *pc.* pericardium; *p. r.* posterior retractor; *prc.* protractor; *rct.* rectum; *r. m.* right mantle-lobe; *v.* ventricle; *v. m.* visceral mass.

The **gills** consist, as we have seen, of two plate-like bodies on each side between the visceral mass and the mantle: we have thus a *right* and a *left outer* (Fig. 527, *l. ext. gl.*), and a *right* and a *left inner gill* (*l. int. gl.*). Seen from the surface, each gill presents a delicate double striation, being marked by faint lines running parallel with, and by more pronounced lines running at right angles to, the long axis of the organ. Moreover, each gill is double, being formed of two similar plates, the *inner* and *outer lamellæ*, united with one another along the anterior, ventral, and posterior edges of the gill, but free dorsally. The gill has thus the form of a long and extremely narrow bag open above (Figs. 528, 529 and 530): its cavity is subdivided by vertical bars of tissue, the *inter-lamellar junctions* (*i. l. j.*), which extend between the two lamellæ, and divide the intervening space into distinct compartments or *water-tubes* (*w. t.*), closed ventrally, but freely open along the dorsal edge of the gill. The vertical striation of the gill is due to the fact that each lamella is made up of a number of close-set *gill-filaments* (*f.*): the longitudinal striation to the circumstance that these filaments are connected by horizontal bars, the *inter-filamentar junctions* (*i. f. j.*). At the thin free or ventral edge of the gill the filaments of the two lamellæ are continuous with one another, so that each gill has actually a single set of V-shaped filaments, the outer limbs of which go to form the outer lamella, their inner limbs the inner lamella. Between the

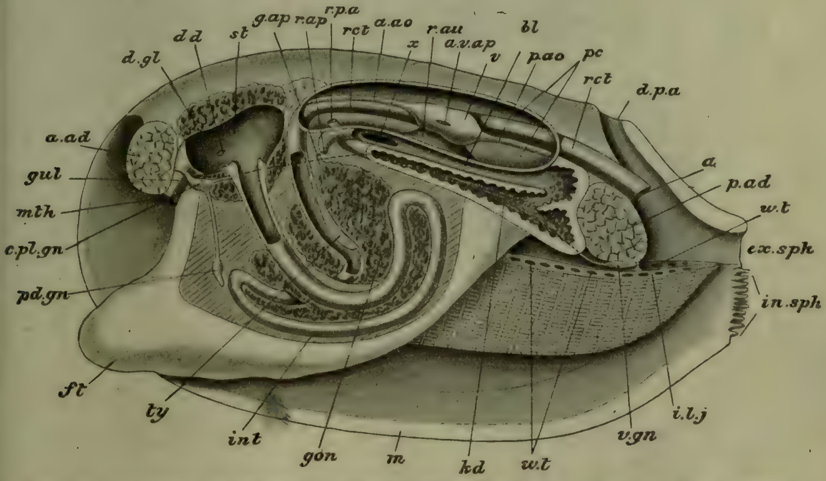


FIG. 528.—**Anodonta cygnea.** Dissection from the left side. *a.* anus; *a. ad.* anterior adductor; *a. ao.* anterior aorta; *a. v. ap.* auriculo-ventricular aperture; *bl.* urinary bladder; *c. pl. gn.* cerebro-pleural ganglion; *d. d.* duct of digestive gland; *d. gl.* digestive gland; *d. p. a.* dorsal pallial aperture; *ex. sph.* exhalant siphon; *ft.* foot; *g. ap.* genital aperture; *gon.* gonad; *gul.* gullet; *i. l. j.* inter-lamellar junction; *in. sph.* inhalant siphon; *int.* intestine; *kd.* kidney; *m.* mantle; *mth.* mouth; *p. ao.* posterior aorta; *p. ad.* posterior adductor; *pc.* pericardium; *pd. gn.* pedal ganglion; *r. ap.* renal aperture; *r. au.* right auricle; *rct.* rectum; *r. p. a.* reno-pericardial aperture; *st.* stomach; *ty.* typhlosole; *v.* ventricle; *v. gn.* visceral ganglion; *w. t.* water tubes.

filaments, and bounded above and below by the inter-filamentar junctions, are minute apertures, or *ostia* (*os.*), which lead from the mantle-cavity through a more or less irregular series of cavities into the interior of the water-tubes. The filaments themselves are supported by chitinous rods (*r.*), and are covered with ciliated epithelium, the large cilia (Fig. 529, D), of which produce a current

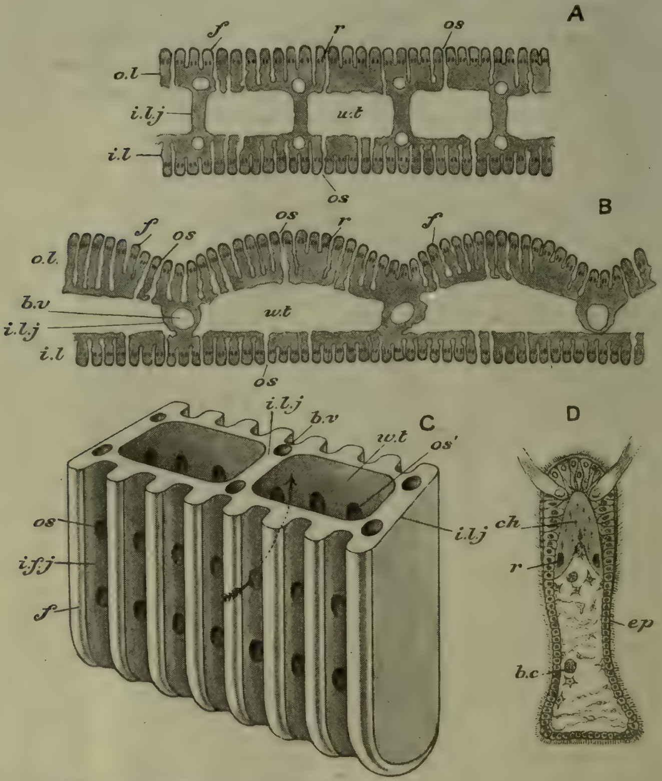


FIG. 529.—**Anodonta cygnea.** A, transverse section of outer; B of inner gill; C, diagram of gill-structure; D, transverse section of gill filament; *b. c.* blood-corpuscle; *b. v.* blood-vessels; *ch.* chitin; *f.* branchial filaments; *ep.* epithelium; *i. f. j.* inter-filamentar junction; *i. l.* inner lamella; *i. l. j.* inter-lamellar junction; *o. l.* outer lamella; *os.* external ostium; *os'.* internal ostium; *r*, chitinous rods; *w. t.* water tubes. (A, B, and D, after Peck.)

running from the exterior through the ostia into the water-tubes, and finally escaping by the wide dorsal apertures of the latter, The whole organ is traversed by bloodvessels (*b. v.*).

The mode of attachment of the gills presents certain features of importance. The outer lamella of the outer gill is attached along its whole length to the mantle (Fig. 530): the inner lamella of the outer, and the outer lamella of the inner gill are attached together to the sides of the visceral mass a little below the origin of the mantle: the inner lamella of the inner gill is also attached to the visceral mass in front (A), but is free further back (B). The gills are longer than the visceral mass, and project behind it, below

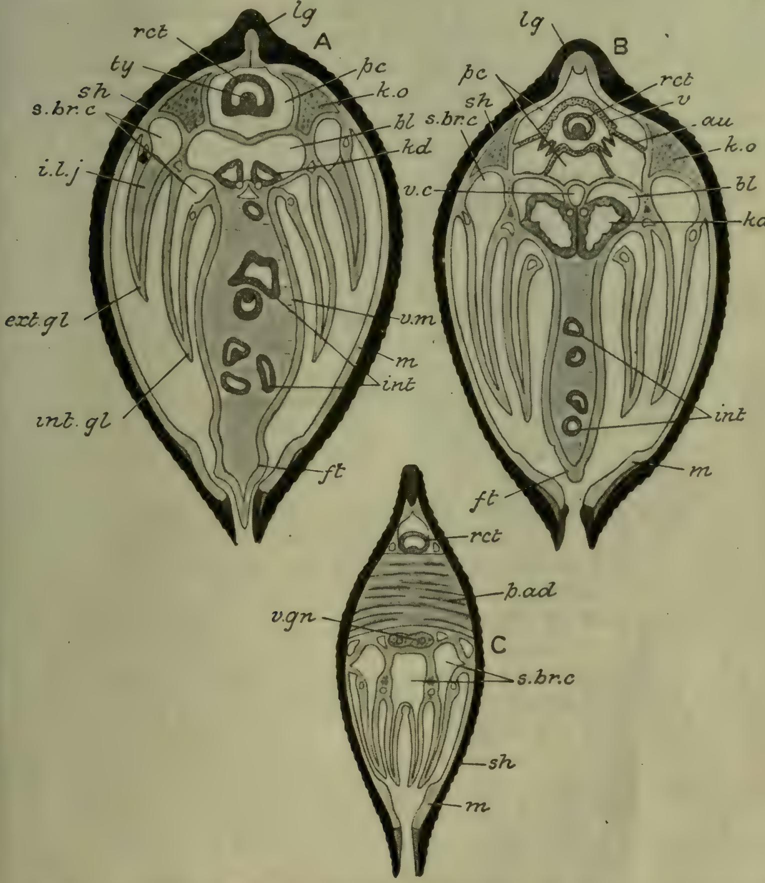

lg
rct
A
ty
pc
sh
k.o
s.br.c
bl
kd
i.l.j
ext.gl
v.m
m
int
int.gl
ft
lg
B
pc
rct
sh
v
s.br.c
au
k.o
bl
v.c
kd
int
m
ft
rct
p.ad
v.gn
C
s.br.c
sh
m

FIG. 530.—**Anodonta cygnea.** Three transverse sections. *au.* auricle; *bl.* urinary bladder; *ext. gl.* external gill; *ft.* foot; *i. l. j.* inter-lamellar junction; *int.* intestine; *int. gl.* internal gill; *kd.* kidney; *k. o.* Keber's organ; *lg.* ligament; *m.* mantle; *p. ad.* posterior adductor; *pc.* pericardium; *rct.* rectum; *s. br. c.* supra-branchial chamber; *sh.* shell; *ty.* typhlosole; *v. gn.* visceral ganglion. (After Howes, slightly altered.)

the posterior adductor (C), as far as the posterior edge of the mantle: in this region the inner lamellæ of the right and left inner gills are united with one another, and the dorsal edges of all four gills constitute a horizontal partition between the pallial cavity below and the exhalant chamber or cloaca above. Owing to this arrangement it will be seen that the water tubes all open dorsally into a *supra-branchial chamber* (*s. br. c.*) continuous posteriorly with the cloaca and thus opening on the exterior by the exhalant siphon.

The physiological importance of the gills will now be obvious. By the action of their cilia a current is produced which sets in through the inhalant siphon into the pallial cavity, through the ostia into the water tubes, into the supra-branchial chamber, and out at the exhalant siphon. The in-going current carries with it not only oxygen for the aëration of the blood, but also Diatoms, Infusoria and other microscopic organisms, which are swept into the mouth by the cilia covering the labial palps. The out-going current carries with it the various products of excretion and the fæces passed into the cloaca. The action of the gills in producing the food-current is of more importance than their respiratory function, which they share with the mantle.

The **excretory organs** are a single pair of curiously-modified *meso-nephridia*, situated one on each side of the body just below the pericardium. Each nephridium consists of two parts, a brown spongy *glandular portion* or *kidney* (Fig. 528, *kd.*), and a thin-walled non-glandular part or *bladder* (*bl.*). The two parts lie parallel to one another, the bladder being placed dorsally and immediately below the floor of the pericardium: they communicate with one another posteriorly, while in front the kidney opens into the pericardium (*r. p. ap.*), and the bladder on to the exterior by a minute aperture (*r. ap.*), situated between the inner gill and the visceral mass. Thus the whole organ, often called after its discoverer, the *organ of Bojanus*, is simply a tube bent upon itself, opening at one end into the cœlome, and at the other on the external surface of the body: it has thus the normal relations of a nephridium. The epithelium of the bladder is ciliated, and produces an outward current.

It seems probable that an excretory function is also discharged by a large grandular mass of reddish-brown colour, called the *pericardial gland* or *Keber's organ* (Fig. 530, B, *k. o.*), It lies in the anterior region of the body just in front of the pericardium, into which it discharges.

The **circulatory system** is well developed. The *heart* lies in the pericardium and consists of a single *ventricle* (Figs. 528, 530, and 531, *v.*) and of right and left *auricles* (*au.*). The ventricle is a muscular chamber which has the peculiarity of surrounding the rectum (Figs. 528 and 530, B): the auricles are thin-walled chambers communicating with the ventricle by valvular apertures opening towards the latter. From each end of the ventricle an artery is given off, the *anterior aorta* (Fig. 528, *a. ao.*) passing above, the *posterior aorta* (*p. ao.*) below the rectum. From the aortæ the blood passes into arteries (Fig. 531, *art.*[1] *art.*[2]) which ramify all over the body, finally forming an extensive network of vessels, many of which are devoid of proper walls, and have therefore the nature of sinuses. The returning blood passes into a large longitudinal vein, the *vena cava* (*v. c.*) placed between the nephridia, whence it is taken to the kidneys themselves (*nph. v.*), thence by *afferent branchial veins* (*af. br. v.*) to the gills, and is finally returned by *efferent branchial veins* (*ef. br. v.*) to the auricles. The mantle has a very extensive blood supply, and probably acts as the chief respiratory organ: its blood (*art.*^{1}) is returned directly to the auricles without passing through either the kidneys or the gills. The blood is colourless and contains leucocytes.

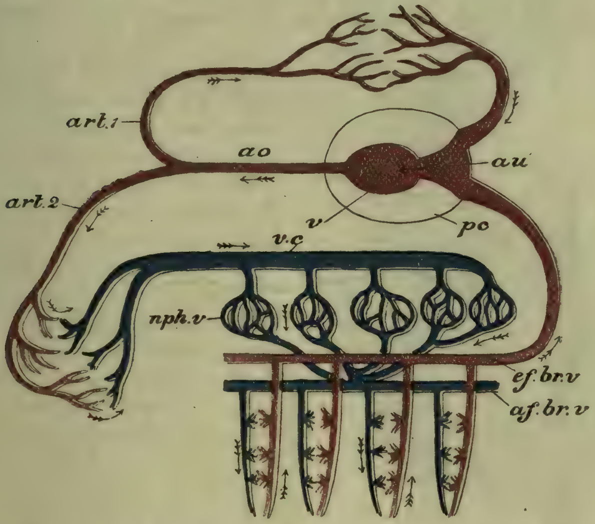


FIG. 531.—Diagram of the circulatory system of **Anodonta.** Vessels containing aërated blood red, non-aërted blue. *af. br. v.* afferent branchial veins; *ao.* aorta; *art. 1*, artery to mantle; *art. 2*, artery to body generally; *au.* auricle; *ef. br. v.* efferent branchial veins; *nph.* nephridial veins; *pc.* pericardium; *v.* ventricle; *v. c.* vena cava. The arrows show the direction of the current.

The **nervous system** is formed on a type quite different from anything we have yet met with. On each side of the gullet is a small *cerebro-pleural ganglion* (Fig. 528, *c.pl. gn.*) united with its fellow of the opposite side by a nerve-cord, the *cerebral commissure*, passing above the gullet. Each cerebro-pleural ganglion also gives off a cord, the *cerebro-pedal connective*, which passes downwards and backwards to a *pedal ganglion* (*pd. gn.*) situated at the junction of the visceral mass with the foot: the two pedal ganglia are so closely united as to form a single bilobed mass. From each cerebro-pleural ganglion there further proceeds a long *cerebro-visceral connective* which passes directly backwards, through the kidney, and ends in a *visceral ganglion* (*v. gn.*) placed on the ventral side of the posterior adductor muscle. The visceral, like the pedal ganglia, are fused together. The cerebro-pleural ganglia supply the labial palps and the anterior part of the mantle; the pedal the foot and its muscles; the visceral the enteric canal, heart, gills, and posterior portion of the mantle.

It will be seen that the cerebral commissures and cerebro-pedal connectives together with the cerebro-pleural and pedal ganglia, form a nerve ring which surrounds the gullet: the cerebro-pleural ganglia may be looked upon as a supra-œsophageal nerve mass corresponding with the brain of Annelids and Arthropods, and the pedal ganglia as an infra-œsophageal mass representing the ventral nerve cord.

Sensory organs are poorly developed, as might be expected in an animal of such sedentary habits. In connection with each visceral ganglion is a patch of sensory epithelium forming the so-called olfactory organ or, better, *osphradium*, the function of which is apparently to test the purity of the water entering by the respiratory current. Close to the pedal ganglion a minute otocyst (Fig. 532) is sometimes found, the nerve of which is said to spring from the cerebro-pedal connective, being probably derived from the cerebral ganglion. Sensory cells—probably tactile—also occur round the edge of the mantle, and especially on the fimbriæ of the inhalant siphon.

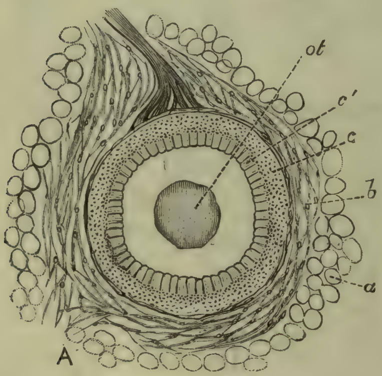


Fig. 532.—Otocyst of **Anodonta.** *a, b, c, c′*, cellular layers surrounding the otocyst; *ot.* otolith. (From the *Cambridge Natural History*.)

Reproductive organs.—The sexes are separate. The gonads (Fig. 528, *gon.*) are large, paired, racemose glands, occupying a considerable portion of the visceral mass amongst the coils of the intestine: the testis is white, the ovary reddish. The gonad of each side has a short duct which opens (*g. ap.*) on the surface of the visceral mass just in front of the renal aperture.

In the breeding season the eggs, extruded from the genital aperture, pass into the suprabranchial chamber and so to the cloaca. There, in all probability, they are impregnated by sperms introduced with the respiratory current. The oosperms are then passed into the cavities of the outer gills, which they distend enormously. Thus the outer gills act as brood-pouches, and in them the embryo develops into the peculiar larval form presently to be described.

Development.—Segmentation of the oosperm is complete, but unequal. A gastrula is formed by the invagination of the megameres into the micromeres, but the archenteron (Fig. 533, *ent.*) thus formed is quite small and insignificant, and has no physiological importance until a late period of larval life. Certain of the cells of the gastrula are budded off into the blastocœle, where they accumulate and form the mesoderm (*mes.*). At about the same time a deep invagination (*sd.*) is formed, which might easily be mistaken for the archenteron, but is really a very characteristic molluscan organ, the *shell-gland:* it marks the dorsal surface of the embryo. The posterior end is distinguished by a tuft of long cilia.

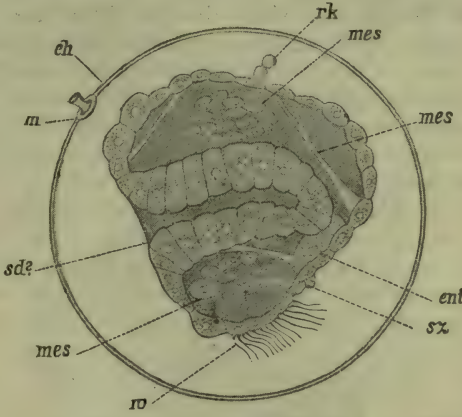


FIG. 533.—Early embryo of **Anodonta.** *eh*, vitelline membrane; *ent.* archenteron; *m.* micropyle; *mes.* mesoderm; *rk*, polar cells; *sd*, shell-gland; *sk*, lateral cells; *w*, cilia. (From Korschelt and Heider's *Embryology.*)

The shell-gland becomes converted into a plate of long, cylindrical cells (Fig. 534, *sd.*), from which an unpaired shell (*s.*) is secreted. This is replaced before long by a bivalved shell of triangular form, its ventral angles produced into incurved hooks

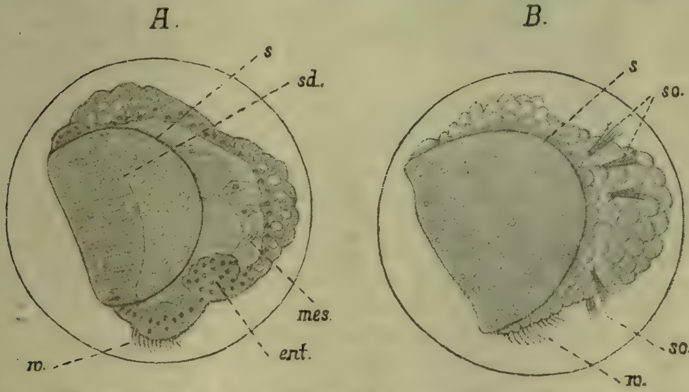


FIG. 534.—Two later stages in the development of **Anodonta.** *ent.* archenteron; *mes.* mesoderm; *s*, shell; *sd*, shell-gland; *so*, sense-organs; *w*, cilia. (From Korschelt and Heider's *Embryology.*)

beset with spines (Fig. 535, *sh*). At the same time the body of the larva, which has hitherto been an undivided mass projecting between the two valves of the shell, becomes cleft from below upwards, and thus divided into a single dorsally-placed body proper, and paired—right and left—mantle-lobes. Upon the latter peculiar brush-like sense-organs make their appearance, and on the ventral surface of the body is formed a glandular pouch, which secretes a long thread, the *provisional byssus* (*f*). The mesoderm cells give rise to a single immense adductor muscle (*sm*), the fibres of which extend from valve to valve.

The larva is now called a *glochidium:* it remains in the brood-pouch, nourished by a secretion from the walls of the latter, and entangled with its fellows by means of the byssus At this stage the outer gill appears to be stuffed full of closely aggregated sand-grains. Before long the larvæ are ejected through the exhalant siphon, and lie in masses on the bottom until they happen to come in contact with a passing Stickleback or other fresh-water Fish, when they fix themselves on some part of its body by means of the hooked valves. The glochidia of Unio usually become attached to the gills, those of Anodonta to the skin or the fins. In this position they become encysted by an overgrowth of the skin or mucous membrane of the host, and are nourished by its juices absorbed through processes of the mantle. They thus lead a truly ectoparasitic existence for about ten weeks.

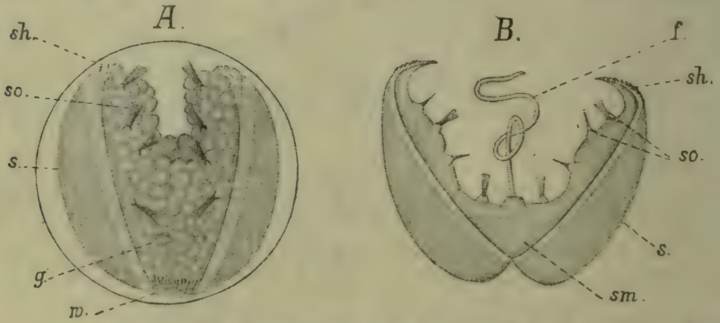


FIG. 535.—A, advanced embryo of **Anodonta.** B, free glochidium; *f*, provisional byssus; *s*, shell; *sh*, hooks; *sm*, adductor muscle; *so*, sense-organs; *w*, cilia. (From Korschelt and Heider's *Embryology*.)

While in this condition a metamorphosis takes place. The provisional byssus and sense-organs disappear (Fig. 536), and immediately posterior to the former an invagination, the *stomodæum* (*m*), is formed, and soon communicates with the archenteron. The posterior end of this cavity is in close contact with the ectoderm, so that the anus is formed by a simple process of rupture, and without the development of a proctodæum. The foot (*fu*) arises as a median ventral elevation behind the mouth, and on each side of it two papillæ (*k*) appear, the rudiments of the gills. The larva is now fitted for free existence: it drops from its host, and gradually assumes the adult form and mode of life.

2. Distinctive Characters and Classification.

The Pelecypoda are bilaterally symmetrical, compressed Molluscs, in which the mantle consists of paired right and left lobes, secreting a bivalved calcareous shell. There is no distinct head. The ventral region of the body is differentiated into a muscular foot, which is usually ploughshare- or tongue-shaped: in some cases there is a *byssus-gland* posterior to the foot, which secretes a mass of horny fibres, the *byssus*, by which the animal may be permanently attached. There are usually two pairs of gills, but the two gills of each side are to be looked upon as modifications of a single primitive gill or *ctenidium:* the chief function of the gills is the production of a respiratory and food-carrying current of water The body is covered by a one-layered epidermis, which is ciliated on the gills, and on the inner surface of the mantle. The muscular system is well developed, the largest muscles being either one or two adductors, which close the shell, and several bands connected with the foot and byssus: the muscles are usually unstriped. The cœlome is reduced to a dorsally-placed pericardium. The mouth

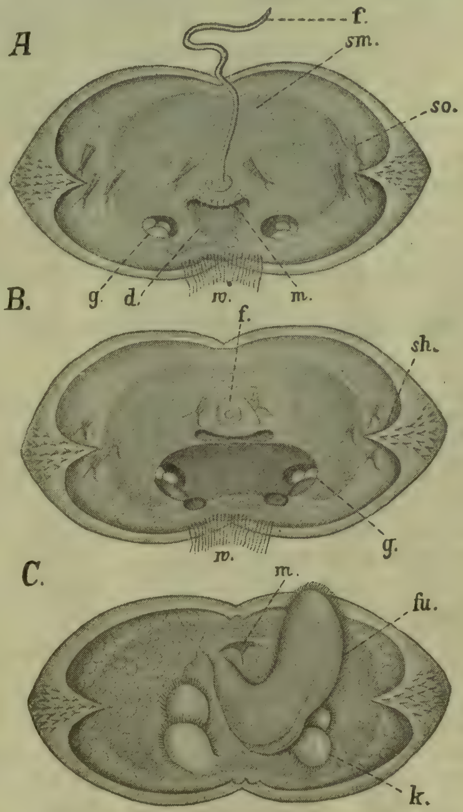


FIG. 536.—Three stages in the metamorphosis of **Anodonta**. *d*, enteric canal; *f*, provisional byssus; *fu*, foot; *g*, lateral pits; *k*, rudiments of gills; *m*. mouth; *sh*. shell; *sm*, adductor muscle; *so*, sense-organs; *w* cilia. (From Korschelt and Heider's *Embryology*.)

is bounded by two pairs of flat, triangular tentacles or labial palps the cilia of which serve to carry food particles to the mouth: the enteric canal is coiled, and is formed mainly from the mesenteron: there are large paired digestive glands: the rectum passes through the pericardium, usually perforates the ventricle, and ends above the posterior adductor. The heart is contained within the pericardium, and consists of a median ventricle, and of right and left auricles: the blood, which is usually colourless, is taken from the ventricle to the body by one or two aortæ, and is returned partly directly, partly by way of the renal organs and gills, to the auricles. The renal organs are a single pair of meso-nephridia, which usually open at one end into the pericardium, at the other on the exterior. The nervous system consists typically of four pairs of ganglia called respectively cerebral, pleural, pedal, and visceral: the cerebral and pleural of each side are usually fused into a single cerebro-pleural ganglion. The chief sense-organs are otocysts and osphradia or water-testing organs. The sexes are separate or united: there are no accessory organs of reproduction. Development is accompanied by a metamorphosis, which usually includes a trochosphere stage.

The classification of the Pelecypoda is as follows:—

ORDER 1.—PROTOBRANCHIA.

Pelecypoda, in which the gills take the form of a single pair of plume-like organs or ctenidia, each with two rows of flattened gill-filaments. The foot is not compressed, but has a flattened ventral surface or sole upon which the animal creeps. There are two adductor muscles.

This group includes only four genera—*Nucula*, *Yoldia*, *Leda*, and *Solenomya*.

ORDER 2.—FILIBRANCHIA.

Pelecypoda, in which there are two pairs of plate-like gills formed of distinct V-shaped filaments: interfilamentar junctions are either absent or formed by groups of interlocking cilia: interlamellar junctions are either absent or non-vascular. As a rule there are two adductor muscles, but the anterior may be greatly reduced or absent.

Including the Noah's ark shell (*Arca*), Sea mussel (*Mytilus*), *Anomia*, *Trigonia*, &c.

ORDER 3.—PSEUDO-LAMELLIBRANCHIA.

Pelecypoda, in which the gills are plaited so as to present vertical folds: the interfilamentar junctions may be ciliary or vascular: the interlamellar junctions vascular or non-vascular.

There is a single large (posterior) adductor muscle. The shell is frequently inequivalve.

Including—the Scallop (*Pecten*), Oyster (*Ostrea*), Pearl oyster (*Meleagrina*), *Lima*, *Pinna*, &c.

ORDER 4.—EULAMELLIBRANCHIA.

Pelecypoda in which the gill-filaments are united by vascular inter-filamentar and inter-lamellar junctions, firm, basket-like gills being the result: the gills may be smooth or plaited. There are two equal-sized adductor muscles.

Sub-order a.—Integripalliata.

Eulamellibranchia in which the siphons are small or absent, and the pallial line on the shell is entire.

Including the Fresh-water Mussels (*Anodonta* and *Unio*).

Sub-order b.—Sinupalliata.

Eulamellibranchia in which the siphons are of considerable size, and the pallial line is inflected to form a sinus.

Including the Cockle (*Cardium*), *Mya*, *Pholas*, *Teredo* (Shipworm), *Aspergillum*, &c.

ORDER 5.—SEPTIBRANCHIA.

Pelecypoda in which the gills are reduced to a horizontal muscular partition. There are two adductor muscles.

Including *Poromya*, *Cuspidaria*, &c.

Systematic Position of the Examples.

Anodonta and Unio are two genera belonging to the family *Unionidae*, sub-order *Asiphoniata*, order *Eulamellibranchia*.

Their complex basket-like gills are alone sufficient to place them among the Eulamellibranchia. The incomplete ventral siphon and the correlated entire pallial line (see p. 650) indicate their position among the *Asiphoniata*. The regular shell, with thick brown periostracum and large external ligament, the elongated branchial or inhalant aperture, the long, compressed foot, and the absence of a byssus, place them among the Unionidae. Anodonta is distinguished from Unio by the absence of hinge-teeth.

3. GENERAL ORGANISATION.

The most important variations in structure in the present class are connected with modifications of the gills, the foot, the muscular system, and the siphons. With the structure of the muscles and of the siphons are correlated important variations in the shell which are of great systematic value, especially in cases where, as with fossils, the shell is the only part available for examination.

In all the Protobranchia, some of the Filibranchia, such as Arca, and all the Eulamellibranchia and Septibranchia, there are two almost equal-sized **adductor muscles**, as in Anodonta. In many Filibranchs, such as the common Sea-mussel (*Mytilus edulis*), the anterior adductor becomes greatly reduced and the posterior correspondingly enlarged, and in another species of the same genus (*M. latus*) the anterior adductor has completely atrophied, the function of closing the shell being performed by the great posterior adductor alone. In Anomia and in the Pseudolamellibranchs there is a single immense adductor (Fig. 537 x, xi) placed nearly in the middle of the greatly shortened body, and known to represent the posterior adductor, both from the fact that the rectum passes over it; and from the circumstance that, in the embryo Oyster, two adductors are present, the anterior of which atrophies, while the posterior enlarges to form the single muscle of the adult.

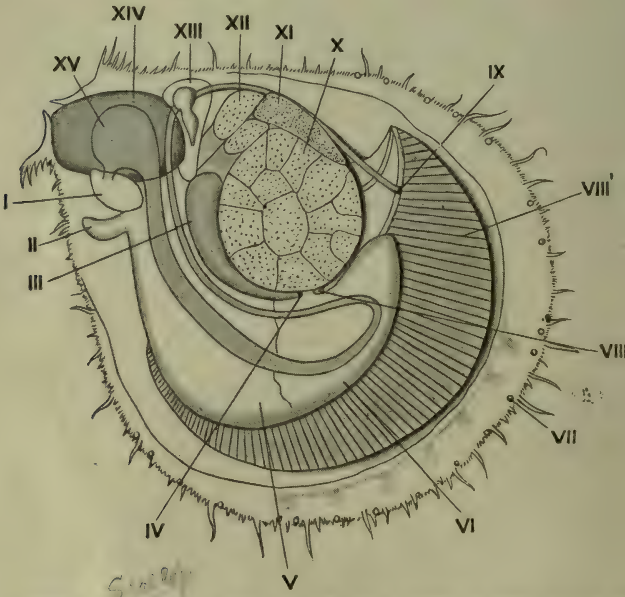


Fig. 537.—Anatomy of **Pecten.** I, palpi; II, foot; III, aperture of gonad into kidney; IV, external renal aperture; V, male portion of gonad; VI, female portion; VII, pallial eye; VIII, visceral ganglion; VIII′, gill; IX, anus; X, striated portion of adductor; XI, smooth portion; XII, retractor of foot; XIII, heart; XIV, liver; XV, stomach. (From Pelseneer's *Mollusques.*)

These peculiarities in the muscular system bear their mark upon the **shell,** in which impressions corresponding to the adductors are clearly marked on the inner surface (Fig. 538). The whole class is, in fact, frequently classified on this basis, species with equal-sized adductors (Protobranchs, some Filibranchs, and all Eulamellibranchs and Septibranchs) being called *Isomyaria* (A), those with a large posterior and a reduced anterior adductor (most Filibranchs) *Heteromyaria* (B), and those with large centrally placed posterior and no anterior adductor (Pseudolamellibranchs and Anomia among Filibranchs) *Monomyaria* (C).

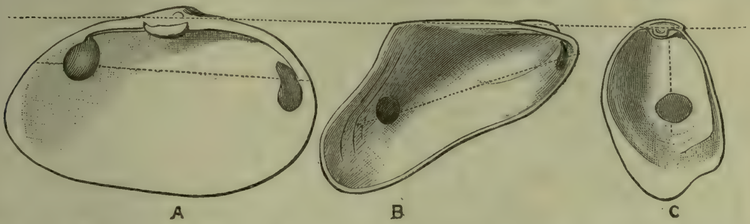


FIG. 538.—Left valves of A, **Mya**; B, **Modiola**; C, **Vulsella.** The upper dotted line passes through the hinge-lines, the lower connects the anterior and posterior adductor muscles. (From the *Cambridge Natural History.*)

In many forms, such as Nucula (Fig. 548), Ostrea, &c., the right and left mantle-lobes are quite free from each other, so that there are no **siphons.** In Anodonta and Unio, as we have seen, the two lobes unite along the line of attachment of the gills, so as to enclose a dorsal or exhalant siphon, a ventral or inhalant siphon being formed simply by apposition of the lobes ventrally. In such cases the pallial muscles in their neighbourhood act as retractors of the short and imperfect tubes thus formed. In other species a second concrescence of the mantle-lobes takes place so as to convert the inhalant siphon into an actual circumscribed aperture or short tube. In the Sinupalliata the two siphons are prolonged into distinct muscular tubes (Fig. 539, A. B) which, in the position of extension, project beyond the posterior margin of the shell, and may even be considerably longer than the body. Under

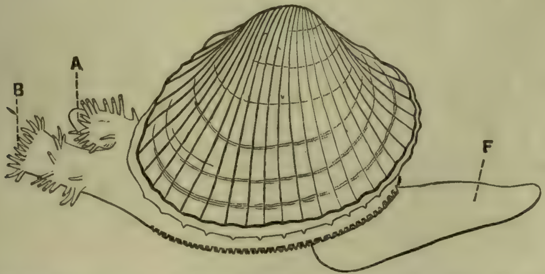


FIG. 539.—**Cardium edule.** A, exhalant siphon; B, inhalant siphon; F, foot. (From the *Cambridge Natural History*).

these circumstances the posterior pallial muscles become enlarged to form retractors of the siphons, and the portion of the pallial line from which they arise becomes, as it were, pushed forwards so as to form a bay or *pallial sinus* (Fig. 540, *p.s.*). Thus the shells of species with well-developed siphons are *sinupalliate*, or have an indented pallial line, while those with small or no siphons are *integripalliate*, or have an entire pallial line. The larger the siphons the stronger are their muscles, and the deeper is the pallial sinus: when very large they cannot be completely retracted, and the posterior border of the shell then gapes permanently. The siphons may be separate (Fig. 541) or united (Fig. 542). They are specially adapted for species of burrowing habits, which are able to remain buried in the mud or sand, the ends of the siphons only being exposed for the supply of aërated water and food, and even they can be instantly withdrawn in the event of danger.

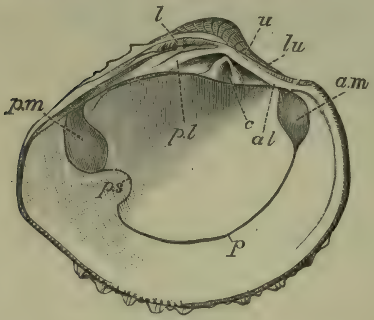


FIG. 540.—**Venus gnidia,** inner surface of left valve; *al*, anterior lateral tooth; *am*, anterior adductor impression; *c*, cardinal teeth; *l*, ligament; *lu.* lunule; *p*, pallial line; *p. l*, posterior lateral tooth; *p. m*, posterior adductor impression; *p. s.* pallial sinus; *u.* umbo. (From the *Cambridge Natural History.*)

In addition to their union posteriorly to form the siphons, the mantle-lobes may concresce to a greater or less extent along their ventral border (Fig. 543), forming a more or less tubular investment for the body, and leaving an anterior *pedal aperture* for the protrusion of the foot. Their anterior portions may also be united to form a sort of hood.

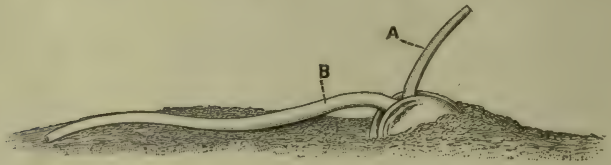


FIG. 541.—**Scrobicularia piperata,** in its natural position, partly buried in sand. A, exhalant siphon; B, inhalant siphon. (From the *Cambridge Natural History.*)

To return to the **shell**, the muscular impressions and the pallial line have already been referred to. As a general rule the right and left valves are alike, or nearly so, the shell being therefore *equivalve*. Each valve is *inequilateral*, being divided into unequal portions by a line drawn from the umbo to the gape. It will be remembered that in the Brachiopoda, the only other class of bivalved animals, the precise opposite is the case, the shell being equilateral and inequivalved. Some Pseudolamellibranchs are, however, nearly equilateral and markedly inequivalved, such as the scallop (*Pecten*), and the inequivalve character is still more marked in the oyster, in which the right valve is deeply concavo-convex and permanently attached to a rock, while the left is flat and forms a sort of lid. This condition of things reaches its maximum in the extinct *Hippurites* (Fig. 544, B.), in which the right valve has the form of a long tube closed at one end by the flat lid-like left valve. In the extinct *Requienia* (A) the left valve is spirally coiled so that it resembles a snail-shell, and its aperture is closed by the flat lid-like right valve: in *Diceras*, also extinct, both valves are coiled.

The hinge-teeth (Fig. 540) vary indefinitely in form and size or may be absent altogether: the hinge-ligament is usually band-like, but in Pecten takes the form of a cylindrical cord. The variations in form, ornamentation, colour, &c., among the many thousand known species of shell are too numerous to mention; but reference must be made to peculiar modifications found in certain burrowing forms. In *Pholas*, a siphonate genus which burrows in stone, the shell is weak and brittle, and additional calcareous pieces are developed between

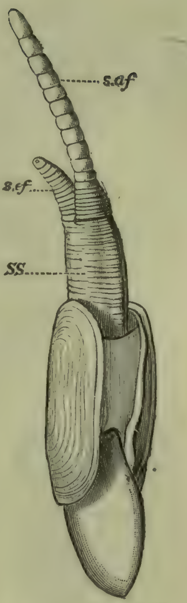


FIG. 542.—**Solecurtus strigillatus.** *s. af*, inhalant siphon; *s. ef*, exhalant siphon, the two united at SS. (From the *Cambridge Natural History*.)

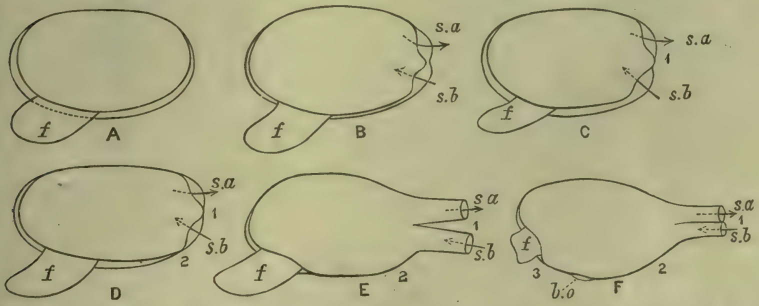


FIG. 543.—Diagram illustrating the various degrees of union of the mantle-lobes; *b. o*, byssal aperture; *f*, foot; *s. a*, exhalant siphon; *s. b*, inhalant siphon; *1*, first point of union between siphons; *2*, second, between inhalant siphon and foot; *3*, third, between byssa aperture and foot. (From the *Cambridge Natural History*.)

the two valves. In *Teredo* (Fig. 545), the so-called Ship-worm, which causes great destruction by boring into piles, ships'-timbers, &c., the valves (*v.*) remain very small and weak but movable, and the general surface of the mantle secretes a continuous shelly tube which lines the burrow. In *Aspergillum* (Fig. 546) the valves are completely fused to the tube, the anterior end of which is closed by a plate perforated with numerous holes like the rose of a watering-pot.

In *Nucula*, *Arca*, &c., the **foot** (Fig. 548, *ft.*) presents what may be considered as its most primitive form, having a flat ventral surface or sole upon which the animal creeps. Far more common is the ploughshare-like form we are already familiar with in Anodonta and Unio, adapted for slowly making its way through sand or mud. In a few forms, *e.g.* Trigonia and Cardium, it is bent upon itself and is capable of being suddenly straightened so as to act as a leaping organ: in Mytilus it is cylindrical (Fig. 547, F): in the Oyster it is absent. In addition to the anterior and posterior retractors the foot is sometimes provided with a *levator* muscle (Fig. 548, *l*), particularly well developed in Nucula and its allies.

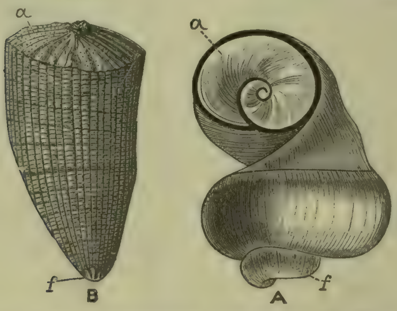


Fig. 544.—**Requienia ammonea;** B, **Hippurites cornu-vaccinum.** *a*, right valve; *f*, point of fixation. (From the *Cambridge Natural History*.)

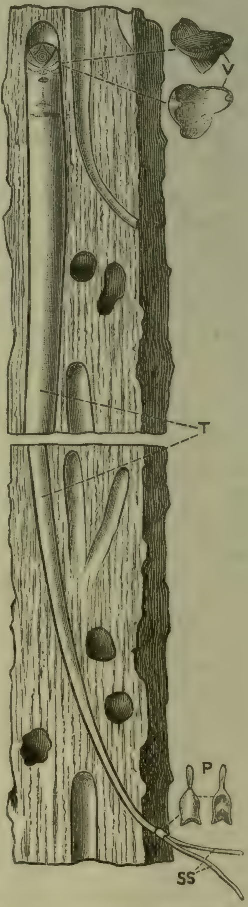


Fig. 545.—**Teredo navalis,** in a piece of timber. P. pallets; *ss.* siphons; T. tube; V. valve of shell. (From the *Cambridge Natural History*).

Immediately posterior to the foot a **byssus-gland** is frequently found: it secretes a silky substance in the form of threads, which serve to anchor the animal permanently or temporarily. It is by means of the byssus that the Sea-mussel (*Mytilus*) is attached to the rocks (Fig. 547, *By*): in *Pinna* the threads are fine enough to be woven in a fabric. In *Lima* the threads of the byssus are spun into a kind of nest in which the animals lie protected, and in *Vulsella* the gelatinous byssus forms a sheath within which the entire shell, which is of a delicate character, can be retracted. In such forms as Mytilus the muscles which ordinarily serve to retract the foot are inserted mainly into the byssus: the latter being fixed they serve to rotate the animal in various directions or, in other words, act as *adjustors.* It must be borne in mind that the definitive byssus just described is not homologous with the provisional byssus of Anodonta (p. 644) which lies in front of the mouth.

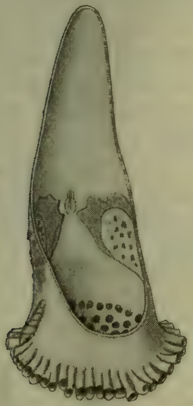


FIG. 546.—**Aspergillum.** (After Sowerby.)

The **gills** are found in their simplest form in the Protobranchia (e.g. Nucula), where they consist of a single plume-like organ or *ctenidium* (Fig. 548, *gl*) on each side of the body. Each ctenidium is of small size compared with the gills of Anodonta, and is formed of a longitudinal *axis,* fixed at its anterior end and free posteriorly, to which are attached two rows—an inner and outer—of somewhat triangular *gill-filaments,* all perfectly free from one another (Fig. 549, A).

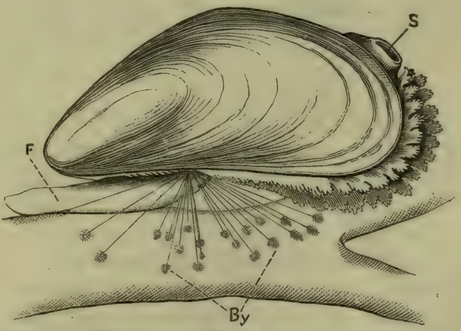


FIG. 547.—**Mytilus edulis,** attached by byssus (*By.*) to a piece of wood; F. foot; S, exhalant siphon. (From the *Cambridge Natural History.*)

In *Amusium* (B) the gill-filaments are much elongated and thread-like instead of triangular. In the common Ark-shell (*Arca*, C) a great change is seen. The gill-filaments are delicate and somewhat flattened threads, each bent upon itself into the form of an elongated U, and therefore consisting of a proximal or fixed limb and a distal or free limb. The flexure takes place in such a way that the free limb is external in the outer row of filaments, internal in the inner row. Adjacent filaments are loosely united by groups of large interlocking cilia (Fig. 550), placed at regular intervals, and in this way the outer and inner limbs of the filaments are respectively joined together, so as to convert each longitudinal row of U-shaped filaments into a double plate, fairly coherent unless the ciliary junctions are forcibly separated. In this way the single ctenidium of Nucula has given place to two plate-like gills, each formed of an outer and an inner lamella: the inner lamella of the outer and the outer lamella of the inner gill are united along their dorsal edges, the line of junction representing the axis of the ctenidium: the outer lamella of the outer and the inner lamella of the inner gill are free dorsally.

In Mytilus (Fig. 549, D) the gill is strengthened by the development of delicate non-vascular bars or inter-lamellar junctions between the two limbs of each filament. In Lucina these junctions are large and provided with blood-vessels, and vascular bars of tissue, the inter-filamentar junctions, replace the ciliary junctions of the lower forms. Thus by a regular series of gradations the ctenidium is replaced by the complex double gill we are already familiar with in Anodonta. In all the higher forms the outer lamella of the outer gill concresces with the mantle and the inner lamella of the inner gill with the visceral mass, while, posterior to the latter, the inner lamellæ of the right and left inner gills unite with one another. The blood-vessels, which are confined to the filaments in the simpler types, occur only in the inter-filamentar and inter-lamellar junctions in the more complex forms of gill. In the Septibranchia the gills are degenerate, being represented by a horizontal muscular partition or septum

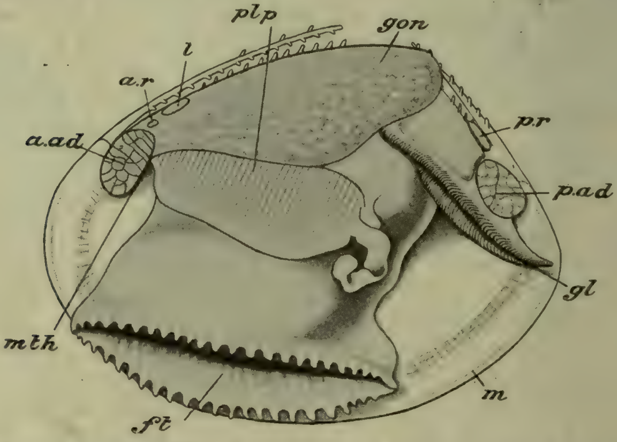


FIG. 548.—**Nucula nucleus,** the animal with the left mantle-lobe removed; *a. ad.* anterior adductor; *ar*, anterior retractor; *ft.* foot; *gl.* gill; *gon.* gonad; *l.* levator; *m.* right lobe of mantle; *mth.* mouth; *p. ad.* posterior adductor; *plp.* palp; *p. r.* posterior retractor. (After Pelseneer.)

(Fig. 549, F, *sep.* and Fig. 551 IX), which divides the inhalant and exhalant chambers from one another. Respiration in this case is performed entirely by the internal face of the mantle.

Digestive Organs.—The mouth is anterior; in forms with two adductor muscles it is always placed immediately behind the anterior adductor. It is bounded by two pairs of labial palps which sometimes attain an immense size (Fig. 548); there is never any trace of jaws or other masticatory apparatus. The convolutions of the intestine are sometimes very complex. The crystalline style either lies freely in the stomach and anterior part of the intestine, or is contained in a cœcal pouch of the stomach (Fig. 552), which may be prolonged into one of the lobes of the mantle. The anterior end of the style, which projects into the stomach, appears to be slowly dissolved by the digestive juice,

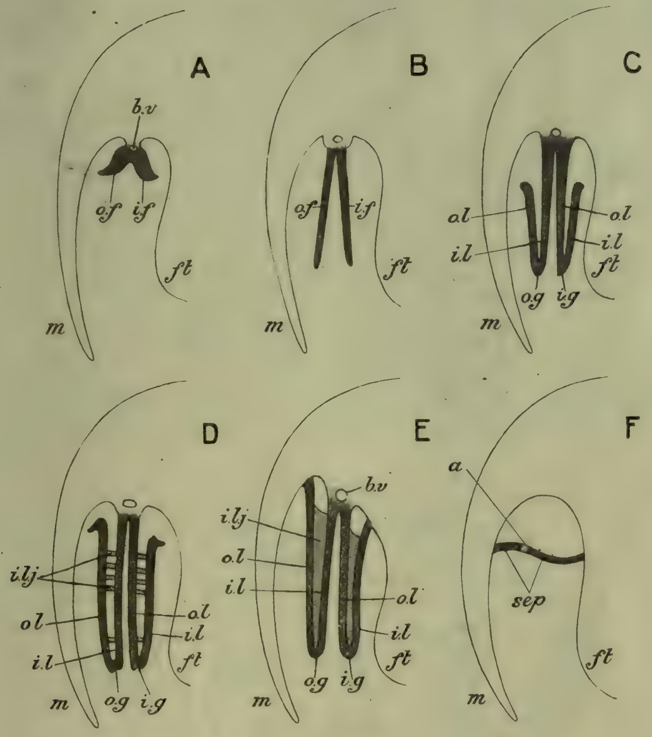


FIG. 549.—Half transverse sections of various Pelecypoda to show the chief kinds of gill. A, **Nucula**; B, **Amusium**; C, **Arca**; D, **Mytilus**; E, **Anodonta**; F, **Poromya**. *a.* aperture in branchial septum; *b. v.* blood vessel; *ft.* foot; *i. f.* inner row of filaments; *i. g.* inner gill; *i. l.* inner lamella; *i. l. j.* inter-lamellar junctions; *m.* mantle; *o. f.* outer row of filaments; *o. g.* outer gill; *o. l.* outer lamella; *sep.* branchial septum. (Modified from Korschelt and Heider and Lang.)

forming a sort of cement to enclose the hard particles of the food and prevent any harmful effect on the mucous membrane.

The **excretory organs** occur in their simplest form in the Protobranchia, in which they have the forms of cylindrical curved tubes or meso-nephridia (Fig. 553, vi), opening at one end into the pericardium and at the other on to the exterior; the whole nephridium is lined with glandular epithelium, and has no communication with its fellow of the opposite side. In the higher forms the organ becomes differentiated into a secreting portion or kidney, which becomes very spongy in texture, and opens into the pericardium, and a non-secretory portion or bladder, which opens externally. Frequently there is a communication between the right and left nephridia, and in some genera, such as the Oyster, the organs become extensively branched.

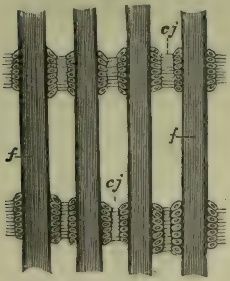


FIG. 550.—Four gill-filaments of **Mytilus**. *c.j.* ciliary junction; *f.* filaments. (From the *Cambridge Natural History.*)

Circulatory Organs.—The heart is usually perforated by the rectum, but lies altogether above it in Nucula (Fig. 553, vii) and some other genera; the ordinary arrangement seems to have been brought about by the heart becoming folded over the intestine and united below. In the Oyster and some other forms the heart is below the rectum. Pores are often found on the surface of the foot, and it has been asserted that through them the

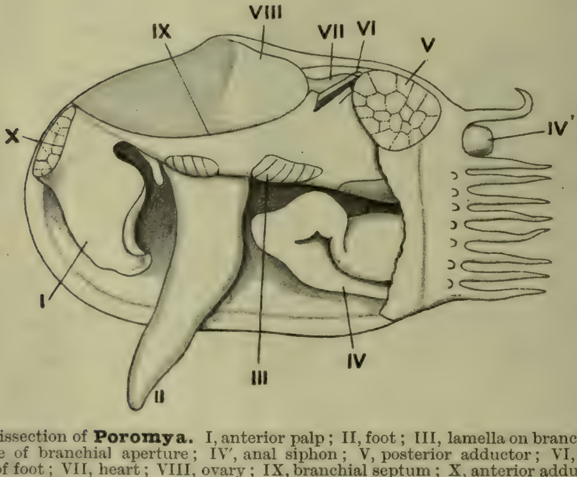


FIG. 551.—Dissection of **Poromya.** I, anterior palp; II, foot; III, lamella on branchial septum; IV, valve of branchial aperture; IV′, anal siphon; V, posterior adductor; VI, posterior retractor of foot; VII, heart; VIII, ovary; IX, branchial septum; X, anterior adductor. (From Pelseneer's *Mollusques.*)

external water mixes with the blood; this is, however, certainly not the case: the blood system is everywhere closed.

The **nervous system** is found in its most primitive condition in Nucula (Fig. 554). Instead of a single cerebro-pleural ganglion there are, on each side, distinct cerebral (xvi.) and pleural (I) ganglia, each united by a connective with the pedal.

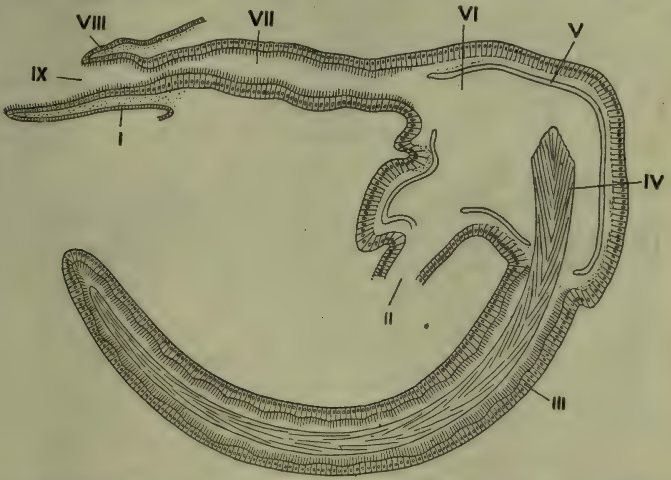


Fig. 552.—Sagittal section of part of enteric canal of **Donax.** I, lower lip; II, intestine; III, pyloric cœcum; IV, crystal style; V, cuticle; VI, stomach; VII, gullet; VIII, upper lip; IX, mouth. (From Pelseneer's *Mollusques.*)

The most characteristic **sense-organs** are the otocysts and the osphradia. The *otocyst*—auditory or directive organ—is always placed in the foot, just behind the pedal ganglion, to which it is connected by a nerve: the latter probably has its origin in the cerebral ganglion. The otocysts are developed as involutions of the ectoderm, but, except in Nucula (Fig. 554, x–xii), the connection with the exterior is lost, and they become shut sacs.

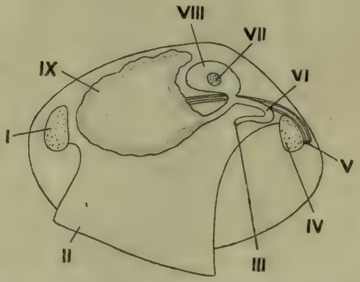


Fig. 553.—Diagram of **Nucula.** I, anterior adductor; II, foot; III, renal aperture; IV, posterior adductor; V, anus; VI, kidney; VII, ventricle; VIII, pericardium; IX, gonad. (From Pelseneer.)

The *osphradia*—olfactory or water-testing organs—are patches of sensory epithelium situated in immediate relation with the visceral ganglia (Fig. 554, viii), from which they are usually said to be innervated. There is, however, some reason for thinking that the osphradial

U-U

nerve actually springs from the cerebral ganglion. Patches of sensory epithelium, very similar to the osphradia, and called the *abdominal sense-organs*, occur, one on each side of the anus, in Arca and other asiphoniate forms, and a similar organ has been described beside the retractor muscles of the siphons in several Siphoniata.

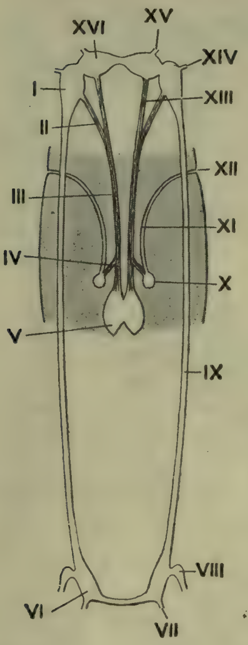


FIG. 554.—Nervous system and auditory organs of **Nucula.** I, pleural ganglion; II, pleuro-pedal-connective; III, common connective from cerebral and pleural to pedal ganglia; IV, auditory nerve; V, pedal ganglion; VI, visceral ganglion; VII, posterior pallial nerve; VIII, osphradium; IX, visceral connective; X, otocyst; XI, canal of otocyst; XII, its external aperture; XIII, cerebro-pedal connective; XIV, anterior pallial nerve; XV, nerve to palps; XVI, cerebral ganglion. (From Pelseneer.)

In a few instances *eyes* are present, but never in what we are accustomed to consider as the normal position for such organs, at the anterior or head end of the body. They occur, in fact, in the only situation where they can be of any use, namely, along the edge of the mantle. The best known form in which they occur is the common Scallop (*Pecten*), which has a single row (Fig. 537, vii) all round the mantle border. Each has a cornea (Fig. 555 *1*), a cellular (not cuticular) lens (*2*), a retina (*5*), formed of cells, the inner ends of which are modified into visual rods, and an optic nerve (*7*), one branch of which spreads over the front of the retina and sends branches backwards to the visual rods. In this pecularity, as well as in the cellular lens, the eye of Pecten is singularly like that of Vertebrates. The pallial eyes of Pelecypoda are probably to be looked upon as modified tentacles.

Reproduction and Development.—Most Pelecypoda are diœcious, but several hermaphrodite forms are known. Some of these, such as the Oyster, are protandrous, the gonad producing first sperms and afterwards ova: in others part of the gonad serves as an ovary, part as a testis, the two opening into a common duct: in others again there is a distinct ovary and testis on each side opening by separate ducts. There are never any accessory organs of reproduction, such as spermatheca, penis, etc. Fertilisation frequently takes place in the water after the eggs are laid. Segmentation is total but unequal, and the gastrula is formed either by invagination or by epiboly. A shell-gland (Fig. 556 *sd.*) is formed as an invagination of the dorsal surface, a stomodæum (*m*) as an invagination of the ventral surface, and the larva of most forms, unlike that of Anodonta or Unio, passes into a stage in which it closely resembles the trochosphere of Worms (Fig. 556) having a pre-oral and a post-oral circlet of cilia, a tuft of cilia round the anus, and an apical tuft in the middle of the prostomium. There is also an ectodermal thickening on the prostomium which becomes the cerebral ganglion, and a similar ventral thickening which gives rise to the pedal ganglion and corresponds with the rudiment of the ventral nerve-cord in Worms. The pelecypod trochosphere is, however, distinguished from the corresponding stage in Worms by the presence of the shell-gland, which soon secretes a delicate unpaired shell. The prostomial region grows out into a thickened retractile rim, bearing the pre-oral circlet of cilia, and called the *velum* (Fig. 557 *vel.*) : the larva at this stage is distinguished as a *veliger*—a very characteristic molluscan

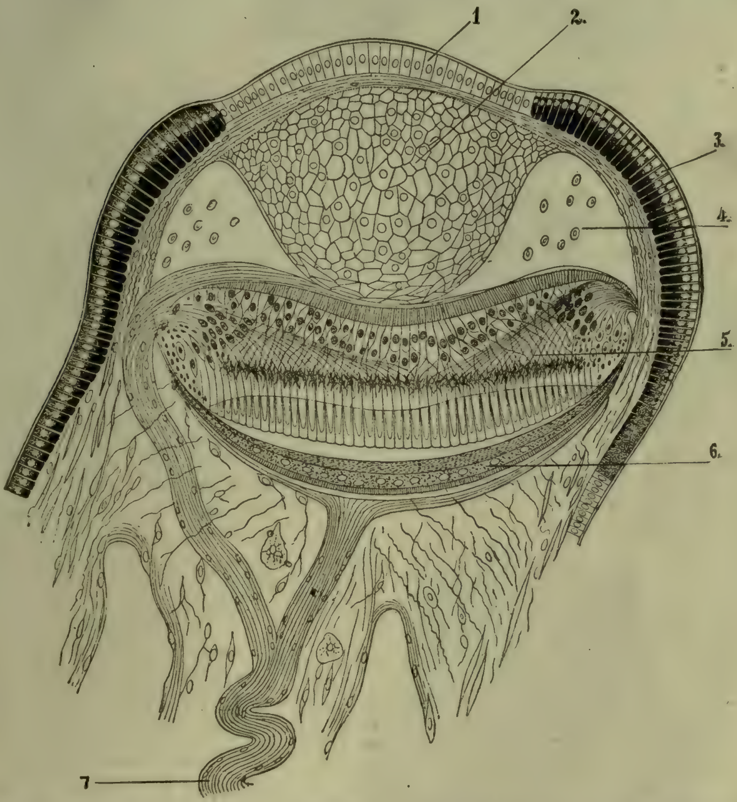


FIG. 555.—Vertical section of eye of **Pecten.** *1*, cornea; *2*, lens; *3*, external epithelium *4*, blood-sinus; *5*, retina; *6*, pigmentary layer; *7*, optic nerve. (From Korschelt and Heider.)

phase of development. The shell soon becomes bivalved and extends ventrally on each side, paired processes of the dorsal region of the body accompanying it and forming the mantle-lobes. A projection grows out from the ventral surface, between mouth and anus, and becomes the foot (Fig. 558 *f*), and on the sides of the body the gill-filaments (*k*) arise as a row of delicate processes, at first simple, but afterwards becoming bent upon themselves so as to assume a V-shape. Eyes are often present in the larva at the base of the velum.

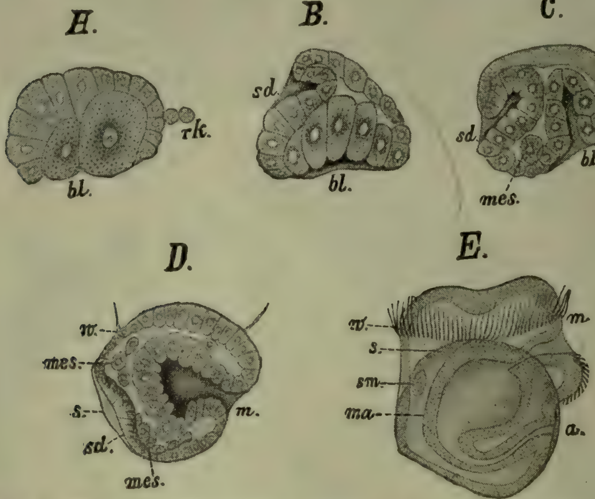


FIG. 556.—Five stages in the development of **Ostrea.** *a.* anus; *bl.* blastopore; *m.* mouth; *ma*, stomach; *mes.* mesoderm; *rk*, polar bodies; *s.* shell; *sd*, shell-gland; *sm*, anterior adductor; *w*, pre-oral circlet of cilia. (From Korschelt and Heider.)

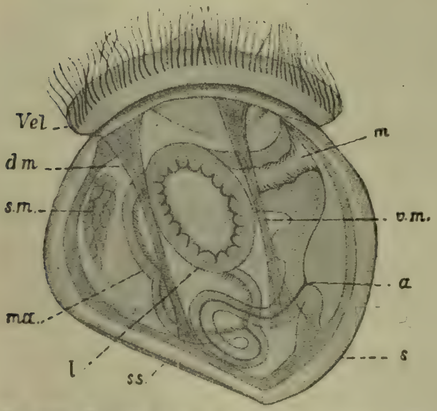


FIG. 557.—Veliger larva of **Ostrea.** *a.* anus; *dm.* dorsal longitudinal muscle; *l.* liver; *m.* mouth; *ma*, stomach; *s.* shell; *sm*, adductor muscle; *ss*, hinge of shell; *vel.* velum; *vm.* ventral longitudinal muscle. (From Korschelt and Heider.)

General Remarks.—Although none of the Pelecypoda are microscopic, they present a considerable range in size, from the little fresh-water *Cyclas*, about 1 cm. long to the Giant Clam (*Tridacna gigas*) of the Indian and Pacific islands, which is sometimes 60 cm. (two feet) in length and 500 pounds in weight.

Many pelecypod shells are white or dull brown in colour, but in several genera brilliant tints are the rule, the various species of Scallop (*Pecten*) being specially remarkable in this respect. The inner surface of the shell often exhibits beautiful iridescent tints, noticeably in the so-called Pearl-oyster (*Meleagrina*) and the Australian *Trigonia*. As far as is known, the colours are all what are called "non-significant," *i.e.* are of no physiological or ethological importance. In this connection the formation of *pearls* by some species must be mentioned: they are deposits of nacre formed round sand-grains or other foreign bodies, either between the mantle and shell or in the soft parts. They are produced, amongst other species, by the "Pearl-oyster" (*Meleagrina margaritifera*) and by the Pearl-mussel (*Unio margaritifera*). Some species, such as the common boring *Pholas*, are phosphorescent.

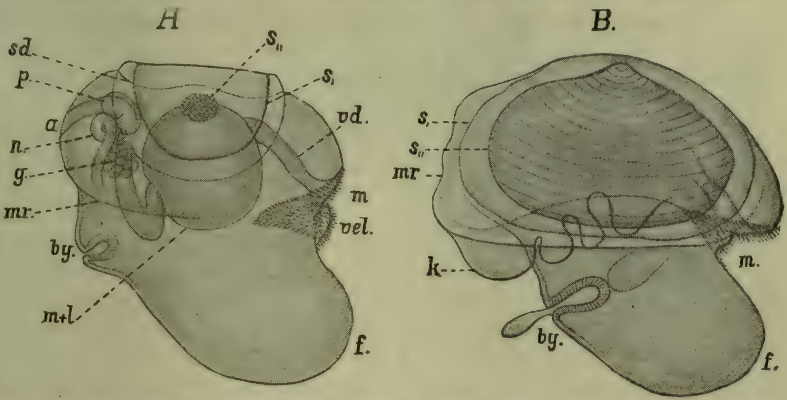


FIG. 558.—Two embryos of **Cyclas.** *a.* anus; *by.* byssus gland; *f.* foot; *g.* gonad; *k,* gill; *m.* mouth; *m+l.* stomach and liver; *mr,* edge of mantle; *n,* kidney; *p.* pericardium; *s'.* unpaired shell; *s''.* rudiment of paired shell; *sd,* shell gland; *vd,* gullet; *vel.* velar area. (From Korschelt and Heider).

Most ~~Pelecypoda are sluggish in~~ habit, progressing only by slow contractions of the foot, and some are permanently fixed, during adult life, by the byssus. The Scallops, however, swim freely by clapping the valves together. The Cockles (*Cardium*), *Trigonia*, etc., jump by sudden movements of the foot, and the Razor-fish (*Solen*) jerks itself forward by suddenly withdrawing its foot and thus ejecting water through the siphons. The only parasitic genus is *Entovalva*, found in the gullet of a Holothurian.

Pelecypoda are abundant both in fresh water and the sea; the marine forms are mainly littoral. None are pelagic or terrestrial. They are very abundant in the fossil condition, occurring in all formations from the Upper Cambrian upwards, and, owing to their gregarious habits, frequently forming extensive deposits or shell-beds. The oldest forms are all iso- or hetero-myarian the monomyarian types (Pseudolamellibranchia) appear first in the Carboniferous, and the Siphoniata not until the Triassic period. The modern genus Arca dates from the Upper Cambrian, and thus furnishes as striking an example of a "persistent type" as some of the Brachiopods.

There seems to be little doubt that the Protobranchia, and especially Nucula, exhibit the most primitive type of pelecypod organisation, as indicated by the plume-like gills with separate filaments, the simple nephridia, and the distinct cerebral and pleural ganglia; absence of concrescence is always a mark of low or generalised organisation. The Filibranchia with imperfectly united gill-filaments come next, and are divisible into two groups, isomyarian with equal-sized adductors and heteromyarian with more or less atrophied anterior and proportionally enlarged posterior adductor; the latter group is to be looked upon as the more specialised, and leads to the Pseudolamellibranchia (monomyarian) in which the anterior adductor disappears completely in the adult, while the posterior is immensely enlarged and assumes a central position. Similarly the isomyarian Filibranchia lead to the Eulamellibranchia, which are equal-muscled, but have the gill-filaments united into a complete basket-work. In the Eulamellibranchia, lastly, there is a gradual series of stages from comparatively generalised forms with free mantle-lobes up to the highly specialised species with large siphons. That the Pseudolamellibranchia and the siphoniate Eulamellibranchia are to be looked upon as the highest members of the class, is indicated, not only by morphological evidence, but by their comparatively late appearance in time.

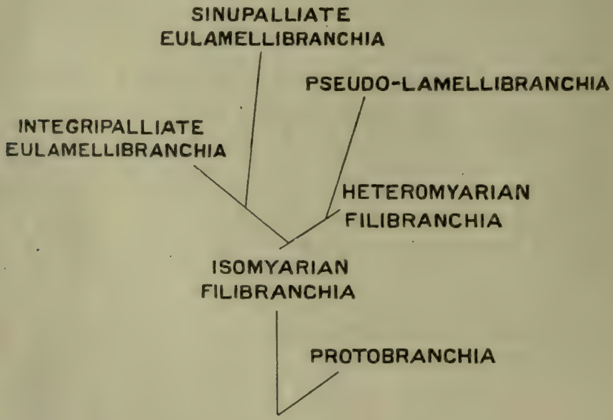


FIG. 559.—Diagram illustrating the mutual relationships of the Pelecypoda.

CLASS II.—AMPHINEURA.

The Amphineura are a class of marine Mollusca formerly grouped with the Gastropoda, but now recognised as sufficiently far removed from the latter to require separation as a distinct class. The commonest, as well as the most highly organised, of the Amphineura are the *Chitons*, a group of remarkably sluggish Limpet-like Molluscs with a shell composed of eight pieces. The other members of the class are lowly organised forms, comprising the most primitive of the entire phylum, all of which are devoid of a shell.

1. Distinctive Characters and Classification.

The Amphineura may be defined as bilaterally symmetrical, more or less elongated Mollusca, with terminal mouth and anus, either devoid of a shell, or possessing one which consists of eight median valves. The mantle contains numerous spicules of carbonate of lime, and is not divided into paired lateral lobes. The ctenidia are either absent, or there is a single pair, or they occur as a circlet round the anus, or as two lateral rows situated between the edge of the mantle and the side of the foot. An odontophore (*vide infra*) is sometimes present, sometimes absent. The nervous system consists of two pairs of nerve-cords, pedal and pallial, connected in front with a nerve-ring.

The class is divisible into two orders :—

Order 1.—Placophora.

Amphineura with a broad foot, and with a shell which consists of eight transverse valves. There is a row of ctenidia on either side.

This order includes the Chitons.

Order 2.—Aplacophora.

Amphineura with an elongated body covered completely by the mantle, without shell, but with calcareous spicules. There is no foot, but generally a ventral longitudinal groove along which usually runs a low ciliated ridge. In some there is a posterior cavity containing a pair or a circlet of ctenidia.

This order includes *Neomenia*, *Proneomenia*, *Chætoderma*, and several allied genera.

2. General Organisation.

External Features.—The Aplacophora are distinguished by their worm-like body, sometimes elongated and narrow and capable of being coiled into a spiral, sometimes comparatively short and thick. In most instances there is little difference in external appearance between the anterior and posterior ends. In *Chætoderma* (Fig. 560) alone is there a distinct head, separated off from the body by a constriction, as well as a posterior cloacal region which is similarly marked off. A shell is completely absent. The mantle covering the surface possesses a cuticle, in the substance or on the surface of which are spicules of calcified material. Along the middle of the ventral surface runs, in most instances, a groove, in some cases merely represented by a narrow strip from which the cuticle and spicules are absent. The ventral groove, when present, usually contains a slight longitudinal ridge, and this is all that in these primitive forms represents the foot, an organ so highly developed in other Molluscs. In Chætoderma it is entirely absent. With the ventral groove is connected in front an anterior ciliated groove, while behind it is in direct communication with the cavity of the cloaca.

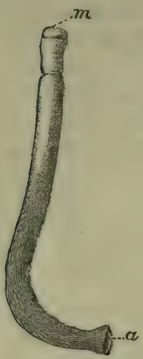


FIG. 560.—**Chætoderma nitidulum.** *a.* anus; *m.* mouth. (From the *Cambridge Natural History.*)

In *Proneomenia* **ctenidia** are absent. In the remaining genera there is either a pair or a circlet of gills situated in the cloaca—a cavity at the posterior end of the body into which the anus opens (Fig. 565).

In *Chiton* (Figs. 562 and 563) the body is dorso-ventrally compressed, convex above, and presents below a broad flat foot (narrow in *Chitonellus*) which acts not only as an organ for effecting creeping movements, but also as a sucker for enabling the animal when at rest to adhere firmly, like a Limpet, to the surface of a rock. The most remarkable external feature of Chiton is the presence on the dorsal surface of a calcareous shell (Figs. 562 and 564) made up of no fewer than eight transversely elongated pieces or valves, arranged in a longitudinal row, articulating together and partly overlapping one another. These valves are primitive, being direct developments of a series of shell-glands of the embryo and not secondary structures like the shells of other Molluscs. They are sometimes partly, sometimes completely, covered over by the mantle. Each valve consists of two very distinct layers, a more superficial and a deeper, the latter formed of compact calcareous substance, the former perforated by numerous vertical canals for the lodgment of the sense-organs to be presently referred to. External

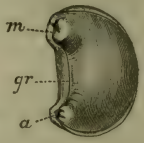


FIG. 561.—**Neomenia carinata.** *a.* anus; *gr.* ventral groove; *m.* mouth. (From the *Cambridge Natural History.*)

to the valves the dorsal integument (mantle) of Chiton and its allies is usually beset with a number of horny or calcified tubercles

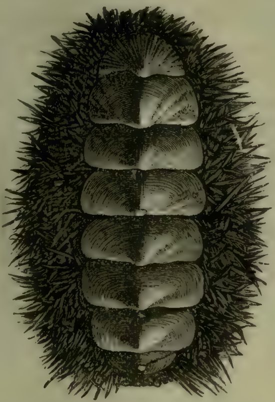


FIG. 562.—**Chiton spinosus,** dorsal view. (From the *Cambridge Natural History.*)

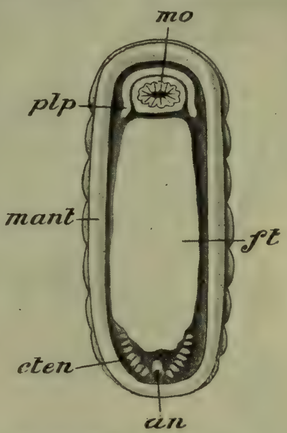


FIG. 563.—**Chiton,** ventral view. *an.* anus; *cten.* ctenidia; *ft.* foot; *mant.* mantle edge; *mo.* mouth. (After Pelseneer.)

and spicules. The mantle develops only very slight lateral flaps, and under cover of these are a series of small ctenidia (Figs. 563 and 569, *cten*) to the number of fourteen to eighty. The mouth and anus are both median, situated at the anterior and posterior extremities respectively.

Alimentary System.—In the Aplacophora the mouth is usually a longitudinal, rarely (Chætoderma) a transverse, slit, situated ventrally near the anterior extremity. There is a buccal cavity, with in some cases an odontophore[1] (Fig. 565, *rad*) in others a single chitinous tooth; sometimes teeth are entirely absent. There are both salivary and buccal glands. Very characteristic of the group as compared with other Molluscs is the presence of a straight intestine devoid of coils. It has connected with it either a single cœcum or a double row. In the Placophora the buccal cavity always contains a well-developed odontophore. The intestine is elongated

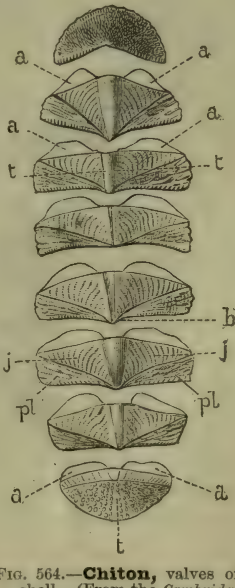


FIG. 564.—**Chiton,** valves of shell. (From the *Cambridge Natural History.*)

---

[1] For a description of the structure of this characteristic organ, see the account of Triton, *infra.*

and coiled. There are salivary glands and a large paired liver (Fig. 566, *liv.*)

Body-Cavity.—In the Aplacophora the interstices between the organs and the body wall are filled with a form of connective tissue with muscular fibres; a vertical diaphragm (Fig. 565, *dia.*) separates the posterior part of the body, containing the pericardium (*peri*), from the rest. In the Placophora the cœlome (Fig. 566), is an extensive cavity, lined with a cœlomic epithelium, and divided into three completely separated parts, the pericardium, the genital cavity, and the general body cavity.

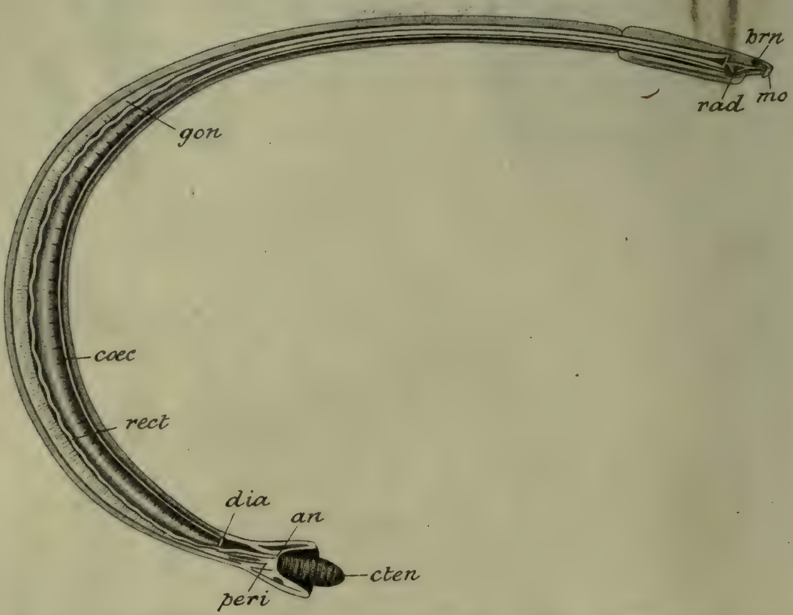


FIG. 565.—**Chætoderma nitidulum,** longitudinal section. *an.* anus; *brn.* brain; *cœc.* glandular cœca of mesenteron; *dia.* diaphragm separating off the posterior portion of the body *mo.* mouth; *peri.* pericardium and heart; *rad.* radula; *rect.* rectum. (After Simroth.)

Vascular System.—The existence of a *heart* in the Aplacophora is somewhat doubtful; the organ which is supposed to be of that nature is contained in a cavity termed the pericardium (Figs. 565 and 568, *peri*).

In Chiton there is a well-developed heart (Fig. 566, *ht.*) consisting of a median ventricle and two lateral auricles. The pericardial cavity in which it lies is a space of considerable extent in the posterior region of the body, below the two last valves of the shell.

The **Nervous System** consists in the Aplacophora (Fig. 567, *A*, *B*, *C*) of four longitudinal nerve cords—two *pedal* and two *pallial.*

These are connected together by an œsophageal ring, thickened dorsally into a single or double *cerebral ganglion;* and in front of this is a second, more slender *stomatogastric* nerve-ring with small ganglia. The pedal cords (*v.v*) may present in front a pair of ganglionic thickenings connected by [illegible]mmissure, a[illegible]er back th[illegible]y be a se[illegible] enlargeme[illegible]nited by com[illegible]res. The pallial cords (*l.l*) are connected behind, above the rectum, by a commissure (*p.c*) which usually bears a median enlargement. Sometimes a union takes place posteriorly between the cords of the two pairs. There are no eyes, nor otocysts, nor tentacles. Some have a sensory frontal lobe and a sensory pit or elevation in the middle line of the dorsal surface near the posterior end.

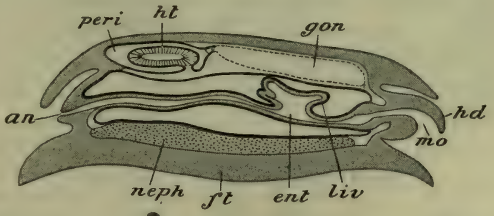


FIG. 566.—Diagrammatic longitudinal section of **Chiton,** specially intended to show the relations of the parts of the cœlome, which are bordered with a thick line. *an.* anus; *ent.* enteric cavity; *ft.* foot; *gon.* gonad; *hd.* head-lobes; *ht.* heart; *liv.* liver; *mo.* mouth; *neph.* nephridium; *peri.* pericardial cavity. (From Simroth, after Haller.)

In the Placophora (Fig. 567, *D*) there is an œsophageal nerve-ring consisting of a thicker dorsal *cerebral* portion not differentiated into ganglia, and a thinner ventral *buccal commissure.* The cerebral part sends off nerves to the labial palps, the lips, and the buccal apparatus. Two pairs of longitudinal nerve cords, *pedal* and *pallial,* are given off posteriorly. The former, which give off nerves to the foot, are joined by numerous commissures passing beneath the enteric canal. The latter, which send off nerves chiefly

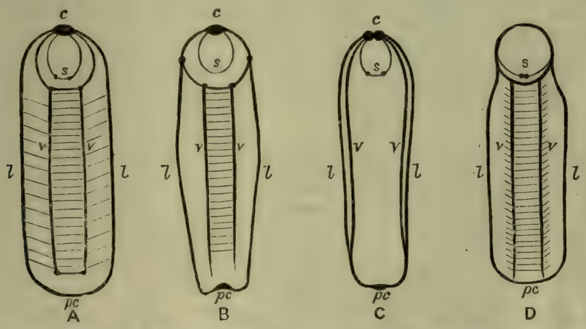


FIG. 567.—Nervous system of **Amphineura.** *A*, *Proneomenia*; *B*, *Neomenia*; *C*, *Chætoderma*; *D*, *Chiton*. *c*, cerebral ganglia; *l*, *l*, pallial cords; *pc*, posterior commissure; *s*, stomatogastric commissure or ring, with ganglia; *v*, *v*, pedal cords. (From the *Cambridge Natural History*, after Hubrecht.)

to the mantle and the ctenidia, are united together by a supra-rectal commissure at the posterior end of the body. Just behind its origin each pallial cord gives off a slender *visceral commissure*, which unites with its fellow of the opposite side: two small ganglia lie in this visceral commissure near the middle line. The large cords contain nerve-cells throughout their length.

The conspicuous organs of special sense, present on the head of Gastropods (*vide infra*), are absent in the Placophora, as in the Aplacophora. A pair of processes situated in front, at the sides of the mouth, have the character of labial palps. In the buccal cavity there are cup-shaped *gustatory organs* supplied with nerves from the cerebral commissures, and in front of the odontophore is a thickening of the epithelium—the *sub-radular organ*—containing nerve-endings. Remarkable sensory organs, the *micræsthetes* and the *megalæsthetes*, lie in the canals already mentioned as occurring in the superficial layer of the shell valves. The megalæsthetes may take the form of eyes, with cornea, lens, pigment layer with iris, and retina; in some cases the lens in absent.

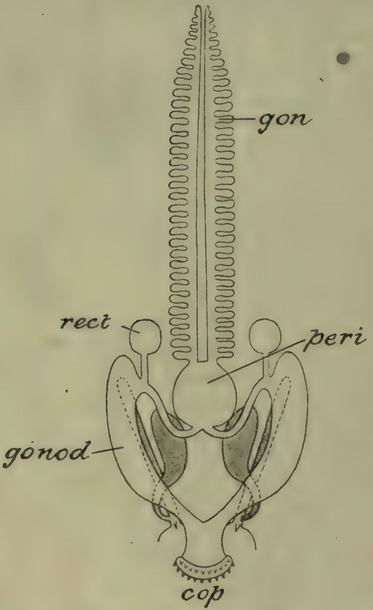


FIG. 568.—**Neomenia carinata,** reproductive organs; *cop.* copulatory organs; *gon.* gonads enclosed in extensions of the pericardial cavity; *gonod.* gonoducts; *peri.* pericardium; *rect.* receptaculum seminis. (From Simroth, after Wirén.)

Reproductive and Renal Organs.—In the Placophora the sexes are distinct: in the Aplacophora, with the exception of Chætoderma, they are united. In the Aplacophora (Fig. 568), with the exception of Chætoderma, the gonads are paired. The sexual products pass into the pericardial cavity and thence are carried to the exterior by a pair of ducts (which may be of the nature of nephridia) opening into the cloaca.

In the Placophora (Fig. 569) there are two symmetrical nephridia opening internally into the pericardium by a ciliated funnel-like opening (*n. peri. ap*), and opening on the exterior (*neph. ap*) between two of the posterior ctenidia. Each consists of a looped main tube, into which open numerous minute tubules which ramify among the viscera. The testis and ovary (*gon*) are similar in appearance, differing only in colour when the products are mature. Each is an unpaired sac marked by a series of slight lateral constrictions.

Little is known of the **development** of the Aplacophora. The eggs undergo complete segmentation, and give rise to a gastrula by invagination. This develops into a form of trochosphere with a ciliated ring called the *prototroch* or *velum.*

The eggs of Chiton are fertilised in the mantle-cavity, where in one species they are retained until the embryos are fully developed. At first the segmentation is tolerably equal—the ovum becoming divided into four approximately equal blastomeres; but at the stage of eight cells four on one side are to be distinguished as larger than the other four. These two sets undergo further divisions, and arrange themselves in such a way as to form a somewhat flattened blastula, one side of which (vegetal pole) is composed of a comparatively small number of large cells. Then follows the invagination of the cells of the vegetal side and the resulting formation of a gastrula. This soon becomes elongated in the direction of the future long axis. Two endoderm cells of specially large size in the neighbourhood of the blastopore, with several others in their proximity, constitute the rudiments of the mesoderm (Fig. 570, B, *mes.*); these pass into the segmentation-cavity, and speedily assume a bilateral arrangement.

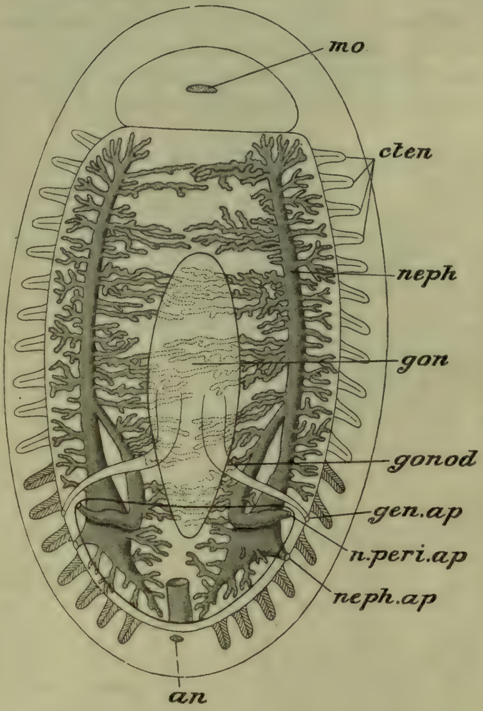


FIG. 569.—**Chiton,** nephridial and genital systems. *an.* anus; *cten.* ctenidia; *gen. ap.* genital aperture; *gon.* gonad; *gonod.* gonoduct; *mo.* mouth; *neph.ap.* nephridial aperture; *n. peri. ap.* aperture from nephridia to pericardium. (From Simroth, after Haller and Lang.)

Two rings of cells surrounding the embryo develop cilia (*cil.*), and by the double circlet thus formed the larva becomes divided into an anterior and a posterior region. The blastopore becomes shifted from its original posterior position forwards on the ventral surface, until it comes to be situated just behind the circlet of cilia; it becomes elongated, and an invagination of ectoderm round its anterior end forms the mouth (*mo.*) and stomodæum. A ventral diverticulum of this forms the rudiment of the radular sac (*rd.*). By greater relative growth of the post-oral part the embryo assumes the form of a pear; and in this *trochosphere* stage with a præ-oral circlet and a bunch of cilia in the middle of the apical area, it becomes free in the case of certain of the species, while in others it remains enclosed in the egg up to a later stage of development. As yet there is no anus, that aperture, with the proctodæum, being formed by invagination at a later stage. The apical plate is not present in the early larva; but the rudiments of the cerebral ganglia (C, *cer. g.*), which appear at the apical pole at a later stage, probably represent it. Primitive nephridia, such as occur in Annulate and many Molluscan trochospheres, are not present.

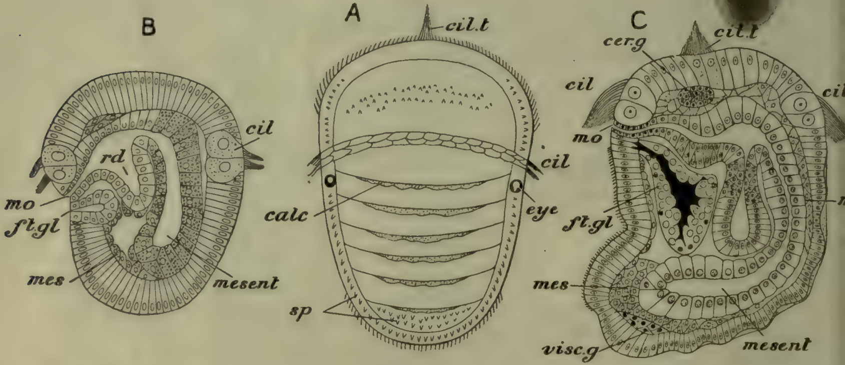


FIG. 570.—**Chiton,** development. *A*, general view of larva; *B*, section of early, *C*, of later trochosphere. *calc.* calcifications (rudiments of shell); *cer. g.* cerebral ganglion; *cil.* ciliary ring; *cil. t.* ciliary tuft at apical pole; *eye.* eye; *ft. gl.* foot-gland; *mes.* mesoderm; *mesent.* mesenteron; *mo.* mouth; *rd.* radular sac; *sp.* spines; *vis. g.* visceral ganglion. (From Korschelt and Heider, after Kowalewsky.)

The post-oral region now becomes greatly elongated; the mesoderm increases greatly in extent, and forms two well-defined streaks, which afterwards become divided into parietal and visceral layers with a cœlomic space between them. The post-oral part of the embryo now presents an appearance resembling rudimentary segmentation. This is due to the development of a series of rudiments of the eight pieces of the shell (B, *calc.*), each of which becomes formed independently after the fashion of the entire shell of other Mollusca.

Ethology, Distribution, &c.—All the Amphineura are marine. The Placophora occur at all depths, though most abundant on the shores between tidal limits. The Aplacophora, on the other hand, are rare in very shallow water, and absent altogether from the littoral zone; some have been found at considerable depths (down to 1,250 fathoms). The Placophora are all vegetable feeders, their food consisting of minute algæ and diatoms. The Aplacophora subsist on small animals. The Placophora when at rest adhere firmly to the surface of a rock or a block of coral by means of the sucker-like foot. When forcibly detached the animal curls itself up into a ball, and will only after a considerable time slowly extend itself again. All their movements are extremely sluggish. The Aplacophora are unable to fix themselves in this way; many of them occur twined round the stems of zoophytes, sometimes attached by a thread of viscid mucus.

The Aplacophora have no hard parts that would be recognisable in the fossil condition; but numerous fossil Placophora are known from Silurian formations onwards. The valves of the Silurian genera differ from those of recent forms in the absence of the articulations.

CLASS III.—GASTROPODA.

The Gastropoda, including the Snails and Slugs, Limpets, Whelks, Periwinkles, Sea-hares, and the like, are Mollusca in which there is, as a rule, a shell composed of a single piece, and in which the mantle is not divided into two lateral folds as in the Pelecypoda. The body is inequilateral, owing to the one-sided development of the visceral mass. There is a well-developed ventral foot, usually with a broad flat surface on which the animal creeps. A head-region bearing eyes and tentacles is distinguishable in front of the foot. The alimentary canal is characterised by the presence in the buccal region of a peculiar organ, the odontophore, present also in some of the Amphineura, bearing rows of minute chitinous teeth. Plume-like ctenidia are usually present. A metamorphosis occurs in the development, during which the young Gastropod passes successively through Trochosphere and Veliger stages. The majority of the families of Gastropoda are marine, a few of these being pelagic; but some inhabit fresh water and others are terrestrial.

1. EXAMPLE OF THE CLASS.—THE TRITON (*Triton nodiferus*).

Triton is a marine Gastropod living in shallow water, usually close in shore. The species to which the following description specially applies has a very wide range, from the English Channel to the South Pacific, and occurs as a fossil as far back as the Miocene. In most respects the English Whelk (*Buccinum undatum*) will be found to conform to the description.

The **shell** (Fig. 571) is a very hard and dense calcareous structure, presenting no trace of division into the valves composing the shell of the fresh-water Mussel, and lacking also its bilateral symmetry. It is in the form of an elongated hollow cone closely wound round a central axis. The apex of the cone is the organic apex of the shell, corresponding to the umbo of the fresh-water Mussel, and is the point from which the growth of the shell has proceeded; the base is represented by the wide oblique opening—the *mouth* or *peristome* of the shell. Starting from the apex along the internal cavity of the spirally wound cone, in order to reach the mouth in an adult shell, we have to pass completely round the central axis five times—*i.e.* the spiral consists of five turns. In following the turns, the direction taken is to the right, that is to say, the spiral of the shell is a right-handed or *dextral* one. The axis (Fig. 572) is in the shape of a twisted shelly rod—the *columella*—containing a narrow lumen; it is formed by the close union of the axial portions of the wall of the spiral. The windings of the spiral are marked on the outer surface of the shell by a narrow impressed spiral line or *suture*, parallel with which are numerous fine ridges and depressions—the *lines of growth*; the increase in size of the shell takes place in the direction of these lines, not at right angles to them as in the shell of the fresh-water Mussel, and the lines that more strictly correspond to the lines of growth of the latter are excessively fine striæ which run transversely to the stronger lines. At certain points, usually three in a full-grown shell, the spiral is interrupted by a transversely directed edge which appears to overlap the succeeding portion; this edge marks the position which the mouth of the shell has occupied

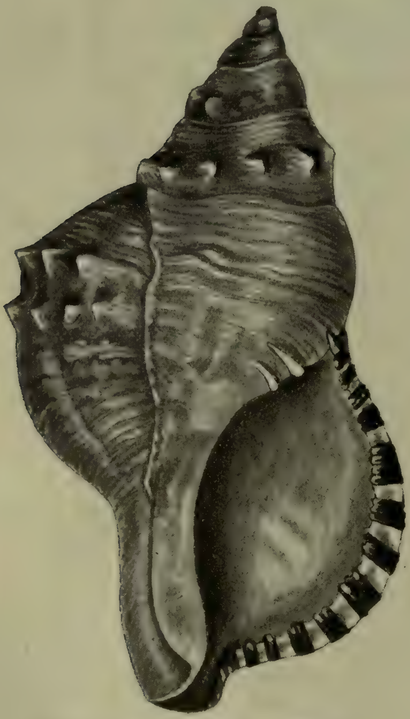


Fig. 571.—Shell of **Triton nodiferus.** Natural size.

during regularly recurring periods of arrest of growth, probably annual.

The mouth of the shell is bordered on the side turned away from the columella by a prominent rim or *outer lip* of the peristome; this is produced at the extremity farthest from the apex of the shell into a spout-like process—the *siphonal process.* The prominent edge of the peristome is in relation to the dorsal surface of the body of the animal; the opposite side has no prominent edge, but is rounded off to form a smooth *inner lip;* a couple of ridges on this inner lip towards the apical end aid the animal in drawing itself out after it has become retracted into the interior of the shell. The outer lip is in relation to the dorsal surface of the body of the animal, the inner lip in relation to the ventral surface; the siphonal process is for the lodgment of a spout-like process of the edge of the mantle—the *siphon.*

When removed from the water, or disturbed in any other way, the animal becomes completely withdrawn into the interior of the shell, when the latter is observed to become closed by a plate—the *operculum* (Fig. 573)—which fits accurately across the passage some distance internal to the peristome. The operculum is an oval plate of chitinoid material hardened by calcareous deposits; like the shell itself, it exhibits lines of growth marking what has been its edge at successive stages in the development of the shell.

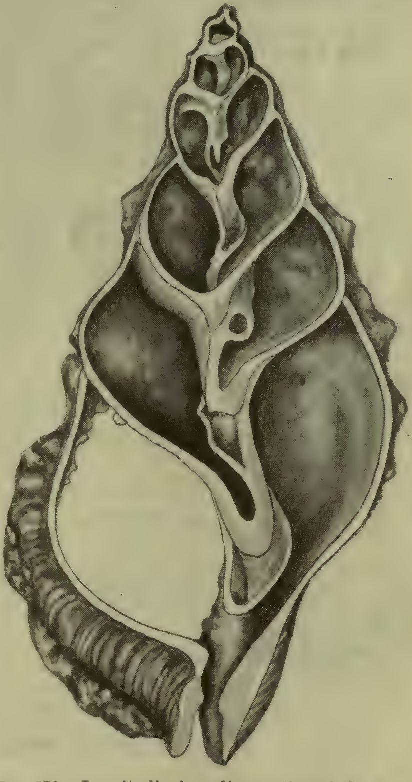


FIG. 572.—Longitudinal median section of the shell of **Triton nodiferus.**

The minute structure of the shell is in the main similar to that of the fresh-water Mussel (p. 634). The outer surface of the shell is covered with a thin layer of uncalcified chitinoid material the *periostracum;* beneath which is a thick *prismatic* layer, and, lining the inner surface, a layer of *nacre.*

External features of soft parts.—The Triton is able to extend itself to a considerable degree beyond the mouth of the shell; but a portion of the body always remains concealed in the interior, even when the animal has extended itself to its utmost, the body being, like that of the fresh-water Mussel (and of nearly all the Mollusca), organically connected with the shell. In Triton the connection is by means of a strong muscle—the *columellar muscle* (Fig. 574, *col. m.*)—which extends from the concave right side of the animal to the columella, into which it is inserted; it is by means of this muscle that the anterior portion of the body, capable of being thrust out through the mouth of the shell, may again be withdrawn.

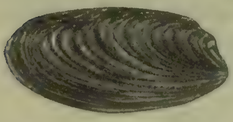


Fig. 573.—Operculum of **Triton nodiferus.**

If the Triton be examined in the extended condition (Fig. 574) it will be found to present a distinct head, which bears dorsally a pair of appendages—the *tentacles* (*tent*)—of a sub-cylindrical shape, slightly compressed towards their bases, and narrowing somewhat towards their free extremities; these are capable of being extended and contracted, but not of being completely retracted. Each bears on its outer side some little distance from the base a prominent *eye.* At the anterior end of the head on its ventral aspect is the opening of the mouth. When the animal is feeding, an elongated cylindrical *introvert* (Fig. 575), comparable to that of Sipunculus (p. 451), is extended forwards, bearing the mouth at its anterior end; at other times the introvert is completely involuted within the head and anterior portion of the body. In the male on the right-hand side of the body, some little distance behind the head, is a long narrow fleshy process, broader at the base than at the free end, and deeply grooved

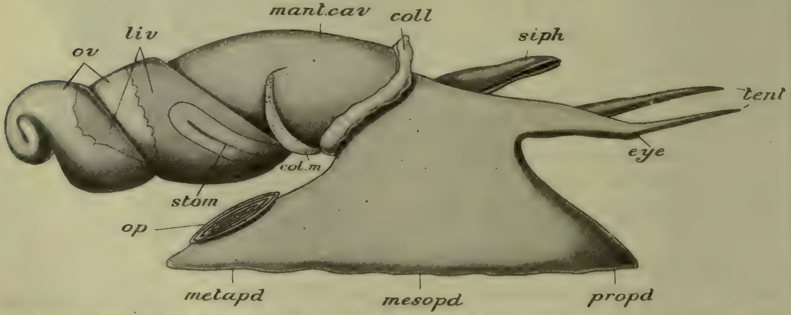


Fig. 574.—Lateral view of the body of a female specimen of **Triton nodiferus,** removed from the shell, moderately extended. *col. m.* columellar muscle; *coll.* collar of mantle; *liv.* liver; *mant. cav.* mantle cavity; *meso.* mesopodium; *neph.* nephridium; *op.* operculum; *ov.* ovary; *prop.* propodium; *stom.* stomach; *tent.* tentacles.

longitudinally; this is the *penis.* Running back from its base is a narrow groove with prominent lips—the *sperm groove,* continuous with that on the penis; in the female these parts are not represented.

Foot.—On the side of the body (ventral) which the animal applies to the surface of the ground when it extends from the shell is a flat surface elongated in the antero-posterior direction; the wall of the body in this region is composed of a dense mass of muscular fibres; this is the principal part of the foot (*propodium* and *mesopodium* combined); the posterior portion (*metapodium*) is a thick process projecting behind this and bearing the operculum on its surface. The foot is highly contractile, and it is by means of contractions passing over it in a succession of undulations that the animal creeps along, dragging after it the rest of the body enclosed in the shell. In the middle line of its flat surface, nearer the anterior than the posterior end, is a slit-like aperture leading into a cavity lined with unicellular glands—the *pedal gland.*

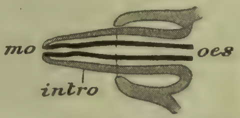


FIG. 575.—Diagram of the introvert of **Triton,** in longitudinal section, as it appears when almost completely extended. The black lines represent the wall of the alimentary canal; the cross-hatched part the wall of the introvert; the dotted line marks the position of the opening through which the introvert passes. *intro.* introvert; *mo.* mouth; *œs.* lumen of œsophagus.

When the remainder of the body has been removed from the shell, it is found to be twisted up into a coil—the **visceral spiral,** corresponding to the spire of the shell within which it was lodged. This is unsymmetrical, the axis of the spiral being directed, not straight backwards, but backwards, upwards, and to the right. The external asymmetry of the body is not strongly marked in the part which is capable of being protruded from the shell, but is still recognisable, and an examination of the internal organs shows a marked excess of development on the left-hand side, *i.e.* the side which corresponds with the longer outer side of the spiral of the shell. The surface of the part of the animal which is capable of being pushed out from the shell is covered with a thick integument, which is darkly pigmented, except on the lower surface of the foot. Over the visceral spiral the **mantle** forms a thin, delicate, colourless layer. Anteriorly this becomes thickened and pigmented, and at the posterior limit of the protrusible part gives rise to a thickened ridge, the *collar* (Fig. 574, *coll.*), forming a semi-circle over the dorsal and lateral regions. In the middle this is not in close contact with the body, but leaves a large cleft leading into a very wide space extending backwards for a considerable distance. This space, which is formed by an infolding of the mantle, is termed the *mantle* or *pallial cavity.* In it are to be found the ctenidium, the osphradium, and the anal, excretory, and reproductive apertures. The wall of the cavity is much folded and plaited, and contains a quantity of glandular tissue, the plaits being most numerous on the right-hand side in front of the anus.

The **ctenidium** or gill (Fig. 576, *cten.*) is closely applied to the wall of the mantle-cavity to the left of the middle. It consists of a main stem, with which are connected a row of delicate flexible laminæ set at right angles to it: these are broadest in the middle, becoming smaller towards the ends.

The **osphradium** (*osph.*) lies close to the ctenidium on its right-hand side, *i.e.* nearer the middle of the body. It presents a central axis, connected with which are two rows of close-set delicate lamellæ placed at right angles to it. Like the ctenidium, it is closely applied to the wall of the mantle-cavity throughout its length. The laminæ of the osphradium are supplied with nerves which ramify over them; and its function seems to be to ascertain the condition of the water that enters the mantle-cavity.

Digestive System.—The mouth, situated at the anterior end of the introvert, leads into a large chamber with muscular walls, the *buccal cavity* (*buc.*). At the sides of the entrance to this cavity the investing cuticle is thickened to form two distinct horny plates —the *jaws* (Figs. 576, 577, and 578, *jaw*). The jaws are flexible, and on examination under the microscope are found to be composed of numerous rows of minute bodies, the *denticles;* the anterior edge is minutely denticulated. From the floor of the cavity rises an elevation, the *odontophore* (Fig. 576, *od.*, Fig. 577, *odont.*), which is somewhat elongated in the direction of the long axis of the body and compressed laterally. Over the summit of the odontophore runs longitudinally a narrow strap-like body, the *radula* or *lingual ribbon* (Figs. 577 and 578, *rad.*), beset with numerous minute horny teeth arranged in transverse rows. Posteriorly this toothed ribbon extends into a narrow curved pouch —the *radular sac* (Fig. 576, *rad. s*, Fig. 578, *rad. sac.*)—extending backwards from the posterior and lower aspect of the buccal cavity. Anteriorly it does not extend beyond the odontophore prominence. The latter contains cartilages (Fig. 578, *cart.*) serving for the support of the whole apparatus, and is capable of being extended, with the radula which it bears, through the opening of the mouth by the contraction of sets of protractor muscular fibres. Inserted into the radula itself are sets of bands of muscular fibres by which it can be drawn backwards and forwards over the odontophore as over a pulley, the effect being a rasping of any hard substance against which it is pressed. The entire buccal cavity is capable of being drawn forwards towards the mouth opening, or backwards into the introvert by the contraction of strands of muscular fibres passing from its wall to the wall of the body.

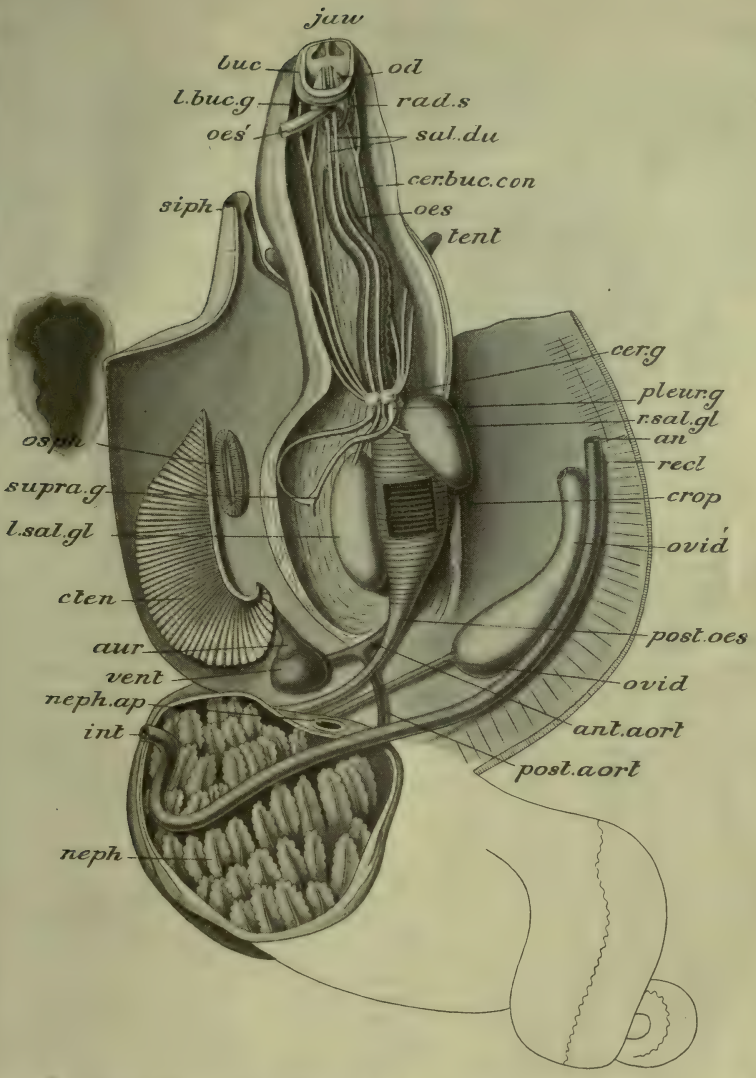


FIG. 576.—**Triton nodiferus.** Dissection of the internal organs of a female, viewed from the dorsal side. The roof of the mantle-cavity has been divided by a longitudinal incision and the flaps laid out, that on the left bearing the ctenidium and osphradium, and that on the right the rectum and terminal part of the oviduct. The muscular dorsal wall of the body and the introvert have been divided so as to bring into view the anterior part of the alimentary canal and a portion of the nervous system. The buccal cavity has been tilted up and opened so as to show the odontophore, and the œsophagus has been cut through near the anterior end. A portion of the ventral wall of the crop has been removed so as to bring the internal folds into view, and the interior of the nephridium with the contained portion of the intestine has been exposed. The stomach is not seen, being hidden by the nephridium, and the ovary is not represented. *an.* anus; *ant. aort.* anterior aorta; *aur.* auricle; *buc.* buccal cavity; *cer. buc. con.* cerebro-buccal connective; *cer. g.* cerebral ganglia; *crop*, crop; *cten.* ctenidium; *int.* intestine; *jaw*, jaw; *l. buc. g.* left buccal ganglion; *l. sal. gl.* left salivary gland; *neph.* nephridium; *neph. ap.* nephridial aperture; *od.* odontophore; *œs.* œsophagus; *œs.'* anterior end of same, cut and turned aside; *osph.* osphradium; *ovid.* oviduct; *ovid.'* terminal thick-walled portion of oviduct; *pleur. g.* pleural ganglion; *post. aort.* posterior aorta; *post. œs.* posterior œsophagus; *rad. s.* radula sac; *rect.* rectum; *sal. du.* salivary duct; *siph.* siphon; *supra. g.* supra-œsophageal visceral ganglion; *tent.* tentacle; *tent. n.* tentacular nerve; *vent.* ventricle.

From the buccal cavity runs backwards a long narrow tube with sacculated walls—the *œsophagus* (Figs. 576 and 578, *œs.*). Posteriorly this opens into a large ovoid sac—the *crop* (Fig. 576, *crop*). The outer surface of the crop appears marked with numerous close-set fine lines, transverse or oblique in direction, and, when the cavity of the organ is opened, it is found that these correspond to numerous delicate folds which extend to near the middle, and almost completely block up the lumen. On either side of the crop is a large gland—the *salivary gland* (Fig. 576, *l. sal. gl.*, Fig. 580, *r. sal. gl.*)—partly composed of a compact glandular substance, partly of spongy tissue in which the secretion collects. The two salivary glands are unlike in size and shape, that on the left-hand side being much longer than that on the right. Each has a narrow duct (*sal. du.*) which runs forwards and inwards to the dorsal aspect of the œsophagus, where the two come into close apposition, becoming embedded in the wall of the œsophagus, along which they run forwards to open into the buccal cavity.

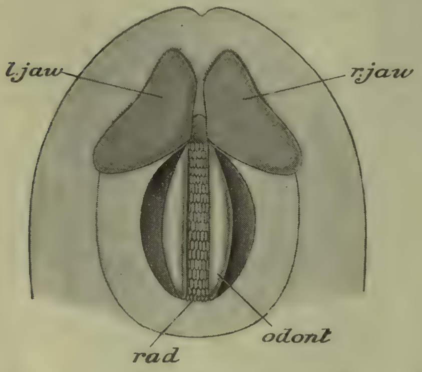


FIG. 577.—**Triton nodiferus.** Interior of the buccal mass, from above, magnified. *l. jaw*, left jaw; *odont.* lateral surface of odontophore; *rad.* radula; *r. jaw.* right jaw.

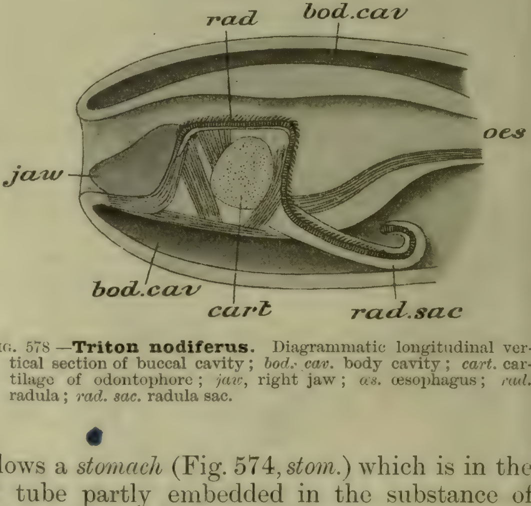


FIG. 578.—**Triton nodiferus.** Diagrammatic longitudinal vertical section of buccal cavity; *bod. cav.* body cavity; *cart.* cartilage of odontophore; *jaw*, right jaw; *œs.* œsophagus; *rad.* radula; *rad. sac.* radula sac.

From the crop leads backwards and to the left a narrow cylindrical tube—the *posterior œsophagus.* On this follows a *stomach* (Fig. 574, *stom.*) which is in the form of a U-shaped tube partly embedded in the substance of the liver, the *hepatic ducts* from which open into it. The tubular stomach is followed by a somewhat narrower tube—the *intestine* (Fig. 576, *int.*). This enters the cavity of the nephridium, round the interior of which it bends, and, leaving it at its right-hand side, runs forwards in a straight course as the *rectum* (*rect.*) embedded in the glandular wall of the mantle-cavity, to near the anterior end, where it terminates in a short, freely projecting, spout-like portion, with the anus (*an.*) at its extremity.

The *liver* forms a mass of reddish-brown glandular follicles which composes the greater part of the bulk of the visceral coil.

Vascular system.—Close to the base of the ctenidium, behind it and a little to the right, is the *heart*, lodged, like that of the fresh-water Mussel, in a cavity, the *pericardium*, lined by a transparent membrane—the *pericardial membrane.* The heart consists of two chambers, an auricle (Fig. 576, *aur.*) and a ventricle. The auricle, which is the smaller of the two, is situated somewhat in front of the ventricle, close to the ctenidium, from the main central vessel of which it receives the blood. The ventricle (*vent.*) is of somewhat pyramidal shape, but with the edges rounded off. Its wall is extremely thick and muscular. Passing out from the ventricle towards the right is a thick artery, which soon divides into two, one running forwards, the other backwards—the *anterior* (*ant. aort.*) and *posterior* (*post. aort.*) *aortæ.* The former is a very large trunk which runs forwards below the posterior œsophagus, crop, and anterior œsophagus, giving off branches as it goes, to the region of the head. The posterior aorta, narrower than the anterior, passes into the visceral spiral, where it breaks up into branches for the supply of the various parts. The blood-system consists in large measure of sinuses, as in the fresh-water Mussel, and the general course of the circulation is similar to what has already been described in that Mollusc (p. 640).

Excretory System.—There is only one *meso-nephridium* (*neph.*), a large organ situated dorsally behind the pericardium. It is a sac with thick, glandular, and highly vascular walls, the inner surface of which is thrown into numerous complex folds. In front it communicates directly by a large aperture (*neph. ap.*) with the mantle-cavity, and by a narrower passage with the pericardium.

The **nervous system** (Figs. 579 and 580) is more highly elaborated than in the fresh-water Mussel. Two pairs of nerve-ganglia—the *cerebral* (*cer. g.*) and the *pleural* (*pl. g.*)—lie close together over the posterior part of the œsophagus, just where it passes into the crop. The right and left ganglia of each pair are fused together in the middle line, though separated by a constriction, and the ganglia of the two pairs are placed very close together, though quite distinct. From each cerebral ganglion there passes forwards a stout *cerebro-buccal connective* (*cer. buc. con.*) to a buccal ganglion situated on the posterior surface of the

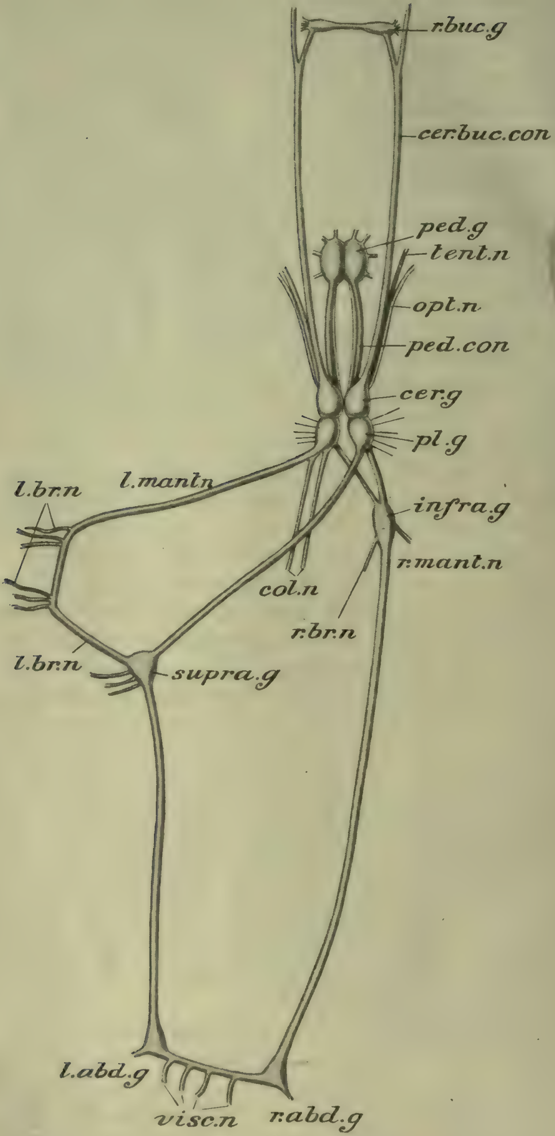

r.buc.g
cer.buc.con
ped.g
tent.n
opt.n
ped.con
cer.g
pl.g
l.br.n
l.mant.n
infra.g
r.mant.n
col.n
r.br.n
l.br.n
supra.g
l.abd.g
visc.n
r.abd.g

Fig. 579.—**Triton nodiferus.** Nervous system, from the dorsal side. *cer. buc. con.* cerebro-buccal connective; *cer. g.* cerebral ganglion; *col. n.* nerves to the columellar muscle; *infra. g* infra-œsophageal visceral ganglion; *l. abd. g.* left abdominal ganglion; *l. br. n.* left branchial nerve; *l. br. n'.* nerves to branchia and osphradium; *l. mant. n.* left mantle nerve; *ped. con* cerebro-pedal and pleuro-pedal connectives; *ped. g.* pedal ganglia; *pl. g.* pleural ganglion *r. abd. g.* right abdominal ganglion; *r. br. n.* right branchial nerve; *r. mant. n.* right mantle nerve; *supra. g.* supra-intestinal visceral ganglion; *visc. n.* visceral nerve branches.

buccal chamber. Also given off anteriorly from the cerebral ganglia are *optic nerves* to the eye, and tentacular nerves to the tentacles. From each cerebral ganglion passes downwards and forwards a stout *cerebro-pedal connective*, and from each pleural ganglion a *pleuro-pedal connective*, to a large pair of closely-united *pedal ganglia* (Figs. 579 and 580, *ped. g.*) embedded in the upper layers of the muscles of the foot, to which they give off numerous nerves. The right pleural ganglion gives off behind a *supra-intestinal visceral connective*, which bends across to the left, over the œsophagus, and, some distance to the left of the alimentary canal, expands into a triangular *supra-intestinal visceral ganglion* (*supra. g.*), situated below the superficial layer of muscular fibres. The left pleural ganglion gives off an *infra-intestinal visceral connective*, which passes obliquely backwards and to the right, below the alimentary canal, to a ganglion situated a little to the right of the middle line—the *infra-intestinal visceral ganglion* (*infra. g.*). The supra-intestinal ganglion gives off a nerve which runs towards the osphradium and ctenidium, which it supplies with branch nerves, and unites with a stout *mantle nerve* (*l. mant. n.*), which is given off from the left pleural ganglion. The right pleural also gives off a stout connecting nerve to the infra-intestinal ganglion. From the supra- and infra-intestinal ganglia the left and right visceral connectives are continued backwards and unite behind in the neighbourhood of the stomach; each ends in a triangular *abdominal ganglion* (*l. abd. g.*; *r. abd. g.*), and these are joined by a transverse commissure, from which a number of visceral nerves are given off. A remarkable torsion of the nerve connectives is here to be observed, the two visceral connectives becoming twisted into the form of the figure 8.

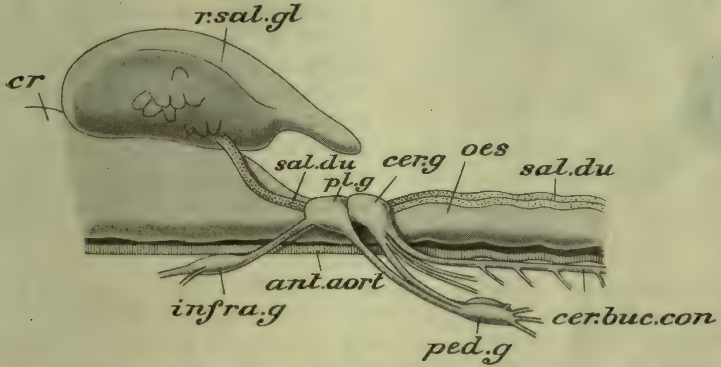


FIG. 580.—**Triton nodiferus.** Lateral view of nerve-ganglia and related parts. Letters as in Fig. 579: in addition—*ant. ao.* anterior aorta; *cr.* crop; *œs.* œsophagus; *sal. du.* salivary ducts; *r. sal. gl.* salivary gland.

The **organs of special sense** of Triton, in addition to the tentacles and the osphradium, which have been already referred to, are the eyes and the otocysts. The eye (Fig. 581) is a rounded invagination of the epidermis with an inner wall or *retina* (*ret.*) composed of pigmented and sensory cells. The latter (*retinophores*) are elongated cells narrowed at their central free ends, and produced at the opposite extremity to become continuous with nerve-fibres of the optic nerve. The former (*retinulæ*) have their free extremities much enlarged, and surround the slender ends of the retinophores. A layer of short rods (*rds.*) lies within the retina proper. The outer wall is thin, and, with the overlying epidermis, forms a transparent *cornea*. In the interior of the eye is a clear rounded *lens* (*l.*) of dense cuticular matter secreted by the cells of the retina; this is surrounded by a less dense body—the *vitreous.*

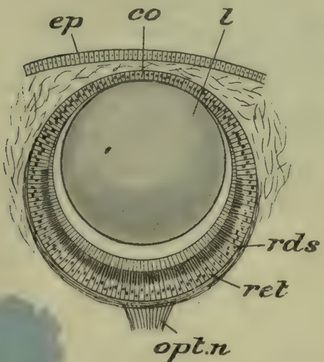


FIG. 581.—**Triton.** Section of the eye. *co.* cornea; *ep.* epidermis; *l.* lens; *opt.* optic nerve; *rds.* layers of rods (the line is not continued far enough inwards); *ret.* retina.

The **sexes** are distinct. There is a single gonad—*ovary* or *testis* as the case may be—lodged in the visceral spiral. The *sperm-duct* is a white tube, thickish and much convoluted where it leaves the testis, narrower and straight distally; it opens in front in the mantle-cavity into the proximal end of the sperm-groove, which, as already mentioned, runs forwards along the right side, and becomes continuous with the groove traversing the penis. The oviduct (Fig. 576, *ovid.*) is proximally a very delicate tube with colourless transparent walls. This runs forwards to the right side of the mantle-cavity, where it assumes the character of a stout tube (*ovid.'*) with thickened glandular walls, which passes forwards close to and parallel with the rectum, and opens on the exterior near the anus.

2. DISTINCTIVE CHARACTERS AND CLASSIFICATION.

The Gastropoda are unsymmetrical Mollusca, with a mantle which is not divided into two lateral portions, and with a shell which does not consist of two lateral valves, but of a single, unsymmetrical, usually spirally coiled, valve, enclosing a visceral mass of corresponding form. There are, typically, two plume-like ctenidia enclosed in a mantle-cavity, but there may be only one; and in air-breathing forms ctenidia are not developed, respiration taking place through the wall of the mantle-cavity itself. A distinct head bearing eyes and tentacles is present in the majority. The foot is situated behind the head, and usually has an extensive flattened ventral surface. The buccal cavity contains an odontophore. The nephridium is usually single. The nervous system contains distinct cerebral and pleural, besides pedal, visceral, abdominal, and buccal ganglia. The sexes are sometimes separate, sometimes united. The larva passes through trochosphere and veliger stages.

Sub-Class I.—Streptoneura.

Gastropoda in which the visceral commissures are twisted into a figure of 8, and in which the sexes are distinct.

ORDER 1.—ASPIDOBRANCHIA.

Streptoneura with the nervous system but little concentrated: the pedal ganglia produced into long cords with the anterior ends of which the pleural ganglia are fused, the cerebral ganglia wide apart, the osphradium little developed. The ctenidia, nearly always present, are plume-like and free distally. The auricles and the nephridia are paired.

Sub-Order 1.—*Docoglossa.*

Aspidobranchia in which the pleural ganglia are not connected with the opposite visceral commissure. The eye is in the form of an open pit, without lens. There are two osphradia, a single jaw, and no operculum. The visceral mass is conical.

This section includes the Limpets (*Patellidæ*).

Sub-Order 2.—*Rhipidoglossa.*

Aspidobranchia in which each pleural ganglion is connected with the opposite visceral commissure. The eye is a closed sac and contains a lens. There is nearly always a single osphradium (the primitive left), a pair of jaws, and two auricles in the heart.

This sub-order includes the Ear-shells (*Haliotidæ*), *Trochus*, *Turbo*, and others.

ORDER 2.—PECTINIBRANCHIA.

Streptoneura with a somewhat concentrated nervous system. There is a single osphradium which is often pectinate. The primarily left ctenidium and nephridium are alone developed. The heart has a single auricle. The ctenidium consists of a stem with a single row of lamellæ, attached throughout its length to the wall of the mantle-cavity.

Sub-Order 1.—*Platypoda.*

Pectinibranchia with the foot flattened ventrally, at least in front. Jaws are nearly always present.

This sub-order includes the Cowries, the Vermetes, the Tritons, the Whelks, the Cones, and a number of other groups.

Sub-Order 2.—*Heteropoda.*

Pelagic Pectinibranchia with the foot laterally compressed and bearing, at least in the male, a ventral sucker. The visceral sac and mantle form only a small part of the mass of the body. Jaws are absent.

Sub-Class II.—Euthyneura.

Gastropoda in which the visceral commissures are not twisted into a figure of 8, and in which the sexes are united.

ORDER 1.—OPISTHOBRANCHIA.

Marine Euthyneura with aquatic respiration, the auricle of the heart usually posterior to the ventricle. The mantle-cavity, when present, opens by a wide aperture.

Sub-Order 1.—*Tectibranchia.*

Opisthobranchs provided in nearly all cases with a mantle and a shell, nearly always with a true ctenidium, and an osphradium.

This section includes the *Aplysiidæ*, or Sea-hares, and several other families, including certain pelagic Gastropoda, some shell-bearing, some shell-less, formerly regarded as constituting a distinct class—the *Pteropoda.*

Sub-Order 2.—*Nudibranchia.*

Opisthobranchs, which are devoid of shell in the adult condition, and have no true ctenidia or osphradium, respiration being carried on by means of secondary branchiæ usually arranged in a circlet around the anus or in rows on the dorsal surface, or laterally under the edge of the mantle.

This sub-order includes *Doris*, *Eolis*, *Tethys*, and other shell-less forms.

ORDER 2.—PULMONATA.

Euthyneura devoid of ctenidia, respiration being carried on through the walls of the mantle-cavity, which has a narrow contractile aperture.

This sub-order includes the Land Snails and Slugs.

Systematic Position of the Example.

Triton nodiferus is one of several species of the genus *Triton*, which is the only member of the family *Tritonidæ*, belonging to the sub-order Platypoda. The family Tritonidæ differs from the other families of the sub-order in the possession of a proboscis, of a well-developed, but not greatly elongated, siphon, and of a short foot.

3. GENERAL ORGANISATION.

External Features, Symmetry, &c.—All the Gastropoda are to a greater or less extent asymmetrical. In the young animal the mouth is situated at the anterior and the anus at the posterior extremity of the body. But, as a result of one-sided growth, a great distortion of the parts takes place, leading to a more or less pronounced asymmetry. Usually it is the left side which grows a good deal more rapidly than the right. On the right-hand side the space between mouth and anus increases relatively little, while the left side develops rapidly. The result is the shifting of the posterior parts—the anus, the ctenidia, and the nephridial openings, together with the mantle-cavity in which these are enclosed—over to the right side of the body, so that those parts come to be situated sometimes far forwards on that side, sometimes close behind, sometimes even above (dorsal to) the mouth. Sometimes the ctenidia, originally situated to the right and left of the anus, retain this arrangement after the anus has become displaced forwards, only that the originally right ctenidium is now on the left and the originally left on the right; but in a large number of Gastropoda the originally right ctenidium aborts; and, as will be more particularly described later on, the same holds good of the nephridia and their apertures. This displacement of the anus takes place *pari passu* with the great development of the foot, and at the same time with the outgrowth of the dorsal region of the body into a great prominence—the visceral prominence—consequent on the great enlargement of certain of the internal organs, more especially the liver and reproductive organs. This visceral prominence is asymmetrically developed, projecting towards the right side; sometimes, as in the limpets (*Patella*), it is simply conical; usually it is coiled into a spiral of few or many turns enclosed in the shell.

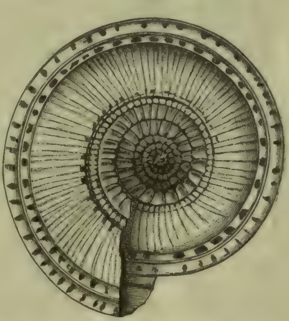


FIG. 582.—Shell of **Solarium perspectivum** from the under side. (From the *Cambridge Natural History.*)

The **shell** in the adult limpets (Patella and allied genera) is in the form of a short cone. In most of the Gastropoda it is in the shape of a spiral with the turns usually in close contact with one another, the inner walls of the turns coalescing to form an axial, hollow or solid column—the columella. The portion of the shell projecting inwards between the turns of the spiral sometimes becomes absorbed. In certain cases, on the other hand, the cavity of the apical portion of the spiral may become cut off from the cavity of the rest of the shell by the formation of a transverse partition, the animal then becoming restricted to the basal portion. By far the greater number of such spiral shells are *dextral*, *i.e.*, if we begin at the apex of the spiral, to reach the opening of the shell we have to pass from left to right with the columella always on our right-hand side: in a few cases, however, the spiral is *sinistral*, taking the opposite direction from that of the ordinary dextral shell. The form of the shell varies with the degree of obliquity with which the whorls are set on the axis. When the obliquity is very slight (Fig. 582) the spiral is nearly flat; when the obliquity is great, an elongated tapering shell such as that represented in Fig. 583 is the result. Sometimes the later whorls completely cover over the earlier ones, so that the spiral form of the shell is concealed. Sometimes only the apical portion of the shell is spiral, the remainder being a straight or sinuous cylinder. The mouth of the shell has usually a prominent margin or *peristome*, which is sometimes entire and continuous, sometimes is broken by a deep notch or a spout-like process or canal, formed in connection with the development of a spout-like prolongation of the mantle, the *siphon*, which lies in it. The mouth of the shell in many Gastropoda is capable of being closed by means of an operculum borne on the foot. In some terrestrial forms in which an operculum is absent, the opening may be closed up during winter by a layer of hardened mucous matter to which the name of *epiphragm* is applied. The margin of the mantle in some cases bears a series of *tentacles*. Lateral folds of the mantle are in some of the Gastropoda (Fig. 584) reflected over the shell and may completely cover it. In some cases these folds unite by their edge, so that the shell

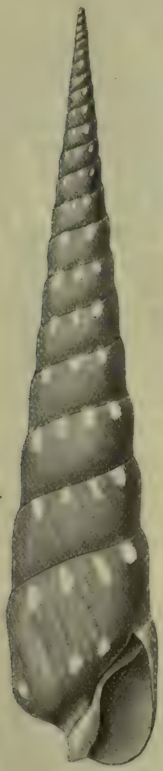


FIG. 583.—Shell of **Terebra oculata.**

comes to be enclosed in a complete sac of the mantle; such enclosed shells are always imperfectly developed and incapable of covering the body. Thus in *Aplysia* and some other Opisthobranchs the shell is greatly reduced, thin and horny, and concealed within the mantle, while in the nudibranch (Fig. 585) members of the same sub-order it is entirely absent. The shell is also completely absent in some of the pelagic forms (*Heteropoda* and *Pteropoda*); in others, though present and external, it is too small to enclose the animal (Fig. 586). In the slugs, among the Pulmonata, the shell is vestigial and concealed by the mantle (Fig. 587).

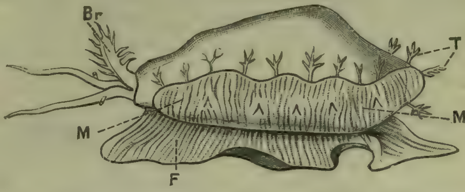


FIG. 584.—**Cypræa moneta** (Cowrie). Showing the mantle, provided with marginal tentacles, partly enveloping the shell. *Si.* siphon ; *M.M.* mantle ; *F.* foot ; *T'*, tentacles at the edge of the mantle. (From Cooke, after Quoy and Gaimard.)

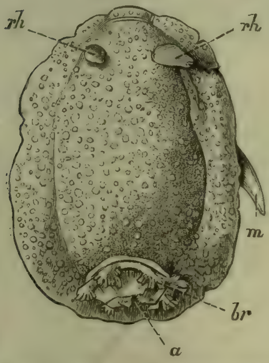


FIG. 585.—**Doris (Archidoris) tuberculata.** *a.* anus ; *br.* branchiæ ; *m*, penis ; *rh*, *rh*, tentacles. (From the *Cambridge Natural History*.)

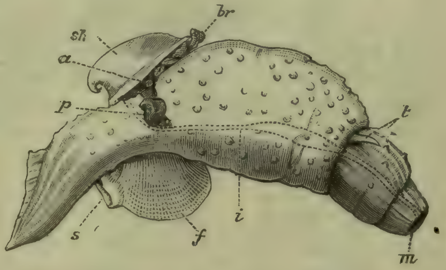


FIG. 586.—**Carinaria mediterranea.** *a.* anus ; *br.* branchia ; *f.* foot ; *i.* intestine ; *m.* mouth ; *p.* penis ; *s.* sucker ; *sh.* shell ; *t.* tentacles. (From the *Cambridge Natural History*.)

The **foot** varies in the extent of its development in the different families of the class. It usually presents an elongated flat ventral surface on which the animal creeps by wave-like contractions of the muscular tissue. In the typical Gastropods the foot is usually distinguishable into three parts, a middle

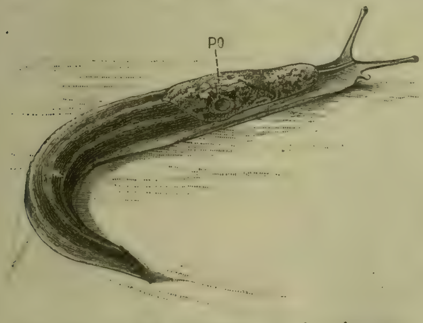


FIG. 587.—A Slug (**Limax**). *P. O*, pulmonary aperture. (From the *Cambridge Natural History*.)

part or *mesopodium*, which is the most important, with a smaller anterior *propodium* and posterior *metapodium*. In many burrowing forms (Fig. 588) the propodium is well developed and sharply marked off to act as a burrowing organ. In a few cases a pair of tentacles—the *pedal tentacles*—are situated at the anterior end of the foot; still rarer is a pair of similar appendages at the posterior end. The whole foot becomes reduced in the few Gastropods that remain fixed. The metapodium very usually in the Streptoneura bears a disc or stopper—the *operculum*—usually horny, rarely completely calcified, more commonly horny with a thin calcareous investment—by means of which the aperture of the shell is closed when the animal is retracted.

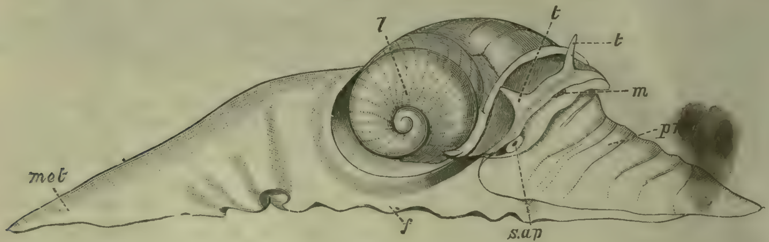


FIG. 588.—**Sigaretus lævigatus,** exemplifying great development of propodium (*pr.*), and metapodium (*met.*), in a burrowing Gastropod. The shell has been removed. *l.* liver; *s. ap.* aperture of proboscis; *t. t.* tentacles. (From the *Cambridge Natural History*, after Quoy and Gaimard.)

In some forms, such as the Sea-hares (*Aplysia*) (Fig. 589), the foot develops a pair of lateral lobes—the *epipodia*—which act as fins; and in the Pteropods (Fig. 590), which are specially modified for a pelagic existence, these constitute the largest part of the foot. In the Heteropoda (Figs. 591, 592) which are also pelagic, the foot is also modified to act as a swimming organ. In one family of this sub-order (Fig. 591) all three parts of the foot are well-developed, the mesopodium bears a sucker, and the metapodium an operculum; in the rest the mesopodium is alone well developed and forms a laterally-compressed, vertically-elongated fin.

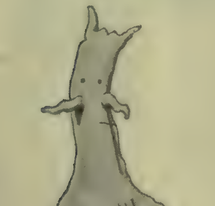


FIG. 589.—**Aplysia,** dorsal view. *v*, epipodia. (After Keferstein.)

A *pedal gland* is present in the majority: it is a simple or branched invagination of the integument, lined by mucus-secreting cells. Very commonly, as in Triton, it opens on the exterior in the middle line of the ventral surface of the foot.

The Gastropoda have a well-marked **head**, separated from the body by a constriction or *neck*. The mouth, situated at the anterior end of the head on its ventral aspect, is in many instances provided with a protrusible proboscis or *introvert*, sometimes of considerable length. On the dorsal surface of the head are a pair of tentacles which vary a good deal in shape, but are usually cylindrical or club-shaped. In most cases the eyes are situated on tubercles at the bases of the tentacles, or elevated towards the middle; but in the snails and slugs (*Pulmonata*) (Fig. 593) the eyes are elevated on the extremities of a second, longer, pair of tentacles (*oc. tent*) placed behind the first.

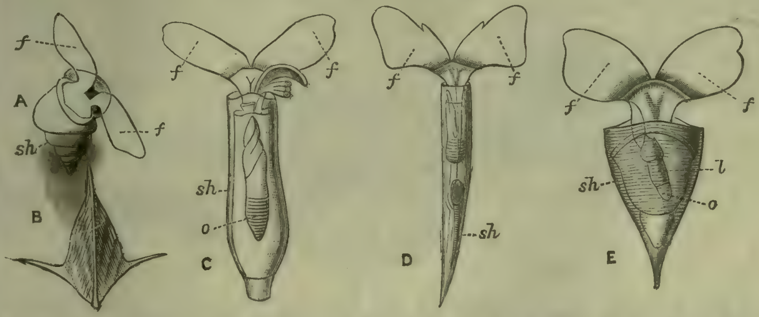


FIG. 590.—Shell-bearing **Pteropoda.** *f. f.* fins; *l.* liver; *o.* ovary; *sh.* shell. (From Cooke after Souleyet.)

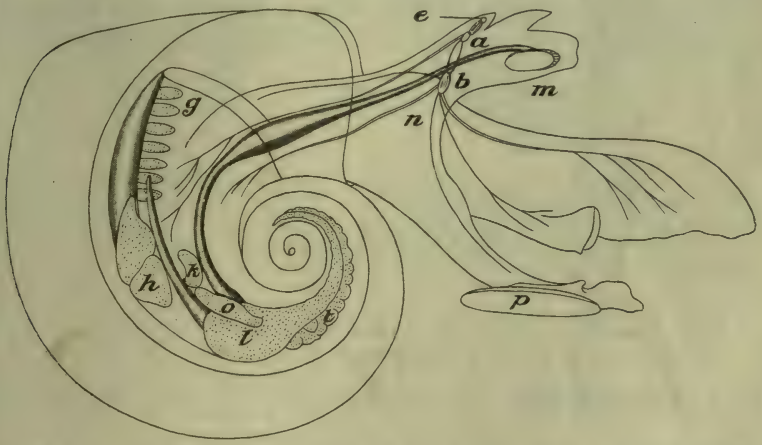


FIG. 591.—**Atlanta peronii.** *a*, cerebral ganglia; *b*, pedal ganglia; *e.* eye; *g.* ctenidia; *h.* heart *k.* nephridium; *l.* liver; *m.* mouth; *o.* ovary; *p.* operculum; *t.* male reproductive gland.

The **mantle** is usually developed into a fold—the *mantle flap*—

originally posterior, but subsequently becoming shifted round, in the course of the displacement already referred to, to the right-hand side. This covers over a cavity—the *mantle cavity*—situated anteriorly, in which are situated the anal and nephridial apertures and the ctenidia. The edges of the mantle-flap may become united together in such a way as to form a chamber opening on the exterior by a comparatively narrow opening. In many of the Prosobranchia the edges of this aperture are drawn out into a spout-like prolongation open ventrally—the *siphon*—which lies in the corresponding prolongation of the peristome of the shell, and serves as a channel for the ingress and egress of water. In some Gastropods, however, there is no definite mantle-cavity, the anus, nephridial apertures, and ctenidia merely lying under cover of a comparatively slightly-developed lateral mantle-flap. Usually there is on the inner surface of the mantle a glandular area—the *pallial mucus gland*.

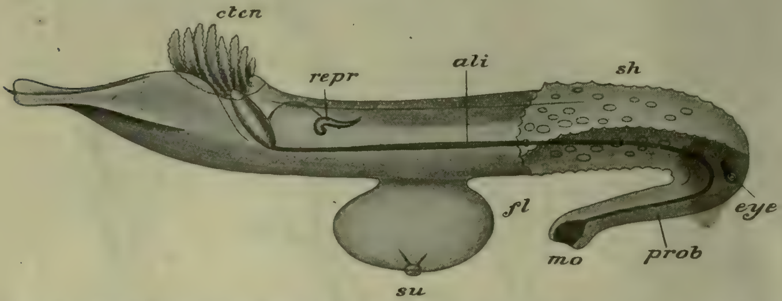


FIG. 592.—**Pterotrachea scutata.** *ali.* alimentary canal; *cten.* gills; *eye,* eye; *fl.* float; *mo.* mouth; *prob.* proboscis; *repr.* reproductive gland; *sh.* shield covering a portion of the dorsal surface; *su.* sucker.

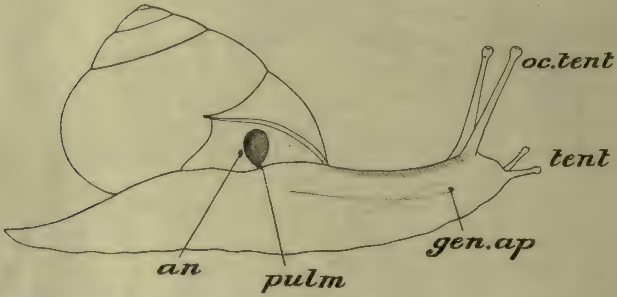


FIG. 593.—**Helix nemoralis.** *an.* anus; *gen. ap.* genital aperture; *oc. tent.* posterior eye-bearing tentacles; *pulm.* opening of pulmonary sac; *tent.* anterior tentacles. (After Pelseneer.)

Respiratory Organs.—There are normally two ctenidia, one on the right side and the other on the left, contained in the mantle-cavity; but in the majority of the Streptoneura and branchiate Euthyneura the primitively left (actually right) ctenidium alone is retained. In those Gastropoda that possess two ctenidia, and in many forms with only one, the axis of the ctenidium bears two rows of compressed filaments, and is attached only towards its base. But in the majority of those with one ctenidium there is, as in Triton, only a single row of filaments retained, and the organ is attached throughout its length.

In the Nudibranchs true ctenidia are absent, but their place as breathing organs is taken by a number of *secondary branchiæ*, sometimes simple, sometimes branched or pinnate processes, which are distributed over the dorsal surface, as in *Eolis*, or, as in *Doris* (Fig. 585), form a circlet surrounding the anus, or, as in *Pleurophyllidia* (Fig. 594), a row on each side beneath the mantle-flap.

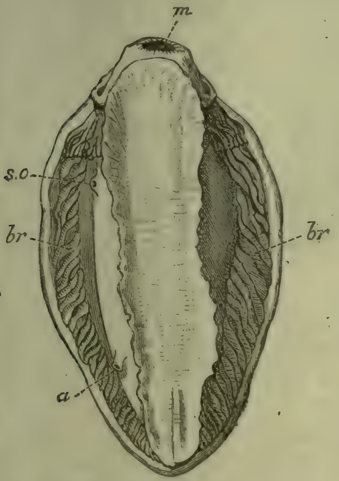


FIG. 594.—**Pleurophyllidia lineata,** from the ventral surface. *a.* anus; *br.* secondary branchiæ; *m.* mouth; *s. o.* sexual opening. (From the *Cambridge Natural History.*)

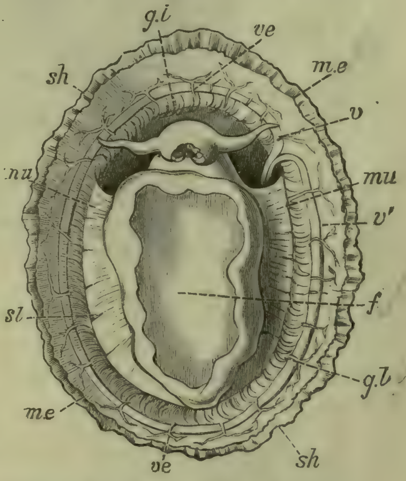


FIG. 595.—**Patella vulgata,** seen from the ventral side. *f.* foot; *g. l.* circlet of gill lamellæ; *m. e.* edge of the mantle; *mu.* attachment muscle; *sl.* slits in the attachment muscle; *sh.* shell; *v.* efferent branchial vessel; *v'.* aorta; *ve.* smaller vessels. (From the *Cambridge Natural History.*)

In the limpets (Patella and its allies) (Fig. 595) the true ctenidia are represented only by a pair of vestiges, and respiration is carried on by a number of secondary branchiæ (*g. l.*) in the form of lamellæ situated between the short lateral fold of the mantle and the foot. In the *Pulmonata*, and in some members of other groups, ctenidia are absent, and the mantle-cavity, completely enclosed except for a small rounded opening, has the function of a **pulmonary sac** or **lung** (Fig. 596), its roof being richly supplied with blood-vessels: in the aquatic forms its function is apparently as much hydrostatic as respiratory. In some of the Pulmonata there is a return to a completely aquatic mode of respiration accompanied by the development of *secondary gills*—vascular processes of the wall of the mantle-cavity.

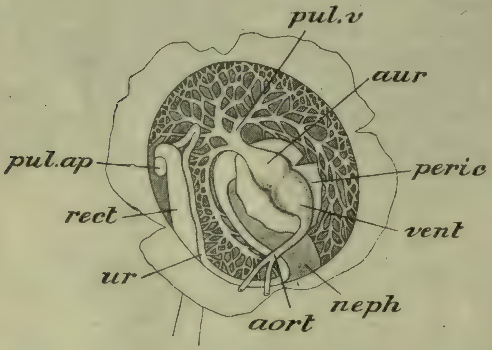


Fig. 596.—Pulmonary cavity and related parts in a slug (**Limax**). *aort.* aorta; *aur.* auricle; *neph.* nephridium; *peric.* pericardium, laid open; *pul. ap.* pulmonary aperture; *pul. v.* pulmonary vein with its ramifications; *rect.* rectum; *ur.* ureter; *vent.* ventricle. (After Pelseneer.)

Near the base of each ctenidium is an elevation—the **osphradium**—corresponding to the body of that name in other Mollusca and having a similar function.

Digestive Organs. — In many Streptoneura there is a long *introvert* capable of being everted and retracted, at the extremity of which the mouth is placed. A single curved horny jaw lies on the roof of the buccal cavity in the Pulmonata; in most Streptoneura (as in Triton) the place of this is taken by two lateral pieces.

A characteristic feature of the alimentary canal of the Gastropoda, which, however, they share with some Amphineura and with the Cephalopoda, is the possession of an odontophore and radula, a typical example of which has been described in that of Triton. In the different groups differences are observable in the odontophore as regards the proportions of the parts, and the size, form, and arrangement of the teeth. The arrangement of the alimentary canal is similar to what has already been described in Triton, and salivary glands and liver (hepato-pancreas) are always present. The former may be tubular, but are usually botryoidal. The latter varies in its extent and the arrangement of its lobes in different forms.

In some Opisthobranchia the stomach contains a series of teeth which are sometimes sharp and chitinous, sometimes plate-like and calcified. Frequently a special development of a cuticular lining of the stomach forms a hard rod—the *crystalline style*—lodged in a cœcum and comparable to the body of the same name in the Pelecypoda (p. 655). A pyloric cœcum is frequently appended to the stomach. The intestine is long and thrown into folds in the vegetable-feeding forms, short and straight in the carnivorous.

In some cases, *e.g.*, *Haliotis*, it traverses the ventricle, in others the pericardium; in others it passes through the nephridium. In Eolis (Nudibranchia) the stomach gives off a number of glandular cœca which penetrate into the interior of the secondary branchiæ or *cerata* on the dorsal surface; these cœca take the place of the liver of other Gastropoda. In some of the Pectinibranchia there is a peculiar *adrectal gland* situated at the side of the rectum secreting a colourless fluid which in *Murex* and *Purpura* turns purple on exposure to the air, and was anciently used as a dye—the "Tyrian purple."

The **heart** is as in other molluscs enclosed in a special cavity—the *pericardium*—a specialised part of the cœlome, communicating with the cavity of the nephridia. It consists usually, as in Triton, of two chambers—auricle and ventricle—but in some, *e.g.*, Haliotis, there are two auricles and a ventricle. In the Opisthobranchia, as already mentioned, it lies in front of the ctenidia; in the Streptoneura at the side or behind. Given off from the apex of the ventricle is a large vessel which soon bifurcates to form anterior and posterior aortæ. These are the main trunks of the arterial system, which is more highly developed than in the Pelecypoda; the finest branches terminate in sinuses as in the latter class.

The **nervous system** varies considerably in the different groups in regard to the arrangement of the ganglia and their commissures.

In the majority the arrangement is nearly that which has been described as occurring in Triton. There is a pair of *cerebral ganglia* usually closely united, but in Patella (Fig. 597) widely separated, placed over the gullet, and giving off behind a pair of nerve-cords—the *visceral nerve-cords*—in the course of which there is placed laterally a pair of *pleural ganglia*, and which are united together behind in a *median abdominal ganglion* (or two as in Triton). In the course of these visceral cords there is a pair of *visceral ganglia*. A pair of *pedal ganglia* united together by a transverse commissure and joined to the cerebral ganglia by connectives, give off behind one or two pairs of pedal nerves as already

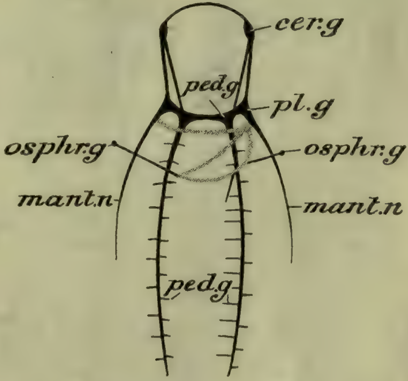


FIG. 597.—Nervous system of **Patella.** *cer. g.* cerebral ganglia; *mant. n.*, *mant. n.* mantle nerves; *osph. g.* osphradial ganglia; *ped. g.* pedal ganglia; *ped. n.* pedal nerve cords; *pl.g.* pleural ganglion. (After Spengel.)

mentioned. A pair of *buccal ganglia* are connected by slender nerves with the cerebral. At the base of each osphradium is usually a small *osphradial ganglion* connected by a slender nerve with the visceral. In all the Streptoneura (Fig. 598), in accordance with the displacement of the anus and the coiling of the visceral mass, the visceral cords are twisted, as already described in the case of Triton, into a figure of 8.

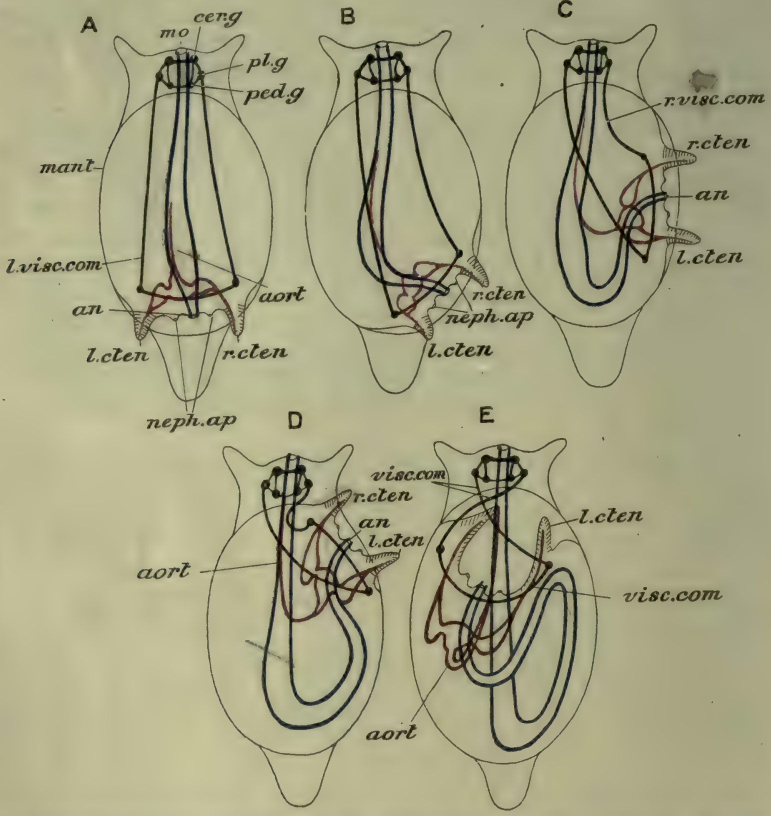

A
mo
cer.g
pl.g
ped.g
mant
l.visc.com
an
aort
l.cten
r.cten
neph.ap
B
r.cten
neph.ap
l.cten
C
r.visc.com
r.cten
an
l.cten
D
r.cten
an
l.cten
aort
E
visc.com
l.cten
visc.com
aort

FIG. 598.—Diagrammatic representation of the displacement of the mantle-cavity and associated parts in the **Gastropoda.** Enteric canal blue, blood-system red. A, represents a nearly symmetrical arrangement; in B, C, D, are represented successive stages of displacement of the mantle-cavity to the right and forwards; in E, the anus and (primarily) right ctenidium have passed the middle line. *an.* anus; *aort.* aorta; *cer. g.* cerebral ganglion; *l. cten.* left ctenidium; *l. visc. com.* left visceral commissure; *mant.* mantle; *mo.* mouth; *neph. ap.* nephridial apertures; *ped. g.* pedal ganglion; *pl. g.* pleural ganglion; *r. cten.* right ctenidium; *r. visc. com.* right visceral commissure; *visc. com.* visceral commissures. (After Korschelt and Heider.)

In Patella (Fig. 597) the pedal ganglia give origin to a pair of elongated pedal nerve-cords. In Haliotis and Fissurella there is a similar pair of pedal cords which are connected together by transverse commissures, and, in the latter genus, join together posteriorly.

In the Euthyneura (Fig. 599) except in *Actæon* and *Chilina*, the visceral cords are not caught up in the twist of the visceral mass, and the crossing of the cords does not occur.

In the Snails and other Pulmonata (Fig. 600) the ganglia of the nervous system are more closely aggregated together. A pair of cerebral ganglia overlie the œsophagus, and below it is a mass of ganglia in which are to be made out a pair of pedal and at least two pairs of ganglia representing the visceral and pleural. A pair of small buccal ganglia are connected with the cerebral by means of slender nerves.

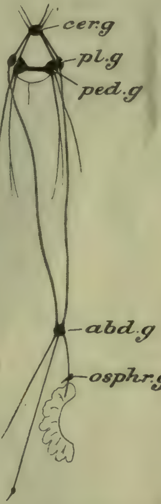


FIG. 599.—Nervous system of **Aplysia** (Opisthobranchia). *abd.* abdominal ganglion; *cer. g.* cerebral ganglion; *osphr. g.* osphradial ganglion; *ped. g.* pedal ganglion; *pl. g.* pleural ganglion. (After Spengel.)

The **organs of special sense** are the eyes, the otocysts, and the osphradia. In nearly all cases there are two cephalic eyes (Fig. 601), the position of which has already been referred to in the account given of the external characters. In structure they are the simplest in Patella (*A*), where each consists of a pit-like depression, lined by pigmented cells connected with nerve-fibres. In the majority they have the structure described in the case of *Triton.* In certain species of *Onchidium*, a littoral Pulmonate, there are numerous eyes of a simple type scattered over the dorsal surface. In this case the optic nerve pierces the retina and the cells of the latter have their free ends directed away from the centre of the eye, as in Pecten (see p. 658) and the Vertebrata, instead of towards it, as in other Mollusca. The internal cavity of the eye is occupied by a refractive body composed of a few large transparent cells The *otocysts* are usually placed in close relation to the pedal ganglia, but are always innervated from the cerebral. An *olfactory*

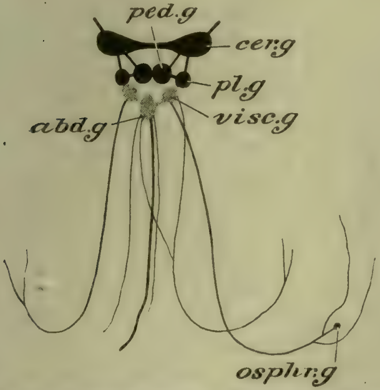


FIG. 600.—Nervous system of **Limnæus** (Pulmonata). *abd. g.* abdominal ganglion; *cer. g.* cerebral ganglion; *osphr. g.* osphradial ganglion; *ped. g.* pedal ganglion; *pl. g.* pleural ganglion. (After Spengel.)

organ is present in the shape of groups of cells, in which the fibres of an olfactory nerve terminate, situated on the tentacles.

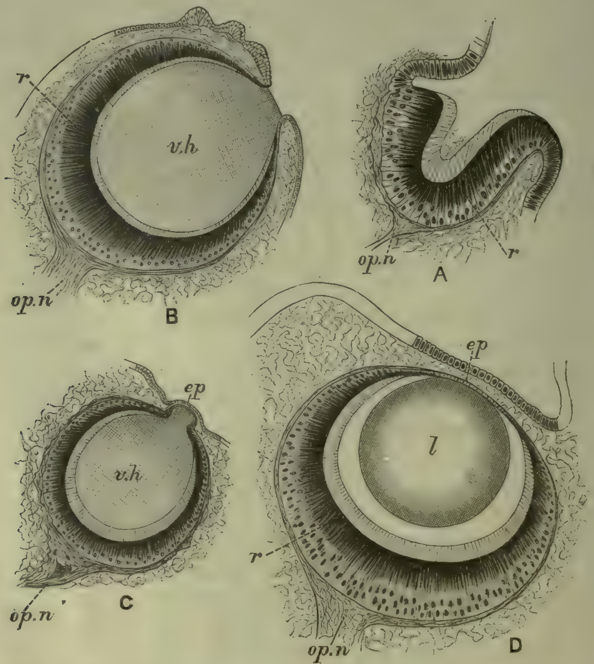


FIG. 601.—Eyes of Gastropoda. A, **Patella**; B, **Trochus**; C, **Turbo**; D, **Murex.** *ep.* epidermis; *l.* lens; *op. n.* optic nerve; *r.* retina; *v. h.* vitreous humour. (From the *Cambridge Natural History*, after Helger.)

The *osphradia* are prominences, usually of simple form, situated close to the base of the ctenidium. In many of the branchiate Streptoneura (Fig. 602), as already mentioned in the case of Triton (see p. 676, Fig. 576), the right osphradium, which is alone developed, assumes the form of a pectinate body with a central ridge, on either side of which is a row of close-set lateral laminæ, and is commonly termed the *parabranchia* from its resemblance in appearance to a gill. In some cases it is of even more complicated shape than in Triton, owing to the branching of the lateral ridges.

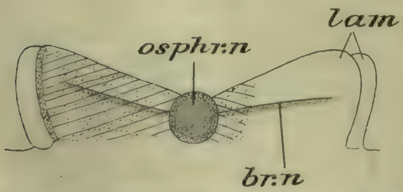


FIG. 602.—Transverse section of osphradium of **Murex.** *br. n.* branch nerve passing to lamina; *lam.* laminæ; *osphr. n.* main osphradial nerve. (After Spengel.)

The **nephridia** of the Gastropoda are dorsally placed glandular tubes or chambers, which communicate internally with the pericardium, and open on the exterior close to the anus, either directly or through a duct—the *ureter*. Both right and left nephridia may be present, though unequal in size, the one situated to the right of the anus being larger than that situated to the left; or the former may alone be developed (*Euthyneura*). In a very limited number of Gastropoda the gonad opens into the nephridium.

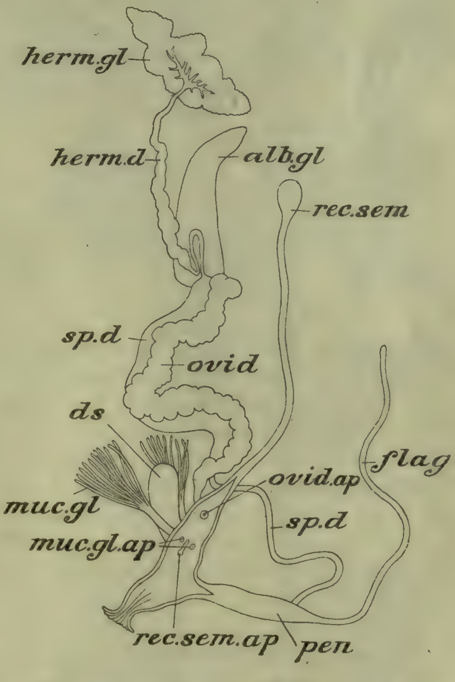


FIG. 603.—Reproductive organs of Helix. *alb. gl.* albumen gland; *d. s.* dart sac; *flag.* flagellum of the penis; *herm. gl.* hermaphrodite gland; *herm. d.* hermaphrodite duct; *muc. gl.* mucous gland; *muc. gl. ap.* apertures of mucous glands into vestibule; *ovid.* oviducal part of the common duct; *ovid. ap.* aperture of oviduct into vestibule; *pen.* penis; *rec. sem.* receptaculum seminis; *rec. sem. ap.* aperture of receptaculum seminis; *sp. d.* sperm duct; *sp. d′.* spermiducal part of common duct. (After Pelseneer.)

The **sexes** are separate in nearly all the Streptoneura, united in the Euthyneura. Special gonoducts are present, except in one or two forms in which the nephridia perform that function. In the unisexual forms the reproductive apparatus is of a comparatively simple character, consisting merely of a racemose reproductive organ, ovary or testis, as the case may be, situated dorsally in the visceral spiral, with the gonoduct opening far forwards on the right-hand side, and, in the male a penis, which is grooved longitudinally and non-retractile. In the hermaphrodite forms, such as the Pulmonata (Fig. 603), on the other hand, a considerable degree of complexity is observable. There is a *hermaphrodite gland* (*herm. gl.*, Fig. 604, *A*), some of the follicles of which produce ova, while others produce sperms, a convoluted *hermaphrodite duct* (*herm. d.*), an albumen gland, in which the albumen of the relatively large eggs is formed, separate oviduct and spermiduct leading to a common genital opening. In addition there is a receptaculum seminis (*rec. sem.*) connected with the oviduct, a number of narrow accessory oviducal glands (*muc. gl.*), frequently a gland termed *prostate* connected with the spermiduct, an eversible sac—the *sac of the dart* (*d. s.*)—containing a crystalline stylet, and a *penis* (*pen.*), which is perforated by a canal, and is capable of being retracted by a special muscle. The duct may be simple or may be incompletely divided longitudinally into two parts. In the Pulmonata the first part (*hermaphrodite duct* proper) is simple, and serves for the passage of both ova and sperms; the middle part is incompletely divided internally into two passages, one serving as oviduct, the other as spermiduct. In the distal part oviduct and spermiduct are completely separate. Where the spermiduct enters the penis, there is given off a long, slender, tapering diverticulum, the *flagellum* (*flag.*), in which the sperms are made up into elongated masses or spermatophores.

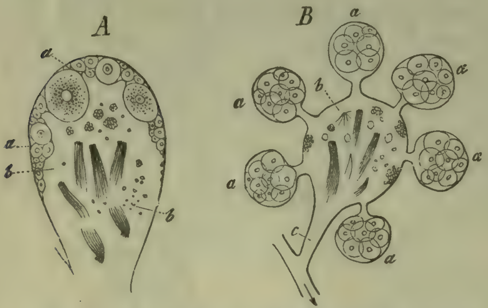


FIG. 604.—Follicles of the hermaphrodite gland of the Gastropoda. *A*, of **Helix hortensis** (Pulmonata); *B*, of the **Eolidæ**. *a. a* ova; *b.* masses of sperms; *c.* common efferent duct. (From Gegenbaur.)

Development.—The limpets (*Patella*) are exceptional in laying the eggs one by one and unfertilised—impregnation taking place in the water after they have been discharged. In almost all the Gastropoda fertilisation is internal, and the eggs are laid in great masses, embedded in jelly—each egg having its own hyaline envelope. Very often the mass of spawn consisting of the jelly-like substance, with the eggs embedded in it, attains a relatively considerable size. In form it varies greatly: very often it is in the shape of long strings which are cylindrical or band-like: sometimes several such strings are twisted together into a cord. Sometimes the spawn is fixed to sea-weed or other objects; sometimes it is unattached, and may float about freely. In the Streptoneura (Fig. 605), instead of a jelly-like mass, the eggs are enclosed in a firm parchment-like capsule, in which is contained, in addition to the eggs, a quantity of an albuminous fluid, serving to nourish the developing embryos. The shape of the capsule (Fig. 605) varies greatly in the different genera; sometimes it is stalked, sometimes sessile; in some cases there is a lid or operculum, the opening of which permits of the escape of the embryos. Very commonly large numbers of these capsules are aggregated together, and usually they are attached to a rock or a sea-weed, or similar object. In many cases only a limited number, sometimes only one, of the embryos contained in the capsule become developed—the rest serving as nutriment for the survivors.

In the land Pulmonata each ovum is sometimes embedded in gelatinous matter enclosed in a firmer envelope, and a number of them are arranged in a string; sometimes a large number are embedded in a rounded gelatinous mass. Usually, as in Helix and other genera, the outer layers of the albumen-like substance enclosing the egg become toughened and impregnated with salts of lime, so as to assume the character of a calcareous shell; a number of such eggs, which are of relatively considerable size, are laid in holes excavated in the earth.

In a few marine and fresh-water Gastropoda the ova undergo their development in the body of the mother, enclosed in an enlargement of the oviduct which serves as a uterus.

The egg contains a considerable quantity of food-yolk, which may be evenly distributed, or a clear protoplasmic and an opaque yolk-laden segment may be distinguishable. There is a fairly close agreement throughout the class in the nature of the segmentation (Fig. 606). In all cases it is total, sometimes equal at first, but soon afterwards becoming unequal. The first four blastomeres are usually equal or nearly so; they are so arranged that two of them are in contact in the middle, and thus separate the other two: the line of contact of the former pair becomes the transverse axis of the embryo.

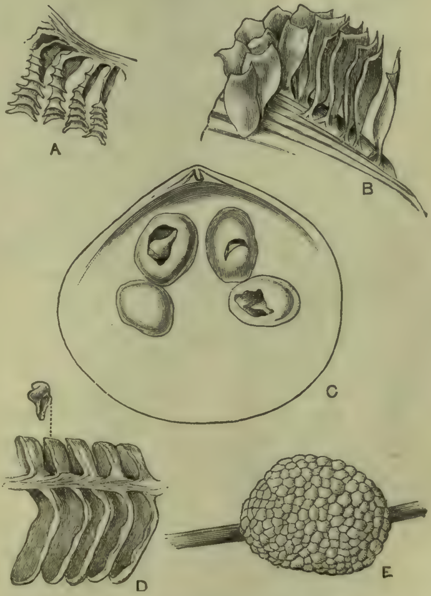


Fig. 605.—Forms of egg cases in Gastropoda. *A* and *D*, **Pyrula** or **Busycon**; *B*, **Conus**; *C*, **Voluta musica**; *E*, **Ampullaria.** (From the *Cambridge Natural History*.)

From the four first-formed cells four small cells—*micromeres*—become constricted off, the larger cells being the *megameres*; then four more micromeres are constricted off, and again the same process is repeated. The embryo now consists of the four megameres and twelve micromeres. The latter then increase by division and form a cap of small cells (ectoderm) on the surface of the megameres. The whole process, as will be noticed, has a remarkably close resemblance to the process of segmentation of the ovum of a Polyclad as described on p. 257.

The megameres then give off internally four small endoderm cells, and from one of these (*endomesoderm cell*) are formed two primitive mesoderm cells, from which the cells of the mesoderm are developed. The megameres themselves eventually become converted into endoderm cells. A segmentation-cavity is developed between the micromeres and the megameres, and the result is the formation of the blastula, one side of which (*vegetal pole*) is greatly thickened owing to its consisting of the large megameres, the opposite side (*animal pole*) being made up of the micromeres. This may become a gastrula by epiboly or overgrowth of the ectoderm over the megameres, or, if the segmentation-cavity is of considerable size, an invagination takes place.

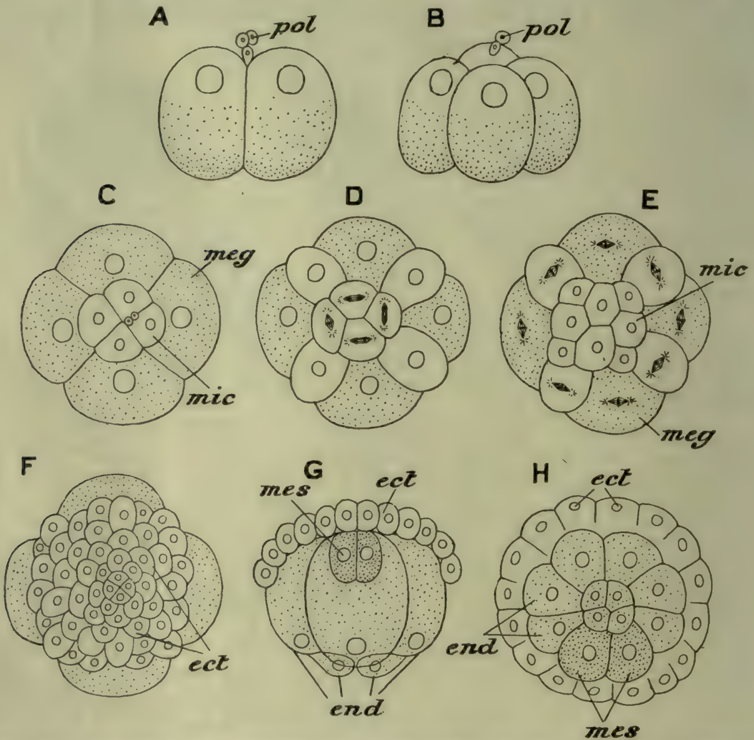


FIG. 606.—Diagram of the segmentation and formation of the germinal layers of the Gastropoda. *A* and *B*, lateral view; *C—F*, viewed from the animal pole; *H*, from the vegetal pole; *G*, in optical section; *ect.* ectoderm; *end.* endoderm; *mes.* mesoderm; *pol.* polar bodies. (After Korschelt and Heider.)

The two larval stages, the trochosphere and the veliger, are characteristic of the development of the Gastropoda. The former is most typically developed in Patella; in other Gastropods it undergoes more or less modification. In Patella (Fig. 607) there is a ciliated blastula (*A*) which has on one side the large megameres. The latter become enclosed by the micromeres, and the foundation of the mesoderm is laid in the manner already described. The blastopore is situated at the vegetal pole, destined to become the hinder end of the larva. The blastopore soon changes its position and extends forwards on the ventral side, and a ciliated ring—the *prototroch* or future *velum*—becomes formed. Subsequently the position of the blastopore becomes still further shifted; it becomes U-shaped and then slit-like. It undergoes

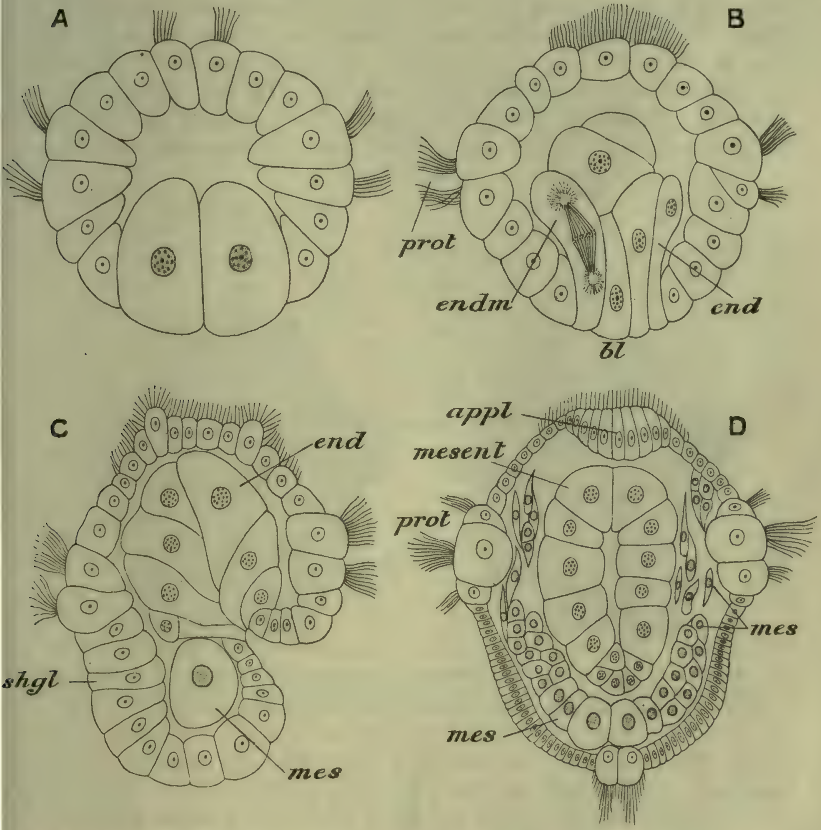


FIG. 607.—Earlier stages in the development of **Patella.** *A*, blastula; *B*, beginning of endodermal invagination; *C*, completion of gastrula; *D*, frontal section of somewhat later stage; *ap. pl.* apical plate; *bl.* blastopore; *endm.* endomesoderm cell; *end.* endoderm; *mes.* mesoderm; *mesent.* mesenteron; *proto.* prototroch; *sh. gl.* shell-gland. (From Korschelt and Heider, after Patten.)

elongation (Fig. 608, *A*) and eventually becomes partly closed up, the closure taking place from behind forwards; the most anterior part remains open to form the mouth, or, perhaps more correctly, there is in the position of the anterior part a sinking-in of the ectoderm, which pushes the blastopore inwards and forms the rudiment of the stomodæum. The originally solid mass of endoderm develops a lumen, and its cells become arranged to form the enteric epithelium. From the posterior end, where the mesoderm cells are situated, proceed two very regularly formed mesoderm streaks (Fig. 608, *B*). On the dorsal surface the shell-gland has already appeared as a pit lined by elongated ectoderm cells; on the surface of this appears the embryonic shell.

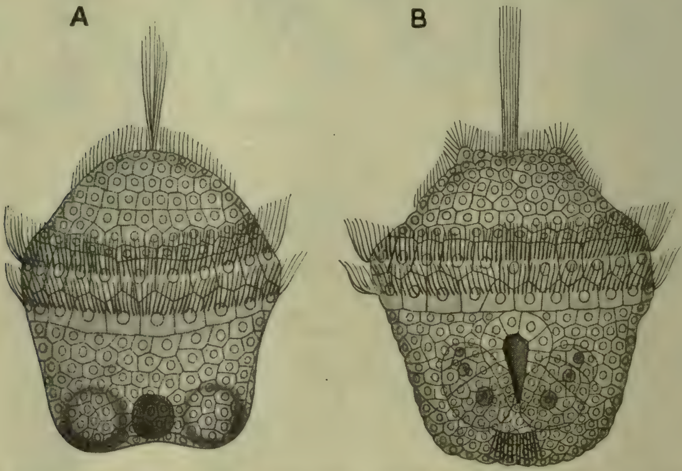


FIG. 608.—*A* and *B*, Trochospheres of **Patella** at different stages. In *A* are to be seen the circular blastopore and the two foot-elevations; in *B* the blastopore is drawn out, at the sides of it are the two mesoderm bands. (From Korschelt and Heider, after Patten.)

The rudiment of the foot (Fig. 608, *A*) appears at a remarkably early stage as two protuberances lying on the ventral side of the posterior end of the larva at the sides of the blastopore; these coalesce to form the median foot.

The larva (Fig. 609) has now assumed the trochosphere form. The præ-oral part is large and convex, with an apical plate on which is borne a bunch of long cilia, and near it two small ciliated elevations, each consisting of a single cell. The præ-oral part of the larva then becomes much flattened, and the apical plate (*ap.pl.*) increases in size and importance. At the posterior end is a bunch of cilia which are borne on two special large cells, the *anal cells* (*an.c.*). The embryonic shell becomes saucer-shaped. A slight ridge in the neighbourhood of the shell represents the border of the mantle. The mid-gut (*mesent*) has become considerably widened: a diverticulum from it becomes recognisable, this afterwards opens on the exterior to form the anus. A diverticulum of the fore-gut (*rad.*) at the same time forms the rudiment of the radular sac. The otolith-sacs appear as depressions of the ectoderm at the sides of the mouth: these grow inwards and become sac-like, subsequently lying at the sides of the foot, which has meantime attained a considerable size.

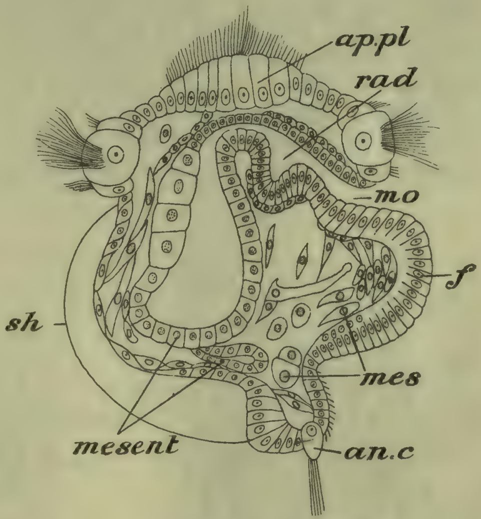


Fig. 609.—Later trochosphere of larva of **Patella** in longitudinal section. *an. c.* anal cells with cilia; *ap. pl.* apical plate; *f.* foot; *mes.* mesoderm cells; *mesent.* mesenteron; *mo.* mouth; *rad.* rudiment of radula sac; *sh.* shell. (From Korschelt and Heider, after Patten.)

The trochosphere stage, which is so well marked in the case of *Patella*, occurs in other Gastropods, though, as a rule, presenting modifications perhaps traceable to the enclosure of the embyro in an egg-shell and to the presence of much food-yolk. The history of the blastopore is not the same in all cases; in some, the mouth is developed from its anterior portion: in others the stomodæal invagination arises after its complete closure. In most of the Gastropoda the præ-oral circlet or velum (Fig. 610, *vel.*) undergoes a development not observable in the Pelecypod embryo, and becomes greatly extended as a bilobed flap, the strong cilia with which it is bordered rendering it a very efficient organ of locomotion for the larva. With the full development of the velum the larva passes into the Veliger stage (Fig. 610). In this stage the shell (*sh.*) increases in size, loses its simple form, and begins to develop a spiral. A cleft-like depression in the border of the mantle on the right-hand side forms the rudiment of the mantle-cavity in which, later, the gills are developed. The anus when it first appears is symmetrically placed, but later becomes shifted to the right side and forwards as well as dorsally. The foot (*f.*) may attain a considerable development during the Veliger stage. On its posterior and dorsal part appears the operculum. Two little processes on the velar area develop into the tentacles (*tent.*), and the eyes (*ey.*) appear at their bases. As the foot and other organs advance in development the velum decreases in size and gradually aborts. In some cases a portion of it persists as the subtentacular lobes or labial tentacles in the neighbourhood of the mouth.

In the Pulmonata the velum is not well developed, except in Onchidium, though the trochosphere stage is well marked.

The young Gastropod is at first bilaterally symmetrical; the prevailing asymmetry is the result of unequal growth of the two sides of the body. In the majority of cases it is the left side that grows more actively than the right, a result of which is that the posterior parts—the anus and the parts surrounding it—are displaced forwards towards the right, the space between the anus and the mouth on that side undergoing little or no increase in length. In the Opisthobranchia and the Pulmonata the anus with the mantle-cavity and its contents become displaced forwards to the neighbourhood of the anterior end; in the Streptoneura the anus, etc., in their displacement forward pass beyond the middle line, one of the most striking effects of which is the crossing of the pleuro-visceral commissures, already referred to (p. 694).

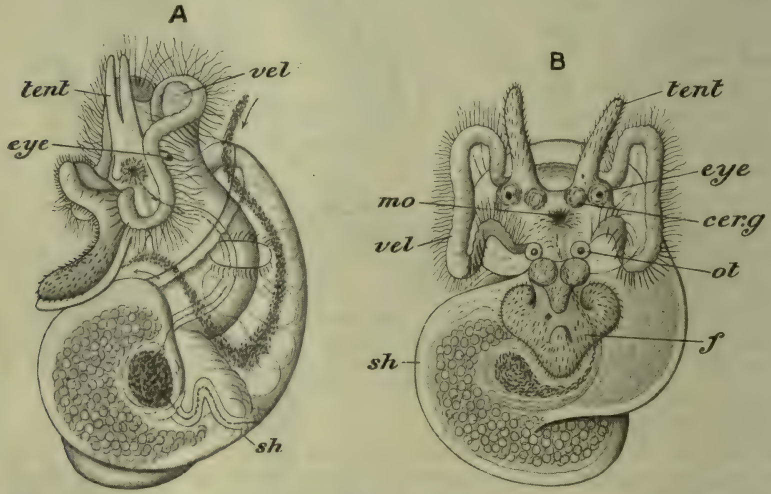


FIG. 610.—Veliger stage of **Vermetus.** *cer. g.* cerebral ganglia; *ey.* eye; *f.* foot; *mo.* mouth; *ot.* otocyst; *sh.* shell; *tent.* tentacle; *vel.* velum. (After Lacaze-Duthiers.)

Ethology and Distribution.—Only a few aberrant families of Gastropoda are parasites. Most are aquatic, all the most primitive forms being inhabitants of the sea. Of the marine families the majority move by creeping over the sea-bottom, some burrowing in mud or sand, some in solid rock; some are able to float in a reversed position, adhering to frothy mucus secreted by the glands of the foot; certain exceptional forms such as *Vermetus* are fixed in the adult condition by the substance of the shell. A few families—the Heteropoda and the Pteropoda—are specially modified for a pelagic mode of existence, and swim through the water by flapping movements of the lobes of the foot, which act as fins. Gastropods are found at considerable depths—up to nearly 3,000 fathoms—in the ocean. Many forms, however, are inhabitants of fresh water, while many Pulmonata are terrestrial, and occur even towards the summits of the highest mountains.

Fossil Gastropoda are known from almost the earliest fossil-bearing rocks, and all the major divisions of the class are represented in formations of palæozoic age.

The mutual relationships of the various groups of Gastropoda are shown in the following diagram (Fig. 611):—

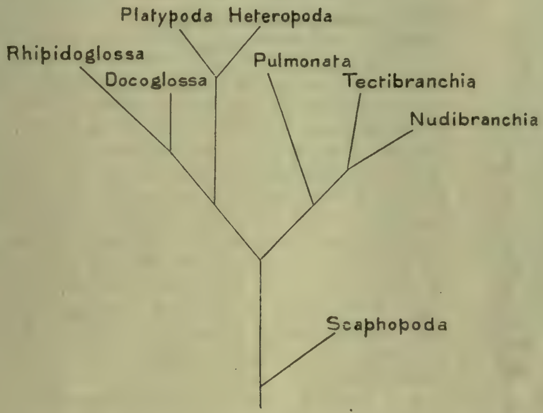


Fig. 611.—Diagram to illustrate the relationships of the Gastropoda.

APPENDIX TO THE GASTROPODA.

A. CLASS IV.—SCAPHOPODA.

The Scaphopoda or Elephant's tusk shells are aberrant marine Molluscs comprising only three genera—*Dentalium*, *Siphonodentalium*, and *Pulsellum*. The body is elongated, so as to be almost worm-like, with complete bilateral symmetry. The mantle-folds are almost completely united to form a cylindrical tube enclosed by the shell (Fig. 612), which is in the form of a delicate, curved tube, open at both ends and wider at one end—the anterior or oral—than at the other. The foot (Fig. 613, *f*) is narrow, trilobed at the extremity, capable of being protruded through the oral opening of the shell, and used for burrowing in sand. The mouth is situated on a short oral proboscis, and is sometimes surrounded by

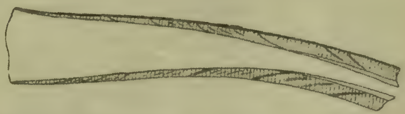


Fig. 612.—**Dentalium,** longitudinal section of shell. (After Keferstein.)

lobed processes or pinnate palpi. Further back are a pair of tentaculiferous lobes, each bearing a large number of filiform tentacles, which are probably respiratory in function. The mouth leads into a buccal cavity containing an odontophore. Connected with the mesenteron is a large bilobed liver (*l.*). The anus is situated ventrally behind the base of the foot. The vascular system is extremely simple, consisting of sinuses without definite walls, and there is no distinct heart, though in the neighbourhood of the rectum there is a specially contractile part of the principal sinus. Two nephridia open near the anus, the right one acting as a gonoduct, the left (*k*) entirely renal in function. The sexes are distinct. There is an elongated unpaired gonad (*g*), divided by lateral incisions into a number of lobes, occupying all the posterior and dorsal parts of the body. Anteriorly it narrows to form a duct opening into the right nephridium.

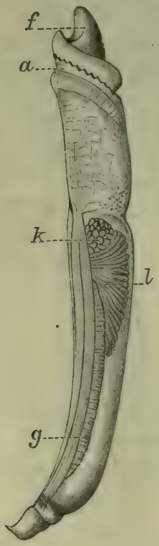


Fig. 613.—**Dentalium,** anatomy. *a.* anterior aperture of mantle; *f.* foot; *g.* gonad; *k*, nephridium; *l.* liver. (From the *Cambridge Natural History*, after Lacaze-Duthiers.)

The nervous system consists of paired cerebral, pleural, pedal, and visceral ganglia; the cerebral ganglia are situated close together. There are no eyes or otocysts.

In the gastrula stage the embryo, which is provided with cilia, becomes free. The ciliated cells are arranged in a characteristic manner in three rows which, at first situated close together about the middle of the body, become shifted at a later stage nearer the apical pole, and amalgamated into a broad band representing the præ-oral circlet of other molluscan larvæ; at the same time a bunch of cilia previously developed at the apical pole becomes more conspicuous, and a considerable part of the general surface becomes covered with more delicate cilia. The blastopore, at first terminal, becomes shifted forwards on the ventral surface until it comes to be immediately behind the ciliated circlet. At its anterior end an invagination gives rise to the mouth and stomodæum.

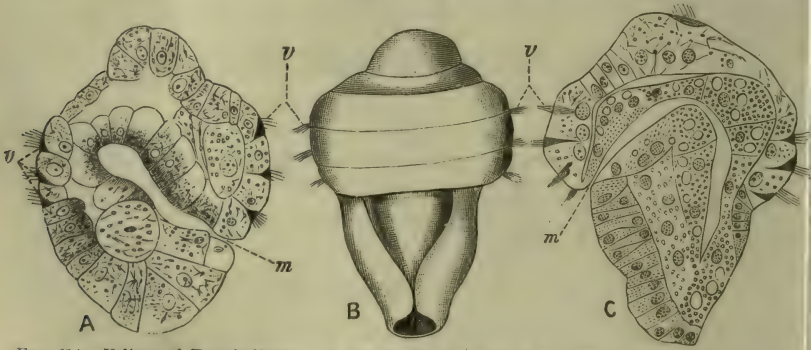


Fig. 614.—Veliger of **Dentalium.** A, longitudinal section of a larva 14 hours old; B, larva of 37 hours; C, longitudinal section of larva of 34 hours; *m.* mouth; *v. v.* velum. (From Cooke, after Kowalewsky.)

The larva (Fig. 614) is now attaining the stage of a trochosphere, in which, however, both apical plate and primitive nephridia are wanting. A shell-gland is developed, and soon the rudiment of the shell. The post-oral region, at first inconsiderable in size, soon undergoes an increase, until it forms eventually by far the longest part of the body, while the præ-oral region almost completely aborts. When the post-oral region has attained a certain size, there are developed on it two lateral folds, the rudiments of the mantle (B), which grow inwards towards the middle ventral line, and later on unite by their free margins. The præ-oral circlet or velum changes its form at first it is conical, later it becomes plate-like, and then gradually becomes reduced, the larva sinking to the bottom, and though still occasionally swimming with the aid of the velum, coming to use the foot as a creeping organ. The shell now increases in size step by step with the growth of the mantle, and bends round the body of the larva until its edges meet and coalesce in the ventral median line. Later it assumes the elongated conical form, curved towards the dorsal side, characteristic of the adult. The foot at the same time elongates and takes on the characteristic three-lobed shape.

B. RHODOPE.

Rhodope (Fig. 614, *bis*) is a minute, elongated, fusiform animal, ciliated externally with complete (external) bilateral symmetry. There is no shell, but within the body-wall, in the parenchyma between it and the enteric canal, are numerous irregularly shaped, calcareous spicules. There are no jaws or odontophore. The enteric canal, which is a narrow tube, consisting of buccal cavity, with salivary glands, œsophagus, mid-gut, with a cœcum, and rectum, opens in an anal aperture situated to the right of the posterior extremity of the body. A liver is absent. The central part of the nervous system consists of two ganglia situated close together above the œsophagus, and a single ganglion below. A pair of lateral nerve cords run backwards from the posterior of the two upper pairs of ganglia. There are a pair of eyes and a pair of otocysts situated close to the posterior upper ganglia.

The nephridial system consists of a chamber opening on the right side in front of the anus; into this open nine or ten flask-shaped flame-cells similar to those of the Flat-worms.

There are no blood-vessels, and specialised organs of respiration are also absent.

The sexes are united. The gonads consist of about twenty ventrally situated masses of cells, the anterior being ovaries and the posterior testes. There is a common duct receiving the products of all the gonads: anteriorly this divides into spermiduct and oviduct with separate apertures situated on the right side, the spermiduct with a muscular penis, the oviduct with a receptaculum seminis and an accessory gland.

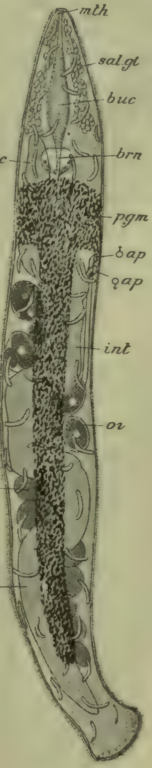


FIG. 614, *bis*. — **Rhodope veranii.** General view. The scattered curved bodies are the spicules. ♂ *ap*. male aperture; ♀ *ap*. female aperture; *buc*. buccal cavity; *brn*. central nervous system; *cœc*. cœcum; *int*. intestine; *mth*. mouth; *ov*. ovary; *sal. gld*. salivary gland; *te*. testes. (After von Graff.)

There is no metamorphosis, and the larva is not provided at any stage with any representatives of either shell-gland or foot.

Though the occurrence of flame-cells is unique there can be little doubt that Rhodope is best regarded as a degenerate member of the Mollusca, and probably finds its nearest relatives among the Gastropoda.

Class V.—CEPHALOPODA.

The *Cephalopoda*, including the Cuttle-fishes, Squids, Octopi, and Nautili, are marine Mollusca of a high grade of organisation. There is a very definitely-formed head, bearing a pair of highly-developed eyes, and surrounded by the anterior portion of the foot, modified into arms or tentacles. The body is bilaterally symmetrical. The posterior part of the foot is modified to form a funnel leading out from the large mantle-cavity. A shell is sometimes present, sometimes absent. When present it is usually internal, but sometimes external and in the Nautili is capable of containing the body of the animal.

1. EXAMPLES OF THE CLASS.

i. THE CUTTLE-FISH (*Sepia*[1]).

Cuttle-fishes are marine Molluscs, which live usually at a depth of a few fathoms, but often come into shallower water, and are frequently caught in the trawl or the seine. The animal arrests attention when compared with Unio or Triton by the strength, and more particularly by the rapidity, of its movements; by the possession of a pair of eyes resembling in size and complexity those of a Fish; and by various other features, all pointing to a higher grade of organisation than is attained by the members of the classes of Mollusca dealt with in the preceding pages.

External Features.—The Cuttle-fish (Fig. 615) has a distinct *head*, bearing ten long arms, and a pair of large, highly-developed eyes. The head is connected with the body by a constricted region or *neck*. The *trunk* is elongated and shield-shaped, the base of the shield being towards the head. The long axes of head and trunk are in line with one another. Not only the head, but also the trunk, are completely equilateral, in which respect there is a marked contrast to Triton; and this symmetry extends to most of the systems of internal organs. The free extremity of the head bears the mouth, and is termed, accordingly, the *oral* extremity, the opposite extremity, the apex of the shield-shaped body, is the *aboral* end. The surfaces of the shield are *anterior* or *antero-dorsal* and *posterior* or *postero-ventral*, its borders *right* and *left*. The anterior surface is to be distinguished by its darker colour, and by the firmness of the body-wall, due to the presence in this position of a hard internal shell.

---

[1] Most of the figures have reference to a common Australian species—*S. cultrata*—but the differences between the various species of the genus are slight and unimportant, and the description given will apply fairly well to any other species.

The aperture of the mouth is surrounded by the bases of the ten *arms*. These are in pairs, situated to the right and left of the median plane. All of them, with the exception of the fourth pair (the most anteriorly situated pair being reckoned as the first), are stout at the base and taper towards the extremity. When extended they are about two-thirds of the length of the body. The outer surface of each (*i.e.* that turned away from the mouth) is strongly convex, the inner flat, and beset throughout its length with a number of *suckers* (Fig. 616), which are arranged in four longitudinal rows. Each sucker is in the form of a shallow cup, supported on a short, thick stalk (*st.*). The lip of the cup is membranous, and immediately within it is a narrow, horny rim (*dent.*). In the middle of the bottom of the cup is a thick plug or piston (*pl.*), which is capable of being drawn downwards by the contraction of muscular fibres inserted into it, the effect, when the rim of the sucker is in contact with some solid object, being to create a partial vacuum in the cavity, resulting in firm adhesion, owing to the pressure of the surrounding water. The fourth pair of arms, usually known as the *tentacles*, are comparatively long and narrow, and provided with suckers only towards their free ends, which are somewhat thickened and clublike. In the male the fifth arm on the left side presents a slight modification, some of the suckers being absent. This is an indication of a change termed *hectocotylisation*, which, as will be pointed out in the general account of the class, assumes in some cases a very remarkable character. From their nerve-supply the arms of Sepia prove to be the equivalents of the fore-foot of Triton, which here becomes extended to the region of the head, and divided into a series of processes or arms encircling the mouth.

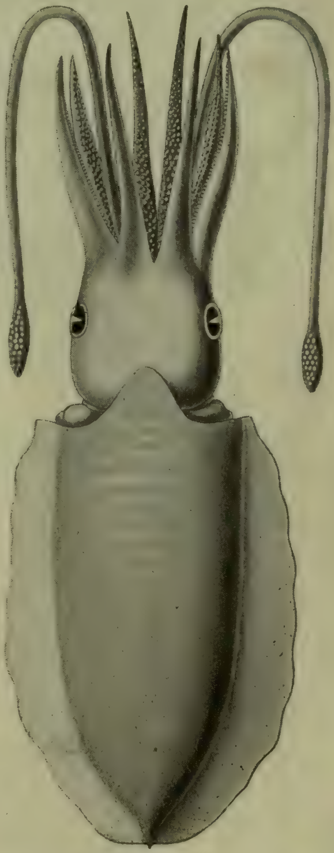


FIG. 615.—**Sepia cultrata.** Entire animal viewed from the dorsal aspect.

The trunk is covered over by the thick integument of the *mantle*, which terminates toward the oral end in a ridge round the neck. Anteriorly this ridge projects as a ~~prominent~~ rounded lobe under cover of which the head can be partially retracted. Posteriorly it forms the posterior lip of the opening of a large cavity bounded by the mantle—the *mantle-cavity*—which extends along the entire posterior face of the body almost to the apex. The wide cleft between the oral edge of the mantle and the posterior surface of the body is not the only aperture leading into the mantle-cavity. On the oral side of this cleft is a large tube—the *funnel* (Fig. 621, *inf.*)—opening on the exterior behind the neck, and internally communicating by a wide aperture with the mantle-cavity. The cleft is capable of being almost completely closed by the apposition of a pair of oval projections (*mant. cart.*) of the inner surface of the posterior mantle wall near its oral border, and a pair of concave depressions (*inf. cart.*) on the opposite (posterior) face of the funnel. The funnel is thus, under ordinary circumstances, the main outlet of the mantle-cavity. As such it not only carries to the exterior the effete water of respiration, the fæcal matters from the intestine, and the products of the excretory and reproductive organs, but also takes an important part in locomotion, the most important movements of the Cuttle-fish, by which it darts rapidly through the water in the direction of the aboral pointed end of the body, being effected by rhythmical contractions of the muscular walls of the mantle-cavity causing jets of water to be forced in the oral direction through the funnel. The free passage of water inwards through the funnel is prevented by the presence in its interior of a flap-like valve opening outwards. The water required for respiration and in locomotion is thus drawn in, not through the funnel, but through the partially-closed slit-like pallial aperture previously referred to. The funnel seems, from the source of the

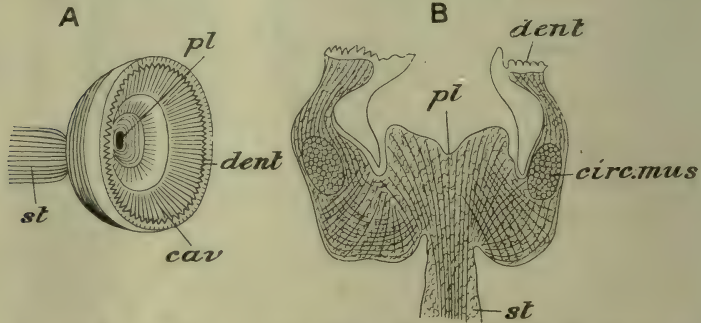


FIG. 616.—Sucker of **Sepia.** A, oblique view of a sucker magnified ; *cav.* cavity ; *circ. mus.* circular muscle ; *dent.* denticulated border ; *pl.* muscular plug ; *st.* stalk ; B, vertical section. (After Vogt and Jung.)

nerves which supply it, to be, like the arms, a specially modified part of the foot; it corresponds, perhaps, to the metapodium of Triton.

Fringing each lateral margin of the body is a thin muscular fold—the *fin*—which is used as a swimming organ.

The anterior wall of the body exhibits, ~~as already mentioned,~~ ~~a hard~~ and resistent character owing to the presence of the internal **shell** (Fig. 617). This is completely enclosed in a sac of the mantle. Like the body itself, it is bilaterally symmetrical. In shape it may be described as leaf-like, with a rounded and comparatively broad oral end, and a narrower aboral, provided with a sharp, anteriorly-projecting *spine*. The posterior surface is convex, the anterior convex towards its oral end, but deeply concave aborally, and bounded laterally by thin prominent wing-like ridges which converge to meet at the aboral extremity. The main mass of the shell consists of numerous, closely-arranged, ~~thin laminæ of calcareous~~ composition, ~~between which~~ are interspaces containing gas. On the surface is a thin layer of chitinoid material, and slightly thicker strips of similar composition run along the margins.

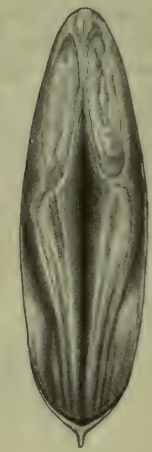


Fig. 617.—Shell of **Sepia cultrata,** posterior view. Reduced.

~~The living Cuttle-fish will be observed to undergo frequent~~ changes of colour, and blushes of different hues are to be observed passing over the surface. These are due to the presence of numerous contractile pigment-containing cells or **chromatophores** (Fig. 618) situated in the deeper layers of the integument over the entire surface. The chromatophores have elastic walls, the contracting tendency of which is capable of being counteracted by the action of bundles of muscular fibres radiating outwards from the wall of the sac into the surrounding tissues. When these radiating fibres are in action the wall of the chromatophore is drawn outwards in different directions, and as a result its cavity is dilated,

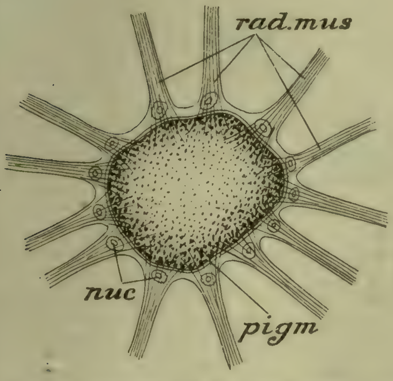


Fig. 618.—Chromatophore of **Sepia,** magnified. *nuc.* nuclei in wall of sac; *pigm.* pigment; *rad. mus.* radiating strands of muscle. (After Vogt and Jung.)

and the pigment becomes more widely diffused. When the fibres are relaxed the elasticity of the wall comes into play, and the chromatophore contracts, the contained pigment thus assuming a more condensed form. A peculiar iridescence which, in addition to the play of colours, is recognisable in the integument of *Sepia*, is due to the presence of a number of cells, the *iridocysts*.

When the **mantle-cavity** is laid open (Fig. 621) there is seen on each side of it one of the two plume-shaped *ctenidia* (*cten.*). In the middle line of the posterior surface, close to the internal opening of the funnel, is the *anal aperture* (*an.*), situated at the oral extremity of a longitudinal tube—the *rectum*. On either side of the rectum is a much narrower projecting tube with a terminal opening—the *nephridial aperture* (*neph.*). On the left-hand side is the opening of the spermiduct or oviduct (*ovid.*) as the case may be.

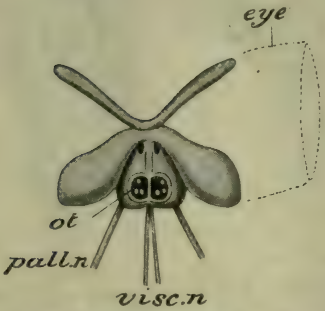


FIG. 619.—**Sepia cultrata,** cranial cartilage seen from the posterior aspect, the cavities of the otocysts exposed. *eye*, position of eye indicated by dotted line; *ot.* otocyst; *pall. n.* pallial nerve; *visc. n.* visceral nerves.

In addition to the shell, which is an important protective structure, and gives support to the muscles of the fins, Sepia also has a remarkably well developed **internal skeleton** composed of *cartilage*. An important part of this—the *cranial cartilage* (Fig. 619)—protects the principal nerve centres, encloses the auditory organ, and gives support to the eyes. Other cartilages support the bases of the arms. A thin shield-shaped plate—the *nuchal* cartilage (Fig. 620)—lies on the posterior surface of the neck. The pair of elevations on the posterior wall of the funnel and the corresponding depressions on the anterior surface of the body are borne each on a thin plate of cartilage, and thin cartilages support the bases of the fins.

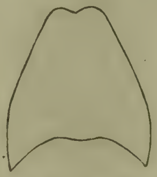


FIG. 620.—**Sepia cultrata,** nuchal cartilage.

Alimentary System.—The mouth is surrounded by a thin *peristomial membrane*, within which is a circular *lip* beset with numerous minute elevations. Lodged within the circular lip is a pair of powerful horny *jaws* (Fig. 622, Fig. 623, *jaw*^{1}, *jaw*^{2}; Fig. 624, *j.*; Fig. 626, *jaw*). These have somewhat the appearance of the jaws of a parrot, with one, the posterior, larger and more strongly bent than the other, which it partly encloses. The mouth leads into a thick-walled buccal cavity, which contains an odontophore bearing numerous minute horny teeth. The *œsophagus* (Figs. 623 and 624, *œ.*:

Fig. 626, *œs.*), following on the buccal cavity, is a narrow straight tube, which runs between the halves of the liver towards the aboral end of the body. It opens into a rounded thick-walled stomach (*st.*), and, close to the pyloric aperture leading from the

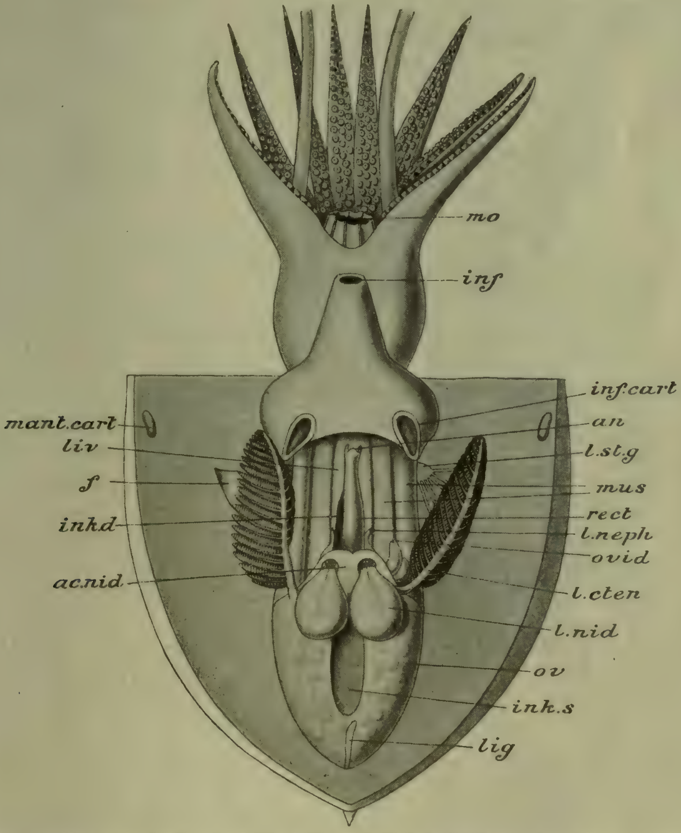


FIG 621.—**Sepia cultrata,** female seen from the posterior aspect, the wall of the mantle-cavity divided along the middle line and the two flaps thus formed spread out so as to expose the contents. *ac. nid.* accessory nidamental glands ; *an.* anal aperture with its lateral appendages ; *f.* membranous fold attaching the ctenidium to the wall of the mantle-cavity ; *inf*, external opening of funnel ; *inf. cart.* infundibular cartilage ; *ink s.* ink-sac ; *ink d.* ink-duct ; *lig.* ligamentous band which extends from the anterior wall of the mantle-cavity to the ovary, cut across ; *liv.* liver ; *l. cten.* left ctenidium ; *l. neph.* left nephridial aperture ; *l. nid.* left nidamental gland ; *l. st. g.* left stellate ganglion ; *mant. cart.* mantle cartilage ; *mo.* mouth ; *mus.* neck muscles ; *ov.* ovary ; *ovid.* oviduct *rect.* rectum.

latter into the intestine opens a wide *cæcum* (*c.*). The alimentary canal at this point bends sharply round upon itself, and the intestine runs nearly parallel with the œsophagus to open into the mantle-cavity as already described.

A pair of glands (Fig. 624, *s. g.*; Fig. 626, *sal.*), which are commonly termed *salivary*, though their functional correspondence with salivary glands has not been proved, are situated in the head behind the cranial cartilage. The ducts of these two glands run inwards and unite to form a median duct, which opens into the buccal cavity. The name of *liver* (Fig. 624, *ll.*; Fig. 626, *liv.*) or *digestive gland* is given to a large brown glandular mass which extends from the neighbourhood of the salivary glands nearly to the aboral end of the body. It consists of two completely independent right and left portions, each of which has a bile duct opening into the cavity of the alimentary canal opposite the point where stomach, cæcum, and intestine meet. Surrounding the bile-ducts and opening into them are masses of minute vesicles (Fig. 624, *b. d.*); the secretion of these has the property of converting starchy matters into sugar; they sometimes, though without sufficient reason, receive the name of *pancreas*.

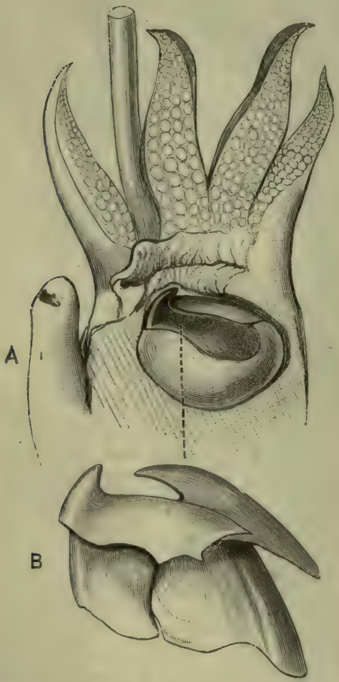


FIG. 622.—**Sepia officinalis**, jaws. A, *in situ*; B, removed and slightly enlarged. (From the *Cambridge Natural History*.)

Immediately below the thin integument of the anterior wall of the mantle-cavity lies a characteristic organ—the **ink-sac** (Fig. 626, *ink s.*; Fig. 627). This is a pear-shaped body, a portion of the interior of which is glandular and secretes a black substance—the *ink* or *sepia*—which collects in the main cavity of the sac and is discharged by a cylindrical duct opening into the rectum close to the anal aperture. When the Cuttle-fish is startled it discharges the ink, which, mixing with the water in the mantle-cavity, is ejected through the funnel as a black cloud, under cover of which the animal may escape from a threatened attack.

Vascular System.—The *heart* (Figs. 625, 626, and 628) of the Cuttle-fish consists of a ventricle and two auricles. The *ventricle* (*vent.*), which is divided into two lobes by a constriction, is somewhat obliquely placed, but the rest of the vascular system is almost completely equilateral. At its oral end the ventricle gives off a large vessel—the *oral aorta* (*aort.*); aborally it gives origin to a much smaller *aboral aorta* (*aort′.*), which bends over the ink-sac and supplies the aboral portions of the body. The arteries which lead off from the aortæ communicate by their ultimate branches with a system of capillaries, and these with a system of sinuses and veins. A large median vein, the *vena cava* (*v. cav.*), runs from the head to the neighbourhood of the rectum, in front of which it bifurcates to form to right and left afferent branchial veins (*l. aff. br. v.*, *r. aff. br. v.*), each running through the cavity of the corresponding renal organ to the base of the gill, where it is joined by veins from the aboral region. At the base of the gill the afferent branchial vein becomes dilated to form a contractile sac—the *branchial heart* (*r. br. ht.*)—appended to which is a rounded body of a glandular character—the *appendage* of the branchial heart. The afferent branchial vein runs through the axis of the branchia giving off branches as it goes. The blood is carried back to the ventricle by a dilated contractile vessel, the *auricle* or *efferent branchial vein* (*l. aur.*, *r. aur.*).

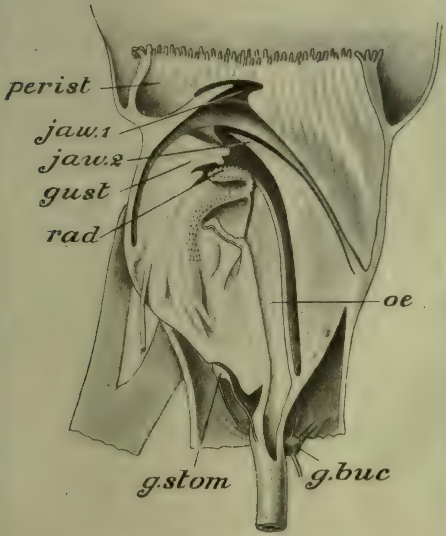


FIG. 623.—**Sepia,** median section through the buccal mass. *g. buc.* buccal ganglia; *g. stom.* stomatogastric ganglia; *gust.* supposed gustatory organ; *jaw*^{1}, posterior jaw; *jaw*^{2}, anterior jaw; *œ.* œsophagus; *perist.* peristomial membrane; *rad.* radula. (After Keferstein.)

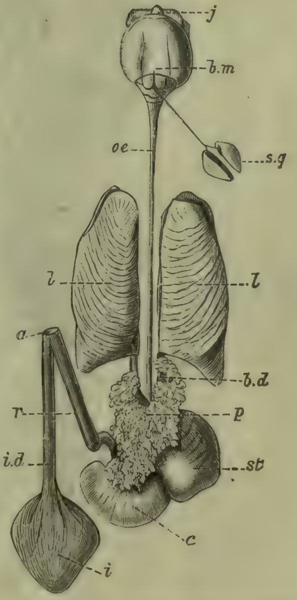


FIG. 624.—**Sepia officinalis,** enteric canal. *a.* anus; *b. d.* one of the bile ducts; *b. m.* buccal mass; *c.* cæcum; *i.* ink-sac; *i. d.* ink-duct; *j.* jaws; *l. l.* liver lobes; *œ.* œsophagus; *p.* pancreatic appendages; *r.* rectum; *s. g.* salivary glands; *st.* stomach. (From the *Cambridge Natural History.*)

The **cœlome** (Fig. 634) is a pouch of considerable size, divided by a constriction into oral and aboral parts. The former is the *pericardium* or cavity in which the heart is lodged; it gives off a pair of diverticula, right and left, each lodging the corresponding branchial heart. The aboral part of the cœlome forms the capsule which encloses the ovary or testis.

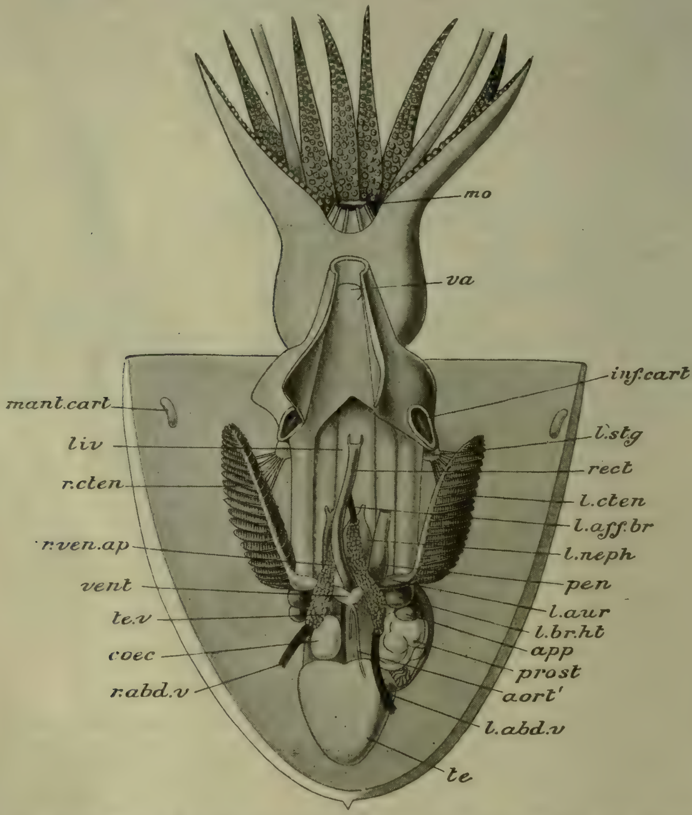


FIG. 625.—**Sepia cultrata,** male specimen seen from the posterior aspect, the mantle-cavity opened as in Fig. 621, the posterior body-wall partly dissected off, so as to expose the organs in the visceral sac, the ink-sac and duct removed. *aort.* main aorta; *aort.'* aboral aorta; *app.* appendage of left branchial heart; *cæc.* cæcum; *inf. cart.* funnel cartilages; *liv.* liver; *l. abd. v.* left abdominal vein; *l. aff. br.* left afferent branchial vessel; *l. aur.* left auricle; *l. br. ht.* left branchial heart; *l. cten.* left ctenidium; *l. st. g.* left stellate ganglion; *mant. cart.* mantle cartilage; *pen.* penis; *prost.* prostate; *r. abd. v.* right abdominal vein; *r. cten.* right ctenidium; *r. ven. app.* appendages of right afferent branchial vessel; *te. v.* vein to testis; *va.* valve of mantle; *vent.* ventricle.

The paired, plume-shaped **ctenidium** lies parallel with the long axis of the body. It is attached throughout the greater part of its length to the wall of the mantle-cavity by a thin muscular fold. It consists of numerous pairs of delicate lamellæ, the surface of which is increased by the presence of a complex system of foldings.

Internally the lamellæ are not completely in contact, an axial canal being left through which the water penetrates freely to all parts of the gill. The blood carried to the gill by the afferent branchial vessel passes in a system of minute branches through the lamellæ, and is gathered up again into vessels which open into the main efferent vessel leading to the auricle

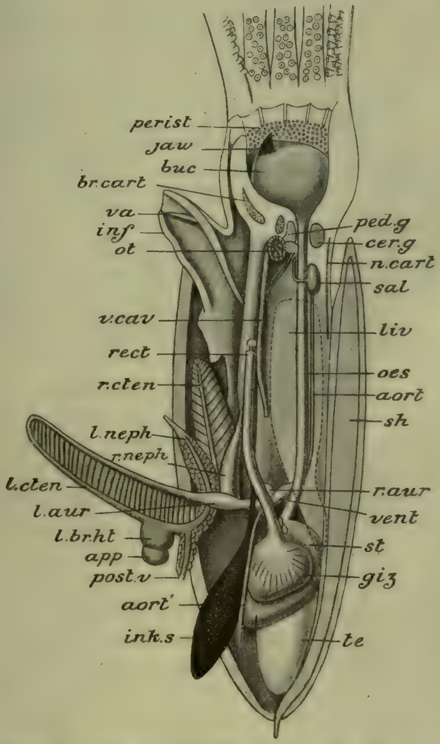


FIG. 626.—**Sepia cultrata,** lateral dissection of male. The left-hand half of the head has been removed by an approximately median longitudinal section, the buccal mass, however, being left intact; the funnel and the anterior and posterior walls of the mantle-cavity are likewise bisected longitudinally. The left ctenidium with the left nephridial sac and left branchial heart have been removed from their natural position and displaced backwards so as to expose the other organs. The liver with its ducts and the pancreatic appendages have been removed, but the position of the liver is indicated by a dotted line. *app.* appendage of left branchial heart; *aort.* aorta; *aort'.* aboral aorta; *buc.* buccal mass; *br, cart.* section of cartilage supporting the arms; *cer. g.* cerebral ganglia; *giz.* gizzard; *ink s.* ink-sac; *inf,* funnel; *jaw,* jaw; *l. aur.* left auricle; *l. br. ht.* left branchial heart; *l. cten.* left ctenidium; *liv.* position of liver; *l. neph.* left nephridial sac; *n. cart.* nuchal cartilage; *œs.* œsophagus; *ot.* cavity of otocyst laid open; *ped. g.* section of pedal ganglion; *perist.* peristomial membrane; *post, c.* abdominal vein; *r. aur.* right auricle; *r. cten.* right ctenidium; *rect.* rectum; *sal.* salivary gland; *sh.* shell; *st.* stomach; *te.* testis; *va.* valve of funnel; *v. car.* vena cava; *vent.* ventricle.

Nervous system.—Though parts homologous with those of the nervous system of Triton are recognisable in that of Sepia their proportions and arrangement indicate a higher grade of organisation.

The *cerebral*, *pedal*, and *pleuro-visceral ganglia* (Fig. 629), all of relatively large size, are closely aggregated together around the œsophagus, supported and protected by the cranial cartilage. The *cerebral ganglia* (*cer. g.*) are fused together into a single rounded mass, lodged in a hollow of the cranial cartilage, and covered over anteriorly by a strong fibrous membrane. Laterally are given off a pair of short thick processes—the *optic nerves* or *optic stalks* (*opt. st.*)—which expand almost immediately into large masses—the *optic ganglia* (*opt. g.*)—in immediate contact with the eyes. At the sides and posteriorly a pair of very thick commissural bands of nerve matter pass round the œsophagus to unite with the pedal and pleuro-visceral ganglia, which lie behind. The *pedal ganglia* (Fig. 630) are, like the cerebral, united into a single mass; orally this is prolonged forwards and expanded into a broad mass from which the ten *brachial nerves* (*br. n.*) are given off to the arms. The *pleuro-visceral* ganglia, also united into one, are in immediate contact with the pedal behind the œsophagus.

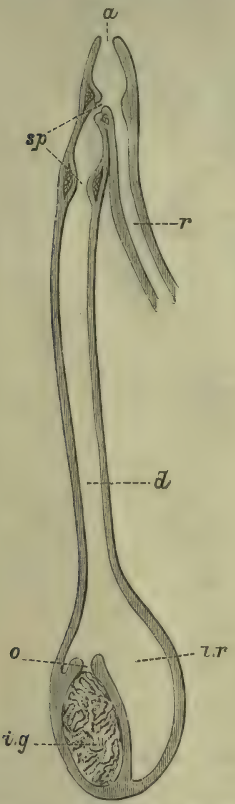


FIG. 627.—**Sepia officinalis**, longitudinal section of ink-sac. *a.* anus; *d.* ink-duct; *i. g.* ink-gland; *i. r.* cavity of ink-sac; *o.* orifice of ink-gland; *r.* rectum; *sp.* sphincter muscles. (From the *Cambridge Natural History*, after Girod.)

Besides the optic nerves the cerebral ganglia also give off a pair of slender nerves which join a smaller pair of closely united *buccal* ganglia (Fig. 629, *buc.*), situated close to the buccal cavity on the anterior aspect of the œsophagus. The buccal ganglia again (which are sometimes looked upon as separated portions of the cerebral) are connected by slender commissures with a pair of ganglia, the *stomatogastric* (Fig. 623, *g. stom.*), also closely united, situated on the posterior aspect of the œsophagus. Besides the ten brachial nerves, each of which, expanding at the base of the arm into a *brachial ganglion*, runs along the axis of the arm to its extremity, the pedal ganglia also give off nerves to the funnel, and also a pair to the otocysts; but the latter are found, when their fibres are traced to their origin, to be derived from the cerebral ganglia. The pleuro-visceral ganglia give off two *visceral nerves* (Fig. 630, *visc. n.*) supplying the various internal organs, one pair of branches, the *branchials*, expanded into a branchial ganglion at the base of the ctenidium, and running along its axis to its extremity. Two other ganglia of considerable size—the *visceral* and the *gastric*—occur in the course of this system. The pleuro-visceral ganglia also give off two very stout *pallial nerves* (*pall. n.*) which run through the neck to the inner surface of the

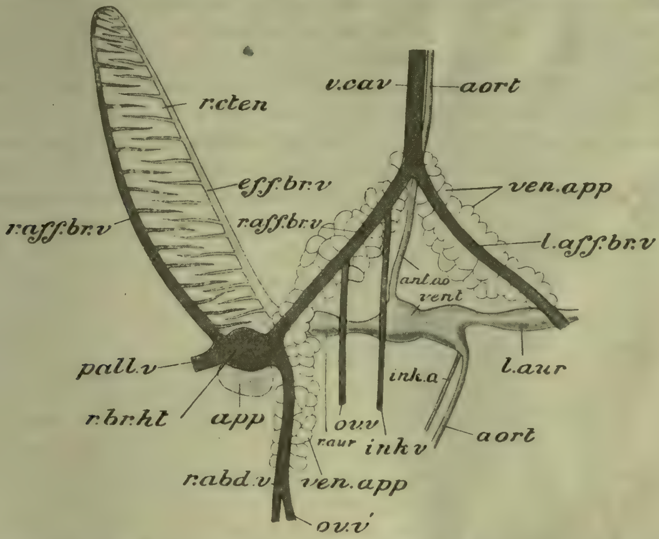

v.cav
aort
r.cten
eff.br.v
ven.app
r.aff.br.v
r.aff.br.v
l.aff.br.v
ant.ao
vent
pall.v
ink.a
l.aur
r.br.ht
app
ov.v
r.aur
ink v
aort
r.abd.v
ven.app
ov.v'

FIG. 628.—**Sepia cultrata,** heart and main blood-vessels from the posterior aspect. *aort.* aorta; *aort'.* aboral aorta; *app.* appendage of right branchial heart; *eff. br. v.* right efferent branchial vessel; *ink a.* artery to ink-sac; *ink. v.* vein from ink-sac; *l. aff. br. v.* left afferent branchial vessel; *l. aur.* left auricle; *ov. v.* deep ovarian vein; *ov. v'.* superficial ovarian vein; *pall. v.* pallial vein; *r. abd. v.* right abdominal vein; *r. aff. br. v.* right afferent branchial vein; *r. cten.* right ctenidium; *r. br. ht.* right branchial heart; *v. cav.* vena cava; *ven. app.* venous appendages; *vent.* ventricle.

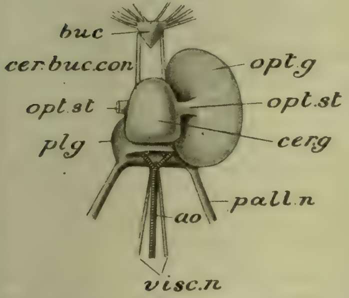

buc
cer.buc.con
opt.g
opt.st
opt.st
pl.g
cer.g
pall.n
ao
visc.n

FIG. 629.—**Sepia cultrata,** cephalic ganglia from the anterior aspect. *ao.* aorta; *buc.* buccal ganglion; *cer. buc. con.* cerebro-buccal connective; *cer. g.* cerebral ganglion; *opt. g.* optic ganglion (removed on the left side); *opt. st.* optic stalk; *pall. n.* pallial nerve; *pl. g.* pleural ganglion; *visc. n.* visceral nerves.

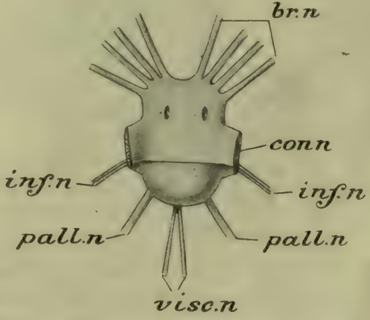

br.n
conn
inf.n
inf.n
pall.n
pall.n
visc.n

FIG. 630.—**Sepia cultrata,** anterior view of pedal and pleuro-visceral ganglia after removal of the cerebral and optic; *br. n.* brachial nerves; *conn.* connectives between the cerebral and the pedal and pleuro-visceral ganglia (cut across); *inf. n.* nerve to funnel; *pall. n.* pallial nerves; *visc. n.* visceral nerves.

mantle-cavity, where each expands into a large, flat, *pallial* or *stellate* ganglion (Fig. 621, *l. st. g.*) which is visible in front of the ctenidium when the mantle-cavity is opened. From the outer edge of this are given off a number of nerves supplying the various parts of the mantle.

The **organs of special sense** of the Cuttle-fish are much more highly developed than those of Triton. The *eyes* (Fig. 631) are supported by curved plates of cartilage connected with the cranial cartilage. The significance of the various parts of the eye will not be fully understood till the structure of that of the Vertebrata has been studied. A transparent portion of the integument covering the exposed face of the eye is termed the *cornea* (*corn.*). This is perforated by a minute aperture placing the internal cavity of the eye in communication with the exterior. The eye-ball has a firm wall, or *sclerotic*, strengthened by plates of cartilage (*scl. cart.*). Externally, *i.e.*, on the side turned towards the surface of the head, this presents a large opening—the *pupil*. The part of the sclerotic which immediately bounds the pupil is termed the *iris* (*ir.*); it contains muscular fibres by whose action the size of the pupil can, to a limited extent, be increased or diminished. Just internal to the iris and projecting slightly through the pupil is the *lens*—a dense glassy-

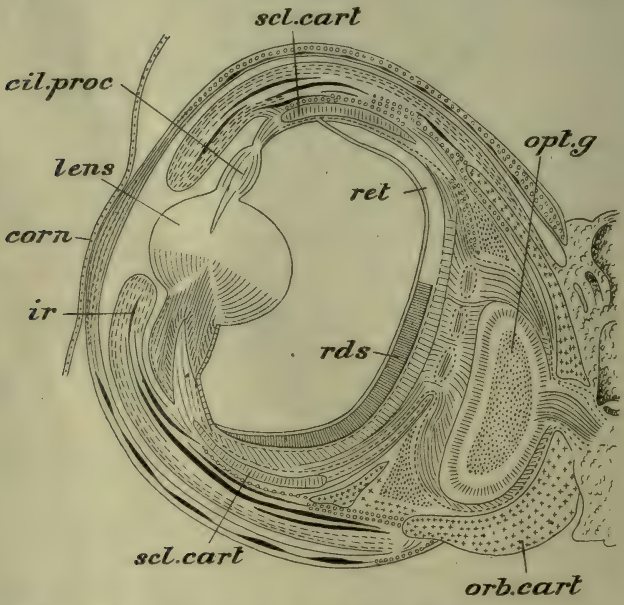


FIG. 631.—**Sepia,** section of eye. *cil. proc.* ciliary processes; *corn.* cornea; *ir.* iris; *lens*, lens; *opt. g.* optic ganglion; *orb. cart.* orbital cartilage; *rds.* rods; *ret.* retina; *scl. cart.* sclerotic cartilage. (From Vogt and Jung, after Hensen.)

looking body of a spherical shape. The lens consists of two plano-convex lenses in close apposition; it is supported by an annular process—the *ciliary process* (*cil. proc*)—projecting inwards from the sclerotic. The lens with the ciliary process divides the cavity of the eye into two cavities, a smaller outer—the cavity of the *aqueous humour*—containing water, and a larger inner, containing a gelatinous substance—the *vitreous humour*. Over the wall of this inner chamber extends the *retina* (*ret*), the sensitive part of the eye, in which the optic nerve-fibres derived from the optic ganglion terminate. The retina is of somewhat complicated structure, consisting of a number of layers: of these that which immediately bounds the internal cavity of the eye is a layer of short narrow prismatic bodies—the *layer of rods* (*rd*), while the outermost is a layer of *optic nerve-fibres* connected with the nerve-cells of the optic ganglion on the one hand, and with the other elements of the retina on the other.

In immediate contact with the eye, in addition to the optic ganglion, is a large soft body of unknown function, the so-called *optic gland* or *white body*. Bundles of muscular fibres bring about limited movements of the eyeball in various directions. A pair of integumentary folds of the character of eyelids are capable of being drawn over the cornea.

The *otocyst* (Fig. 619), though not of such complicated structure as the eye, is very much more highly developed than that of the Pelecypoda or Gastropoda. The two otocysts are embedded in the cartilage of the posterior portion of the cranium close to the pleuro-visceral ganglion. The cavities of the two organs, which are about 3 mm. in diameter, are separated by a median cartilaginous septum. The inner surface is raised up into a number of rounded and pear-shaped elevations. The surface is lined with a flattened epithelium raised up on the posterior surface into a ridge composed of large cylindrical cells provided at their free extremities with short cilia, and produced at their bases into processes continuous with nerve-fibres derived from the otocyst nerve. Enclosed in the cavity of the otocyst is a large otolith (Fig. 632) of dense composition and complicated form. The function of the otocysts as organs of hearing is quite unproved; it has been shown by experiment that their removal leads to a loss of the power of co-ordinating the movements in such a way as to maintain the equilibrium.

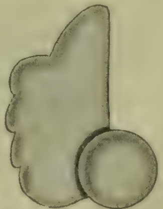


FIG. 632.—**Sepia cultrata.** Otolith, highly magnified.

Supposed to be *olfactory* in function is a pair of ciliated pits, which open by slits on the surface behind each eye; among the ciliated cells lining the pit are numerous narrow sensory cells connected at their bases with the fibres of a nerve derived from a small ganglion situated close to the optic ganglion. A small elevation, covered with papillæ, on the floor of the buccal cavity, just in front of the odontophore, is perhaps an *organ of taste.*

The **excretory organs** of Sepia (Figs. 633 and 634) are a pair of thin-walled sacs, which open into the mantle-cavity by the conspicuous excretory apertures already described. On either side is an aperture (*ap.*[1]) placing the cavity of the sac in communication with the pericardium. The right and left sacs communicate with one another anteriorly and posteriorly. From their posterior junction is given off a median diverticulum (Fig. 634, *med. s*), into which the pancreatic follicles (*panc.*) project. Through each excretory sac runs the corresponding *afferent branchial vein*, formed by the bifurcation of the vena cava. Surrounding the vessel are masses of glandular tissue (Fig. 633, *ven. app*); by whose agency the process of renal excretion, the products of which, in the shape of urates, are to be detected in the internal cavity, is carried on.

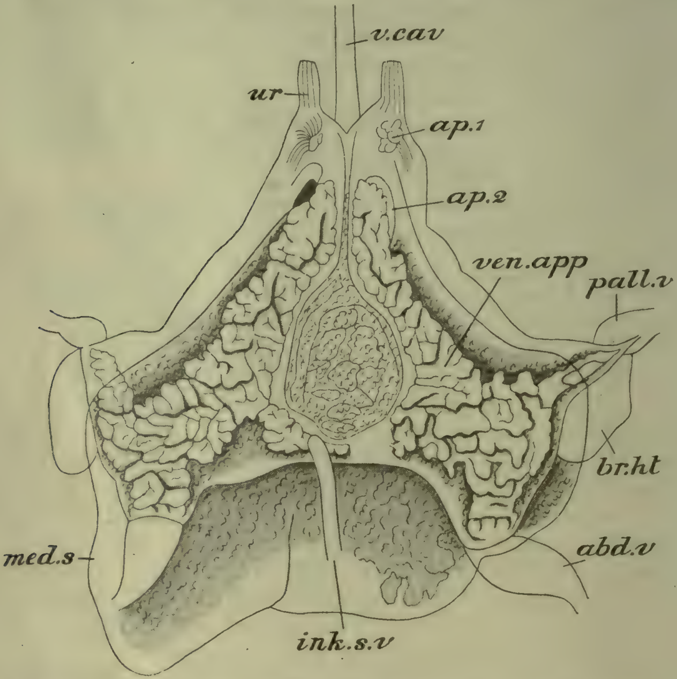


FIG. 633.—**Sepia officinalis,** renal organs. *abd. v.* abdominal vein ; *ap*[1], funnel-like opening from the pericardium ; *ap*[2]. aperture of communication between the left and the median nephridial sac ; *ink. s. v.* ink-sac vein ; *med. s.* median sac ; *pall. v.* pallial vein ; *ur.* ureter ; *v. cav.* vena cava ; *ven. app.* venous appendages of the afferent branchial veins. (From Vogt and Jung, after Grobben.)

Reproductive system.—In the male the *testis* (Fig. 635, *te*) forms a compact mass of minute tubules situated in the aboral region of the body and enclosed in a capsule. The single spermiduct (*v. def*) is a greatly convoluted tube which leads from the cavity of the capsule towards the right; it opens into an elongated *vesicula seminalis* (*ves.*), to which is appended a glandular body, the *prostate* (*pr.*). In the interior of the vesicula seminalis the sperms are rolled up by the action of a system of grooves and ridges into long narrow bundles of about 2 cm. in length, each of which becomes enclosed by a chitinoid capsule of a narrow cylindrical shape, forming a *spermatophore* (Fig. 636, *B*); at one end of the spermatophore is a complicated apparatus of the nature of a spring for causing the rupture of the wall and the discharge of the sperms. The vesicula seminalis expands into a wide sac—the *spermatophoral sac* or *Needham's sac* (Fig. 635, *sp. s*)—in the

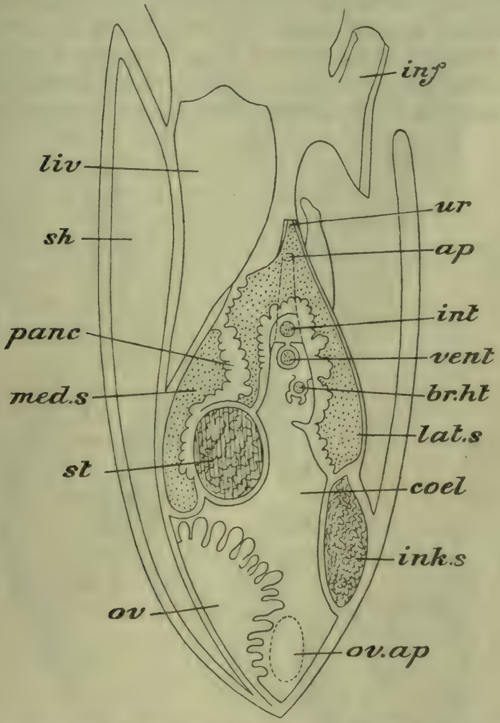


FIG. 634.—**Sepia officinalis,** diagram of a median vertical section of a female specimen, to show the relations of the cavities. *ap.* aperture between the secondary body-cavity (pericardium) and the lateral nephridial sac; *br. ht.* branchial heart; *inf.* funnel; *ink. s.* ink-sac; *int.* intestine; *lat. s.* lateral nephridial sac; *liv.* liver; *med. s.* median nephridial sac; *ov.* ovary; *ov. ap.* aperture leading from oviduct to secondary body-cavity; *panc.* pancreatic appendages; *sh.* shell; *st.* stomach; *ur.* ureter; *vent.* ventricle. (From Vogt and Jung, after Grobben.)

interior of which the spermatophores are stored. This opens into the mantle-cavity by the aperture already described at the extremity of the penis to the left of the middle line.

In the female the *ovary* (Fig. 621, *ov*) occupies a position exactly corresponding to that of the testis in the male, and is enclosed in a similar capsule, with the cavity of which the lumen of the oviduct is continuous. An axial swelling bears numerous follicles, each containing a single ovum at various stages of development, and supported on a long slender stalk. At the breeding season the ovary becomes a compact mass of ova, which assume a polygonal shape owing to mutual pressure. The *oviduct* (*ovid*) is a wide tube, opening, as already described, into the mantle-cavity to the left of the rectum.

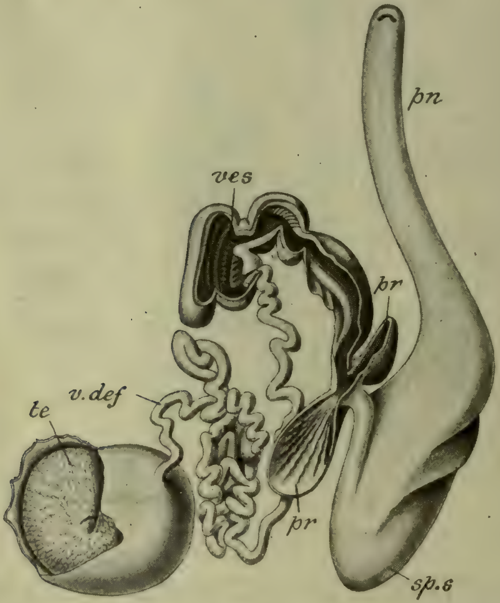


FIG. 635.—**Sepia,** reproductive organs of male. *pn.* penis; *pr.* prostate; *sp. s.* sperm-sac; *te.* testis; *v. def.* vas deferens; *ves.* vesicula seminalis. (After Keferstein.)

Near its external opening are situated a pair of small *accessory glands* (*ac. nid*). Occupying a conspicuous position on the anterior wall of the mantle-cavity of the female is a pair of large flattened glands of somewhat oval outline, the *nidamental glands* (*nid*), situated to the right and left of the ink duct. In the long axis of each is a median canal, on either side of which is a range of closely-set delicate lamellæ; the median canal opens into the mantle-cavity by a slit bounded by a number of plaits situated at the narrower oral end. The nidamental glands secrete the viscid material by means of which the eggs when deposited adhere together in masses. A glandular mass of unknown function, known as the *accessory nidamental glands*, lies at the sides and around the oral ends of the nidamental glands proper.

ii. THE PEARLY NAUTILUS (*Nautilus pompilius*).

The three living species of Nautilus, of which N. pompilius is the best known, are inhabitants of moderately shallow water about the shores and coral-reefs of the South Pacific, usually creeping on the bottom at the depth of a few fathoms, and probably never coming voluntarily to the surface. The body is enclosed in a calcareous, spirally-coiled **shell** (Fig. 637), into which the entire animal can be withdrawn for protection. The cavity of the shell is divided by a system of septa into a series of chambers, the last and largest of which, opening widely on the exterior, alone lodges the body of the animal. Between the animal and its shell there is a direct organic connection through the intermediation of a narrow tubular prolongation of the visceral region, which perforates the entire series of the septa to the apex of the spiral. This tube, which is termed the *siphuncle* (*si*), has its wall supported by scattered spicules of carbonate of lime; but, in addition, as it passes through each septum, there is produced over it for some distance a shelly tube—the *septal neck*—(*s. n*) continuous with the substance of the septum. The apical or initial chamber presents a small scar, the *cicatrix*, which may indicate the original presence of the larval shell, or *protoconch*, which has fallen off in the course of development.

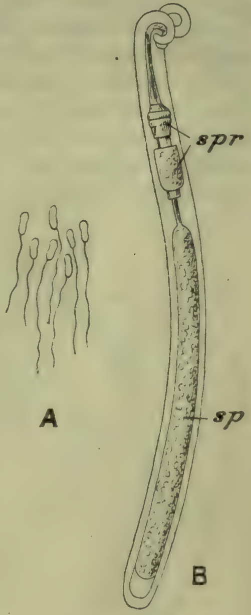


FIG. 636.—**Sepia**. A, sperms, highly magnified; B, spermatophore; *sp*. mass of sperms; *spr*. spring apparatus by which the wall of the spermatophore is ruptured. (From Vogt and Jung.)

When the shell of the Nautilus is compared with that of Triton some points of resemblance, together with important points of difference, will be at once recognised. In both the growth of the shell has taken place in such a way as to produce a gradual and regular increase in the width of the internal cavity, from the apex to the mouth, the result being a form of shell which, if it were straightened out, would be a long cone. In both the growth has not taken place in a straight line, but in a spiral, and a spiral of so close a character that successive turns are in immediate contact and their walls fused together. But in Nautilus all the turns of the spiral are in the same plane; the spiral, in other words, is a flat one, as has already been found to be the case in certain of the Gastropoda (p. 686), whereas in Triton the spiral is an elongated helix: in other words, the spiral of Nautilus is that of a watch-spring, that of Triton that of a corkscrew. The possession by Nautilus of the series of septa marking the position which the animal has occupied at successive stages in its growth is another striking difference. Moreover the relations of the soft parts of the shell are radically different in the two cases. In Triton the body is attached to the shell by the columellar muscle; in Nautilus the main organic connection is by means of the siphuncle, for, though it is chiefly through the pressure exerted by two great lateral masses of muscle that the Nautilus retains its hold of the shell, the muscular fibres are not attached to the latter in the same intimate way as those of the columellar muscle of Triton. Again, while the curvature of the body of Triton with the enclosing shell is towards the ventral side, in Nautilus it is towards the dorsal.

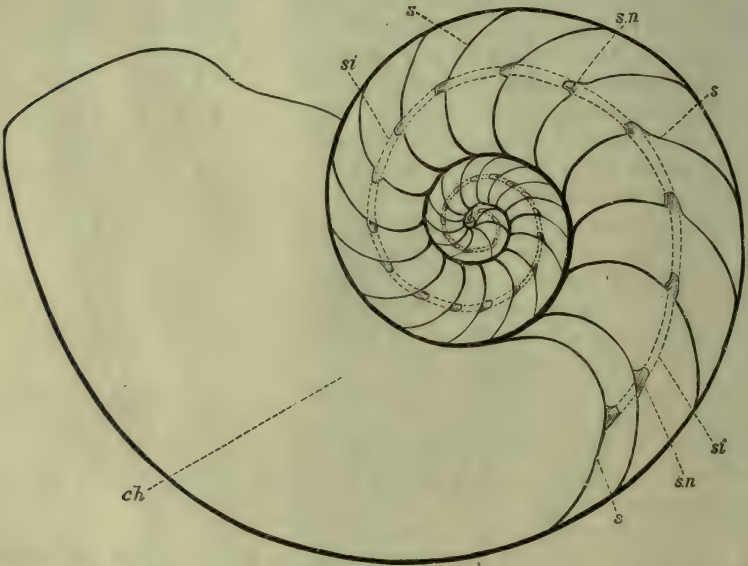


Fig. 637.—Section of the shell of **Nautilus pompilius,** showing the septa (*s*, *s*), the septal necks (*s. n.*, *s. n.*), the siphuncle, *si.* (represented by dotted lines), and the large body-chamber (*ch.*). (From the *Cambridge Natural History.*)

When the animal is removed from the shell it is found to possess two regions, a distinct and relatively large, obtusely conical *head*, bearing eyes and a system of tentacles, and a rounded sac-like *trunk*. Both head and trunk are very slightly compressed, the direction of the compression being, as in Sepia, from the antero-dorsal towards the postero-ventral side, and are almost completely bilaterally symmetrical, only a very slight disturbance of the symmetry being discernible. The mouth, situated at the free extremity, is provided with a pair of relatively enormous, partly calcified jaws (Fig. 638). Surrounding the mouth is a series of bilaterally arranged lobes which represent the fore-foot of other Molluscs. These are beset with numerous slender tentacles, each provided with an elongated tubular sheath, in the interior of which the greater part of the tentacle in the retracted condition lies enclosed, only a small portion protruding. Minute ring-like markings on the tentacle are due to the presence of circular bands of muscular fibres. There are no

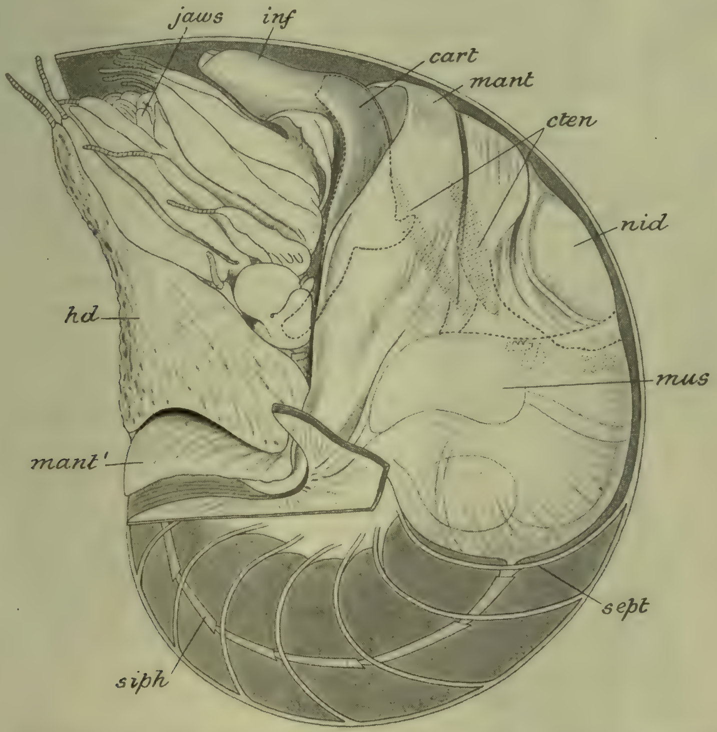


Fig. 638.—**Nautilus pompilius,** diagrammatic lateral view of a female specimen enclosed in its shell. *cart.* cartilage; *cten.* ctenidia; *hd.* hood; *inf,* funnel; *jaws,* jaws; *mant.* mantle; *mant'.* dorsal mantle fold overlapping the coil of the shell; *mus.* position of lateral mass of muscle; *nid.* nidamental glands; *sept.* first septum; *siph.* siphuncle. (After Keferstein.)

suckers; but it is supposed that each tentacle represents not one of the arms of Sepia, but one of the suckers. The tentacles are arranged in two series, an outer and an inner. The outer, which are borne on an annular muscular ridge of the fore-foot, are nineteen on each side in both sexes. Anteriorly this muscular ridge is thickened to form a massive lobe—the *hood* (*hd.*)—in which there is a concavity for the reception of the coil of the shell. The hood bears two tentacles and has the appearance of being composed of the immensely developed sheaths of these, completely fused together in the middle line: on each side the enlarged sheaths of a second pair of tentacles are closely applied to, though not completely coalescent with, the hood, being separated from the latter by a narrow groove. The hood, with these two enlarged sheaths, is covered with a thickened tuberculated skin, and acts after the manner of an operculum for protecting the tentacles and other soft parts about the head. Altogether there are forty-two tentacles of this outer series, including one situated on the oral and another on the aboral side of each eye. The tentacles of the inner series differ strikingly in number and arrangement in the two sexes. In the female there are two inner lateral lobes, right and left, quite symmetrically developed, and each bearing twelve tentacles, and an inner posterior lobe divided by a deep median notch into two, each half bearing fourteen tentacles. On the middle of the oral surface of the latter, close to the median notch, is an oval patch raised up into numerous closely set ridges. In some individuals, however, the whole of this posterior lobe is represented by a vestige (or rudiment) with only slight indications of the tentacles.

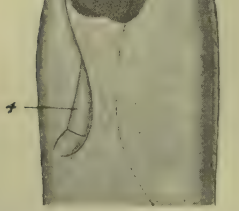


FIG. 639.—**Nautilus pompilius,** spadix of full-grown male, seen from the outer side. 1, 2, 3, 4, modified tentacles; 1, withdrawn into its sheath, its position and shape indicated by the dotted line; 3, the flattened tentacle with the rows of minute cavities; *x*, patch of modified integument. Two-thirds of the natural size. (After Haswell.)

In the male the inner posterior lobe with its ridged organ is only represented by a median posterior body consisting of two oval elevations each divided into a number of folds. The internal lateral lobes are greatly modified, four of the tentacles on either the right side or the left, usually the latter, being modified to form a structure termed the *spadix* (Fig. 639), which is supposed to represent the hectocotylised arm of the male *Sepia*. It has the form of a large compressed cone formed by the union of the enlarged sheaths of three of the tentacles. The corresponding tentacles themselves are in the adult male enormously thickened, and the outer surface of the most posterior (*3*) is covered with regularly arranged rows of minute pits. A fourth tentacle much smaller than the others is closely applied to the outer surface of the organ. In the internal lateral lobe, right or left as the case may be, opposite that bearing the spadix, the latter is represented by a group of four tentacles forming what is termed the *anti-spadix.*

A further difference between the male and the female with regard to the foot is the presence in the latter, but not in the former, on the inner surface of the outer ridge, close to the inner posterior lobe on either side, of an area thickly beset with delicate membranous ridges.

On the posterior side of the head is a funnel corresponding with that of Sepia, but extending further forwards; this, however, does not form a complete closed tube, the edges of its right and left moieties being simply in apposition posteriorly without being united together. Near the oral end is a large, somewhat triangular, valve arranged like that of Sepia.

An internal skeleton of cartilage, as in Sepia, protects the nerve-centres and supports the basal parts of the foot (Fig. 640).

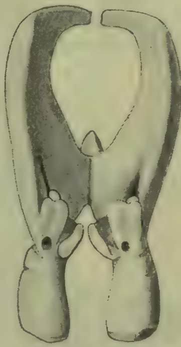


FIG. 640.—**Nautilus pompilius,** cartilaginous internal skeleton. (After Keferstein.)

Mantle and Mantle-Cavity.—The mantle is produced around the head into a free flap, longer and looser than the mantle-flap of Sepia. Dorsally this splits into two layers reflected over the convexity of the shell which fits into a hollow behind the hood. Ventrally and posteriorly the mantle encloses a large mantle-cavity (Fig. 641) corresponding to that of Sepia. In this are lodged two pairs of ctenidia (*cten.*), having the same general structure as the single pair present in Sepia. Between the bases of the ctenidia of each side is a small knob-like elevation, the *oral osphradium* (*ant. os.*),[1] and behind the bases of the more aborally situated pair are two compressed bilobed projections, more or less completely united in the middle so as to form a transverse ridge; these are the *aboral osphradia* (*post. òs.*). In the middle line of the mantle-cavity is the *anus* (*an.*), a large aperture with minutely lobed margin, situated on a slight elevation, but by no means so prominent as in Sepia. On each side are two apertures, the oral and aboral *nephridial apertures* (*a. l. neph. ap.*, *p. l. neph. ap.*, *p. r. neph. ap.*), corresponding to the single pair of Sepia, but not elevated on papillæ. Close to each posterior nephridial aperture is an opening—the *viscero-pericardial* (*l. visc. ap.*, *r. visc. ap.*)—leading into the viscero-pericardial section of the body-cavity; these are not represented in Sepia. In both sexes there are two reproductive ducts, right and left; but in both the right alone appears to be functional, and the left is much smaller. The opening of the right spermiduct of the male (*pen.*) is situated on a cylindrical prominence—the *penis*—placed close to the middle line. In the female the nidamental glands are, as in Sepia, conspicuous objects, when the mantle-cavity is exposed; but they are mainly situated on its posterior instead of its anterior wall.

---

[1] As in Sepia it is convenient to use the term *oral* for parts towards the mouth end, and *aboral* for those situated towards the opposite extremity, the same terms being also used to indicate *relative* position of different parts. The relative position of the parts is, however, for the sake of simplicity given here as they lie when the mantle-cavity is opened by turning back its thin postero-ventral wall.

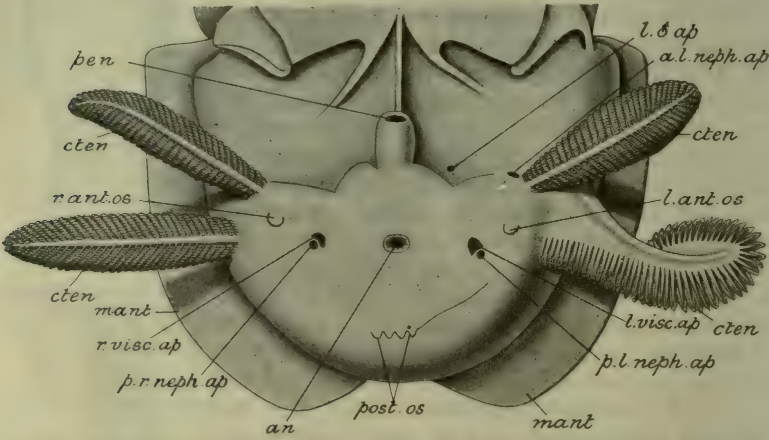
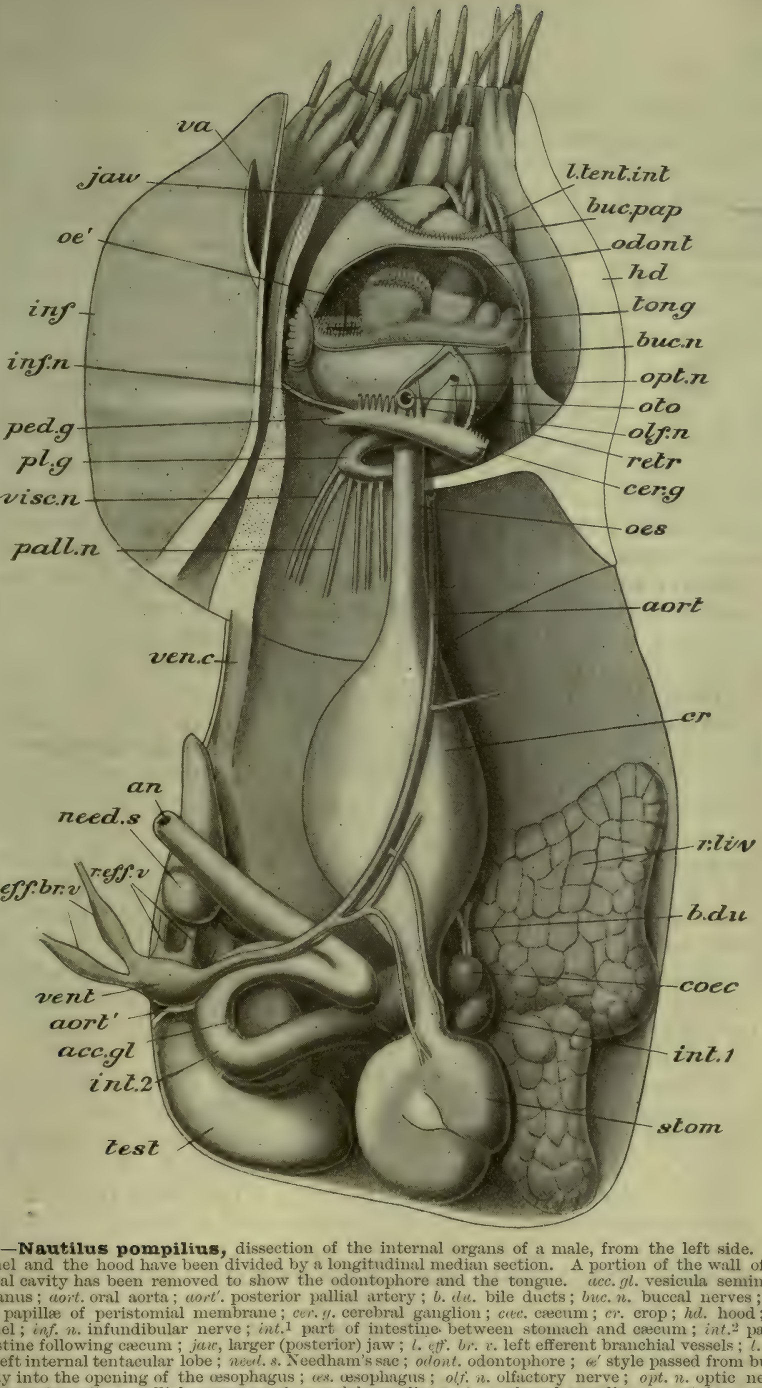


FIG. 641.—**Nautilus pompilius,** interior of mantle-cavity of a male specimen with the postero-ventral wall reflected. *a. l. neph. ap.* oral left nephridial aperture; *an.* anus; *cten.* ctenidia; *l. ♂ ap.* left reproductive aperture; *l. ant. os.* left oral osphradium; *l. visc. ap.* left viscero-pericardial aperture; *mant.* flaps of mantle; *pen.* penis; *p. l. neph. ap.* aboral left nephridial aperture; *p. r. neph. ap.* aboral right nephridial aperture; *post. os.* aboral osphradia; *r. visc. ap.* right viscero-pericardial aperture.

Enteric Canal.—The mouth is surrounded by a peristomial membrane beset with numerous papillæ. There is a pair of jaws (Fig. 642, *jaw*) of similar shape to those of Sepia, but much more powerful, and calcified towards the tips. The buccal mass is a large rounded body with thick muscular walls. On the floor of the contained cavity is a large and prominent odontophore (*odont.*) with long and pointed curved teeth. In front of the odontophore is a large bilobed soft prominence, the *tongue* (*tong.*). Behind the odontophore, between it and the opening of the œsophagus, are one large median and two lateral tongue-like prominences beset with papillæ; on the inner surface of the latter


va
jaw
oe'
inf
inf.n
ped.g
pl.g
visc.n
pall.n
ven.c
an
need.s
r.eff.v
l.eff.br.v
vent
aort'
acc.gl
int.2
test
l.tent.int
buc.pap
odont
hd
tong
buc.n
opt.n
oto
olf.n
retr
cer.g
oes
aort
cr
r.liv
b.du
coec
int.1
stom

IG. 642.—**Nautilus pompilius,** dissection of the internal organs of a male, from the left side. The funnel and the hood have been divided by a longitudinal median section. A portion of the wall of the buccal cavity has been removed to show the odontophore and the tongue. *acc. gl.* vesicula seminalis; *an.* anus; *aort.* oral aorta; *aort'.* posterior pallial artery; *b. du.* bile ducts; *buc. n.* buccal nerves; *buc. pap.* papillæ of peristomial membrane; *cer. g.* cerebral ganglion; *cæc.* cæcum; *cr.* crop; *hd.* hood; *inf.* funnel; *inf. n.* infundibular nerve; *int.*^{1} part of intestine between stomach and cæcum; *int.*^{2} part of intestine following cæcum; *jaw*, larger (posterior) jaw; *l. eff. br. v.* left efferent branchial vessels; *l. tent. int.* left internal tentacular lobe; *need. s.* Needham's sac; *odont.* odontophore; *œ'* style passed from buccal cavity into the opening of the œsophagus; *œs.* œsophagus; *olf. n.* olfactory nerve; *opt. n.* optic nerve; *oto.* otocyst; *pall. n.* pallial nerves; *ped. g.* pedal ganglion; *pl. g.* pleural ganglion; *r. eff. br. v.* right efferent branchial vessel; *retr.* retractor muscle of the buccal mass; *stom.* stomach; *test.* testis; *tong.* tongue-shaped elevation of the floor of the mouth; *va.* valve of funnel; *ven. c.* vena cava; *vent.* ventricle.

are apertures which may be the openings of salivary ducts, but the existence of salivary glands has not been proved.

The œsophagus (*oes.*) becomes dilated aborally into a very spacious *crop* (*cr.*) for the storage of the food, consisting of small prawn-like Crustaceans and small Fishes broken up by the jaws and radula. This opens into a rounded stomach (*stom.*) having very much the appearance of the gizzard-like cæcum of Sepia. The intestine (*int.*) shortly after it leaves the stomach, develops a rounded cæcum (*cæc.*) with complexly folded walls, into which the ducts of the liver open. The intestine does not pass straight to the anus as in Sepia, but first bends round in a short coil. The ink-sac and duct of Sepia are not represented. There is a very large liver divided into four main portions or lobes, each of which is made up of a number of lobules. The bile-ducts (*b. du.*), opening as above mentioned into the cæcum, have a series of small diverticula which may represent the pancreatic appendages of Sepia.

Heart and Circulation.—The ventricle (Figs. 642 and 643 *vent.*) is a bilobed, transversely placed, muscular sac, very similar to that of Sepia. On either side there open into it two auricles or efferent branchial vessels (*a. or.*), one from each of the four ctenidia. The ventricle gives off a large main *aorta* (*aort.*), which passes to the head after giving off arteries to the stomach, the crop, the liver, and the mantle. From the aboral surface of the ventricle is given off a smaller artery, the *lesser aorta*, which immediately bifurcates. One of its branches—the *posterior pallial artery* (Fig. 642 *bis, post. pall. a.*)—passes to the area of the mantle applied to the septum, bifurcates to supply this area, and gives off a branch to the siphuncle. The other—*anterior pallial* (*ant. pall. a.*)—after giving off arteries to the intestine and rectum, and to the branchiæ and osphradia passes to the muscular edge of the mantle, bifurcating anteriorly. Three *genital* arteries (*gen. a. 1, 2, 3*), supplying the various parts of the reproductive apparatus, are likewise given off directly from the ventricle.

A large *vena cava* (Figs. 642 and 643, *ven. c.*) occupies a position corresponding closely with that of Sepia. It presents the remarkable peculiarity of being in free communication by numerous (valvular), apertures with the viscero-pericardial cavity of the cœlome. At its aboral end it presents a dilatation from which four afferent branchial veins (Fig. 643, *a. l. af. f., p. l. aff., p. r. aff., r. ant, aff.*)—two right and two left—proceed to the corresponding ctenidia, at the bases of which veins from the aboral region join them. There are no branchial hearts.

The **renal organs** (Fig. 643) are, like the ctenïdia and the afferent and efferent vessels, four in number, instead of two as in Sepia. Each renal sac (*l. neph. s., r. neph. s., l. post. neph. s., r. post. neph. s.*)

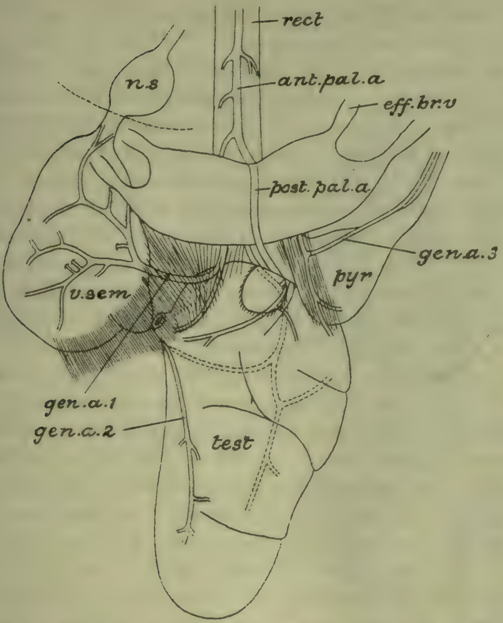

rect
ant.pal.a
n.s
eff.br.v
post.pal.a
gen.a.3
pyr
v.sem
gen.a.1
gen.a.2
test

Fig. 642 *bis*.—**Nautilus pompilius** (male), origin of pallial and genital arteries; *ant. pal. a.* anterior pallial artery; *eff. br. v.* efferent branchial veins; *gen. a.* 1, artery to vesicula seminalis (*v. sem.*); *gen. a.* 2, testicular artery and its branches; *gen. a.* 3, artery to pyriform sac; *n. s.* spermatophore sac; *post. pall. a.* posterior pallial artery; *pyr.* pyriform sac; *rect.* rectum; *test.* testis. (After Willey.)

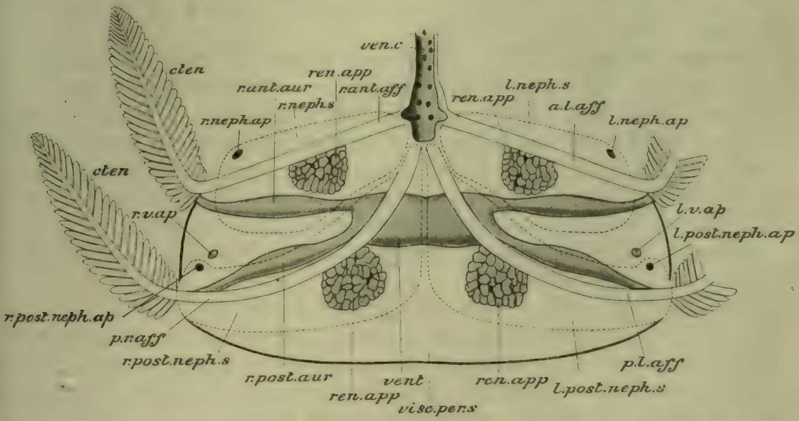

ven.c
cten
ren.app
r.ant.aur
r.ant.aff
r.neph.s
l.neph.s
ren.app
a.l.aff
r.neph.ap
l.neph.ap
cten
r.v.ap
l.v.ap
l.post.neph.ap
r.post.neph.ap
p.r.aff
r.post.neph.s
p.l.aff
r.post.aur
vent
ren.app
ren.app
l.post.neph.s
visc.per.s

Fig. 643.—**Nautilus pompilius**, renal sacs, with ctenidia and other related parts, as seen from the posterior aspect; the boundaries of the four renal sacs represented by dotted lines. *a. l. aff.* left oral afferent vessel; *cten.* right ctenidia; *l. neph. s.* left nephridial sac; *l. neph. ap.* left oral nephridial aperture; *l. post. neph. ap.* left aboral nephridial aperture; *l. post. neph. s.* left aboral nephridial sac; *p. l. aff.* left aboral afferent vessel; *p. r. aff.* right aboral afferent vessel; *r. ant. aff.* right oral afferent vessel; *r. ant. aur.* right oral auricle; *ren. app.* renal appendages; *r. neph. ap.* right nephridial aperture; *r. post. neph. s.* right aboral nephridial sac; *r. v. ap.* right viscero-pericardial aperture; *ven. c.* vena cava; *vent.* ventricle.

opens into the mantle-cavity, as already stated, by an orifice which is not drawn out into a tube. There is no communication between the cavities of the different sacs, and thus no median chamber as in Sepia. The cavities are found to contain phosphate of lime. Into each projects, from the corresponding afferent branchial vein, a compact rounded group of venous appendages (*ren. app.*), consisting of two symmetrical portions. Internal to these, each afferent vein has connected with it a second group of glandular appendages, which are cylindrical or club-like in form; they project, not into the nephridial sac, but into the viscero-pericardial compartment of the cœlome. They have been compared with the appendages of the branchial heart of Sepia, but differ in their relations to the renal appendages.

Nervous system.—Nautilus differs strikingly from Sepia, and resembles Chiton (p. 667) in the form assumed by the central parts of the nervous system, distinct ganglia being absent. A very thick nerve-collar, the posterior portion of which is double, surrounds the œsophagus just behind the buccal mass. The anterior part of the collar (Fig. 642, *cer. g.*) represents the cerebral ganglia, the oral portion of the posterior part (*ped. g.*) the pedal, the aboral portion (*pl. g.*) the pleuro-visceral, while the lateral parts, not distinctly marked off from the rest, represent the cerebro-pedal and cerebro-pleural connectives. From the cerebral "ganglia" pass nerves to the buccal mass, to the olfactory organs (*olf. n.*) the otocysts, and a pair of very thick optic nerves (*opt. n.*) to the eyes. The pedal ganglion gives off numerous nerves to the tentacles and the funnel. The pleuro-visceral gives origin to pallial and visceral nerves.

Sense Organs.—The *otocysts* are a pair of sacs embedded in recesses close to the cerebral ganglia; each contains a number of small fusiform otoliths. An olfactory function is ascribed to a process having the appearance of a modified tentacle, situated on the aboral side of the eye. Various parts connected with the foot have also been supposed to be olfactory, but the marked sexual differences which they present render this improbable. The osphradia (p. 729) contain ganglion-cells and are undoubtedly organs of special sense.

The *eyes*, situated at the sides of the head, are very large, but extremely simple in structure, presenting a marked contrast to those of Sepia, and scarcely comparable to those of any other animal, with the exception perhaps of Patella (p. 694). Each is of the shape of a saucer attached to the head by its convex side through a short thick stalk, the mouth being closed in by a slightly convex disc, with a circular aperture about its centre. A slight, raised rim runs round close to the margin on the posterior half, and a narrow groove runs inwards from this to the central aperture. In the interior of the cup is neither lens, vitreous humour, nor iris. The sea-water, passing in through the central aperture, directly bathes the retina, which is spread over the interior in a thick layer.

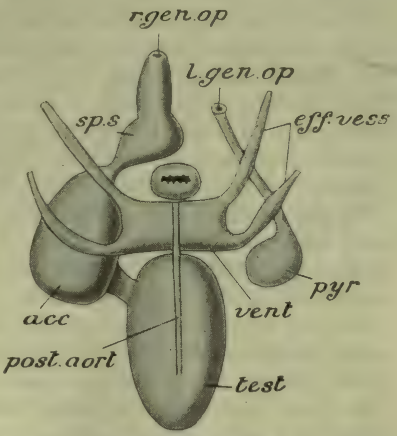


FIG. 644.—**Nautilus pompilius,** male reproductive organs. *acc.* vesicula seminalis; *eff. vess.* efferent branchial vessels; *l. gen. op.* left genital opening; *post.ao.* posterior aorta; *pyr.* pyriform appendage; *r. gen. op.* right genital opening; *sp. s.* spermatophore sac; *test.* testis; *vent.* ventricle.

Reproductive Organs.—The testis (Fig. 644, *test.*) or ovary (Fig. 645, *ov.*), like that of Sepia, is single and median, enclosed in a special sac towards the aboral end of the body. The ducts are paired in both sexes, but in both the right alone appears to be functional. In the male a large glandular *vesicula seminalis*, in which the spermatophores are formed (*acc.*) is connected with the right duct, and this appears to be represented on the left-hand side by a vestige—the so-called *pyriform sac* (*pyr.*), situated close to the ventricle. The distal part of the right duct dilates to form a receptacle, the spermatophoral sac (*sp. s.*), and opens, nearly in the middle line at the end of a prominence—the penis (Fig. 641, *pen.*). In the female the right oviduct has a glandular dilatation, which is supposed to be an albumen gland. The ova are of large size, greatly exceeding those of Sepia in dimensions, containing a large proportion of food-yolk. Nidamental glands are present, but are mainly situated on the posterior, instead of the anterior, wall of the mantle-cavity.

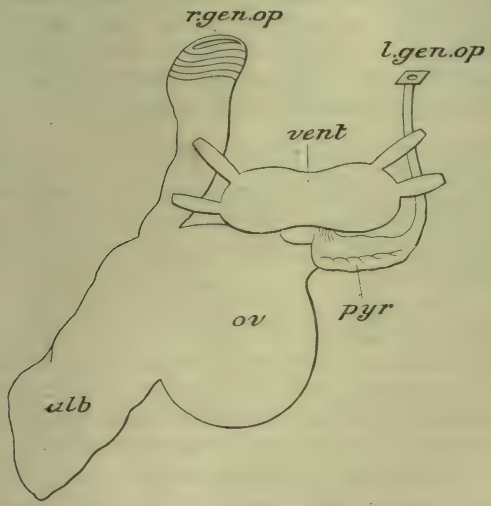


FIG. 645.—**Nautilus pompilius,** female reproductive organs. *alb.* albumen gland; *l. gen. op.* left genital opening; *ov.* ovary; *pyr.* pyriform appendage; *r. gen. op.* right genital opening; *vent.* ventricle. (After Lankester and Bourne.)

2. Distinctive Characters and Classification.

The Cephalopoda are bilaterally symmetrical Mollusca, which have the propodium displaced forwards to the neighbourhood of the mouth, and divided into a series of arms bearing suckers, or of lobes bearing tentacles, while the metapodium forms a funnel for the egress of water from the mantle-cavity. The visceral mass is symmetrical and not coiled. The mantle encloses posteriorly and ventrally a large mantle-cavity, in which are situated the ctenidia and the nephridial, reproductive, and anal apertures. The shell may be absent or rudimentary; when present and well developed, it may be internal or external, undivided or divided internally by septa into a series of chambers. There is an internal cartilaginous skeleton, supporting and protecting the nerve-centres, and giving attachment to muscles. The mouth is provided with a pair of horny jaws, and an odontophore is present. In the majority there is an ink-gland with a duct opening into the rectum. The ctenidia and nephridia are either two or four in number. The nervous system is highly developed; and the principal nerve-ganglia are aggregated together around the œsophagus. The sexes are separate; the segmentation of the ovum is meroblastic, and there is no metamorphosis.

Sub-Class I.—Dibranchiata.

Cephalopoda in which the propodium assumes the character of a circlet of either eight or ten arms bearing suckers, surrounding the mouth. The funnel forms a complete tube. The shell is usually internal; when external its cavity is not divided by septa. There are two ctenidia, two nephridia, and two branchio-cardiac vessels or auricles. An ink-gland and duct are present.

Order 1.—Decapoda.

Dibranchiata possessing ten arms, with stalked suckers, provided with horny rims, and with a well-developed internal shell.

This order includes the Cuttle-fishes, Squids, Spirula, and others, as well as the extinct Belemnites.

Order 2.—Octopoda.

Dibranchiata provided with eight arms, the suckers on which are sessile and devoid of horny rims: with or without slight vestiges of an internal shell. An external shell, secreted by a specially-modified pair of arms, is present in the female Argonaut only.

This order includes the Octopi and the Argonauts.

Sub-Class II.—Tetrabranchiata.

Cephalopoda, in which the propodium has the character of lobes bearing numerous tentacles. The funnel does not form a complete tube. There is an external, spiral, chambered shell. There are four ctenidia, four nephridia, and four auricles. The ink-gland is absent.

This sub-class includes only one living genus, *Nautilus*, but the *Ammonites* and other extinct forms are usually referred to it.

Systematic Position of the Examples.

The genus *Sepia* is a member of the family *Sepiidæ* of the order Decapoda, which is distinguished from the seven other families of the order by the combination of the following features:—The body is compressed and comparatively broad; the fins are narrow and elongated; the internal shell consists almost entirely of calcareous material.

Nautilus is the sole living representative of the sub-class Tetrabranchiata.

3. GENERAL ORGANISATION.

The uniformity of structure among the Dibranchiate Cephalopoda is very great, and, as already stated, Nautilus is the only living member of the Tetrabranchiata, so that comparatively little has to be said to supplement the descriptions of these two examples.

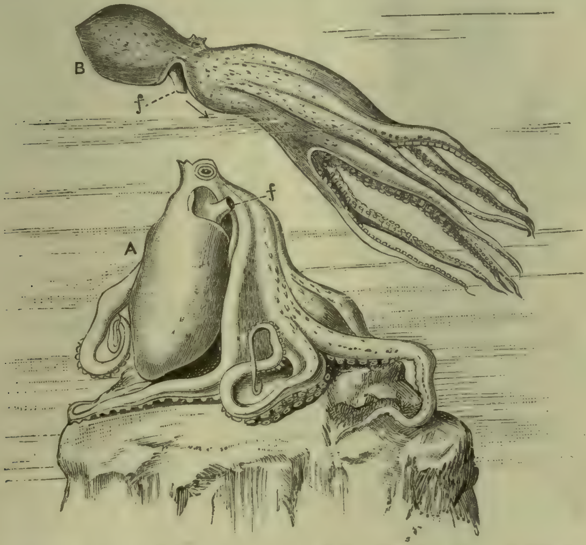


FIG. 646.—**Octopus vulgaris.** *A*, at rest; *B*, in motion; *f*. funnel, the arrow showing the direction of the propelling current through the water. (From Cooke, after Merculiano.)

External Features.—The general external shape differs very little in the different members of the Dibranchiata: the body in some is more elongated, in others, less; the degree of compression

REESE LIBRARY OF THE

likewise varies. Fins may be absent, and the animal may progress entirely by creeping with the aid of the long arms, or by swimming by the movements of the arms, or under the propulsion of a current of water forcibly ejected through the funnel by the contraction of the muscular mantle. (Fig. 646.) When fins are present they may not take the form of a continuous lateral flap as in Sepia, but, more usually, are of the nature of flattened lobes situated towards the aboral extremity of the body (Fig. 647); in *Ctenopteryx* they have the character of fringes of filaments. The arms vary in length and proportions and in the form and arrangement of the suckers. Eight arms are present in the Octopoda and ten in the Decapoda. In the former group the Argonauts (Fig. 648) have, in the female, one of the pairs of arms (*wa.*), flattened and expanded at the extremities for the secretion and support of the shell (*sh.*). In the Decapoda one of the pairs of arms, the fourth, is always specially modified, as in Sepia, to act as prehensile appendages or *tentacles* capable of being partly or entirely retracted within certain sacs situated at their bases. In nearly all one of the arms is specially modified (or *hectocotylised*) to act as an intromittent organ. This modification is only very slight in Sepia and confined to the base. It is most marked in certain of the Octopoda (Fig. 649), including the Argonauts. In the latter, before the breeding season, the third arm in the male is found to be represented by a rounded sac. This subsequently bursts and sets free the elongated hectocotylised arm. Spermatophores are taken by the arm from the genital opening, and in the act of copulation

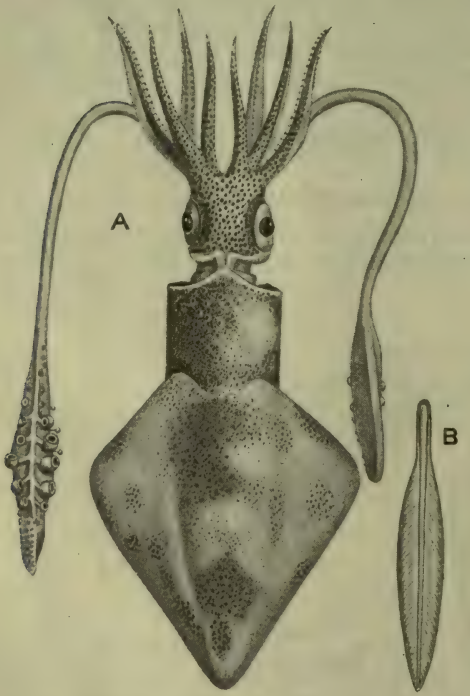


FIG. 647.—**Loligo vulgaris.** A, entire animal, dorsal view; B, horny internal shell or pen. (From Keferstein.)

the entire arm is detached, and left in the mantle-cavity of the female. In other cases the arm is not detached. The suckers are sometimes stalked, sometimes sessile, sometimes armed with hooks, sometimes replaced by hooks. In many cases the arms are united by a web-like fold, the *interbrachial membrane* (Fig. 650), which may reach nearly to their extremities.

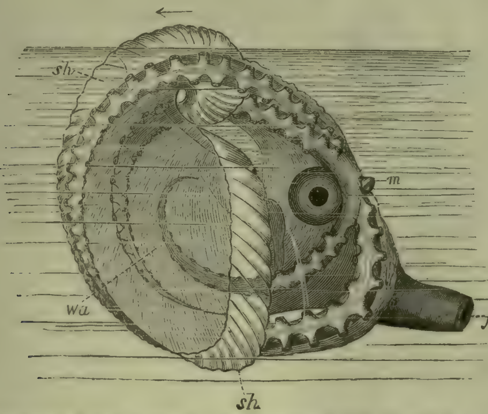


FIG. 648.—**Argonauta argo,** showing the relations of the animal to the shell in the living state, the arrow showing the direction of movement. *f.* funnel; *m.* mouth, with jaws projecting; *sh.* shell, with arms as seen through it; *wa,* webbed arm clasping the shell. (From Cooke, after Lacaze-Duthiers.)

In the Tetrabranchiata the series of groups of slender, ringed, sheathed tentacles, situated on lobes of the foot surrounding the mouth, take the place of the arms, and suckers are not present. In the males the spadix probably represents, functionally at least, the hectocotylised arm of the Dibranchiata.

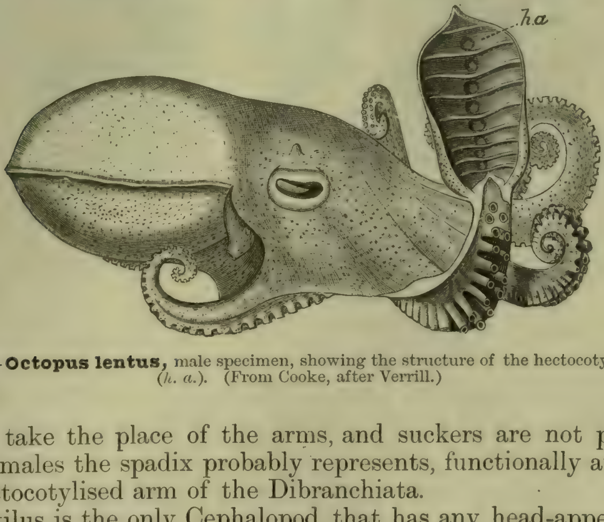


FIG. 649.—**Octopus lentus,** male specimen, showing the structure of the hectocotylised arm (*h. a.*). (From Cooke, after Verrill.)

Nautilus is the only Cephalopod that has any head-appendages in addition to those formed by modification of foot; they consist of the two short tentacles situated on each side near the eye. In all the Dibranchiata the *funnel* is a complete tube. In the Nautilus, on the other hand, as we have seen, the folds which form the funnel have their edges merely in apposition, and not united. A valve, such as has been described in Sepia, occurs in most Decapoda and in Nautilus, but is absent in the Octopoda. *Chromatophores,* similar to those of Sepia, are universal in the Dibranchiata but absent in Nautilus.

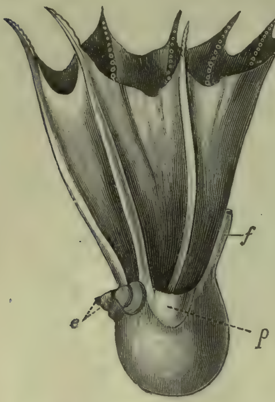


FIG. 650.—**Amphitretus pelagicus,** an Octopod with the arms united by a web. *e.* eyes; *f.* funnel; *p.* pouch in the mantle. (From Cooke, after Hoyle.)

Shell.—The shell of Nautilus is the most complete and yet in a certain sense the most primitive. As already stated, it is an external shell of a spiral character, divided internally by septa into a series of chambers. The last of the chambers is occupied by the body of the animal; the rest are filled with gas. Perforating the middle of all the septa in succession is a spiral tube—the *siphuncle*—continuous with the centro-dorsal region of the visceral prominence. In the course of its growth

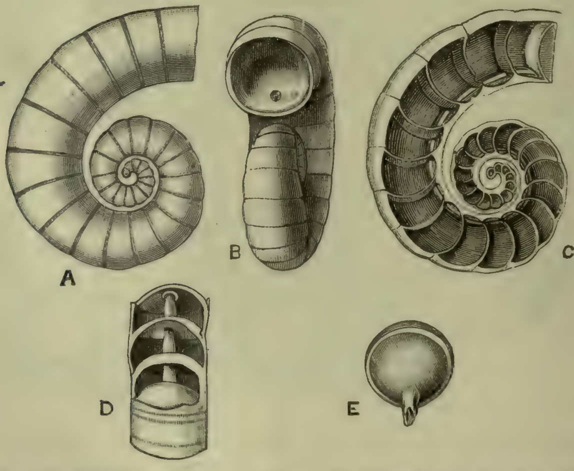


FIG. 651.—Shell of **Spirula.** **A**, outside view; **B**, showing last chamber and position of siphuncle; **C**, in section, showing the septa and the course of the siphuncle; **D**, shell broken to show the convexity of the inner side of the septa; **E**, portion of a septal neck. (After Cooke.)

the body of the Nautilus shifts forwards at intervals into a newly formed chamber, and a new septum is formed closing the latter off from the cavity last occupied.

Of existing Dibranchiata, *Spirula* alone has a shell (Fig. 651) comparable to that of Nautilus. The shell of Spirula is of spiral form, the turns of the spiral, however, not being in close contact. Internally it is divided into chambers by a series of septa, and these are perforated by a siphuncle. But the initial chamber (*protoconch*) instead of being, like the initial chamber in Nautilus, similar to the others though smaller, is dilated into a spherical shape, constricted off from the succeeding chamber; and has passing through it a tube—the *prosiphon*—not continuous with the siphuncle. Again, as will be seen by comparing Figs. 638 and 652, the relation of the soft parts to the shell is the reverse of what obtains in Nautilus, the shell of Spirula curving backwards, that of Nautilus forwards. Moreover the shell of Spirula (Fig. 652) is an internal structure, being almost completely covered by the mantle.

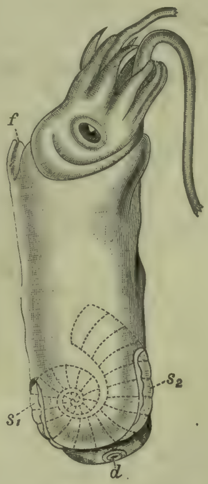


FIG. 652.—**Spirula peronii,** lateral view; *d*, terminal sucker; *f*. funnel; *s*. *s*.^{1} *s*.^{2} projecting portions of the shell, the internal part of which is indicated by dotted lines. (From Cooke.)

The shell of the extinct Ammonites (Fig. 653), which are usually referred to the Tetrabranchiata, resembles that of the Nautilus in many respects, being a chambered spiral shell with a large terminal chamber, and with a siphuncle. The chief external difference is in the form of the *sutures*, or lines of union of the edges of the septa with the side wall of the shell; these are more or less complexly lobed, instead of being entire as in Nautilus. But in one important respect the shell of an Ammonite differs from that of Nautilus and approaches that of the dibranchiate Spirula. At the apex of the spiral is an initial chamber or protoconch, which is dilated and separated from the first of the ordinary chambers by a constriction, and has passing into it a prosiphon not continuous with the siphuncle. The Ammonite was also characterised by the possession of a structure sometimes horny, sometimes calcareous, called the *aptychus*, not represented in any existing form. The aptychus,

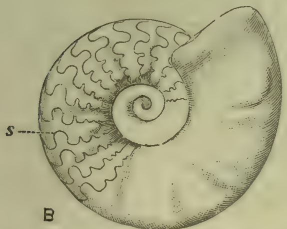


FIG. 653.—An **Ammonite** (Ceratites nodosus.)

which was composed of two parts, seems to have been of the nature of an operculum for closing the mouth of the shell. Young Ammonites, each with its aptychus, have been found within the shell of the parent, in which they must have remained protected during their development.

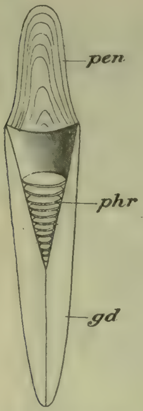


FIG. 654.—Shell of a **Belemnite.** *gd.* guard; *pen,* pro-ostracum; *phr.* phragmocone. (From Nicholson and Lydekker's *Palæontology.*)

In the ordinary decapod Dibranchiata the shell may consist of three parts—a horny *pen* or *pro-ostracum*, a calcareous *guard*, and a part termed the *phragmocone.* The last, which alone represents the shell of *Spirula*, has the form of a cone divided internally by a series of septa perforated by a siphuncle. These parts are most completely developed in the extinct genus Belemnites, in which the shell (Fig. 654) consists of a straight, conical, chambered phragmocone (*phr.*), with a siphuncle, enclosed in a calcareous sheath, the guard, produced into a horny or calcareous plate, the pro-ostracum (*pen.*). In Sepia the spine-like projecting point represents the guard, and the main substance of the shell is to be looked upon as the pro-ostracum and phragmocone, the septa of the latter being represented by the calcareous lamellæ. In *Loligo* (the Squids) the shell (Fig. 647, *B*) is long, narrow, and completely horny; it corresponds to the pro-ostracum, the phragmocone being entirely absent.

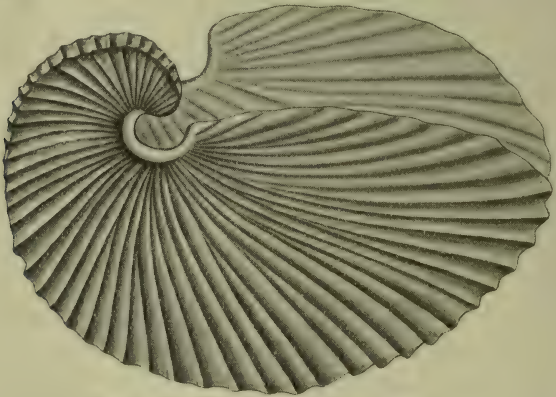


FIG. 655.—Shell of **Argonauto argo.**

In *Octopus* the shell is represented only by a pair of rudiments with which muscles are connected. In *Argonauta* there is no shell in the male, but the female has an external shell (Fig. 655) of a remarkable character. This is a delicate spiral structure, the internal cavity of which is not divided into chambers. It is not secreted by the mantle like the shells of other Mollusca, but by the surfaces of a pair of the arms ending in expanded disc-like extremities, which become applied to its outer surface; its chief function is to carry the eggs.

An **internal cartilaginous skeleton** is present not only in Sepia and Nautilus, as already described, but in all the Cephalopoda. Such an internal skeleton occurs in other groups—some Chætopoda (p. 433) and Arachnida (p. 618), but attains a much more elaborate character in the present group than in any other Invertebrates.

The plume-shaped **gills,** lodged in the mantle-cavity, are two in all the Dibranchiata, as in Sepia. In the Tetrabranchiata there are four gills, similar in general character to those of the Dibranchiata. **Osphradia** are present at the bases of the gills only in the former sub-class.

The **cœlome** in the Dibranchiata has the extent already indicated (p. 715) in the case of Sepia, except that in the Octopoda the oral part does not exist. In Nautilus it encloses, besides the heart and gonad, the vena cava and a part of the glandular appendages of the afferent branchial vessels. In the Dibranchiata the pericardial portion communicates with the nephridia; in Nautilus this communication is absent, but the cœlome opens on the exterior by two symmetrical orifices placed at the side of the openings of the aboral nephridia.

Alimentary Organs.—Jaws similar to those of *Sepia* are present in all the members of the class; in Nautilus, instead of being completely horny, they are partly calcified. Buccal cavity, œsophagus, stomach, intestine, salivary glands, and liver are all of the same general character throughout all the members of the class. In some of the Dibranchiata, such as Octopus, there are two pairs of *salivary glands.* In Nautilus the salivary glands are absent, so far as known, the œsophagus is dilated to form a sort of crop, and the stomach is gizzard-like. In that genus also the ink-gland, general in the Dibranchiata, is absent, and there is a cæcal appendage to the intestine; the liver is four-lobed, each lobe having its duct. The so-called pancreas, described in Sepia, is similarly developed in all the Dibranchiata, and is present also, though only feebly developed, in the Tetrabranchiata.

Heart and **vascular system** are well developed in the Cephalopoda, and their structure and arrangement closely correspond with what has been described in Sepia, except that in Tetrabranchiata there are, as already stated, in accordance with the double number of gills, four auricles instead of two, and branchial hearts are absent.

Nervous system and sense organs.—The ganglia of the central nervous system are in all closely aggregated together round the œsophagus, as already stated to be the case in Sepia; and the general disposition is the same as that described. In Octopus the ganglia are much less sharply marked off. In Nautilus, as already stated, there is less concentration, and distinct ganglia are absent. All the Dibranchiata possess highly developed *eyes* similar to those of Sepia; but in Nautilus the eyes are of a much simpler character, each consisting of a sac opening on the exterior by a small rounded aperture, lined internally by a two-layered retina similar to that of Sepia, but without lens, vitreous humour, or cornea. In the embryo of the Dibranchiata, the eye passes through a stage in which it is in the condition of an open cup similar to the adult eye of Nautilus. *Osphradia* are present, as already mentioned, only in the Tetrabranchiata; but in both the Dibranchiata and the Tetrabranchiata certain sensory processes or depressions conjectured to possess an olfactory function are developed on the head. *Otocysts* are universally present.

All the Dibranchiata have two **nephridia** similar in character to those of Sepia, and communicating with one another; in Octopus they are completely united. In the Tetrabranchiata there are four nephridia, each opening on the exterior.

The **sexes** are distinct in all the Cephalopoda, and in addition to the hectocotylised arm, there are frequently other external differences between male and female. In all the Dibranchiata the arrangement of the gonads and gonoducts is, as regards general features, similar to what we find in Sepia. In Octopus, however, there are two oviducts instead of one, and in one other member of the Octopoda (*Eledone moschata*) the same holds good of the spermiducts.

Development.—The development of the Dibranchiata alone is known. The eggs are very large, containing a relatively large amount of food-yolk. They are usually laid in masses or strings embedded in soft gelatinous, or tougher, more leathery substance, usually attached to some foreign body; in some cases each egg, enclosed in its gelatinous sheath, is attached by a longer or shorter stalk. A *chorion* or delicate transparent egg-membrane, in which there is an aperture—the *micropyle*—immediately invests the egg itself. In shape the egg is oval or spherical. The greater part of the comparatively small quantity of protoplasm lies as a disc-like elevation on the surface of the yolk on the side of the egg at which the micropyle is situated. Continuous with this *germinal disc* is a thin layer of protoplasm—the *peripheral protoplasm*—investing the entire ovum.

Segmentation (Figs. 656 and 657) is incomplete, being confined to the germinal disc. At an early stage in the process of division, the blastoderm exhibits a distinct bi-lateral symmetry. At first it consists of a single layer of cells—the *ectoderm*. Later on a thickening is observable at the periphery, due to the development of a second layer, which by degrees extends inwards until it comes to underlie the entire ectoderm. This second layer is commonly termed the mesoderm, though it differs from the middle layer of other embryos in giving rise to the enteric epithelium of the mesenteron. The ectoderm now extends rapidly, and eventually encloses the entire yolk. Below the second layer extends a thin stratum derived from the peripheral protoplasm, containing nuclei which appear to have been previously scattered through the yolk; this is termed the *yolk epithelium* (Fig. 658). It serves the purpose of absorbing the yolk-substance for the benefit of the developing embryo. About the middle of the blastoderm appears a thickening of a cap-like shape, the edges of which become raised above the

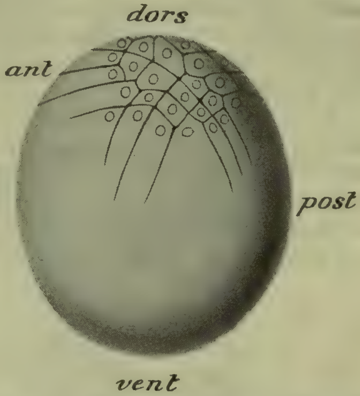


FIG. 656.—Segmenting ovum of **Loligo.** (From Korschelt and Heider, after Watasé.)

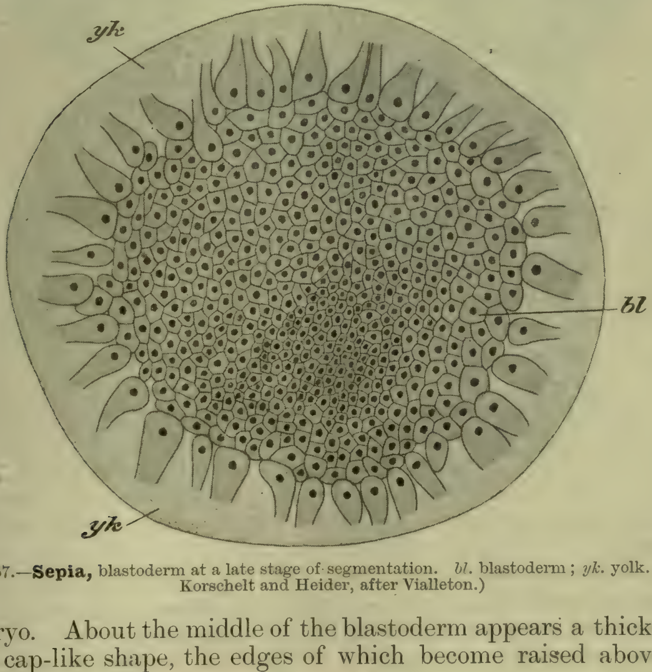


FIG. 657.—**Sepia,** blastoderm at a late stage of segmentation. *bl.* blastoderm; *yk.* yolk. (From Korschelt and Heider, after Vialleton.)

general level of the blastoderm; this is the rudiment of the mantle. On the surface of this is developed a depression which subsequently forms a closed sac—the shell-gland (Fig. 659, *sh. gl.*). Below the mantle—*i.e.* nearer the vegetal pole—appear two elevations each with a pit-like depression, the rudiments of the eyes; and still nearer the vegetal pole a series of paired elevations, the rudiments of the arms.

After the complete enclosure of the yolk by the blastoderm, the mouth (*mo.*) is developed as an oval depression between the rudiments of the eyes. Immediately in front of the edge of the mantle appear two short ridges, the beginnings of the gills (*cten.*), and a pair of folds—the *posterior funnel folds* (*post. f. f.*)—which are formed between these and the eyes—are the first rudiments of the funnel; the greater part of which, however, is formed from a second pair of folds—the *anterior funnel folds* (*ant. f. f.*)—developed further forwards. Behind the anterior funnel folds appear two pit-like depressions, which subsequently develop into the otocysts.

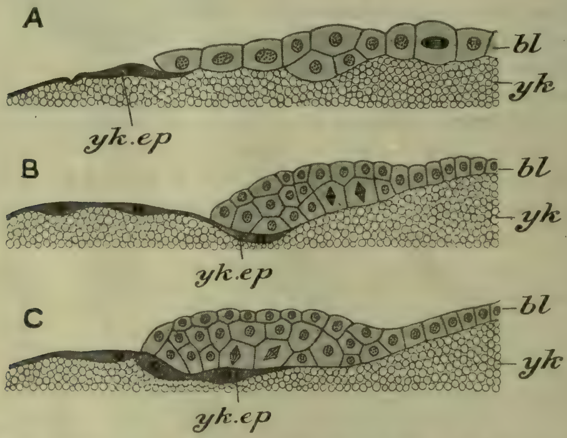


FIG. 658.—Sections through the edge of the blastoderm of **Sepia** at three successive stages; *bl.* blastoderm; *yk.* yolk; *yk. ep.* yolk epithelium. (From Korschelt and Heider, after Vialleton.)

The elevations on which the eyes (*eye*) are situated become more and more prominent. The eyes themselves are formed from a part only of these elevations; each is a pit which subsequently becomes closed—to form a vesicle—the *optic vesicle:* later an ingrowth of the ectoderm over this gives rise to the lens.

The embryo covers only a part of the egg, and as it develops, it withdraws itself more towards the animal pole, at which the germinal disc was originally situated, a constriction, which soon becomes very deep, separating it off from the rest of the egg; the latter, consisting of the greater part of the yolk enclosed in a thin layer of blastoderm, forms a rounded appendage of the embryo—the *yolk-sac* (*yk. s.*). The yolk-sac undergoes contractions, which are due to the action of contractile cells in the thin mesoderm lining it, and by this means the yolk is forced into the interior of the body of the embryo.

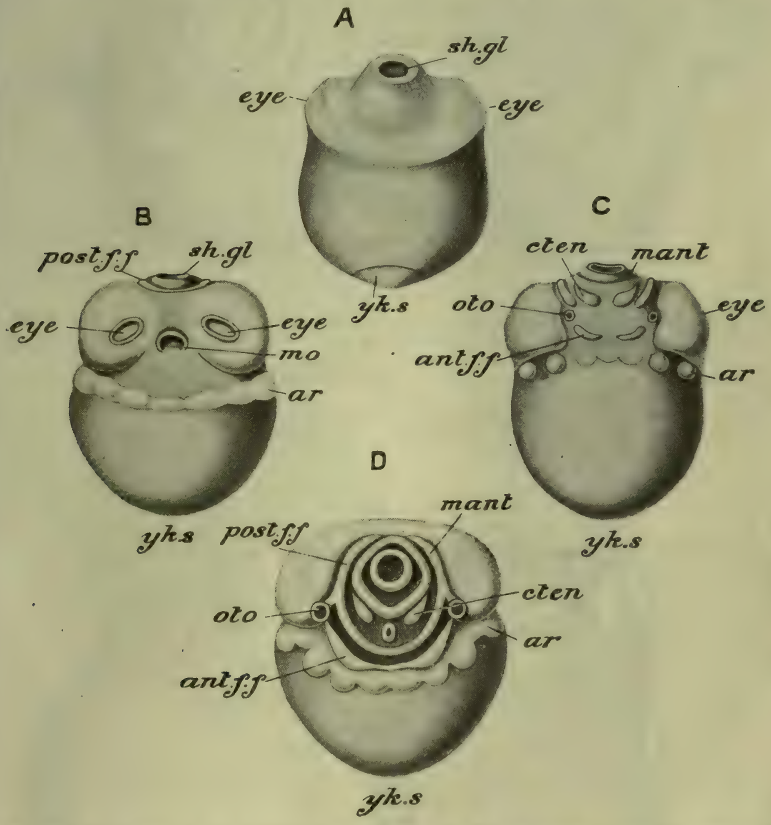


FIG. 659.—Early stages in the development of **Loligo.** *A*, stage at which the rudiments of the eyes and of the shell-gland are first distinguishable; *B*, later embryo from the oral side; *C* and *D*, from the anal side. *ant. f. f.* anterior funnel fold; *ar.* rudiments of arms; *cten.* ctenidia; *eye,* eye; *mo.* mouth; *mant.* rudiment of mantle; *ot.* otocyst; *post. f. f.* posterior funnel fold; *sh. gl.* shell-gland; *yk. s.* yolk-sac. (After Korschelt and Heider.)

The anus appears as an aperture situated on a little papilla—the *anal papilla.* A row of cilia, which are developed in the neighbourhood of the mouth in some forms, perhaps represent the velum or præ-oral circlet of other molluscan embryos. The mantle now increases in extent, and its margins become more prominent. The anterior funnel folds grow out, and become united in the middle line; and these, with the posterior folds, go to form the completed funnel together with the "neck-muscles." For a time

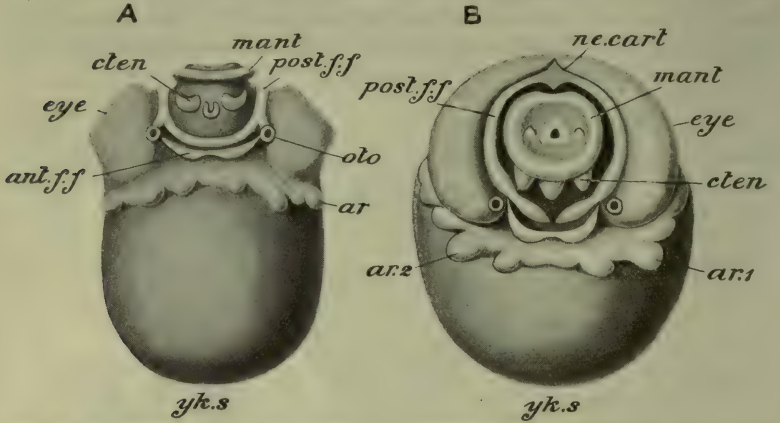

A
B
mant
cten
post.f.f
eye
oto
ant.f.f
ar
yk.s
ne.cart
post.f.f
mant
eye
cten
ar.2
ar.1
yk.s

FIG. 660.—Two later stages in the development of **Loligo,** A, from the funnel side. B, obliquely from above. Letters as in preceding figures; *ne. cart.* nuchal cartilage (After Korschelt and Heider.)

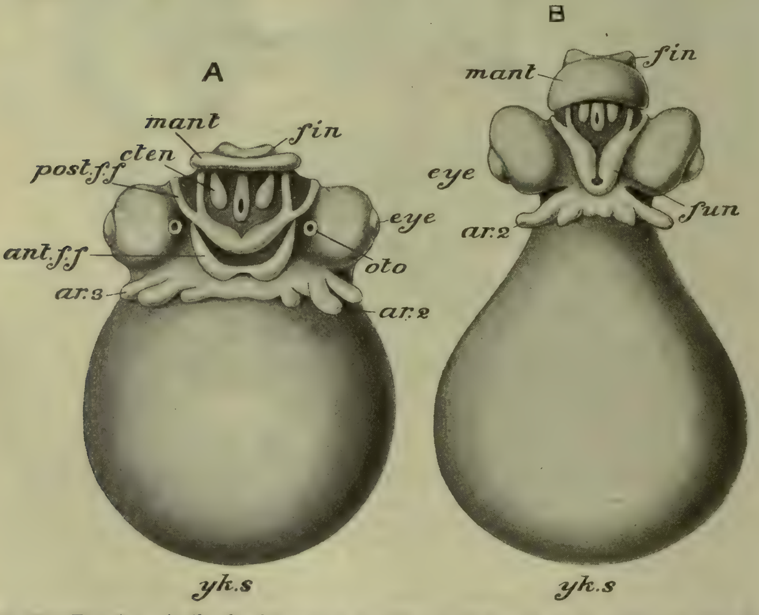

B
fin
mant
eye
fun
ar.2
yk.s
A
mant
fin
cten
post.f.f
eye
ant.f.f
oto
ar.3
ar.2
yk.s

FIG. 661.—Two stages in the development of **Loligo,** later than those represented in Fig. 660. From the anal or funnel side. Letters as in preceding figure; in addition, *fin*, fins. (After Korschelt and Heider.)

the edges of the two folds which form the funnel remain free; eventually they coalesce to form a complete tube.

The edges of the mantle grow out into prominent folds to form the mantle-cavity, into which the gills are drawn. Lateral outgrowths have already formed the rudiments of the fins. The arms grow out into more and more prominent processes on which the suckers become developed, the second pair—the prehensile arms (*ar.* 2)—soon becoming distinguishable from the rest by its greater length.

As the embryo increases in size, the yolk becomes gradually absorbed, and the yolk-sac decreases in bulk, until, when the embryo leaves the egg, it has almost completely disappeared.

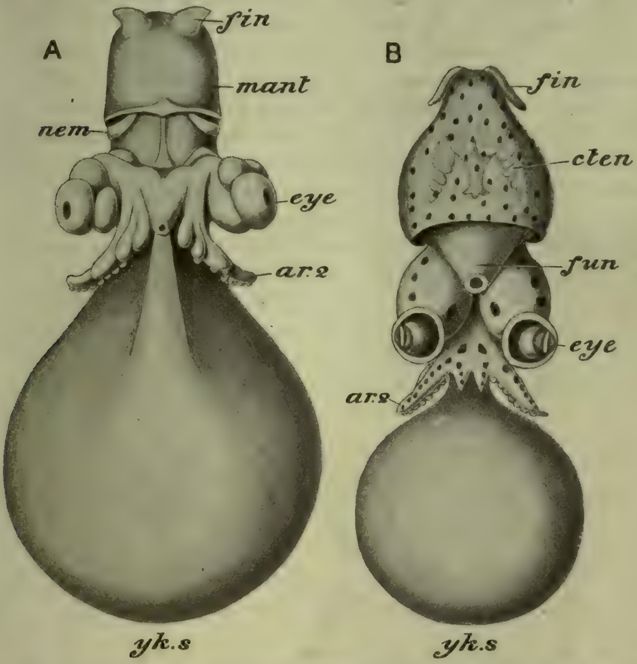


FIG. 662.—Two late stages in the development of **Loligo,** seen from the funnel side. Letters as in preceding figures. (After Korschelt and Heider.)

Distribution.—The Cephalopoda are all marine, and range from tidal limits to a considerable depth. A large number are pelagic. They are, nearly without exception, carnivorous. In length they range from an inch or two to as much as fifty feet—the gigantic members of the group such as *Architeuthis*, being by a long way the largest of invertebrate animals. Like the other classes of Mollusca they are most abundant in tropical and warm temperate seas.

If the Ammonites are to be included among the Tetrabranchiata, that sub-class was most abundantly represented during the mesozoic period. The nautiloid Tetrabranchiata were most abundant in the palæozoic epoch, during which there lived a great variety of forms of this group, some having the shell straight (*Orthoceras*), or curved (*Phragmoceras*), or in a flat spiral with the turns not in contact, or in a helix, or a flat close spiral (Nautilus, and others). The earliest representatives of the Nautiloids are found in rocks of Cambrian age; they are comparatively scarce in the mesozoic epoch and in the tertiary; and are represented at the present day only by the genus Nautilus itself. The Ammonites are mainly mesozoic, the representatives found in the earlier rocks (from the Upper Silurian onwards) being few in number and simpler in structure than the more typical later forms. The oldest fossil representatives of undoubted Dibranchiata belong to the extinct order of the Belemnites, which flourished in the mesozoic period from the Trias to the Cretaceous, and survived in scanty number into the Tertiary. Unlike the Tetrabranchiata, the Dibranchiata would appear to have reached their maximum at the present day.

The mutual relationship of the various groups of Cephalopoda are indicated, as nearly as the information at our disposal will allow, in the following diagram (Fig. 663).

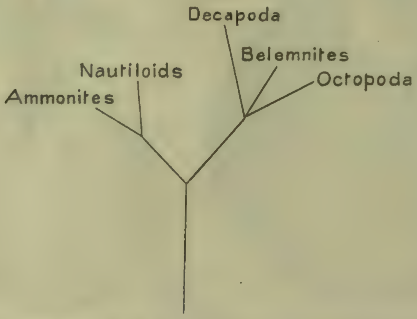


Fig. 663.—Diagram to illustrate the relationships of the groups of Cephalopoda.

General Remarks on the Mollusca.

The Mollusca, like the Arthropoda, form an extremely well-defined Phylum, none of the adult members of which approach the lower groups of animals in any marked degree. There are, however, clear indications of affinity with "Worms," especially in the frequent occurrence of a trochosphere stage in development, in the presence of nephridia, and in the occurrence, in Amphineura and some of the lower Gastropods, of a ladder-like nervous system resembling that of some Turbellaria and of the most worm-like of Arthropods, Peripatus. Rhodope, moreover, shows certain affinities with Flat-Worms. The head-kidneys or primitive nephridia of the molluscan are practically identical with those of the annelid trochosphere and are probably homologous with the various types of nephridial tubes found in worms from Platyhelminthes to Chætopoda. From developmental considerations it appears, however, that the permanent renal organs of Molluscs correspond not with the actual nephridia of Worms but with their oviducts; in other words, that they are meso- and not ectonephridia.

The fact that there is usually a single pair of nephridia and of ctenidia seems to indicate derivation from a group in which metamerism had not arisen; the segmental arrangement of the shells and gills of Placophora appears to be a specialised character of that group and of no phylogenetic importance.

The lowest members of the phylum are undoubtedly the Protobranchia among Pelecypods and the Aplacophora among Amphineura. The latter take the lowest rank in virtue of the absence of both foot and shell, but the possession of an odontophore indicates a comparatively high degree of specialisation. On the other hand, while there is no indication of an odontophore, even in a rudimentary condition, in the Pelecypoda, the foot and shell are well developed even in Nucula and its allies. There is no actual evidence to show that the foot and shell have been lost by degeneration in the Aplacophora or the odontophore in Pelecypoda, and it would appear, therefore, that the two groups are to be derived independently from some primitive form.

The facts that the pelecypod shell, at its first appearance, is univalve, that the foot of the Protobranchia is of the creeping type and their ctenidia plume-like, suggest the derivation of the class from a form resembling a simple type of Gastropod with no odontophore and with undisturbed bilateral symmetry. The Amphineura are also bilaterally symmetrical, with paired ctenidia, kidneys, and auricles, and the fact that these organs are also paired in the lower Gastropoda, seems to point to a common ancestor for Pelecypods, Amphineura, and Gastropods, which was bilaterally symmetrical, had a creeping foot, a simple shell, paired auricles, kidneys, and gills, and no odontophore.

While the leading feature in the evolution of the Pelecypoda has been the splitting of the mantle into two halves and the resulting bivalve shell, the most noticeable fact in that of Gastropoda, apart from the appearance of the odontophore, has been the torsion of the visceral mass, producing a characteristic asymmetry. In the Cephalopoda, on the other hand, the primitive bilateral symmetry is retained, and the most characteristic special feature of the group is the extraordinary modification of the foot into arms or tentacles and funnel. The class is raised far above the remaining Mollusca by its wonderfully high organisation, especially in the nervous system and the eye, and there is nothing to indicate close relationship with any of the lower classes, beyond the general conformity to the molluscan plan of organisation, and the presence of an odontophore. The Cephalopods form, in fact, a singularly isolated group. Palæontology has not hitherto given any indication of their origin, and embryology is equally silent, the absence of a free larva, and the profound modification in development produced by the enormous mass of food-yolk sharply separating them from all other members of the phylum.

INDEX

INDEX

All numbers refer to pages: words in italics are names of families, genera and species: words in thick type are names of higher divisions: words in small capitals are names of examples. Numbers in thick type are numbers of pages on which there are figures: an asterisk after a number indicates a definition of the term or of the group.

A

ABACTINAL, 347*
Abdomen, of *Apus*, 489; *Astacus*, 498; Periplaneta, 572, 574
Absorption, 32
Abyssal species, 8
Acanthocephala, 275*: External characters, **290**: Body-wall, 290: Body-cavity, 290: Proboscis, 290: Vessels, 291: Nervous system, **291**: Excretory organs, 292: Reproductive organs, **291**, **292**: Development, 292
Acarida, 612*, **616**, 618, 619, 620, 621
Achromatin, 15*
Aciculum, 405*
Acineta, 90, **91**, 92
Acœla, 252
Acontia, **175**, 188
Acorn-shells, 534
Actinal, 347*
Actinia, **180**, **214**
Actiniaria, 181, 183, 185, 188
Actinobolus, 84, **85**
Actinodactylella, 244, **245**, 250
Actinometra, 392
Actinomma asteracanthion, **60**
Actinophrys sol, **55**
Actinosphærium, **56**
Actinostome, 347*
Actinotrocha, **330**, 462
Actinozoa, 118*: Example, 172: Distinctive characters and classification, 180: Systematic position of example, 183: General organisation, 183: Budding, **184**: Structure of polypes, 185: Enteric system, 188: Fixed and free forms, 189: Dimorphism, 189*: Skeleton, 189: Colour, 195: Commensalism, 195: Distribution, 196
Adamsia palliata, 195, **196**
Adductor impressions, **633**, 634, 650
Adductor muscles, 635, 648, 645, 646, 647, 649
Adhesive cells, of *Hormiphora*, **202**: of Turbellaria, 248
Adipose tissue, 23*, **25**
Adradius, 129
Adrectal gland, 693
Æginopsis, **144**
Æginura, **143**
Ægir, 188: Addenda
Æquorea, 133
Affinities—See Relationships
Agalma, 151
Agamobium, 130
Aggressive characters, in Crustacea, 555
Air-sacs, of Insects, **593**, 594
Albertia, 309
Alciopidæ, 447
Alcippe, 522, 534
Alcyonacea, 182*, 195
Alcyonaria, 182*, 187, 188, 197
Alcyonidium, 320
Alcyonium, 182, **190**
Alecithal, 206*
Alimentary canal—See Digestive system
Alimentary system—See Digestive system
Alpheus, 556
Alpine forms, 8
Alternation of generations—See Metagenesis
Alveolus, of Sea-urchin, 366
Ambulacral grooves, 347*
Ambulacral ossicles, 349
Ambulacral pores, 349
Ambulacral system, of *Asterias*, **350**: *Echinus*, **367**: Sea-cucumber, 370, **371**: of *Antedon*, 375: of Echinodermata, 393

Ammonites, 737, **741**

Amnion, of *Peripatus*, 564 : *Periplaneta*, 581 : Scorpion, 610

AMŒBA, **10**, 11, 12, **13**, 14 : Pseudopods, **44** : Endosarc, 44 ; Ectosarc, 44 : Contractile vacuole, 44 : Encystation, 44 : Fission, 44 : Systematic position, 46

Amœbocytes, 352, 368

Amœbula, of *Gregarina*, **77**

Amphiblastula, 113*, 114

Amphidiscs, **112**

Amphilina, 267

Amphineura, 631 : Distinctive characters and classification, 663 : General organisation, 663 : External features, 663, **664**, **665** : Alimentary system, 665 : Body-cavity, 666 : Vascular system, 666 : Nervous system, 666, **667** : Reproductive and renal organs, 668 : Development, 669 : Ethology, distribution, etc., 670

Amphipoda, 524*, 543, 544, 545, 547, 550

Amphiptyches, **247**, 267

Amphistomum, **242**

Amphitretus pelagicus, **740**

Ampullæ, 349, 350

Ampullaria, 699

Amusium, 653, 655

Anal filament, 614

Anal glands, of *Peripatus*, 562

Anal respiration, 550

Anal spot, of *Paramœcium*, 81

Anatomy, 3*

Anguillula, 283

Anisopoda, 543

Annulata, 403 : General remarks on, 481

Annuli, of Leech, 463

ANODONTA, 631 : Shell, 633 : Body, 635 : Muscles, 635 : Cœlome, 635 : Digestive organs, 636 : Gills, 636 ; Excretory organs, 640 : Circulatory system, 640 : Nervous system, 641 : Sensory organs, 642 : Reproductive organs, 642 : Development, 643 : Systematic position, 647

Anodonta, 649, 652, 654, 655, 659

Anomia, 646, 648, 649

Antedon, 391

Anoplophyra, **85**

ANTEDON ROSACEA, **373** : General external features, 373 : Ossicles, 374 : Cœlome, 374 : Enteric canal, 375 : Ambulacral system, 375 : Nervous system, 375 : Blood-vascular system, 376 : Sacculi, 376 : Reproductive organs, 377 : Metamorphosis, 377 : Systematic position, 381 : Development, **398**

Antenna, of *Astacus*, 502—See also Appendages

Antennary gland, of *Astacus*, 509, **510**

Antennary glands, 523, 550

Antennule, of *Astacus*, 502—See also Appendages

ANTHENEA FLAVESCENS, 356, **357**, 358

Anthomedusæ, 131*, 133, 134

Anthophysa, **66**

Anthosoma, 530, **531**

Antimeres, 40

Antipatharia, 182*, 187, 188, 190, 197

Ant-lions, 585

Ants, 587, 603

Aorta—See Vascular system

Aphides, 598

Aphroditea, 435, 436

Apical plate, of Trochosphere, 298

Apical system of plates, **362**, 365

Apis mellifica, **589**, **603**

Aplacophora, 663, **664**, **666**, **668**, 669, 671

Aplysia, 687, **688**, 695

Aplysiidæ, 684

Apoda (Holothuroidea), 380

Apopyle, **99**, 101*, 108

Appendages, of Rotifera, 306 : *Apus*, **487**, *Astacus*, 500, **501** : Crustacea, 525 : *Peripatus*, **560** : *Peripnetala*, **572** : Insecta, 588 : Scorpion, 606

Aptera, 583, 591

Aptus rosæ, **585**

Aptychus, 741

APUS, 484 : External characters, **485** : Appendages, **487**, **488** : Body-wall, 489 : Muscular system, 490 : Digestive organs, **490**, 491 : Body-cavity, 491 : Circulatory system, 491 : Respiration, 492 : Renal organ, 492 : Nervous system, 492, **494** : Organs of sense, 494 : Reproductive organs, 495 : Development, **496** : Systematic position, 524

Apus, 552

Apus cancriformis, **485**, 489

Apus glacialis, 487

Aquatic pupa, 602

Arachnida, 484, 604 : Example, 604 : Distinctive characters and classification, 611 : General organisation, 613 : External form, **613**, **619** : Endosternite, 618 : Coxal glands, 618 : Alimentary system, 618 : Heart, 619 : Organs of respiration, 619 : Nervous system, 621 : Sense-organs, 621 : Reproductive apparatus, 622 : Mode of life, 623 : Geological history, 624 : Appendix, 624

Arachnidium, 615

Araneida, 612*, 618, 621

Arbacia punctulata, pedicellaria, **389**

Arca, 646, 648, 652, 653, 655, 658

Arcella, **48**

Archenteron, 21*

Archi-Annelida, 462, 482

Archi-cerebrum, 513

Archi-cerebrum, of *Periplaneta*, 582

Archi-Chætopoda, 427

Archigetes, **247**, 267

Architeuthis, 749

Argiope, 338

Argonauta argo, **739**, **742**
Argonauts, 736, 738
Argulus, 522, 531, **532**
Aristotle's lantern, **366**
Ark-shell, 653
Armadillidium, 546
Armadillo, 524, **546**
Armata, 455, 457, 458, 461
Artemia, 521, 526
Arthrobranchiæ, 508
Arthropoda, Classes, 484; Affinities of air-breathing, 627
Arthrostraca, 524*, 543, 547, 550
Articulata, 338* : Shell, 338
ASCARIS LUMBRICOIDES, 275 : External characters, 275 : Digestive organs, 278, **279** : Cœlome, 279 : Excretory system, **279** : Nervous system, 279, **280** : Reproductive organs, 279, **281** : Development, 280 : Systematic position, 282
Ascaris nigrovenosa, 286, **287**
Ascetta primordialis, **107**
Ascon, 109
Asellus, 524, 543, **545**
Asexual reproduction, 38 : in Amœba, 44 : Euglena, 64 : Flagellata, 69 : Choanoflagellata, 73 : Dinoflagellata, 74 : Sporozoa, 75 : Paramœcium, 81 : Ciliata, 88 : Tentaculifera, 92 : Sponges, 112 : Actinozoa, 184 : Platyhelminthes, 263 : Bugula, 319 : Chætopoda, 446
Asiphoniata, 647, 658
Aspergillum, 647, 652, **653**
Aspidobranchia, 683
Aspidogaster, 264
Asplanchna, 304, **305**, 308
Astacoides, 523
Astacus, 549
ASTACUS FLUVIATILIS, 498 : External characters, **499** : Abdomen, 499 : Thoracic region, 499 : Head, 499 : Appendages, 500, **501** : Articulations, 503 : Body-wall, 504 : Muscular system, 504, **505** : Digestive organs, **506** : Respiratory organs, 507, **508** : Excretory organs, 509, **510** : Circulatory organs, 509, **512** : Nervous system, **513** : Sensory organs, 513 : Reproduction, 514, **515** : Development, **515** ; Systematic position, 525
Astasiopsis, **66**
ASTERIAS RUBENS, 346 : General external features, 346, **347**, 348 : Transverse section of an arm, **349** : Vascular and nervous systems, 350 : Structure of the disc, 351 : Body-wall and cœlome, 351 : Digestive system, **353** : Ambulacral system, 354 : Ovoid gland, 354 : Reproductive system, **356** : Systematic position, 380
Asterina, development, 358, **359**, **360**, **361**, 362
Asteroidea, Example, 346 : Development, 358 : Distinctive characters and classification, 378 : Apical system, 384 : Modifications of form, 384 : Cœlome, 392 : Ambulacral system, 393 : Blood-vascular system, 394 : Enteric canal, 394 : Nervous system, 395 : Reproductive organs, 395 : Development, 397 : Ethology, 399
Astræa, **185**, 194
Astrophyton, **387**
Astrosphere, 16*
Atlanta peronii, 689
Atrochal, 445
Attraction-sphere, 16*
Auditory organs, 37
Aulactinium actinastrum, 60
Aulostoma, 476, 481
AURELIA AURITA, External characteristics, 156, **157** : Digestive-cavity and canal system, 158, **159** : Cell-layers, 158 : Gonads, 158 : Muscular and nervous systems, 160 : Sense-organs, **160** : Development and life-history, 160, 161, **162**, 163 : Systematic position, 164
Auricle, of heart, 34
Auricles, of sea-urchin, 366
Auricularia, 372, **397**, 398
Autolytus cornutus, 446
Avicularium, 314, **315**, 324
Axes, **40***
Axial fibre, 83
Axial sinus, 355
Axis-cylinder, 27, 28

B

BALANUS, 522, **534**
Barnacles, **532**, 548
Barrier reef, 197
Basal plate, of coral, 192*, **193**
Bdelloida, 303*
Bdelloura, 264
Bear-animalcules, 626
Bee-parasites, 602
Bees, 587, 589, 598, 603
Beetles, 587, 591
Belemnites, 736, **742**
Benthos, 8
Berenice, **139**
Beroë, **211** : Section, **214**
Beroïda, 208, **211**
Bilateral symmetry, 39*, 41
Bile, 32
Bilharzia hæmatobium, 265
Binomial nomenclature, 1*
Biology, 1*
Bionomics, 9
Bipalium, **240**
Bipinnaria, 361, 397
Bird-lice, 602

Birgus, 523, 549
Bivium, 348, 366 : of Sea-cucumber, 369
Black coral, 182
Blastocœle, 20*
Blastoidea, 380
Blastomeres, 20*
Blastopore, 21*
Blastosphere, 20*
Blastostyle, of *Obelia*, 119,* **120** : Septolinæ, 140 : *Porpita*, **153**
Blastula, 20*
Blatta—See *Periplaneta*
Blattidæ, 587
Blood, 32
Blood-vascular system—See Vascular system
Blood-vessels, 32
Blow-flies, 586
Blue coral, 182
Body-cavity—See Cœlome
Body-wall, of Sea-anemone, 175 : *Hormiphora*, 202 : Liver-fluke, 226 : Platyhelminthes, 248 : Nemertinea, 269 : *Ascaris*, 276 : Nematoda, 283 : Chætognatha, 293 : *Brachionus rubens*, 300 : *Bugula*, 316 : Ectoprocta, 323 : *Magellania*, 335 : *Asterias*, 351 : Sea-cucumber, 370 : *Nereis*, 408 : Earthworm, 419 : Chætopoda, 434 : *Sipunculus*, 451 : Gephyrea, 456 : *Hirudo*, 467 : *Apus*, 489 : *Astacus*, 504 : Crustacea, 547 : *Peripatus*, 561 : Myriapoda, 569 : Insecta, 588
Bojanus, organs of, 640
Bolina hydatina, 211
Bone, 25*, **26**
Bone-corpuscles, 25*
Bonellia, 455, **456**, **458**, **460**
Book-gills, 621
Book-lungs, **608**, 619, **621**
Book-scorpions, 611
Bopyrini, **546**, 547
Bopyrus, 524
Bot-fly, **586**
Bothriocephalus, 256, 259
Bothriocephalus latus, 265
Botryoidal tissue, of Leech, 467
Bougainvillea, 133, **134**, 140
Brachial disc, of Discomedusæ, 171
Brachiolaria, 397
Brachionidæ, 304*
Brachionus, 307
BRACHIONUS RUBENS : External characters, 299, **300** : Body-wall, 300 : Digestive organs, **300**, **301** : Cœlome, 301 : Excretory system, 301 : Nervous system and sense-organs, 301 : Reproduction and development, **302** : Systematic position, 304
Brachiopoda, 331 : Example, 321 : Distinctive characters and classification, 337 : Systematic position of example, 338 : General organisation, 338 : Shell, 338, 339 : Peduncle, 339 : Lophophore, 339 : Muscular system, 339 : Enteric canal, 340 : Heart, 340 : Nephridia, 340 : Nervous system, 341 : Gonads, 341 : Development, 341 : Distribution, 342
Brachyura, 523*, 539
Bract, 489
Brain, 36
Branchellion, **475**, 476, 477, 481
Branchiæ, 33* : of Asterias, 347 : Sea-urchin, 364 : Polychæta, 433, **434** : Oligochæta, 434 : Branchellion, **475**, 477 : Astacus, 507, **508** : Crustacea, 548 : Anodonta, **636**, **637**, **638** : Pelecypoda, 653 : Triton, 676, **677** : Gastropoda, 690
Branchial formula, of *Astacus*, &c., 549
Branchipus, 521, **526**
Branchiura, 522*, 528
Brine-shrimp, 526
Brood-pouch, 527
Buccal cavity, 30
Buccinum undatum, 671
Budding, 38*—See Asexual reproduction
Budding, in Turbellaria, 240
Buffon, 5
Bugs, 585, 591, 602
Bugula, 320
BUGULA AVICULARIA, 314, **315** : Body-wall, 316 : Cœlome, 316 : Alimentary canal, 317 ; Nervous system ; Reproductive organs ; Development, **317**, **318** : Systematic position, 320
Bugula plumosa, **317**
Busycon, 699
BUTHUS, 604 : External features, **605** : Digestive system, 607, **608**, **609** : Circulatory organs, 607, **608** : Organs of respiration, **608** : Nervous system, **608**, 609 : Organs of special sense, 609 : Reproductive organs, 609 : Development, **610**
Butterflies, 587
Byssus, 645, 653
Byssus-gland, 645, 652
Byssus, provisional, 644

C

CADDIS-FLIES, 585
Calcarea, 103*, 111, 112, 115, 116
Calcareous spicules, of Sponges, **98**, **99**, 111, **112**
Calciferous glands, 421
Callianira, **209**
Callitiara, **139**
Calocalanus, **529**
Calotte, 317
Calymna, of Radiolaria, 58
Calyptoblastea, 133*
Cambrian, 7
Canaliculæ (bone), 25

Canals, Haversian, 25, **26** : of Medusa, 125, **126**
Canal system of Sponges, **108, 109**
Cancer, 524, **540**
Cannostomæ, 164*, 169, 170, 171
Capillaries, 33*
Capillitium, of Mycetozoa, **62**
Caprella, 524, 545, **546**
Carabus auratus, **592**
Carapace, of *Apus*, 485 : of *Astacus*, 498 : of Scorpion, 605
Carboniferous, 7
Cardiac sac, of Polychæta, 437
Cardium, 647, 652
Carina, of Cirripedia, 533
Carinaria mediterranea, **687**
Cartilage, 24*, **25** : Hyaline, 24, **25** : Fibrous, 24, **25** : Yellow elastic, 24 : Calcified, 25
CARYOPHYLLÆUS, **247**, 256
Caudal spine, 617
Caudal styles, of *Apus*, 485
Cell, animal, 14, 15*
Cell, 14, 15*, **17** : Forms, 21 : Ciliated, 21, 43 : Flagellate, 21, 43 : Amœboid, 43 : Encysted, 43
Cell-colony, 50
Cell-division, 16,**17**
Cell-wall, 15
Cellepora, 320
Cellulose, 14
Centipedes, 567, **568**
Central capsule of Radiolaria, **58**
Central nervous system of Medusæ, 138
Centro-dorsal ossicle, of *Antedon*, 374
Centrolecithal, 207, 496
Centrosome, 15*
Cephalic apodeme, of *Apus*, 491 : of *Astacus*, 499
Cephalopoda, 631, 708. Examples, 708, 725 : Distinctive characters and classification, 736 ; Systematic position of the examples, 737 : General organisation, 737 ; External features, 737, **738, 739, 740** : Shell, **740, 741, 742** : Internal skeleton, 743 : Gills, 743 : Osphradia, 743 : Cœlome, 743 : Alimentary organs, 743 ; Heart and vascular system, 743 : Nervous system and sense-organs, 744 : Nephridia, 744 : Development, 744, **745, 746, 747, 748, 749** : Distribution, &c., 749
Cephalothorax, of *Astacus*, 498
Cerata, 693
Ceratites nodosus, **741**
Ceratium, **74**
Ceratosa, 116
Cercaria, **230***, 231, 259
Cerci, 574
Cerianthus, 187, 189
Cervical fold, of *Apus*, 485
Cervical groove, of *Astacus*, 498
Cervical sclerites, 588
Cestida, 208*, **210**
Cestoda, 238*, 245, **246, 247**, 253, 254 256
Cestode, development, 259, 260
Cestus veneris, **210**
Chætoderma, 663, **664**, 665, **666**, 668
Chætogasta, 446
Chætognatha, 275*, 293 : External characters, **293** ; Body-wall, 293 : Enteric canal, **293**, 294 : Cœlome, **294** : Nervous system, **294** : Sensory organs, **295** : Reproduction, 295 : Development, **295**
Chætonotus, 311
Chætopoda, 403 : Examples, 404, 417 : Distinctive characters and classification, 426 : Systematic position of examples, 428 : General organisation, 429 : General form, **429, 430** : Parapodia and setæ, **430, 431** : Branchiæ, 433, **434** : Cœlome, 435 : Enteric canal, 435, **436** : Blood-vessels, 436 : Nervous system, 437 : Organs of special sense, 438 ; Organs of excretion, 440 : Reproductive organs, **441** : Development, 442 : Asexual reproduction, **446** : Mode of life, &c., 447 : Appendix, 448
Chætosomidæ, 296, 297
Chalk, 55
Charybdæa marsupialis, 166, **168**
Cheilostomata, 320
Chelæ, 500*
Cheliceræ, 606, 613, 615, 616, 617
Chelifer bravaisii, **613**
Chelipeds, 500*
Chilaria, 617
Chilopoda, 567, 568, 569
Chironomus, 595
Chitin, 29
Chiton, 631, 663, 664, **665**, 666, **667, 669, 670**
Chlamydomyxa, **48**, 49, 50
Chloræmidæ, 436
Chloragen cells, 421
Chlorophyll, 14, 64
Choanoflagellata, 65* : General structure, **72** : Collar, 72 : Colonies, **73** : Reproduction, 73
Chondracanthus, 522, 530, **531**
Chorion, of Cephalopoda, 744 : of Insects, 599
Choristida, 116
Chromatin, 15
Chromatophores, of Sepia. 711 : of Cephalopoda, 740
Chrysalis, 602
Chylific ventricle, 577
Cicada, **585**, 597
Cidaris, 393
Cilia, 21*
Ciliary flames, **253** : process, 720
Ciliata, 82* : Form of body, 83, **85, 86, 87, 88, 89** : Stalk, 83, **85, 87** : Arrange-

ment of cilia, 83, **85**: Undulating membranes, 83: Meganucleus, 84: Micronuclei, 84: Contractile vacuole, 84, **85**: Non-contractile vacuoles, 84: Trichocysts, 84: Digestive apparatus, 86: Skeleton, lorica, **86**, 87: Operculum, 87: Colonies, **88**: Reproduction, **88**, **89**: Conjugation, 90
Ciliated chambers, 109
Cinclides, **175**, 188
Circulation—See Vascular system
Circulatory system—See Vascular system
Cirri, 403*
Cirripedia, 522*, 534, 547, 550, 551, 552
Cistella, **339**, **340**, **341**
Cladocera, 521, 526, 547
Class, 4*
Classification, 3*, 5: of Rhizopoda, 45: Mastigophora, 65: Sporozoa, 76: Infusoria, 82: Porifera, 103: Hydrozoa, 131: Scyphozoa, 164: Actinozoa, 181: Ctenophora, 207: Platyhelminthes, 237: Nemertinea, 273: Nematoda, 281: Rotifera, 303: Polyzoa, 319: Brachiopoda, 337; Echinodermata, 377: Chætopoda, 426: Gephyrea, 454: Hirudinea, 474: Crustacea, 519: Insecta, 583: Arachnida, 611: Pelecypoda, 645: Amphineura, 663: Gastropoda, 682: Cephalopoda, 736
Clathrozoon, 136
Clathrulina, **57**
Clavatella, **135**
Cleaning foot, 536
Clepsine, **475**, 476, **477**, **479**
Cliona, 116
Clitellum, 417, 467
Clypeaster subdepressus, **390**
Clypeastridea, 379
Clypeus*, 572
Cnidoblast, 123*
Cnidocil, 124*
Coccidæ, 598
Coccidiidea, 76*: Characteristic features, **78**
Coccidium, **78**
Cockchafer, 594
Cockles, 631, 647, 661
Cockroach—See *Periplaneta*
Cockroaches, 584
Cocoa-nut crab, 549
Codonella, **85**
Cœlenterata, Classes, 118: Relationships, 213–216: Appendix, 216: Relationships to Sponges, 215
Cœlome and body-cavity, of *Ascaris*, 279: Nematoda, 284: Acanthocephala, 290: Chætognatha, 294: *Bugula*, 316: Endoprocta, 326: *Phoronis*, 328: *Magellania*, 336: *Asterias*, 351: Sea-urchin, 368: Sea-cucumber, 371: *Antedon*, 374: Echinodermata, 392: *Nereis*, 406: Chætopoda, 435: *Sipunculus*, 452: *Apus*, 489: Crustacea, 547: *Peripatus*, 561: Insecta, 591: *Anodonta*, 635: Amphineura, 668: *Sepia*, 715: Cephalopoda, 743
Cœloplana, 212, 266
Cœnenchyma, 194*
Cœnosarc, 121*
Coleoptera, 587, 589, 596, 598, 602, 605
Collar of choanoflagellata, **72**
Collared cells, **98**, **99**, 100*
Collared monads, **73**
Colleterial glands, 597
Collozoum, **59**
COLOCHIRUS, 369: General external features, **369**: Structure of body-wall, 370: Ambulacral system, 370: Nerve-ring, 370: Vascular ring, 370: Cœlome, 371: Enteric canal, **371**, 372: Reproductive organs, 372: Development, 372: Systematic position, 381
Colony, 38*: of Foraminifera, 50: Heliozoa, 56: Radiolaria, 59: Flagellata, 68: Choanoflagellata, 73: Ciliata, 88: Tentaculifera, 92: Obelia, 119: Septolinæ, 132: Actinozoa, 183: Polyzoa, 313: Bugula, 314: Ectoprocta, 321: Endoprocta, 327
Colpoda, 89
Columella, of Coral, 192*, **193**: of Triton, 672
Comb-jellies, 118
Combs, of *Hormiphora*, 200, **201**
Commensalism, in Sponges, 116: *Hydractinia*, 134: Actinozoa, 195: Platyhelminthes, 264: Chætopoda, 447: Crustacea, 555
Complemental males, 551
Conchiolin, 634
Condylostoma, **85**
Cones, 684
Conjugation of Ciliata, 90: of Flagellata, 70: of *Paramœcium*, **81**
Connective tissue, 23*: Gelatinous, 23, **24**: Fibrous, 23: Retiform, 23, **24**
Connective tissue cells of Sponges, 102
Contractile vacuole, 11, 44, 79
Contractility of muscles, 26, 35
Conus, 699
Convoluta, **240**, 250
Copepoda, 522*, 528, 551, 552
Coral, Aporose, 194: Black, 182: Blue, 182: Fossil, 197: Organ pipe, 182: Perforate, 194: Red, 182, 197: Reef-building, 197: Stony, 182
Coral limestones, 197
Coral reefs, 197
Corallite, 192*
Corallium, 184, **185**, 190, 197
Corallum, 192*
Cordylophora, 155
Cornea, 720
Corona, of Polyzoa, 317: of Sea-urchin, 304

Corpuscles, 28 : amœboid, 28
Cortex, of *Paramœcium*, 79 : Sponges, 102, 110
Coryomorpha, **137**
Couplers, 530
Covered-budded Hydroids, 133*
Cowries, 684
Coxal glands, of *Peripatus*, 562 : of Scorpion, 609 ; of Arachnida, 618
Crabs, 537, **540**, **541**, 549, 553, 556
Crane-flies, 586
Crangon, 523, **538**
Crania, 337, **339**
Crayfish, 498
Crayfishes, 537, 550, 554
Cretaceous, 7
Crinoidea, example, 373 : Distinctive characters and classification, 380 : Modifications of form, 391 : Cœlome, 392 : Ambulacral system, 393 : Blood-vascular system, 394 : Enteric canal, 394 : Nervous system, 395 : Reproductive organs, 395 : Development, 398 : Ethology, 399
Crioceris, 587
Crisia, 320
Cristatella, 321, **323**
Crop, 30
Crustacea, 484 : Example *a*, 484 : Example *b*, 498 : Distinctive characters and classification, 519 : Systematic position of the examples, 524 : General organisation, 525 : External characters and structure of appendages, 525 : Texture of the exoskeleton, 547 : Body-cavity, 547 : Enteric canal, 547 : Respiratory organs, 548 : Heart, 550 : Excretory organs, 550 : Nervous system, 550 : Sense-organs, 551 : Reproduction, 551 : Development, 551 : Ethology, 554 : Affinities and mutual relationships, 556 : Appendix, 558
Cryptomonas, **66**
Cryptoniscus, **546**, 547
Crystalline style, 636 : of Gastropoda, 692
Ctenaria, **139**
Ctenidium, 645, 646, 653, 664, 665 : of *Triton*, 676 : of Gastropoda, 693
Ctenophora, 118*, 198 : Example, 198 : Distinctive characters and classification, 207 : Systematic position of the example, 208 : General organisation, **209**, **210**, **211** : Appendix, 212 : Relationships, 214, 215
Ctenoplana, **212**, 266
Ctenopteryx, 738
Ctenostomata, 320*, 321
Cubomedusæ, 164*, 166
Cucumaria—See *Colochirus*
Culex, 590
Cuma, 524
Cumacea, 524*, 543
Cunarcha, **143**
Cunina, 155
Cunina parasitica, 144
Cup-coral, 192
Cursoria, 587
Cuticle, 29*
Cuttle-fish, 631, 708, 736
Cuvier, 3
Cuvieran organs, 394
Cyamus, 524, 545, **546**
Cyclas, 660
Cyclops, 522, 528, **529**, 550, 551
Cyclostomata, 320
Cydippida, 208*, **209**
Cymothoa, 551
Cymothoë, 524, 546
Cynipidæ, 598
Cypræa, 687
Cypris, 521, 527, **528**, 550
Cypris stage, of Cirripedes, 552
Cyst, of *Amœba*, **44** : *Euglena*, **64**
Cysticercoid, **260**, **261**
Cysticercus, **236**, 261
Cystoflagellata, definition, 65 : Characteristic features, **74**
Cystoidea, 380
Cythere, 521, 527, 528
Cytoplasm, 15

D

DACTYLOPORES, of *Millepora*, **145** *Stylaster*, **147**
Dactylozooids, 138*, of *Millepora*, **146** : *Stylaster*, 147 : *Halistemma*, **148**, 149
Daddy long-legs, 586
Dahlia wartlet, 172, **173**
Dallingeria, **66**
Dalmanites socialis, **558**
Daphnia, 521, 526, **527**
Darwin, 6
Dasychone, 438
Daughter-cell, 18
Daughter-chromosomes, 16
Daughter-cysts, 262
Daughter-nucleus, 17
Daughter-segments, 16
Day-flies, 592
Dead men's fingers, 182
Decapoda, 523*, 537, 548, 550, 551
Decapoda (Cephalopoda), 736*, 738, 740
Degeneration, in Copepoda, 530 : in Cirripedia, 534 : in Isopoda, 547
Deiopea, 209, **210**
Dendrocœlum—See *Planaria*
Dendrocometes, **71**
Dendrophyllia, **194**
Dendrosoma, **91**, 92
Dentalium, 705, **706**, 707
Derm (dermis), 29*
Dermal branchiæ of Echinoidea, 389
Dermal branchiæ, 347, 393

Dermal cortex, 102*, 110
Dermal pores, 347
Dermaptera, 587
Desmoscolecidæ, 296
Desmoscolex, 297
Desmospongiæ, 103*
Deutomerite of *Gregarina*, 77
Development, of *Sycon*, 113, **114**: Sponges, 115: *Obelia*, 129, **130**: *Septolinæ*, **141**: *Trachylinæ*, **144**: *Aurelia*, 160, 161, **162**: Sea-anemone, 179: *Hormiphora*, **204**: *Dicyemidæ*, 217, **218**: *Rhopalura*, **219**: *Planaria*, 225: Liver-Fluke, 229, **230**: *Tænia*, **236**: Platyhelminthes, 256: Nemertinea, **272**, 273; *Ascaris*, 280: Nematoda, 286, **287**: Chætognatha, **295**: *Brachionus rubens*, 302: Rotifera, 309: *Bugula*, **317**: Ectoprocta, 325: *Phoronis*, 329, **330**: Brachiopoda, **341**: *Asterina*, 358, **359**: Sea-urchin, 368: Sea-cucumber, 372: *Antedon*, 377, **398**: Echinodermata, 396, **397**: *Nereis*, 413, **414**, **415**: *Lumbricus*, 425, **426**: Chætopoda, 442: Gephyrea, 459, **460**: *Hirudo*, 475: Hirudinea, **479**: *Apus*, **496**: *Astacus*, **515**: Crustacea, 551: *Peripatus*, 562, 563, **564**, **565**: Myriapoda, **570**: *Periplaneta*, **580**: Scorpion, **610**: *Anodonta*, **643**: Pelecypoda, 658: Amphineura, 668: Gastropoda, 698: Scaphopoda, 706: Cephalopoda, 744, **755**
Devonian, 7
Diastylis, 524, 543
Dibranchiata, 736*, 737, 738, 740, 743, 744
Diceras, 651
Dichyocysta, **86**
Dicyema, 216, **217**, **218**
Dicyemidæ, 216, **217**
Didinium, **85**
DIDYMIUM DIFFORME, 61, **62**
Didymograptus, **155**
Differentiation, 21*
Difflugia, **48**
Digenetica, 238*, 250, 253, 256
Digestion, intracellular, 31
Digestive glands, 31
Digestive system, 30
Digestive system, of *Paramœcium*, 86: *Aurelia*, **157**, 158, **159**: Sea-anemone, 174, **175**: *Hormiphora*, **199**, 200, **201**: *Planaria*, 222, **223**: Liver-Fluke, 227: Platyhelminthes, 250, **251**, **252**: Nemertinea, **269**: *Ascaris*, 278, **279**: Nematoda, 283: Chætognatha, **293**: *Brachionus rubens*, **300**, 301: Rotifera, 307: *Bugula*, **315**, 316: Ectoprocta, 323: Endoproeta, 326: *Phoronis*, **329**: *Magellania*, **334**: *Asterias*, **353**: Sea-urchin, **367**: Sea-cucumber, **371**, 372: *Antedon*, 375: Echinodermata, 394: *Nereis*, 406, **407**: *Lumbricus*, **420**: Chætopoda, **436**: *Sipunculus*, 452, **453**: Gephyrea, 457: *Hirudo*, 468, **469**: Hirudinea, 476: *Apus*, 489, **490**: *Astacus*, **506**: Crustacea, 547: *Peripatus*, **561**: Myriapoda, 569: *Periplaneta*, **576**: Insecta, **592**: Scorpion, 607, **608**: Arachnida, 618: *Anodonta*, **636**: Pelecypoda, 655: Amphineura, 665: *Triton*, 676, **677**: Gastropoda, 692: Scaphopoda, 706: *Sepia*, 712, **713**, **714**, **715**: *Nautilus*, 730, **731**: Cephalopoda, 743
Dimorpha, **66**, 67
Dimorphic zooids, of Ciliata, 89
Dimorphism, sexual, 38*
Dinobryon, **66**
Dinoflagellata, definition, 65: Characteristic features, **73**
Dinophilea, **310**
Dinophilus, 482
Diœcious, 38
Diophrys, 83
Diphyes, 152, 153
Diplomita, **66**
Diplonephridia, 439*
Diplopoda, 567, 569, 570
Diplozoon, 258
Diptera, 585, 589, 596, 598, 602, 605
Directive mesenteries, of Sea-anemone, 176
Discina, 337, 339
Discoidal segmentation, 610
Discomedusæ, 164*, 169, 170
Discorbina, **53**
Discosoma, 195, 197
Dissepiments, 192*
Distinctive characters—See Classification
DISTOMUM HEPATICUM, 226: General features, **226**: Body-wall, 226, **227**: Digestive system, 227: Water-vessels, 227: Nervous system, 228: Reproductive organs, **228**, **229**: Development, 229, **230**: Systematic position, 238
Distomum hepaticum, 265
D. rathousii, 265
D. sinense, 265
Distribution, 8: of Sponges, 113: Hydrocorallinæ, 147: Scyphozoa, 171; Actinozoa, 196: Ctenophora, 211: Platyhelminthes, 263: Ectoprocta, 326: Brachiopoda, 342: Gephyrea, 461: Hirudinea, 481: Onychophora, 566: Pelecypoda, 661: Amphineura, 670: Gastropoda, 704: Cephalopoda, 749
Distribution, geographical, 8
Distribution, geological, 8: of Sponges, 113: Corals, 197: Brachiopoda, 342: Chætopoda, 447: Insecta, 604: Arachnida, 624: Cephalopoda, 749
Distribution, vertical, 8
Dochmius duodenalis, **284**
Docoglossa, 683
Doctrine of Descent, 6

Dollingeria, **66**
Donax, 657
Doris, 684, **687**, 691
Doris (*Archidoris*) tuberculata, **687**
Dorsal cirri, of *Antedon*, 373
Dorsal organ, of *Apus*, 485
Dorsal pores, of Earthworm, 418
Dracunculus, 283, 289
Dragon flies, 585
Drepanidium, 78
Drilophaga, 309
Dromia, 524, 555
Dytiscus, 596

E

Ear, 37
Ear-shells, 683
Earthworm—See *Lumbricus*
Earthworms, 403
Earwigs, 584
Ecdyses, of *Apus*, 497

Ambulacral system, 367 : Ovoid gland, 367 : Enteric canal, 367 : Cœlome, 368 : Blood-vascular system. 368 : Reproductive organs, 368 : Development, 368 : Systematic position, 381
Echiurus, **456**, 458, **459**, **460**
Ectoderm, 21*—See Body-wall.
Ectonephridia, 439*
Ectoprocta, 320*, 321 : Structure of body-wall, 323 : Alimentary canal, 323 : Nervous system, 324 : Nephridia, 324 : Avicularia, 324 : Vibracula, 324 : Reproduction and development, 325 : Ethology and distribution, 326
Edwardsia, 185, **187**, 188, 189
Eggs—See Development
Eimeria, **78**
Elasipoda, 379, 393
Eledone moschata, 744
Elephant's tusk shells, 705
Elk-horn coral, **145**
Elytra, of Cockroach, 574 : Polychæta, **432** : Coleoptera, 587, 591

Holothuroidea—For references to this see under **Echinoidea**, p. 763.

Ambulacral system, 393 : Blood-vascular system, 394 : Enteric canal, 394 : Nervous system, 395 : Sexes, 395 : Development and metamorphosis, 396 : Echinopædium, 396 : Ethology, &c., 399 : Self-mutilation and regeneration, 400 : Affinities, 401
Echinoidea, example, 363 : Distinctive characters and classification, 379 : Apical system, 384 : Modifications of form, 387 : Dermal branchiæ, 393 : Stewart's organs, 393 : Ambulacral system, 393 : Enteric canal, 394 : Nervous system, 395 : Reproductive organs, 395 : Development, 398 : Holothuroidea, example, 369 : Distinctive characters and classification, 379 : Modifications of form, 390 : Ambulacral system, 393 : Blood-vascular system, 394 : Enteric canal, 394 : Respiratory trees, 394 : Cuvieran organs, 394 : Nervous system, 395 : Reproductive organs, 395 : Development and metamorphosis, 398 : Ethology, 399
Echinopædium, 396
Echinorhynchus, 289, **290**, **291**, **292**
Echinus, 363 : General external features, 363, **364** : Corona, 364, 365 : Aristotle's lantern, 366 : Nervous system, 367 :

312, 320*, 326 : Vestibule, 326 : Nephridia, 326 : Cloaca, 327 : Ganglion, 327 : Testes and ovaries, 327 : Foot-gland, 327 : Development, 327 : Relationships, 328
Endoskeleton, 29
Endosternite, 606, 618
Enteric canal—See Digestive system
Enterocœle, 359
Entomostraca, 521, 547, 548, 551
Entovalva, 661
Environment, 9*
Eocene, 7
Eolis, 684, 691, 693
Epeira diadema, **615**
Ephelota, **91**, 92
Ephemera, **584**, 592
Ephippium, 551
Ephyra, 171
Ephyrula, of *Aurelia*, 161*, **162**
Epiblast, 21*
Epicranium*, 572
Epidermis, 22, 29—See Body-wall
Epimerite of Gregarinida, 77
Epipharynx, 592
Epiphragm, 686
Epiphysis, of Sea-urchin, 366
Epipodite, 501*
Epipodium, 688
Epistoma, of *Astacus*, 499

Dermal cortex, 102*, 110
Dermal pores, 347
Dermaptera, 587
Desmoscolecidæ, 296
Desmoscolex, 297
Desmospongiæ, 103*
Deutomerite of *Gregarina*, 77
Development, of *Sycon*, 113, **114** : Sponges, 115 : *Obelia*, 129, **130** : *Septolinæ*, **141** : *Trachylinæ*, **144** : *Aurelia*, 160, 161, **162** : Sea-anemone, 179 : *Hormiphora*, **204** : *Dicyemidæ*, 217, **218** : *Rhopalura*, **219** : *Planaria*, 225 : Liver-Fluke, 229, **230** : *Tænia*, **236** : Platyhelminthes, 256 : Nemertinea, **272**, 273 ; *Ascaris*, 280 : Nematoda, 286, **287** : Chætognatha, **295** : *Brachionus rubens*, 302 : Rotifera, 309 : *Bugula*, **317** : Ectoprocta, 325 : *Phoronis*, 329, **330** : Brachiopoda, **341** : *Asterina*, 358, **359** : Sea-urchin, 368 : Sea-cucumber, 372 : *Antedon*, 377, **398** : Echinodermata, [illegible] *Nereis* 413, **414**, **415** : *Lum-*

[illegible]

Diastylis, 524, 543
Dibranchiata, 736*, 737, 738, 740, 743, 744
Diceras, 651
Dichyocysta, **86**
Dicyema, 216, **217**, **218**
Dicyemidæ, 216, **217**
Didinium, **85**
DIDYMIUM DIFFORME, 61, **62**
Didymograptus, **155**
Differentiation, 21*
Difflugia, **48**
Digenetica, 238*, 250, 253, 256
Digestion, intracellular, 31
Digestive glands, 31
Digestive system, 30
Digestive system, of *Paramœcium*, 86 : *Aurelia*, **157**, 158, **159** : Sea-anemone, 174, **175** : *Hormiphora*, **199**, 200, **201** : *Planaria*, 222, **223** : Liver-Fluke, 227 : Platyhelminthes, 250, **251**, **252** : Nemertinea, **269** : *Ascaris*, 278, **279** : Nematoda, 283 : Chætognatha, **293** : *Brachionus rubens*, **300**, 301 : Rotifera, 307 : *Bugula*, **315**, 316 : Ectoprocta, 323 : Endoprocta, 326 : *Phoronis*, **329** : *Magellania*, **334** : *Asterias*, **353** : Sea-urchin, **367** : Sea-cucumber, **371**, **372** : *Antedon*, 375 : Echinodermata, 394 : *Nereis*, 406, **407** : *Lumbricus*, **420** : Chætopoda, **436** : *Sipunculus*, 452, **453** : Gephyrea, 457 : *Hirudo*, 468, **469** : Hirudinea, 476 : *Apus*, 489, **490** : *Astacus*, **506** : Crustacea, 547 : *Peripatus*, **561** : Myriapoda, 569 : *Periplaneta*, **576** : Insecta, **592** : Scorpion, 607, **608** : Arachnida, 618 : *Anodonta*, **636** : Pelecypoda, 655 : Amphineura, 665 : *Triton*, 676, **677** : Gastropoda, 692 : Scaphopoda, 706 : *Sepia*, 712, **713**, **714**, **715** : *Nautilus*, 730, **731** : Cephalopoda, 743
Dimorpha, **66**, 67
Dimorphic zooids, of Ciliata, 89
Dimorphism, sexual, 38*
Dinobryon, **66**
Dinoflagellata, definition, 65 : Characteristic features, **73**
Dinophilea, **310**
Dinophilus, 482
Diœcious, 38
Diophrys, 83
Diphyes, 152, 153
Diplomita, **66**
[illegible] 439*

[illegible]

Dissepiments, 192*
Distinctive characters—See Classification
DISTOMUM HEPATICUM, 226 : General features, **226** : Body-wall, 226, **227** : Digestive system, 227 : Water-vessels, 227 : Nervous system, 228 : Reproductive organs, **228**, **229** : Development, 229, **230** : Systematic position, 238
Distomum hepaticum, 265
D. rathousii, 265
D. sinense, 265
Distribution, 8 : of Sponges, 113 : Hydrocorallinæ, 147 : Scyphozoa, 171 ; Actinozoa, 196 : Ctenophora, 211 : Platyhelminthes, 263 : Ectoprocta, 326 : Brachiopoda, 342 : Gephyrea, 461 : Hirudinea, 481 : Onychophora, 566 : Pelecypoda, 661 : Amphineura, 670 : Gastropoda, 704 : Cephalopoda, 749
Distribution, geographical, 8
Distribution, geological, 8 : of Sponges, 113 : Corals, 197 : Brachiopoda, 342 : Chætopoda, 447 : Insecta, 604 : Arachnida, 624 : Cephalopoda, 749
Distribution, vertical, 8
Dochmius duodenalis, **284**
Docoglossa, 683
Doctrine of Descent, 6

Dollingeria, **66**
Donax, 657
Doris, 684, **687**, 691
Doris (*Archidoris*) tuberculata, **687**
Dorsal cirri, of *Antedon*, 373
Dorsal organ, of *Apus*, 485
Dorsal pores, of Earthworm, 418
Dracunculus, 283, 289
Dragon flies, 585
Drepanidium, 78
Drilophaga, 309
Dromia, 524, 555
Dytiscus, 596

E

Ear, 37
Ear-shells, 683
Earthworm—See *Lumbricus*
Earthworms, 403
Earwigs, 584
Ecdyses, of *Apus*, 497
Echinococcus, **246**, 261, 262
Echinocyamus pusillus, 398
Echinoderidæ, 296, 297
Echinodermata, 346 : Examples, 346, 363, 369, 373 : Distinctive characters and classification, 377 : Systematic position of examples, 380 : General organisation, 381 : General form and symmetry, 381 : Systems of plates, 384 : Modifications of form, 384 : Cœlome, 392 : Ambulacral system, 393 : Blood-vascular system, 394 : Enteric canal, 394 : Nervous system, 395 : Sexes, 395 : Development and metamorphosis, 396 : Echinopædium, 396 : Ethology, &c., 399 : Self-mutilation and regeneration, 400 : Affinities, 401
Echinoidea, example, 363 : Distinctive characters and classification, 379 : Apical system, 384 : Modifications of form, 387 : Dermal branchiæ, 393 : Stewart's organs, 393 : Ambulacral system, 393 : Enteric canal, 394 : Nervous system, 395 : Reproductive organs, 395 : Development, 398 : Holothuroidea, example, 369 : Distinctive characters and classification, 379 : Modifications of form, 390 : Ambulacral system, 393 : Blood-vascular system, 394 : Enteric canal, 394 : Respiratory trees, 394 : Cuvieran organs, 394 : Nervous system, 395 : Reproductive organs, 395 : Development and metamorphosis, 398 : Ethology, 399
Echinopædium, 396
Echinorhynchus, 289, **290**, **291**, **292**
Echinus, 363 : General external features, 363, **364** : Corona, 364, 365 : Aristotle's lantern, 366 : Nervous system, 367 : Ambulacral system, 367 : Ovoid gland, 367 : Enteric canal, 367 : Cœlome, 368 : Blood-vascular system, 368 : Reproductive organs, 368 : Development, 368 : Systematic position, 381
Echiurus, **456**, 458, **459**, **460**
Ectoderm, 21*—See Body-wall.
Ectonephridia, 439*
Ectoprocta, 320*, 321 : Structure of body-wall, 323 : Alimentary canal, 323 : Nervous system, 324 : Nephridia, 324 : Avicularia, 324 : Vibracula, 324 : Reproduction and development, 325 : Ethology and distribution, 326
Edwardsia, 185, **187**, 188, 189
Eggs—See Development
Eimeria, **78**
Elasipoda, 379, 393
Eledone moschata, 744
Elephant's tusk shells, 705
Elk-horn coral, **145**
Elytra, of Cockroach, 574 : Polychæta, **432** : Coleoptera, 587, 591
Embryology, 3*—See Development
Empis, 595
Emulsions, 32
Endites, 488
Endoderm, 21*
Endoderm-disc, of *Astacus*, 516
Endoderm lamella, 126, 128*
Endophragmal system, of *Astacus*, 499
Endopodite, 500*
Endoprocta, 312, 320*, 326 : Vestibule, 326 : Nephridia, 326 : Cloaca, 327 : Ganglion, 327 : Testes and ovaries, 327 : Foot-gland, 327 : Development, 327 : Relationships, 328
Endoskeleton, 29
Endosternite, 606, 618
Enteric canal—See Digestive system
Enterocœle, 359
Entomostraca, 521, 547, 548, 551
Entovalva, 661
Environment, 9*
Eocene, 7
Eolis, 684, 691, 693
Epeira diadema, **615**
Ephelota, **91**, 92
Ephemera, **584**, 592
Ephippium, 551
Ephyra, 171
Ephyrula, of *Aurelia*, 161*, **162**
Epiblast, 21*
Epicranium*, 572
Epidermis, 22, 29—See Body-wall
Epimerite of Gregarinida, 77
Epipharynx, 592
Epiphragm, 686
Epiphysis, of Sea-urchin, 366
Epipodite, 501*
Epipodium, 688
Epistoma, of *Astacus*, 499

Epistome, 312, 322, **324**, 328, **329**
Epistylis plicatilis, 83, **85**
Epitheca, 192, **193**
Epithelia, **22***: Non-stratified, 22*: Stratified, 22*
Epithelium, enteric, 31
Ergasilus, 522, 530, **531**
Errantia, 427
Estheria, 521, **526**
Ethiopian, 9
Ethology, 9: of Platyhelminthes, 263: Rotifera, 309: Ectoprocta, 326: Echinodermata, 399: Chætopoda, 447: Hirudinea, 480: Crustacea, 554: Insecta, 662: Arachnida, 623: Pelecypoda, 661: Amphineura, 670: Gastropoda, 704
Euchlanis, 304
Euchlora, **209**
Eucirripedia, 522*, 532
Eucope, development, **141**
Eucopepoda, 522*, 528, 530
Eudendrium, **130**
EUGLENA VIRIDIS, 63, **64**: Systematic position, 65
Eulamellibranchiata, 647*, 648, 662
Euphausia, 523, **549**, 553
Euphyllopoda, 521, 526, 550, 552
Euplectella, 112
Eupomatus, 445
Euryalida, 378
Eurypterida, 613*, 617, **619**
EUSCORPIO—See BUTHUS
Euscorpius italicus, 610, 622, 623
Euspongia, **106**
Euthyneura, 684, 691, 695, 697
Evolution, 6
Examples, of Rhizopoda, 44: Mastigophora, 63: Sporozoa, 75: Infusoria, 79: Porifera, 96: Hydrozoa, 118: Scyphozoa, 156: Actinozoa, 172: Ctenophora, 198: Platyhelminthes, 222, 226, 231: Nematoda, 275: Rotifera, 299: Polyzoa, 314: Brachiopoda, 331: Asteroidea, 346, 356: Echinoidea, 363: Crinoidea, 373: Chætopoda, 404, 417: Gephyrea, 451; Crustacea, 484, 498: Insecta, 571: Arachnida, 604: Pelecypoda, 631: Gastropoda, 671: Cephalopoda, 708, 725
Excretion, 14, 35
Excretory system, of Septolinæ, 138: *Planaria*, **223**, 224: Liver-Fluke, 227: *Tænia*, **234**: Platyhelminthes, **253**: Nemertinea, 270, **271**: *Ascaris*, **279**: *Echinorhynchus*, 292: *Brachionus rubens*, **300**, 301: Rotifera, 308: Ectoprocta, 324: Endoprocta, 326: *Phoronis*, 328: *Magellania*, 337: Brachiopoda, 340: *Nereis*, 411, **412**: *Lumbricus*, **423**: Chætopoda, 440: *Sipunculus*, **453**, 454: Gephyrea, **458**: *Hirudo*, 470, **471**: Hirudinea, 477: *Apus*, 492: *Astacus*, 509, **510**: Crustacea, 550: *Peripatus*, 562: *Periplaneta*, 577: Insecta, 591, **592**: Scorpion, 607: Arachnida, 619: *Anodonta*, **637**, 640: Pelecypoda, 656: Amphineura, 668, **669**: *Triton*, 679: Gastropoda, 697: Scaphopoda, 706: *Sepia*, **722**: *Nautilus*, 732: Cephalopoda, 744
Exhalant siphon, 632
Exites, 489
Exopodite, 500*
Exoskeleton, 29*—See Body-wall
External features, of *Sycon*, 96, **97**: of Porifera, 105, **106**, **107**: *Obelia*, 119, **120**: *Aurelia*, 156, **157**: Sea anemone, 172, **173**: Actinozoa, 183: *Hormiphora*, **198**: *Planaria* and *Dendrocœlum*, 222: Liver-Fluke, **226**: *Tænia solium*, 231, **232**: Platyhelminthes, 239: Nemertinea, 268: *Ascaris lumbricoides*, 275, **276**: Nematoda, 283: *Echinorhynchus*, **290**: Chætognatha, **293**: *Brachionus rubens*, 299, **300**: Rotifera, 304, **305**, 306, **307**: *Bugula avicularia*, 314, **315**: Ectoprocta, 321, **322**, **323**: Endoprocta, 326: *Phoronis*, **328**: *Magellania*, 331, **332**: Brachiopoda, 338, **339**: *Asterias rubens*, 346, **347**: *Anthenea flavescens*, 356, **357**: Sea-urchin, 363, **364**: Sea-cucumber, **369**: *Antedon rosacea*, **373**: Echinodermata, 381: Asteroidea, 384: Ophiuroidea, **386**: Echinoidea, 387: Holothuroidea, 390: Crinoidea, **391**: *Nereis*, **404**: *Lumbricus*, 417, **418**: Chætopoda, **429**: *Sipunculus nudus*, **451**: Gephyrea, 455: Archi-annelida, **462**: *Hirudo*, 465, **466**: Hirudinea, 476: *Apus*, **485**: *Astacus*, 498, **499**: Crustacea, 525, 547: *Peripatus*, 559, **560**: Myriapoda, **567**: *Periplaneta*, 571, **572**: Insecta, 588: Scorpion, **605**: Arachnida, 613: *Anodonta*, 631, **632**: Pelecypoda, 647: Amphineura, 663, **664**, **665**: *Triton*, 671, **672**, **673**: Gastropoda, **685**: Scaphopoda, 705: *Sepia*, 708, **709**: *Nautilus*, 725, **726**, **727**: Cephalopoda, **737**
Exumbrella, 124, 156*
Eyes, 37: of Euglena, 64: Medusæ, 133: Planaria, 222: Platyhelminthes, 253: Nemertinea, 272: Nematoda, 285: Chætognatha, 295: Brachionus, 302: Rotifera, 308: Dinophilus, 310: Brachiopoda, 341: Asterias, 348: Sea-urchin, 365: Nereis, 410, **411**: Chætopoda, 438: Hirudo, 472, **473**: Apus, 494, **495**: Astacus, 513; Crustacea, 551: Periplaneta, 579: Insecta, **596**: Arachnida, 621, **622**, **623**: Pelecypoda, 658, **659**: *Chiton*, 668: *Triton*, **682**: Gastropoda, 695, **696**: Sepia, **720**: Nautilus, 734

F

FABRICIA, 438
Facial suture, 558*
Falciform young of *Monocystis*, 76
Family, 4*
Fat, **23***
Fat body, of *Periplaneta*, 576
Fauna, 8
Feather-star—See *Antedon rosacea*
Femur, of Cockroach, 574
Fenestræ, of *Periplaneta*, 572
Fenja, 188, **189**, Addenda
Ferment, 12
Fibres, nerve, 27, **28**
Fibro-cartilage, 24*, **25**
Filibranchiata, 646*, 648, 649, 662
Fimbriæ, of Fresh-water Mussels, 632
Fire-flies, 596
Fission, 14, 38*, 44, 73
Fissurella, 694
Fixed cheek, 558*
Flabellum, 183, 192, **193**, 489
Flagellata, 65* : Cell-body, **65** : Flagella, 66, 67 : Bilateral symmetry, 67 : Modes of nutrition, 67 : Skeleton, 68 : Colonies, 68 : Asexual multiplication, 69 : Sexual reproduction, 70
Flagellate canals, of Sponges, **98**, **99**, 100*, 109
Flagellate cells, **98**, **99**, 100*
Flagellula, 51, 62, 64
Flagellum, 21*
Flagellum, of *Astacus*, 502
Flame-cells, 224*, **253**
Flat-worms—See Platyhelminthes
Fleas, 585, 586, 591, 602
Floscularia, 303, **305**, 306
Flustra, 320
Folliculina, **85**
Food vacuole of *Paramœcium*, 81
Foot, of *Anodonta*, **632** : Pelecypoda, 652 : Amphineura, 664, **665** : *Triton*, **674**, 675 : *Sepia*, **709**, 710 : *Nautilus*, **727** : Cephalopoda, **738**
Foot-gland, 327
Foraminifera, 46* : General structure, **50**, **51** : Skeleton, **51**, **52**, **53** : Protoplasm, **54** : Dimorphism, 55 : Reproduction, 55 : Distribution, 55
Fossettes, 541
Fossula, 197
Fresh-water Crayfish, 498
Fresh-water Mussel—See *Anodonta*
Fresh-water Sponges, 116
Fresh-water Worms, 403
Frondicularia, **53**
Fulcrum (of Rotifera), 307
Fungia, 192
Funiculus, 316, 323
Funnel, 748
Funnel folds, 746

G

GALEA, 573
Galeodes, 612, **614**
Galls, 599
Gall-flies, 581
Gall-insects, 598
Gametes of Flagellata, 70
Gammarus, 524, 543, **544**
Gamobium, 130
Gastral cortex, 102*, 110
Gastric filaments, of *Aurelia*, 160
Gastric mill, 547
Gastric mill, of *Astacus*, 507
Gastric ostium, 101*
Gastric ridges, of *Aurelia*, 161
Gastrolith, 507
Gastrophilus equi, **586**
Gastropoda, Example, 671 : Distinctive characters and classification, 682 : Systematic position of example, 685 : General organisation, 685 : External features, symmetry, &c., 685 : Shell, 686 : Foot, 687 : Head, 689 : Mantle, 689 : Respiratory organs, 690 : Digestive organs, 692 : Heart, 693 : Nervous system, 693 : Organs of special sense, 695 : Nephridia, 697 : Reproduction, 697 : Development, 698 ; Ethology and distribution, 704 : Relationships, 705 : Appendix, 705
Gastropores, of *Millepora*, **145**
Gastrotricha, **311**, 312
Gastrula, **21**, 39
Gastrulation, 20*
Gelasimus, **541**, 556
Gemmules, 112
Genæ, 572*
Generic, 1
Genital operculum, 606
Genital system—SeeReproductive system
Geological distribution—See Distribution, geological
Gephyrea, 450 : Example, 451 : Distinctive characters and classification, 454 : Systematic position of the examples, 455 : General organisation, 455 : Body-wall, 456 : Cœlome, 456 : Alimentary canal, 457 : Vascular system, 457 : Nervous system, 457 : Nephridia, 458 : Reproductive organs, 458 : Sexual dimorphism, 458 : Development, 459 : Distribution, affinities, &c., 461
Germinal bands, of *Clepsine*, 479 : of *Peripatus*, 564
Germinal groove, 581
Germinal layers, 21*
Germinal spot, **18***, 28
Germinal vesicle, **18***, 28
Giant clam, 660
Giant fibres, 438
Giant nerve-cells, 438

Gill-cover, of *Astacus*, 498
Gills, 33*—See Respiration
Gizzard, 30
Glabella, 558*
Glands, 22
Glands, Multicellular, **23*** : Unicellular, 22 : Ducts, 23
Glass-crab, 553
Glass-rope sponge, 112, 116
Glenodinium, **74**
Globigerina, 53, **54**
Glochidium, 644
Glossocodon, **142**
Glow-worms, 596
Glycera, 434
Glyceridæ, 436
Gnathobase, 489
Gnathobdellida, 476, 480
Gnats. 586
Goblet-shaped bodies, 423
Goblet-shaped organs, of Leech, 473
Gonads—See Reproductive system
Gonotheca, of *Obelia*, 119*, **120**
Gordioidea, 282*, 283, 285
Gordius, 283, **284**, **286**
Gorgonacea, 182, 191
Gorgonia, 184, **191**
Granule glands, 254, 255
Graptolithida, 132*, 154, **155**
Grasshoppers, 584
Green gland, of *Astacus*, 509
Gregarina, **77**
Gregarina blattarum, **77**
Gregarina dujardini, **77**
Gregarina gigantea, **77**
Gregarinida, characteristic features, 77
Gregarinida, definition, 76
Gromia, 51, **52**
Guard-polypes, 138*
Gullet, 30—See Digestive organs
Gunda segmentata, 240, **241**
Gustatory organ, 37
Gymnoblastea, 133*
Gymnolæmata, 320
Gyractis, 187
Gyrodactylidæ, 243
Gyrodactylus, **243**, 258

H

HABITS—See Ethology
Hæmadipsa, 476, 481
Hæmatochrome, 49, 64
Hæmatococcus, **67**
Hæmocœle, of Crustacea, 547* : *Peripatus*, 561 : Insecta, 591
Hæmocyanin, 513
Hæmoglobin, 28, 34
Hæmopsis vorax, 480
Halcampoides, 188
Haliotis, 693, 694
Halistemma, **147**
Halistemma tergestinum, **148**
Halteres, 591
Hamingia, 459
Hartea, 182, 183, **184**, 190
Harvest-men, 612, 615
Hastigerina, 54
Haversian canals, 25*, **26**
Head-lobes, of *Astacus*, 516
Heart, 34
Heart—See Vascular system
Hectocotylisation, 709, 728
Heliozoa, 46* : General structure, **55** : Colonies, 56 : Skeleton, **56**, **57** : Reproduction, 58 : Conjugation
Heliopora, 182, 195, 196
Helix, 697, 699
Helix nemoralis, **690**
Hemipneustes radiatus, **390**
Hemiptera, 585, 589, 605
Hepato-pancreas, 32
Hermaphrodite, 37
Hermit-crabs, **539**, 556
Hermit-crabs and Hydractinia, 134, 135
Hesionida, 436
Heterocœla, 103*
Heterocyemidæ, 216, 218
Heterogamy, 39*, 287
Heterogeny, 259*, 266
Heteromita, **67**
Heteromyaria, 649
Heteropoda, 684, 687, 688
Heterotrichous, 83
Hexacanth embryo, of *Tænia*, **236** : Cestodes, 259
Hexactinellida, 103*, 116
Hexactiniæ, 183, 187
Hexarthra, 304, 306, **307**, 310
Hinge-ligament, 633
Hinge-line, 633
Hinge-teeth, 634, 651
Hippa, 523
Hippurites, 651, **652**
Hirudinea, 465 : Example, 465 : Distinctive characters and classification, 474 : General organisation, 476 : Form and size, 476 : Proboscis, 476 : Enteric canal, 476 : Blood-vessels, 477 : Respiratory organs, 477 : Nephridia, 477 : Nervous system, 478 : Reproductive organs, 478 : Development, 479 : Habits, distribution, &c., 480
Hirudo, 476, 477, 478
HIRUDO MEDICINALIS, 465 : External characters, 465, **466** : Body-wall, 467 : Muscular system, 467, **468** : Alimentary organs, **468**, **469** : Excretory system, 470, **471** : Vascular system, 471, **472** : Nervous system, 472 : Sense-organs, 472, **473** : Reproductive organs, 473 : Development, 474 : Systematic position, 476

HIRUDO QUINQUESTRIATA—See H. MEDICINALIS
Hirudo sanguisuga, 480
Histology, 3*
Histriodrilidæ, 462, 463
Holarctic, 6
Holoblastic, 20*
Holophytic, 49*
Holothuria—See Sea-cucumber
Holothurian—See *Colochirus*
Holotrichous, 83
Holozoic, 49*
Homalogaster, **242**
Homocœla, 103*
Hoplonemertea, **270**
HORMIPHORA PLUMOSA, 198: External characters, **198**: Enteric system, **199**, 200, **201**: Cell-layers, 202: Nervous system, **203**: Sense-organs, **203**: Reproductive organs, 203: Development, **204**, **205**, **206**, 207: Systematic position, 208
House-flies, 586
Hyalonema, 112, 116
Hybrids, 2
Hydatids, 261, **262**, 266
Hydatina, 304, **305**, 306
Hydra, **136**, 137, 142, 155
Hydractinia, 134, **135**, 137, 155
Hydranths, of *Obelia*, 119*, **120**, **122**
Hydrocœle, 360
Hydrocorallina, 132*, 145, 155
Hydrocorallinæ, distribution, 147
Hydroids, naked-budded, 133*: covered-budded, 133*
Hydrophilus, **601**
Hydrophyllia, of Halistemma, 149
Hydrotheca, of *Obelia*, 119*, **120**
Hydrozoa, 118: Example, 118: General structure and classification, 130: Alternation of generations, 131: General remarks on, 155
Hydrula, 129, **130**, 141*, 144
Hymenoptera, 587, 589, 593, 594, 596, 602, 605
Hypodermic impregnation, 309, 479
Hypopharynx, 589
Hypostome, of *Obelia*, 119*
Hypotrichous, 83

I

ICHNEUMONS, 587
Ichthyophthirius, 93
Idmonea, 320
Illoricata, 304*
Imaginal discs, 602
Impregnation, 18*, **19**
Impregnation, hypodermic, 309
Inarticulata, 337*: Shell, 338
Incurrent canals, of Sponges, **98**, **99**, 108
Incus (of Rotifera), 307
Individual differences, in *Nereis dumerilii*, 413
Individual of the first order, 156*
Individual of the second order, 156*
Individual of the third order, 156*
Individual variations, 2, 104
Individuation, in Hydrozoa, 155
Inermia, 455, 457, 461
Infundibula, of *Aurelia*, 161
Infusoria, Definition, 44: Example, 79: Classification, 82: Systematic position of example, 82
Infusoriform embryos, of Dicyemidæ, 217, **218**
Inhalant pores, 97, 108
Inhalant siphon, 632
Ink-sac, of *Sepia*, 714
Insecta, 484, 577: Example, 577: Distinctive characters and classification, 583: Systematic position of the example, 587: General organisation, 588: Exoskeleton, 588: Head, 588: Thorax, 588: Abdomen, 588: Appendages of head, 588: Appendages of thorax, 590: Hæmocœle, 591: Fat body, 592: Digestive system, 592: Malpighian tubes, 593: Tracheal system, 593: Blood-vascular system, 594: Nervous system, 594: Organs of special sense, 595: Production of sounds, 597: Reproductive organs, 597: Eggs, 598: Development, 599: Metamorphosis, 600: Mode of life, 602: Distribution in time, 604
Integripalliata, 647*
Integripalliate, 650
Integument—See Body-wall
Inter-filamentar junctions, 637
Inter-lamellar junctions, 637
Interstitial cells, of *Obelia*, 122
Introvert, of Polyzoa, 322: *Sipunculus*, **451**: Gephyrea, 455: Triton, **674**: Gastropoda, 689
Invagination, 20*
Iris, 37, 720
Isomyaria, 649
Isopoda, 524*, 543, 544, 545, 551
Isopteryx, 597
Isopteryx apicalis, 597

J

JAMS, 30
Jelly-fish, Common (Aurelia aurita), 156
Jelly-fishes, 118
Jurassic, 7

K

KARYOKINESIS, 16, **17**
Keber's organ, 640
Kidneys—See Excretory system
King-Crabs, 612, 617
Kingdom, 3
Klossia, 78

L

LABIAL PALPI, of Pelecypoda, 636
Labial palps, 573
Labium, 573
Labrum, 572
Labrum, of *Astacus*, 499 : of Scorpion, 606
Labyrinthula, **49**
Labyrinthulidea, 46*, **48**, **49**
Lacinia, 573
Lacrymaria, **85**
Lacteals, 32
Lacunæ (bone), **25**
Lagena, **53**
Lamellæ (of bone), 25
Lampetia, **209**
Land-snails, 684
Laomedea, **130**
Lappets, of Sea-anemone, 174
Larva, of Desor, 273
Larval membranes, of *Periplaneta*, 581
Larval organ, 361
Lateral organs, of Nemerteans, 271
Latreillia, **541**
Laurentian, 7
Laurer's canal, 256
Leaf-insects, 584
Leda, 646
Lens, 37—See Eye
Lepas, 522, 532, **534**, **552**
Lepas anatifera, **533**, **534**
Lepidoptera, 586, 589, 591, 598, 603, 605
Lepidurus—See *Apus*
Lepidurus kirkii, **486**
Lepisma, **583**, 584
Leptochone, 438
Leptodiscus, 74
Leptodora, 521, **527**
Leptolinæ, 131* : General structure, 132, 133, **134**, **135** : Perisarc, 133 : Medusæ, 133, **134**, **138** : Cœnosarc, 133 : Reproductive zooids, 138 : Development, 141
Leptomedusæ, 131*, **133**, 140
Leptostraca, 550
Lernæa, 522, 530, **531**
Lesteira, 530, **531**
Leucocytes, 28
Leucodore, 196
Lice, 585, 591, 602
Ligula, **247**, 267, 573, 589
Lima, 647, 653
Limax, **687**, 692
Limnæus, 695
Limnetis, **526**
Limnocnida, 155
Limnocodium, 155
Limpets, 671, 683, 685, 686, 691, [illegible]
Limulus, 612, **618**, **621**, 622, 627, 628
Lingua, 592
Lingual ribbon, 676
Linguatulida, 625
Lingula, 337, **339**, **340**
Lithite, 125
Lithites, of *Aurelia*, **160***
Lithocircus annularis, **58**
Lithocysts, **125**, 133
Liver, 32
Liver-Fluke—See *Distomum hepaticum*
Liver-pancreas, 32
Lobata, 208*, 209, **210**
Lobosa, 46*, **47** [illegible] General structure, **46**, **47*** : Skeleton [illegible] **47**
Lobsters, 537, 5[illegible]
Locusta, **584**
Locusts, 584
Loligo, **738**, 742, **745**, **747**, **748**, **749**
Loligo vulgaris, **738**
Lophomonas, 84, **85**
Lophophore, 312, 322, 324, 333, 339
Lophopus, **324**
Lorica, of Ciliata, 87 : of Flagellata, 68
Loricata, 304*
Loxosoma, 320, 326, 327
Lucernaria, **166**, 172
Lucifer, 523, 553
Lucina, 654
Lumbricomorpha, 428
LUMBRICUS, 417 : General external features, **417** : Body-wall, 419 : Setæ, 417 : Setigerous sacs, 420 : Enteric canal, **420** : Vascular system, 421 : Nervous system, **422** : Organs of excretion, **423** : Reproductive organs, 423, **424** : Development, 425 : Systematic position, 428
Luminous organs, 596
Lung, 33* : of Scorpion, 608 : of Pulmonata, 691

M

MACROBDELLA VALDIVIANA, 476
Macrobiotus hufelandi, 626
Macrura, 523*, 537, 539
Madrepora, **194**
Madreporaria, 181*, 187, **185**, 192, **193**, **194**, 197
Madrepores, **194**, 195
Madreporic canal, 354, 367
Madreporite, of Starfish, 347 : of Sea-urchin, 365

MAGELLANIA, Shell, 331, **332**: Body, 333: Mantle-lobes, 333; Mantle-cavity, 333: Lophophore, 33[illegible], **335**: Food-groove, 333: Digestive organs, 334: Body-wall, 335: Muscular system, **335**: Cœlom, 336: Blood system, 336: Excretory organs, 337: Nervous system, 337: Reproductive organs, 337
Maia, 524
Malacobdella, 274
Malacostraca, 523*, 535, 547, 548, 551
Malleus (of Rotifera), 307
Malpighian tubes, 577
Malpighian tubes, of Scorpion, 607: of Arachnida, 619: of Tardigrada, 626
Mandibles—See Appendages
Mantidæ, 587
Mantle, of Anodonta, 632: Pelecypoda, 649: Amphineura, 664, 665: *Triton*, 675: Gastropoda, 689: Scaphopoda, 705: *Sepia*, 711: *Nautilus*, 729
Manubrium, of Medusa, 125: of *Obelia*, 119*, **120**
Marginal lappets, of *Aurelia*, 156*, **157**
Marginal sense-organs, **125**
Marginal tentacles, of *Aurelia*, 156*, **157**, **159**
Marine Annelids, 403
Mastax of Rotifera, 307, **308**
Mastigamœba, **66**, **67**
Mastigophora, 43*: Example, 63: Classification, 65: General organisation, 65, **66**: Systematic position of the example, 65
Maturation, 18*, **19**
Maxilla—See Appendages
Maxillary palp—See Appendages
Maxillipeds—See Appendages
May-flies, 585
Medulla of Paramœcium, 79
Medullary sheath, of Nerve-fibre, 27, **28**
Medusa-buds, of *Obelia*, 119, **120**
Medusæ, of *Obelia*, 124, **125**
Megagametes, of *Flagellata*, 71
Megalæsthetes, 668
Megalopa stage, 553
Megameres, of Ctenophora, **205**: of Polyclad, **257**
Meganucleus, of Ciliata, 84: of *Paramœcium*, 79
Megaspores, of Radiolaria, **61**
Megazooid, of *Vorticella*, **87**, 89
Meleagrina, 647, 661
Meleagrina margaritifera, 661
Melicerta, 303, **305**, 306
Melolontha, 594
Membranes, 22
Membranipora, 320
Mentum, 573
Meroblastic, 20*
Mesenteric filaments, of *Flabellum*, **193**: of Sea-anemone, 175
Mesenteries, of Sea-anemone, 174
Mesenteries, development of, in Sea-anemones, 179, **180**: Arrangement in Actinozoa, 185
Mesoblast, 21*
Mesoderm, 21*, 101, 102
Mesoderm bands, of *Periplaneta*, 581
Mesoglœa, 101*, 102: of *Obelia*, 121
Mesonephridia, 439*
Mesopodium, 675, 688
Mesothorax, 574
Mesotrochal, 445
Mesozoa, 216
Messmateism—See Commensalism
Metagenesis, 39*: of *Obelia*, 129: Leptolinæ, 141: Trachylinæ, 144: *Aurelia*, 161: Liver-Fluke, 230: *Tænia*, 236: Platyhelminthes, 259, 266: Nematoda, 286
Metameres, 41*, 403
Metamorphosis, of Trachylinæ, 144: Sea-anemone, 180: Platyhelminthes, 260: Nemertinea, 273: *Phoronis*, 331: *Asterina*, 361: *Antedon*, 377: Echinodermata, 396: Chætopoda, 445: *Apus*, 497: Crustacea, 552: Insecta, 600
Metamorphosis, retrogressive—See Degeneration
Metanauplius, 497
Metapodium, 675, 688
Metathorax, 574
Metazoa, 96
Micræsthetes, 668
Microgametes, of Flagellata, 71
Microgromia, **50**
Microhydra, 137, 155
Micromeres, of Ctenophora, **205**
Micromeres, of Polyclad, **257**
Micronucleus, of Ciliata, 84
Micronucleus, of *Paramœcium*, 79
Micropyle, 113
Micropyle, of Cephalópoda, 744
Microspores, of Radiolaria, **61**
Microstomum, 263
Microzooid of *Vorticella*, **87**, 89
Miescher's corpuscles, **79**
Miliola, **52**
Millepora, **145**
Millepora alcicornis, **145**
Millipedes, 567, 568
Minyas, **189**
Miocene, 7
Mites, 612, **616**, 619
Mitome, 15
Mitosis, 16*, **17**
Modiola, **649**
Mollusca, 631, 751
Molluscoida, 313
Molluscoida, mutual relationships of the classes, 343
Monocystis agilis, **75**
Monœcious, 37

Monogenetica, 238*, 250, 252, 253, 254, 256
Monomyaria, 649
Monosiga, **72**
Monotus, **240**
Monozoa, 238*
Morphology, 3
Morula, 20*
Mosquitoes, 586, 590
Mother-cyst, 262
Moths, 587
Mouth papillæ, 347*
Movable cheek, 558*
Mulberry body, 20*
Müller's larva, **258**
Multicilia, 84, **85**
Multiple fission, of *Euglena*, 64
Murex, 693, 696
Muscle, striated, 26*, **27** : non-striated, 26, **27**
Muscle processes, Hydra, **136**, 137
Muscles, 35
Muscular fibres of sponges, 102
Muscular system, of *Aurelia*, 160 : Sea-anemone, **174**, 175 : *Magellania*, **335** : Brachiopoda, 339 : *Hirudo*, 467, **468** : *Apus*, 489 : *Astacus*, 504, **505** : Crustacea, 547 : *Periplaneta*, **575** : *Anodonta*, 635 : Pelecypoda, 648
Muscular tissue, 26*, **27**
Mushroom coral, 192
Mussels, 631
Mya, 647
Mya arenaria, **649**
Mycetozoa, 43* : Example, 61, **62** : Sporangium, **62** : Capillitium, 62 : Spores, **62** : Flagellula, **62** : Plasmodium, 63 : General remarks, 63 : Protomyxa, 63
Myomeres, of *Apus*, 490
Myriapoda, 484
Myriapoda, 566 : Distinctive characters and classification, 566 : General organisation, 567 : External features, 567
Myriothela, **137**
Mysis, 523, **537**, 553
Mytilus, 646, 652, 654, 655, 656
Mytilus edulis, 648, **653**
Mytilus latus, 648
Myxidium lieberkühnii, **78**
Myxobolus mülleri, **78**
Myxospongiæ, 103*, 111, 115
Myxosporidea, definition, 76 : Characteristic features, **78**
Myzostoma, 448
Myzostomida, 448

N

NACRE, 635*
Naidomorpha, 428*
Nais, 446
Narcomedusæ, 132*
Natural History, 1*
Nauplius, **496**, 497*
Nausithöe, **169**
Nautiloids, 750
NAUTILUS POMPILIUS. Shell, 725, **726** : External characters of soft parts, 726 : Mantle and mantle-cavity, 72[illegible] : Enteric canal, 730 : Heart and circulation, 732 : Renal organs, 732 : Nervous system, 734 : Sense-organs, 734 : Reproductive organs, 735 : Systematic position, 737
Nebalia, 535, **536**
Neck, of cockroach, 573
Nectocalyx, 149*
Nekton, 8*
Nemathelminthes, 221, 275, 297
Nematocyst, 73, 79, 86, **123***
Nematoda, 275 : Example, 275, 281* : External characters, 283 : Body-wall, **283** : Enteric canal, 283 : Cœlome, 284 : Nervous system, 285 : Eye-spots, 285 : Reproductive organs, 285 : Development, 286, 287 : Life-history, 286
Nematogene, **217***
Nematoidea, 282*, 284, 285
Nemertinea, 273* : General features, **268–271** : Alimentary canal, 269 : Blood-vessels, 270, **271** : Excretory vessels, 270, **271** : Nervous system, **270** : Lateral organs, **269**, 271 : Eyes, 272 : Otocysts, 273 ; Reproductive system, 273 ; Development, 273
Neo-crinoidea, 380*
Neomenia, 663, **664**, **667**, **668**
Nephelis, 476, 477, **478**, 481
Nephridiopore, 411, 418
Nephridium, 403, 411*, 412, **423**, 440
Nephridium, provisional, 440
Nephrostome, 411, 423, 440
Nereidæ, 428, 447
NEREIS, External features, **404** : Enteric canal, 406 : Body-wall, 408 : Vascular system, 409 : Nervous system, 409 : Sense-organs, 410 : Excretory organs, 411 : Reproductive organs, 412 : Individual variation, 413 : Development, 413 : Systematic position, 428
Nerve-cell, 27*, **28**
Nerve-fibres, 27*, **28**
Nervous system, 14, 29, 35* : Obelia, 123 : Leptolinæ, 138 : Aurelia, 160 : Tealia, 179 : Hormiphora, 203 : Planaria, 224 : *Distomum*, 228 : *Tænia*, 233 : Platyhelminthes, 252 : Nemertinea, 270 : *Ascaris*, 279 : Nematoda, 285 : Acanthocephala, 291 : Chætognatha, 294 : *Brachionus*, 301 : Rotifera, 308 : Dinophilea, 310 : Gastrotricha, 312 : Polyzoa, 316, 324 : Endoprocta, 326 : *Phoronis*, 329 : *Magellania*, **336**, 337 :

Brachiopoda, 341 : *Starfish*, 350 : *Sea-urchin*, 367 : *Holothurian*, 370 : *Antedon*, 375 : Echinodermata, 394 : *Nereis*, 409, **410** : *Lumbricus*, **422** : Chætopoda, 437 : Myzostomida, 448 : *Sipunculus*, **453** : Gephyrea, 457 : Archi-annelida, 464 : *Hirudo*, 472 : Hirudinea, 478 : *Apus*, 492 : *Astacus*, 513 : Crustacea, 550 : *Peripatus*, 562 : Myriapoda, 569 : *Periplaneta*, 578 : Insects, 594, **595** : *Scorpion*, 609 : Arachnida, 621 : *Mussels*, 641 : Pelecypoda, 657 : Amphineura, 666, **667** : *Triton*, 679 : Gastropoda, 693 : Scaphopoda, 706 : Rhodope, 707 : *Sepia*, 717, **719** : *Nautilus*, 734 : Cephalopoda, 744
Nervous tissue, 27
Neurilemma, 27*, **28**
Neuropodium, **405***, 430
Neuroptera, 584*, 598
Nicothöe, 530, **531**
Nidamental gland, 724*
Noah's Ark shell, 646
Noctiluca, **74**
Nodosaria, **53**
Nomenclature, binomial, 1*
Non-Calcarea, 103*
Noteus, **305**
Notholca, **305**
Notommata werneckii, 309
Notopodium, **405***, 430
Nuchal cartilage, **712**
Nuclear membrane, 15*, **17**
Nuclear sap, 16*
Nuclear spindle, 16*, **17**
Nuclearia, **57**
Nucleolus, 15*, **17**
Nucleus, 11*, 15, **17**
Nucula, 646, 652, 653, **654**, **655**, 656, **657**, **658**
Nudibranchia, 684*, 705
Nummulites, **53**
Nyctotherus, 83, **85**, 86
Nymphon hispidum, **625**

O

OBELIA, General structure, 118, **120** : Microscopic structure, 121, **122** : Medusæ, 124, **125**, **126** : Comparison of polype with medusa, 126, **127**, **128** : Reproduction, 129 : Development, 129 : Systematic position, 132
Octopoda, 736*, 738, 750
Octopus, **737**, **739**, 742
Octorchandra, **139**
Odentophora, 676*, **678**
Œsophagus—See Digestive system
Oikomonas, **66**, 67
Oligochæta, 428*, 483
Ommatidium, 494*, **495**
Onchidium, 695, 704
Oniscus, 543, **546**
Onychophora, 484, 559, 629—See Peripatus
Oœcium, 314
Oosperm, 20*
Oostigite, 544*
Oostigopod, 489*
Opalina, 84, **89**
Operculum (Gastropoda), 673*, **674**, 688
Ophioglypha, **386**
Ophiurida, 378*
Ophiuridea, 346, 378*, 382, 383, 384, 385, **386**, **387**, 392, 393, 394, 395, 398, 399, 400
Ophryodendron, **91**
Ophryoglena, **85**
Opisthobranchia, 684*
Opossum-Shrimp, 523
Orchestia, 543, **548**
Order, 4*
Organic evolution—See Evolution
Organism, 1*
Organ-pipe Coral, 182
Organs, 29*
Orthonectidæ, **218**
Orthoptera, 584*
Orthoptera genuina, 587
Oscarella, **108**
Oscaria, **106**
Osphradium, 642*, 657, 676, 695, 729, 743
Ostracoda, 521*, 527
Ostrea, 647, 652, 656, 658, **660**
Otocyst, 37*, 125*
Ovariole, 580*, 597
Ovary, 37*
Oviduct, 38*
Oviparous, 38*
Ovum, **18***, 28
Oxygen, oxidation, 34
Oxyuris, **285**

P

PACHYCHALINA, 111*
Pædogenesis, 39*, 211*, 266, 598
Pagurus, **539**
Palæmon, **538**
Palæmonetes, 547
Palæocrinoidea, 380*
Palæodictyoptera, 604
Palæo-echinoidea, 379*
Palæonemertinea, 273*
Palæontology, 6*
Palinurus, 537, 549, 553
Palinurus vulgaris, 556
Pallial line, 634*

Pallium—See Mantle
Palpus, 405
Paludicella, 320, 326
Palus, 192*
Palythoa, 116, 184
Pancreas, 32*
Pancreatic juice, 32*
Pandorina, 67, 68, **69**
Papula, 393, 347*
Parabranchia, 696*
Paragaster, 97*
Paraglossa, 589
Paragnatha, 488*; 506
Paramœcidæ, 82
PARAMŒCIUM, 79, **80**, **81** : Systematic position, 82
Paramithrax, 555
Paramitome, 15*
Paramylum, 64*
Parapodium, 403, 404*, **405**, 430
Parenchyma, 222, 249
Parthenogenesis, 38*, 266
Parasitism, Protozoa, 90, 93
Parthenogonidium, 70*
Parthenope, **541**
Patella, 685, 686, **691**, **693**, 694, 695, **696**, 698, **701**
Patellidæ, 683
Pauropoda, 567*, 570
Pauropus, 567
Paxilla, 386*
Peachia, 189
Pearl-oyster, 647
Pecten, 647, **648**, 658, **659**, 661
Pectinibranchia, 683*
Pedal gland, 688*
Pedalion, 306, **307**, 304, 491
Pedata, 379*
Pedicellaria, 348*, 357, 363, 383, **389**
Pedicellina, 320, 326, **327**
Pedipalpida, 611*, 613, 619, 621
Pelagia, **171**
Pelagic, 8*
Peltogaster, 534
Pen, 742*
Penæus, 553
Pennatula, 185, **186**, 191, 195
Pennatulacea, 182*, 184, 191
Pentastomida—See Linguatulida
Pentastomum tænioides, **625**
Peptones, 32*
Perforate corals, 194*
Pericardial sinus, 509*
Perichondrium, 25*
Pericolpa, **167**
Periosteum, 26*
Periostracum, 634*
PERIPATUS, External features, 559, **560** : Body-wall and body-cavity, 561 : Enteric canal, 561 : Circulatory system, 561 : Organs of respiration, 562 : Coxal and slime glands, 562 : Nervous system, 562 : Nephridia, 562 : Reproductive organs, 562 : Development, 563 : Distribution, 566 : Relationship, 566
PERIPLANETA AMERICANA, 571, **572** : Head, 572 : Neck, 573 : Thorax, 574 : Abdomen, 574 : Respiratory movements, 575 : Muscles, 575 : Cœlome, 576 : Digestive system, 576 : Renal organs, 577 : Heart, 577 : Respiration, 578 : Nervous system, 578 : Organs of special sense, 579 : Reproductive organs, 579 : Development, 580 : Systematic position, 587
Perisarc, 121*
Peristaltic movements, 34*
Peristomium, 404*, 417, 432
Peromedusæ, 164*, 166, **167**
Per-radius, 129
Petrarca, 534
Phacops fecundus, **558**
Phæodium, 59
Phalangida, 612*, 615, 621
Phanerozonia, 378*
Pharynx—See Digestive system
Phasmidæ, 587
Philodina, 303, **305**, 309
Pholas, 647, 661
Phoronida, 313, 328
Phoronis, 328, **329**, **330**, 343, **344**
Phragmoceras, 750
Phragmocone, **742**
Phronima, 545, **546**
Phrynus, **613**
Phylactolæmata, 320, 321, **322**, **323**, **324**, 325, 326, 343, **344**
Phyllocarida, 523*, 535
Phyllopoda, 521*
Phyllosoma, 553
Phylogeny, 8*
Phylum, 5*, 41
Physalia, 151, **152**
Physiology, 9*
Picris, **586**
Pilema, **170**
Pilidium, **272**, 273
Pill-bug, 524
Pinna, 647, 653
Pinnotheres, 556
Piscicola, 476, 481
Placophora, 663*, 751, 665, 666, 667, 668, 671
PLANARIA, 222 : General features, 222, **226** : Digestive system, 222, **223** : Water vessels, **223**, 224 : Nervous system, **223**, 224 : Reproductive system, 224, **225** : Systematic position, 238
Plankton, 8*
Planorbulina, **53**
Plant-lice, 585
Planula, 129*, **130**, **141***, 161

Plasmodium, 28*

Platoum stercoreum, **51**

Platyhelminthes, 221, 237*: General external features, 239: Integument and muscular layers, **248**: Parenchyma, **249**: Alimentary systems, 250, **251**, **252**: Nervous system, 252: Water vascular system, **253**; Reproductive organs, 254, **256**: Development, 256, **257**

Platypoda, 684*, 705

Pleopod, 500*

Pleurobrachiadæ, 208

Pleurobranchia, **508***

Pleuron, 498*

Pleurophyllidia, **691**

Ploïma, 304*, **305**, 306

Plumularia, 138

Plumatella, 320, **322**

Pluteus, **397**, 398

Pneumatophore, 149*

Podobranchia, **508***

Podomere, 484*

Podophrya, 90, **91**

Podura, **584**

Polar body, 18*, **19**

Polian vesicle, 354*, 393

Pollicipes, 534

Polyarthra, 304, **305**, 306

Polycelis, **240**

Polycercus, 260

Polychæta, 427*, 432, 433, 435, 436, 438, 440, 443, 444, 446, 447, 448

Polycladida, 237*,240, 242, 248, **251**, 252, 253, 255, 256, **257**

Polydora, 447

Polygordiidæ, 462

Polygordius lacteus, 463

Polygordius neapolitanus, **462**, **463**, **464**, 482

Polykrikos, 73, **74**

Polymorphism, 131*

Polynöe, 440

Polynöe extenuata, 432

Polynöe setosissima, **429**, 431

Polynoidæ, 429

Polyœca, **72**, 73

Polyophthalmus, 438

Polype, 118*, 119

Polyphemus, **527**

Polyphylitic, 266

Polypodium, 155

Polystomeæ, 243

Polystomum, **243**, 264

Polytrochal, 445*

Polyzoa, 313: Example, 314, 319*: See *Ectoprocta* and *Endoprocta*

Polyzoa (Cestoda), 238*

Pontellina mediterranea, 554

Pontobdella, **475**, 477, **478**, **479**, 481

Pore-membrane, 100*

Pores, inhalant, 97*

Porifera, Example, 96, 102*: General form and mode of growth, 105: Leading modifications of structure, 107: Skeleton, 111: Reproduction, 112: Development, 113: Distribution, affinities, &c., 115, 215

Poromya, 647, **655**, **656**

Porpita, 153, **154**

Port-hole—See Cinclis

Portuguese Man-of-War, 151

Portunus, **541**, **554**

Post-abdomen of Scorpion, 606

Potamobiidæ, 525

Poterion, **106**

Præ-abdomen of Scorpion, 605

Prawns, 537, **538**

Priapulidæ, 455

Priapulus, 456, **457**

Primary axis, 40*

Proneomenia, 663, 664, **667**

Pronucleus, active and stationary, 82

Pronucleus, male and female, 18*, **19**

Pro-ostracum, 742*

Prorocentrum, 73, **74**

Prorodon, **85**, 86

Proscolea, 237

Prosiphon, 741*

Prosobranchia—See Streptoneura

Prosopyle, 100*, 108

Prostomium, 404*, 417, 432

Protamœba, **47**

Protandrous, 285

Protective characters, 555

Proteid, 15*

Proteolepas, 534

Proterospongia, **72**, 73, 116

Protobranchia, 646*, 648, 649, 653, 656, 662, 752

Protoconch, 725*, 741

Protodrilus, **463**, 482

Protohydra, **137**

Protomerite, 77*

Protomyxa, 63

Protoplasm, 11*, 14, 15*

Protopodite, 496*, 500

Prototroch, 416*, 701

Protozoa, 43

Protozoæa, 553

Proventriculus, 593

Psammoclema, **106**

Pseudo-lamellibranchia, 646*, 662

Pseudopod, 10*

Pseudo-scorpionida, 611*, 613, 619, 621

Psolus, 390

Pteropoda, 684, 687, 688, **689**, 705

Pterotrachea, **690**

Pulex, **586**

Pulmonary sac, 691*, **692**

Pulmonata, 684*, 689, 691, 705

Pulsellum, 705

Pupa (of Cirripedia), 552

Pupa (of Insects), 502
Purpura, 693
Pycnogonida, 624, 629
Pygidium, 559*
Pyrula, **699**

Q

QUADRULA, **47**

R

RADIAL CANALS, 100*, 125
Radial Symmetry, 40*
Radiata, 401
Radii, orders of, 128
Radiolaria, 46* : General structure, 58 : Central capsule, 58 : Skeleton, 59 : Colonial forms, 59 : Reproduction, 59 : Symbiosis, 61
Radula, 676*, **678**
Radular sac, 676*, **678**
Raphidiophrys, **57**
Red coral, 182
Redia, 231, 259
Regularia, 379*
Relationships, of Protozoa, 93 : Sponges, 116 : Cœlenterata, 213 : Platyhelminthes, 267 : Nemathelminthes, 297 : Rotifera, 309 : Dinophilea, 311 : Polyzoa, 328 : Molluscoida, 343 : Echinodermata, 401 : Gephyrea, 459 : Annulata, 482 : Crustacea, 556 : Air - breathing Arthropoda, 627 : Pelecypoda, 662 : Gastropoda, 705 : Cephalopoda, 750 : Mollusca, 751
Relationships, diagrams of : of Protozoa, 93 : Cœlenterata, 215 : Platyhelminthes, 267 : Echinodermata, 402 : Annulata and Trochelminthes, 483 : Crustacea, 557 : Arthropoda, 629 : Pelecypoda, 662 : Gastropoda, 705 : Cephalopoda, 750
Renal organs—See Excretory system
Reproduction, Reproductive System, 14, 29, 37 : *Amœba*, 14, 44 : Foraminifera, 55 : Heliozoa, 58 : Radiolaria, 59 : Mycetozoa, 62 : *Euglena*, 64 : Flagellata, 70 : Choanoflagellata, 73 : Dinoflagellata, 74 : Cystoflagellata, 74 : Monocystis, 75 : Gregarinida, 77 : *Paramœcium*, 81 : Ciliata, 88 : Tentaculifera, 92 : Porifera, 113 : *Obelia*, 129 : Leptolinæ, 140 : Trachylinæ, 144 : Hydrocorallina, 147 : Siphonophora, 149, 152, 154 : *Aurelia*, 158 : *Tealia*, 179 : *Hormiphora*, 203 : Mesozoa, 217, 219 : *Planaria*, 224, **225** : *Distomum*, **228**, **229** : *Tænia*, **234** : Platyhelminthes, 254 : Nemertinea, 273 : *Ascaris*, 279 : Nematoda, 285 : Acanthocephala, 292 : Chætognatha, 295 : *Brachionus*, 302 : Rotifera, 309 : Dinophilea, 310 : *Bugula*, 316 : Ectoprocta, 325 : Endoprocta, 327 : *Phoronis*, 329 : *Magellania*, 337 : Brachiopoda, 341 : *Starfish*, 356 : *Sea-urchin*, 368 : *Holothurian*, 372 : *Antedon*, 377 : Echinodermata, 394 : *Nereis*, 412 : *Lumbricus*, 423, **424** : Chætopoda, 441 : Myzostomida, 449 : Sipunculus, 454 : Gephyrea, 458 : Archi-annelida, 465 : *Hirudo*, 473 : Hirudinea, 478 : *Apus*, 495 : *Astacus*, 514 : Crustacea, 551 : *Peripatus*, 562 : Myriapoda, 569 : Periplaneta, 579 : Insects, 597, **598** : *Scorpion*, 609 : Arachnida, 622 : *Mussel*, 642 : Pelecypoda, 658 : Amphineura, **668**, **669** : *Triton*, 682 : Gastropoda, 697 : Scaphopoda, 706 : *Rhodope*, 707 : *Sepia*, 723 : *Nautilus*, 735 : Cephalopoda, 744
Requienia, 651, **652**
Reservoir (Euglena), 63
Respiration, 13*, 33
Respiratory organs, 33* : *Starfish*, 347 : *Sea-urchin*, 364, 368 : *Holothurian*, 372 : Chætopoda, 433 : Hirudinea, 477 : *Apus*, 492 : *Astacus*, 507, **508** : Crustacea, 548 : *Peripatus*, 562 : Myriapoda, 569 : Periplaneta, 575, 578 : Insects, **593** : Scorpion, 608 : Arachnida, 619 : *Mussel*, 636, **638** : Pelecypoda, 653 : *Triton*, 676 : Gastropoda, 690 : *Sepia*, 716 : *Nautilus*, 729 : Cephalopoda, 743
Respiratory trees, 372*, 394
Retina, 37*
Retinophore, 682*
Retinula, 494*, **495**, 682
Rhabdites, 248
Rhabditis-form, 287
Rhabdocœlida, 238*, 239, 240, 242, 248, **251**, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256
Rhabdome, 494*, **495**
Rhagon-type of Sponge, 109*
Rhipidodendron, **66**, 68
Rhipidoglossa, 683*, 705
Rhizocephala, 522*, 534
Rhizopoda, 43* : Example, 44 : Classification and general organisation, 45
Rhizostomæ, 164*, 169, **170**, 213
Rhizote, 303*, **305**, 306, 308
Rhodope, **707**, 751
Rhombogene, **217***
Rhopalura, **218**, **219**
Rhynchobdellida, 475*, 476, 477, 478, 479
Rhynchodemus, **240**
Rhynchonella, **340**
Rhynchota, **91**
Rock-lobster, 523

Rock systems, 7
Rocks, igneous and aqueous, 7*
Rotalia, **52**
Rotation, sense of, 37
Rotifer, 303
Rotifera, 229, 303* : External characters, 304 : Digestive organs, 307 : Excretory system, 308 : Nervous system and Sense-organs, 308 : Reproduction and Development, 309 : Ethology, 309 : Affinities, 309, 483
Round-worms, 275—See Neurathelminthes
Rugosa, 197*

S

SACCAMMINA, **53**
Saccocirrus, **438**
Sacculina, 534, **535**, 553
Sagitta, **293**, **294**, **295**
Salinella, **219**, 220
Saliva, 32*
Salivary glands, 32*
Salivary receptacle, 576
Salmacina, 446
Salpingœca, **72**
Saltatoria, 587
Sand-hopper, 524
Sarcocystidea, 76*, 79
Sarcocystis, **79**
Sarcolemma, 26*
Sarcophaga, **595**
Sarcoptes scabiæi, **616**
Sarsia, **135**
Scale-insects, 585
Scallop, 647
Scaphopoda, 705
Schizonemertea, 274*
Schizopod-stage, 553
Schizopoda, 523*, 536
Scirtopoda, 304*, 306, **307**
Sclerite, 520*
Scleroblast, 101*, 111
Scolex, 231
Scolopendra, **568**
Scolopendrella, **567**, 569
SCORPION—See BUTHUS.
Scorpionida, 611*, 613, 624
Scorpion-spiders, 612
Scrobicularia piperata, **650**
Scutigera, 567, 569
Scyllarus, 537, **539**
Scyphistoma—See Scyphula
Scyphozoa, 118, 156, 163*, 171
Scyphula, 161*, **162**
Sea-anemones, 118, 181—See Tealia
Sea-blubbers, 169
SEA-CUCUMBER, External features, **369** : Structure of body-wall, 370 : Ambulacral system, 370 : Nervous-vascular systems, 370 : Cœlome, 371 : Enteric canal, 372 : Reproductive organs, 372 : Development, 372 : Systematic position, 381
Sea-cucumbers, 346—See Holothuroidea
Sea-fans, 182
Sea-firs (Sertularians), 133
Sea-hares, 684
Sea-lilies, 380
Sea-mats, 311—See Polyzoa
Sea-mussel, 646
Sea-pens, 183
SEA-URCHIN, External features, 363, **364**, **365** : Corona, 364 : Aristotle's lantern, **366** : Nervous system, 367 : Ambulacral system, 367 : Enteric canal, **367**, **368** : Cœlome, 368 : Blood-vascular system, 368 : Reproductive organs, 368 : Development, 368 : Systematic position, 381
Sea-urchins, 346—See Echinoidea
Secondary axis, 40*
Secretion, 22*
Sedentaria, 427*
Segment, 41
Segmental organ—See Nephridium
Segmentation of oosperm, **20***
Segmentation-cavity—See Blastocœle
Segmentation-nucleus, **19***
Seison, 309
Selenaria, 320
Selenariidæ, 321, 324
Semostomæ, 164*, 169, 213
Sense-organs, 37 : *Obelia*, 125 : Trachylinæ, 149 : *Aurelia*, 160 : *Hormiphora*, 198, 203 : Platyhelminthes, 253 : Nemertinea, 271 : Chætognatha, 295 : *Brachionus*, 301 : Rotifera, 308 : *Phoronis*, 329 : *Starfish*, 348 : *Sea-urchin*, 367 : *Nereis*, 410, **411** : Chætopoda, 438 : Sipunculus, 454 : *Hirudo*, 472 : Hirudinea, 478 : *Apus*, 494 : Astacus, 513 : Crustacea, 551 : Peripatus, 560 : *Periplaneta*, 579 : Insects, 595, **596**, **597** : *Scorpion*, 609 : Arachnida, 621 : *Mussel*, **642** : Pelecypoda, 657 : Amphineura, 668 : *Triton*, 674, 676, 682 : Gastropoda, 695 : *Rhodope*, 707 : *Sepia*, 720 : *Nautilus*, 734 : Cephalopoda, 743, 744—See also Eyes, Auditory organs, Olfactory organs, Gustatory organs, Tactile organs, Osphradia
SEPIA, External features, 708, **709** : Shell, **711** : Chromatophores, **711** ; Mantle-cavity, 712, **713** : Internal skeleton, **712** : Alimentary system, 712 : Ink-sac, 714 : Vascular system, 714 : Cœlome, 715 : Ctenidia, 716 : Nervous system, 717 : Sensory organs, 720 : Excretory organs, 722 : Repro-

ductive organs, **723** : Systematic position, 737
Sepia cultrata, 708
Septal funnel, 161*
Septal neck, 725*
Septibranchia, 647*, 648, 654
Septum, 192*
Serialaria, 320
Serosa, 581*
Serpula, 434, 437, **447**
Serpulidæ, 433
Sertularians, 133
Seta, **405***, **419**, 431
Seta, provisional, 416
Setigerous sac, 405*, 420, **431**
Sexual dimorphism, 38*
Sexual generation, 130
Shell, Magellania, 331,**332** : Brachiopoda, 338, **339** : *Mussel*, **633** : Pelecypoda, 648 : *Chiton*, 664, **665** : *Triton*, **672**, **673** : Gastropoda, 686 : Scaphopoda, 705 : *Sepia*, **711** : *Nautilus*, 725, **726** : Cephalopoda, 740
Shell-gland, 492*, **493**, 550, 643*
Shelly loop, 332
Ship-worm, 647
Shrimp, 523
Sicula, 155*
Sigaretus, **688**
Silicispongiæ, 103*
Sinupalliata, 647*, 662
Siphonodentalium, 705
Siphonophora, 132*, 147, **148**, **150**, **152**, **153**, **154**, 213
Siphonozooid, 189*
Siphons, inhalant and exhalant, 632*, 649
Siphuncle, 725*
Sipunculidæ, 455
SIPUNCULUS NUDUS, General external features, **451**, **452** : Body-wall, 451 : Cœlome, 452 : Blood-vascular system, 452 : Alimentary canal, 452, **453** : Nervous system, **453** : Nephridia and gonads, 454 : Systematic position, 455
Skeleton, 29* : Lobosa, 47: Foraminifera, 51 : Heliozoa, 56 : Radiolaria, 58 : Mastigophora, 68 : Ciliata, 87 : Actinozoa, 189 : *Sepia*, 712 : Cephalopoda, 743—See also Shell and Body-wall
Skin, 29*—See Body-wall
Slugs, 684
Snails, 684
Solarium, **685**
Solecurtus strigillatus, 651
Solen, 661
Solenomya, 646
Solpugida, 612*, **614**
Somatoblast, 414
Somatopleure, 582*
Spadella, 293
Spadix, **728***
Spatangoidea, 379*, 383, 389, **390**
Species, 1*, 104*
Specific name, 2*
Sperm, 18, **28***
Spermary, 37*
Spermatozoon—See Sperm
Spermiduct, 38*
Sphæridium, 363*, 383
Sphærophrya, **91**
Spicules, 30*
Spiders, 612
Spinning-glands, 592
Spirifera, **339**
Spiroloculina, **53**
Spirorbis, 448
Spirorbis lævis, **444**
Spirula, **740**, **741**
Splanchnopleure, 582*
Spongelia, **111**
Spongilla, **109**
Spongillidæ, 112, 115
Spongin, 111*
Spongin-blasts, 112*
Sporangium (Mycetozoa), 62
Spore, 38*
Spore formation, 62, 75, 89
Sporocyst, 231, 258
Sporosac, **140***
Sporozoa, 44, 75, 76*
Squammulina, 51, **52**
Squids, 736
Squilla, **542**
STARFISH, External characters, 346, **347**, **357** : Transverse action of arm, **349** : Vascular and nervous systems, 350 : Structure of disc, 351 : Body-wall and cœlome, 351 : Digestive system, **353** : Ambulacral system, **350**, **354** : Ovoid gland, 354 : Reproductive system, 356 : Development, 358, **359**, **360**, **361** : Systematic position, 380
Starfishes, 346—See Asteroidea
Stauromedusæ, 164*, **165**, 213
Stentor, 83, **85**
Stephanoceros, 303, **305**, 306
Sternaspis, 432, 436, 440
Sternaspis spinosa, 433
Sternum, 498*
Stewart's organs, 393*
Stick-insects, 584
Stigma (Euglena), 64
Stigmata, 562, 575, 593
Stinging capsule—See Nematocyst
Stolon, 183*
Stomach—See Digestive system
Stomatogastric nerves, 422
Stomatopoda, 524*, 542
Stomidium, 188*
Stomodæum, 161*
Stone-canal, 354*
Stony corals, 118, 182
Strepsiptera, 602

Streptoneura, 683*, 688
Strobila, 233
Strongylocentrotus, **364**—See Sea-urchin
Strongylostoma, **570**
Stylarioides, 447
Stylaster, 146, **147**
Stylonychia, 90
Sub-genital pit (Aurelia), 158*
Sub-genital portico, 171*
Sub-kingdom—See Phylum
Sub-radius, 129
Sub-umbrella, 125*
Succession of Life in time, 7
Sucker (Sepia), 709*, **710**
Suctorial mouths (Rhizostomæ), 170
Summer eggs, 551
Supporting lamella—See Mesoglœa
Swimming-bell—See Nectocalyx
Swimming-plate, **199**, 200*
Sycantha, 103
Sycetta, 103
Sycettidæ, 103
SYCON: External characters, 96, **97**: Microscopic structure, **99**: Systematic position, 103: Development, 113, **114**
Sycon-type of sponge, 109*
Syllida, 436, 446, 447
Syllis ramosa, 446
Symmetry, 39*, **40**: Polype and Medusa, 128: Tealia, 176, 179
Symphyla, 567*, 569
Synapta, 390, 399, 402
Synapticula, 192*
Syn-cerebrum, 513*
Syncoryne, **135**
Syncrypta, **66**
Syncytium, 99*

T

TABANUS, **590**
Tabula, 143*, 192
Tactile organs, 37
Tænia cœnurus, 261
Tænia crassicollis, 265
Tænia echinococcus, 246, 261, **262**, 265
Tænia mediocanellata, 265
Tænia saginata, 265
Tænia serrata, 265
TÆNIA SOLIUM: General features, 231, **232**, **233**: Nervous system, 233: Excretory organs, **234**: Reproductive organs, **234**: Systematic position, 239
Tæniole, 161*
Talitrus, 543
Tanais, 543
Tape-worm—See Tænia and Cestoda
Tardigrada, 626, 629
TEALIA: External characters, 172, **173**: Enteric system, 174, **175**: Muscular system, **173**, 175: Symmetry, 176: Microscopic structure, **177**, **178**: Nervous system, 179: Reproductive organs, **173**, 179: Development, 179, **180**: Systematic position, 183
Tectibranchia, 684*, 705
Telolecithal, 207*
Telotrochal, 445*
Telson, 498*
Temnocephala, **244**, 264
Temnocephaleæ, 244
Tendon, 35*
Tentacles, 30*
Tentaculifera, 82*: Body and tentacles, 90: Nucleus, contractile vacuoles, shell, colonies, reproduction, 92
Tentaculocyst, 143*, **160**
Tentorium, 579
Terebella, **434**
Terebellidæ, 433
Terebra, **686**
Terebratula, **336**, 338, **339**
Terebratulidæ, 338
Terebratulina, **343**
Teredo, 647, **652**
Tergum, 498*
Termites, 585, 603
Tessera, **165**
Tethys, 684
Tetrabranchiata, 736*, 739
Tetramita, **66**
Tetrarhynchus, **246**
Tetrastemma, **269**
Thalassoplancta, **59**
Theca, 192*
Thomson, J. Vaughan, 3
Thorax, of *Apus*, 489: *Astacus*, 499: *Periplaneta*, 572, 574: Solpugida, 615
Thread-worms—See Nemathelminthes
Thysanozoon, **240**
Thysanura, 583
Ticks, **612**—See Acarida
Tiedemann's vesicle, 354*, 393
Tintinnidium, **85**
Tissues, 21*
Tomopteris, 447
Tracheæ, 33*, 562, **577**, **578**, 593
Tracheal gills, **594***
Tracheliastes, **531**
Trachelius, **85**
Trachelomonas, **66**
Trachylinæ, 132*: General structure, **142**: Sense organs, **143**: Tentacles, **143**: Reproductive-organs, 144: Development, **144**
Trachymedusæ, 132*, **142**, 143, 144
Trap-door Spider, 623
Trapezia, 196
Trematoda, Example, 226, 238*, **242**, **243**, **244**, **245**, 248, 249, 250, 251, 252, 253, 254, 256, 258, 259, 264, 265, 266, 267

Treptoplax, 220
Triarthrus beckii, **559**
Trichina, 284, **288**
Trichocyst, 80, 84
Trichoplax, **220**
Trichostomata, 82
Tricladida, 237*, **241**, **248**, 251, **252**, 255
Tridacna gigas, 660
Trigger-hair—See Cnidocil
Trigonia, 646, 652, 661
Trilobita, **558**, **559**, 629
Trimorphism, 119*
TRITON NODIFERUS, 671 : Shell, **672**, **673** : External features of soft parts, **674** : Foot, 675 : Visceral spirals, 675 : Mantle, 675 : Ctenidium, 676 : Osphradium, 676 : Digestive system, 676 : Vascular system, 679 : Excretory system, 679 : Nervous system, 679, **680** : Sensory organs, 682 : Reproductive organs, 682 : Systematic position, 685
Tritonidæ, 685
Trivium, 348*
Trochelminthes, 221, 298
Trocheta, 476
Trochophore—See Trochosphere
Trochosphæra, 304, 306, **307**
Trochosphærida, 304*, **307**
Trochosphere, **298**
Trochus, 683, **696**
Trombidium fuliginosum, **616**
Tube-feet, 348*, 363, 383
Tubifex, 442
Tubificidæ, 434, 447
Tubipora, **186**, 190, 195
Tubularia, 133, **135**
Turbellaria, 237*, 239, **240**, **248**, 250, **251**, **252**, 253, 255, 263, 264, 266, 267
Turbo, 683, **696**
Typhlosole, 421*, 436

U

UMBO, 634*
Umbrella, 124*, 156
Undulating membrane, 83*
Unicellular, 18*
Unicellular gland, **22***
Unio, 631, 647—See Anodonta
Unio margaritifer, 631
Unionidæ, 647
Unisexual, 38*
Urea, 35
Uric acid, 34
Urinary organs, 35*
Urnatella, 326
Uropod, 500*
Uterus, 38*

V

VACUOLE, contractile, 11*, 79
Variation, individual, 2*, 104*
Variety, 2*, 105*
Vascular system, 32 : Nemertinea, 270 : Acanthocephala, 291 : *Phoronis*, 329 : *Magellania*, 336 : Brachiopoda, 340 : *Starfish*, 351, 355 : *Holothurian*, 370 : *Antedon*, 376 : Echinodermata, 394 : *Nereis*, 409 : *Lumbricus*, 421 : *Sipunculus*, 452 : Gephyrea, 457 : Archiannelida, 464 : *Hirudo*, 471, **472** : Hirudinea, 477 : *Apus*, 491 : *Astacus*, 509, **512** : Crustacea, 550 : *Peripatus*, 561 : *Periplaneta*, 577 : Insects, **594** : *Scorpion*, 607 : Arachnida, 619 : *Mussel*, 640, **641** : Pelecypoda, 656 : Amphineura, 666 : *Triton*, 679 : Gastropoda, 693 : Scaphopoda, 706 : *Sepia*, 714, **719** : *Nautilus*, 732, **733** : Cephalopoda, 743
Vas deferens—See Spermiduct
Vaso-peritoneal vesicle, 396
Velarium, 167*
Velella, 154
Veliger, 659*, 703*, **704**
Velum, 125*, 126, 659*, 701
Ventral, 41*
Ventricle, 34*
Venus gnidia, **650**
Venus's Flower-basket, 112
Venus's Girdle, 210
Vermes, 221
Vermetes, 684
Vermilia, **430**
Vibracula, 321, 324*
Virgula, 155*
Visceral spiral, of Triton, 675
Vitelline glands—See Yolk-glands
Viviparous, 38*
Voluta, **699**
Volvox, 67, 68, **70**, 71
Vortex, **240**
Vorticella, 83, 84, 86, **87**, 88, 89
Vulsella, **649**, 653

W

WALDHEIMIA—See Magellania
Wandering cells, 102
Wasps, 587
Water-bugs, 585
Water-flea, 522
Water-pores, 375*, 393
Water-tubes, 375*, 393
Water-vascular system, 222
Whale-louse, [illegible]
Wheel-animalcules—See Rotifera

Whelks, 684
White substance of Schwann, 27*
Winter eggs, 551
Wood-louse, 524—See *Oniscus*

X

Xiphosura, 612*, **617**, **618**, 619, **621**, 624, 629

Y

Yellow Cells—See *Zooxanthella.*
Yellow elastic cartilage, 24*
Yoldia, 646
Yolk, 18*
Yolk-glands, 222

Z

Zoæa, 553*
Zoantharia, 181*, 214
Zoanthus, 183, **184**, 187, 188
Zoœcium, 314
Zoo-geographical Regions, 8
Zooid, 38*
Zoology, 1*
Zoophyte, 118*
Zoothamnium, **88**
Zooxanthella, 61
Zygote, 70*

REESE LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

END OF VOL. I

RICHARD CLAY AND SONS, LIMITED, LONDON, AND BUNGAY.

GENERAL LIBRARY
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA—BERKELEY

RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or on the date to which renewed.
Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

Biology Library

Biology Library

JUN 6 1954
JUN 6 1954
MAY 16 1956
MAY 7 1956
MAY 10 1957
MAY 10 1957
MAY 31 1957
MAY 31 1957
JAN 3 1958
De 18'57 F V
APR 25 1958
Ap 17'58 K L

JAN 7 1960
5 Ja'60 K L
JAN 3 1961
3 Ja'61 J W
MAR 19 1961
MAR 22 1961
MAY 22 1961
MAY 8 1961
JUN 7 1965
JUN 4 1965
[redacted]

LD 21-100m-1,'54 (1887s16) 476

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA